UTS:

HELPS

HIGHER EDUCATION LANGUAGE AND PRESENTATION SUPPORT

Grammar 1: Subject–verb agreement

Workshop objectives

This workshop will assist you in becoming familiar with the use of:

- **Countable vs. uncountable nouns**
- **Subject-verb agreement**
- **Singular vs. plural nouns**
- **Indefinite pronouns**

Countable + Uncountable

- A countable noun is one that can be expressed in plural form (e.g. essay/essays).

- An uncountable noun is one that usually cannot be expressed in a plural form (e.g. coffee).

Countable + Uncountable

Some nouns belong to both classes.

Countable: concrete and specific meaning

- I've had some *difficulties* finding relevant materials for the essay.
- The *talks* will take place in Building 1.

Uncountable: abstract and general meaning

but

- She succeeded at university with little *difficulty*.
- I dislike idle *talk*.

Countable + Uncountable

Classification:
Sometimes a usually uncountable noun (often food) can be understood as one item separate and distinct from other kinds of items from the same category.

There are several Australian *wines* to choose from
I prefer Sumatran *coffees* to Colombian.
Gardner has a theory of multiple *intelligences*.
ie. *varieties of wine, varieties of coffee, types of intelligence*

Subject-verb agreement

The way the verb is matched to the subject in terms of number (singular or plural).

There is/are…

In sentences beginning with *There is* or *There are*, the verb agrees with the noun phrase that follows it.

There *are* **many questions**.
There *is* **a question**.
There *is* **much questioning.**

Collective nouns

Collective nouns take a singular verb if they refer to a group/unit as a whole.

Collective nouns take a plural verb when the noun is referring to individuals in the group.

The committee *want* a review of the procedures. **They** *are* dissatisfied with the current ones.

Other nouns like this include **family, class, team, staff** and **company.**

Nouns ending in ‘s’

Some nouns that always end in s are uncountable and take a singular verb.

The news *is a source of information*.
Physics *was* my hardest subject.
Measles *is* highly contagious.

Some nouns that always end in s are plural (usually because they come in pairs) and take a plural verb.

These scissors *do not align*.
The trousers *are* made of wool.
My clothes are made of recycled material.

Indefinite pronouns

The words *each, each one, either, neither, everyone, everybody, anybody, anyone, nobody, somebody, someone,* and *no-one* are **singular** and require a singular verb.

Nobody *has* claimed responsibility.
Everybody *has* to pay their taxes.

but… **Any of the recommended books** *are* worth reading.

Verb+ing as subject

If the subject of a clause is a gerund (verb+ing), a singular verb is required.

Studying at university *is* a challenge for many.

And: Compound Subjects

When the subject of a sentence is composed of two or more nouns (making them joint operators of the action) connected by ***and***, use a **plural verb**.

John and I *work* on our assignments together.
Paraphrasing and summarising *are* important academic writing skills.

but…Bacon and eggs *is* a high protein breakfast. However, **it** is a dish which should be eaten in moderation.

Or: Singular or plural

When a subject contains two or more nouns joined by *or* or *nor*, the verb should agree with the part of the subject that is nearer the verb.

The book *or* the pen *is* in the drawer.

Either the doctor *or the nurses* *attend* every day.

Neither the nurses *nor* the doctor *attends* every day.

Agreement

The verb agrees with the subject (head noun).

Do not be misled by a phrase that comes between the subject and the verb.

One of the boxes *is* open.

The team captain, as well as his players, *is* anxious

The book, including all the chapters in the first section, *is* boring.

The woman with those engineers leads the conference.

Complex subjects

A noun phrase can contain two or more nouns.
The verb that follows will agree with the head noun.

A book of answers *comes* with the study guide**.**

Quantity

An amount, quantity or number thought of as a whole takes a singular verb.

Six years *is* a long time.
Three dollars *is* not much.
The number of students on the course *is* less than last year.

A plural verb highlights the individuals in the group.

A number of **students** *do* not understand the assignment question.

Proportions

With fractions, percentages and indefinite quantifiers (*all, few, many, much, some*, half, none etc.), the verb agrees with the preceding noun.

Two-thirds of the **task** *is* completed.
Two-thirds of his **articles** *are* peer-reviewed.
Fifty percent of **what he writes** *is* undocumented.
Fifty percent of the **computers** *are* iMacs.
All the **information** *is* correct.
All the **studies** *are* current.
Much of the **book** *seems* relevant to this assignment.
Many **researchers** *depend* on grants from industry.

UTS: HELPS
HIGHER EDUCATION LANGUAGE AND PRESENTATION SUPPORT

UTS:HELPS

U:Learn U:PASS U:Connect



Discover these!

- Online self-help learning resources
- Drop-in & 1:1 consultations
- Writing support sessions
- Conversations@UTS
- Intensive academic English programmes
- Daily workshops
- Volunteer programmes

www.helps.uts.edu.au

UTS: HELPS
HIGHER EDUCATION LANGUAGE AND PRESENTATION SUPPORT

UTS:HELPS

U:Learn U:PASS U:Connect



CB01.05.25

9514 9733

helps@uts.edu.au

www.helps.uts.edu.au

20 Rules of Subject Verb Agreement



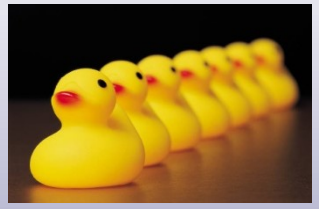
Can't we all just get along?

Suman Singh

1. Subjects and verbs must agree in number.

- Singular subject = singular verb
- Plural subject = plural verb
- Cow= singular, eats= singular
- Ducks= plural, quack= plural
- *Hint*= SVS- singular verbs have an S
- Singular yes?- the verb has an “S”!
- Singular no? The “S” has to go!





2. Don’t get confused by the words that come between the subject and verb.

The detective *who was called to the case* **is** usually very good.



3. Prepositional phrases between the subject and verb usually do not affect the agreement.



The biker *in this race* **is** very competitive.

The bikers *in this race* **are** very competitive.



4. If a sentence starts with “there” or “ here”, the subject will always be placed after the verb.



There is a ***meeting*** today.



Here are the **results** from this past month.

5. Subjects can come after the verb in questions.

- **Does** Betty always **play** with dolls?



- How **are** the Bosco sticks today?



6. If two subjects are joined by "*and*", they typically require a plural verb.

- The puppy and the lady **are** friends.



7. If two subjects are separated by "*and*" refer to the same thing, the verb is singular.

- Spaghetti and meatballs **is** my favorite pasta dish.



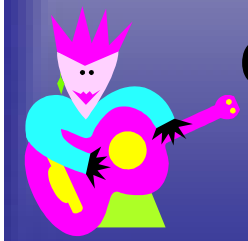
Suman Singh

8. If both subjects are singular and connected by *or*, *nor*, *neither/nor*, *either/or* and *not only/but also*, the verb is singular.



- Sally *or* Bubba **<u>has</u>** stolen the scarecrow.

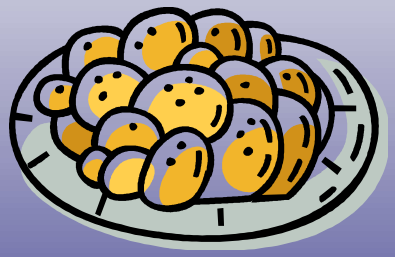
- *Not only* the guitar player *but also* the drummer **<u>was</u>** soaked with sweat.





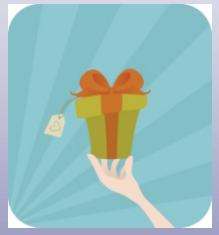
9. If both subjects are plural and connected by the words *or, nor, neither/nor, either/or,* and *not only/but also*, the verb is plural.

- Cookies or brownies **<u>are</u>** nice treats for your teacher.

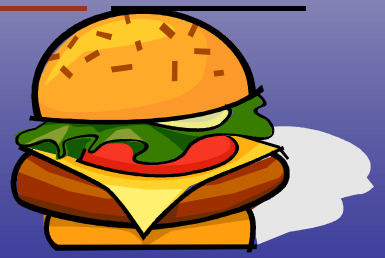


10. If one subject is singular and one plural and are connected by the words *or, nor, neither/nor, either/or,* and *not only/but also*, use the subject that is nearest the verb.

- Either my sisters or my *mom* **has** sent me a present.



- Not only Bob but also *the Smiths* **want** some hamburgers for supper.



11. Units of measurement usually use a singular verb.

- Six gallons of paint **was** used on the house.



- Five dollars **is** too much for a cup of coffee.





12. Collective nouns usually take a singular verb.

- The herd **is** stampeding.

The class **was** ready for the test.



13. Titles of books, movies, novels, etc. are treated as singular.

- *Holes* **was** one of my favorite books.I want to see the movie.

14. Two infinitives separated by *and* take a plural verb.

- To run and to read **are** my two favorite "Free-time" activities.





15. Gerunds alone take a singular verb. Gerunds linked by *and* take a plural verb.

- Dancing **is** not something everyone can do as well as I can!

16. If the words *each*, *every* or *no* come before the subject, the verb is singular.

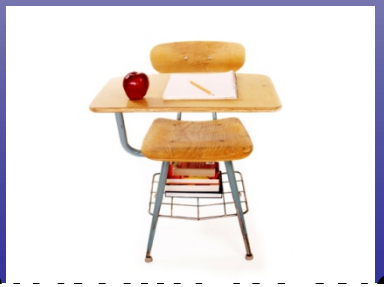


- Each boy and girl **has** to take the test.
- Every frog and toad **turns** into a prince.



- No paper and pen **is** required.

(But an apple would be nice!:)



- Dancing and singing **come** na

17. Most indefinite pronouns take singular verbs.

one	body	thing
someone	**somebody**	**something**
anyone	**anybody**	**anything**
No one	**nobody**	**nothing**
everyone	**everybody**	**everything**



Little **One**

Another **Neither**

Much **Either**

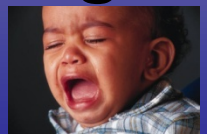
Each

*** Everybody is happy.**

*** No one has a dime.**



*** Nothing was going to help.**



18. ***Both, few, many, others,*** **and *several*** take a plural verb.

- Several **need** to finish the race.



- A few **have** the right answer.



19. When the subject is ***all, any, more, most, none, or some***, this is the ONLY time you must look at the object of the prepositional phrase to determine whether it is singular or plural.

- **All** *of the chickens* **have** laid eggs.

- **Some** *of the milk* **has** spilled.

20. Final rule- Remember, only the SUBJECT affects the verb!

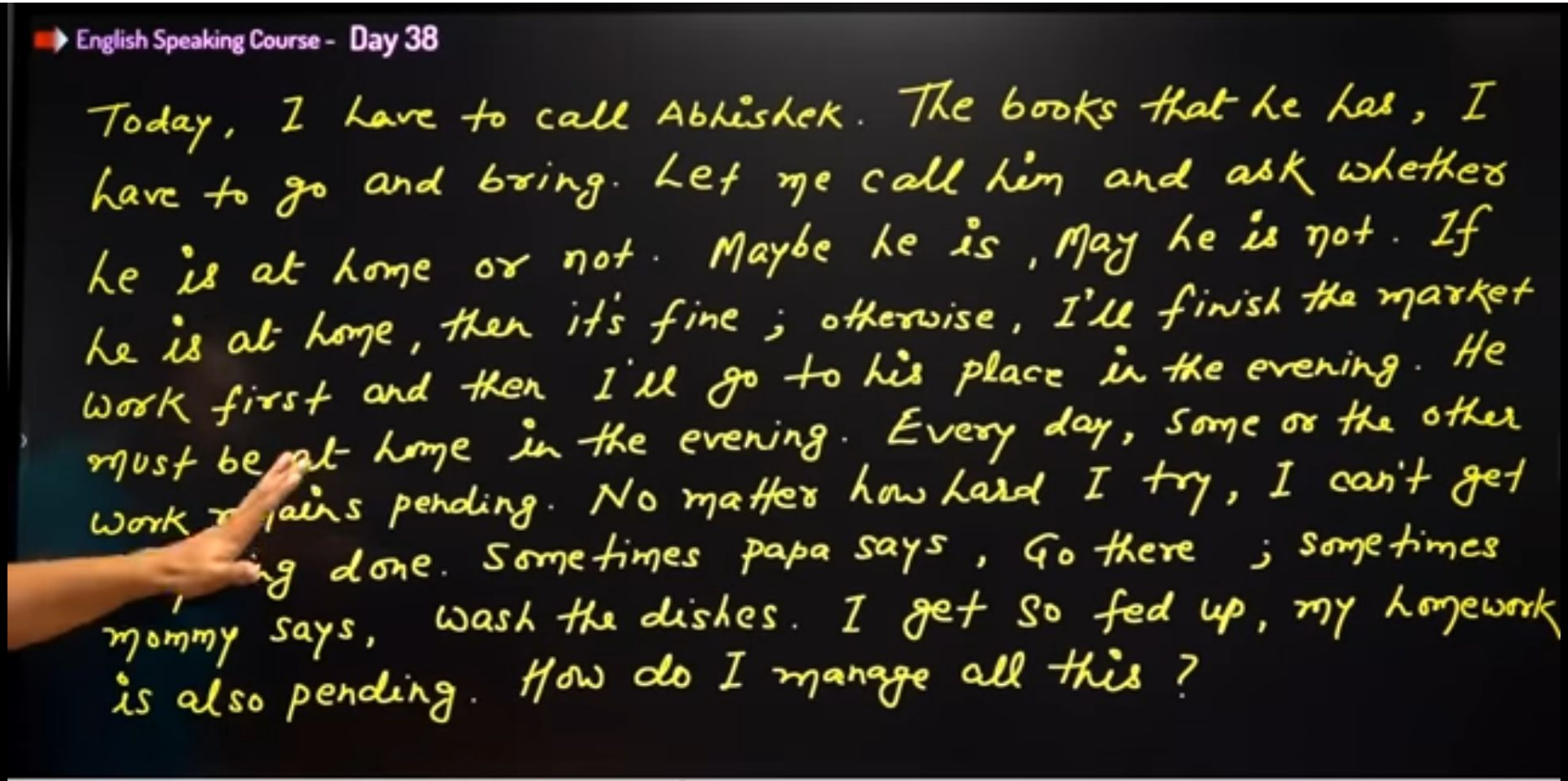




HOMEWORK



आज मुझे अभिषेक को कॉल करना है। उसके पास जो किताबें हैं वो लेने जाना है। फोन करके पूछ लेता हूँ कि वो घर पर है भी या नहीं। क्या पता हो, क्या पता न हो। अगर होगा तो ठीक है, वरना मार्केट का काम पहले निपटा लूँगा, फिर शाम को उसके यहाँ चला जाऊँगा। शाम को तो वो घर पर होगा ही होगा। रोज़ रोज़ कोई न कोई काम पैन्डिंग रह ही जाता है। कितनी भी कोशिश कर लूँ, हर काम पूरा नहीं हो पाता। कभी पापा कह देते हैं, उधर जा; कभी मम्मी कह देती हैं, बर्तन धो दे। मैं बहुत तंग आ जाता हूँ, स्कूल का होमवर्क भी पैंन्डिंग है। कैसे मैनेज करूँ इतनी सारी चीज़ें?



"Spoken English Guru" की सभी Books, कोर्स की Pendrive और Online Courses को Buy करने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 40

Use of "EVEN"

Conjunctions

➡ उसने भी मुझे नहीं बताया। (Usne bhi mujhe nahi bataya.)

Even, he did not tell me.

➡ उसने मुझे बताया भी नहीं। (Usne mujhe bataya bhi nahi.)

He did not tell me. → even

➡ हमने भी ये फिल्म नहीं देखी है। (Hamne bhi ye film nahi dekhi hai.)

Even, we have not seen (watched) this movie.

➡ हमने ये फिल्म देखी भी नहीं है। (Hamne ye film dekhi bhi nahi hai.)

We have not even seen this movie.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और Lesson-wise Videos' Pendrive के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 40

Conjunctions

- इस बच्चे ने अपना होमवर्क तक नहीं किया है।
  (Is bachche ne apna homework tak nahi kiya hai.)
  This child has not even done his homework.

- उसने मुझे कॉल तक नहीं किया। (Usne mujhe call tak nahi kiya.)
  He didn't even call me.

- उन दोनों ने खाना तक नहीं खाया था। (Un dono ne khana tak nahi khaya tha.)
  They both had not even eaten the food.
  had

- आपके पास बहुत पैसा है, जबकि उसके पास खाना भी नहीं है।
  (Aapke paas bahut paisa hai, jabki uske paas khana bhi nahi hai.)
  You have a lot of money, whereas/while he does not even have food.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और Lesson-wise Videos' Pendrive के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 40

कि (Ki) - That vs If vs Whether vs <WH>

Conjunctions

- मैं जानता हूँ कि आप कल आओगे। (Main janta hoon ki aap kal aaoge.)
  I know that you will come tomorrow.
- मैं नहीं जानता कि आप कल आओगे। (Main nahi janta ki aap kal aaoge.)
  I don't know if you will come tomorrow.
- मैं नहीं जानता कि आप कल आओगे या नहीं। (Main nahi janta ki aap kal aaoge ya nahi.)
  I don't know whether you will come tomorrow or not.
- मैं जानता हूँ कि कल कौन आयेगा। (Main janta hoon ki kal kaun aayega.)
  I know ~~that~~ who will come tomorrow.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और Lesson-wise Videos' Pendrive के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

Day 40

Conjunctions

- मैं जानता हूँ कि वो क्या सोच रहा है। (Main janta hoon ki vo kya soch raha hai.)

  I know what is he thinking.

- मैं जानता हूँ कि आप क्या सोच रहे हैं। (Main janta hoon ki aap kya soch rahe hain.)

  I know what you are thinking.

- मैं जानता था कि वो क्या सोच रहा है। (Main janta tha ki vo kya soch raha hai.)

  I knew what he is (was) thinking.

- जानता था कि आप क्या सोच रहे हैं। (Main janta tha ki aap kya soch rahe hain.)

  I knew what you were thinking.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और Lesson-wise Videos' Pendrive के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

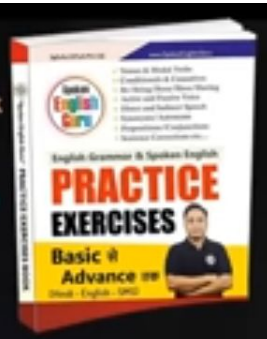
- उसने मुझे सिखाया था कि लड़ते कैसे हैं। (Usne mujhe sikhaya tha ki ladte kaise hain.)
  He had taught me how to fight.
- मैं आपसे पूछ रहा हूँ कि ये करना कैसे है। (Main apse poochh rha hu ki ye krna kaise hai.)
  I am asking you how to do it.
- मैं आपसे पूछ रहा हूँ कि जाना कहाँ है। (Main aapse pooch raha hoon ki jana kahaan hai.)
  I am asking you where to go.
- मैंने तुम्हें पूछा तक नहीं कि तुम कैसे हो। (Maine tumhe poochha tak nhi ki tum kaise ho.)
  I did not even ask you how you are. were

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और Lesson-wise Videos' Pendrive के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 43 - Conditionals Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 15



1

अगर कुत्तों को प्यार करो, तो वे अपनी पूँछ हिलाते हैं।

(Agar kutton ko pyar karo, to ve apni poonch hilate hain.)

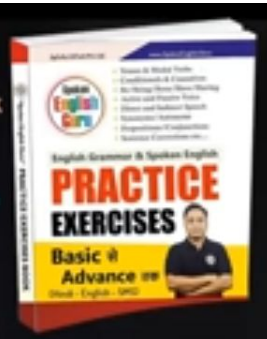
If we love the dogs, they move their tails.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 43 - Conditionals Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 15



2

Type 2

अगर हम अमेरिका में रहते, तो मैं इंग्लिश बोलता।

(Agar hum America me rehte, to main English bolta.)

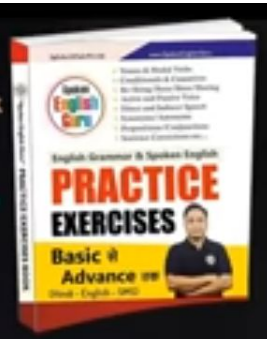
If we lived in America, I would speak English.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 43 - Conditionals Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 15



2

Type 2

अगर हम अमेरिका में रहते, तो मैं इंग्लिश बोलता। पाता

(Agar hum America me rehte, to main English bolta.)

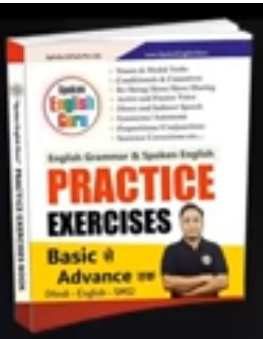
If we lived in America, I would speak English.
could

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 43 - Conditionals Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 15



3

अगर हम अमेरिका में रहते, तो मैं इंग्लिश बोल रहा होता।

(Agar hum America me rehte, to main English bol raha hota.)

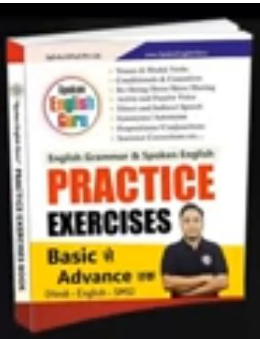
If we lived in America, I would be speaking English.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 43 - Conditionals Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 15



4

Type 3

अगर पेपर थोड़ा और आसान आता, तो मेरे नम्बर अच्छे आ गये होते।
होता

(Agar paper thoda or aasan aata, to mere number achchhe aa gaye hote.)

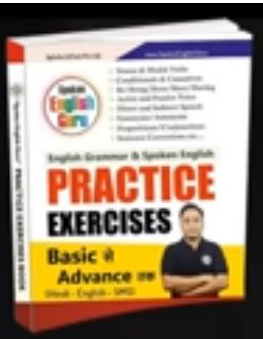
If the paper had been a little easier, I would have scored better.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 43 - Conditionals Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 15



4

Type 3

अगर पेपर थोड़ा और आसान आता, तो मेरे नम्बर अच्छे आ गये होते।

होता

(Agar paper thoda or aasan aata, to mere number achchhe aa gaye hote.)

If the paper ~~had~~ been a little easier, I would have scored better.

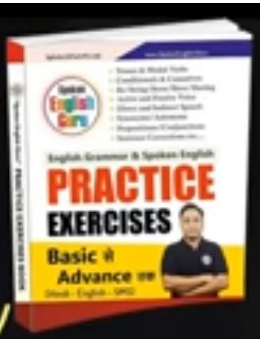
Had

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 43 - Conditionals Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 15



5

Type 2

रहा होता।

अगर मैं करोड़पति होता, तो मैं गरीबों की मदद कर पाता।

(Agar main crorepati hota, to main garibon ki madad kar pata.)

If I were a millionaire, I could help the poor.

would

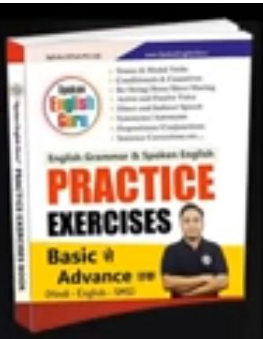
would be helping

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 43 - Conditionals Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 15



6

Type 3

अगर मैं करोड़पति नहीं होता, तो मैं गरीबों की मदद कैसे कर पाता?

(Agar main crorepati nahi hota, to main garibon ki madad kaise kar pata?)

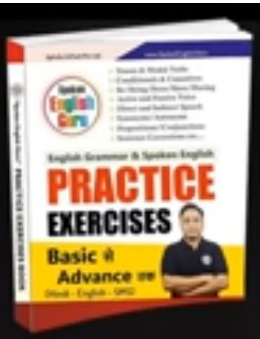
If I had not been a millionaire, how could I have helped the poor?

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 43 - Conditionals Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 15



7

Type 3

अगर उस दिन मम्मी ने हाँ कहा होता, तो मैं खेलने जा सकता था।

(Agar us din mummy nai han kaha hota, to main khelne jaa sakta thaa.)

If Mummy had said Yes that day, I could have gone to play.

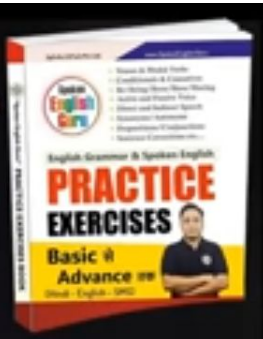
Had

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 43 - Conditionals Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 15



8

Type 2

अगर मम्मी हाँ कह देती, तो मैं खेलने जा पाता।

(Agar mummy haan kah deti, to main khelne ja pata.)

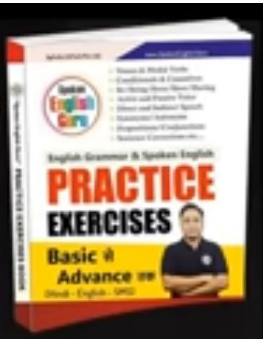
If Mummy said yes, I could go to play.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 43 - Conditionals Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 15



9

Type 3

अगर ड्राइवर तेज़ स्पीड से गाड़ी नहीं चला रहा होता तो हादसा नहीं होता।

(Agar driver tez speed se gaadi nahi chala raha hota to haadsa nahi hota.)

If the driver ~~had~~ not been driving the car at high speed, the accident would not have happened.

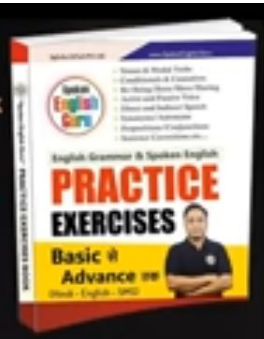
Had

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 43 - Conditionals Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 15



10

Type 3

अगर विराट अभी तक खेल रहा होता, तो उसका शतक हो चुका होता।

(Agar Virat abhi tak khel raha hota, to uska shatak ho chukaa hota.)

If Virat had been playing even now, he would have scored a century.

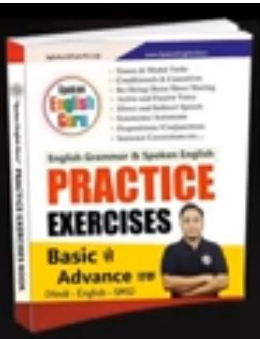
still

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 43 - Conditionals Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 15



10

Type 3

अगर विराट अभी तक खेल रहा होता, तो उसका शतक हो चुका होता।

(Agar Virat abhi tak khel raha hota, to uska shatak ho chukaa hota.)

If Virat had been playing even now, he would have scored a century.

still
Yet

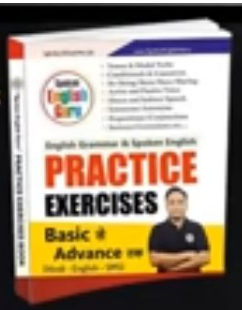
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



1

उसके आते ही सब हँसने लगे।

(Uske aate hi sab hasne lage.)

As soon as he came, all started laughing.

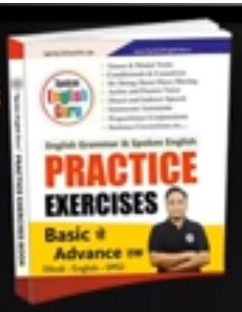
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



1

उसके आते ही सब हँसने लगे।

(Uske aate hi sab hasne lage.)

As soon as he came, all started laughing.

The moment

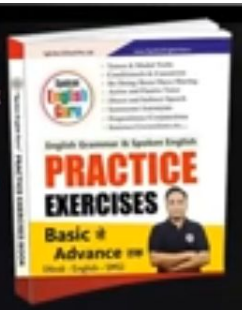
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



1

उसके आते ही सब हँसने लगे।

(Uske aate hi sab hasne lage.)

As soon as he came, all started laughing.
The moment began to laugh.

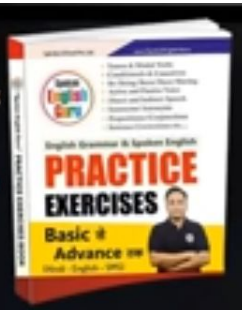
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



2

वो मेरा ही नहीं तेरा भी दोस्त है।

(Vo mera hi nahi tera bhi dost hai.)

He is not only my friend but also yours. Your friend.

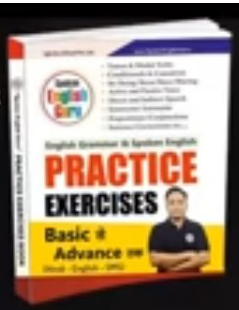
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



3

जब तक तुम मेरी इज़्ज़त करोगे, मैं भी करूँगा।

(Jab tak tum meri izzat karoge, main bhi karunga.)

As long as you respect me, I will too.

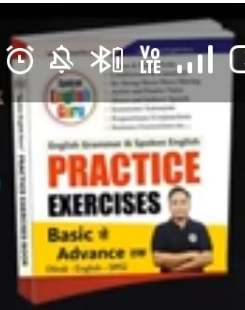
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



3

जब तक तुम मेरी इज़्ज़त करोगे, मैं भी करूँगा।

(Jab tak tum meri izzat karoge, main bhi karunga.)

As long as you respect me, I will too.
also
as well
even I will.

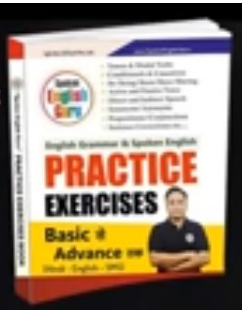
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru
/ SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial
/ SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



4

जब तक वो आया, मैं जा चुका था।

(Jab tak vo aaya , main jaa chuka tha.)

By the time he came, I had left.

Till ✗

As long ✗

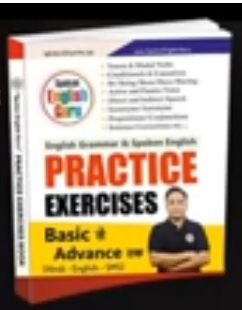
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



5

जब तक आप हाँ नहीं कहेंगे, कोई नहीं हिलेगा।

(Jab tak aap han nahi kahenge, koi nahi hilega.)

Till / Until / Till the time

Until you say yes, nobody will move.

Till you don't say yes, nobody will move.

Till the time

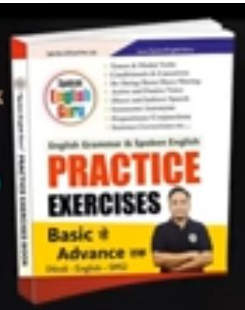
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



6

That , if , whether , WH Family

मैं कह नहीं सकता कि उसके पास क्या है। → What does he have?

(Main kah nahi sakta ki uske paas kya hai.)

✓ I can't say what he has.

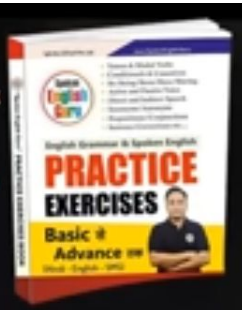
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



7

Lest ____ Should

सबको इज़्ज़त दो, ऐसा न हो तुम्हें भी कोई इज़्ज़त न दे।

(Sabko izzat do aisa na ho tumhe bhi koi izzat na de.)

Respect everyone, lest nobody should respect you.

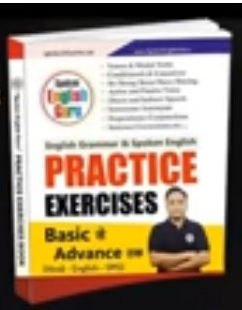
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



8

As many pencils as

उनमें से किसी के पास भी मेरे जितनी पेन्सिलें नहीं थी।

(Unme se kisi ke pass bhi mere jitni pencile nahi thi.)

None of them had as many pencils as I had.

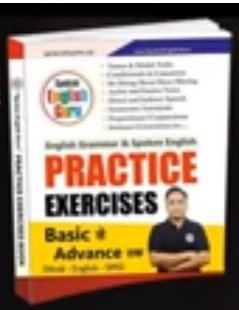
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



9

जहाँ तक मुझे पता है वो स्वभाव का अच्छा है।

(Jaha tak mujhe pata hai vo saobhav ka achha hai.)

As far as I know, he is good by nature.

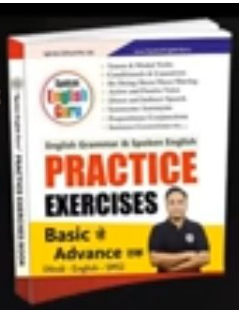
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



10

Hardly ..... when
No sooner had ..... than

मैंने ये किताब खोली ही थी कि मुझे अपना बचपन याद आ गया।

(Maine ye kitab kholi hi thi ki mujhe apna bachpan yaad aa gaya.)

I had hardly opened this book when I remembered my childhood.
No sooner had I opened this book than I remembered my childhood.
As soon as

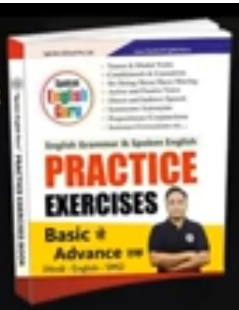
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



10

Hardly ..... when
No sooner had ..... than

मैंने ये किताब खोली ही थी कि मुझे अपना बचपन याद आ गया।

(Maine ye kitab kholi hi thi ki mujhe apna bachpan yaad aa gaya.)

I had hardly opened this book when I remembered my childhood.
No sooner had I opened this book than I remembered my childhood.
As soon as I opened this book, I remembered my childhood.

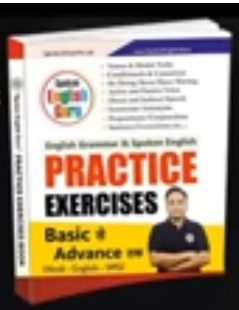
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



11

Lest

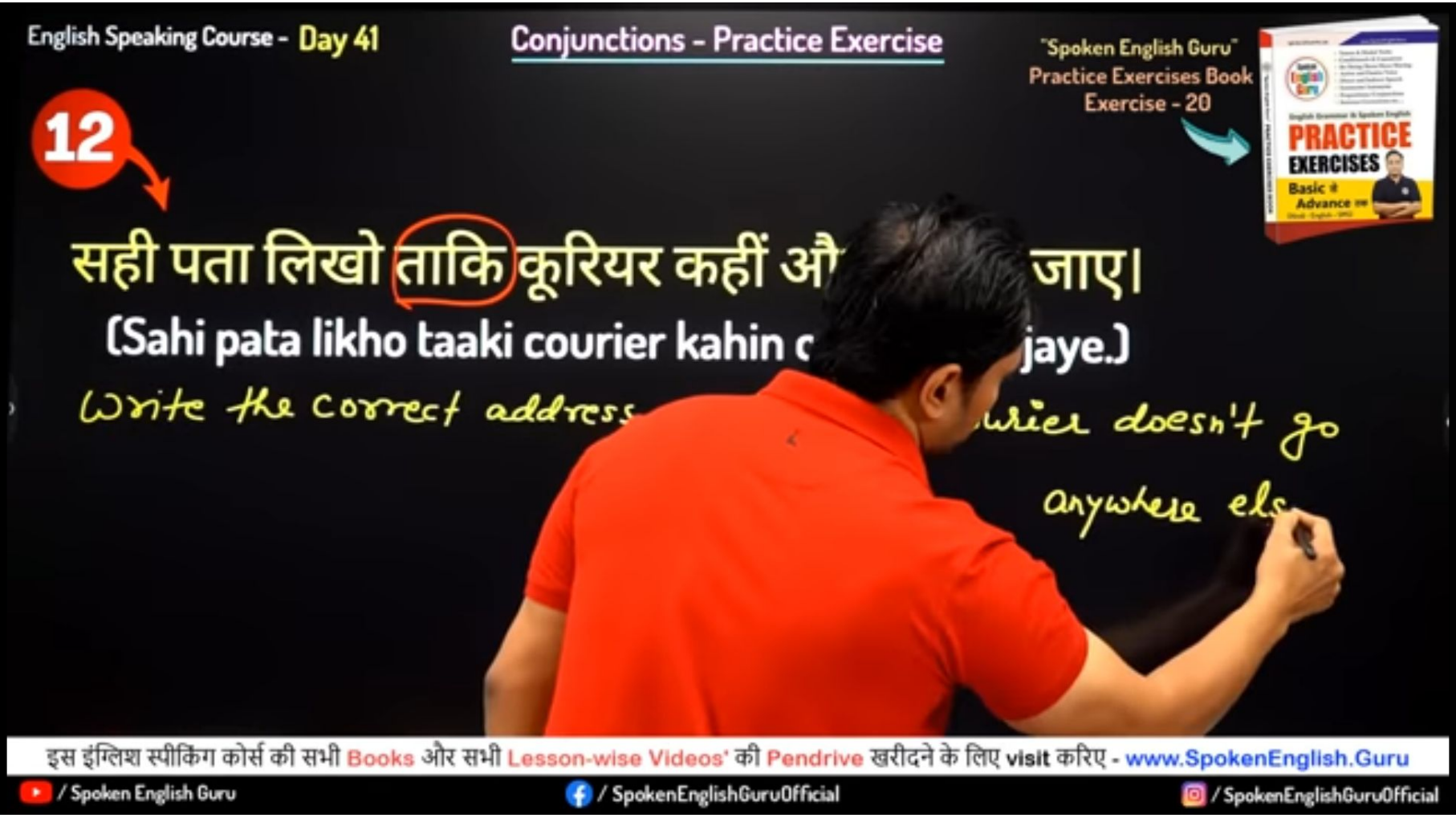
सही पता लिखो कहीं ऐसा न हो कि कूरियर कहीं और चला जाए।

(Sahi pata likho kaheen aisa na ho ki courier kahin or chala jaye.)

Write the correct address lest the courier should go somewhere else.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

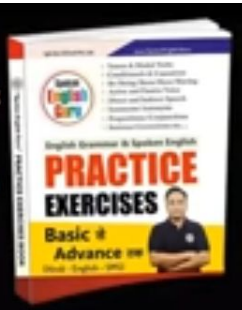
/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial


English Speaking Course - Day 41
Conjunctions - Practice Exercise
"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20
PRACTICE
EXERCISES
Basic से
Advance तक
12
सही पता लिखो ताकि कूरियर कहीं औ जाए।
(Sahi pata likho taaki courier kahin c jaye.)
Write the correct address
urier doesn't go
anywhere els
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru
/ Spoken English Guru
/ SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial
/ SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



12

सही पता लिखो ताकि कहीं और न चला जाए।

(Sahi pata likho ta kahin or na chala jaye.)

Write the cor so that the courier doesn't go anywhere else.

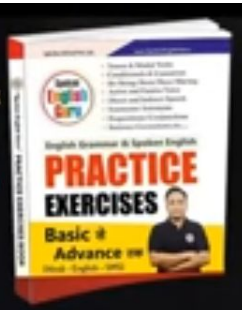
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



13

otherwise / or else

सही पता लिखो नहीं तो कूरियर कहीं और जा सकता है।

(Sahi pata likho nahi to courier kahin or ja sakta hai.)

Write the correct address otherwise the courier may go

orelse somewhere else.

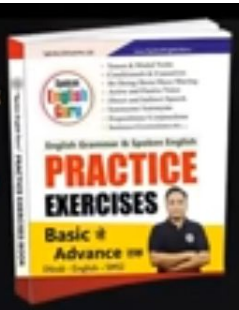
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



14

yet / As yet / so far / till now

हमने अभी तक किसी को नहीं बुलाया है।

(Hamne abhi tak kisi ko nahi bulaya hai.)

We have not invited anyone yet.

as yet
so far
till now

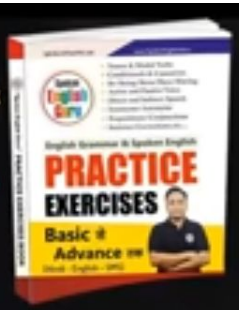
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



15

जो मैंने पिया वो पानी नहीं कुछ और था।

वाल्के

(Jo maine piya wo paani nahi kuch aur tha.)

What I drank was not water but something else.

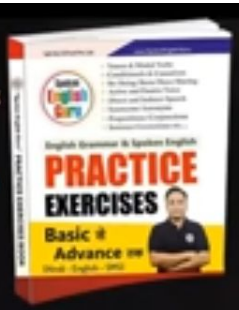
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



16

इसी तरह मैं भी बड़ा हुआ।

(Isi tarah main bhi bada hua.)

That's how even I grew up.

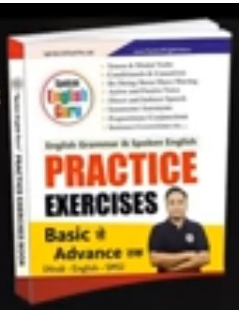
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



16

इसी तरह मैं भी बड़ा हुआ।

(Isi tarah main bhi bada hua.)

That's how even I grew up.

also

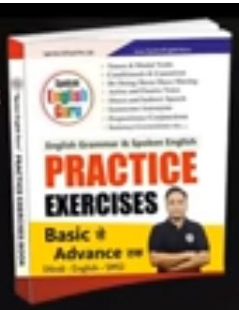
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



16

इसी तरह मैं भी बड़ा हुआ।

(Isi tarah main bhi bada hua.)

That's how even I grew up.

also

too

as well

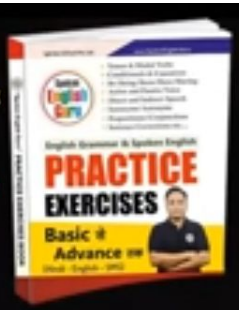
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



17

मैं न उसे कॉल कर पाया न उसे आखिरी वक्त पे देख पाया।

(Main na use call kar paya na use aakhri wakt pe dekh paya.)

I could neither call him nor see him at the last time.

Neither I could call him nor I could see him at the last moment.

moment

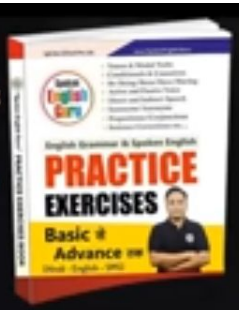
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



18

but

मैं तुम्हारे घर के अलावा कहीं भी जा सकता हूँ।

(Main tumhare ghar ke alawa kahin bhi jaa sakta hoon.)

I can go anywhere but not your home.

except

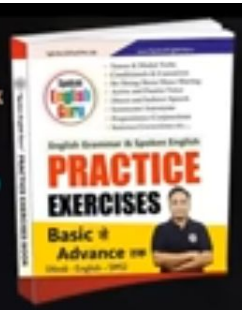
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



19

Either, too, as well, ~~even~~

क्या तुम भी वहाँ नहीं थे ?

(Kya tum bhi vahan nahi the?)

Were you not there either ?

too ?

as well ?

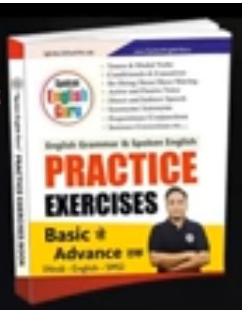
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



20

उसने ढंग से नहीं पढ़ा इसीलिए वो परीक्षा में फेल हो गया।

(Usne dhang se nahi pada isiliye vo pareeksha me fail ho gaya.)

He did not study well that's why he failed the exam.

So
hence
that's the reason
therefore

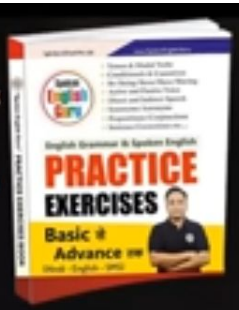
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



21

एक टीचर होने के नाते, मेरा फर्ज़ है कि मैं अपने स्टूडेंन्ट्स को सही इंग्लिश सिखाऊँ।

(Ek teacher hone ke naate mera farz hai ki main apne students ko sahi English sikhaun.)

As a teacher, it's my duty that I teach my students correct English.

Being

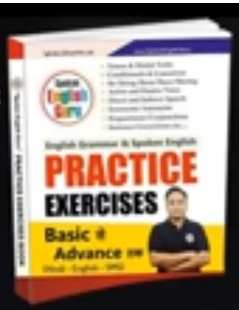
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



22

वो साथ ही साथ उसके तीन भाई अमेरिका जा रहे हैं।

(Vo sath hi sath uske teen bhaee America jaa rahe hain.)

He as well as his three brothers is going to America.

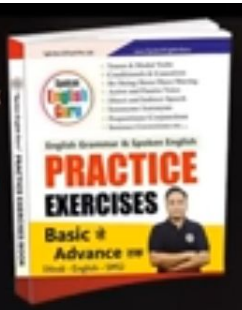
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



23

क्या तुम मेरी उम्र के हो ?

(Kya tum meri umr ke ho?)

✓ Are you as old as I am ?

✓ Are you my age ?

~~of~~

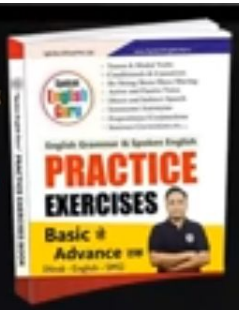
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



24

हालाँकि मेरे पास पैसे नहीं हैं, पर इसके बावजूद मैं तुम्हारी मदद करुँगा।

(Halanki mere pass paise nahi hain, par iske bawjood main tumhari madad karunga.)

Although I don't have money, still I will help you.

Though
Even if
Even though

even then
then also
nevertheless
however / yet

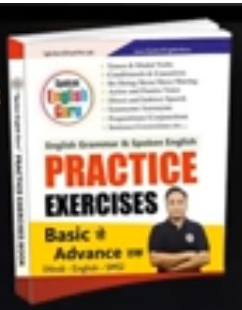
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



25

Such

ऐसी कई कहानियाँ मैं सुन चुका हूँ।

(Aisi kaee kahaniyan main sun chuka hun.)

I have heard many such stories.

many stories of this kind.

type.

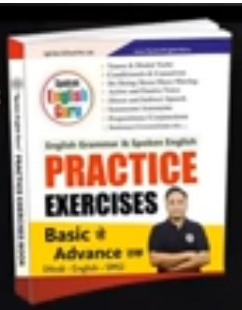
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



26

as if . as though

तुम तो मुझे ऐसे डाँट रहे हो जैसे कि तुम मेरे बॉस हो।

(Tum to mujhe aise daant rahe ho jaise ki tum mere boss ho.)

You are scolding me as if you are my boss.

as though

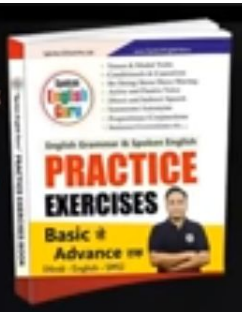
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



27

वो नहीं जा पाया। न मैं जा पाया।

(Vo nahi jaa paaya. Na main jaa paaya.)

He could not go. Neither could I.

Nor

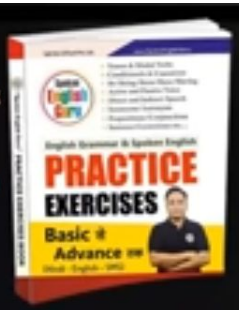
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



28

मैंने तुमसे पूछा। उसने भी।

(Maine tumse poocha. Usne bhi.)

I asked you. So did he.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru" Practice Exercises Book Exercise - 20



29

provided, But only if, But only when

मैं किताब वापस कर दूँगा पर तब जब आप मुझ पर पैनल्टी न लगाओ।

(Main kitaab vapas kar dunga par tab jab aap mujh par penalty na lagao.)

I will return the book provided you don't impose a penalty on me.

but only if

but only when

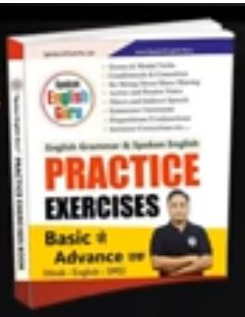
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



30

यही तो तुम उसे समझा रहे थे।

(Yahi to tum use samjha rahe the.)

That's what you were making him understand.
This is what

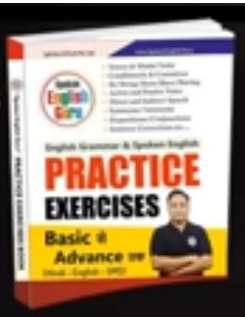
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



31

वही लड़का तो मैंने वहाँ देखा।

(Vahi ladka to maine vahan dekha.)

That's the boy I saw there.

I saw there the same boy.

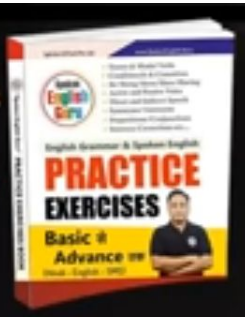
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



32

That's how

मैंने ऐसे ही तो क्रिकेट खेलना सीखा।

(Maine aise hi to cricket khelna seekha.)

That's how I learned to play cricket.

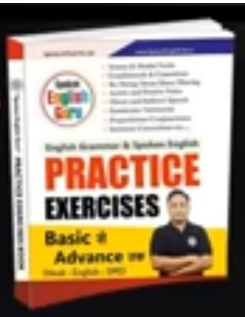
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



33

whereas / while

मेरे पास 10 ₹ हैं जबकि तुम्हारे पास 50 ₹।

(Mere pass 10 ₹ hai jabki tumhaare pass 50 ₹.)

I have ₹10 whereas you have ₹50.

I have ₹10 while you have ₹50.

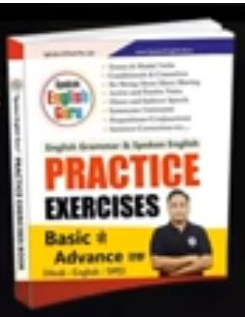
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



34

still / Even now

क्या तुम्हारा भाई अभी भी खेलता है ?

(Kya tumhaara bhaee abhi bhi khelta hai?)

Does your brother still play ?

Does your brother play even now ?

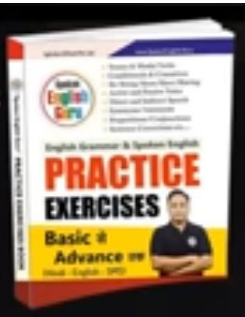
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



35

whether ... or

चाहे पंकज खेले या न खेले, तुम्हें खेलना चाहिए।

(Chahe Pankaj khele ya na khele, tumhe khelna chahiye.)

whether Pankaj plays or not, you should play.

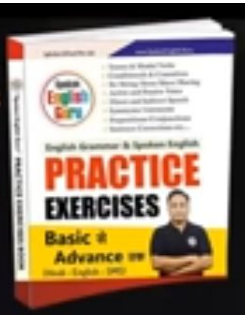
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



36

whether ... or

हमें नहीं पता कि वो वहाँ जाता है या कहीं और।

(Hume nahi pata ki vo vahan jaata hai ya kahi aur.)

We have no idea whether he goes there or somewhere else.

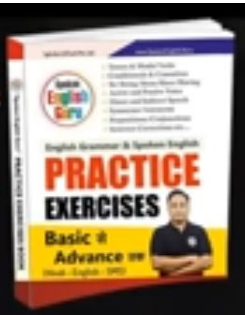
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



37

मैं पहुँचा ही था कि वो दोनों आ गये।

(Main pahuncha hi tha ki vo dono aa gye.)

I had hardly reached when they both came.

No sooner had I reached than they both came.

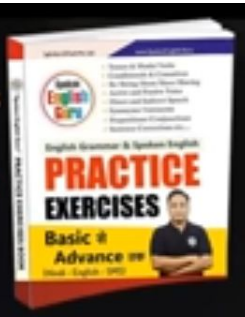
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



37

मैं पहुँचा ही था कि वो दोनों आ गये।

(Main pahuncha hi tha ki vo dono aa gye.)

I had hardly reached when they both came.

No sooner had I reached than they both came.

As soon as I reached, they both came.

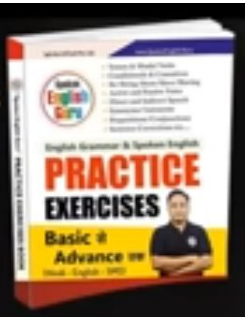
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



37

मैं पहुँचा ही था कि वो दोनों आ गये।

(Main pahuncha hi tha ki vo dono aa gye.)

I had hardly reached when they both came.

No sooner had I reached than they both came.

As soon as I reached, they both came.

The moment

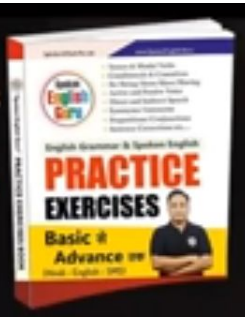
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



38

अब तक का स्कोर क्या है?

(Ab tak ka score kya hai?)

What's the score so far?

by now

till now

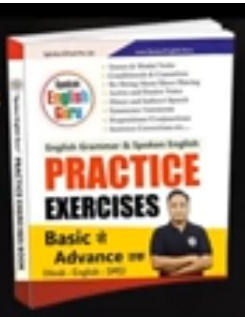
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



39

भले ही ट्रेन 2 घंटे लेट आये, हमें आज जाना है।

(Bhale hi train 2 ghante late aaye, hame aaj jana hai.)

Even if the train comes late by 2 hrs, we have to go today.

Even though

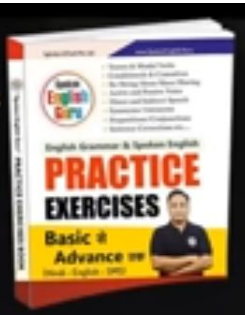
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



40

even

उसने मेरा हालचाल तक नहीं पूछा।

(Usne mera halchal tak nahi poochha.)

He didn't even ask about my condition.

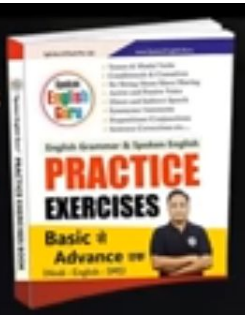
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 41

Conjunctions - Practice Exercise

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Exercise - 20



40

even

उसने मेरा हालचाल तक नहीं पूछा।

(Usne mera halchal tak nahi poochha.)

- He didn't even ask about my condition.
- He didn't even ask me how I was.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 45

Let (करने देना)

Verb

Causative Verb

V_1	V_2	V_3	V_4
Let	Let	Let	Letting

- वो मुझे खेलने देता है। → Main verb → Let , Secondary verb → Play
  (Wo mujhe khelne deta hai.)
- रवि ने हमें जाने दिया।
  (Ravi ne hame jaane diya.)
- तुम उसे मुझसे मिलने देते हो।
  (Usne bhi mujhe nahi bataya.)

He lets me play.

He does not let me play.

Why Does he let me play?

When

not

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और Lesson-wise Videos' Pendrive के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 45

Let (करने देना)

Verb

Causative Verb

V_1	V_2	V_3	V_4
Let	Let	Let	Letting

वो मुझे खेलने देता है।
(Wo mujhe khelne deta hai.)

रवि ने हमें जाने दिया।
(Ravi ne hame jaane diya.)

→ Main verb → let, secondary verb → go

✓ Ravi let us go.
✓ Ravi did not let us go.
✓ Did Ravi let us go?

तुम उसे मुझसे मिलने देते हो।
(Usne bhi mujhe nahi bataya.)

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और Lesson-wise Videos' Pendrive के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 45

Let (करने देना)

Verb

Causative Verb

V_1	V_2	V_3	V_4
Let	Let	Let	Letting

- वो मुझे खेलने देता है।
  (Wo mujhe khelne deta hai.)
- रवि ने हमें जाने दिया।
  (Ravi ne hamein jaane diya.)
- तुम उसे मुझसे मिलने देते हो।
  (Usne bhi mujhe nahi bataya.)

Main verb → let, Secondary verb → meet

- You let him meet me.
- You do not let him meet me.
- Do you let him meet me ?
  ↓
  not

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और Lesson-wise Videos' Pendrive के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 45

आप मुझे बोलने क्यों नहीं दे रहे हो? → Why are you not letting me speak?
(Aap mujhe bolne kyon nahi de rahe ho?

हमें उसे ये काम करने देना चाहिए। We should let him do this work.
(Hame use ye kaam karne dena chahie.)

तुम उस बच्चे को क्लास में घुसने दे सकते थे। You could have let that kid enter in the class.
(Tum us bachche ko class me ghusne de sakte the.)

मैं तुम्हें फुटबॉल खेलने जाने दे सकता हूँ पर केवल शाम को।
(Main tumhe football khelne jaane de sakta hoon par keval shaam ko.)
I can let you go to play football but only in the evening.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और Lesson-wise Videos' Pendrive के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 45

Imperative Sentences (Order / Request / Advice)

- वहाँ जाओ। (Vahaan jao.) ⟶ Go there. / Please go there.
- रवि से बात करो। (Ravi se baat karo.) → Talk to Ravi. / Speak with Ravi.
- अब उसे मत डाँटना। (Ab use mat daantna.) → Don't scold him now.
- नीले पैन से मत लिखो। (Neele pen se mat likho.) → Don't write with a blue pen.
- ये मत करो। (Ye mat karo.) → Don't do it.
- उसे मत जाने दो। (Use mat jaane do.) → Let him go. / Don't let him go.
- हमें सोचने दो। (Hame sochne do.) → let us think.
- रवि को मत खेलने दो। (Ravi ko mat khelne do.) → Don't let Ravi play.
- उसे हिलने मत देना। (Use hilne mat dena.) → Don't let him move. / Let him not move.

Let him not go.

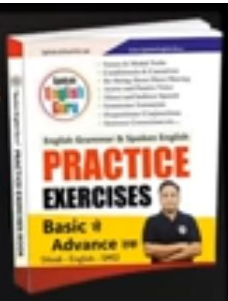
Let Ravi not play.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और Lesson-wise Videos' Pendrive के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 46

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Lesson - 21 & 22



1

पानी पीलो, हिचकी बंद हो जाएगी।

(Paani peelo, hichki band ho jaegi.)

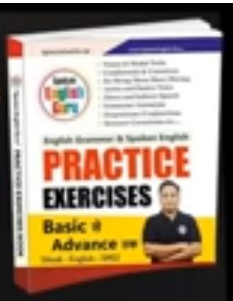
Drink water, hiccups will stop.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 46

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Lesson - 21 & 22



Adj. → Low Lower Lowest

Verb → Lower Lowered Lowered

2

टी.वी. की आवाज़ कम करो, मुझे सोना है।

(TV ki aawaz kam karo, mujhe sona hai.)

Lower the volume of the TV, I have to sleep.

Reduce

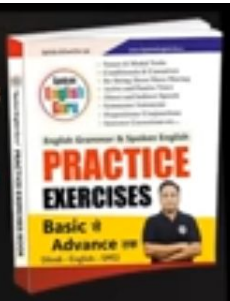
Decrease

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 46

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Lesson - 21 & 22



3

मुझे पता लगाने दो कि वो लड़का कौन है।

(Mujhe pata lagane do ki vo ladka kaun hai.)

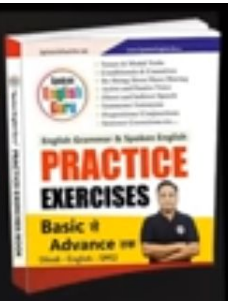
✓ Let me find out ~~that~~ who that boy is .

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 46

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Lesson - 21 & 22



4

मैं उसे अपने साथ खेलने देता था।

(Main use apne sath khelne deta tha.)

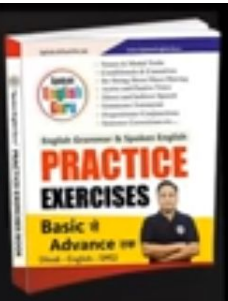
I used to / would let him play with me.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 46

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Lesson - 21 & 22



4

उन दिनों

मैं उसे अपने साथ खेलने देता था।

(Main use apne sath khelne deta tha.)

I used to let him play with me.

would

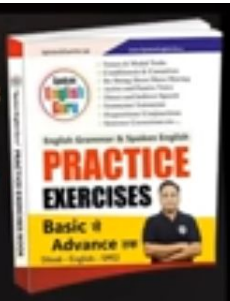
I let him play with me those days.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 46

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Lesson - 21 & 22



5

उसे बाहर मत निकलने देना।

(Use bahar mat nikalne dena.)

Let him not go out.

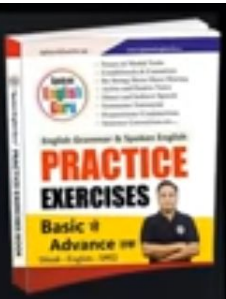
Don't let him go out.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 46

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Lesson - 21 & 22



6 मैंने उसे खेलने दिया।

(Main use khelne diya.)

I let him play.

7 मैं उसे खेलने देता हूँ।

(Main use khelne deta hoon.)

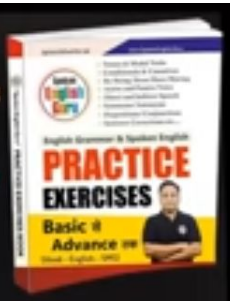
He / She I lets him play.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 46

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Lesson - 21 & 22



8

तुम मुझे शायद न जाने दो।

(Tum mujhe shayad na jane do.)

You will not let me go.

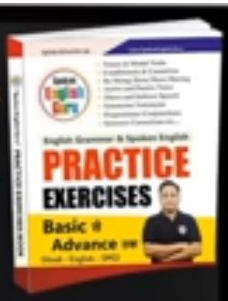
- may
- might
- ~~Could~~

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 46

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Lesson - 21 & 22



9

वो मुझे किसी के साथ काम नहीं करने दे रहा है।

(Vo mujhe kisi ke sath kaam nahi karne de raha hai.)

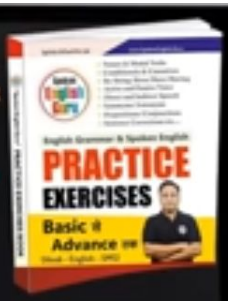
He is not letting me work with anyone.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 46

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Lesson - 21 & 22



9

वो मुझे किसी के साथ काम नहीं करने दे रहा है।

(Vo mujhe kisi ke sath kaam nahi karne de raha hai.)

He is not letting me work with anyone.

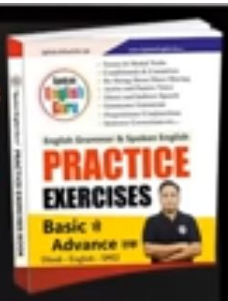
allowing me to work

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 46

"Spoken English Guru"
Practice Exercises Book
Lesson - 21 & 22



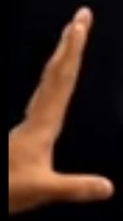
10

Provided
but only when
but only if

मैं तुम्हें गाने सुनने दूँगा पर तब जब तुम मुझे ₹100 दो।

(Main tumhe gaane sunne dunga par tab jab tum mujhe ₹100 do.)

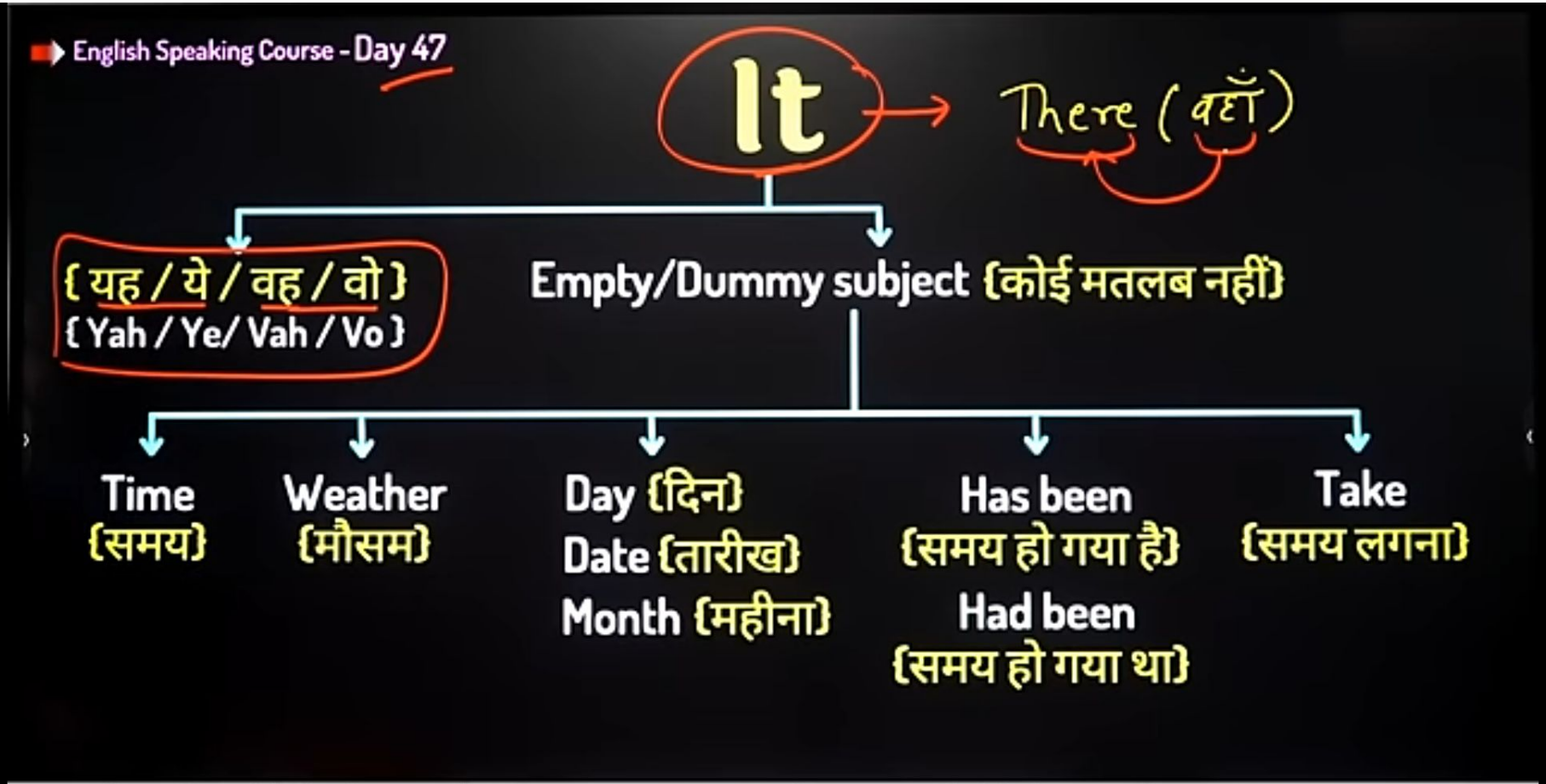
I will let you listen to the songs provided you give me ₹100.



इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 47



इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 47

It { यह / ये / वह / वो }

यह एक पैन्सिल है।
This is a pencil. / It is a pencil.

वह एक पैन्सिल है।
That is a pencil. / It is a pencil.

ये राहुल है।
This is Rahul. / It is Rahul. / He is Rahul.

वो राहुल है।
That is Rahul. / It is Rahul. / He is Rahul.

वह/वो

यह एक तोता है।
This is a parrot. / It is a parrot.

वह एक तोता है।
That is a parrot. / It is a parrot.

Living being - सजीव
Non-Living things - निर्जीव

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 47

It {यह / ये / वह / वो}

यह एक बिल्ली है। इसकी आँखें सफेद हैं।

/ It is a cat. Its eyes are white.

एक बिल्ली है। उसकी आँखें सफेद हैं।

It / It is a cat. Its eyes are white.

यह रवि है। इसके पापा वैज्ञानिक हैं।

This / It / He is Ravi. His father is a scientist.

एक साधारण सी कुर्सी है। इसकी खूबसूरती क्या है?

This / It is a simple chair. What is its beauty?

Possessive

I — My

He — his

It's → It is / It has

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 47

Time {समय}



इतने बजकर इतने मिनट - Minute + Past + Hour

इतने बजने में इतने मिनट - Minute + to + Hour

It's
It is

- 2 बजकर 15 मिनट - 15 mins past 2 → Quarter past two
- 2 बजकर 30 मिनट - 30 past 2 → Half past two
- 2 बजकर 15 मिनट - 15 to 2 → Quarter to two
- 2 बजने में 30 मिनट - 30 to 2 → Half to two
- 2 बजने में 12 मिनट 28 सेकन्ड - 12 mins and 28 seconds to two

15 Minutes - Quarter
30 Minutes - Half

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 47

It का प्रयोग Subject की तरह TIME (समय) बताते हुए

- 2 बजने में 12 मिनट हैं। (2 bajne me 12 minute hain.)

  It's 12 to 2. What's the time by your watch?

- मेरी घड़ी में 2 बजने में 15 मिनट हैं। (Meri ghadi me 2 bajne me 15 minute hain.)

  It's quarter to 2 by my watch.

- 10 बजने में 15 मिनट बचे हैं। (10 bajne me 15 minute bache hain.)

  It's ~~quarter~~ 15 mins left to 10.

- साढ़े दस हो गये हैं। (Saade 10 ho gaye hain.)

  It's half past 10.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 47

It का प्रयोग Subject की तरह – Rain, Hail, Snow के साथ

1. Rain - Rained - Rained
2. Hail - Hailed - Hailed
3. Snow - Snowed - Snowed

→ It is raining today.

→ It rains there every day.

→ It will snow ~~there~~ tomorrow.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 47

It का प्रयोग Subject की तरह – Rain, Hail, Snow के साथ

- वहाँ बारिश हो रही है। (Vahaan barish ho rahi hai.)
  It is raining there.
- कल देहरादून में ओले पड़ेंगे। (Kal Dehradun me ole padenge.)
  It will hail in Dehradun tomorrow.
- जनवरी में मसूरी में बर्फ पड़ती है। (January me mussoorie me barf padti hai.)
  It snows in Mussoorie in January.
- पिछले साल बहुत बारिश हुई थी। (Pichhle saal bahut barish hui thi.)
  It had rained a lot last year.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

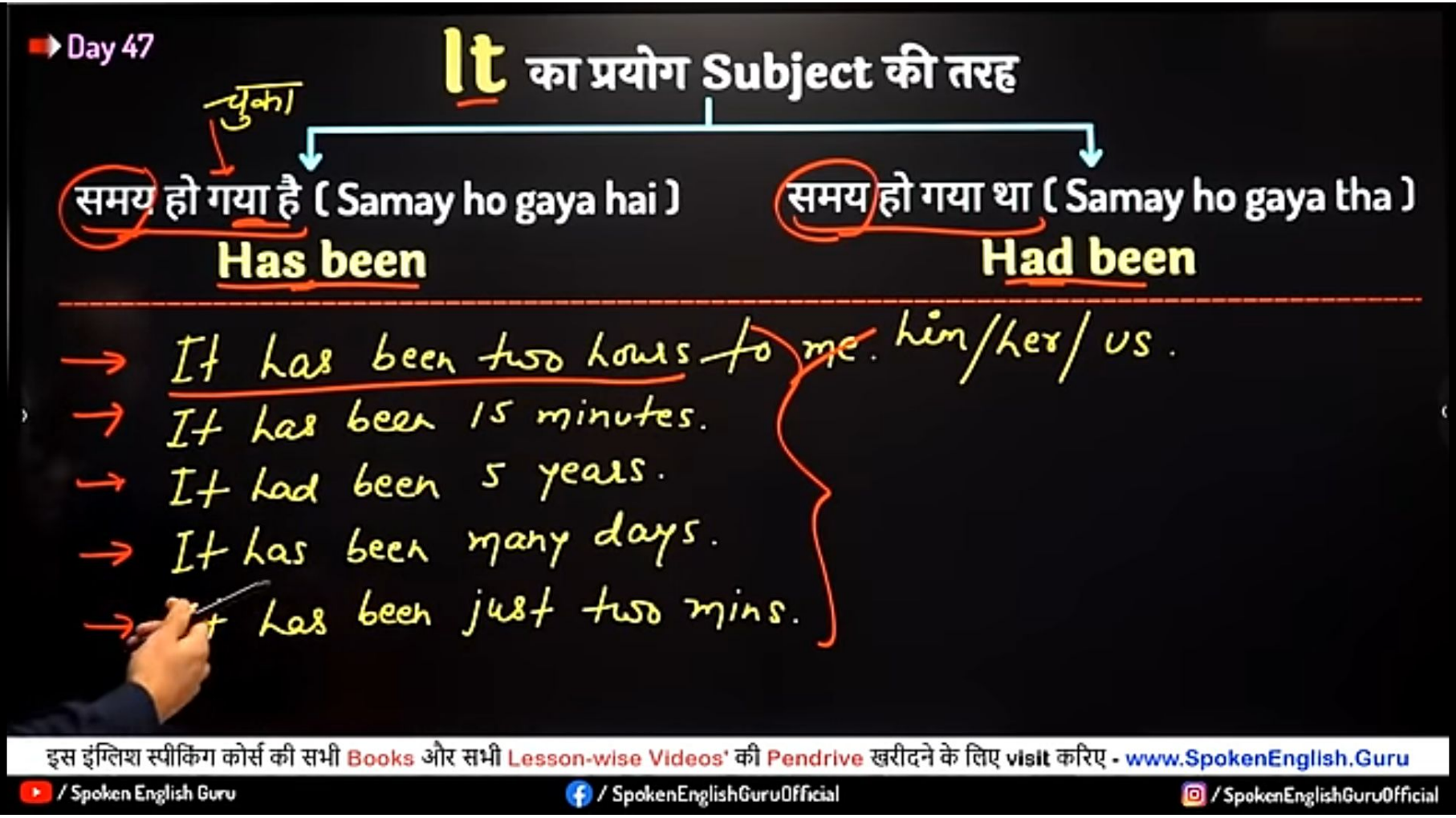
Day 47

It का प्रयोग Subject की तरह – Day, Date, Month के साथ

- आज शनिवार है। (Aaj shanivaar hai.)
  Today is Saturday. / It is Saturday today. → It's
- कल 5 तारीख थी। (Kal 5 tarikh thi.)
  It was 5th yesterday.
- ये जनवरी चल रहा है। (Ye January chal raha hai.)
  It is January. / This is January.
- अगले महीने उसका बर्थडे है। (Agle mahine uska birthday hai.)
  It's his birthday next month.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial



इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru
/ Spoken English Guru
/ SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial
/ SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 47

It का प्रयोग Subject की तरह

समय हो गया है (Samay ho gaya hai)	समय हो गया था (Samay ho gaya tha.)
Has been	**Had been**
मिलते हुए (Milte hue) - meeting	मिले हुए (Mile hue) - having met
खेलते हुए (Khelte hue) - playing	खेले हुए (Khele hue) - having played
सोते हुए (Sote hue) - sleeping	सोये हुए (Soye hue) - having slept
रोते हुए (Rote hue) - weeping	रोए हुए (Roye hue) - having wept
नाचते हुए (Nachte hue) - dancing	नाचे हुए (Nache hue) - having danced

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 47

- मुझे तुमसे मिले हुए 3 साल हो गए हैं। (Mujhe tumse mile hue 3 saal ho gaye hain.)

  It has been 3 years to me having met you.

- मुझे तुमसे मिलते हुए 3 साल हो गए हैं। (Mujhe tumse milte hue 3 saal ho gaye hain.)

  It has been 3 years to me meeting you.

- यहाँ आये हुए कॉफी समय हो गया है। (Yahaan aaye hue kaafi samay ho gaya hai.)

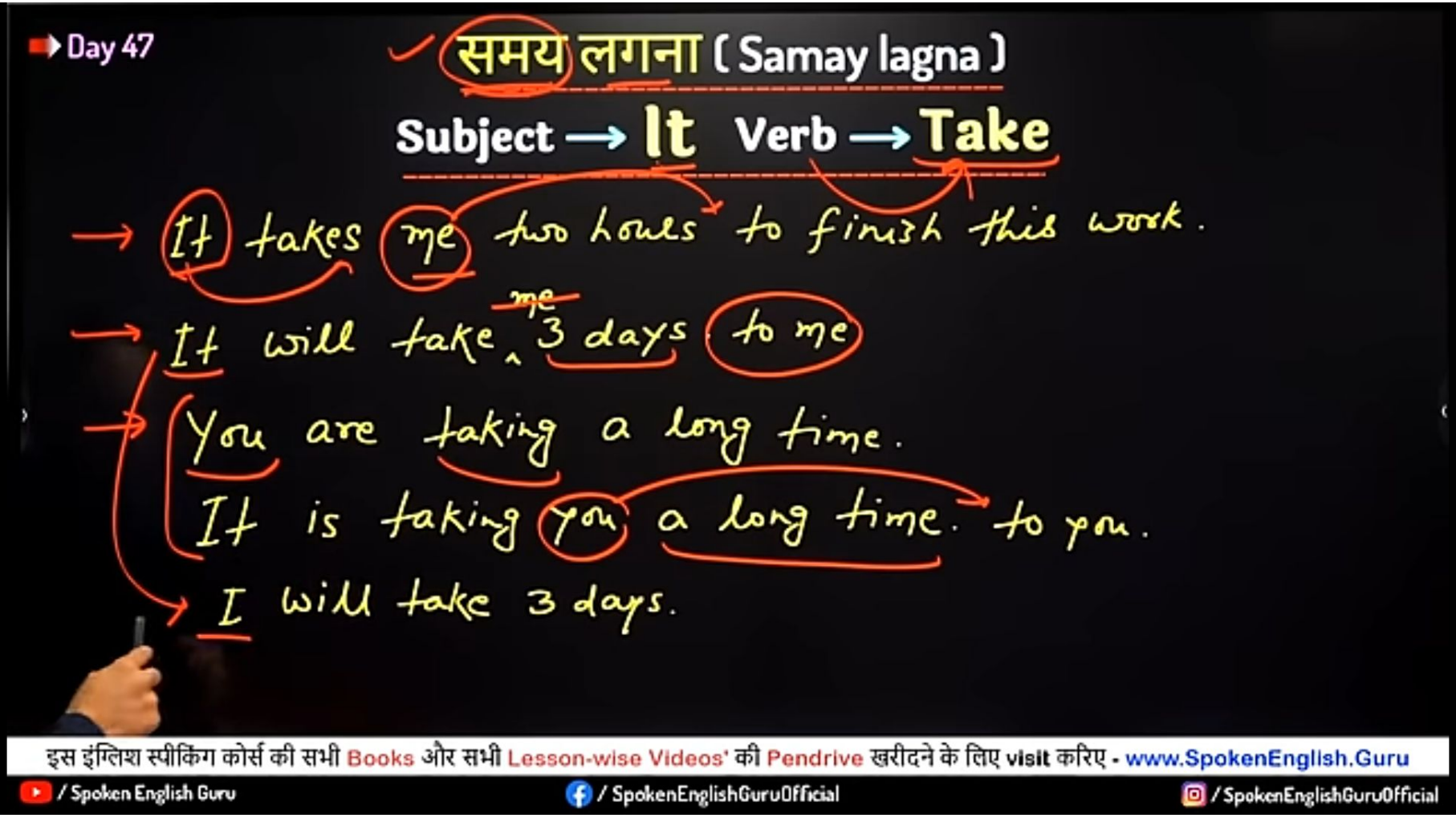
  It has been a long time having come here.

- तुम्हारा इन्तज़ार करते हुए मुझे 1 घंटा हो चुका है।
  (Tumhara intzaar karte hue mujhe 1 ghanta ho chuka hai.)

  It has been 1 hour to me waiting for you.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial



इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru
/ Spoken English Guru
/ SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial
/ SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 47

समय लगना (Samay lagna)

Subject → It Verb → Take

मुझे ये काम खत्म करने में दो महीने लगे।

(Mujhe ye kaam khatam karne me 2 months lage.)

It took ~~me~~ two months to me to finish this ~~time~~ work.

I took two months to finish this work.

हमें फैसला करने में कई दिन लगेंगे।

(Hame faisla karne me kai din lagenge.)

It will take ~~us~~ many days to us to decide.

We will take many days to decide.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 54

I wish (काश) → Do, Be, Have

- ✓ करे {Kare} / करूँ {Karoon} → Present Indefinite Tense
- ✓ करता {Karta} → Would + V1
- ✓ कर चुका होता {Kar chuka hota} → Had + V3 / Would have + V3
- ✓ कर पाता {Kar pata} → Could + V1
- ✓ कर रहा होता {Kar raha hota} → Would be + V4 / Had been + V4
- ✓ हो {Ho} / होऊँ {Houn} → Is / Am / Are
- ✓ होता {Hota} → Were / Would be
- ✓ पास हो {Paas ho} → Has / Have
- ✓ पास (रहा) होता {Paas (raha) hota} → Had / Would have / Would have had

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 54

➡ काश वो मेरा सगा भाई होता। (Kaash vo mera saga bhai hota.)

I wish he were my real brother.
would be

➡ काश उसके पास एक मौका होता। (Kaash uske paas ek mauka hota.)

I wish he had a chance to prove himself.
would have / would have had

➡ काश वो इस वक्त घर पर होता। (Kaash vo is waqt ghar par hota.)

I wish he were at home right now.
would be

➡ काश वो इस वक्त घर पर हो। (Kaash vo is waqt ghar par ho.)

I wish he is at home right now.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 54

➡ काश हम आज साथ खेलते। (Kaash hum aaj sath khelte.)

I wish we would play together today.

➡ काश उस दिन हमने साथ खेला होता। (Kaash us din humne sath khela hota.)

I wish we had played together that day.
would have

➡ काश तुम इस साल दसवीं पास कर पाते। (Kaash tum is saal 10th paas kar paate.)

I wish you could pass 10th this year.

➡ काश मेरे पापा उसे न डाँटे। (Kaash mere papa use na daante.)

I wish my father doesn't scold him.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

➡ काश आप सब इंग्लिश बोल रहे होते। (Kaash aap sab English bol rahe hote.)

I wish you all would be speaking English.
had been

➡ काश मैं एक बार उसे देख पाता। (Kaash main ek baar use dekh pata.)

I wish I could see him once.

➡ काश आप इस कम्पनी के मैनेजर होते। (Kaash aap is company ke manager hote.)

I wish you were the manager of this company.
would be

➡ काश तब मेरे पास लैपटॉप रहा होता। (Kaash tab mere paas laptop raha hota.)

I wish I had a laptop then.
would have / would have had

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

➡ काश राहुल मंडे को उसके घर जाये। (Kaash Rahul monday ko uske ghar jaaye.)

I wish Rahul goes to his house on Monday.

➡ काश मैं भी एक दिन इंग्लिश बोलूँ। (Kaash main bhi ek din English boloon.)

I wish I also speak English one day.

➡ काश कोई भी 10 बजे मैदान पर न हो। (Kaash koi bhi 10 baje maidan par na ho.)

I wish nobody is on the field at 10 o'clock.

there

➡ काश उन दोनों के पास इतना पैसा होता। (Kaash un dono ke paas itna paisa hota.)

I wish they both had this much money.

would have / would have had

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 58

Rather - बल्कि / जबकि / उल्टा

- बल्कि ये मुझे ज़्यादा मंहगा पड़ेगा। (Balki ye mujhe zyada mehnga padega.)
  Rather, it will cost me more.
- वो तो जबकि क्रिकेट ज़्यादा खेलता है। (Vo to jabki cricket zyada khelta hai.)
  Rather, he plays cricket more.
- आपसे मिलना तो बल्कि मेरे लिए खुशी की बात है।
  (Aapse milna to balki mere liye khushi ki baat hai.)
  Rather, it's my pleasure to meet you.
- उल्टा उसे तो घर पे रहना ज़्यादा अच्छा लगता है।
  (Ulta use to ghar pe rahna zyada achchha lagta hai.)
  Rather, he loves a lot to stay at home.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 58

Rather - बल्कि / जबकि / उल्टा → Instead

- बल्कि ये मुझे ज़्यादा मंहगा पड़ेगा। (Balki ye mujhe zyada mehnga padega.)
  Rather, it will cost me more.
- वो तो जबकि क्रिकेट ज़्यादा खेलता है। (Vo to jabki cricket zyada khelta hai.)
  Rather, he plays cricket more.
- आपसे मिलना तो बल्कि मेरे लिए खुशी की बात है।
  (Aapse milna to balki mere liye khushi ki baat hai.)
  Rather, it's my pleasure to meet you.
- उल्टा उसे तो घर पे रहना ज़्यादा अच्छा लगता है।
  (Ulta use to ghar pe rahna zyada achchha lagta hai.)
  Rather, he loves a lot to stay at home.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 58

Rather - बल्कि / इससे भी बढ़कर

- तुम मेरे अच्छे दोस्त हो, बल्कि मेरे सबसे अच्छे दोस्त हो।
  (Tum mere achchhe dost ho, balki mere sabse achchhe dost ho.)
  You are my good friend, rather my best friend.
- मैं एक जैकेट लेना चाहता हूँ, बल्कि एक लैदर जैकेट।
  (Main ek jacket lena chahta hoon, balki ek leather jacket.)
  I want to buy a jacket, rather a leather jacket.
- मैं तुमसे मिलना चाहता हूँ, बल्कि मैं तो तुम्हारे घर आना चाहता हूँ।
  (Main tumse milna chahta hu, balki main to tumhare ghar aana chahta hu.)
  I want to meet you, rather I want to come to your home.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 58

Rather - बल्कि / इससे भी बढ़कर → In fact

→ तुम मेरे अच्छे दोस्त ~~हैं~~ हो, बल्कि मेरे सबसे अच्छे दोस्त हो।
(Tum mere achchhe dost ho, balki mere sabse achchhe dost ho.)
You are my good friend, rather my best friend.

→ मैं एक [illegible] लेना चाहता हूँ, बल्कि एक लैदर जैकेट।
[illegible]ket lena chahta hoon, balki ek leather jacket.)
I want to buy a jacket, rather a leather jacket.

→ मैं तुमसे मिलना चाहता हूँ, बल्कि मैं तो तुम्हारे घर आना चाहता हूँ।
(Main tumse milna chahta hu, balki main to tumhare ghar aana chahta hu.)
I want to meet you, rather I want to come to your home.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru
/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 58

Rather than - बजाय इसके → Instead of

➡ तुम्हें लस्सी पीनी चाहिए, बजाय कोक पीने के।
(Tumhe lassi peeni chahie, bajay coke peene ke.)
You should drink (have) lassi, rather than drinking (having) coke.

➡ इस वक्त पढ़ने के बजाय, तुम खेल क्यों रहे हो?
(Is vakt padhane ke bajaay, tum khel kyon rahe ho?)
Rather than studying at this time, why are you playing?

➡ वो मुम्बई जा रहा है, बजाय दिल्ली जाने के।
(Vo Mumbai ja raha hai, bajaay Delhi jaane ke.)
He is going to Mumbai, rather than going to Delhi.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru
/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 58

Would rather ..... than = Would ..... rather than

➡ मैं बर्गर के बजाय मोमोज़ खाऊँगा।
(Main burger ke bajay momos khaunga.)

I will eat momos rather than burger.

✓ I would rather eat momos than burger.

➡ मैं बर्गर के बजाय मोमोज़ खाना पसन्द करूँगा।
(Main burger ke bajay momos khana pasand karunga.)

I would like to eat momos rather than burger.

✓ I would rather like to eat momos than burger.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 58

Would rather ..... than = Would ..... rather than

➡ वो मूवी जाने के बजाय घर पर रहेगा।

(Vo movie jaane ke bajay ghar par rahega.)

instead of

✓ He will stay at home rather than going for a movie.

Would

✓ He would rather stay at home than going for a movie.

➡ वो मूवी जाने के बजाय घर पर रहना पसन्द करेगा।

(Vo movie jaane ke bajay ghar par rahna pasand karega.)

He would like to stay at home rather than going for a movie.

He would rather like to stay at home than going for a movie.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

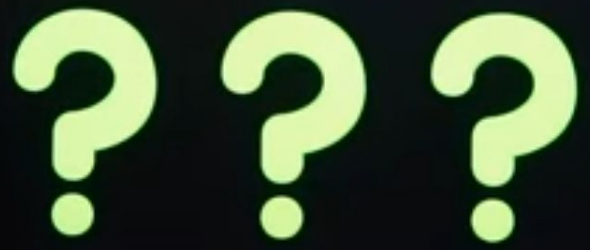
/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course - Day 59

Happen

- I happened to meet my uncle outside the cinema hall today, now I am gone.
- Whenever your boss reaches on time, you happen to be late that day.
- I happened to have a camera that day, otherwise I couldn't click these pictures.
- She happened to have come by car that day so we needed not wait for the bus.
- Whenever I call him, he happens to be going somewhere.





इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

- I happened to meet my uncle outside the cinema hall today, now I am gone.
- Unfortunately, I met my uncle outside the cinema hall today, now I am gone.

- Whenever your boss reaches on time, you happen to be late that day.
- Whenever your boss reaches on time, unfortunately you are late that day.

- I happened to have a camera that day, otherwise I couldn't click these pictures.
- Luckily, I had a camera that day, otherwise I couldn't click these pictures.

- She happened to have come by car that day so we needed not wait for the bus.
- Coincidently, she had come by car that day so we needed not wait for the bus.

- Whenever I call him, he happens to be going somewhere.
- Whenever I call him, coincidently he is going somewhere.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 59

Happen ➡ होना

- ✓ क्या हुआ? (Kya hua?) ➡ What happened?
- ✓ तुम्हें क्या हुआ? (Tumhe kya hua?) ➡ What happened to you?
- ✓ यहाँ क्या क्या हुआ? (Yahaan kya kya hua?) ➡ What all happened here?
- ✓ जो होता है, अच्छे के लिए होता है। (Jo hota hai, achchhe ke liye hota hai.)
  Whatever happens, happens for good.
- ✓ ये हर किसी के साथ होता है। (Ye har kisi ke sath hota hai.)
  It happens with everyone.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 59

✓ Happen (s,ed) to + V_{1st} → Indefinite Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 1

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + V_{4th} → Continuous Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 2

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + V_{3rd} → Perfect Tense

➡ इत्तेफाक से मैं स्कूल जाते वक्त रोज़ उसे मिलता हूँ।
(Ittefaak se main school jaate vaqt roz use milta hoon.)

Coincidentally, I meet him every day while going to school.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 59

✓ Happen (s,ed) to + V_{1st} → Indefinite Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 1

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + V_{4th} → Continuous Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 2

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + V_{3rd} → Perfect Tense

→ इत्तेफाक से मैं स्कूल जाते वक्त रोज़ उसे मिलता हूँ।
(Ittefaak se main school jaate vaqt roz use milta hoon.)

~~Coincidentally~~, I meet him every day while going to school.

✓ I happen to meet him every day while going to school.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 59

✓ Happen (s,ed) to + V_{1st} → Indefinite Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 1

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + V_{4th} → Continuous Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 2

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + V_{3rd} → Perfect Tense

संयोग से वो स्कूल जाते वक्त रोज़ मुझे मिलता है।
(Sanyog se vo school jaate vaqt roz mujhe milta hai.)

Coincidentally, he meets me every day while going to school.

He happens to meet me every day while going to school.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 59

✓ Happen (s,ed) to + V_{1st} → Indefinite Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 1

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + V_{4th} → Continuous Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 2

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + V_{3rd} → Perfect Tense

संयोग देखिए, मैं स्कूल जाते वक्त रोज़ उससे मिलता था।
(Sanyog dekhiye, main school jaate vaqt roz usse milta tha.)

happened to meet

Coincidentally, I met him every day while going to school.

Coincidentally, I would meet him every day while going to school.

Coincidentally, I used to meet him every day while going to school.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 59

✓ Happen (s,ed) to + V_{1st} → Indefinite Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 1

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + V_{4th} → Continuous Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 2

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + V_{3rd} → Perfect Tense

➡ किस्मत से, वो हर मैच जीत जाता है।

(Kismat se, vo har match jeet jata hai.)

✓ Luckily, he wins every match.

He happens to win every match.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 59

✓ Happen (s,ed) to + V_{1st} → Indefinite Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 1

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + V_{4th} → Continuous Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 2

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + V_{3rd} → Perfect Tense

उसका दुर्भाग्य है कि वो हर मैच हार जाता है।

(Uska durbhagya hai ki vo har match haar jata hai.)

Unfortunately, he loses every match.

He happens to lose every match.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 59

✓ Happen (s,ed) to + V_{1st} → Indefinite Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 1

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + V_{4th} → Continuous Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 2

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + V_{3rd} → Perfect Tense

➡ मैं जब भी उसे कॉल करता हूँ, संयोग की बात है कि वो घर पर होता है।

(Main jab bhi use call karta hoon, sanyog ki baat hai ki vo ghar par hota hai.)

Whenever I call him, coincidentally, he is at home.

Whenever I call him, he happens to be at home.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 59

✓ Happen (s,ed) to + V_{1st} → Indefinite Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 1

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + V_{4th} → Continuous Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 2

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + V_{3rd} → Perfect Tense

मैं जब भी उसे कॉल करता हूँ, संयोग की बात है कि वो खेल रहा होता है।

(Main jab bhi use call karta hoon, sanyog ki baat hai ki vo khel raha hota hai.)

Whenever I call him, coincidentally, he is playing.

Whenever I call him, he happens to be playing.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 59

✓ Happen (s,ed) to + V_{1st} → Indefinite Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 1

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + V_{4th} → Continuous Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 2

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + V_{3rd} → Perfect Tense

→ जब मैं उसे कॉल करता हूँ, किस्मत से तब उसके पास अपना लैपटॉप होता है।

(Jab main use call karta hu, kismat se tab uske paas apna laptop hota h.)

Whenever I call him, luckily, he has his laptop then.

Whenever I call him, he happens to have his laptop then.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 59

✓ Happen (s,ed) to + V_{1st} → Indefinite Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 1

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + V_{4th} → Continuous Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 2

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + V_{3rd} → Perfect Tense

मैं जब भी उसे कॉल करता हूँ, बदकिस्मती से वो ऑफिस से निकल चुका होता है।

(Main jab bhi use call karta hu, badkismati se vo office se nikal chuka hota h.)

Whenever I call him, unfortunately, he has left the office.

Whenever I call him, he happens to have left the office.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 59

✓ Happen (s,ed) to + V_{1st} → Indefinite Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 1

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + V_{4th} → Continuous Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 2

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + V_{3rd} → Perfect Tense

किस्मत से वो घर पहुँच चुका था, वरना वो मुश्किल में पड़ जाता।

(Kismat se vo ghar pahunch chuka tha, varna vo mushkil me pad jata.)

Luckily, he had reached home; otherwise, he would have been in trouble.

He happened to have reached home; otherwise, ——— do ———.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 59

✓ Happen (s,ed) to + V_{1st} → Indefinite Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 1

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + V_{4th} → Continuous Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 2

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + V_{3rd} → Perfect Tense

किस्मत से हम खेल नहीं रहे थे, वरना हम बहुत मुश्किल में पड़ जाते।

(Kismat se hum khel nahi rahe the, varna hum bahut mushkil me pad jate.)

Luckily, we were not playing; otherwise, we would've been in huge trouble.

We happened to be not playing; → do

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 59

✓ Happen (s,ed) to + V_{1st} → Indefinite Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 1

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + V_{4th} → Continuous Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 2

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + V_{3rd} → Perfect Tense

किस्मत से हम खेल नहीं रहे थे, वरना हम बहुत मुश्किल में पड़ जाते।

(Kismat se hum khel nahi rahe the, varna hum bahut mushkil me pad jate.)

Luckily, we were not playing; otherwise, we would've been in huge trouble.

We happened to be not playing; → do

Hap

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 59

✓ Happen (s,ed) to + V_{1st} → Indefinite Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 1

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + V_{4th} → Continuous Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 2

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + V_{3rd} → Perfect Tense

बदकिस्मती से उस दिन उसके पास पैसे नहीं थे।

(Badkismati se us din uske paas paise nahi the.)

Unfortunately, he had no money that day.

He happened to have no money that day.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 59

✓ Happen (s,ed) to + V_{1st} → Indefinite Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 1 (State)

✓ Happen (s,ed) to be + V_{4th} → Continuous Tense

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + Obj. → Simple Sentence - Category 2 (Possession)

✓ Happen (s,ed) to have + V_{3rd} → Perfect Tense

→ मैं इत्तेफाक से उस दिन घर पे था, और वो टपक गया।

(Main ittefaak se us din ghar pe tha, or vo tapak gaya.)

Coincidentally, I was at home that day and he dropped in.

I happened to be at home that day and he dropped in.

Drop in

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 60

Important Structures for English Speaking

- Use of "Good at/in"
- Use of "Bad at/in"
- Use of "Start/Begin"
- Use of "Made in"
- Use of "Made of"
- Use of "Made up of"
- Use of "Made by"
- Use of "Made for"
- Use of "Fond of"
- Use of "How to"
- Use of "Keep"
- Use of "Seems as if / Looks like"
- Use of "The very"
- Use of "Very much"
- Use of "or so"
- Use of "or what"

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 60

The very → यही, वही

Same ... that

- This is the very book I want.
- He went to visit the very place, where everyone wants to go.
- Don't worry! I am doing the very exercise that you have taught me.
- He is the very boy, about whom I was talking in the class.

Very much → यहीं, इसी जगह

definitely

- Sumit is very much at home.
- We are very much here waiting for you, please come early.
- He is very much in the school. Please go and get him right away.
- She was very much there but you couldn't see her.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 60

Use of "or so"

- He will come in a day or so. (एकाद)
- He will come after three months or so.
- We are coming within two hours or so.

Use of "or what"

- This is a computer or what? Is it a computer?
- You are a fool or what? Are you a fool?
- He is good at calculations or what?

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 60

लगता है → Seems as if / Seems like / Looks like

- Seems as if you don't know anything about football.
- Looks like you can handle this work very well.
- It seems as if you are good at mathematics in your class.
- Seems as if I will not be able to pass the exam this year.
- Looks like nobody is ready to help him.
- It seems like you want to say something to me.
- Seems like he has done the homework, or else he would not be playing.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 60

बना होगा

Made in + <Country>
Made of + <Thing>
Made up of + <Various things/persons>
Made by + <Company/Person's name>

- This mobile is made in India.
- This ball is made of leather.
- This mobile is made up of plastic, iron, aluminum, etc.
- A team is made up of players, coaches, and other staff members.
- This fan is made by Havells, and that fan is made by me.
- This painting is made by Ravi.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 60

Made for / Meant for

- They are truly made for each other.
- You are made for cricket and I am made for teaching.
- I guess he is made for painting because he is extremely good at it.

I think

Keep + <Verb ing> → करते रहना

- He will keep fighting with us for no reason, so just ignore him.
- He keeps calling you to return his money but you ignore his calls.
- He kept trying to fix the washing machine himself but to no avail.
- Ravi keeps playing games on his mobile; that's why he failed the exam.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 60

Start + <Verb ing> / Begin + <to verb>

शुरू करना
करने लगना

- He starts fighting over the trifles.
  He begins to fight over the trifles.
- I started going to the gym last Monday.
  I began to go to the gym last Monday.

from

- We will start advertising our products now.
  We will begin to advertise our products now.
- My brother has started learning English now.
  My brother has begun to learn English now.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 60

Fond of + <Verb ing>

- He is fond of cricket.
- He is fond of playing cricket.
- I am fond of playing, singing, and most importantly reading books.

How to + <Verb>

- I don't know how to drive. (driving)
- You should learn how to speak English. (Speaking)
- I know how to do business but I have no money to invest.
- Do you have any idea how to get the books printed?

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 60

Use of "Good at/in"
Use of "Bad at/in"

- He is good at cricket but bad at football.
- He is good at playing cricket but bad at playing football.
- I am good at studies but not that good at mathematics.
- You are good at doing business, aren't you? → है ना
- I think they both are bad at singing but good at games.
- I am good at calculations; that's why I want to become a CA.
- She is not good at cooking but she is really bad at making tea.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 62

Be, Being, Been का प्रयोग

- कोई काम करने के बाद (Koi kaam karne ke baad) → Having + V_3
- कोई काम खुद पर होने के बाद (Koi kaam khud par hone ke baad) → Having been + V_3
- होने के बाद (Hone ke baad) → Having been + Obj.

→ After I scolded my son, I felt very bad.

→ After the boss scolded me, I felt very bad.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 61

Have, Having का प्रयोग | Use of Has, Have, Had & Having

- He is having a lot; still, he is said to be having nothing.
- I am lucky to have a teacher like you.
- You must be having a calculator.
- We should be having some money to spend.
- It was good that you helped me; or else I would be having to go.
- They are expected to be having finished the task by now.
- I had had it in the morning itself.
- You should have had this much of knowledge to impress others.
- Having hanged the clothes, I left the place.
- It's been a while having finished this task.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Simple Sent. –

पास होना
To possess

भाई/बहन/दोस्त आदि होना
To have brother, sister...

में होना (के अन्दर होना)
To be within

- He has a laptop.
- I have nothing.
- I had an apple to eat.
- I have two friends.
- This room has two doors.
- A week has seven days.
- Every mobile has a display.
- I will have a laptop next year.
- He would have a laptop right now.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Simple Sent. –

पास होना To possess	भाई/बहन/दोस्त आदि होना To have brother, sister...	में होना (के अन्दर होना) To be within

He has a laptop.	➜	He is having a laptop.
I have nothing.	➜	I am having nothing.
I had an apple to eat.	➜	I was having an apple to eat.
I have two friends.	➜	I am having two friends.
This room has two doors.	➜	This room is having two doors.
A week has seven days.	➜	A week is having seven days.
Every mobile has a display.	➜	Every mobile is having a display.
I will have a laptop next year.	➜	I will be having a laptop next year.
He would have a laptop right now.	➜	He'd be having a laptop right now.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Tenses –

कर चुका होना To have done the task	किसी समय से कर रहा होना To have been doing since/for a TIME

- He has done the work.
- I have done the work.
- We had done the work.
- He will have done the work by the evening.
- He would have done the work by now.
- He has been playing since morning.
- They had been studying for 2 hours.
- Tomorrow at 6 PM, I will have been playing for 3 hours.
- He would have been playing for 3 hours.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 61

Modal Verbs

Have, Having का प्रयोग

I have to go to school daily.	→	I am having to go to school daily.
He has to dance on the stage.	→	He is having to dance on the stage.
They had to come here daily.	→	They were having to come here daily.
I am having to play with him.	→	—
I will have to go to school.	→	I will be having to go to school.
I would have to go to the office.	→	I would be having to go to the office.
He should have a pen.	→	He should be having a pen.
You must have a calculator.	→	You must be having a calculator.
He could have some money.	→	He could be having some money.
He should have called me.	→	—

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 61

Modal Verbs

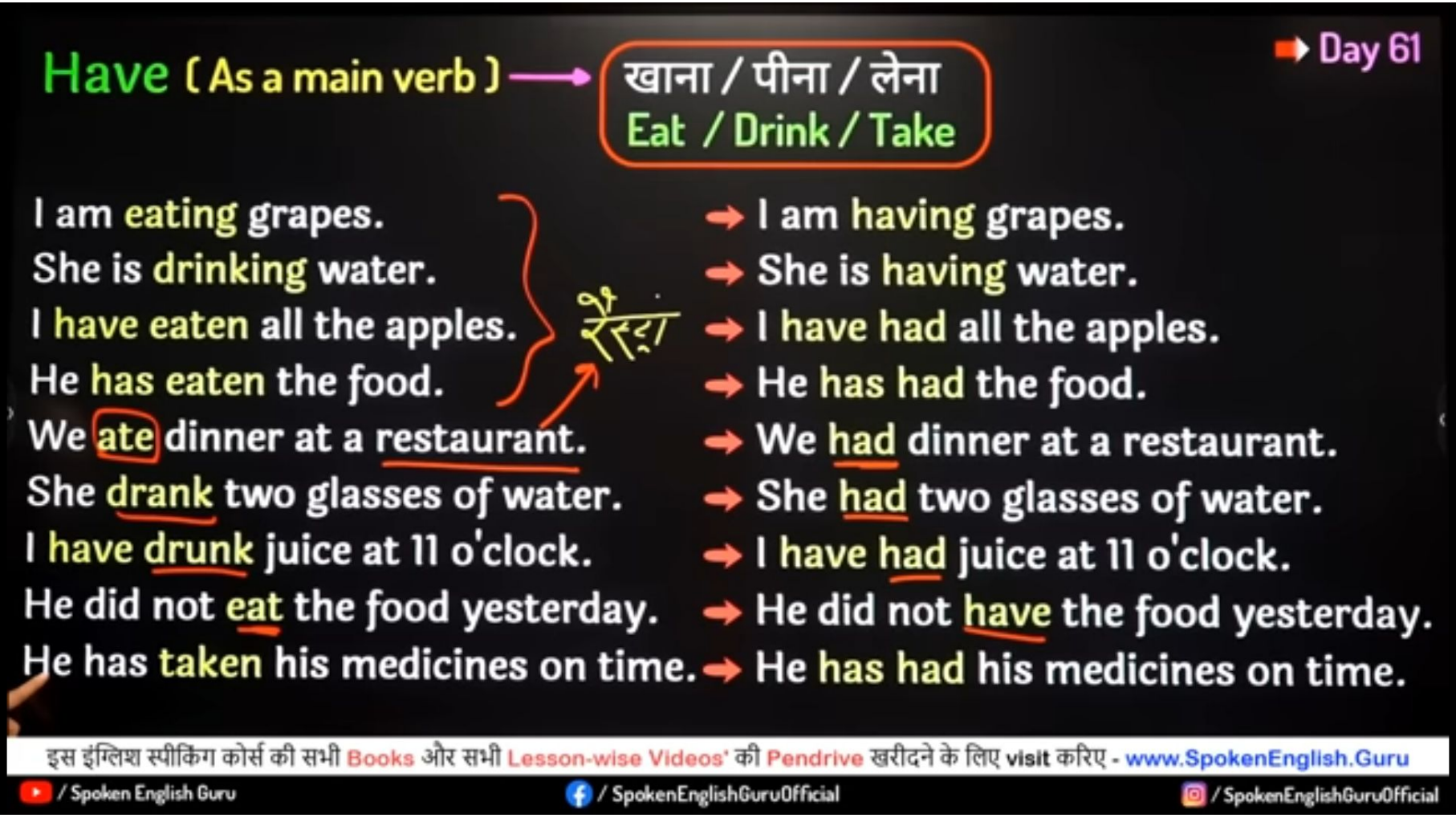
Have, Having का प्रयोग

- He could have met you that day, but perhaps he didn't want to.
- He would have reached by now but his bike's tyre has gone flat.
- She might have seen you in the market.
- He should have had a car.
- Even, you could have had a house today but you never saved money.
- If he had studied well, he would have had a good job today.

Have → Helping verb
Have → Main verb Have Had Had

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial


Day 61
Have (As a main verb) → खाना / पीना / लेना
Eat / Drink / Take
I am eating grapes. → I am having grapes.
She is drinking water. → She is having water.
I have eaten all the apples. → I have had all the apples.
He has eaten the food. → He has had the food.
We ate dinner at a restaurant. → We had dinner at a restaurant.
She drank two glasses of water. → She had two glasses of water.
I have drunk juice at 11 o'clock. → I have had juice at 11 o'clock.
He did not eat the food yesterday. → He did not have the food yesterday.
He has taken his medicines on time. → He has had his medicines on time.
रैस्टा
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru
/ Spoken English Guru
/ SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial
/ SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 61

Having + V_3

Have, Having का प्रयोग

- कोई काम करने के बाद (Koi kaam karne ke baad)
- किसी काम को किये हुए (Kisi kaam ko kiye hue)

→ After meeting him, I left the office.
Having met him, I left the office.

→ After watching the film, I had dinner.
Having watched the film, I had dinner.

→ After reading this book, I could understand this concept.
Having read this book, I could understand this concept.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 61

Having + V_3

Have, Having का प्रयोग

- कोई काम करने के बाद (Koi kaam karne ke baad)
- किसी काम को किये हुए (Kisi kaam ko kiye hue)

- It has been 2 years since I met you.
  It has been 2 years having met you.
- It has been a week since I took a bath.
  It has been a week having taken a bath.
- It has been a month now since I opened my books.

It's → It is / It has

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 61

Having + V_3

Have, Having का प्रयोग

- कोई काम करने के बाद (Koi kaam karne ke baad)
- किसी काम को किये हुए (Kisi kaam ko kiye hue)

- It has been 2 years since I met you.
  It has been 2 years having met you.
- It has been a week since I took a bath.
  It has been a week having taken a bath.
- It has been a month now since I opened my books.
  It has been a month now having opened my books.

It's → It is / It has

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 61

Have ➡ be having

Have, Having का प्रयोग

- It is said that he has lots of money.
  - It is said that he is having lots of money.
  - He is said to have lots of money.
  - He is said to be having lots of money.
- It is said that he has thirty cars of his own.
  - He is said to have thirty cars of his own.
  - He is said to be having thirty cars of his own.



इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 61

Have ➡ be having

Have, Having का प्रयोग

- It was said that he had lots of money.
- It was said that he was having lots of money.
- He was said to have lots of money.
- He was said to be having lots of money.

- It was said that he had thirty cars of his own.
- It was said that he was having thirty cars of his own.
- He was said to have thirty cars of his own.
- He was said to be having thirty cars of his own.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 61

Have ➡ be having

Have, Having का प्रयोग

➡ It is expected that you have full control over your team.

It is expected that you are having full control over your team.

You are expected to have full control over your team.

You are expected to be having full control over your team.

➡ It is expected that all the students have done the homework.

All the students are expected to have done the homework.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 61

Have ➡ be having

Have, Having का प्रयोग

- It is expected that you have full control over your team.
- It is expected that you are having full control over your team.
- You are expected to have full control over your team.
- You are expected to be having full control over your team.
- It is expected that all the students have done the homework.
- All the students are expected to have done the homework.
- All the students are expected to be having done the homework.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 61

Have ➡ be having

Have, Having का प्रयोग

Supposed

➡ It is expected that you have full control over your team.

It is expected that you are having full control over your team.

✓ You are expected to have full control over your team.

✓ You are expected to be having full control over your team.

➡ It is expected that all the students have done the homework.

All the students are expected to have done the homework.

All the students are expected to be having done the homework.



इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 61

To Have = for having

Have, Having का प्रयोग

- I am happy that I have a good job.

  I am happy to have a good job.
  for having

- He is disappointed that he doesn't have a good job.

  He is disappointed to not have a good job.
  for not having

- I am lucky that I have a good teacher like you.

  I am lucky to have a good teacher like you.
  for having

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 61

To Have = for having

Have, Having का प्रयोग

He is fortunate that he has passed the IAS exam on the first attempt.

- to have
- for having

He was sad that he had worked hard but to no avail.

- to have
- for having

We were happy that we had done it successfully .

- to have
- for having

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 61

Gone to = Been to
Lived in = Been in

Have, Having का प्रयोग

- मैं दिल्ली दो बार जा चुका हूँ। (Main Delhi 2 baar ja chuka hoon.)

I have gone to Delhi twice.
been

- मैं दिल्ली में पाँच साल रह चुका हूँ। (Main Delhi me 5 saal rah chuka hoon.)

I have lived in Delhi for 5 years.
been

- वो वहाँ कई बार चला गया था। (Vo vahaan kai baar chala gaya tha.)

He had gone there many times.
been

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 61

Having said that

Have, Having का प्रयोग

Despite this / Despite that / But still / However / Even then / Then also

- कल आपने अच्छा खेला। लेकिन फिर भी, आपका असली टैलेन्ट अभी भी बाहर आना बाकी है।
  (Kal aapne achchha khela. Lekin fir bhi, apka asli talent abhi bhi bahar aana baki hai.)
  You played well yesterday. Having said that, your real talent is still to come out.

- मैं दिल्ली पाँच साल रह चुका हूँ। इसके बावजूद, मुझे रास्तों का कुछ पता नहीं है।
  (Main Delhi 5 saal rah chuka hu. Iske bawjood, mujhe raaston ka kuchh pata ni hai.)
  I have been in Delhi for 5 years. Having said that, I have no idea of the routes.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 61

Have, Having का प्रयोग

is/am/are = has been/have been
was/were = had been

- वो घर पर है। (Vo ghar par hai.) — He is at home.
- वो सुबह से घर पर है। (Vo subah se ghar par hai.) → He has been at home since morning.
- वो 2 घंटे से घर पर है। (Vo 2 ghante se ghar par hai.) → He has been at home for 2 hours.
- हम वहाँ बैठे थे। (Hum vahaan baithe the.) → We were sitting there.
- हम काफी देर से वहाँ बैठे थे। (Hum kaafi der se vahaan baithe the.) → We had been sitting there for a long.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 62

Be, Being, Been का प्रयोग

- कोई काम करने के बाद (Koi kaam karne ke baad) → Having + V_3
- कोई काम खुद पर होने के बाद (Koi kaam khud par hone ke baad) → Having been + V_3
- होने के बाद (Hone ke baad) → Having been + Obj.

→ After I scolded my son, I felt very bad.

Having scolded my son, I felt very bad.

→ After the boss scolded me, I felt very bad.

Having been scolded by the boss, I felt very bad.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 62

Be, Being, Been का प्रयोग

- कोई काम करने के बाद (Koi kaam karne ke baad) → Having + V_3
- कोई काम खुद पर होने के बाद (Koi kaam khud par hone ke baad) → Having been + V_3
- होने के बाद (Hone ke baad) → Having been + Obj.

→ After I sent him, I called you.

Having sent him, I called you.

→ After he sent me, I called you.

Having been sent by him, I called you.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 62

Be, Being, Been का प्रयोग

- कोई काम करने के बाद (Koi kaam karne ke baad) → Having + V_3
- कोई काम खुद पर होने के बाद (Koi kaam khud par hone ke baad) → Having been + V_3
- होने के बाद (Hone ke baad) → Having been + Obj.

- Having been beaten by my father, I went outside and started crying.
- Having been given a pen, he became very happy.
- Having been asked all the questions, he left the examination hall.
- Having been repaired, my mobile started working perfectly again.
- Having been taught once, I never made a mistake on this topic.
- Having been ignored by him, I never called him again.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 62

Be, Being, Been का प्रयोग

- कोई काम करने के बाद (Koi kaam karne ke baad) → Having + V_3
- कोई काम खुद पर होने के बाद (Koi kaam khud par hone ke baad) → Having been + V_3
- होने के बाद (Hone ke baad) → Having been + Obj.

- Having been at home, I switched on the TV and started watching cricket.
- Having been with you, I can say that you are very honest in your work.
- Having been ill, he began to focus more on his health.
- Having been jobless, he started doing his own business.
- Having been to Jaipur last year, I realized how beautiful that city was.
- Having been in here for 3 years, I realized the importance of my own city.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 62

Be, Being, Been का प्रयोग

- कोई काम करने के बाद (Koi kaam karne ke baad) → Having + V_3
- कोई काम खुद पर होने के बाद (Koi kaam khud par hone ke baad) → Having been + V_3
- होने के बाद (Hone ke baad) → Having been + Obj.

→ After I scolded my son, I felt very bad.

Having scolded my son, I felt very bad.

→ After the boss scolded me, I felt very bad.

Having been scolded by the boss, I felt very bad.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 62

Be, Being, Been का प्रयोग

- कोई काम करने के बाद (Koi kaam karne ke baad) → Having + V_3
- कोई काम खुद पर होने के बाद (Koi kaam khud par hone ke baad) → Having been + V_3
- होने के बाद (Hone ke baad) → Having been + Obj.

→ After I sent him, I called you.

Having sent him, I called you.

→ After he sent me, I called you.

Having been sent by him, I called you.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 62

Be, Being, Been का प्रयोग

- कोई काम करने के बाद (Koi kaam karne ke baad) → Having + V_3
- कोई काम खुद पर होने के बाद (Koi kaam khud par hone ke baad) → Having been + V_3
- होने के बाद (Hone ke baad) → Having been + Obj.

- Having been beaten by my father, I went outside and started crying.
- Having been given a pen, he became very happy.
- Having been asked all the questions, he left the examination hall.
- Having been repaired, my mobile started working perfectly again.
- Having been taught once, I never made a mistake on this topic.
- Having been ignored by him, I never called him again.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 62

Be, Being, Been का प्रयोग

- कोई काम करने के बाद (Koi kaam karne ke baad) → Having + V_3
- कोई काम खुद पर होने के बाद (Koi kaam khud par hone ke baad) → Having been + V_3
- होने के बाद (Hone ke baad) → Having been + Obj.

- Having been at home, I switched on the TV and started watching cricket.
- Having been with you, I can say that you are very honest in your work.
- Having been ill, he began to focus more on his health.
- Having been jobless, he started doing his own business.
- Having been to Jaipur last year, I realized how beautiful that city was.
- Having been in here for 3 years, I realized the importance of my own city.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 62

Be, Being, Been का प्रयोग

Being + ... – होने के नाते, होने की वजह से

- Since I am a teacher, it's my responsibility that I don't misguide you.
  Being a teacher
- As I am his best friend, I must help him in such an adverse situation.
  Being his best friend
- For, she was slim, she could enter the house through this small window.
  Being slim
- I am your brother, I can't leave you alone here.
  Being your brother

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 62

Will + V_1 ➡ Will be + V_4 ➡ Is/am/are + going to + V_1

- I will come to your home today.
  - I will be coming to your home today.
  - I am going to come to your home today. → gonna
- He will go for movie with his friends.
  - will be going
  - is going to go
- They will not play on that ground.
  - will not be playing
  - are not going to
- Will you guys plan a trip to Mauritius?
  - Will you guys be planning a trip to Mauritius ?

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 62

Be, Being, Been का प्रयोग

To-be - होने वाला

- He is my to-be boss.
- She is Aman's to-be wife.
- Her to-be husband is a businessman.
- No astrologer in the world can predict about to-be events.
- I met my to-be manager in the market yesterday.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 62

Be, Being, Been का प्रयोग

Is/Am/Are/was/were ➡ To be

- It is said that he is at home before 11 o'clock.
  - He is said to be at home before 11 o'clock.
- It was supposed that he was very helpful by nature.
  - He was supposed to be very helpful by nature.
- It is said that they are always ready to help people.
  - They are said to be always ready to help people.
- It is expected that all the clothes are kept properly in the cupboard.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Is/Am/Are/was/were ➡ To be

Be, Being, Been का प्रयोग

- I am happy that I have a good job.
  to have
- I am very happy that I am your best friend.
  to be
- He is happy that he is doing a good business.
  to be
- He was disappointed that he was unemployed.
  to be
- We are lucky that we are in your team.
  to be

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 62

Be, Being, Been का प्रयोग

होना ➡ Subject ➡ Being = To be Object ➡ Being, To be or Either

- Being late is not a good habit. = To be late is not a good habit.
- Being with you is always fun. = To be with you is always fun.
- Being selfish is in his blood. = To be selfish is in his blood.
- I love being here for hours. = I love to be here for hours.
- I enjoy being with my parents. = I enjoy to be with my parents.
- He decided being in my team. = He decided to be in my team.
- We have preferred being at home. = We have preferred to be at home.
- I hate being in the office on Sunday. = I hate to be in the office on Sunday.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 62

Be, Being, Been का प्रयोग

Imperative Sentences ➡ होना/बनना/रहना

- Be honest.
- Be kind.
- Be cautious.
- Be still.
- Be at home.
- Be my friend.
- Let it be. ⟶ रहने दो
- Let him be here.
- Let us be in the class.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 62

Be, Being, Been का प्रयोग

Imperative Sentences ➡ होना/बनना/रहना

- Be honest. → Don't be honest.
- Be kind.
- Be cautious.
- Be still.
- Be at home.
- Be my friend.
- Let it be. → रहने दो → Don't let it be. / Let it not be.
- Let him be here. → Don't let him be here / Let him not be here
- Let us be in the class.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 62

Be, Being, Been का प्रयोग

होना/बनना/रहना

- I am thinking to be in the park for the next 2 hours.
- They promised to be with Rahul as long as he is on the field.
- We want to be in your team because you are a very good captain.
- My sister wants to be a doctor. → become
- I want to be your best friend.
- He pretends to be working, though he isn't. ~~working~~
- I like to be known as a teacher. I like that I am known as a teacher. (to be)
- He is being crazy to meet him.
- You are being stronger day by day. → getting

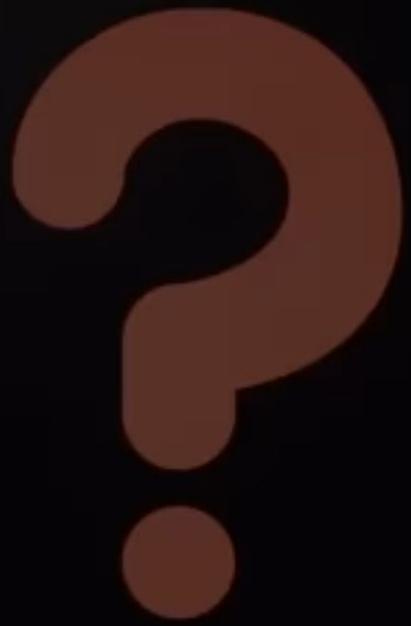
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 65

Important Structures for English Speaking

- As to ...
- How about ...
- How come ...
- What if ...
- No way that ...
- Having a hard time ...
- It's no use ...
- Look forward to ...
- Can't help ...



इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Lesson-wise Videos, उनके Notes, Practice और Quiz के लिए Install करिए - ENGLISH MUNI APP

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 65

⭐ can't help - किये बिना न रह पाना

➡ अगर तुम कोई गाना चला दो, तो मैं डाँस किये बिना नहीं रह सकता।
(Agar tum koi gana chala do, to main dance kiye bina nahi rah sakta.)
If you play a song, then I can't help dancing.

➡ I can't help eating fruits every day.
➡ He can't help thinking about you.
➡ Whenever I see this movie, I can't help praising it.
➡ Whenever I go to the LIC office, I can't help talking to Mr. Sharma, because he is an amazing person.
➡ I can't help falling in love with you.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Lesson-wise Videos, उनके Notes, Practice और Quiz के लिए Install करिए - ENGLISH MUNI APP
/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 65

How about – क्या ख्याल है?

- आज मूवी जाने के बारे में क्या ख्याल है?
  (Aaj movie jaane ke baare me kya khayal hai?)
  How about going for a movie today ?

- क्या कहता है, अगले महीने कार खरीद लूँ?
  (Kya kahta hai agle mahine car khareed loon?)
  How about buying a car next month ?

- क्या ख्याल है, आज की पार्टी में रोहन को बुला लिया जाये?
  (Kya khayal hai, aaj ki party me Rohan ko bula liya jaaye?)
  How about inviting Rohan in today's party ?

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Lesson-wise Videos, उनके Notes, Practice और Quiz के लिए Install करिए - ENGLISH MUNI APP

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 65

⭐ How come - ऐसा कैसे?

- ऐसा कैसे कि वो विपरीत परिस्थितियों में भी हँसता रहता है?
  (Aisa kaise ki vo vipreet situation me bhi hansta rahta hai?)
  How come he keeps smiling even in adverse circumstances?

- आप यहाँ कैसे? (Aap yahaan kaise?) → How come you are here?
  → What brings you here?

- आपने ये कैसे किया? (Aapne ye kaise kiya?) → How did you do this/it?
  → How come you did it?

- लोग उसकी फालतू बातों को भूल कैसे जाते हैं?
  (Log uski faltu baaton ko bhool kaise jaate hain?)
  How come, people forget his nonsense talks?

Introductory Clause

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Lesson-wise Videos, उनके Notes, Practice और Quiz के लिए Install करिए - ENGLISH MUNI APP

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 65

⭐ As to + WH - कि

मैं अच्छे से जानता हूँ कि वो ऐसा क्यों कह रहा है।
(Main achchhe se janta hoon ki vo aisa kyon kah raha hai.)
I know very well ~~that~~ as to why he is saying so.

आपको अंदाज़ा नहीं है कि आप किससे बात कर रहे हो।
(Aapko andaza nahi hai ki aap kisse baat kar rahe ho.)
You have no idea as to whom you are talking to.

उसने अपनी मम्मी से पूछा कि हर कोई उसी को क्यों डाँटता है।
(Usne apni mummy se poochha ki har koi usi ko kyon daanta hai.)
He asked his mother as to why everyone scolds him only.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Lesson-wise Videos, उनके Notes, Practice और Quiz के लिए Install करिए - ENGLISH MUNI APP
/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 65

★ What if - अगर ... तो?

क्या हो अगर

➡ अगर आज वो ऑफिस नहीं आया तो?
(Agar aaj vo office nahi aaya to?)
What if he doesn't come to the office today?
✓ If he doesn't come to the office, then?
today

➡ अगर तेरे पापा ने तुझे हमारे साथ जाने नहीं दिया होता तो?
(Agar tere papa ne tujhe hamare sath jaane nahi diya hota to?)
✓ What if your father had not let you go with us?
If

➡ अगर उस दिन हम साथ खेल रहे होते तो?
(Agar us din hum sath khel rahe hote to?)
✓ What if we were playing together that day?

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Lesson-wise Videos, उनके Notes, Practice और Quiz के लिए Install करिए - ENGLISH MUNI APP
/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 65

⭐ It's no use... - कोई फायदा नहीं है

➡ वहाँ जाने का कोई फायदा नहीं है।
(Vahaan jaane ka koi fayda nahi hai.)
It's no use going there.

➡ माफी माँगने से कुछ नहीं होगा, आप खुद वहाँ जाओ और उसे मनाओ।
(Maafi maangne se kuchh nahi hoga, aap khud vahaan jao or use manao.)
It's no use saying sorry, you go there yourself and convince him.

➡ गुस्सा करके क्या होगा, तुझे ये करना तो पड़ेगा ही ना?
(Gussa karke kya hoga, tujhe ye karna to padega hi na?)
It's no use getting angry, you will have to do it, won't you?

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Lesson-wise Videos, उनके Notes, Practice और Quiz के लिए Install करिए - ENGLISH MUNI APP
/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 65

⭐ Look forward to - खुशी से प्रतीक्षा करना

➡ वहाँ जाने को लेकर मैं बहुत ऐक्साइटेड हो रहा हूँ।
(Vahaan jaane ko lekar main bahut excited ho raha hoon.)
I am looking forward to going there.

➡ वो इस साल के आखिर तक अपने बिज़नेस में एक जबरदस्त ग्रोथ की उम्मीद कर रहा है।
(Vo is saal ke end tak apne business me ek jabardast growth ki ummid kr rha hai.)
He is looking forward to (expecting) a significant growth in his business by the end of this year.

➡ मैं कल तुमसे मिलने के लिए बेसब्र हो रहा हूँ।
(Main kal tumse milne ke liye besabra ho raha hoon.)
I am looking forward to meeting you tomorrow.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Lesson-wise Videos, उनके Notes, Practice और Quiz के लिए Install करिए - ENGLISH MUNI APP
/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 65

★ No way that - मतलब ही नहीं है

मतलब ही नहीं है कि आज रात वो पार्टी में न आये।
(Matlab hi nahi hai ki aaj raat vo party me na aaye.)
No way that he doesn't come to the party tonight.

हो ही नहीं सकता कि अगले साल तक मेरे पास जॉब न हो।
(Ho hi nahi sakta ki agle saal tak mere paas job na ho.)
No way that I will not have a job by the next year.

सवाल ही पैदा नहीं होता कि वो तेरा पैसा मार ले।
(Sawal hi paida nahi hota ki vo tera paisa maar le.)
No way that he doesn't return your money.

उज़न

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Lesson-wise Videos, उनके Notes, Practice और Quiz के लिए Install करिए - ENGLISH MUNI APP
/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

Day 65

⭐ Have a hard time – दिक्कत होना

➡ इतनी कम सैलेरी में घर का खर्चा चलाने में मुझे दिक्कत आ रही है।
(Itni kam salary me ghar ka kharcha chalane me mujhe dikkat aa rahi hai.)

I am having a hard time affording my livelihood in such a low salary.
- I am facing difficulty to afford

➡ He is having a hard time repairing your mobile.

➡ I had a very hard time playing today because my leg was paining badly.

➡ You will have a hard time growing your business but if you keep patience, you will definitely do something great.

➡ We generally have a hard time learning English because we are working too.

➡ I am not having a hard time running my business because everything is going well.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Lesson-wise Videos, उनके Notes, Practice और Quiz के लिए Install करिए - ENGLISH MUNI APP

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course Day 77

Sentence Correction Exercise

Possible — TYPE-2

अगर मैं प्रधानमंत्री होता, तो कल (tomorrow) की मीटिंग में नहीं जाता।

(Agar main pradhanmantri hota, to kal ki meeting me nahi jata.)

If I ~~was~~ were the PM, I would not attend tomorrow's meeting.

Impossible — Type-3

अगर मैं प्रधानमंत्री होता, तो कल (yesterday) की मीटिंग में नहीं जाता।

(Agar main pradhanmantri hota, to kal ki meeting me nahi jata.)

If I ~~were~~ had been the PM, I would not ~~attend~~ have attended yesterday's meeting.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course Day 78

कोई तो होगा जिसे आपकी सच में परवाह हो, आखिर इतने दोस्त हैं आपके।

(Koi to hoga jise aapki sach me parwah ho, aakhir itne dost hain aapke.)

There must be someone who really cares for you, after all, you have so many friends.

हर चीज़ की हद होती है, ये नहीं कि किसी को भी कुछ भी कह दो।

(Har cheez ki had hoti hai, ye nahi ki kisi ko bhi kuchh bhi keh do.)

There is a limit to everything, it's not that you say anything to any one.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course Day 78

आप जो मर्ज़ी कर लो, उससे अच्छा बॉलर ढूँढने से भी नहीं मिलने वाला।

(Aap jo marzi kah lo, usse achha bowler dhundne se bhi nhi milne wala.)

No matter what you do, you are not gonna (cannot) find (get) a better bowler than him.

gonna = going to

मैंने एक बात क्या कह दी कि लोग मेरे पीछे ही पड़ गए।

(Maine ek baat kya keh di ki log mere peechhe hi pad gaye.)

I just said one thing and people turned after me.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course Day 78

ऐसा सिर्फ तुम्हें लगता है; वरना किसी से भी पूछ लो, कोई उसकी तरफ़दारी नहीं करने वाला। (Aisa sirf tumhe lagta hai; varna kisi se bhi pooch lo, koi uski tarafdari nahi karne wala.)

Only you feel so/this way ; otherwise, you ask anyone, no body is going to (gonna) support him. → take his side.

जितना सोचोगे उतना तुम्हारा ही दिमाग खराब होगा।
(Jitna sochoge utna tumhaara hi dimaag kharaab hoga.)

The more you thing , the more your mind will get spoiled.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course Day 78

सोचने को पूरा दिन पड़ा था, आराम से सोच लेते। इतनी जल्दबाजी क्यों की?

(Sochne ko pura din pada tha, aaram se soch lete. Itni jaldbazi kyon ki?)

You had the whole day to think, you should have taken your time. Why did you make a hurry?

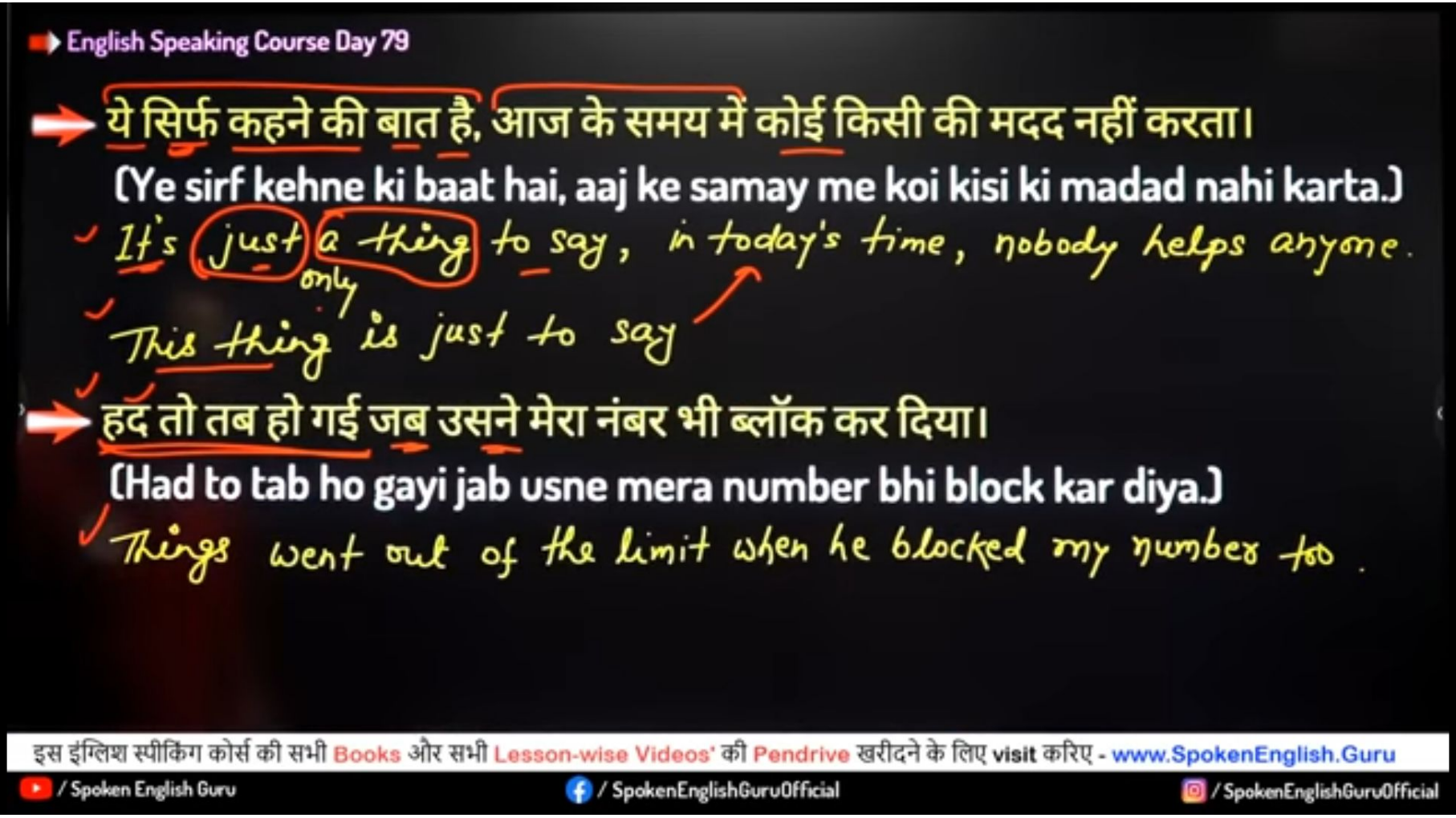
जो कहते हैं तुम्हें कुछ नहीं आता, ज़रा उनसे पूछो उन्हें क्या आता है।

(Jo kehte hain tumhe kuchh nhi aata, zara unse puchho unhe kya ata hai.)

Those who say you know nothing, just ask them what they know.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial


English Speaking Course Day 79
ये सिर्फ कहने की बात है, आज के समय में कोई किसी की मदद नहीं करता।
(Ye sirf kehne ki baat hai, aaj ke samay me koi kisi ki madad nahi karta.)
It's just a thing to say, in today's time, nobody helps anyone.
only
This thing is just to say
हद तो तब हो गई जब उसने मेरा नंबर भी ब्लॉक कर दिया।
(Had to tab ho gayi jab usne mera number bhi block kar diya.)
Things went out of the limit when he blocked my number too.
इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru
/ Spoken English Guru
/ SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial
/ SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course Day 79

ये सिर्फ कहने की बात है, आज के समय में कोई किसी की मदद नहीं करता।

(Ye sirf kehne ki baat hai, aaj ke samay me koi kisi ki madad nahi karta.)

It's just a thing to say, in today's time, nobody helps anyone.

only

This thing is just to say

हद तो तब हो गई जब उसने मेरा नंबर भी ब्लॉक कर दिया।

(Had to tab ho gayi jab usne mera number bhi block kar diya.)

Things went out of the limit when he blocked my number too.

The most shocking thing was that he blocked my number too.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course Day 79

तुम्हें उसे अपनी बढ़ास निकालने देनी चाहिए थी, आखिर वो तुम्हारा रिश्तेदार है, भले ही दूर का हो।

(Tumhe use apni badhaas nikalne deni chahiye thi, akhir vo tumhara rishtedaar, bhale hi door ka ho.)

You should have let him vent his anger, after all, he is your relative, though a distant one.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course Day 79

बड़े सपने देखने में कोई बुराई नहीं है, पर उन सपनों को पूरा करने के लिए ज़्यादा मेहनत करनी पड़ती है।

(Bade sapne dekhne me koi burai nahi hai, par un sapno ko poora karne ke liye zyada mehnat karni padti hai.)

There is nothing wrong in dreaming big, but one has to work harder to fulfill those dreams.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course Day 79

उसे आस पास के कमरों में कई भारतीय और चीनी लड़के मिले। हिंदी बोलने वाले लड़कों से मिल के उसे ऐसा लगा मानो वो लंदन में नहीं दिल्ली में है।

(Use aas paas ke kamron me kai Indian aur Chinese ladke mile. Hindi bolne vaale ladkon se mil ke use aisa laga maano vo London me nahin Delhi me hai.)

He found (came across) many Indian and Chinese boys in the adjacent / adjoining / nearby rooms. Meeting Hindi-speaking boys, he felt as if he is not in London but in Delhi.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course Day 79

उसे आस पास के कमरों में कई भारतीय और चीनी लड़के मिले। हिंदी बोलने वाले लड़कों से मिल के उसे ऐसा लगा मानो वो लंदन में नहीं दिल्ली में है।

(Use aas paas ke kamron me kai Indian aur Chinese ladke mile. Hindi bolne vaale ladkon se mil ke use aisa laga maano vo London me nahin Delhi me hai.)

He found (came across) many Indian and Chinese boys in the adjacent / adjoining / nearby rooms. Meeting Hindi-speaking boys, he felt as if he is not in London but in Delhi.
it seemed to him

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course Day 79

जब तक कोई बात पूरी तरह से पक्की न हो, उसके बारे में ढिंढोरा नहीं पीटना चाहिए क्योंकि अगर वैसा नहीं होता है तो सब मज़ाक उड़ाते हैं।

(Jab tak koi baat poori tarah se pakki na ho, uske baare me dhindhora nahi peetna chahie kyonki agar vaisa nahi hota hai to sab mazaak udaate hain.)

Until something is completely confirmed, one should not proclaim/boast about it because if it doesn't happen that-way, then everyone makes fun of it.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course Day 80

ड्राईवर की लापरवाही के कारण बस दीवार से टकरा गई।

(Driver ki laparwahi ke karan bus deewar se takra gayi.)

The bus collided with the wall due to the negligence of the driver.

Pat on the back

राहुल की सरकारी जॉब लगने पर उसके पापा ने उसकी पीठ थपथपाई।

(Rahul ki sarkari job lagne par uske Papa ne uski peeth thapthapaee.)

His father patted him on the back when Rahul got a government job.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course Day 80

जिसने तुम्हें जाने दिया वो मेरा दोस्त था।

(Jisne tumhe jaane diya vo mera dost tha.)

The one, who let you go, was my friend.

जिन्होंने तुम्हें जाने दिया वो मेरे दोस्त थे।

(Jinhone tumhe jaane diya vo mere dost the.)

The ones, who let you go, were my friends.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course Day 80

जिसने तुम्हें जाने दिया वो मेरा दोस्त था।

(Jisne tumhe jaane diya vo mera dost tha.)

The one, who let you go, was my friend.

That who let you go, was my friend.

जिन्होंने तुम्हें जाने दिया वो मेरे दोस्त थे।

(Jinhone tumhe jaane diya vo mere dost the.)

The ones, who let you go, were my friends.

Those who let you go, were my friends.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course Day 80

बगीचे में एक सुंदर गुलाब खिला हुआ है।

(Bageeche me ek sundar gulab khila huwa hai.)

A beautiful rose is blooming in the garden.

wrap

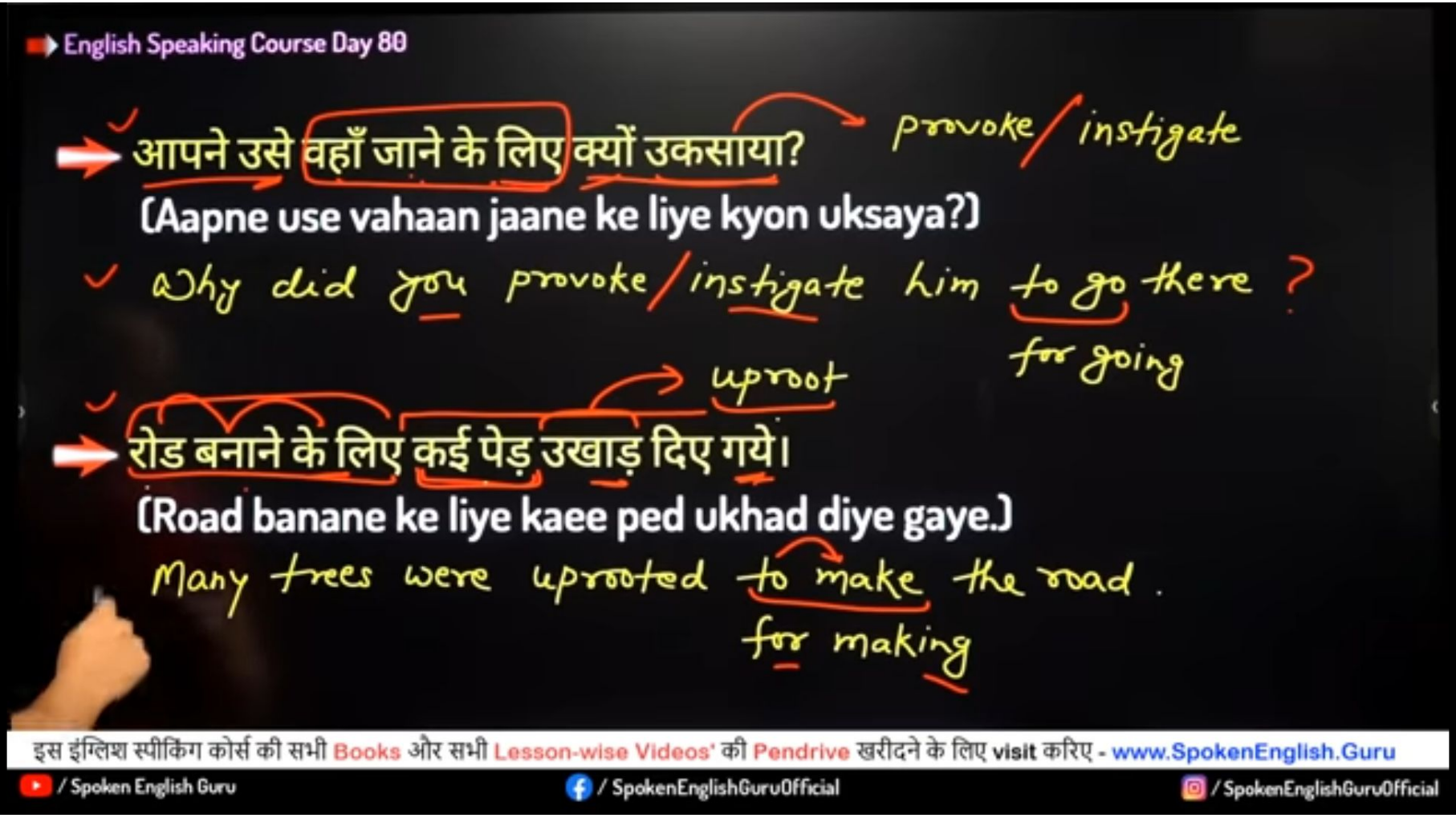
पैक करने से पहले, इस सामान को कागज़ से लपेटा जाता है।

(Pack karne se pehle, is saaman ko kagaz se lapeta jaata hai.)

Before packing, this item is wrapped with the paper.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial



इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru
/ Spoken English Guru
/ SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial
/ SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

English Speaking Course Day 80

वो हर महीने आपके घर आता होगा न? Question Tag

(Vo har mahine aapke ghar aata rahta hoga na?)

He would be coming to your house every month, wouldn't he?
must
mustn't he?

उसे वहाँ जाने की ज़रूरत पड़ती ही नहीं।

(Use vahaan jaane ki zarurat padti hi nahi.)

He doesn't need to go there.
He needn't go there.

इस इंग्लिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स की सभी Books और सभी Lesson-wise Videos' की Pendrive खरीदने के लिए visit करिए - www.SpokenEnglish.Guru

/ Spoken English Guru / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial / SpokenEnglishGuruOfficial

KD LIVE

Conjunction



Download Now!

KD LIVE App

Email: online@kdcampus.org | Contact : 8586903756 /8586903746

Classes of Conjunction

1. **CO-ORDINATING CONJUNCTION:-** Joins statements or clauses of equal rank. ('Coordinating' means of 'equal rank'.)

   (एक ही Rank के वाक्यों एवं clause को जोड़ता है।)

   Now what is the meaning of Equal Rank? (Equal Rank का अर्थ क्या है?)

   Let us see some examples. (कुछ उदाहरण देखते हैं।)

Examples

1. He is rich but miser. (×)
   Adj. Noun

'But' is a Co-ordinating Conjunction so both the words joined by a Co-ordinating Conjunction must be of equal rank.

Examples

He is rich but miserly. (✓)
Adj. Adj.

Examples

2. He is foolish and coward. (×)
   Adj. Noun

   He is foolish and cowardly. (✓)
   Adj. Adj.

3. She ate an apple, an orange and washed her hands. (×)
   Noun Noun Verb

   She ate an apple and an orange and then washed her hands. (✓)
   Noun Noun Verb

Examples

4. It is like doing nothing or be idle. (×)
   (doing: Gerund; be: $V_{b.f}$)

   It is like doing nothing or being idle. (✓)
   (doing: Gerund; being: Gerund)

5. He likes to jog and running when he exercises. (×)
   (to jog: Infinitive; running: Gerund)

   He likes to jog and to run when he exercises. (✓)
   (to jog: Infinitive; to run: Infinitive)

6. She works honestly and with sincerity. (×)
   (honestly: Adverb; with: Prep; sincerity: Noun)

   She works honestly and sincerely. (✓)
   (honestly: Adverb; sincerely: Adverb)

Co-ordinating Conjunctions are of four types

1. Cumulative

Merely adds one statement to another.

(दो वाक्यों को जोड़ता है)

Eg:- She cooks and I clean.

2. Adversative

Expresses contrast between two sentences.

(दो वाक्यों के बीच का विरोध दर्शाता है।)

Eg:- He worked hard but he failed.

3. Alternative

Expresses a choice between two alternatives.

(दो विकल्प के बीच चुनाव दर्शाता है।)

Eg:- She must work hard or she will fail.

4. Illative

Expresses an Inference.

(निष्कर्ष दर्शाता है।)

Eg:-

We must have neglected the instructions for the pandemic spread rapidly.

Here 'for' means 'because'.

2. SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS:- The Conjunction introducing the dependent or subordinate clause is called a Subordinating Conjunction.

Examples After, Because, If, That, Though, Although, Till, Before, Unless, As, When, While.

Subordinating Conjunction

1. If I had seen him, I would have greeted him.
   Subordinate Clause — Principal Clause
2. He ran away because the police were after him.
3. Although he worked hard, he failed.
4. Kindly wait till I pack my bag.
5. You will not succeed unless you work hard.

Subordinating Conjunctions may be classified according to their meanings

TIME — before, till, since, after

Examples

1. I haven't seen him since he left India.
2. Wait till he returns.

CAUSE — because, since, as

Examples

1. Since I was ill, I did not come.
2. As he was a brave heart, he joined the army

PURPOSE — so that, lest

Examples

1. We eat so that we may live.
2. Run fast lest you should miss the bus.

Subordinating Conjunctions may be classified according to their meanings

RESULT — so, therefore

Examples

1. He worked hard so he passed.
2. He was severely injured therefore he died.

CONDITION — If, unless

Examples

1. If you work hard, you will pass.
2. Unless he invites us, we won't go to party.

Subordinating Conjunctions may be classified according to their meanings

CONCESSION — though, although

Examples

1. Though he cheated me yet I love him.
2. A book is a book although it has nothing new.

COMPARISON — than, rather than, whether, as much as, whereas

Examples

1. He is stronger than I.
2. He loves me as much as she.
3. He will take tea rather than coffee.
4. He is happy whereas others are sad.

In the following sentences use suitable Conjunction.

(निम्नलिखित वाक्यों में उपयुक्त Conjunction का प्रयोग करें।)

1. He is rich _____ happy.
2. She is rich _____ unhappy.
3. _____ he worked hard, he passed.
4. He worked hard _____ he passed.
5. _____ he worked hard, he failed.
6. He worked hard _____ he failed.
7. Take care _____ you will fall.
8. Take care _____ you should fall.
9. I will not come _____ it rains.
10. I will come _____ it rains.

In the following sentences use suitable Conjunction.
(निम्नलिखित वाक्यों में उपयुक्त Conjunction का प्रयोग करें।)

11. She is intelligent _____ her brother is foolish.
12. _____ there is will, there is a way.
13. _____ he returns home, no one will go to sleep.
14. _____ the train gets the signal, it will not leave the platform.
15. _____ he invites you, you should not go.
16. We eat _____ we may live.
17. A lie is a lie _____ it saves one's life.

18. Smartphone cameras can now take pictures of near-professional quality, so they also have limitations.

(1) pictures of (2) so they also have limitations

(3) can now take (4) near-professional quality

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018 15 March, 2019 Evening

19. Cyclone Idai killed at least (1)/17 people in Zimbabwe and Mozambique although (2)/ it tore across Southern Africa (3)/ No error (4).

SSC PRE – 2018, 4th June, 2019 Morning

20. Our nation can make significant growth but if we all work collectively.

(1) but if we all (2) make significant growth

(3) Our nation can (4) work collectively

CHSL-2018, 11 July, 2019, Evening

21. I was surprised to see as Avika could write such good poems in Hindi.

(1) to see as Avika (2) I was surprised

(3) could write (4) such good poems in Hindi

CGL MAINS 2018, 12 September, 2019

22. He was rejected because he was too young.

(1) so (2) hence

(3) though (4) No improvement

(SSC Tax Assistant (IncomeTax & Central Excise) Exam. 12.11.2006)

23. Strenuous as it was, they went on with their task.

(1) since it was (2) because it was

(3) although it was (4) No improvement

(SSC Statistical Investigators Grade-IV Exam. 12.09.2010)

24. Since he worked hard he failed to secure good grades.

(1) As (2) When
(3) Though (4) No improvement

(FCI Assistant Grade-III Exam. 05.02.2012 (Ist Sitting)

25. Mary wondered if the other girls were as excited as she was.

(1) that (2) whether
(3) that if (4) No improvement

(SSC Stenographer Grade 'C' & 'D' Exam. 16.10.2011)

26. The man ate an apple, an orange, and washed his hands.

(1) an apple and an orange, and washed his hands
(2) an apple, an orange, washed his hands
(3) an apple, an orange and his washed hands
(4) No improvement

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 19.05.2013)

27. The actor is out of jail, and not exactly a free man, since he will be under house arrest for an additional 90 days.

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 19.05.2013)

(1) if not exactly a free man

(2) but not exactly a free man

(3) though exactly a free man

(4) No improvement

28. Rice is to the Japanese while potatoes are to many Europeans

(1) which (2) that

(3) what (4) No improvement.

(SSC Section Officer (Commercial Audit) Exam. 26.11.2006)

Answers

1. rich (desirable Adj) — happy (desirable Adj)

both 'desirable' Adjectives

Conjunction — and (और) & as well as (साथ ही साथ)

2. rich (desirable Adj) — unhappy (undesirable Adj)

Contrast

Conjunction — but (लेकिन), yet, still (फिर भी)

Answers

3. As, Since, Because (चूंकि, क्योंकि)
4. and, so, therefore. that's why, hence
5. Though, although
6. but, yet, still
7. or, else, otherwise
8. 'lest ... should' is a pair of conjunction
9. if, in case
10. even if
11. but (note : here we cannot use 'yet' or 'still')
12. Where
13. Until. This sentence is time- oriented
14. Until
15. Unless. The sentence is action-oriented.
16. so that/ in order that — ताकि
17. even if

Answers

18. (2) Replace 'so' with 'but'. 'Limitations' introduce something contradictory hence use 'but'.
19. (2) Replace 'although' with 'when'.
20. (1) Remove but or add 'only' after 'but'. We can also replace 'but' with 'only if'.
21. (1) Replace 'as' with 'that'.
22. (4) No improvement
23. (3) Here 'strenuous although it has' should be used.
Although (के बावजूद) means in spite of the fact that.
24. (3) Replace 'since' with 'though'.
'Though' means 'inspite of the fact that' (के बावजूद). When the result is contrary to what was expected of the action though'.
25. (4) No improvement
26. (1) Here 'an apple and an orange and washed his' should be used.
27. (2) Here contrast is evident so conjunction 'but' will be used here.
hence replace 'and not exactly a free man' with 'but not exactly a free man'.
28. (3) Replace 'while' with 'what'.

- **Some Conjunctions are in pairs. They are called 'Correlative Conjunctions' or merely 'Correlatives'. (कुछ Conjunctions pairs में होते हैं। वे Correlative Conjunctions या सिर्फ Correlatives कहलाते हैं।)**

  Correct Pairs are absolutely mandatory. (Pair सही होना चाहिए ये अत्यन्त जरूरी है।)

जैसेः-

Though	Yet/,	(हालांकि ..... फिर भी)
Although	Yet/,	(हालांकि ..... फिर भी)
No sooner	than	(जैसे ही ... वैसे ही)
Hardly/Scarcely	when	(मुश्किल से ... कि)
As	as	(तुलना करने के लिए प्रयुक्त होता है)
So	as	(तुलना करने के लिए नकारात्मक वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त होता है)
Lest	should + $v_{b.f.}$	(ऐसा न हो कि, वर्ना)
Too	to	(इतना ... कि)

जैसेः-

So	that	(इतना ... कि)
Between	and	(के बीच)
From	to	(... से ...)
Whether	or	
The same	that	(वही ... जो)
Both	and	(दोनों ही)
Not only	but also	(न ही सिर्फ ... बल्कि)

कुछ अन्य Conj. → Or, else, otherwise (वर्ना, अन्यथा)

- **There are certain wrong pairs which we wrongly use because we are habitual of translating from Hindi. (कुछ ऐसे Pairs हम बना लेते हैं जो गलत होते हैं क्योंकि हमें Translation करने की आदत होती है।)**

If ... then (×)

If ... , (✓)

When ... then (×)

When ... , (✓)

As (क्योंकि) ... so (इसलिए) (×)

As (जैसा) ... so (वैसा) (✓)

Eg.:

1. **As I was ill ~~so~~, I did not come.**
2. **As you sow so shall you reap.**

As/ Since/ because .... therefore/ that's why/ so/ since (×)

As/ Since/ because ..... , (✓)

If ... or (×)

1. You must either (1)/ be regular with your studies (2)/ and study for longer period before the examination. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 1997)

2. The period (1)/ between 1980 to 1990 (2)/ was very significant in my life. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 25.11.2007)

3. It is (1)/ nothing else (2)/ than pride. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II Exam. Paper-II 04.08.2011)

4. We had scarcely (1)/ reached the place (2) than it started to rain heavily. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC FCI Assistant Grade-III Main Exam. 07.04.2013)

5. We had (1)/ hardly reached the (2)/ platform than the train came in. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam. 28.09.2014 (TF No. 482 RN 5)

6. I will have (1)/ both the blue (2)/ or the black pen. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC CHSL (10+2) LDC, DEO & PA/SA Exam, 15.11.2015 (Ist Sitting) TF No. 6636838)

7. Write down the address lest you may forget.

(1) you may not forget (2) you cannot forget

(3) you will forget (4) you should forget

(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 05.12.2004)

8. No sooner had the teacher entered the room **and** the boys rushed to their seats.

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 30.10.2008)

(1) when (2) than
(3) but (4) No improvement

9. He is not only a good teacher **but** a good man.

(SSC Delhi Police Sub-Inspector (SI) Exam. 19.08.2012)

(1) instead also (2) but seldom
(3) but also (4) No improvement

10. As I am suffering from fever **so grant me** leave for two days.

(1) and grant me (2) please grant me
(3) grant myself (4) No improvement

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam.12.04.2015 Kolkata Region, TF No. 315 RI 3)

Answers

1. (3) Replace ‘and’ with ‘or’ because correct pair of conjunction is either ... or
2. (2) Replace ‘between’ with ‘from’ because the correct pair needed here is 'from.... to.
3. (3) Replace ‘than’ with ‘but’ because the correct pair ‘nothing else ... but’.
4. (3) Replace ‘than’ with ‘when’ because the correct pair is ‘scarcely ... when’.
5. (3) Replace ‘than’ with ‘when’.
6. (3) Replace ‘or’ with ‘and’.
7. (4) Replace ‘you may forget’ with ‘you should forget’.
8. (2) Replace ‘and’ with ‘than’ because the correct pair is ‘no sooner ... than’.
9. (3) Replace ‘but’ with ‘but also’. The correct pair is ‘not only ... but also’.
10. (2) ‘As’ is not followed by ‘so’ (Exception ‘As you sow so shall you reap’)

12. He asked me if I was comfortable or not.

13. He is so ill to walk.

14. He was such a versatile actor that he played every role exceptionally well.

15. He is such a player as team India always wished to have.

16. He is such a fool _____ he understands nothing.

17. He is such a fool _____ I have never seen.

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018
14 March, 2019 Morning

18. He is not such a clever boy that you are.

(1) clever boy (2) such a

(3) that you are (4) He is not

19. I doubt _____ he will help you.

20. I don't doubt _____ you will succeed in life.

21. Did he doubt _____ I would succeed in life?

Answers

12. 'If ... or'. (×)
'Whether ... or'. (✓)
Change 'if' into 'whether'.

13. 'so ... to'. (×)
'too ... to'. (✓)
Change 'so' into 'too'.

14. 'such (इतना) ... that (कि)'

When 2nd part substantiates the 1st part.

(जब 2nd part, 1st part का सबूत देता है।)

15. 'such (ऐसा) ... as (जैसा)'

When the 2nd part categorizes the 1st part. (जब 2nd, part 1st part के श्रेणी/ वर्ग दर्शाता है।)

16. 'such ... that'.

Here the 2nd part gives a proof.

17. 'such ... as'.

Here the 2nd part categorizes the 1st part.

18. (3) Replace 'that' with 'as'. 'Such ...as' is used to categorize.

19. 'Doubt ... if'.

The sentence is positive.

20. 'Doubt ... that'.

The sentence is negative.

21. 'Doubt .... that'

The sentence is Interrogative.

22. This is the same dress _____ I had bought.

23. This is the same suit _____ mine.

24. As soon as I get the tickets then I will inform you.

25. Trying to please both his boss and wife puts him _____ the devil _____ the deep blue sea.

26. He worked _____ dawn _____ dusk.

Answers

22. 'The same' is followed by 'that' is a verb follows.
23. 'The same' is followed by 'as' if no verb follows.
24. 'As soon as' is not followed by 'then'.
    Remove 'then'.
25. 'Between ... and'.
    'Between the devil and the deep blue sea' means 'between two equally difficult choices.' (दो समान कठीन परिस्थितियों के बीच)
26. 'from ... to'.
    Some examples that take 'from ... to'.
    (1) 'From dawn to dusk' → सुबह से शाम तक
    (2) 'From pillar to post' → दर – दर
    (3) From top to bottom
    (4) From beginning to end
    (5) From morning to evening

'As ... as' and 'So ... as' take Positive Degree of Adjective/ Adverb.

Examples

1. She ran as faster as she could. (×)

   Comparative Degree of Adverb

   She ran as fast as she could. (✓)

   Positive Degree

2. He is as wiser as Solomon. (×)

   Comparative Degree of Adjective

   He is as wise as Solomon. (✓)

   Positive Degree

As ... as (In +ve and –ve sentence)

So ... as (In –ve sentences)

(Both are used to make a comparison
(दोनों का प्रयोग तुलना करने के लिए होता है।)

- **In the last example you saw that the Comparison is between 'he' and 'Solomon' but why? (आखरी उदाहरण में आपने देखा कि लड़के की तुलना Solomon से हुई लेकिन ऐसा क्यों हुआ) The Comparison is always with the perfect example that can be chosen for the given situation. (तुलना हमेश सबसे अच्छे उदाहरण के साथ किया जाता है जिसका प्रयोग उस हालात में सबसे सटीक हो।)**

Let us see some examples.

- **As red as a rose**
- **As soft as fur**
- **As white as snow**
- **As fast as a deer**
- **As blind as a bat**
- **As busy as a bee**
- **As cunning as a fox**
- **As drunk as a lord**
- **As fat as a pig**
- **As fit as a fiddle**

- As gentle as a lamb
- As green as grass
- As hard as a nail
- As heavy as lead
- As hungry as a wolf
- As light as a feather
- As mean as a snake
- As poor as a church mouse
- As steady as a rock
- As good as gold
- As sweet as honey
- As bald as an egg
- As cool as a cucumber
- As swift as a hare/ an arrow/ lightning
- As alike as two peas
- As proud/vain as a peacock
- As hot as a furnace
- As slow as a turtle/ snail
- As fluffy as a cotton candy
- Sleep like a baby
- Eat like a pig

- **Take care lest he _____.**

  (i) may fall (ii) fall (iii) falls

  'Lest .... should' is a pair of conjunction but here we do not have any option comprising 'should'. ('Lest .... should' Conjunction का एक pair है पर यहाँ should किसी option में नहीं हैं।)

  We have two options (हमारे पास 2 विकल्प है) —

  (1) Lest ... should + $V_{b.f}$

  Or

  (2) Lest ... $V_{b.f}$

Ans. → (ii) As 'should + $V_{b.f}$' is missing here, $V_{b.f}$ is the only option available that is correct.

Superfluous Pair

'The reason why .... due to/ because'. (×)

'The reason why' and 'because'/ 'due to' mean the same.

They make a superfluous pair.

'The reason why ... that'. (✓) ('that' is not always needed. See example 2)

1. The reason why (1)/he was rejected (2)/was because he was too young. (3)/No Error. (4).

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 05.06.2005)

2. The reason for (1)/ my absence is (2)/ due to ill health (3)/ No Error (4)

SSC CGL-2016 (8th September, Evening)

3. The reason Janet came dressed (1) / as Lady Gaga was because she'd been told (2) / it was a costume party (3) / No error (4) .

SSC CGL-2016 (2nd September, Evening)

4. The reason why I was late was because I boarded the wrong bus.

Answers

1. (3) Replace ‘because’ with ‘that’ because the ‘reason why’ becomes superfluous with ‘because’.

2. (3) Presence of both 'reason' and 'due to' in a sentence makes it superfluous.

   Hence remove 'due to' from part (3).

3. (2) The correct pair is the reason ------- that. 'Reason' with ‘because’ becomes superfluous.

   Hence replace 'because' with 'that'.

4. Change because into 'that'.

- 'Would rather ... than'
  or
  'prefer ... to'

Examples

1. I would rather take tea than coffee.
2. I prefer tea to coffee.

'Prefer' takes preposition 'to'. 'Would rather' takes 'than'.

Inversion

- If a sentence is Negative Introductory, the sentence that follows is in Inversion. In Inversion the Helping Verb comes before the Subject.

For detail see Inversion

(अगर वाक्य Negative शब्द से शुरू हो तो फिर वाक्य Inversion में होता है। Inversion में Helping Verb, Subject के पहले होता है।)

Examples

1. No sooner (1)/ I had spoken, (2) than he left. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 09.09.2001)

2. No sooner (1)/ they had received the guests (2)/ than they began entertaining them. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II, Exam. 16.09.2012)

3. We had (1)/ hardly reached the (2)/ platform than the train came in. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam. 28.09.2014 (TF No. 482 RN 5)

Inversion

4. Not only we seen (1)/ the Kali temple but (2)/ also the Thirunelli temple. (3)/ No error (4)

SSC CHSL-2016, 30th Jan, Evening

5. Not only we saw (1)/ the President but also (2)/ the Chief Minister of Delhi. (3)/ No Error (4)

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2017, 2 July, 2018 Morning

6. Neither we borrow nor lend.

7. No sooner the minister had heard (1)/ about the accident (2)/ than he rushed to the spot. (3)/ No Error (4)

(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 17.03.2013, IInd Sitting)

8. Scarcely she had heard the news when she fainted.
(1) she fainted (2) when
(3) heard the news (4) Scarcely she had

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018, 14 March, 2019 Morning

9. Hardly he had stepped out of the house when a tree fell on the roof.
(1) out of (2) Hardly he had
(3) when a tree (4) fell on the roof

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018, 14 March, 2019 Evening

10. Not only they went to see a film, but also had dinner out.
(1) Not only did they go
(2) They didn't go not only
(3) They not only went
(4) No improvement

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 1997)

Answers

1. (2) Replace ‘I had’ with ‘had I’ because when a sentence begins with ‘No sooner’ it takes inversion form.

2. (2) Replace ‘they had’ with ‘had they’ because when a sentence begins with ‘no sooner’ it takes inversion form.

3. (3) Replace ‘than’ with ‘when’. ‘We had hardly reached’ is the correct structure as hardly comes after the ‘Helping Verb’ and before the ‘Main Verb’.

4. (1) Whenever we begin a sentence with negative adverb or adverbial phrase, we use inversion. In inversion verb comes before the subject. Hence replace 'Not only we seen' with 'Not only did we see' or 'not only have we seen'. We need 'did' as 'Helping Verb' if 'Main Verb' is 'V_2'.

5. (1) Either use 'not only' after saw or use structure 'not only did we see'. Conjunction should be followed by same part of speech.

Answers

6. Change 'we borrow' into 'do we borrow'. We need 'do' as 'Helping Verb' if the 'Main Verb' is 'V_1'.

7. (1) When a sentence begin with ‘no sooner’ it takes inversion form.
So ‘had’ will come before ‘the minister’.

8. (4) Replace 'she had' with 'had she'. Scarcely is followed by Inversion if the sentence starts with scarcely.

9. (2) Replace 'he had' with 'had he'. Hardly is followed by Inversion.

10. (1) When a sentence begins with ‘a negative word’ it takes inversion form.
Replace ‘Not only they went’ with ‘not only did they go’.

Misplaced Conjunction

Examples

1. Not only he bakes cakes but also sells them.

2. Neither it is useful nor affordable.

Answers

1. (i) If we use Inversion to correct the sentence, Ans. is → Not only does he bake cakes but also sells them.

   If the M.V is V_1 + s/es, the H.V is 'does'.

   (ii) If we go by misplaced Conjunction,

   He not only bakes (Verb) cakes but also sells (Verb) them.

2. Neither will come after 'it is'. It is neither useful (Adjective) nor affordable (Adjective).

1. You must either tell me (1)/ the whole story or, at least (2)/ the first half of it. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 09.09.2001)

2. None of the diplomats at the conference (1)/was able either to comprehend (2)/ or solve the problem. (3)/No error (4)

(SSC Stenographer (Grade'C' &'D') Exam. 26.09.2010)

3. He is anxious not only (1)/ to acquire knowledge (2)/ but also eager to display it. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 19.05.2013)

4. The college library is (1)/ not only equipped with (2)/ very good books but also with the latest journals. (3)/No error (4)

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam. 22.06.2014)

5. We will pack not only (1)/ the material properly (2)/ but will also deliver it to your valued customers. (3)/ No error (4)

SSC (CPO) MAINS- 2016

6. This laboratory of physicists is (1)/ not only equipped with (2)/ all state-of-the-art instruments but also with outstanding physicists. (3)/ No error (4)

SSC (CPO) MAINS- 2016

Answers

1. (1) ‘Either’ should come after ‘tell me’ because after ‘or’ at least is given. Co-relative conjunction always connects two equal grammatical items.

2. (2) Remove ‘either’ or put ‘either’ after ‘to’.

3. (1) First part of the sentence should read as ‘he is not only anxious’ ... because while using a co-relative conjunction both clauses should be parallel. Anxious and eager (both adjectives) balance each other.

4. (2) Replace ‘not only equipped’ with ‘equipped not only’ because co-relative conjunction always connects two equal grammatical items.

5. (1) Put 'not only' before 'pack'. This is a case of misplaced conjunction.

6. (3) Use 'not only' after 'equipped'. Conjunction must be at the appropriate place.

Too ... to
&
So ... that

SUPERFLUOUS CASE—

Examples

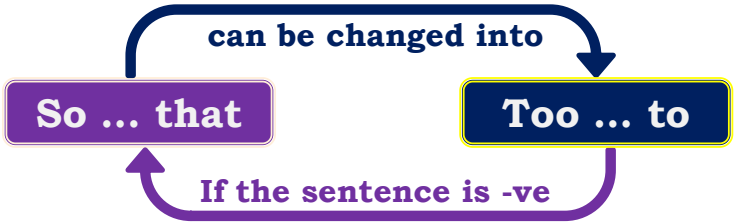
1. **The coffee is too hot to drink it.**

2. **This watch is too expensive for me to afford it.**

Answers

1. **Remove 'it'. 'Coffee' (Noun) and 'it' (Pronoun) cannot come together.**

2. **'Watch' (Noun) and it (Pronoun) cannot come together. Remove it.**



Examples

1. He is so weak that he cannot walk.

   He is too weak to walk.

2. She is so intelligent that she can pass any exam.

Note:- Sentence 2 cannot be changed into 'too ... to' as the sentence is not negative. 'Too ... to' includes 'not' in it.

Remove 'so' from the following sentences:-

Examples

1. She is so ill that she cannot work.
2. The watch is so expensive that I cannot afford it.
3. She is so innocent that she cannot understand his ulterior motives.
4. He is so old that he cannot get any job.
5. The problem was so complicated that no one could solve it.

Answers

1. She is too ill to work.
2. (i) The watch is too expensive for me to afford.
   (ii) The watch is too expensive to be afforded by me.
3. She is too innocent to understand his ulterior motives.
4. He is too old to get any job.
5. (i) The problem was too complicated to be solved by anyone.
   (ii) The problem was too complicated for any one to solve.

6. The process was too simple and easy to understand that it hardly took five minutes for us to grasp it.

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam. 12.04.2015)

(1) No Error
(2) and easy to understand that it hardly
(3) took five minutes for us to grasp it
(4) The process was too simple

7. He studied (1)/ so hardly (2)/ he was sure of passing. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 10.03.2013)

8. The problem was so complicated to be solved in a day.

(SSC FCI Assistant Grade-III Main Exam. 07.04.2013)

(1) too (2) very
(3) much (4) No improvement

Answers

6. (4) Replace 'too' with 'so' because the correct pair is 'so ... that'.

7. (2) Add 'that' in the 2nd part of the sentence. Because the correct pair is 'so ... that'. Also change 'hardly' into 'hard'. 'So hard that' is the correct structure.

8. (1) The correct structure should be as follow:

Too + positive degree adjective + to.

Here 'to + complicated + to' should be used.

★ I am too glad to meet you. (×)

I am very glad to meet you. (✓)

Adv. Adj.

'very' comes with desirable Adj.

Here 'too ... to' is not a pair of Conjunction because it cannot be changed into 'so ... that' with the same meaning 'Glad' is a desirable Adjective and hence will take Adverb 'very'.

(यहाँ 'too ... to' Conjunction का जोड़ा नहीं है क्योंकि इसे 'So that' में परिवर्तित नहीं किया जा सकता। ऐसा करने पर अर्थ गलत निकलेगा 'Glad' desirable Adjective है अतः Adverb 'very' का प्रयोग करें।)

★ **She is too sad to hear this. (✓)**

This sentence is correct though 'too ... to' is not a pair of Conjunction here because it cannot be changed into 'so ... that' with the same meaning.

(ये वाक्य सही है हालाँकि यहाँ 'too ... to' Conjunction का जोड़ा नहीं है क्योंकि वह 'so ... that' में परिवर्तित नहीं किया जा सकता| ऐसा करने से अर्थ गलत निकलता है।)

She is too sad to hear this.

Adv. Adj. Infinitive

'too' comes with undesirable Adjectives.

Conjunction Vis–A–Vis Narration

1 Assertive Sentences → General Statements (कथनात्मक वाक्य)

E.g:- He said _____ he was unwell. (Ans. – that)

We use Conjunction 'that' in Assertive Sentences.

(Assertive Sentences में Conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग होता है।)

Conjunction Vis–A–Vis Narration

2 Interrogative Sentences → Sentences raising questions (प्रश्नातमक वाक्य)

E.g:- (i) He asked me _____ I was unwell.

We use Conjunction 'if/ whether' in Interrogative Sentences which are not of 'Wh' family.

(जो प्रश्नात्मक वाक्य 'Wh' family का नहीं है उनमें Conjunction 'if'/ 'whether' का प्रयोग होता है।)

1. Mary wondered if the other girls were as excited as she was.
   (1) that
   (2) whether
   (3) that if
   (4) No improvement

(SSC Stenographer Grade 'C' & 'D' Exam. 16.10.2011)

Answers

1. (4)

E.g:- (ii) He asked me _____ what I was doing.

We do not use any Conjunction if the Interrogative Sentences are of 'Wh family'.

(अगर प्रश्नातमक वाक्य 'Wh family' का हो तो कोई Conjunction का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।)

1. My elder brother (1)/ asked me (2)/that what I was doing. (3)/No Error (4)

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 21.10.2012 (2nd Sitting)

Answers

1. (3) Remove 'that'. If direct speech is of 'Wh family', no conjunction is used when it is converted into Indirect Speech.

2. He asked me (1)/ that how long (2)/ I would be absent. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC Higher Secondary Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 28.11.2010 (IInd Sitting)

3. My sister asked me/(1) that how long (2)/ I would stay there. (3)/ No Error. (4)

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 21.04.2013)

Answers

2. (2) Remove 'that'.

When questions of 'Wh-family' is changed into indirect speech, Conjunction 'that' is not used.

3. (2) Remove 'that'. See explanation of Q. No. 2.

Conjunction Vis–A–Vis Narration

3 Optative Sentences → Sentences of Wish and Prayer (इच्छासूचक वाक्य)

E.g:-

He prayed _____ god might bless me.

We use Conjunction 'that' in Optative Sentences.

(इच्छासूचक वाक्यों में Conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग होगा)

KD Campus

Conjunction Vis–A–Vis Narration

4 Imperative Sentences → Sentences of Orders, Request etc (आदेशात्मक वाक्य)

E.g:-

He requested me _____ help him.

We use Conjunction 'to' in Imperative Sentences.

(आदेशात्मक वाक्यों में Conjunction 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।)

KD Campus

Conjunction Vis–A–Vis Narration

5 Exclamatory Sentences → Sentences that express gush of feelings (विस्मयबोधक वाक्य)

E.g:-

He exclaimed with joy _____ they had won the match.

In Exclamatory Sentences we use Conjunction 'that'.

(विस्मयबोधक वाक्यों में Conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग होता है।)

Campus

6 Conditional Sentences → In Conditional sentences, one action depends on the other (शर्त रखने वाले वाक्य)

E.g:-

He said _____ if he had seen me, he would have greeted me.

We use Conjunction 'that' in Conditional Sentences.

(Conditional Sentences में Conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग होता है।)

Note:-

Do not get confused on seeing 'that + if' together in conditional sentences.

('that + if' का प्रयोग एक साथ देखकर confuse ना हो।)

Conjunction Vis–A–Vis Adjective

1. As an artist (1)/Raju is as good (2)/, if not better than, Ramesh. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I, Exam. 21.04.2013)

2. He is as efficient if not more labourious than his brother.
3. She is prettier though not as fair as her sister.

Answers

1. (2) The correct structure is as + Positive degree adjective + as.

   Hence add 'as' after 'good'.
2. Add 'as' after 'efficient'.
3. Add 'than' after 'prettier'.

When Positive & Comparative degrees of Adjectives are used, the structure must be as follows.

(अगर Adjective के Positive & Comparative degrees का प्रयोग हो, तो निम्नलिखित structure का प्रयोग होगा।)

As/ so + Positive Degree + as ... + Comparative Degree + than/to

Unless & Until

★ 'Unless' is action oriented. (Unless कार्य-संबंधित होता है।)

E.g:-

1. Unless you work hard, you won't succeed.
2. Unless he invites us, we won't go to the party.

★ Until is time oriented (Until समय संबंधित होता है।)

E.g:-

1. Until the train gets the signal, it won't proceed.
2. Until the red light turns green, we cannot cross the traffic signal.

For detail See Conditional Sentences

'Unless' and 'until' do not take 'will/ shall' and 'not' after them.

1. My friend will not come to attend this marriage unless he is not invited.
   (1) No error
   (2) My friend will not come
   (3) to attend this marriage
   (4) unless he is not invited.

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam, 21.06.2015 IInd Sitting)

2. You will not (1)/ succeed unless you (2)/ don't work hard. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC (10+2) Stenographer Grade 'C' & 'D' Exam. 31.01.2016 TF No. 3513283)

Answers

1. (4) 'not' does not come with 'unless', 'until' and 'lest'.
2. (3) 'Unless' is not followed by any negative word.
   Remove 'don't' from 3rd part of the sentence.

3. The price cannot be quoted **except** we are allowed to examine the sample.

(1) if

(2) unless

(3) because

(4) No improvement

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 11.12.2011 (IInd Sitting (East Zone)

4. You can't get good marks **unless you don't** work hard.

(1) till you don't

(2) unless you

(3) until you don't

(4) No improvement

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 21.10.2012 (Ist Sitting)

Answers

3. (2) Replace 'except' with 'unless'.

4. (2) Replace 'unless you don't' with 'unless you'. 'Unless' is not followed by any negative word.

5. You cannot pass as long as you study.
   (1) provided
   (2) unless
   (3) less
   (4) No improvement

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II Exam. 29.09.2013)

6. I shall not go until I am invited.
   (1) till
   (2) whether
   (3) unless
   (4) No improvement

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam.12.04.2015 Kolkata Region, TF No. 315 RI 3)

Answers

5. (2) Replace 'as long as' with 'unless'.
'As long as' means 'during the whole time'.
'Unless' means 'except on the condition that'.

6. (3) Replace 'until' with 'unless'.
'Until' is a time denoting word whereas 'Unless' is a condition denoting word.

Wrong use of 'Which'

1. I forgot to carry my umbrella which caused the delay.

2. She did not show her admit card which led to her rejection.

★ See the sentences. You find 'which' is near 'Umbrella' and 'Admit Card' but these two nouns are not the reason for the action that follows.

(दोनों वाक्यों को देखें। आप 'which' को 'Umbrella' और Admit Card' के निकट पाऐंगे लेकिन ये दोनों Nouns उस action का कारण नहीं है जो 'which' के बाद है।)

★ We need something that can denote the 1st action and so we need a pronoun 'this' that can denote the nearest action.

(यहाँ कुछ ऐसा चाहिए जो प्रथम वाक्य को सम्बोधित कर सके और Pronoun 'this' से हम निकटतम action को सम्बोधित कर सकते हैं।)

Correct Sentences

1. I forgot to carry my umbrella and this caused the delay.

2. She did not show her admit card and this led to her rejection.

We need Conjunction 'and' to join both the sentences.

(यहाँ Conjunction 'and' का प्रयोग होगा दोनों वाक्यों को जोड़ने के लिए।)

Start Learning

Conjunctions in English Grammar: Types, Memory Tips, Rules with Practice Problems

2021/06/02

Conjunction is a topic of importance for solving many types of questions in General English Paper in Government exams like IBPS, PO, CLERK, SO, SSC, CDS, RRB and Defence Exams. Many direct and indirect questions can be expected from this topic. It is frequently asked in the General English section in the form of Error Spotting, Reading Comprehensions, Fillers etc.

Understanding Conjunctions not only helps you clear the General English section but also enables you to write effectively. Many students end up writing big sentences without proper use of Conjunctions which results in less score. To avoid such mistakes, read through the below guide English (Grammar) on Conjunction & Its Types carefully.

Check out Word Swapping here.

What is a Conjunction?

Conjunctions are the words that glue the words with words. They can be used to join Subject with Subjects, Part of Sentence with parts of Sentences, Sentences with Sentences and clauses together. They assist in conjoining the speech or parts of a language.

Examples of Conjunction:

1. Jessica **and** James are twins
2. She worked hard **yet** she failed.
3. I went to play, **although** it was hot outside.

In the first sentence, Conjunctions is used to join two nouns/ words. In the second sentence, Conjunction is used to join two sentences. In the third sentence, Conjunction is used to join two clauses. Conjunctions can be a single word (and), a group of words (as long as) or correlative words (Not only... but also)

Example:

1. I want to buy a book **and** a pen.
2. She will play **as long as** she can.
3. **Not only** will it spoil your health **but also** make you lose money.

Do check out Noun here.

Why Use Conjunction?

Why Use Conjunction?

- To avoid choppy sentences.
- To avoid redundancy or repetition.
- For better elaboration and understanding of Language.
- The conjunctions also elucidate the knowledge of Idiomatic phrases as some of them are used as ‘As well as’, ‘provided that’.
- To help in different competitive examinations like SSC, banking and other.
- To help in Reading comprehensions and Cloze tests.
- To help in relating one idea with another.

How To Use A Conjunction In A Sentence?

- Subject1+Conjunction+Subject2+Verb+Object
- Subject1+verb+Object+Conjunction+Subject2+verb+object

Examples of how to use a conjunction in a sentence.

- John and Mary are known for their hard work.
- John is known for his hard work but Mary is known for her procrastination.

Check out Direct Indirect Speech here.

Building Blocks of Conjunction:

Additives

- Adds: And, also, as well, either…or, neither…nor, as well, or, else.
- Introduces: For instance, to illustrate, in particular.
- Reference: Speaking about, considering, regarding, the fact that.
- Similarity: In the same way, equally, likewise, in a like manner.
- Identification: Namely, specifically.
- Clarify/Elaboration: that is to say, to put it in this way, in another way, in other words.

Adversative

- Signal Contrast: But, by the way, while, on the other hand, in contrast to, still.
- Emphasis: even more, above all, indeed, besides.
- Concession: But even so, above all, indeed, however, nevertheless, however.
- Dismissal: either way, in either way, whichever happens, even supposing.
- Replacement/correction: or at least, rather, instead.

Casual

- Cause/Reason: in the view of, as, since, for, for the reason that, because of, as.
- Condition: on the condition, provided that, if, provided that, unless.
- Effect/Reason: henceforth, thus, in the result of, as a consequence.
- Purpose: for the purpose of, in the hope of that, so that, in order that.
- Consequence: under the circumstance of, if not, that being the case.
- Respective: in respect to, otherwise, apart from that, in other respects.

Sequential- logical or chronological sequence

- Ordinal: first, firstly, to begin with, to start with, to commence with.
- Continuation: then, next, in support of, moreover, furthermore, subsequently.
- Resumption: to get back to the point, to resume, anyhow, anyway.
- Conclusion: to conclude, as a final point, eventually, at last, in the end, finally.
- Digression: to change the top, by the way, incidentally.
- Summation: to summarize, altogether, to put it in brief.

Do check out Verb here

Conjunctions VS. Connectors

Candidates often get confused between Conjunctions and Connectors. Here is a clear distinction between them. Things to consider while knowing the difference between Conjunctions and Connectors.

Definition	Usage	Examples
Conjunctions	• Used to conjoin a sentence or a part of a sentence. • Conjunctions rely on the knowledge the reader already knows. • Conjunctions imply or carry forward the same idea. • They do not begin any new ideas.	• She does not like parties but she loves enjoys. • She failed because she did not study. • They love to read and write together although they have a different set of ideas. • Sam as well as his parents planned for a vacation to the Bahamas.
Connectors	• Used for proceeding with the statement, not for the assumed knowledge of readers • Connectors are used for the separation of ideas.	• However, the staff was rude to her, she has always loved to go to the same place. • Eventually, this too shall pass

Few examples to consider!

- Connector: Cars are expensive, moreover, they pollute the environment.

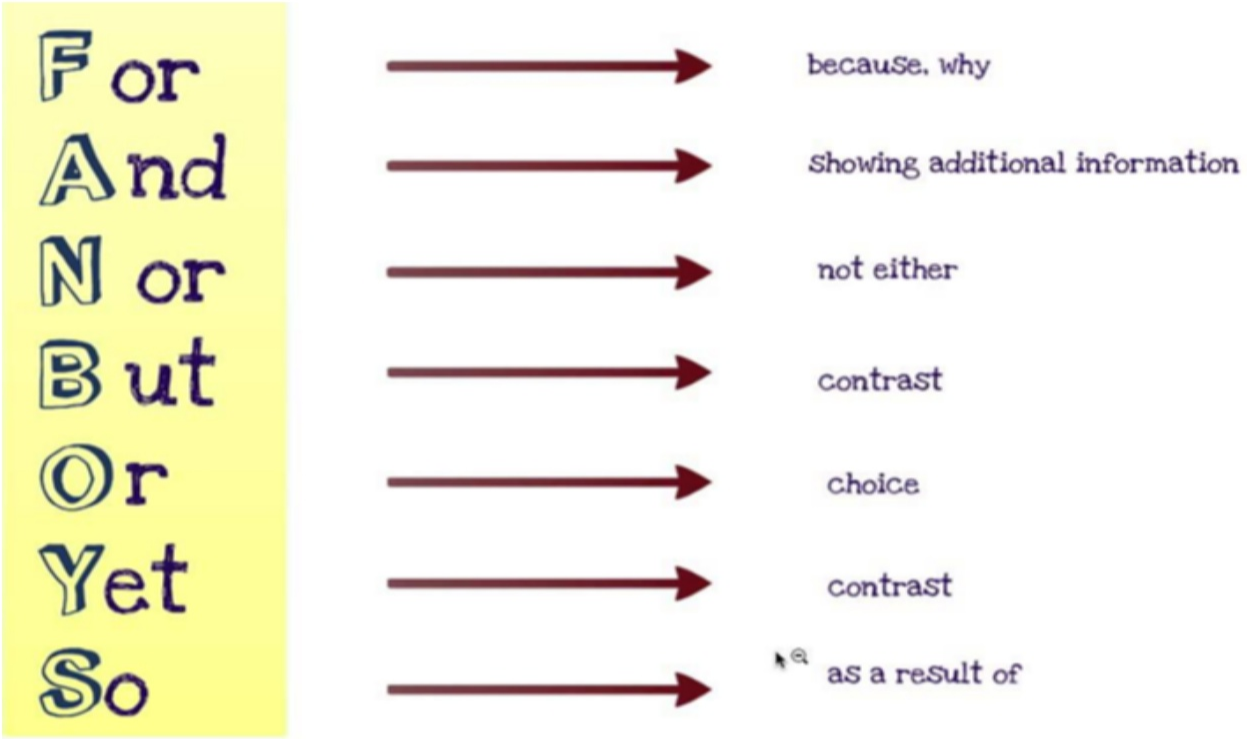
- Conjunctions: Cars are expensive and they pollute the environment.

What are the Types of Conjunctions?

Depending upon the jobs they perform in a sentence, Conjunctions are classified as

Coordinating conjunctions

Coordinating conjunctions are words that conjoin sentences with sentences, phrases with phrases, clauses with clauses, subjects with subjects. The examples of correlative conjunctions are: For, and, nor, but, or, yet, so. Remember the Co-ordinating Conjunctions with an acronym



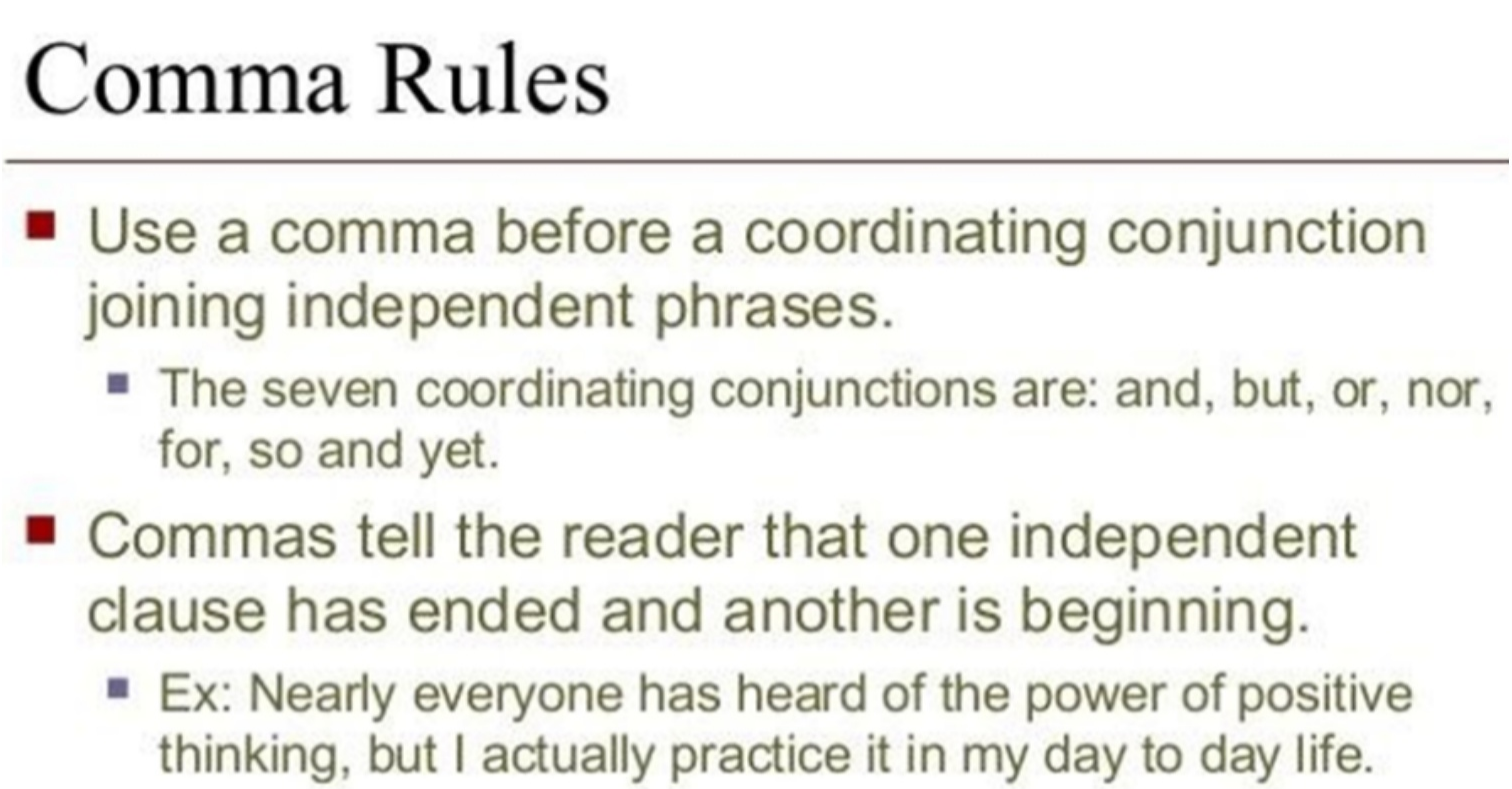
Exception: 'But' and 'Yet', both are additive conjunctions, often confused with each other. But both have different functions to perform. 'But' allows the statement to proceed and supports. 'Yet' injects a degree of 'contradiction'.

Get some practice on Fillers too.

Examples of Coordinating Conjunctions:

- This batch of mushroom stew is savoury and delicious.
- We should hate to waste a drop of water, for it is expensive and valuable these days.
- I will stay outdoors with friends or go home for a while.

Coordinating conjunctions with commas



Exception: Commas should not be used after coordinating conjunctions to open the sentence unless an interrupter immediately follows.

Memory Tip

Ensure that coordinating conjunction is immediately followed by the main clause. Do not begin a sentence with coordinating conjunction. ***Example:***

1. Incorrect: But I don't like tea, I like coffee.
2. Correct: I don't like tea, but I like coffee.

Learn all about Adverbs here.

Subordinating Conjunctions:

Subordinating conjunctions allow and introduce a subordinating or dependent clause. They glue an independent clause with a dependent clause. Out of all the conjunctions, subordinating conjunctions are the most tricky to follow and identify.

Note:

- 'Independent clause' is a clause that does not need any other clause to complete the sentence. They are independent on their own. 'She did not study' is an independent clause.
- 'Dependent clause' is a clause that needs a clause or a sentence to support its completion. 'Because she did not study' is a dependent clause.

Few examples of Subordinating conjunctions are: Although, though, however, as, as long as, once, since, when, while, if, where.

Check out Subject Verb Agreement here.

Structure For Subordinating Conjunctions To Use In A Sentence

1. Independent clause + Subordinating clause + Dependent clause
2. Conjunction + Dependent clause + Independent clause

Exception: 'Subordinating conjunctions' and 'Relative pronouns' are often confused with. Subordinating conjunctions do not act as the subject of a dependent clause, relative pronouns do.

To explain this, 'John is the boy who came last night to the party' John is the boy is an independent clause Who came last night to the party is a dependent clause 'who' relates, hence, is a relative pronoun. We talked about the movies and drama while we ate. 'We talked about the movies and drama' is an independent clause. 'While we ate' is an additive to the sentence. 'while' supports or 'adds', hence, subordinating conjunction. It is believed that 'Because' never begins a sentence. 'Because' is a 'subordinating sentence' and begins a sentence.

Common Mistake: 'Therefore' is not a connector. It is mistaken as a conjunction.

To get details on Common Rules for Spellings, candidates can visit the linked article.

Correlative Conjunctions:

Name them as 'Tag-team' conjunctions or 'Split conjunctions', the work they do is the same! They get their names from the fact that they work together. They split themselves in a sentence and conjoin themselves with different parts of a sentence to make them relative. Examples of Correlative Conjunction

- Either…or: expresses a choice between two subjects/objects.

Example: Either he or she works meticulously.

- Neither…nor: expresses a negation between choice/choices.

Example: Neither he nor she works meticulously.

- No sooner …than: One thing happened immediately another.

Example: No sooner did she arrive home than he came.

- Scarcely/Hardly/Rarely/Barely…when/before: The same idea expressed further.

Example: Scarcely had I come home when my parents reached.

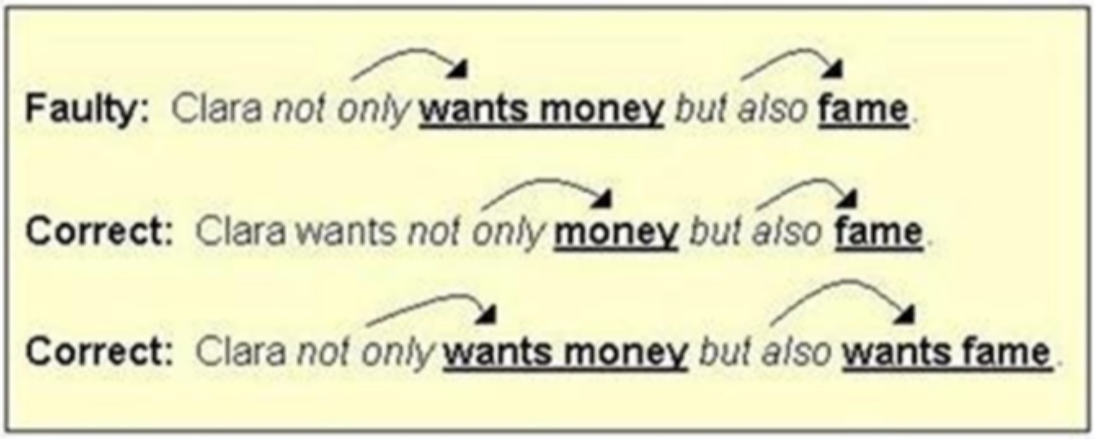
- Whether…or: When two alternatives are possible.

Example: Whether my parents or Sally's parents will go on a vacation.

- Not only…but also: Considering both the options.

Example: Not only John but also Mary has decided to be determined about it.





Structure of Correlative conjunctions

- Subject+ Not only+ verb +but also+ verb+ object
- Subject+ either + verb+ or+ verb+ object
- Either+ subject+ Or+ subject + verb + object
- No sooner did+……. + than+……
- Hardly/Scarcely had+…..when+…….

Here's all you need to know about Gerund, Infinitive and Participle

Memory Tip

When using 'Not only…but also', sentence parallelism of construction should be kept in mind. Example

- (Incorrect) He is not only intelligent but he also has a great sense of humour.
- (Correct) He is not only intelligent but also humorous.

(The sentence parallelism construction on the basis of Tenses) To identify correlative conjunction, look for the split in a sentence.

Note: 'Compound conjunctions' are called compounds as they are made of the assimilation of two or more conjunctions. The examples of Compound conjunctions in English grammar are: 'as much as', 'as soon as', 'As well as'.

Adverbial Conjunction

- A conjunct, transitional conjunction, cohesive conjunction, whatever it may be. They are also known as these.
- The basic function of adverbial conjunctions is to provide a relation between two sequential statements.

Adverbial conjunction	Examples
Accordingly	She does what is told to accordingly.
Again	They again visited their grandparent's home.
Also	Sally works and studies also.
Anyway	How are you, anyway?
Anyhow	We all have to do what we are told, anyhow!
Certainly	We certainly are planning to enjoy after work.
Besides	What does she do besides studying?
Consequently	Consequently, it is humanity that we all are.
Moreover	Moreover, it is a Saturday!

For details on the Synonyms & Antonyms, refer to the linked article.



Points To Remember While Using Conjunctions

- Conjunctions are cohesive devices.
- Conjunctions are 3 in usage, and 5 on the basis of semantic structure.
- Correlative conjunctions are always used and identified in pairs.
- Compound conjunctions are made of the assimilation of two or more conjunctions.
- Coordinating conjunctions can be recognized as 'F.A.N.B.O.YS.'
- Correlative conjunctions to be used with the same part of speech.
- Conjunctions are used as Additives, Adversatives, Casual, and Sequential.
- Conjunctions and Connectors are two different concepts to study.
- Adverbial conjunctions relate to two or more sequential statements.

Check out Subject Verb Agreement here.

Rules While Using Conjunction

Rule #1: Rule of Comma

- Always use a comma before the coordinating conjunctions when it is used to connect two independent clauses.

Example: Tom walked his dog, and he grabbed the mail.

- When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma.

Example: Tom walked his dog and grabbed the main.

- When using a coordinating conjunction to list the items, the usage of a comma before coordinating conjunction is optional.

Example: She can cook potatoes, tomatoes, and carrots. She can cook potatoes, tomatoes and carrots.

Rule #2: The conjunction '**Both'** is followed by '**And'.**

Example: Both eggs **and** ham are a staple food of western culture.

Rule #3: Usage of 'LEST' Lest is used when in a sentence a speaker thinks to avoid something.

Example: Don't push people too hard lest you hurt relationships.

Rule #4: Usage of **'so..as'** 'So..as' as a conjunction is used to show similarity between two objects, people, or subjects. This combination is used in negative sentences only.

Example: She is not so intelligent as her sister is.

Rule #5: Usage of **'as..as'** 'as..as' as a conjunction is used to show the similarity between two objects, people, or subjects. Unlike "so...as" this combination can be used in both positive and negatives sentences

Example: She is as intelligent as her sister is. She is not as intelligent as her sister is.

Rule #6: That 'Lest' should follow 'should' or 'first form of the verb'

Example: Walk carefully lest he may fall.

Rule #7: Unless and Until – Unless it is action oriented. Until is time oriented.

Example: She will not succeed unless she works hard for it. She will not be able to leave home until they return.

Rule #8: If/Whether In a sentence, to mention doubt or confusion, the statement is joined by if or whether.

For details on the Para Jumbles, refer to the linked article.

Example: I am doubtful whether he will come back. I am not sure if he will come back.

Rule #9: That In a sentence, to mention surety, the statement is joined by "That"

Example: I am sure that he will come back. I know that he will not pass this exam.

Rule #10: Usage of **'Not only..but also', 'no sooner...then', 'Hardly..when'** These correlative conjunctions to be followed in their definite pairs only.

Example: Not only she but also he planned for a movie. No sooner did she arrive than they came back. ' Hardly had I completed my lesson when my friends came.

Rule #11: After rather/other, than follows After the usage of Rather and Other, than always follow in a sentence.

Example: I would rather die than beg.

Rule #12: 'Seldom or never'/'Seldom if ever' instead 'seldom or ever'/ 'seldom if never' 'Seldom or never' and 'Seldom if ever' are definite constructions. Using 'Seldom or ever' or 'seldom if never' is an incorrect usage.

Example: The national networks seldom or never telecast good programs.

Rule #13: Between…….and Often mistaken with the preposition "to"

Example: This train runs between Delhi and Mumbai.

Rule #14: What with……and This combination is used to introduce the part of a sentence that indicates the cause of something

Example: What with school **and** sports, she's always busy.

Rule #15: Although/Though……yet/, Used to mention contraction

Example: Though Rahul Gandhi is opulent **yet** is unpopular among youths.

Rule #16: Such……that

Example: The teacher looked at the boy in **such** anger **that** he began to cry.

Want to know about Phrasal Verbs? Learn here.

Practice Problems

Spot the error in the given context.

Q1. Have you decided to go to the States or remain in India?

Solution: A question is being asked about a choice, so the correct correlative conjunction is- 'whether….or'. *The correct sentence is*–Have you decided whether to go to the States or remain in India?

Q2: As if he talks he is a well-educated man.

Solution: The subordinating conjunction 'as if' means 'as though' and is usually written as –subject + were+ complement. The 2 clauses–' he talks ' + 'he is a well-educated man'. The first clause connects to the second with 'as if', since the 2nd clause is the reasoning of the first clause. The correct sentence is — He talks as if he is a well-educated man.

To get details on Types, Rules & Cases of Sentence Correction, candidates can visit the linked article.

Q3: Because he was teaching, he was also learning.

Solution: 'Because' is a subordinating conjunction, used to mean-'for the reason that'; 'since'. The given sentence is talking about 'time' as 2 actions were going on simultaneously. So the correct conjunction would be — 'while'. The correct sentence is — While he was teaching, he was also learning.

Q4: She ran as fast as she could she was late for school lest.

Solution: Lest is subordinating conjunction used for negatives to mean– in order that……not' Lest means 'for fear that'; 'in case'. So the correct way of writing the given sentence is–She ran as fast as she could lest she was late for school.

Q5: He is both sweet-natured but intelligent.

Solution: The conjunction 'both' is always followed by 'and' as it connects 2 words of the same level. In the given sentence 'but' is incorrectly used. 'But is normally used to show contrast. In the given sentence it should be–He is both sweet-natured and intelligent.

For details on the Cloze Test, refer to the linked article.

Q6: Wherever it was early in the morning, I went for a walk.

Solution: 'Wherever' is a subordinating conjunction. A subordinating conjunction joins a simple sentence to an incomplete clause which depends on it to make complete sense. Some other subordinating conjunctions are– because, before, after, when since etc. The main clause is –'I went for a walk' and the subordinating clause is 'it was early morning' they are joined by 'wherever'. The conjunction does not fit the context [as it can mean– in any place there was early morning]. The conjunction that will be right here is– 'as' / 'because' / 'since'. The correct sentence can be written as –

1. Since it was early in the morning, I went for a walk.
2. Because it was early in the morning, I went for a walk.
3. As it was early in the morning, I went for a walk.

Q7: We went to meet him so he wasn't at home.

Solution: The conjunction 'so' is a coordinating conjunction. F-A-N-B-O-Y-S [for-and-nor-but-or-yet-so] Coordinating conjunctions join the clauses of the same rank. i.e. a simple sentence to a simple sentence. The given sentence has 2 simple sentences joined by the conjunction 'so'.[which is used to show cause, result] However, according to the context of the sentence, it should be 'but' as the first part talks about going to meet and the second part about him not being present. As both are contrasting, the correct conjunction will be 'but'. The correct sentence is–We went to meet him but he wasn't at home.

Q8: Unless you do not register your car it will have to be scrapped.

Solution: 'Unless' means 'if not'– since it is negative, adding another negative 'not' is grammatically incorrect. The given sentence has– 'unless…not' The given sentence can be written correctly in two ways: 1–Unless you register your car it will have to be scrapped. 2- If you do not register your car it will have to be scrapped.

To get details on Idioms and Phrases, candidates can visit the linked article.

Q9: She wanted to either eat a hamburger or a subway sandwich.

Solution: 'Either....or is a correlative conjunction. [I.e. a pair of joining words that connects 2 words, phrases or clauses–either..Or/ neither...nor etc.]. When joining 2 clauses/ nouns with correlative conjunction it needs to be written immediately before the word it relates to. In the given sentence the conjunction relates to 2 nouns -'hamburger' and 'subway sandwich'. So the conjunction should be placed immediately before these nouns. [either+noun...or+ noun] The correct sentence is—She wanted to eat either a hamburger or a subway sandwich.

Q. Fill in the blanks with the suitable option given:

1. The air quality in the capital had shown signs of improvement on Monday as it moved from 'very poor' to 'poor' category, _____ experts said it could deteriorate in the coming days due to toxic air coming out of the blazing fire at Bhalswa landfill site.

Ans: But Explanation: The given blank needs a coordinating conjunction to join the two independent clauses – 'the air quality... category' and 'experts .... site'. Hence 'because' is negated as it joins the dependent clause to the independent clause. 'And' is used when both clauses are not in contrast while 'or' is used to refer to when two clauses try to gain more importance.

The given sentence has two independent clauses that are equal in importance but contrast with each other so the correct conjunction to join them is 'but'.

2. India is the second most populous country _____ the seventh largest country by area in the world.

Ans: And Explanation:While, how, but are used for expressing comparison or contradiction. But the sentence is about the continuation or expression of two different facts regarding India one after the other. So "and" should be used here.

For details on the Types and Rules of Tenses, refer to the linked article.

3. You can't pass the IELTS exam _____ you study hard for it, as it is a tough exam to pass.

Ans: Unless Explanation:A condition is shown here and hence requires an adverb that will show a contrast.

4. More than thirty years have now passed _____ I took my first flight.

Ans: Since Explanation: 'Since' in this context has been used as a replacement for 'because'. Hence, 'since' is the appropriate option here.

Hope this article on English (Grammar) was a fun learning session for you. Remember the Types of Conjunction with examples. Now you can learn and practice for all types of competitive apps through our free Testbook App. Download now!

Conjunctions in English Grammar FAQs

Q.1 What is a Conjunction?

Q.1 What is a Conjunction?

Ans.1 Conjunctions are the words that join the words, clauses, and sentences.

Q.2 Why are Conjunctions important?

Ans.2 Conjunctions make sentences more effective to say or write and easy to understand.

Q.3 What are the different types of Conjunction?

Ans.3 The different types of Conjunctions are coordinate, subordinate and correlative conjunctions

Q.4 Which are the coordinating conjunctions?

Ans.4 For, And, Neither, But, Or, Yet, So are coordinating conjunctions.

Q.5 What is a Structure of Conjunction in a sentence?

Ans.5 Subject1+Conjunction+Subject2+Verb+Object Subject1+verb+Object+Conjunction+Subject2+verb+object

Table of Contents

Quick and Handy Grammar Review: Conjunctions 2

Exercise 1:
Fill in the correct coordinating conjunction in the blank. 4

Exercise 2:
Fill in the correct coordinating conjunction in the blank. 5

Exercise 3:
Fill in the blank using one of the subordinating conjunctions from the list. 6

Exercise 4:
Fill in the blank using one of the subordinating conjunctions from the list. 7

Exercise 5:
Fill in the blank using one of the subordinating conjunctions from the list. 8

Exercise 6:
Sentence Stems. Write conclusions to the sentences. 9

Exercise 7:
Insert one pair of correlative conjunctions in the blanks. 10

Exercise 8:
Sentence beginnings. Write beginnings to the sentences. 11

Exercise 9:
Combine the two sentences into one using the conjunction in parentheses. 12

Exercise 10:
Insert a conjunction in the blank. 13

Answer Key 14

Copyright 2012, Red River Press Inc. For use by members of ESL-library.com in accordance with membership terms.

Quick and Handy Grammar Review: Conjunctions

Conjunctions are words that join parts of the sentence. They may join two similar parts of speech, such as two adjectives, two verbs, or two nouns. Conjunctions may also connect two clauses. *Coordinating conjunctions* unite two independent clauses and *subordinating conjunctions* join one dependent clause and one independent clause.

Coordinating Conjunctions:

and	but	or
yet	for	nor
so		

To recall the seven coordinating conjunctions, remember the word FANBOYS [**F**or **A**nd **N**or **B**ut **O**r **Y**et **S**o].

Notes:

- Do not begin a sentence with the coordinating conjunctions *and, but, so*, or *yet*.
- *For* is poetic. It means *because*. *For* is rarely used as a conjunction in modern English.
- *Nor*, used by itself, usually begins a sentence. It is usually followed by *do* or *does* and then the subject. [e.g., *I don't like opera. Nor do I like chamber music.*]
- As a conjunction, *yet* means *but.* It is used more often in writing than in speaking.
- Use a comma before the conjunction when 2 independent clauses are joined. You don't need to use a comma if those clauses are short or if they have the same subject.

Subordinating Conjunctions:

These words are often called *subordinators.* They are used at the beginning of a dependent clause in a complex sentence. Note that the order of the clauses doesn't matter, but there is a comma when the dependent clause is first in the sentence (Subordinating conjunction S V , S V) and no comma when the independent clause is first (S V Subordinating conjunction S V).

after	if	though
although	if only	till
as	in order that	unless
as if	now that	until
as long as	once	when
as though	rather than	whenever
because	since	where
before	so that	whereas
even if	than	wherever
even though	that	while

Copyright 2012, Red River Press Inc. For use by members of ESL-library.com in accordance with membership terms.

Correlative Conjunctions:

Some conjunctions are used in pairs. They use parallel structure, which means that the same grammatical forms appear on each side of the conjunction.

both ... and	neither ... nor	not only ... but also
either ... or	not ... but	whether ... or
as ... as		

Examples of correlative conjunctions:

- **Whether** you *earn* an A **or** *get* a lower grade, do your best. [Each conjunction is followed by a verb]
- **Both** *John* **and** *Bill* are excellent tennis players. [Each conjunction is followed by a noun]
- **Neither** the *professor* **nor** the *students* understood the problem. [Each conjunction is followed by a noun]
- I **not only** *lost* the game **but also** *hurt* my ankle. [Each conjunction is followed by a verb]
- Professor Jenkins is **not only** *patient*, **but also** *stimulating*. [Each conjunction is followed by an adjective]
- Hector did **not** *lose* money at the casino **but** he *did not win* any either. [Each conjunction is followed by a verb]
- Barbara is **as** tall **as** Mary. [Two nouns are compared]

Copyright 2012, Red River Press Inc. For use by members of ESL-library.com in accordance with membership terms.

and	but	so

Exercise 1:
Fill in the correct coordinating conjunction in the blank.

1. The rain is very heavy, _____ the game will probably not be played.

2. John works in a restaurant on weekends _____ during the week.

3. Sherry has a great job, _____ she is a very unhappy person.

4. The sun is shining brightly, _____ the picnic was still cancelled.

5. Rita is an excellent violinist,_____ she will probably be chosen for the orchestra.

6. The security lines are very long at the airport, _____ you should probably leave early for your flight.

7. I will not go to the game, _____ I will watch it on TV.

8. Mary has six brothers _____ eleven cousins.

9. I do not like pasta, _____ I do like pizza.

10. Max loves San Francisco, _____ he is thinking of moving there.

Copyright 2012, Red River Press Inc. For use by members of ESL-library.com in accordance with membership terms.

yet	for	nor	or

Exercise 2:
Fill in the correct coordinating conjunction in the blank.

1. Marsha doesn't play jazz _____ the blues. She prefers hip-hop and rap.

2. John doesn't like chicken. _____ does he like pork or burgers.

3. Sheila works hard, _____ she doesn't make a lot of money.

4. The sun is very strong, _____ Jacob still won't wear any sunscreen.

5. I love you more than anything in the world, _____ you are sweet and kind.

6. Would you like coffee _____ tea? I would prefer a cup of coffee.

7. Henry does not come from Mexico. _____ is from Belize. He is from Honduras.

8. I will go to Montreal _____ Quebec for the weekend. I'm not sure.

9. James is very tired, _____ he will still come with us to the movies.

10. Wanda is very happy, _____ she has finally earned her degree.

Red River press
Copyright 2012, Red River Press Inc. For use by members of ESL-library.com in accordance with membership terms.

in order that	**as long as**	**whenever**
because	**where**	**than**
that		
while	**before**	**unless**

Exercise 3:
Fill in the blank using one of the subordinating conjunctions from the list. Use each word only once.

1. I will never go to that restaurant again _____ I live.

2. _____ Jose needs help, he calls his two brothers.

3. _____ Sheldon works for the post office, he never works Sundays.

4. I would rather read a book _____ watch a stupid television program.

5. _____ Roger goes to Miami, he will buy a new bathing suit.

6. _____ travelers have time to pass through security, it is recommended that they arrive two hours before their flight.

7. I will not go out with you _____ you promise not to smoke

8. _____ Maria is an avid jogger, her sister Julia prefers just to sit on the couch.

9. I do not believe _____ Hector's father is a doctor.

10. Maryam loves the city _____ she now lives.

Copyright 2012, Red River Press Inc. For use by members of ESL-library.com in accordance with membership terms.

as if	**if only**	**though**	**till**	
so that	**since**	**whereas**	**as**	
wherever	**now that**			

Exercise 4:
Fill in the blank using one of the subordinating conjunctions from the list. Use each word only once.

1. Bill will not pay $500 for a suit _____ he can certainly afford it.

2. _____ Juan is a very hard worker, his brother Luis is very lazy.

3. _____ Samantha moved to Boston, she has been very happy.

4. I have prepared a summary chart _____ you can understand conjunctions better.

5. _____ he was driving to work yesterday, Jason got a ticket for speeding.

6. _____ you had called me, I could have helped you.

7. _____ Henry has a job, he can pay his share of the rent.

8. David walks around _____ he is the president of the company.

9. I will stay with you _____ hell freezes over.

10. My new puppy follows me _____ I go.

Red River press
Copyright 2012, Red River Press Inc. For use by members of ESL-library.com in accordance with membership terms.

rather than	**unless**	**before**
once	**while**	**even if**	**because**
until	**if**	**even though**

Exercise 5:
Fill in the blank using one of the subordinating conjunctions from the list. Use each word only once.

1. I would not see that movie _____ you gave me $100.

2. _____ it is raining so hard, the game was cancelled.

3. _____ Sam was driving to school yesterday, he saw an accident.

4. I will love you _____ the end of time.

5. _____ he is the manager's son, he might still be fired because his work is so bad.

6. _____ you need help, just call me.

7. _____ Hank gets settled in, we will visit him.

8. I would like to drive _____ take the bus.

9. I cannot go to that expensive restaurant _____ you pay.

10. Leslie always drinks a cup of hot chocolate to relax her _____ she goes to sleep.

Red River press
Copyright 2012, Red River Press Inc. For use by members of ESL-library.com in accordance with membership terms.

Exercise 6:
Sentence Stems. Write conclusions to the following sentences.

1. I don't like broccoli, but _____.

2. Victoria plays the piano, and _____.

3. Because it is so cold, _____.

4. I really love the music of Beethoven and _____.

5. Maya always studies hard for her exams, so _____.

6. Lester works for an electronics store, so _____.

7. Harvey is one of the best players on the team, but _____.

8. Toronto is a very safe city, and _____.

9. I don't like your cooking. Nor do I _____.

10. We will win the war, for we _____.

Red River press
Copyright 2012, Red River Press Inc. For use by members of ESL-library.com in accordance with membership terms.

both ... and	**neither ... nor**	**not ... but**
not only ... but also		**either ... or**
whether ... or		**as ... as**

Exercise 7:
Insert one pair of correlative conjunctions in the blanks. Use each pair only once.

1. Kenja is _____ fast _____ Martha. They have the same time in the 100 meters.

2. Vicky studies _____ biology _____ chemistry.

3. _____ the professors _____ the students like the new building.

4. Gino is _____ a waiter, _____ a cook instead.

5. I will go to _____ Bermuda _____ St. Thomas on vacation.

6. _____ you stay late _____ leave right now, I want to thank you for your help.

7. Henrietta has _____ an MBA _____ a PhD. That's incredible.

Red River press
Copyright 2012, Red River Press Inc. For use by members of ESL-library.com in accordance with membership terms.

Exercise 8:
Sentence beginnings. Write beginnings to the following sentences.

1. _____ because the weather is so bad.

2. _____, but she also loves to sing.

3. _____ because she is the best student in the class.

4. _____, or I may just stay home.

5. _____, but I got lost anyway.

6. _____, and he also owns two houses in the Dominican Republic.

7. _____, yet he still feels lonely.

8. _____, but her shirt was too small.

9. _____, and she also served excellent cheese.

10. _____, so she had to walk all the way home.

Copyright 2012, Red River Press Inc. For use by members of ESL-library.com in accordance with membership terms.

Exercise 9:

Combine the two sentences into one using the conjunction in parentheses.

1. My sister has many friends. She has not found a special one. [while]

_____

2. John is only eight years old. He can play the piano very well. [although]

_____

3. Alma ate the chicken and rice. She also ate two hamburgers. [not only … but also]

_____

4. Ned is the manager of the bank. He doesn't make a high salary. [though]

_____

5. Gino ate breakfast. Then he washed the dishes. [after]

_____

6. Barbara arrived at home at eight. Then she called her sister. [once]

_____

7. Bill will work late. In fact, he will work until 9:00 p.m. [until]

_____

8. I will never go to that restaurant again. I will live a long time. [as long as]

_____

9. Hal studied a lot. He still got a very low grade. [even though]

_____

10. Everyone likes Hanna. She is patient and relaxed. [because]

_____

Copyright 2012, Red River Press Inc. For use by members of ESL-library.com in accordance with membership terms.

Exercise 10:
Insert a conjunction in the blank.

1. I love Hee Jin, _____ she doesn't love me.

2. _____ Carlita studied all night, she still got a C.

3. You have worked very hard today, _____ you should take the day off tomorrow.

4. Irene has a house in Sicily _____ an apartment in Rome.

5. I will love you _____ the end of time.

6. Carlo cannot go to the theatre _____ you give him a ride.

7. _____ John is very cheap, his brother Bruce is very generous.

8. _____ I cleaned up the kitchen, I took a walk.

9. The professor cancelled the examination _____ the students were all late due to the storm.

10. I will follow you _____ you go.

Copyright 2012, Red River Press Inc. For use by members of ESL-library.com in accordance with membership terms.

Answer Key

Exercise 1: Fill in the correct coordinating conjunction in the blank [and, but, so].

1. so	2. and	3. but	4. but	5. so
6. so	7. but	8. and	9. but	10. so

Exercise 2: Fill in the correct coordinating conjunction in the blank [yet, for, nor, or].

1. or	2. nor	3. yet	4. yet	5. for
6. or	7. nor	8. or	9. yet	10. for
7.				

Exercise 3: Fill in the blank using one of the subordinating conjunctions from the list. Use each word only once.

1. as long as	2. whenever	3. because	4. than	5. before
6. in order that	7. unless	8. while	9. that	10. where

Exercise 4: Fill in the blank using one of the subordinating conjunctions from the list. Use each word only once.

1. though	2. whereas	3. since	4. so that	5. as
6. if only	7. now that	8. as if	9. till	10. wherever

Exercise 5: Fill in the blank using one of the subordinating conjunctions from the list. Use each word only once.

1. even if	2. because	3. while	4. until	5. even though
6. if	7. once	8. rather than	9. unless	10. before

Exercise 6: Sentence Stems. Write conclusions to the following sentences. **Answers will vary. Suggested answers:**

1. I don't like broccoli, but **[I do like carrots].**
2. Victoria plays the piano, and **[she also plays the guitar].**
3. Because it is so cold, **[we should stay home].**
4. I really love the music of Beethoven and **[Mozart]**.
5. Maya always studies hard for her exams, so **[she gets excellent grades]**.
6. Lester works for an electronics store, so **[he can get a discount on laptops]**.
7. Harvey is one of the best players on the team, but **[he is very selfish].**
8. Toronto is a very safe city, and **[Winnipeg is, too].**
9. I don't like your cooking. Nor do I **[like the way you talk].**
10. We will win the war, for we **[are strong and united].**

Exercise 7: Insert one pair of correlative conjunctions in the blanks. Use each pair only once.

1. as ... as	2. not only ... but also	3. neither ... nor	4. not ... but
5. either ... or	6. whether ... or	7. both ... and	

Exercise 8: Sentence beginnings. Write beginnings to the following sentences. **Answers will vary. Suggested answers:**

1. **[We aren't going on the picnic]** because the weather is so bad.
2. **[Carla not only loves to dance]**, but she also loves to sing.
3. **[Everyone likes to sit next to Lucy on exam day]** because she is the best student in the class.
4. **[I might go to the movies]** or I may just stay home.
5. **[I used the GPS]**, but I got lost anyway.
6. **[Roger owns an apartment in Miami]**, and he also owns two houses in the Dominican Republic.
7. **[Wesley has many friends]**, yet he still feels lonely.
8. **[Sheila's skirt fit perfectly]**, but her shirt was too small.
9. **[Nikita served good wine]**, and she also served excellent cheese.
10. **[Paula's car broke down]**, so she had to walk all the way home.

Exercise 9: Combine the two sentences into one using the conjunction in parentheses.

1. While my sister has many friends, she has not found a special one.
2. Although John is only eight years old, he can play the piano very well.
3. Alma not only ate the chicken and rice, but she also ate two hamburgers.
4. Though Ned is the manager of the bank, he doesn't make a high salary.
5. After Gino ate breakfast, he washed the dishes.
6. Once Barbara arrived home, she called her sister.
7. Bill will work until 9:00 p.m.
8. I will never go to that restaurant again as long as I live.
9. Even though Hal studied a lot, he still got a very low grade.
10. Everyone likes Hanna because she is patient and relaxed.

Exercise 10: Insert a conjunction in the blank.

1. but	2. although	3. so	4. and	5. until
6. unless	7. while / whereas	8. after	9. because	10. wherever

Copyright 2012, Red River Press Inc. For use by members of ESL-library.com in accordance with membership terms.

Start Learning

Conjunctions in English Grammar: Types, Memory Tips, Rules with Practice Problems

2021/06/02

Conjunction is a topic of importance for solving many types of questions in General English Paper in Government exams like IBPS, PO, CLERK, SO, SSC, CDS, RRB and Defence Exams. Many direct and indirect questions can be expected from this topic. It is frequently asked in the General English section in the form of Error Spotting, Reading Comprehensions, Fillers etc.

Understanding Conjunctions not only helps you clear the General English section but also enables you to write effectively. Many students end up writing big sentences without proper use of Conjunctions which results in less score. To avoid such mistakes, read through the below guide English (Grammar) on Conjunction & Its Types carefully.

Check out Word Swapping here.

What is a Conjunction?

Conjunctions are the words that glue the words with words. They can be used to join Subject with Subjects, Part of Sentence with parts of Sentences, Sentences with Sentences and clauses together. They assist in conjoining the speech or parts of a language.

Examples of Conjunction:

1. Jessica **and** James are twins
2. She worked hard **yet** she failed.
3. I went to play, **although** it was hot outside.

In the first sentence, Conjunctions is used to join two nouns/ words. In the second sentence, Conjunction is used to join two sentences. In the third sentence, Conjunction is used to join two clauses. Conjunctions can be a single word (and), a group of words (as long as) or correlative words (Not only... but also)

Example:

1. I want to buy a book **and** a pen.
2. She will play **as long as** she can.
3. **Not only** will it spoil your health **but also** make you lose money.

Do check out Noun here.

Why Use Conjunction?

Why Use Conjunction?

- To avoid choppy sentences.
- To avoid redundancy or repetition.
- For better elaboration and understanding of Language.
- The conjunctions also elucidate the knowledge of Idiomatic phrases as some of them are used as ‘As well as’, ‘provided that’.
- To help in different competitive examinations like SSC, banking and other.
- To help in Reading comprehensions and Cloze tests.
- To help in relating one idea with another.

How To Use A Conjunction In A Sentence?

- Subject1+Conjunction+Subject2+Verb+Object
- Subject1+verb+Object+Conjunction+Subject2+verb+object

Examples of how to use a conjunction in a sentence.

- John and Mary are known for their hard work.
- John is known for his hard work but Mary is known for her procrastination.

Check out Direct Indirect Speech here.

Building Blocks of Conjunction:

Additives

- Adds: And, also, as well, either…or, neither…nor, as well, or, else.
- Introduces: For instance, to illustrate, in particular.
- Reference: Speaking about, considering, regarding, the fact that.
- Similarity: In the same way, equally, likewise, in a like manner.
- Identification: Namely, specifically.
- Clarify/Elaboration: that is to say, to put it in this way, in another way, in other words.

Adversative

- Signal Contrast: But, by the way, while, on the other hand, in contrast to, still.
- Emphasis: even more, above all, indeed, besides.
- Concession: But even so, above all, indeed, however, nevertheless, however.
- Dismissal: either way, in either way, whichever happens, even supposing.
- Replacement/correction: or at least, rather, instead.

Casual

- Cause/Reason: in the view of, as, since, for, for the reason that, because of, as.
- Condition: on the condition, provided that, if, provided that, unless.
- Effect/Reason: henceforth, thus, in the result of, as a consequence.
- Purpose: for the purpose of, in the hope of that, so that, in order that.
- Consequence: under the circumstance of, if not, that being the case.
- Respective: in respect to, otherwise, apart from that, in other respects.

Sequential- logical or chronological sequence

- Ordinal: first, firstly, to begin with, to start with, to commence with.
- Continuation: then, next, in support of, moreover, furthermore, subsequently.
- Resumption: to get back to the point, to resume, anyhow, anyway.
- Conclusion: to conclude, as a final point, eventually, at last, in the end, finally.
- Digression: to change the top, by the way, incidentally.
- Summation: to summarize, altogether, to put it in brief.

Do check out Verb here

Conjunctions VS. Connectors

Candidates often get confused between Conjunctions and Connectors. Here is a clear distinction between them. Things to consider while knowing the difference between Conjunctions and Connectors.

Definition	Usage	Examples
Conjunctions	• Used to conjoin a sentence or a part of a sentence. • Conjunctions rely on the knowledge the reader already knows. • Conjunctions imply or carry forward the same idea. • They do not begin any new ideas.	• She does not like parties but she loves enjoys. • She failed because she did not study. • They love to read and write together although they have a different set of ideas. • Sam as well as his parents planned for a vacation to the Bahamas.
Connectors	• Used for proceeding with the statement, not for the assumed knowledge of readers • Connectors are used for the separation of ideas.	• However, the staff was rude to her, she has always loved to go to the same place. • Eventually, this too shall pass

Few examples to consider!

- Connector: Cars are expensive, moreover, they pollute the environment.

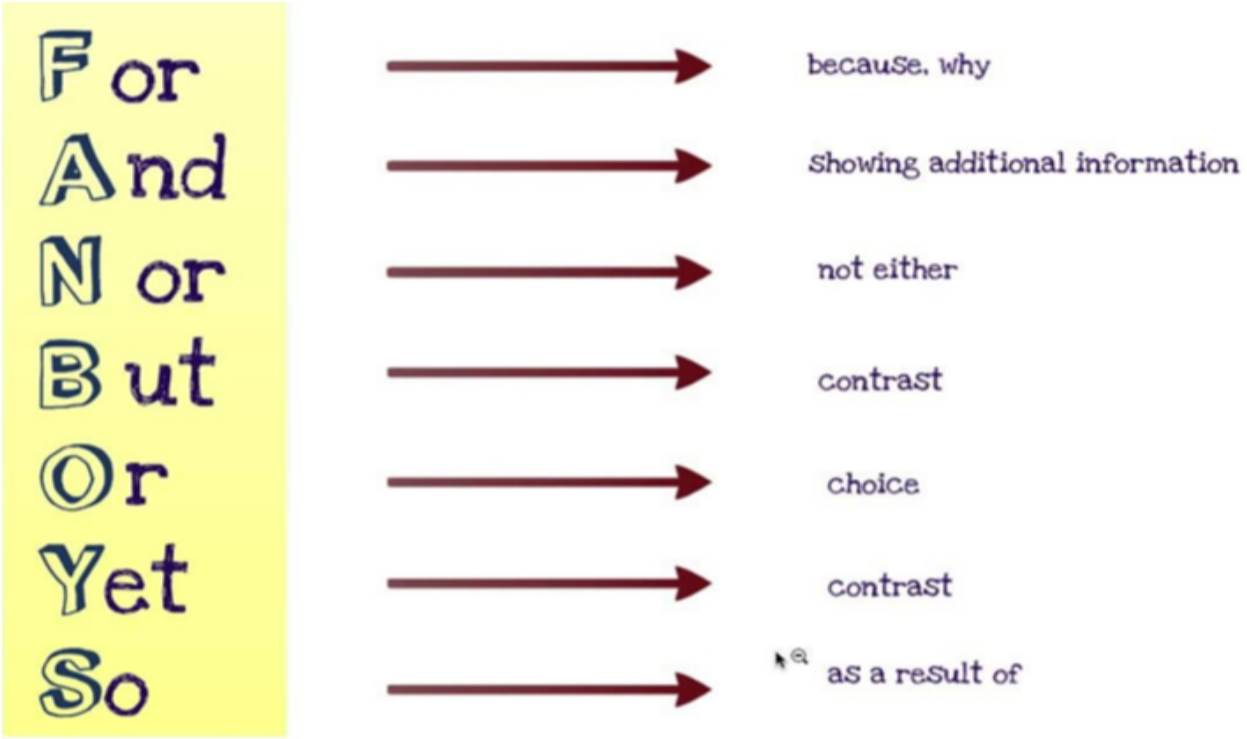
- Conjunctions: Cars are expensive and they pollute the environment.

What are the Types of Conjunctions?

Depending upon the jobs they perform in a sentence, Conjunctions are classified as

Coordinating conjunctions

Coordinating conjunctions are words that conjoin sentences with sentences, phrases with phrases, clauses with clauses, subjects with subjects. The examples of correlative conjunctions are: For, and, nor, but, or, yet, so. Remember the Co-ordinating Conjunctions with an acronym



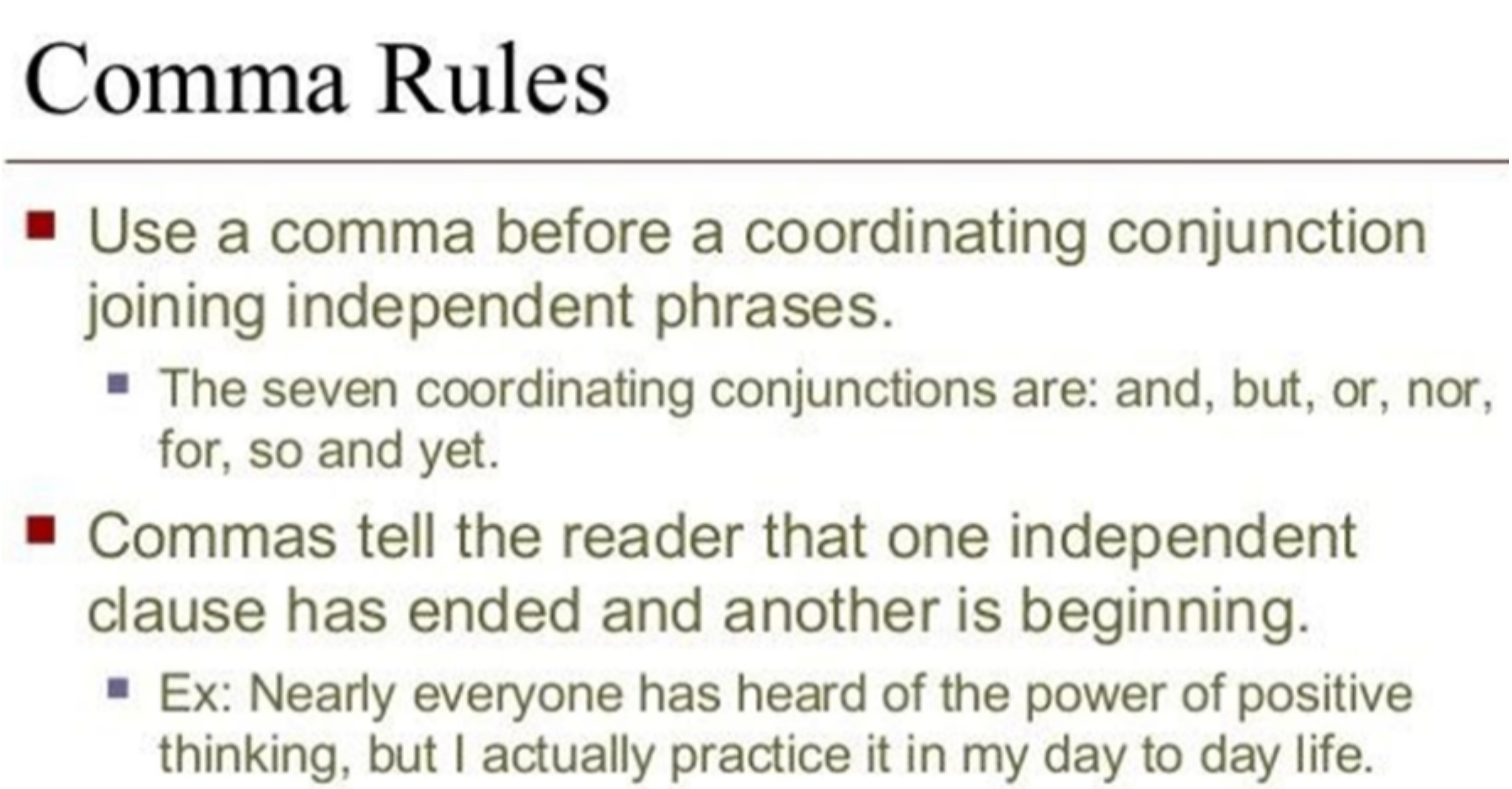
Exception: 'But' and 'Yet', both are additive conjunctions, often confused with each other. But both have different functions to perform. 'But' allows the statement to proceed and supports. 'Yet' injects a degree of 'contradiction'.

Get some practice on Fillers too.

Examples of Coordinating Conjunctions:

- This batch of mushroom stew is savoury and delicious.
- We should hate to waste a drop of water, for it is expensive and valuable these days.
- I will stay outdoors with friends or go home for a while.

Coordinating conjunctions with commas



Exception: Commas should not be used after coordinating conjunctions to open the sentence unless an interrupter immediately follows.

Memory Tip

Ensure that coordinating conjunction is immediately followed by the main clause. Do not begin a sentence with coordinating conjunction. ***Example:***

1. Incorrect: But I don't like tea, I like coffee.
2. Correct: I don't like tea, but I like coffee.

Learn all about Adverbs here.

Subordinating Conjunctions:

Subordinating conjunctions allow and introduce a subordinating or dependent clause. They glue an independent clause with a dependent clause. Out of all the conjunctions, subordinating conjunctions are the most tricky to follow and identify.

Note:

- 'Independent clause' is a clause that does not need any other clause to complete the sentence. They are independent on their own. 'She did not study' is an independent clause.
- 'Dependent clause' is a clause that needs a clause or a sentence to support its completion. 'Because she did not study' is a dependent clause.

Few examples of Subordinating conjunctions are: Although, though, however, as, as long as, once, since, when, while, if, where.

Check out Subject Verb Agreement here.

Structure For Subordinating Conjunctions To Use In A Sentence

1. Independent clause + Subordinating clause + Dependent clause
2. Conjunction + Dependent clause + Independent clause

Exception: 'Subordinating conjunctions' and 'Relative pronouns' are often confused with. Subordinating conjunctions do not act as the subject of a dependent clause, relative pronouns do.

To explain this, 'John is the boy who came last night to the party' John is the boy is an independent clause Who came last night to the party is a dependent clause 'who' relates, hence, is a relative pronoun. We talked about the movies and drama while we ate. 'We talked about the movies and drama' is an independent clause. 'While we ate' is an additive to the sentence. 'while' supports or 'adds', hence, subordinating conjunction. It is believed that 'Because' never begins a sentence. 'Because' is a 'subordinating sentence' and begins a sentence.

Common Mistake: 'Therefore' is not a connector. It is mistaken as a conjunction.

To get details on Common Rules for Spellings, candidates can visit the linked article.

Correlative Conjunctions:

Name them as 'Tag-team' conjunctions or 'Split conjunctions', the work they do is the same! They get their names from the fact that they work together. They split themselves in a sentence and conjoin themselves with different parts of a sentence to make them relative. Examples of Correlative Conjunction

- Either…or: expresses a choice between two subjects/objects.

Example: Either he or she works meticulously.

- Neither…nor: expresses a negation between choice/choices.

Example: Neither he nor she works meticulously.

- No sooner …than: One thing happened immediately another.

Example: No sooner did she arrive home than he came.

- Scarcely/Hardly/Rarely/Barely…when/before: The same idea expressed further.

Example: Scarcely had I come home when my parents reached.

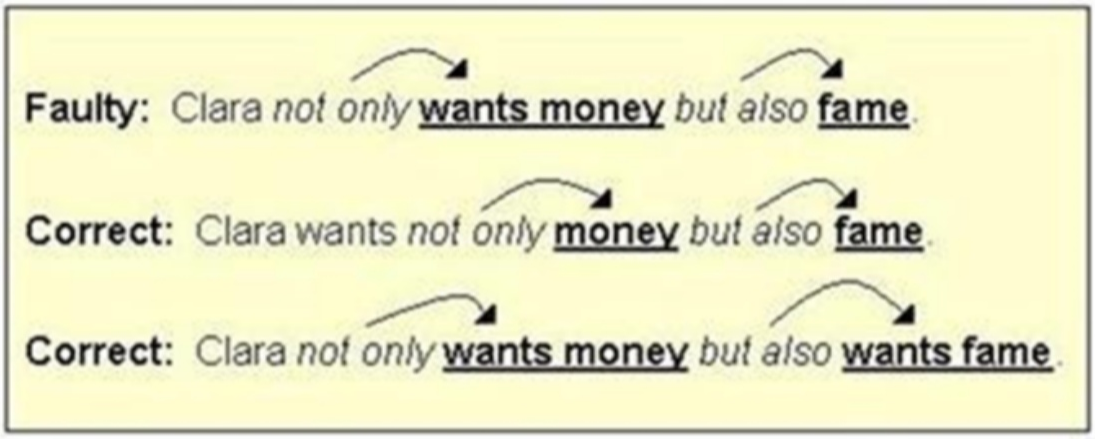
- Whether…or: When two alternatives are possible.

Example: Whether my parents or Sally's parents will go on a vacation.

- Not only…but also: Considering both the options.

Example: Not only John but also Mary has decided to be determined about it.





Structure of Correlative conjunctions

- Subject+ Not only+ verb +but also+ verb+ object
- Subject+ either + verb+ or+ verb+ object
- Either+ subject+ Or+ subject + verb + object
- No sooner did+……. + than+……
- Hardly/Scarcely had+…..when+…….

Here's all you need to know about Gerund, Infinitive and Participle

Memory Tip

When using 'Not only…but also', sentence parallelism of construction should be kept in mind. Example

- (Incorrect) He is not only intelligent but he also has a great sense of humour.
- (Correct) He is not only intelligent but also humorous.

(The sentence parallelism construction on the basis of Tenses) To identify correlative conjunction, look for the split in a sentence.

Note: 'Compound conjunctions' are called compounds as they are made of the assimilation of two or more conjunctions. The examples of Compound conjunctions in English grammar are: 'as much as', 'as soon as', 'As well as'.

Adverbial Conjunction

- A conjunct, transitional conjunction, cohesive conjunction, whatever it may be. They are also known as these.
- The basic function of adverbial conjunctions is to provide a relation between two sequential statements.

Adverbial conjunction	Examples
Accordingly	She does what is told to accordingly.
Again	They again visited their grandparent's home.
Also	Sally works and studies also.
Anyway	How are you, anyway?
Anyhow	We all have to do what we are told, anyhow!
Certainly	We certainly are planning to enjoy after work.
Besides	What does she do besides studying?
Consequently	Consequently, it is humanity that we all are.
Moreover	Moreover, it is a Saturday!

For details on the Synonyms & Antonyms, refer to the linked article.



Points To Remember While Using Conjunctions

- Conjunctions are cohesive devices.
- Conjunctions are 3 in usage, and 5 on the basis of semantic structure.
- Correlative conjunctions are always used and identified in pairs.
- Compound conjunctions are made of the assimilation of two or more conjunctions.
- Coordinating conjunctions can be recognized as 'F.A.N.B.O.YS.'
- Correlative conjunctions to be used with the same part of speech.
- Conjunctions are used as Additives, Adversatives, Casual, and Sequential.
- Conjunctions and Connectors are two different concepts to study.
- Adverbial conjunctions relate to two or more sequential statements.

Check out Subject Verb Agreement here.

Rules While Using Conjunction

Rule #1: Rule of Comma

- Always use a comma before the coordinating conjunctions when it is used to connect two independent clauses.

Example: Tom walked his dog, and he grabbed the mail.

- When using a coordinating conjunction to connect two items, do not use a comma.

Example: Tom walked his dog and grabbed the main.

- When using a coordinating conjunction to list the items, the usage of a comma before coordinating conjunction is optional.

Example: She can cook potatoes, tomatoes, and carrots. She can cook potatoes, tomatoes and carrots.

Rule #2: The conjunction '**Both'** is followed by '**And'.**

Example: Both eggs **and** ham are a staple food of western culture.

Rule #3: Usage of 'LEST' Lest is used when in a sentence a speaker thinks to avoid something.

Example: Don't push people too hard lest you hurt relationships.

Rule #4: Usage of **'so..as'** 'So..as' as a conjunction is used to show similarity between two objects, people, or subjects. This combination is used in negative sentences only.

Example: She is not so intelligent as her sister is.

Rule #5: Usage of **'as..as'** 'as..as' as a conjunction is used to show the similarity between two objects, people, or subjects. Unlike "so...as" this combination can be used in both positive and negatives sentences

Example: She is as intelligent as her sister is. She is not as intelligent as her sister is.

Rule #6: That 'Lest' should follow 'should' or 'first form of the verb'

Example: Walk carefully lest he may fall.

Rule #7: Unless and Until – Unless it is action oriented. Until is time oriented.

Example: She will not succeed unless she works hard for it. She will not be able to leave home until they return.

Rule #8: If/Whether In a sentence, to mention doubt or confusion, the statement is joined by if or whether.

For details on the Para Jumbles, refer to the linked article.

Example: I am doubtful whether he will come back. I am not sure if he will come back.

Rule #9: That In a sentence, to mention surety, the statement is joined by "That"

Example: I am sure that he will come back. I know that he will not pass this exam.

Rule #10: Usage of **'Not only..but also', 'no sooner...then', 'Hardly..when'** These correlative conjunctions to be followed in their definite pairs only.

Example: Not only she but also he planned for a movie. No sooner did she arrive than they came back. ' Hardly had I completed my lesson when my friends came.

Rule #11: After rather/other, than follows After the usage of Rather and Other, than always follow in a sentence.

Example: I would rather die than beg.

Rule #12: 'Seldom or never'/'Seldom if ever' instead 'seldom or ever'/ 'seldom if never' 'Seldom or never' and 'Seldom if ever' are definite constructions. Using 'Seldom or ever' or 'seldom if never' is an incorrect usage.

Example: The national networks seldom or never telecast good programs.

Rule #13: Between…….and Often mistaken with the preposition "to"

Example: This train runs between Delhi and Mumbai.

Rule #14: What with……and This combination is used to introduce the part of a sentence that indicates the cause of something

Example: What with school **and** sports, she's always busy.

Rule #15: Although/Though……yet/, Used to mention contraction

Example: Though Rahul Gandhi is opulent **yet** is unpopular among youths.

Rule #16: Such……that

Example: The teacher looked at the boy in **such** anger **that** he began to cry.

Want to know about Phrasal Verbs? Learn here.

Practice Problems

Spot the error in the given context.

Q1. Have you decided to go to the States or remain in India?

Solution: A question is being asked about a choice, so the correct correlative conjunction is- 'whether….or'. *The correct sentence is*–Have you decided whether to go to the States or remain in India?

Q2: As if he talks he is a well-educated man.

Solution: The subordinating conjunction 'as if' means 'as though' and is usually written as –subject + were+ complement. The 2 clauses–' he talks ' + 'he is a well-educated man'. The first clause connects to the second with 'as if', since the 2nd clause is the reasoning of the first clause. The correct sentence is — He talks as if he is a well-educated man.

To get details on Types, Rules & Cases of Sentence Correction, candidates can visit the linked article.

Q3: Because he was teaching, he was also learning.

Solution: 'Because' is a subordinating conjunction, used to mean-'for the reason that'; 'since'. The given sentence is talking about 'time' as 2 actions were going on simultaneously. So the correct conjunction would be — 'while'. The correct sentence is — While he was teaching, he was also learning.

Q4: She ran as fast as she could she was late for school lest.

Solution: Lest is subordinating conjunction used for negatives to mean– in order that……not' Lest means 'for fear that'; 'in case'. So the correct way of writing the given sentence is–She ran as fast as she could lest she was late for school.

Q5: He is both sweet-natured but intelligent.

Solution: The conjunction 'both' is always followed by 'and' as it connects 2 words of the same level. In the given sentence 'but' is incorrectly used. 'But is normally used to show contrast. In the given sentence it should be–He is both sweet-natured and intelligent.

For details on the Cloze Test, refer to the linked article.

Q6: Wherever it was early in the morning, I went for a walk.

Solution: 'Wherever' is a subordinating conjunction. A subordinating conjunction joins a simple sentence to an incomplete clause which depends on it to make complete sense. Some other subordinating conjunctions are– because, before, after, when since etc. The main clause is –'I went for a walk' and the subordinating clause is 'it was early morning' they are joined by 'wherever'. The conjunction does not fit the context [as it can mean– in any place there was early morning]. The conjunction that will be right here is– 'as' / 'because' / 'since'. The correct sentence can be written as –

1. Since it was early in the morning, I went for a walk.
2. Because it was early in the morning, I went for a walk.
3. As it was early in the morning, I went for a walk.

Q7: We went to meet him so he wasn't at home.

Solution: The conjunction 'so' is a coordinating conjunction. F-A-N-B-O-Y-S [for-and-nor-but-or-yet-so] Coordinating conjunctions join the clauses of the same rank. i.e. a simple sentence to a simple sentence. The given sentence has 2 simple sentences joined by the conjunction 'so'.[which is used to show cause, result] However, according to the context of the sentence, it should be 'but' as the first part talks about going to meet and the second part about him not being present. As both are contrasting, the correct conjunction will be 'but'. The correct sentence is–We went to meet him but he wasn't at home.

Q8: Unless you do not register your car it will have to be scrapped.

Solution: 'Unless' means 'if not'– since it is negative, adding another negative 'not' is grammatically incorrect. The given sentence has– 'unless…not' The given sentence can be written correctly in two ways: 1–Unless you register your car it will have to be scrapped. 2- If you do not register your car it will have to be scrapped.

To get details on Idioms and Phrases, candidates can visit the linked article.

Q9: She wanted to either eat a hamburger or a subway sandwich.

Solution: 'Either....or is a correlative conjunction. [I.e. a pair of joining words that connects 2 words, phrases or clauses–either..Or/ neither...nor etc.]. When joining 2 clauses/ nouns with correlative conjunction it needs to be written immediately before the word it relates to. In the given sentence the conjunction relates to 2 nouns -'hamburger' and 'subway sandwich'. So the conjunction should be placed immediately before these nouns. [either+noun...or+ noun] The correct sentence is—She wanted to eat either a hamburger or a subway sandwich.

Q. Fill in the blanks with the suitable option given:

1. The air quality in the capital had shown signs of improvement on Monday as it moved from 'very poor' to 'poor' category, _____ experts said it could deteriorate in the coming days due to toxic air coming out of the blazing fire at Bhalswa landfill site.

Ans: But Explanation: The given blank needs a coordinating conjunction to join the two independent clauses – 'the air quality... category' and 'experts .... site'. Hence 'because' is negated as it joins the dependent clause to the independent clause. 'And' is used when both clauses are not in contrast while 'or' is used to refer to when two clauses try to gain more importance.

The given sentence has two independent clauses that are equal in importance but contrast with each other so the correct conjunction to join them is 'but'.

2. India is the second most populous country _____ the seventh largest country by area in the world.

Ans: And Explanation:While, how, but are used for expressing comparison or contradiction. But the sentence is about the continuation or expression of two different facts regarding India one after the other. So "and" should be used here.

For details on the Types and Rules of Tenses, refer to the linked article.

3. You can't pass the IELTS exam _____ you study hard for it, as it is a tough exam to pass.

Ans: Unless Explanation:A condition is shown here and hence requires an adverb that will show a contrast.

4. More than thirty years have now passed _____ I took my first flight.

Ans: Since Explanation: 'Since' in this context has been used as a replacement for 'because'. Hence, 'since' is the appropriate option here.

Hope this article on English (Grammar) was a fun learning session for you. Remember the Types of Conjunction with examples. Now you can learn and practice for all types of competitive apps through our free Testbook App. Download now!

Conjunctions in English Grammar FAQs

Q.1 What is a Conjunction?

Q.1 What is a Conjunction?

Ans.1 Conjunctions are the words that join the words, clauses, and sentences.

Q.2 Why are Conjunctions important?

Ans.2 Conjunctions make sentences more effective to say or write and easy to understand.

Q.3 What are the different types of Conjunction?

Ans.3 The different types of Conjunctions are coordinate, subordinate and correlative conjunctions

Q.4 Which are the coordinating conjunctions?

Ans.4 For, And, Neither, But, Or, Yet, So are coordinating conjunctions.

Q.5 What is a Structure of Conjunction in a sentence?

Ans.5 Subject1+Conjunction+Subject2+Verb+Object Subject1+verb+Object+Conjunction+Subject2+verb+object

KD LIVE

Conjunction



Download Now!

KD LIVE App

Email: online@kdcampus.org | Contact : 8586903756 /8586903746

Classes of Conjunction

1. **CO-ORDINATING CONJUNCTION:-** Joins statements or clauses of equal rank. ('Coordinating' means of 'equal rank'.)

   (एक ही Rank के वाक्यों एवं clause को जोड़ता है।)

   Now what is the meaning of Equal Rank? (Equal Rank का अर्थ क्या है?)

   Let us see some examples. (कुछ उदाहरण देखते हैं।)

Examples

1. He is rich but miser. (×)
   Adj. Noun

'But' is a Co-ordinating Conjunction so both the words joined by a Co-ordinating Conjunction must be of equal rank.

Examples

He is rich but miserly. (✓)
Adj. Adj.

Examples

2. He is foolish and coward. (×)
   Adj. Noun

   He is foolish and cowardly. (✓)
   Adj. Adj.

3. She ate an apple, an orange and washed her hands. (×)
   Noun Noun Verb

   She ate an apple and an orange and then washed her hands. (✓)
   Noun Noun Verb

Examples

4. It is like doing nothing or be idle. (×)
   (doing: Gerund; be: $V_{b.f}$)

   It is like doing nothing or being idle. (✓)
   (doing: Gerund; being: Gerund)

5. He likes to jog and running when he exercises. (×)
   (to jog: Infinitive; running: Gerund)

   He likes to jog and to run when he exercises. (✓)
   (to jog: Infinitive; to run: Infinitive)

6. She works honestly and with sincerity. (×)
   (honestly: Adverb; with: Prep; sincerity: Noun)

   She works honestly and sincerely. (✓)
   (honestly: Adverb; sincerely: Adverb)

Co-ordinating Conjunctions are of four types

1. Cumulative

Merely adds one statement to another.

(दो वाक्यों को जोड़ता है)

Eg:- She cooks and I clean.

2. Adversative

Expresses contrast between two sentences.

(दो वाक्यों के बीच का विरोध दर्शाता है।)

Eg:- He worked hard but he failed.

3. Alternative

Expresses a choice between two alternatives.

(दो विकल्प के बीच चुनाव दर्शाता है।)

Eg:- She must work hard or she will fail.

4. Illative

Expresses an Inference.

(निष्कर्ष दर्शाता है।)

Eg:-

We must have neglected the instructions for the pandemic spread rapidly.

Here 'for' means 'because'.

2. SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS:- The Conjunction introducing the dependent or subordinate clause is called a Subordinating Conjunction.

Examples After, Because, If, That, Though, Although, Till, Before, Unless, As, When, While.

Subordinating Conjunction

1. If I had seen him, I would have greeted him.
   Subordinate Clause — Principal Clause
2. He ran away because the police were after him.
3. Although he worked hard, he failed.
4. Kindly wait till I pack my bag.
5. You will not succeed unless you work hard.

Subordinating Conjunctions may be classified according to their meanings

TIME — before, till, since, after

Examples

1. I haven't seen him since he left India.
2. Wait till he returns.

CAUSE — because, since, as

Examples

1. Since I was ill, I did not come.
2. As he was a brave heart, he joined the army

PURPOSE — so that, lest

Examples

1. We eat so that we may live.
2. Run fast lest you should miss the bus.

Subordinating Conjunctions may be classified according to their meanings

RESULT — so, therefore

Examples

1. He worked hard so he passed.
2. He was severely injured therefore he died.

CONDITION — If, unless

Examples

1. If you work hard, you will pass.
2. Unless he invites us, we won't go to party.

Subordinating Conjunctions may be classified according to their meanings

CONCESSION — though, although

Examples

1. Though he cheated me yet I love him.
2. A book is a book although it has nothing new.

COMPARISON — than, rather than, whether, as much as, whereas

Examples

1. He is stronger than I.
2. He loves me as much as she.
3. He will take tea rather than coffee.
4. He is happy whereas others are sad.

In the following sentences use suitable Conjunction.

(निम्नलिखित वाक्यों में उपयुक्त Conjunction का प्रयोग करें।)

1. He is rich _____ happy.
2. She is rich _____ unhappy.
3. _____ he worked hard, he passed.
4. He worked hard _____ he passed.
5. _____ he worked hard, he failed.
6. He worked hard _____ he failed.
7. Take care _____ you will fall.
8. Take care _____ you should fall.
9. I will not come _____ it rains.
10. I will come _____ it rains.

In the following sentences use suitable Conjunction.
(निम्नलिखित वाक्यों में उपयुक्त Conjunction का प्रयोग करें।)

11. She is intelligent _____ her brother is foolish.
12. _____ there is will, there is a way.
13. _____ he returns home, no one will go to sleep.
14. _____ the train gets the signal, it will not leave the platform.
15. _____ he invites you, you should not go.
16. We eat _____ we may live.
17. A lie is a lie _____ it saves one's life.

18. Smartphone cameras can now take pictures of near-professional quality, so they also have limitations.

(1) pictures of (2) so they also have limitations

(3) can now take (4) near-professional quality

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018 15 March, 2019 Evening

19. Cyclone Idai killed at least (1)/17 people in Zimbabwe and Mozambique although (2)/ it tore across Southern Africa (3)/ No error (4).

SSC PRE – 2018, 4th June, 2019 Morning

20. Our nation can make significant growth but if we all work collectively.

(1) but if we all (2) make significant growth

(3) Our nation can (4) work collectively

CHSL-2018, 11 July, 2019, Evening

21. I was surprised to see as Avika could write such good poems in Hindi.

(1) to see as Avika (2) I was surprised

(3) could write (4) such good poems in Hindi

CGL MAINS 2018, 12 September, 2019

22. He was rejected because he was too young.

(1) so (2) hence

(3) though (4) No improvement

(SSC Tax Assistant (IncomeTax & Central Excise) Exam. 12.11.2006)

23. Strenuous as it was, they went on with their task.

(1) since it was (2) because it was

(3) although it was (4) No improvement

(SSC Statistical Investigators Grade-IV Exam. 12.09.2010)

24. Since he worked hard he failed to secure good grades.

(1) As (2) When
(3) Though (4) No improvement

(FCI Assistant Grade-III Exam. 05.02.2012 (Ist Sitting)

25. Mary wondered if the other girls were as excited as she was.

(1) that (2) whether
(3) that if (4) No improvement

(SSC Stenographer Grade 'C' & 'D' Exam. 16.10.2011)

26. The man ate an apple, an orange, and washed his hands.

(1) an apple and an orange, and washed his hands
(2) an apple, an orange, washed his hands
(3) an apple, an orange and his washed hands
(4) No improvement

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 19.05.2013)

27. The actor is out of jail, and not exactly a free man, since he will be under house arrest for an additional 90 days.

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 19.05.2013)

(1) if not exactly a free man

(2) but not exactly a free man

(3) though exactly a free man

(4) No improvement

28. Rice is to the Japanese while potatoes are to many Europeans

(1) which (2) that

(3) what (4) No improvement.

(SSC Section Officer (Commercial Audit) Exam. 26.11.2006)

Answers

1. rich (desirable Adj) — happy (desirable Adj)

both 'desirable' Adjectives

Conjunction — and (और) & as well as (साथ ही साथ)

2. rich (desirable Adj) — unhappy (undesirable Adj)

Contrast

Conjunction — but (लेकिन), yet, still (फिर भी)

Answers

3. As, Since, Because (चूंकि, क्योंकि)
4. and, so, therefore. that's why, hence
5. Though, although
6. but, yet, still
7. or, else, otherwise
8. 'lest ... should' is a pair of conjunction
9. if, in case
10. even if
11. but (note : here we cannot use 'yet' or 'still')
12. Where
13. Until. This sentence is time- oriented
14. Until
15. Unless. The sentence is action-oriented.
16. so that/ in order that — ताकि
17. even if

Answers

18. (2) Replace 'so' with 'but'. 'Limitations' introduce something contradictory hence use 'but'.
19. (2) Replace 'although' with 'when'.
20. (1) Remove but or add 'only' after 'but'. We can also replace 'but' with 'only if'.
21. (1) Replace 'as' with 'that'.
22. (4) No improvement
23. (3) Here 'strenuous although it has' should be used.
Although (के बावजूद) means in spite of the fact that.
24. (3) Replace 'since' with 'though'.
'Though' means 'inspite of the fact that' (के बावजूद). When the result is contrary to what was expected of the action though'.
25. (4) No improvement
26. (1) Here 'an apple and an orange and washed his' should be used.
27. (2) Here contrast is evident so conjunction 'but' will be used here.
hence replace 'and not exactly a free man' with 'but not exactly a free man'.
28. (3) Replace 'while' with 'what'.

- **Some Conjunctions are in pairs. They are called 'Correlative Conjunctions' or merely 'Correlatives'. (कुछ Conjunctions pairs में होते हैं। वे Correlative Conjunctions या सिर्फ Correlatives कहलाते हैं।)**

  Correct Pairs are absolutely mandatory. (Pair सही होना चाहिए ये अत्यन्त जरूरी है।)

जैसेः-

Though	Yet/,	(हालांकि ..... फिर भी)
Although	Yet/,	(हालांकि ..... फिर भी)
No sooner	than	(जैसे ही ... वैसे ही)
Hardly/Scarcely	when	(मुश्किल से ... कि)
As	as	(तुलना करने के लिए प्रयुक्त होता है)
So	as	(तुलना करने के लिए नकारात्मक वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त होता है)
Lest	should + $v_{b.f.}$	(ऐसा न हो कि, वर्ना)
Too	to	(इतना ... कि)

जैसेः-

So	that	(इतना ... कि)
Between	and	(के बीच)
From	to	(... से ...)
Whether	or	
The same	that	(वही ... जो)
Both	and	(दोनों ही)
Not only	but also	(न ही सिर्फ ... बल्कि)

कुछ अन्य Conj. → Or, else, otherwise (वर्ना, अन्यथा)

- **There are certain wrong pairs which we wrongly use because we are habitual of translating from Hindi. (कुछ ऐसे Pairs हम बना लेते हैं जो गलत होते हैं क्योंकि हमें Translation करने की आदत होती है।)**

If ... then (×)

If ... , (✓)

When ... then (×)

When ... , (✓)

As (क्योंकि) ... so (इसलिए) (×)

As (जैसा) ... so (वैसा) (✓)

Eg.:

1. **As I was ill ~~so~~, I did not come.**
2. **As you sow so shall you reap.**

As/ Since/ because .... therefore/ that's why/ so/ since (×)

As/ Since/ because ..... , (✓)

If ... or (×)

1. You must either (1)/ be regular with your studies (2)/ and study for longer period before the examination. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 1997)

2. The period (1)/ between 1980 to 1990 (2)/ was very significant in my life. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 25.11.2007)

3. It is (1)/ nothing else (2)/ than pride. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II Exam. Paper-II 04.08.2011)

4. We had scarcely (1)/ reached the place (2) than it started to rain heavily. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC FCI Assistant Grade-III Main Exam. 07.04.2013)

5. We had (1)/ hardly reached the (2)/ platform than the train came in. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam. 28.09.2014 (TF No. 482 RN 5)

6. I will have (1)/ both the blue (2)/ or the black pen. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC CHSL (10+2) LDC, DEO & PA/SA Exam, 15.11.2015 (Ist Sitting) TF No. 6636838)

7. Write down the address lest you may forget.

(1) you may not forget (2) you cannot forget

(3) you will forget (4) you should forget

(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 05.12.2004)

8. No sooner had the teacher entered the room **and** the boys rushed to their seats.

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 30.10.2008)

(1) when (2) than
(3) but (4) No improvement

9. He is not only a good teacher **but** a good man.

(SSC Delhi Police Sub-Inspector (SI) Exam. 19.08.2012)

(1) instead also (2) but seldom
(3) but also (4) No improvement

10. As I am suffering from fever **so grant me** leave for two days.

(1) and grant me (2) please grant me
(3) grant myself (4) No improvement

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam.12.04.2015 Kolkata Region, TF No. 315 RI 3)

Answers

1. (3) Replace ‘and’ with ‘or’ because correct pair of conjunction is either ... or
2. (2) Replace ‘between’ with ‘from’ because the correct pair needed here is 'from.... to.
3. (3) Replace ‘than’ with ‘but’ because the correct pair ‘nothing else ... but’.
4. (3) Replace ‘than’ with ‘when’ because the correct pair is ‘scarcely ... when’.
5. (3) Replace ‘than’ with ‘when’.
6. (3) Replace ‘or’ with ‘and’.
7. (4) Replace ‘you may forget’ with ‘you should forget’.
8. (2) Replace ‘and’ with ‘than’ because the correct pair is ‘no sooner ... than’.
9. (3) Replace ‘but’ with ‘but also’. The correct pair is ‘not only ... but also’.
10. (2) ‘As’ is not followed by ‘so’ (Exception ‘As you sow so shall you reap’)

12. He asked me if I was comfortable or not.

13. He is so ill to walk.

14. He was such a versatile actor that he played every role exceptionally well.

15. He is such a player as team India always wished to have.

16. He is such a fool _____ he understands nothing.

17. He is such a fool _____ I have never seen.

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018
14 March, 2019 Morning

18. He is not such a clever boy that you are.

(1) clever boy (2) such a

(3) that you are (4) He is not

19. I doubt _____ he will help you.

20. I don't doubt _____ you will succeed in life.

21. Did he doubt _____ I would succeed in life?

Answers

12. 'If ... or'. (×)
'Whether ... or'. (✓)
Change 'if' into 'whether'.

13. 'so ... to'. (×)
'too ... to'. (✓)
Change 'so' into 'too'.

14. 'such (इतना) ... that (कि)'

When 2nd part substantiates the 1st part.

(जब 2nd part, 1st part का सबूत देता है।)

15. 'such (ऐसा) ... as (जैसा)'

When the 2nd part categorizes the 1st part. (जब 2nd, part 1st part के श्रेणी/ वर्ग दर्शाता है।)

16. 'such ... that'.

Here the 2nd part gives a proof.

17. 'such ... as'.

Here the 2nd part categorizes the 1st part.

18. (3) Replace 'that' with 'as'. 'Such ...as' is used to categorize.

19. 'Doubt ... if'.

The sentence is positive.

20. 'Doubt ... that'.

The sentence is negative.

21. 'Doubt .... that'

The sentence is Interrogative.

22. This is the same dress _____ I had bought.

23. This is the same suit _____ mine.

24. As soon as I get the tickets then I will inform you.

25. Trying to please both his boss and wife puts him _____ the devil _____ the deep blue sea.

26. He worked _____ dawn _____ dusk.

Answers

22. 'The same' is followed by 'that' is a verb follows.
23. 'The same' is followed by 'as' if no verb follows.
24. 'As soon as' is not followed by 'then'.
    Remove 'then'.
25. 'Between ... and'.
    'Between the devil and the deep blue sea' means 'between two equally difficult choices.' (दो समान कठीन परिस्थितियों के बीच)
26. 'from ... to'.
    Some examples that take 'from ... to'.
    (1) 'From dawn to dusk' → सुबह से शाम तक
    (2) 'From pillar to post' → दर – दर
    (3) From top to bottom
    (4) From beginning to end
    (5) From morning to evening

'As ... as' and 'So ... as' take Positive Degree of Adjective/ Adverb.

Examples

1. She ran as faster as she could. (×)

   Comparative Degree of Adverb

   She ran as fast as she could. (✓)

   Positive Degree

2. He is as wiser as Solomon. (×)

   Comparative Degree of Adjective

   He is as wise as Solomon. (✓)

   Positive Degree

As ... as (In +ve and –ve sentence)

So ... as (In –ve sentences)

(Both are used to make a comparison
(दोनों का प्रयोग तुलना करने के लिए होता है।)

- **In the last example you saw that the Comparison is between 'he' and 'Solomon' but why? (आखरी उदाहरण में आपने देखा कि लड़के की तुलना Solomon से हुई लेकिन ऐसा क्यों हुआ) The Comparison is always with the perfect example that can be chosen for the given situation. (तुलना हमेश सबसे अच्छे उदाहरण के साथ किया जाता है जिसका प्रयोग उस हालात में सबसे सटीक हो।)**

Let us see some examples.

- **As red as a rose**
- **As soft as fur**
- **As white as snow**
- **As fast as a deer**
- **As blind as a bat**
- **As busy as a bee**
- **As cunning as a fox**
- **As drunk as a lord**
- **As fat as a pig**
- **As fit as a fiddle**

- As gentle as a lamb
- As green as grass
- As hard as a nail
- As heavy as lead
- As hungry as a wolf
- As light as a feather
- As mean as a snake
- As poor as a church mouse
- As steady as a rock
- As good as gold
- As sweet as honey
- As bald as an egg
- As cool as a cucumber
- As swift as a hare/ an arrow/ lightning
- As alike as two peas
- As proud/vain as a peacock
- As hot as a furnace
- As slow as a turtle/ snail
- As fluffy as a cotton candy
- Sleep like a baby
- Eat like a pig

- **Take care lest he _____.**

  (i) may fall (ii) fall (iii) falls

  'Lest .... should' is a pair of conjunction but here we do not have any option comprising 'should'. ('Lest .... should' Conjunction का एक pair है पर यहाँ should किसी option में नहीं हैं।)

  We have two options (हमारे पास 2 विकल्प है) —

  (1) Lest ... should + $V_{b.f}$

  Or

  (2) Lest ... $V_{b.f}$

Ans. → (ii) As 'should + $V_{b.f}$' is missing here, $V_{b.f}$ is the only option available that is correct.

Superfluous Pair

'The reason why .... due to/ because'. (×)

'The reason why' and 'because'/ 'due to' mean the same.

They make a superfluous pair.

'The reason why ... that'. (✓) ('that' is not always needed. See example 2)

1. The reason why (1)/he was rejected (2)/was because he was too young. (3)/No Error. (4).

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 05.06.2005)

2. The reason for (1)/ my absence is (2)/ due to ill health (3)/ No Error (4)

SSC CGL-2016 (8th September, Evening)

3. The reason Janet came dressed (1) / as Lady Gaga was because she'd been told (2) / it was a costume party (3) / No error (4) .

SSC CGL-2016 (2nd September, Evening)

4. The reason why I was late was because I boarded the wrong bus.

Answers

1. (3) Replace ‘because’ with ‘that’ because the ‘reason why’ becomes superfluous with ‘because’.

2. (3) Presence of both 'reason' and 'due to' in a sentence makes it superfluous.

   Hence remove 'due to' from part (3).

3. (2) The correct pair is the reason ------- that. 'Reason' with ‘because’ becomes superfluous.

   Hence replace 'because' with 'that'.

4. Change because into 'that'.

- 'Would rather ... than'
  or
  'prefer ... to'

Examples

1. I would rather take tea than coffee.
2. I prefer tea to coffee.

'Prefer' takes preposition 'to'. 'Would rather' takes 'than'.

Inversion

- If a sentence is Negative Introductory, the sentence that follows is in Inversion. In Inversion the Helping Verb comes before the Subject.

For detail see Inversion

(अगर वाक्य Negative शब्द से शुरू हो तो फिर वाक्य Inversion में होता है। Inversion में Helping Verb, Subject के पहले होता है।)

Examples

1. No sooner (1)/ I had spoken, (2) than he left. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 09.09.2001)

2. No sooner (1)/ they had received the guests (2)/ than they began entertaining them. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II, Exam. 16.09.2012)

3. We had (1)/ hardly reached the (2)/ platform than the train came in. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam. 28.09.2014 (TF No. 482 RN 5)

Inversion

4. Not only we seen (1)/ the Kali temple but (2)/ also the Thirunelli temple. (3)/ No error (4)

SSC CHSL-2016, 30th Jan, Evening

5. Not only we saw (1)/ the President but also (2)/ the Chief Minister of Delhi. (3)/ No Error (4)

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2017, 2 July, 2018 Morning

6. Neither we borrow nor lend.

7. No sooner the minister had heard (1)/ about the accident (2)/ than he rushed to the spot. (3)/ No Error (4)

(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 17.03.2013, IInd Sitting)

8. Scarcely she had heard the news when she fainted.
(1) she fainted (2) when
(3) heard the news (4) Scarcely she had

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018, 14 March, 2019 Morning

9. Hardly he had stepped out of the house when a tree fell on the roof.
(1) out of (2) Hardly he had
(3) when a tree (4) fell on the roof

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018, 14 March, 2019 Evening

10. Not only they went to see a film, but also had dinner out.
(1) Not only did they go
(2) They didn't go not only
(3) They not only went
(4) No improvement

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 1997)

Answers

1. (2) Replace ‘I had’ with ‘had I’ because when a sentence begins with ‘No sooner’ it takes inversion form.

2. (2) Replace ‘they had’ with ‘had they’ because when a sentence begins with ‘no sooner’ it takes inversion form.

3. (3) Replace ‘than’ with ‘when’. ‘We had hardly reached’ is the correct structure as hardly comes after the ‘Helping Verb’ and before the ‘Main Verb’.

4. (1) Whenever we begin a sentence with negative adverb or adverbial phrase, we use inversion. In inversion verb comes before the subject. Hence replace 'Not only we seen' with 'Not only did we see' or 'not only have we seen'. We need 'did' as 'Helping Verb' if 'Main Verb' is 'V_2'.

5. (1) Either use 'not only' after saw or use structure 'not only did we see'. Conjunction should be followed by same part of speech.

Answers

6. Change 'we borrow' into 'do we borrow'. We need 'do' as 'Helping Verb' if the 'Main Verb' is 'V_1'.

7. (1) When a sentence begin with ‘no sooner’ it takes inversion form.
So ‘had’ will come before ‘the minister’.

8. (4) Replace 'she had' with 'had she'. Scarcely is followed by Inversion if the sentence starts with scarcely.

9. (2) Replace 'he had' with 'had he'. Hardly is followed by Inversion.

10. (1) When a sentence begins with ‘a negative word’ it takes inversion form.
Replace ‘Not only they went’ with ‘not only did they go’.

Misplaced Conjunction

Examples

1. Not only he bakes cakes but also sells them.

2. Neither it is useful nor affordable.

Answers

1. (i) If we use Inversion to correct the sentence, Ans. is → Not only does he bake cakes but also sells them.

   If the M.V is V_1 + s/es, the H.V is 'does'.

   (ii) If we go by misplaced Conjunction,

   He not only bakes (Verb) cakes but also sells (Verb) them.

2. Neither will come after 'it is'. It is neither useful (Adjective) nor affordable (Adjective).

1. You must either tell me (1)/ the whole story or, at least (2)/ the first half of it. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 09.09.2001)

2. None of the diplomats at the conference (1)/was able either to comprehend (2)/ or solve the problem. (3)/No error (4)

(SSC Stenographer (Grade'C' &'D') Exam. 26.09.2010)

3. He is anxious not only (1)/ to acquire knowledge (2)/ but also eager to display it. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 19.05.2013)

4. The college library is (1)/ not only equipped with (2)/ very good books but also with the latest journals. (3)/No error (4)

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam. 22.06.2014)

5. We will pack not only (1)/ the material properly (2)/ but will also deliver it to your valued customers. (3)/ No error (4)

SSC (CPO) MAINS- 2016

6. This laboratory of physicists is (1)/ not only equipped with (2)/ all state-of-the-art instruments but also with outstanding physicists. (3)/ No error (4)

SSC (CPO) MAINS- 2016

Answers

1. (1) ‘Either’ should come after ‘tell me’ because after ‘or’ at least is given. Co-relative conjunction always connects two equal grammatical items.

2. (2) Remove ‘either’ or put ‘either’ after ‘to’.

3. (1) First part of the sentence should read as ‘he is not only anxious’ ... because while using a co-relative conjunction both clauses should be parallel. Anxious and eager (both adjectives) balance each other.

4. (2) Replace ‘not only equipped’ with ‘equipped not only’ because co-relative conjunction always connects two equal grammatical items.

5. (1) Put 'not only' before 'pack'. This is a case of misplaced conjunction.

6. (3) Use 'not only' after 'equipped'. Conjunction must be at the appropriate place.

Too ... to
&
So ... that

SUPERFLUOUS CASE—

Examples

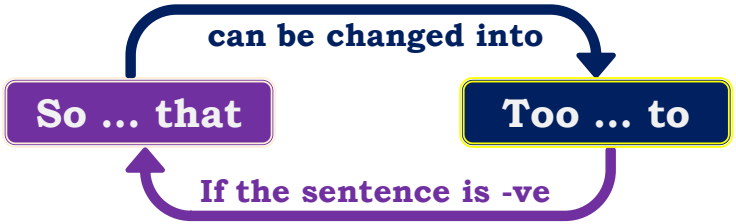
1. **The coffee is too hot to drink it.**

2. **This watch is too expensive for me to afford it.**

Answers

1. **Remove 'it'. 'Coffee' (Noun) and 'it' (Pronoun) cannot come together.**

2. **'Watch' (Noun) and it (Pronoun) cannot come together. Remove it.**



Examples

1. He is so weak that he cannot walk.

   He is too weak to walk.

2. She is so intelligent that she can pass any exam.

Note:- Sentence 2 cannot be changed into 'too ... to' as the sentence is not negative. 'Too ... to' includes 'not' in it.

Remove 'so' from the following sentences:-

Examples

1. She is so ill that she cannot work.
2. The watch is so expensive that I cannot afford it.
3. She is so innocent that she cannot understand his ulterior motives.
4. He is so old that he cannot get any job.
5. The problem was so complicated that no one could solve it.

Answers

1. She is too ill to work.
2. (i) The watch is too expensive for me to afford.
   (ii) The watch is too expensive to be afforded by me.
3. She is too innocent to understand his ulterior motives.
4. He is too old to get any job.
5. (i) The problem was too complicated to be solved by anyone.
   (ii) The problem was too complicated for any one to solve.

6. The process was too simple and easy to understand that it hardly took five minutes for us to grasp it.

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam. 12.04.2015)

(1) No Error
(2) and easy to understand that it hardly
(3) took five minutes for us to grasp it
(4) The process was too simple

7. He studied (1)/ so hardly (2)/ he was sure of passing. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 10.03.2013)

8. The problem was so complicated to be solved in a day.

(SSC FCI Assistant Grade-III Main Exam. 07.04.2013)

(1) too (2) very
(3) much (4) No improvement

Answers

6. (4) Replace 'too' with 'so' because the correct pair is 'so ... that'.

7. (2) Add 'that' in the 2nd part of the sentence. Because the correct pair is 'so ... that'. Also change 'hardly' into 'hard'. 'So hard that' is the correct structure.

8. (1) The correct structure should be as follow:

Too + positive degree adjective + to.

Here 'to + complicated + to' should be used.

★ I am too glad to meet you. (×)

I am very glad to meet you. (✓)

Adv. Adj.

'very' comes with desirable Adj.

Here 'too ... to' is not a pair of Conjunction because it cannot be changed into 'so ... that' with the same meaning 'Glad' is a desirable Adjective and hence will take Adverb 'very'.

(यहाँ 'too ... to' Conjunction का जोड़ा नहीं है क्योंकि इसे 'So that' में परिवर्तित नहीं किया जा सकता। ऐसा करने पर अर्थ गलत निकलेगा 'Glad' desirable Adjective है अतः Adverb 'very' का प्रयोग करें।)

★ **She is too sad to hear this. (✓)**

This sentence is correct though 'too ... to' is not a pair of Conjunction here because it cannot be changed into 'so ... that' with the same meaning.

(ये वाक्य सही है हालाँकि यहाँ 'too ... to' Conjunction का जोड़ा नहीं है क्योंकि वह 'so ... that' में परिवर्तित नहीं किया जा सकता| ऐसा करने से अर्थ गलत निकलता है।)

She is too sad to hear this.

Adv. Adj. Infinitive

'too' comes with undesirable Adjectives.

Conjunction Vis–A–Vis Narration

1 Assertive Sentences → General Statements (कथनात्मक वाक्य)

E.g:- He said _____ he was unwell. (Ans. – that)

We use Conjunction 'that' in Assertive Sentences.

(Assertive Sentences में Conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग होता है।)

Conjunction Vis–A–Vis Narration

2 Interrogative Sentences → Sentences raising questions (प्रश्नातमक वाक्य)

E.g:- (i) He asked me _____ I was unwell.

We use Conjunction 'if/ whether' in Interrogative Sentences which are not of 'Wh' family.

(जो प्रश्नात्मक वाक्य 'Wh' family का नहीं है उनमें Conjunction 'if'/ 'whether' का प्रयोग होता है।)

1. Mary wondered if the other girls were as excited as she was.
   (1) that
   (2) whether
   (3) that if
   (4) No improvement

(SSC Stenographer Grade 'C' & 'D' Exam. 16.10.2011)

Answers

1. (4)

E.g:- (ii) He asked me _____ what I was doing.

We do not use any Conjunction if the Interrogative Sentences are of 'Wh family'.

(अगर प्रश्नातमक वाक्य 'Wh family' का हो तो कोई Conjunction का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।)

1. My elder brother (1)/ asked me (2)/that what I was doing. (3)/No Error (4)

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 21.10.2012 (2nd Sitting)

Answers

1. (3) Remove 'that'. If direct speech is of 'Wh family', no conjunction is used when it is converted into Indirect Speech.

2. He asked me (1)/ that how long (2)/ I would be absent. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC Higher Secondary Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 28.11.2010 (IInd Sitting)

3. My sister asked me/(1) that how long (2)/ I would stay there. (3)/ No Error. (4)

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 21.04.2013)

Answers

2. (2) Remove 'that'.

When questions of 'Wh-family' is changed into indirect speech, Conjunction 'that' is not used.

3. (2) Remove 'that'. See explanation of Q. No. 2.

Conjunction Vis–A–Vis Narration

3 Optative Sentences → Sentences of Wish and Prayer (इच्छासूचक वाक्य)

E.g:-

He prayed _____ god might bless me.

We use Conjunction 'that' in Optative Sentences.

(इच्छासूचक वाक्यों में Conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग होगा)

KD Campus

Conjunction Vis–A–Vis Narration

4 Imperative Sentences → Sentences of Orders, Request etc (आदेशात्मक वाक्य)

E.g:-

He requested me _____ help him.

We use Conjunction 'to' in Imperative Sentences.

(आदेशात्मक वाक्यों में Conjunction 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।)

KD Campus

Conjunction Vis–A–Vis Narration

5 Exclamatory Sentences → Sentences that express gush of feelings (विस्मयबोधक वाक्य)

E.g:-

He exclaimed with joy _____ they had won the match.

In Exclamatory Sentences we use Conjunction 'that'.

(विस्मयबोधक वाक्यों में Conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग होता है।)

Campus

6 Conditional Sentences → In Conditional sentences, one action depends on the other (शर्त रखने वाले वाक्य)

E.g:-

He said _____ if he had seen me, he would have greeted me.

We use Conjunction 'that' in Conditional Sentences.

(Conditional Sentences में Conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग होता है।)

Note:-

Do not get confused on seeing 'that + if' together in conditional sentences.

('that + if' का प्रयोग एक साथ देखकर confuse ना हो।)

Conjunction Vis–A–Vis Adjective

1. As an artist (1)/Raju is as good (2)/, if not better than, Ramesh. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I, Exam. 21.04.2013)

2. He is as efficient if not more labourious than his brother.
3. She is prettier though not as fair as her sister.

Answers

1. (2) The correct structure is as + Positive degree adjective + as.

   Hence add 'as' after 'good'.
2. Add 'as' after 'efficient'.
3. Add 'than' after 'prettier'.

When Positive & Comparative degrees of Adjectives are used, the structure must be as follows.

(अगर Adjective के Positive & Comparative degrees का प्रयोग हो, तो निम्नलिखित structure का प्रयोग होगा।)

As/ so + Positive Degree + as ... + Comparative Degree + than/to

Unless & Until

★ 'Unless' is action oriented. (Unless कार्य-संबंधित होता है।)

E.g:-

1. Unless you work hard, you won't succeed.
2. Unless he invites us, we won't go to the party.

★ Until is time oriented (Until समय संबंधित होता है।)

E.g:-

1. Until the train gets the signal, it won't proceed.
2. Until the red light turns green, we cannot cross the traffic signal.

For detail See Conditional Sentences

'Unless' and 'until' do not take 'will/ shall' and 'not' after them.

1. My friend will not come to attend this marriage unless he is not invited.
   (1) No error
   (2) My friend will not come
   (3) to attend this marriage
   (4) unless he is not invited.

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam, 21.06.2015 IInd Sitting)

2. You will not (1)/ succeed unless you (2)/ don't work hard. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC (10+2) Stenographer Grade 'C' & 'D' Exam. 31.01.2016 TF No. 3513283)

Answers

1. (4) 'not' does not come with 'unless', 'until' and 'lest'.
2. (3) 'Unless' is not followed by any negative word.
   Remove 'don't' from 3rd part of the sentence.

3. The price cannot be quoted **except** we are allowed to examine the sample.

(1) if

(2) unless

(3) because

(4) No improvement

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 11.12.2011 (IInd Sitting (East Zone)

4. You can't get good marks **unless you don't** work hard.

(1) till you don't

(2) unless you

(3) until you don't

(4) No improvement

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 21.10.2012 (Ist Sitting)

Answers

3. (2) Replace 'except' with 'unless'.

4. (2) Replace 'unless you don't' with 'unless you'. 'Unless' is not followed by any negative word.

5. You cannot pass as long as you study.
   (1) provided
   (2) unless
   (3) less
   (4) No improvement

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II Exam. 29.09.2013)

6. I shall not go until I am invited.
   (1) till
   (2) whether
   (3) unless
   (4) No improvement

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam.12.04.2015 Kolkata Region, TF No. 315 RI 3)

Answers

5. (2) Replace 'as long as' with 'unless'.
'As long as' means 'during the whole time'.
'Unless' means 'except on the condition that'.

6. (3) Replace 'until' with 'unless'.
'Until' is a time denoting word whereas 'Unless' is a condition denoting word.

Wrong use of 'Which'

1. I forgot to carry my umbrella which caused the delay.

2. She did not show her admit card which led to her rejection.

★ See the sentences. You find 'which' is near 'Umbrella' and 'Admit Card' but these two nouns are not the reason for the action that follows.

(दोनों वाक्यों को देखें। आप 'which' को 'Umbrella' और Admit Card' के निकट पाऐंगे लेकिन ये दोनों Nouns उस action का कारण नहीं है जो 'which' के बाद है।)

★ We need something that can denote the 1st action and so we need a pronoun 'this' that can denote the nearest action.

(यहाँ कुछ ऐसा चाहिए जो प्रथम वाक्य को सम्बोधित कर सके और Pronoun 'this' से हम निकटतम action को सम्बोधित कर सकते हैं।)

Correct Sentences

1. I forgot to carry my umbrella and this caused the delay.

2. She did not show her admit card and this led to her rejection.

We need Conjunction 'and' to join both the sentences.

(यहाँ Conjunction 'and' का प्रयोग होगा दोनों वाक्यों को जोड़ने के लिए।)

KD LIVE

FIXED PREPOSITION



Download Now!

KD LIVE App

Email: online@kdcampus.org | Contact : 8586903756 /8586903746

Fixed Preposition Level–I

1. **Resort (रास्ता अपनाना) — to**

   Eg. (1) He resorted to crime.

   (2) The police resorted to unfair means.

2. **Wait (इंतजार करना) — for**

   Eg. (1) I waited for you.

   (2) She is waiting for her result.

3. **Approve (सहमति देना) — of**

   Eg. (1) He approved of my project.

   (2) I don't approve of such pressurizing tactics of police.

4. **Deal (व्यापार करना) — in**

   Eg. (1) He dealt in garments.

   (2) We deal in food grains.

Campus

5. Deal (निपटना) — with

Eg. (1) He dealt with problems.

(2) We cannot deal with naughty boys.

6. Differ (से अलग होना) — from

Eg. (1) Amphibians differ from reptiles.

(2) This project differs from that one.

7. Different (से असमान) — from

Eg. (1) Amphibians are different from reptiles.

(2) This proposal is different from that one.

8. Differ (से अलग मत रखना) — with

Eg. (1) I differ with you on this matter.

(2) India differs with the UN on the matter of POK.

9. Depend (पर निर्भर करना) — on

Eg. (1) I depend on you.

(2) The government depends on the executive.

10. On Monday — सभी दिनों के साथ

Eg. (1) I came at 7 O'clock on Monday.

(2) She reached Delhi at quarter past 8 on Tuesday.

11. In 2015 — सभी साल के साथ

Eg. (1) I came in 2010.

(2) India became independent in 1947.

12. In May — सभी महीनों के साथ

Eg. (1) I came in May.

(2) I completed the course in August.

13. On the 7th of November — सभी तारीख के साथ

Eg. (1) I came on the 7th of November.

(2) Teachers' day is celebrated on September 5.

14. At 7 O'clock — समय के साथ

Eg. (1) She came at quarter to seven.

(2) The meeting started at 10 minutes past.

15. In summer — सभी मौसम के साथ

Eg. (1) It blooms in summer.

(2) It is foggy in winter.

16. At sunrise —• *I go to temple at sunrise.*

At sunset —• *Cattle return to their shelter at sunset.*

At noon —• *I will come live on facebook at noon.*

At midnight —• *We heard his cries at midnight.*

At bed time —• *My son listens to fairy tales at bed time.*

At night —• *She checks the locks at night before going to bed.*

17. In the morning —• *I go to temple in the morning.*
In the evening —• *I return home in the evening.*
In the afternoon —• *I come here in the afternoon.*

18. On Tuesday afternoon —• *She returned home on Monday afternoon.*
On Wednesday evening —• *We will finalize the deal on Friday evening.*
On a holiday —• *We met our friends on a holiday.*
On weekdays —• *I work for ten hours on weekdays.*
On weekends —• *I sleep for twelve hours on weekends.*
Eg. We will organize a party on Sunday evening.

19. Injurious (हानिकारक) — to
Eg. (1) Smoking is injurious to health.
(2) Drinking is injurious to your liver.

20. Part (किसी व्यक्ति से अलग होना) — from
Eg. (1) I cannot part from my friend.
(2) She cannot part from her mother.

21. Part (किसी चीज़ से अलग होना) — with

Eg. (1) He cannot part with his book.

(2) I cannot part with my belongings.

22. Cope (से निपटना) — with

Eg. (1) I cannot cope with hot weather.

(2) She could not cope with the modern technology.

23. Filled (से भरा) — with

Eg. (1) The bucket was filled with water.

(2) I filled the mug with coffee.

24. Full (भरा) — of

Eg. (1) The bucket was full of water.

(2) Life is full of responsibilities.

Cope with
Syn.→ Deal with
Tackle
Handle

25. Deprive (से वंचित) — of

Eg. (1) *He deprived me of my rights.*

(2) *The police deprived the family of performing the girl's last rites.*

26. Bereft (से वंचित) — of

Eg. (1) *He was bereft of his rights.*

(2) *They are bereft of basic human rights.*

27. Superior (से बेहतर) — to

Eg. (1) *He is superior to you.*

(2) *I am superior to most of my classmates in the matter of technology.*

28. Inferior (से बदतर) — to

Eg. (1) *This is inferior to that brand.*

(2) *This brand of cement is inferior to our brand.*

29. Senior (वरिष्ठ) — to

Eg. (1) *She is senior to me.*

(2) *He is senior to most of us.*

30. Junior (कनिष्ठ) — to

Eg. (1) *He is junior to her.*

(2) *Rohan is junior to my brother.*

31. Prior (से पहले) — to

Eg. (1) *The train arrived prior to time.*

(2) *They constructed the flyover prior to the deadline.*

32. Talk (V- से बात करना) — to

Eg. (1) *I will talk to you.*

(2) *We will talk to the manager regarding this issue.*

33. Talk (N- वार्तालाप) — with

Eg. (1) *The talk with Pakistan failed.*

(2) *The PM had a talk with the CM of UP.*

34. Listen (सुनना) — to

Eg. *(1) Please listen to me.*

(2) I listen to old songs.

35. Suggest (सलाह देना) — to

Eg. *(1) I suggested to him.*

(2) My teacher suggested to me to read books.

36. Agree (किसी व्यक्ति से सहमत) — with

Eg. *(1) I agree with you.*

(2) She agreed with her mother.

37. Agree (किसी बात से सहमत) — to

Eg. *(1) I agree to your proposal.*

(2) She agreed to the idea of destination wedding.

KD Campus

38. Avail (लाभ उठाना) — of

Eg. (1) I availed myself of the opportunity.

(2) Please avail yourself of this golden chance.

39. Annoyed (किसी से चिढ़ना) — with

Eg. (1) I am annoyed with you.

(2) People are annoyed with such opportunists.

40. Annoyed (किसी बात से चिढ़ना) — at

Eg. (1) I am annoyed at your idiocy.

(2) We are annoyed at the cacophony.

41. Angry (किसी व्यक्ति से गुस्सा) — with

Eg. (1) I am angry with you.

(2) She was angry with her children.

Cacaphony
↓
शोरगुल

42. Angry (किसी बात से गुस्सा) — at

Eg. (1) I am angry at the mismanagement.

(2) We are angry at the late delivery.

43. Adapt (ढ़ालना) — to

Eg. (1) We adapt ourselves to the environment.

(2) She could not adapt herself to a different culture.

44. Adjacent (के बगल) — to

Eg. (1) Your house is adjacent to mine.

(2) China is adjacent to Ladakh.

45. Surprised (आश्चर्य) — at

Eg. (1) I am surprised at the result.

(2) She was surprised at your behaviour.

46. Amazed (आश्चर्य) — at

Eg. (1) She is amazed at his audacity.

(2) I am amazed at his aggressive behaviour.

Audacity
↓
Boldness

Aggressive
↓
आक्रामक

47. Astonished (आश्चर्य) — at

Eg. (1) He was astonished at her misdemeanour.

(2) We are astonished at China's Brazenness.

48. Abide (अनुपालन करना) — by

Eg. (1) I abide by the traffic rules.

(2) We have to abide by the law of the land.

49. Comply (अनुपालन करना) — with

Eg. (1) I comply with the law of the land.

(2) Please comply with all the rules.

50. Marry$_{(A.V.)}$ (शादी करना) — No preposition

Eg. (1) She married him.

(2) She married an army officer.

51. Married$_{(P.V)}$ (शादी होना) — to

Eg. (1) He was married to Rohini.

(2) She was married to an IAS Officer.

Misdemeanour
↓
a wrong act.

Brazenness
↓
Undue bravery (घृष्टता)

52. Favourable (अनुकूल) — to

Eg. (1) CET seems favourable to the students.

(2) Black soil is favourable to the growth of cotton.

53. Conducive (अनुकूल) — to

Eg. (1) This climate is not conducive to my health.

(2) This attitude is not conducive to the development of the country.

54. Prefer (से ज्यादा पसंद करना) — to

Eg. (1) I prefer tea to coffee.

(2) I prefer death to slavery.

Slavery
↓
दासता

55. Obliged (कृतज्ञ/ एहसानमंद) — to

Eg. (1) I am obliged to you.

(2) People are obliged to the government for free electricity.

KD Campus

56. **Deficient (कमी होना)** — **in**

Eg. *(1)* *This soil is deficient in Nitrogen.*

(2) *It is deficient in vitamins.*

57. **Lack (वंचित)** — **No preposition**

Eg. *(1)* *You lack common sense.*

(2) *We lack basic amenities.*

Amenities
↓
सुविधाएं

58. **Devoid (से वंचित)** — **of**

Eg. *(1)* *Women are devoid of basic human rights in certain countries.*

(2) *The prisoners are devoid of healthy food in jails.*

59. **Ashamed (शर्मिंदा)** — **of**

Eg. *(1)* *He was ashamed of his conduct.*

(2) *Are you not ashamed of yourself?*

60. Aim$_{(V)}$ (मकसद होना) — at

Eg. (1) He aimed the pistol at her.

(2) I aimed my effort at my goal.

61. Suffer (से ग्रस्त) — from

Eg. (1) He is suffering from Cancer.

(2) She is suffering from severe headache.

Note: She suffered heavy loss.

62. Succeed (कामयाब होना) — in

Eg. (1) I succeeded in my first attempt.

(2) She succeeded in her motive.

Note: Jahangir succeeded Akbar.

63. Tired (थक जाना/ त्रस्त हो जाना) — of

Eg. (1) I am tired of this lockdown.

(2) She is tired of the problems.

64. **Prevent (रोकना) — from**

Eg. (1) They prevented me from entering the hall.

(2) I prevented him from boarding a running train.

65. **Fond (पसंद) — of**

Eg. (1) I am fond of sweets.

(2) I am fond of classical songs.

66. **Sick (से परेशान) — of**

Eg. (1) I am sick of his tantrums.

(2) I am sick of this lockdown now.

Tantrums
↓
नखरे

67. **Laugh (पर हँसना/ मजाक उड़ाना) — at**

Eg. (1) Don't laugh at the monkeys.

(2) He laughed at me.

68. Consist (से भरा) — of

Eg. (1) This compartment consists of ten rooms.

(2) The book consists of fifteen chapters.

69. Good (अच्छा) — at

Eg. (1) I am good at writing essay.

(2) She is good at singing.

70. Confident (विश्वास होना) — of

Eg. (1) I am confident of my performance.

(2) I am confident of your result.

71. Equal (Adj) (बराबर) — to

Eg. (1) 12 to the power 2 is equal to 144.

(2) His value is equal to yours.

72. **Equal (V) (बराबर)** — **No preposition**

Eg. *(1)* *Nothing can equal mother's love.*

(2) *You can't equal your parents' generosity.*

73. **Proud (गौरवान्वित)** — **of**

Eg. *(1)* *I am proud of you.*

(2) *We are proud of Sachin's achievements.*

74. **Essential —** **for**

Eg. *(1)* *Calcium is essential for strong bones.*

(2) *Your presence is essential for our happiness.*

75. **Belong (का होना)** — **to**

Eg. *(1)* *This luggage belongs to me.*

(2) *It belongs to the common people.*

76. **Negligent (लापरवाह होना)** — **of**

Eg. *(1)* *He is negligent of his duty.*

(2) *The police officers were negligent of their duties.*

Generosity
↓
उदारता

77. In spite (के बावजूद) — of

Eg. (1) He passed in spite of his illness.

(2) Inspite of working hard, he failed.

78. Despite (के बावजूद) — No preposition

Eg. (1) Despite working hard, he failed.

(2) Despite running late, the train arrived on time.

79. Fortunate (भाग्यशाली) — of

Eg. (1) I am fortunate of having such loving students.

(2) I am fortunate of being an educated girl.

80. Desirous (इच्छुक) — of

Eg. (1) He is desirous of a good post.

(2) We are desirous of knowing the truth.

81. Accompanied (से साथ होना) — by

Eg. (1) He was accompanied by his friend.

(2) The PM was accompanied by the Home Minister

82. Accuse (आरोप लगाना) — of

Eg. (1) They accused him of robbery.

(2) The police was accused of malpractices.

83. Afraid (डरा) — of

Eg. (1) I am afraid of darkness.

(2) We are not afraid of you.

84. Aware (से अवगत) — of

Eg. (1) We are aware of our rights.

(2) She was aware of the danger.

85. Beware (से सावधान) — of

Eg. (1) Beware of dogs.

(2) Delhi is a good place but beware of pollution.

Malpractices
↓
कुकृत्य, गलत काम

86. Busy (व्यस्त) — with

Eg. (1) She is busy with his work.

(2) The government was busy with the Lok Sabha election.

87. Capable (सक्षम) — of

Eg. (1) I am capable of doing anything

(2) I am capable of lifting this box.

88. Close (के नजदीक) — to

Eg. (1) We are close to our destination.

(2) You are close to fulfilling your dreams.

89. Compare (समान चीज से तुलना) — with

Eg. (1) Don't compare me with him.

(2) Compare Jio with Airtel.

KD Campus

90. Compare (असमान चीज से तुलना) — to

Eg. (1) Life is compared to journey.

(2) Life is compared to a stage.

91. Conscious (से अवगत) — of

Eg. (1) I am conscious of my drawbacks.

(2) She is conscious of her duties.

92. Contrary (से विपरीत) — to

Eg. (1) He spoke contrary to the norms.

(2) Don't behave contrary to the law of the land.

93. Convicted (दोषी होना) — of

Eg. (1) He was convicted of murder.

(2) The four accused were convicted of raping and murdering Nirbhaya.

94. Dear (बहुत प्यारा) — to

Eg. (1) Life is dear to everyone.

(2) Self respect is dear to all.

95. Desire (इच्छा) — for

Eg. (1) He has no desire for wealth.

(2) I have a great desire for knowledge.

96. Desirous (इच्छुक) — of

Eg. (1) He is not desirous of wealth.

(2) She is desirous of a government job.

97. Dream (सपना देखना) — of

Eg. (1) I dream of a big house.

(2) She dreams of marrying a prince.

KD Campus

98. Due (के कारण) — to

Eg. (1) He failed due to his laziness.

(2) The accident was due to your negligence.

99. Escape (से बचना) — from

Eg. (1) He escaped from the jail.

(2) She escaped from getting punished.

100. Envious (से ईष्यालु) — of

Eg. (1) She is envious of your beauty.

(2) I am envious of his success.

101. Grateful (कृतज्ञ) — to

Eg. (1) I am grateful to god.

(2) We must be grateful to our parents.

Negligence
↓
लापरवाही

KD Campus

102. Thankful (कृतज्ञ / आभारी) — to

Eg. (1) I am thankful to you.

(2) She is thankful to him for his advice.

103. Obedient (आज्ञाकारी) — to

Eg. (1) She is obedient to her parents.

(2) Be obedient to your teachers.

104. Object (के विरूद्ध होना) — to

Eg. (1) I objected to his proposal.

(2) I objected to his advancements.

105. Responsible (जिम्मेदार) — for

Eg. (1) He is responsible for the bank robbery.

(2) You are responsible for all your actions.

KD Campus

106. Stare (घूरना) — at

Eg. (1) He is staring at me.

(2) The terrorist stared at us.

107. Satisfied (संतुष्ट) — with

Eg. (1) I am satisfied with your performance.

(2) She is satisfied with the result.

108. Think (सोचना) — of

Eg. (1) He thought of a plan.

(2) Think of a new idea.

109. Worthy (के लायक) — of

Eg. (1) She is worthy of a reward.

(2) You are worthy of a comfortable life.

KD Campus

Some Phrase Preposition

- According to (के अनुसार) → as stated by

E.g:- According to the terms and conditions, he will have to finish it in two days.

- By dint of (के बल पर) → by force of, because of

E.g:- I passed the exam by dint of hard work.

- In case of (अगर) → in the event of

E.g:- In case of emergency, call 100.

- By virtue of (के बल पर) → by the authority of

E.g:- The judge can pass the order by virtue of his powers.

Some Phrase Preposition

(5) Owing to (के कारण) → due to

'Owing to' means 'due to' but there are a few differences.

'Owing to' एवं 'due to' अर्थ में एक ही है। दोनों के बीच मुख्यतः दो अंतर है-

(1) वाक्य की शुरूआत 'Owing to' से करें 'due to' से नहीं

(a) A sentence should start with 'owing to' and not 'due to'.

E.g:- Due to heavy rains, I could not come. (×)

Owing to heavy rains, I could not come.(✓)

(Note: SSC accepts that a sentence can start with 'due to')

(नोट : SSC 'due to' से वाक्य की शुरूआत को सही मानती है।)

This rule is not important as far as modern English is concerned.

Note: 'Due to' comes after different forms of 'be'

(नोट : 'Be' के किसी भी form के बाद 'due to' का प्रयोग होता है।

The accident was owing to heavy rains.(×)

Form of be

The accident was due to heavy rains.(✓)

Form of be

- With reference to → in context of

E.g:- With reference to (के सन्दर्भ में) → your letter, dated 27th July 2020, I hereby submit my reply.

- In order to (ताकि) → for the purpose of

E.g:- We vacated the premises in order to avoid litigation.

- In course of (के दौरान) → during

E.g:- In course of time, I faced many problems.

- On behalf of (के स्थान पर) → as a representative of

E.g:- He came to receive the award on behalf of his brother.

- Agreeably to (के अनुसरण में) → willing

E.g:- Agreeably to the terms of the agreement, we will pay you Rs. 1 lakh.

- By means of (के सहायता से) → through the use of

E.g:- He amassed a lot of money by means of sharp practices.

- For the sake of (के वास्ते) → indicates purpose

E.g:- Save plants atleast for the sake of your children.

- In favour of (के पक्ष में) → to the benefit of

E.g:- He voted in favour of his friend.

- In lieu of (के बदले में) → in the place of

E.g:- He got fifty thousand rupees in lieu of his claim.

- On account of (के कारण) → by reason of

E.g:- On account of his negligence, the company has suffered heavy loss.

- In relation to (के संबंध में) → in connection with

E.g:- There are some rules in relation to the organization of the match.

See the difference

1. I acted according to your order.
   I acted in accordance with your order.
2. Mother Teresa had affection for all.
   Mother Teresa was affectionate to all.
3. He has ambition for fame.
   He is ambitious of fame.
4. I am capable of doing hard work.
   I have capacity for doing hard work.
5. I have confidence in myself.
   I am confident of his performance.
6. He has desire for money and fame.
   He is desirous of money and fame.

Fixed Preposition

'To' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Abhorrent *to*	causing or deserving strong dislike	घिनौना
Access *to*	reach	पहुँच
Accountable *to*	obliged to accept responsibility	उत्तरदायी
Accustomed *to*	usual or regular	आदी होना
Addicted *to*	unable to stop using, habitual	लत लगना
Adhere *to*	to cause to stick fast	पालन करना, जुड़े रहना
Adjacent *to*	sharing a border	सटा हुआ
Affectionate *to*	feeling or showing love and affection	स्नेही
Agreeable *to*	ready or willing to agree	सहमत
Allegiance *to*	loyalty to a person, country, group, etc.	निष्ठा
Alternative *to*	substitute	विकल्प

Fixed Preposition

'To' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Affectionate *to*	feeling or showing love and affection	स्नेही
Agreeable *to*	ready or willing to agree	सहमत
Allegiance *to*	loyalty to a person, country, group, etc.	निष्ठा
Alternative *to*	substitute	विकल्प
Answerable *to*	required to explain actions or decisions to someone	जवाबदेह
Antidote *to*	a substance that stops the harmful effects of a poison	विष-नाशक
Attention *to*	notice, interest, or awareness	ध्यान
Attune *to*	to bring into harmony	लय में करना
Averse *to*	having a feeling of dislike	प्रतिकूल
Beneficial *to*	producing good or helpful results or effects	फायेमंद

Fixed Preposition

'To' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Blind *to*	unable to see (fault etc)	(के प्रति अंधा)
Comparable *to*	being similar or about the same	तुलनीय
Complement *to*	to complete something else or make it better	पूरक
Conform *to*	to obey or agree to something	अनुरूप
Detrimental *to*	causing damage or injury	हानिकारक
Devoted *to*	completely loyal	भक्त
Disgrace *to*	to cause to lose respect or be humiliated	अपमान
Due *to*	because	के कारण
Enmity *to*	a very deep unfriendly feeling	शत्रुता
Equal *to*	same	बराबरी
Equivalent *to*	almost same	लगभग बराबर

Fixed Preposition

'To' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Essential *to*	extremely important and necessary	आवश्यक
Exception *to*	a case where a rule does not apply	अपवाद
Favourable *to*	showing approval	अनुकूल
Given *to*	habitual	आदी होना
Harmful *to*	causing or capable of causing damage or harm	नुकसान पहुंचने वाला
Heir *to*	a person who has the legal right to receive the property of someone who dies	वारिस
Immune *to*	not capable of being affected by a disease	प्रतिरक्षा
Important *to*	having serious meaning or worth	जरूरी
Incidental *to*	happening as a minor part or result of something else	आकस्मिक
Indebted *to*	owing something (such as money or thanks) to someone or something	ऋणी

Fixed Preposition

'To' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Indifferent *to*	not interested in or concerned about something	उदासीन
Indigenous *to*	produced, living, or existing naturally in a particular region or environment	स्वदेशी
Injurious *to*	causing injury	हानिकारक
Key *to*	to make something correspond to something else	मौलिक
Look forward *to*	anticipated with satisfaction	संतुष्टि के साथ आशा करना
Loyal *to*	having or showing complete and constant support for someone or something	निष्ठावान
Obstruction *to*	something that blocks	बाधा
Opposite *to*	not agree	के विरूद्ध
Postscript *to*	a note or series of notes added at the end of a letter, article, or book	परिशिष्ट भाग

Fixed Preposition

'To' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Preface *to*	an introduction to a book or speech	प्रस्तावना
Prefer *to*	to like (someone or something) better than someone or something else	के तुलना में ज्यादा पसंद करना
Preferable *to*	better or more desirable	बेहतर
Profitable *to*	producing good results or effects	लाभदायक
Prone *to*	likely to do, have, or suffer from something	से ग्रस्त होने की संभावना
Reduced *to*	to make (something) smaller in size, amount, number, etc.	को कम करना
Relevant *to*	relating to a subject in an appropriate way	प्रासंगिक
Repugnance *to*	a strong feeling of dislike or disgust	घृणा
Resign oneself *to*	to accept something reluctantly because you cannot change it	बेमन से ही पर स्वीकार

Fixed Preposition

'To' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Sensitive *to*	likely to cause people to become upset	संवेदनशील
Sequel *to*	a book, movie, etc., that continues a story begun in another book, movie, etc.	का अगला भाग
Similar *to*	almost the same	समान
Stick *to*	to hold to	लगे रहना
Submission *to*	something that is submitted	प्रस्तुत
Submit *to*	yield or accept to a superior force	के आगे झुकना
Subscribe *to*	to pay money to get a publication or service regularly	सदस्यता लेने के लिए
Succumb *to*	to stop trying to resist something	मर जाना/हार मान जाना
Supplement *to*	to add something to (something) in order to make it complete	पूरक बनना

Fixed Preposition

'To' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Surrender *to*	to give the control or use of (something) to someone else	समर्पण करना
Susceptible *to*	easily affected, influenced, or harmed by something	ग्रहणक्षम
Swing *to*	to move with a smooth, curving motion	झूलना
Taken *to*	to begin to like something	पसंद करना शुरू करना
Tantamount *to*	equal to something in value, meaning, or effect	समान
Temptation *to*	a strong urge or desire to have or do something	प्रलोभन
True *to*	faithful	वफादार होना

Fixed Preposition

'OF' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Abhorrence *of*	strong hatred	ग्रहण
Accused *of*	one charged with an offence	अभियुक्त
Afraid *of*	filled with fear	डरा हुआ
Ambitious *of*	having a desire of	महत्वाकांक्षी
Anxious *of*	causing or showing fear or nervousness	चिंतित
Ashamed *of*	feeling shame, guilt, or disgrace	शर्मिंदा
Assurance *of*	the state of being sure or certain about something	आश्वासन
Aware *of*	knowing that something (such as a situation, condition, or problem) exists	अवगत
Bereft *of*	no longer having it, deprived	वंचित

Fixed Preposition

'OF' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Beware *of*	to be careful	सावधन रहना
Boast *of*	a reason to be proud	डींग मारना
Capable *of*	able to do something	सक्षम
Cautious *of*	careful about avoiding danger or risk	सर्तक
Certain *of*	not having any doubt about something	पक्का होना
Charge *of*	to make a person responsible for something	के प्रभारी
Composed *of*	calm and in control of your emotions	शांत
Consist *of*	to be made up of (something)	से बना हुआ
Confident *of*	showing that you have confidence	आश्वस्त होना
Conscious *of*	aware	जागरूक

Fixed Preposition

'OF' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Convicted *of*	to prove or find guilty	अपराधी ठहराया हुआ
Convinced *of*	to cause (someone) to believe that something is true	यकीन करना
Deprived *of*	not having the things that are needed for a good or healthy life	वंचित
Devoid *of*	lacking	वंचित
Diffident *of*	lacking confidence	आत्मविश्वासहीन
Disapprove *of*	to officially refuse to approve or accept (something)	अस्वीकार करना
Dispose *of*	to get rid of something	छुटकारा पाना
Embarrassed *of*	ashamed	शर्मिंदा
Envious *of*	feeling or showing a desire to have what someone else has	ईष्यालु

Fixed Preposition

'OF' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Formed *of*	organized in a way characteristic of living matter	के शौकीन
Frightened *of*	to cause to become afraid	का गठन
Get rid *of*	to become free from something	छुटकारा पाना
Guilty *of*	responsible for committing a crime or doing something bad or wrong	अपराधी
Lack *(N)*	deficient	की कमी
Need *(N)*	to require	जरूरत
Proof *of*	something which shows that something else is true or correct	प्रमाण होना
Scared *of*	to be frightened or worried	डरा हुआ
Shortage *of*	a condition in which there is not enough of something needed	कमी होना

Fixed Preposition

'OF' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Sure *of*	ascertain	निश्चित होना
Void *(N)*	null or containing nothing	रिक्त
Want *of*	to need (something)	की इच्छा होना
Wary *of*	marked by being cautious	सावधन
Worthy *of*	deserving respect, attention	के योग्य

Campus

Fixed Preposition

'For' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Affection *for*	a feeling of liking for someone or something	के लिए स्नेह
Affection *for*	feeling or showing love and affection	स्नेही
Ambition *for*	a particular goal or aim	महत्वाकांक्षा
Anxiety *for*	fear or nervousness about what might happen	चिंता
Appetite *for*	a physical desire for food	भूख
Aptitude *for*	a natural ability to do something or to learn something	योग्यता
Atone *for*	to make amends or reparation	हरजाना देना
Capacity *for*	the ability to hold or contain	क्षमता
Compassion *for*	a feeling of wanting to help someone who is sick, hungry, in trouble, etc.	सहानुभूति
Compensation *for*	something that is done or given to make up for damage, trouble, etc.	मुआवजा, हर्जाना

Fixed Preposition

'For' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Contempt *for*	a feeling that someone or something is not worthy of any respect or approval	अवमानना
Canvass *for*	to ask (the people in an area) what they think about a candidate, project, idea, etc.	मत माँगना
Craving *for*	a very strong desire for something	तृष्णा
Desire *for*	to want or wish for (something)	इच्छा
Hope *for*	expect	आशा
Liking *for*	a feeling of regard or fondness	पसंद करना
Yearn *for*	to desire very much	के लिए लालसा करना

Fixed Preposition

'Form' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Abstain *from*	to choose not to do or have something	परहेज करना
Abstinence *from*	the practice of not doing or having something that is wanted	परहेज करना
Debar *from*	to officially prevent (someone) from having or doing something	निषेध करना
Derive *from*	to take or get (something) from (something else)	से निकालना या हासिल करना
Descent *from*	an act of coming or going down in location or condition	से नीचे जाना
Desist *from*	to stop doing something	करना बंद कर देना
Deviate *from*	tent or to be different from what is usual or expected	(रास्ते सेद्ध हटना)
Emerge *from*	to become known or come from	उभरना
Escape *from*	to get away from a dangerous place or situation	सुरक्षित निकल जाना
Exemption *from*	permission not to pay or do something	छूट

Fixed Preposition

'Form' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Prevent *from*	to stop (something) from happening or existing	रोकना
Prohibit *from*	to order (someone) not to use or do something	निषेध
Protect *from*	to keep (someone or something) from being harmed	बचाना
Recover *from*	to become healthy after an illness or injury	स्वस्थ होना
Refrain *from*	to stop yourself from doing something	परहेज करना
Resign *from*	to give up (a job or position) in a formal manner	त्यागपत्र देना
Respite *from*	relief	राहत

Fixed Preposition

'ON' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Comment	to make a statement about someone or something	टिप्पणी करना
Deliberate *on*	to think about or discuss something very carefully in order to make a decision	विचार करना
Depend *on*	to be subject to determination by the situation	पर निर्भर
Dwell *on*	to live in a particular place	में रहना
Embark *on*	to begin a journey	यात्रा शुरू करना
Encroach *on*	to gradually move or go into an area that is beyond the usual or desired limits	अतिक्रमण करना
Impose *on*	to cause (something, such as tax) to affect someone or something by using your authority	कर लगाना
Insist *on*	to demand that something happen or that someone do something	आग्रह करना
Intrude *on*	to come or go into a place where you are not wanted or welcome	पर अतिक्रमण करना

Fixed Preposition

'ON' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Trample *on*	to cause damage or pain by walking or stepping heavily on something or someone	पैर तले कुचलना
Acquaintance *with*	so	
Absorbed *in*	having one's attention wholly engaged or occupied	अवशोषित
Accomplished *in*	very skillful, having or showing the skill of an expert	निपुण
Assiduous *in*	very hard working	परिश्रमी
Bigoted *in*	blindly devoted to some creed, opinion, or practice	धर्मांध, कट्टर व्यक्ति
Dabble *in*	to take part in an activity in a way that is not serious	शौकिया तौर पर कुछ करना
Deficient *in*	not good enough, lacking	अपूर्ण, कमी
Diligent *in*	showing steady and earnest care and hard work	मेहनती
Excel *in*	to be better than others	श्रेष्ठ होना

Fixed Preposition

'ON' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Experienced *in*	having knowledge or skill in a particular field	अनुभवी
Indulge *in*	to allow (yourself) to have or do something as a special pleasure	लिप्त होना
Interested *in*	wanting to learn more about something or to become involved in something	रूची
Involved *in*	connected with something	शामिल होना
Persist *in*	to continue to occur or exist beyond the usual, expected, or normal time	लगे रहना
Presevere *in*	to continue doing something though it is difficult	लगे रहना
Proficient *in*	good at doing something	कुशल
Remiss *in*	not showing enough care and attention	बेपरवाह
Versed *in*	skilled in something	निपुण

Fixed Preposition

'With' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Acquaintance *with*	someone who is known	जान-पहचान
Afflicted *with*	caused pain or suffering	पीड़ित
Alliance *with*	a union or association	संधि
Associate *with*	to combine or unite with another for mutual benefit	सहयोगी
Bear *with*	to suffer	सहना
Beset *with*	to cause problems or difficulties for (someone or something)	(किसी के लिए) परेशानी उत्पन्न करना
Busy *with*	full of activity or work	व्यस्त रहना
Clash *with*	a short fight	टकराव
Coincide *with*	to happen at the same time as something else	एक समय पर होना
Compatible *with*	capable of existing together in harmony	अनुकूल
Compliant *with*	inclined to agree with others	आज्ञाकारी

Fixed Preposition

'With' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Conformity *with*	the fact or state of agreeing with or obeying something	अनुपालन
Contrasted *with*	to be different especially in a way that is very obvious	विषम
Conversant *with*	to be familiar with	परिचित
Cope *with*	to endure something unpleasant	सामना करना
Correspond *with*	to be similar or equal to something	अनुरूप
Disgusted *with*	a feeling of revulsion or profound disapproval	घृणा
Drenched *with*	to make (someone or something) completely wet	भीगना
Endowed *with*	to give a large amount of money to a school, hospital, etc.	संपन्न
Gifted *with*	having great ability	प्रतिभाशाली
Intimacy *with*	a state marked by emotional closeness	आत्मीयता
Intimate *with*	to say or suggest (something) in an indirect way	सूचित करना

Fixed Preposition

'With' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Quarrel *with*	to fight	लड़ाई करना
Remonstrate *with*	to disagree and argue or complain about something	प्रतिवाद करना
Replete *with*	having much or plenty of something	परिपूर्ण
Satiated *with*	to satisfy (a need, desire, etc.) fully	तृप्त
Satisfied *with*	to cause (someone) to be happy or pleased	संतुष्ट
Sympathize *with*	to feel sorry for someone who is in a bad condition	के साथ सहानुभूति रखना

KD LIVE

PREPOSITION
(EXERCISE)



Download Now!

KD LIVE App

Email: online@kdcampus.org | Contact : 8586903756 /8586903746

Exercise-1

Please go through the chapter Preposition given in Volume – 1 and then attempt the questions given below.

1. Cheese is made ____ milk.
2. The table is made ____ wood.
3. He deals ____ garments.
4. I cannot deal ____ you.
5. Amphibians differ ____ reptiles.
6. I differ ____the authority on this point.
7. You can depend ____ me.
8. You cannot depend solely ____ this book.
9. My coming depends ____ whether I get a ticket to Calcutta or not.
10. He is the best student ____ my class.

Answers

1. from
2. of
3. in
4. with
5. from
6. with
7. on
8. On
9. upon
10. of

Exercise-1

11. Delhi is the best city _____ India.
12. The exam will start _____ Monday.
13. Smoking is injurious _____ health.
14. Open your book _____ page 40.
15. He died _____ cancer.
16. He died _____ hunger.
17. He died _____ harness.
18. He was killed _____ an accident.
19. He could not succeed despite _____ working hard.
20. In spite _____ working hard, he failed.
21. We are waiting _____ the result.
22. The result is being awaited _____ .

Answers

11. in
12. on
13. to
14. at
15. of
16. of
17. in
18. in
19. No preposition required
20. of
21. for
22. No preposition required

Exercise-1

23. I cannot part ____ my parents.
24. The miserly merchant could not part ____ his money.
25. He sat ____ me as the seat next to mine was vacant.
26. ____ being a coward, he is fickle-minded too.
27. I can cope ____ with any problem.
28. There is no co-operation ____ the students of our class.
29. Bi-lateral talks will surely improve the relation ____ India and Pakistan.
30. The boy fell ____ the well.
31. We were sitting ___ the classroom when the boys came the room.
32. All the students stood ___ respectfully when the principal entered the classroom.

Answers

23. from
24. with
25. beside
26. Besides
27. No preposition required
28. among
29. between
30. into
31. in, into
32. up, no preposition required

Exercise-1

33. The architect entered _____ an agreement with the contractor.
34. The bill was passed _____ pandemonium.
35. The lion jumped _____ the deer.

Answers

33. into
34. into
35. upon

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
1.	Made from	When the form changes.	जब रूप बदल जाए	Ex. Bread is made from flour.
2.	Made of	When the form does not change.	किसी चीज का बना होना/जब रूप न बदले	Ex. Shoes are made of leather.
3.	Deal in	To buy and sell particular	व्यापार करना	Ex. He deals in books.
4.	Deal with	To manage with someone	किसी व्यक्ति या वस्तु से निपटना	Ex. The court will deal with the culprit.
5.	Differ from	To be different from	भिन्न होना	Ex. His brother differs from her in habits.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
6.	Differ with	to disagree with someone.	किसी (व्यक्ति सेद्ध) अलग मत होना	Ex. He differed with his employees regarding the consequences of GST.
7.	Depend on	Put trust in some person with confidence.	किसी व्यक्ति पर निर्भर करना	Ex. His parents depend on him.
8.	Depend on	Put trust in a thing with confidence	किसी वस्तु पर निर्भर होना	Ex. I depend on this book for English.
9.	Depend upon	When an action depends on some condition.	जब कोई कार्य दूसरी स्थिति पर निर्भर करें	Ex. I can go to the movie but it depends upon whether my parents will let me go or not.

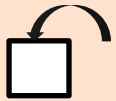
S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
12.	On Monday/Tuesday etc.	we use 'on' with days.	'Days' के 'on' साथ का प्रयोग होता है।	Ex. He reached Mumbai on Saturday.
13.	Injurious to	to have bad effect.	के लिए हानिकारक	Ex. Drinking is injurious to health.
14.	Died of	When a disease is the cause.	किसी बिमारी से मरना जो प्रत्यक्ष कारण है।	Ex. He died of brain tumour.
15.	Died from	when some reason is the	किसी कारण से मृत्यु होना	Ex. He died from thirst.
16.	Die in harness	A phrase that means 'to die while in service'.	कार्यकाल के दौरान मृत्यु	Ex. Indira Gandhi died in harness.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
17.	Die in harness	A phrase that means 'to die while in service'.	कार्यकाल के दौरान मृत्यु	Ex. Indira Gandhi died in harness.
18.	Killed in an accident	Note: In an accident, a person is killed. 'Died' is a wrong word here	नोटः Accident में 'Killed' शब्द का प्रयोग होता है ना कि 'died' होगा।	Ex. Ramesh was killed in a plane crash.
19.	Despite does not take 'of'.	'Inspite of' means 'despite'. Since both mean the same, we sometimes wrongly use of' with 'despite'. Synonyms: Nevertheless, Notwithstanding	'Inspite of' एवं despite का अर्थ है 'के बावजूद'। कई बार हम 'Despite के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग कर लेते है जो गलत है।	Ex. Despite being late, he was allowed to take the exam.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
21.	Wait for	Wait for someone	की प्रतीक्षा करना	Ex. He is waiting for his reply.
22.	Waited for = awaited	'Awaited' does not take for because Waited for = awaited	'Awaited' के बाद 'for' का प्रयोग नही होता।	Ex. The latest news is being awaited.
23.	Part from	to go away from someone.	किसी व्यक्ति से अलग होना	Ex. You should not part from him in anger.
24.	Part with	to seperate from something	किसी वस्तु से अलग होना	Ex. I don't want to part with any of my books.
25.	Beside	By the side of	के बगल में	Ex. He sat beside me.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
26.	Besides	Apart from	के अलावा	Ex. Besides being intelligent, he is laborious too.
27.	Cope with	To handle Note: 'Cope up with' is wrong.	निपटना	Ex. She can cope with the present situation.
28.	Among	Refers to the association or in company of more than two.	दो से अधिक के बीच में	Ex. He distributed the sweets among the students of the school.
29.	Between	Refers to the association of two	दो के बीच में	Ex. There is no love lost between Rahul and Ramesh.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
30.	Fall into	'into' shows motion 	'into' किसी वस्तु/पानी इत्यादि के अंदर जाता हुआ दर्शाता है।	Ex. He fell into the pit.
31.	Sit **in** the Came **into**	in  into 		Ex. Rajni was sitting in the room
32.	Enter does not take preposition 'into' if it means to 'come into'.	To go or come in	अंदर जाना	Ex. The goons entered the bedroom and shot the politician dead.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
33.	**Enter into**	to make oneself a party to an agreement.	किसी समझौते का हिस्सा होना	Ex. He refused to enter into an agreement with his tenant.
34	'Amid' can come with both countable and uncountable nouns.	Amid means 'during in case of uncountable noun and 'among' in case of countable noun.	के बीच के/दौरान	Ex. 1) His is cry for help drowned amid the noise. 2) My wallet fell amid the fighting.
35.	upon 	When something/someone strikes the surface of the other while in motion.	के ऊपर (गिरना/कूदना)	Ex. The robber jumped upon the running train.

Exercise-2

36. Put all the books _____ the table.
37. I told the truth _____ his face.
38. I was filled _____ wonder.
39. You should learn it word _____ word.
40. It is half past eight _____ my watch.
41. The king deprived the merchant _____ his belongings.
42. China is _____ the north of India.
43. I sat _____ the tree _____ a cemented platform.
44. I sat _____ the shade of the tree.
45. My watch is superior _____ yours.
46. His dress is different _____ mine.
47. The matter will be looked _____ by the committee.

Answers

36. on
37. to
38. with
39. for
40. by
41. of
42. to
43. under, on
44. in
45. to
46. from
47. into

Exercise-2

48. I will talk _____ you later.
49. We had a talk _____ them.
50. Please listen _____ me.
51. I provided money _____ him.
52. I provided him _____ money.
53. I suggested _____ him to take the exam.
54. My teacher told _____ me to solve the easy questions first.
55. He proposed _____ me to take my children for a walk.
56. He said _____ me to be upfront in my attitude.
57. We reached _____ Delhi last night at 9 p.m.
58. Both the parties reached _____ an agreement.
59. We go _____ home at 8 p.m.
60. I left _____ college at 10 a.m.

Answers

48. to
49. with
50. to
51. to
52. with
53. to
54. no preposition required
55. to 56. to
57. no preposition required
58. at
59. no preposition required
60. for

Exercise-2

61. I agree _____ you.
62. I agree _____ your opinion
63. I am annoyed _____ him.
64. I am annoyed _____ the mismanagement.
65. We must avail ourselves _____ the opportunity.
66. She was angry _____ her children.
67. She was angry _____ his callousness.
68. Fishes are adapted _____ life in water.
69. His bungalow is adjacent _____ mine.
70. This serum is an antidote _____ snake's poison.
71. I apologize _____ you _____ my mistake.
72. I have no appetite _____ sweets.
73. We were not apprised _____ his demise.
74. We were astonished his audacity.
75. I am averse _____ smoking.

Answers

61. with
62. to
63. with
64. at
65. of
66. with
67. at
68. to
69. to
70. to
71. to, for
72. for
73. of
74. at
75. to

Exercise-2

76. The management did not accede _____ the workers' demand.
77. I am acquainted _____ all the places of Delhi.
78. We must abide _____ the rules of the college.
79. We must comply _____ the rules of the college.
80. We are answerable _____ God _____ all our deeds.
81. He was bereft _____ all possession.
82. The queen bestowed the title of Knighthood _____ him.
83. The queen bestowed him _____ the title of Knighthood.
84. Hearing the news, he became red _____ anger.
85. It is ten minutes five _____ my _____ watch. I will reach there 5 p.m.
86. I will stand _____ you _____ thick and thin.
87. The cliff hangs _____ the sea.
88. This bus plies _____ Delhi and Noida.
89. The money lender charges interest _____ 9 percent per annum.
90. Cloth is sold _____ yard.

Answers

76. to
77. with
78. by
79. with
80. to, for
81. of
82. upon
83. with
84. with
85. to, by
86. by, through
87. over
88. between
89. at
90. by

Exercise-2

91. The man injured in the accident succumbed _____ his injuries.
92. We must immediately dispense _____ the service of the dishonest clerk.
93. Ram married _____ Sita.
94. Ram was married _____ Sita.
95. This climate is conducive _____ health.
96. He is entitled _____ a suitable reward.
97. I prefer tea _____ coffee.
98. There is no exception _____ this rule.
99. I will be obliged you _____ your help.
100. I inquired _____ him about the progress.

Answers

91. to
92. with
93. no preposition required
94. to
95. to
96. to
97. to
98. to
99. to, for
100. of

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
36.	on 	Touching the surface of	'पर'	Eg. He sat on the bench.
37.	To someone's	directly/openly	सीधे-सीधे मुंह पर	Eg. He told the truth to his face.
38.	Fill with (something)	When filled with something.	भरना (किसी वस्तु से)	Eg. He is filled with grief.
39.	Word for word	Exact repetition of the same words/verbatim	शब्दशः	Ex. He translated the whole matter word for word.
40.	Deprived takes fixed preposition 'of'		'Deprived' (से वंचित होना) के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग होता है।	Eg. He was deprived of even the basic necessities of life.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
41.	In my watch/on my watch is wrong.	Note: 'by' one's watch/clock is correct.		Eg. It is half past five by my watch.
42.	'to' the north/south etc (to show direction).			Eg. Sri Lanka is to the south of India.
43.	Under the tree  On the cemented plat from 			Eg. After getting tired, he sat under the tree on the ground.
44.	In the shade Note: 'Under the shade' is wrong.			Eg. He sat in the shade of the tree.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
45.	Adjectives ending in 'ior' take preposition 'to'.		जो Adjectives 'ior' में खत्म होते है, उनके बाद 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।	Eg. Superior, inferior, prior, senior, junior etc. take 'to'.
46.	Different from	Be unlike	भिन्न होना	Eg. His nature is different from that of his brother.
47.	Look into (a matter)	To investigate	जाँच होना	Eg. The police will look into the matter.
48.	Talk (Verb) to (a person)	Having a conversation	बात करना	Eg. I talked to him.
49.	Talk (Noun) with (someone)	Having a conversation	बातचीत का होना	Eg. I had a talk with him on this issue.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
50.	Listen	Give someone's attention to a sound.	सुनना (ध्यान से)	Eg. He is listening to the sermon of the priest.
51.	Provide money (Direct obj.) to him (Indirect obj.)			Eg. She has always provided help to her children.
52.	Provide him (Indirect obj.) to with money (Direct obj.)			Eg. We cannot provide you with any information.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
53.	Provide and suggest take	Other verbs that 'to' after them when an object follows are- say, suggest, propose, speak, reply, explain, complain, talk, listen, write report, pray and describe.		Eg. I suggested to him to take medicine on time.
54.	'Told' does not take 'to' if followed by an object	Verb that do not take 'to' when followed by an object are- Advise, tell, ask, beg, command, encourage, request, inform, thank, welcome, warm, forbid, order, compliment, congratulate, remind.		Eg. 1 warned him to stay alert.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
57.	'Reach' does not take any preposition if followed by the name of the destination.			Eg. 1) reached Delhi. 2) I reached home late.
58.	Reach at an agreement Reach at a conclusion.		किसी समझोते/निष्कर्ष पर पहुँचना	Eg. The committee reached at a conclusion.
59.	'Go'/'come' 'arrive'/'reach' does r. take any preposition if followed by 'home'			Eg. I come home at 7 p.m.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
60.	'Leave for' some destination	To depart for	के लिए रवाना होना	Eg. He left for Delhi at 9 p.m.
61.	Agree with (someone)	To have the same Opinion (with a person)	सहमत होना (किसी व्यक्ति से)	Eg. I come home at 7 p.m.
62.	Agree to (a matter)	To have the same opinion.	सहमत होना (किसी मुद्दे पर)	Eg. He agreed to my suggestion.
63.	Annoyed with (a person)	To disturb or irritate someone	नाराज होना	Eg. We were annoyed with him.
64.	Annoyed at (something)	To get angry	नाराज होना	Eg. I was annoyed at his behaviour.
65.	Avail (verb) of	To be of use or advantage	लाभ उठाना	Eg. I availed myself to the facilities provided for the students.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
66.	Angry with (someone)		क्रोधित होना (किसी वस्तु से)	Eg. Are you angry with me?
67.	Angry at (someone)		क्रोधित होना (किसी वस्तु पर)	Eg. She you angry with me?
68.	Adapted to (circumstances)	To make suitable to or fit for a specific use.	परिस्थिति के अनुकूल होना	Eg. They adapted themselves to the changes quickly.
69.	Adjacent to	Lying near, close	समीप	Eg. The temple is adjacent to my house.
70.	Antidote to (some poison)	To lessen the effect of poison.	विषनाशक	Eg. There is no antidote to my house.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
71.	Apologize to (someone) Apologize for (something)	To regret for doing wrong. To regret for doing wrong.	क्षमा मांगना (यक्ति से) क्षमा मांगना (कोई कार्य के लिए)	Eg. He apologized to me. Eg. He apologized to me.
72.	Appetite for (something)	A strong wish or urge	इच्छा/भूख	Eg. I have no appetite for food.
73.	Apprised of	To inform about something	सूचित करना	Eg. The reporter was apprised of the new developments.
74.	Astonish at (one's misconduct)	To fill with wonder	अचंभित होना	Eg. We were astonished at his behaviour.
75.	Averse to	Having a feeling of opposition or dislike	प्रतिकूल होना	Eg. Javed is averse to drinking.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
77.	Accede to	Agree to a demand or request	को स्वीकार करना/मान जाना	Eg. He graciously acceded to our request.
78.	Acquainted	To make familiar	से वाकिफ होना	Eg. Please acquaint us with your plan.
79.	Abide by	To follow a rule	पालन करना	Eg. They promised to abide by the rules of the contest.
80.	Comply with	To act in accordance with rule, wishes etc	के अनुसार चलना/का अनुसरण करना	Eg. You are obliged to comply with the order of the court.
81.	Answerable to (somebody) Answerable for	To explain one's actions To be responsible for something	को जवाबदेह होना	Eg. The Delhi Police is department answerable to the Central Govt. Eg. Customers are answerable for the damage they cause.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
81.	Bereft of	Deprived of something	से वंचित होना	Eg. They are bereft of their life with dignity.
82.	Bestow (something) upon (a person)	to present as a gift	प्रदान करना /नवाशना	Eg. The trophy was bestowed upon the winner.
83.	Bestow (someone) with (some thing)			Eg. He was bestowed with the trophy.
84.	Red with anger	A feeling of great annoyance.	बहुत गुस्से में होना/गुस्से से लाल होना	Eg. He became red with anger at her attitude.
85.	Ten minutes **to** five – 4:55 Ten minutes **past** five -05:05	'At' is used to express exact time.		Eg. It is 5pm **by** watch. Eg. I will reach **at** 5 pm.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
86.	Stand by	Support or remain loyal to someone.	समर्थन करना	Eg. Her relatives always stand by her.
87.	Over  Higher in position but not in touch			Eg. The helicopter hovered over my house.
88.	Ply between	To go or travel regularly	नियमित यात्रा करना	Eg. This train plies between Delhi and Panipat.
90.	Sold by yard/dozen etc.			Eg. Oranges are sold by dozen.
91.	Succumb to	To give up	झुक जाना/दम तोड देना	Eg.He succumbed to his injuries.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
92.	Dispense with	To get rid of	से छुटकारा पाना	Eg. Let's dispense with the formalities.
95.	Married (Passive voice) is followed by 'to'			Eg. He married her. Eg. He was married to her.
96.	Conductive to	Making a certain	लाभकारी होना	Eg. A positive attitude is conducive to good health.
97.	Entitled to	To give (a person) a title, right or claim to something	का अधिकार प्राप्त होना/के लायक होना	Eg. He is entitled to a suitable reward.
98.	Prefer to	Like one thing more than other.	से श्रेयस्कर	Eg. I prefer diamond to gold.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
99.	Exception to	A case where a rule does not apply	से छूट प्राप्त होना	Eg. I take strong exception to your assessment of his singing ability.
100.	'Inquired' is followed' by of			Eg. I inquired of the clerk about the departure time of the train.

Exercise-3

101. He insisted _____ going abroad.
102. He was born _____ a poor family.
103. He was born _____ poor parents.
104. Great men are indifferent _____ pleasure or pain.
105. I am suspicious _____ some illegal activities.
106. Junk food is deficient _____ vitamins and minerals.
107. He is not ashamed _____ his misconduct.
108. I could not assent _____ his proposal.
109. We must aim _____ excellence in whatever we do.
110. Wrongdoings beset our path _____ difficulties.
111. Tea is preferable _____ coffee.
112. He invited me _____ tea.

Answers

101. on
102. in
103. to
104. to
105. of
106. in
107. of
108. to
109. at
110. with
111. to
112. to

Exercise-3

113. He is addicted _____ drinking.
114. A well balanced diet is beneficial _____ health.
115. The example given by you is not relevant _____ the topic of discussion.
116. He is endowed _____ great humour.
117. Working in a carpet factory is detrimental _____ health.
118. You are not eligible _____ this post.
119. He scoffed _____ the idea of indefinite strike.
120. They jeered _____ him and his idea.
121. Your agreement is tantamount _____ your confession to the conspiracy.
122. I cannot confide _____ you.
123. The atmosphere comprises _____ many gases.
124. Ignorance _____ law is no excuse.

Answers

113. to
114. to
115. to
116. with
117. to
118. for
119. at
120. at
121. to
122. in
123. No preposition
124. of

Exercise-3

125. This place is infested _____ pests.
126. I am sick _____ the whole matter.
127. Akbar became an heir ___ the throne at a very early age.
128. I am indebted _____ you _____ your generous act.
129. I have no liking _____ such novels.
130. He succeeded _____ the throne.
131. He succeeded _____ his motive.
132. Do you have a pen to write _____ ?
133. They have no chair to sit _____ .
134. He passed the exam with flying colours by ___ hard work.
135. Where had you been _____ ?
136. We must desist _____ doing anything wrong.
136. We must desist _____ doing anything wrong.
137. I am tired _____ waiting .

Answers

125. with needed
126. of
127. to
128. to, for
129. for
130. to
131. in
132. with
133. on
134. The dint of
135. to
136. from
137. of

Exercise-3

138. I intend _____ visit my uncle's house.
139. I prevented him _____ choosing difficult subjects.
140. If you persist _____ disobeying my orders, you will be punished.
141. He is fond _____ rice.
142. She excels _____ painting.
143. He has a knack _____ painting.
144. I admitted him _____ a reputed school.
145. He cannot distinguish good ___ evil as he is very innocent.
146. Death does not distinguish _____ the rich and the poor.
147. He is blind _____ one eye.
148. The train arrived _____ the station.
149. We arrived _____ India after our summer vacation.
150. Only the results will tell us who is going to succeed ____ the current Prime Minister.

Answers

138. to
139. from
140. in
141. of
142. in
143. for
144. to
145. from
146. between
148. at
149. in
150. No Prep. needed

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
101.	Insist on	to say something in a way that is very forceful	पर जोर देना	Eg. I don't know why you insist on talking about it.
102.	Born in (a family place)	-	पैदा होना	Eg. (1) He was born in India.
103.	Born to (parents)	brought into life by birth	पैदा होना	Eg. He was born to noble parents.
104.	Indifferent to	not interested in or concerned about something	उदासीन होना	Eg. He was indifferent to my problems.
105.	Suspicious of	causing a feeling that something is wrong	का संदेही होना	Eg. People are often suspicious of strangers.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
106.	Deficient in	not enough	अपूर्ण/कमी होना	Eg. A diet deficient in calcium can lead to weak bones.
107.	Ashamed of	feeling of shame or guilt	के लिए लज्जित होना	Eg. You should be ashamed of yourself.
108.	Assent to	to agree to or approve of something	की स्वीकृति देना	Eg. He assented to the proposal.
109.	Aim' is followed by 'at'	to target some goal etc.	के लिए प्रत्यन करना	Eg. You must aim at giving your best performance.
109.	Beset with	to cause problems or difficulties for someone	से ग्रस्त होना	Eg. Her marital life was beset with difficulties.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
110.	Beset with	to cause problems or difficulties for someone	से ग्रस्त होना	Eg. Her marital life was beset with difficulties.
112.	Invited to	to ask someone to go somewhere	आमंत्रित करना	Eg. Employees are invited to apply for the new position.
113.	Addicted to	devoted to something obsessively	की लत होना	Eg. He is addicted to gambling.
114.	Beneficial to	producing good or helpful results	के लिए लाभकारी होना	Eg. The new drug will be beneficial to many people.
115.	Relevant to	relating to some subject in	के लिए प्रासंगिक	Eg. This topic is relevant to my subject.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
116.	Endowed with	to freely provide someone with something.	संपन्न होना/लैस होना	Eg. Some people are endowed with both brain and beauty.
117.	Detrimental to	causing damage or injury.	हानिकारक होना	Eg. Hot and humid weather is detrimental to health.
118.	Eligible for (appointment/election etc)	able to be chosen for something.	के योग्य होना	Eg. She is not eligible for this competition.
119.	Scoffed at	an expression of scorn, derision or contempt.	ताना मारना/उपहास या	Eg. The critics scoffed at his painting.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
120.	Jeered at	to laugh at or criticize someone.	उपहास या मजाक उड़ाना/ताना मारना	Eg. The people at the back of the hall jeered at the speaker.
121.	Tantamount to	equal to something in value, meaning or effect.	के समान होना	Eg. His angry speech was tantamount to a declaration of revolt.
122.	Confide in (a person)	to tell something to someone you trust.	को राज बताना	Eg. I only confide in my closest friends.
123.	'Comprise' is not followed by any preposition in Active voice but by 'of' in Passive voice	to be made up of	से बना होना	Eg. This chapter comprises many questions.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
124.	Ignorance of	lack of knowledge	अनभिज्ञता होना	Eg. My ignorance of their native language caused problems in our communication.
125.	Infested with	to be in or over some-thing in large number	से ग्रस्त (काफी संख्या में)	Eg. The house is infested with cockroaches.
126.	Sick of	having a strong dislike	से ग्रस्त होना	Eg. His soul is sick of solitude.
127.	Heir to (throne/property etc.)	One who inherits	का उत्तराधिकारी होना	Eg. He is the only heir to his father's property.
128.	Indebted to	owing gratitude to another	के प्रति कृतज्ञ	Eg. He was indebted to him for his kindness.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
129.	Liking for	Fondess	के पसंद का	Eg. He has no liking for chocolates.
130.	Succeeded	to come after (something) in a series	के अनुक्रम में होना	Eg. Akbar succeeded Humayun.
131.	Succeeded in	to achieve the desired result	कामयाब होना	Eg. He succeeded in his endeavour.
132.	A pen to write with	when a noun (for eg.-pen) is followed by (an infinitive (to+ v1), a suitable preposition follows	_	Eg. The poor have no bed to sleep in.
133.	Chair to sit on	Same as above	_	_

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
134.	By dint of	By force of	_	Eg. Sandeep passed the exam by the dint of hard work.
136.	Desist from	To stop doing something	परहेज करना	Eg. He advised me to desist from trusting flatterers.
137.	Tired of	_	से थक जाना	Eg. I am tired of his allegations.
138.	Intend to	to plan or want to do something	इरादा करना	Eg. Harshit is intending to visit Paris.
139.	Prevented from	to stop something from happening	रोक लगाना	Eg. The vaccine prevented the disease from spreading.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
140.	Persist in	to continue to do something even though when other people want to stop.	कायम रहना	Eg. Praveen persisted in continuing his studies.
142.	Fond of	To be better than order	श्रेष्ठ होना	Eg. Mansi is fond of playing Chess.
143.	Knack for	an ability, talent needed to do something	दक्षता	Eg. He has a knack for playing football.
144.	Admitted to	to allow entry	दाखिल होना	After getting injured, he was admitted to hospital.
145.	Distinguish x from y	to differentiate one from another	फर्क बताना	Eg. I could not distinguish pure silk from mixed silk.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
146.	Distinguish between x any y	to make someone different in some way	फर्क बताना	Eg. Rama does not distinguish between the good and bad.
147.	Blind in (an eye)	unable to see	आँख से अंध होना	Eg. He is blind in one eye.
148.	Arrived at	to reach a place	पहुँचना (जगह पर)	Eg. Passengers arrived at the station on time.
149.	Arrived in	to reach a country after travelling	किसी देश में पहुँचना	Eg. Suresh had already arrived in London by that time.
150.	Succeed (to come after/as an heir) is not followed by any preposition	_	जब 'Succeed' का अर्थ उत्तराधिकारी के रूप में विराजमान होना हो, तो कोई 'preposition' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।	Eg. He succeeded his father and inherited fortune worth millions.

Exercise-4

151. Can you please___ my website before I publish it?
(A) find out (B) go through
(C) set out (D) look up

152. His service has been dispensed ___.
(A) with (B) of
(C) for (D) in

153. Jane is annoyed ___ me.
(A) with (B) on
(C) against (D) over

154. I am not angry ___ you, Paul.
(A) with (B) on
(C) at (D) over

155. The youth should believe ___ God.
(A) upon (B) in
(C) on (D) of

Answers

151. (B) go through
152. (A) with
153. (A) with
154. (A) with
155. (B) in
156. (B) in

Exercise-4

156. He was born _____ India.
(A) of (B) in
(C) of (D) through

157. The convict tried his level best to justify himself but the judge looked _____ him and found him guilty.
(A) around (B) at
(C) through (D) to

158. There is nobody _____ home.
(A) at (B) in
(C) on (D) inside

159. I do not agree _____ you.
(A) for (B) with
(C) against (D) in

160. He switched the lights _____ and we could see much better.
(A) off (B) on
(C) out (D) above

Answers

156. (B) in
157. (C) through
158. (A) at
159. (B) with
160. (B) on

Exercise-4

161. Though she is very much interested ___ singing, she is not good ___ it.
(A) in, at (B) about, in
(C) on, in (D) of, about

162. We have decided ___ moving to London.
(A) to (B) against
(C) towards (D) from

163. My father lives ___ Kondapur, a small village ___ Andhra Pradesh.
(A) in, in (B) at, in
(C) at, at (D) in, at

164. The mother was anxious ___ the safety of her son.
(A) on (B) about
(C) at (D) upon

165. Have you ever dressed ___ black ?
(A) up (B) in
(C) on (D) with

Answers

161. (A) in, at
162. (B) against
163. (B) at, in
164. (B) about
165. (B) in

166. Our ancestors had immense difficulty ___ procuring books.
(A) for (B) of
(C) in (D) on

167. Why do we always have to submit ___ his authority?
(A) under (B) with
(C) for (D) to

168. The master assured her ___ success in the examination.
(A) of (B) in
(C) for (D) with

169. There is still a need ___ further discussion.
(A) of (B) in
(C) for (D) with

170. I was surprised ___ his result and it came as a pleasant surprise for the whole family.
(A) by (B) at
(C) for (D) with

Answers

166. (C) in
167. (D) to
168. (A) of
169. (C) for
170. (A) by

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
151.	Go through	to examine methodically	सिलसिलेवार तरीके से जाँच करना	E.g: Please go through this book.
152.	Dispensed with	to go rid of	से छुटकारा पाना	E.g: Let us dispense with the formalities.
153.	Annoyed with someone Annoyed at something		किसी व्यक्ति से चिढ़ जाना किसी बात/घटना से चिढ़ जाना	E.g: I am annoyed with him. E.g: I am annoyed mismanagement.
154.	Angry with someone Angry at something		किसी व्यक्ति से गुस्सा होना, किसी बात पर गुस्सा होना	E.g: I am angry with my cousin. E.g: I am angry at the unpleasant development.
157.	Look through	to examine	जाँच करना	E.g: He looked through my notes and appreciated my efforts.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
159.	Agree with someone Agree to something		किसी से सहमत होना किसी बात से सहमत होना	Eg. I agree with my cousin. E.g: I agree to the new proposal.
161.	Interested in something Good at something		में दिलचस्पी होना में अच्छा होना	E.g: I am interested in music. E.g: He is good at singing.
162.	Decide to move to some place Decide against moving to some place		कहीं Shift करने का निर्णय लेना कहीं Shift ना करने का निर्णय लेना	E.g: I decided to move to Mumbai as the climate of Delhi didn't suit me. E.g: I decided against moving to Mumbai as it is a congested city.

Exercise-4

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
163.	When two places are mentioned, 'at' is used with relatively small place and 'in' with relatively big place.		अगर दो स्थानों का उल्लेख हो तो सापेक्ष रूप से छोटे स्थान के साथ 'at' का प्रयोग होगा और सापेक्ष रूप से बड़े स्थान के साथ 'in' का प्रयोग होगा।	E.g: I live at Mukherjee Nagar in Delhi.
169.	Need of Need for	Lacking Requirement of more	की कमी होना कुछ ज्यादा की जरूरत होना	E.g : He is in need of some warm clothes. E.g: There is a need for further explanations.
170.	Surprised by someone/something Surprised at someone/something (when opposite was expected)			E.g: I am surprised by your result. E.g.: I am surprised at his brazenness.

Exercise-5 (DETECTING ERROR)

1. (A) The teacher /(B)said the class to open/(C) their books at page 40./(D) no error.
2. (A) Mother Teresa asked a building/(B) where she and her workers /(C)could care for the poor people./(D)no error.
3. (A) "Can you cope up/(B)with all this work?"/(C)he asked./(D)no error.
4. (A) Shelley is/ (B) superior than Byron/(C) in his vision of Democracy./(D) no error.

Explanations

1. (B); Add 'to' after' 'said' or change 'said' into 'asked'. 'Say' is followed by 'to' if an object (me, him etc) follows.
2. (A); Change 'asked' (पूछना बताना) into 'asked for' [माँग करना (to demand)].
3. (A); Change 'Cope up with' into 'cope with'. 'Cope with' means 'to handle'.
4. (B); Change 'than' into to. Adjectives that end in 'ior' take 'to' and not 'than'.

Exercise-5 (DETECTING ERROR)

5. (A) Several prominent figures/(B)involved in the scandal are required to /(C)appear to the investigation committee./(D) no error.

6. (A) Due to heavy work /(B)in the office,/(C) I was unable to catch the five-thirty train./(D) no error.

7. (A) (A)The board will /(B)appoint her as/(C) additional directior./(D)no error.

8. (A) The child /(B)was run over/(C) with a private bus./(D)no error.

Explanations

5. (C); Change 'to' into 'before'. Also change ' investigation' into 'investigating'. We need an adjective to qualify noun 'Committee'.

6. (A); Change 'Due to heavy work' into 'Owing to heavy workload'. A sentence starts with 'Owing to' and not 'due to' though in modern English 'due to' is also acceptable. SSC too has given several sentences starting with 'due to' and then marked the option D i.e. answer was 'noerror'.

7. (B); Remove 'as'. 'Appoint' is not followed by 'as'.

8. (C); Change 'with' into 'by'.

Exercise-5 (DETECTING ERROR)

9. (A) The heavy rains/(B)prevented us/(C) against going out./(D)no error.

10. (A) I/(B)met Jane /(C) in the way./(D) no error.

11. (A) The children were quarrelling between themselves /(B)when all of a sudden it occured to them that their teacher/(C)was watching them./(D)no error.

12. (A) The teacher told to/(B)the students that/(C)they must attend school regularly./(D) no error.

Explanations

9. (C); Change 'against' into 'from'.
10. (C); Change 'in' into 'on'.
11. (A); Change 'between' into 'among'. For 'more than two' 'among' is used.
12. (A); Remove 'to'. 'Tell' is not followed by 'to'.

Exercise-5 (DETECTING ERROR)

13. (A) I am extremely surprised /(B)and pleased with/(C)his result./(D)no error.
14. (A) By whom/(B)is he /(C)known?/(D)no error.
15. (A) These tribesmen live within/(B)the customs of /(C)their tribe./(D)no error.

Explanations

13. (A); Add 'by' after 'surprised'. When two prepositions are needed with two different words, both prepositions must be used.
14. (A); Change 'by' into 'to'. 'Known' takes preposition 'to' in passive voice.
15. (A); Change 'within' into 'by'. 'Live by something' means 'to behave according to a particular set of beliefs or principles'.

Preposition (Practice Set)

1. I thought I'd die _____ the pressure.
2. He died _____ exhaustion.
3. A nine-years-old child died _____ rabid bat bites in the hospital.
4. Soldiers die _____ their motherland, some of us die _____over-eating.
5. He died ____ harness.
6. Paul Walker was killed _____ a road accident.
7. I differ _____ you _____ this issue.
8. The two theories differ _____ each other in many ways.
9. Go _____ my books.
10. I saw _____ your tricks.

Answer Key

1. from
2. from
3. of
4. for, from
5. in
6. in
7. with, on
8. from
9. through
10. through

Preposition (Practice Set)

11. The train passed ____ the tunnel.
12. Don't compare boys _____ girls. They are different physically and emotionally.
13. Compare the contents of this grammar book _____ those of that one.
14. Life is compared _____ a journey.
15. Do only one work_____ a time.
16. The exam started ____ time but the light went off _____ the nick of time. This happened ___ times but I managed to solve all the questions ____ the allotted hours.
17. I will pay_____ cash and not _____ cheque.
18. I do have a taste_____ music but am not a musician so I don't have a great taste _____ music.

Answer Key

11. through
12. to
13. with
14. to
15. at
16. on,in,at,within
17. in, by
18. for, in

Preposition (Practice Set)

19. They go _____ school _____ shank's mare and not_____ bike or _____ car.
20. He was awarded _____ Param Vir Chakra Posthumously.
21. He will marry his daughter _____ a government servant.
22. He married _____ her.
23. He was married ___her.
24. (i) I cannot explain you this. (Improve the Sentence)
    (ii) She gave the dog biscuits. (Improve the Sentence)
25. I will approach _____ him in this matter.

Answer Key

19. to, on,on,by
20. with
21. to
22. ×
23. to
24. (i) I cannot explain this to you.
    24. (ii) She gave biscuits to the dog.
25. ×

Preposition (Practice Set)

26. My approach _____ life is optimistic.
27. China is _____ the North-east of India.
28. Shahdara is _____ the East of Delhi.
29. Africa is _____ the south of Europe.
30. Everything started falling _____ line _____ a few years.
31. _____ I joined the Army, I haven't taken any leave.
32. Promises were long _____ forgotten.
33. They have not talked ever _____ they fought.
34. We have been friends _____ childhood.
35. Civilization flourished _____ the Ganga.

Answer Key

26. towards
27. to
28. in
29. to
30. in,in/within
31. since
32. since
33. since
34. since
35. along

Preposition (Practice Set)

36. There is no love lost _____ you _____ her.
37. Nothing went amiss _____ between.
38. Madhya Pradesh is _____ Gujarat, Rajasthan, Uttar Pradesh and Chattisgarh.
39. This agreement will strengthen the relation _____ India, America and The United Kingdom.
40. There is a little difference _____ love, infatuation and attraction.
41. He _____ a lot of work on that article.

    (i) Put in (ii) Put on

    (iii) Put over (iv) Put out

42. I was mad _____ him because of his idiocy.

Answer Key

36. between, and
37. in
38. in between
39. between
40. between
41. Put in
42. at

Preposition (Practice Set)

43. He was madly ____love ___ her.
44. I thought _____ write an autobiography. (Note: my autobiography is superfluous)
45. I gave _____ Sana the keys
46. I gave keys _____ Sana.
47. You soon get tired _____ those monotonous activities.
48. I am sick _____ his careless attitude.
49. Shoes are lying _____ the floor.
50. He threw the jar _____ the sneaking shadow.
51. The Sun is exactly _____ us _____ noon.
52. The cheque was signed ___him____a gold pen ____ black ink.
53. The thief jumped _____ the wall.
54. There was a restlessness all _____ the country.
55. The dog was run _____ by a car.

Answer Key

43. in,with
44. to
45. ×
46. to
47. of
48. of
49. on
50. at
51. over,at
52. by,with,in
53. over/across
54. over
55. over

Preposition (Practice Set)

56. Put a cloth _____ the table.

57. _____ ten thousand Yazidis were killed in Iraq.

58. You can find them home alone _____ night.

59. I came across a cruel robber_____ the night.

60. He stood _____ the table.

61. He was jumping _____ the table.

62. The roads were closed _____ account of heavy rain.

63. It is _____ 200 kms from Delhi.

64. It is _____ finish.

65. I know _____ him.

Answer Key

56. over
57. over/about/around
58. at
59. in
60. on
61. upon / from
62. on
63. about, around, over
64. about to
65. about or No prep

Preposition (Practice Set)

66. I am _____ evil practices.
67. Put the ladder _____ the wall.
68. He was born_____ a rich family.
69. With a strength born _____ desperation, he forcefully opened the door.
70. Misery is born _____ poverty.
71. He has knack_____ painting.
72. I admit_____ my mistake.
73. I was admitted _____ a good school.
74. _____ the time of inauguration, I gave him some discount.
75. _____ dusk, cattle return from pasteur.

Answer Key

66. against
67. against
68. in
69. of
70. of
71. for
72. ×
73. to
74. at
75. at

Preposition (Practice Set)

76. _____ all his wealth he is a miser.

77. I am all _____ selling my old SUV and buying a new sedan.

78. The police are _____ our safety.

79. I bought four oranges _____ Rs 20.

80. I trust you_____ I know you well.

81. We reached _____ a conclusion.

82. We reached _____ Delhi _____ 4pm.

83. I met _____ him.

84. He met _____ an accident.

85. She attended _____ the class

Answer Key

76. for
77. for
78. for
79. for
80. for
81. at
82. ×, at
83. ×
84. with
85. ×

Preposition (Practice Set)

86. The nurse attended_____ the patient.

87. Delhi is situated _____ the bank of river Yamuna.

88. She was cured _____ cancer.

89. There is no cure _____ AIDS.

90. Please count _____ the eggs.

91. You can count _____ me at the time of need.

92. I got this mug free _____ cost.

93. We are not free _____ vices.

94. This place is infested _____ pests.

95. Lack _____ experience ruined her career.

Answer Key

86. to
87. on
88. of
89. for
90. ×
91. on
92. of
93. from
94. with
95. of

Preposition (Practice Set)

96. She lacks ____ experience.
97. The village is devoid _____ basic faculties.
98. The Iraqis are bereft ____ their fundamental rights and even deprived ___ Right to Life.
99. This fruit is deficient _____ vitamin C.
100. I was taken_____ when I saw his brazenness.
101. The charge _____ robbery is too serious.
102. He was charged _____ robbery.
103. India takes _____ Pakistan _____ Mohali ____tonight.
104. I am not concerned _____ such useless day to day activities.
105. He is concerned _____ his health.

Answer Key

96. in
97. of
98 of, of
99. in
100. aback
101. of
102. with
103. on, at, ×
104. with
105. about

Preposition (Practice Set)

106. My manager congratulated/ complimented my sister _____ her success.

107. I congratulated/complimented him _____ his new house.

108. He was filled _____ despair.

109. He was full _____ sorrow.

110 Ten jars are contained _____ this box.

111. This box comprises _____ ten jars.

112. Light consists _____ seven colours.

113. Morality consists _____ your character.

114. The streets were thronged _____ revolutionaries.

115. The monument was engulfed _____ thick cloud of smoke.

Answer Key

106.	at
107.	for
108.	with
109.	of
110	in
111.	×
112.	of
113.	in
114.	with
115.	in

Preposition (Practice Set)

116. The suitcase was crammed _____ clothes.

117. The court summoned _____ him prior _____ the fixed date.

118. Moderate climate is conducive/favourable/salubrious/beneficial _____ health.

119. Moderate climate is good _____ health.

120. I am good _____ English.

121. I am confident _____ success.

122. I have confidence _____ you.

123. He is lame _____ one leg.

124. Fate smiled _____ him.

125. He laughed _____ me.

Answer Key

116. with
117. ×, to
118. to
119. for
120. at
121. of
122. in
123. of
124. on
125. at

Preposition (Practice Set)

126. Laugh _____ your pain.
127. He flew _____ a rage.
128. Please get _____ work now. You have had enough of fun.
129. I inquired _____ him _____ his health.
130. I availed myself _____ the golden chance.
131. We adapt ourselves _____ the changing climate.
132. I acceded _____ his proposal.
133. We caved _____ to their demand.
134. I yielded _____ his demands.
135. He succumbed _____ the injuries.

Answer Key

126. away
127. into
128. down to
129. of, about
130. of
131. to
132. to
133. in
134. to
135. to

Preposition (Practice Set)

136. He asked _____ a decent pay package.
137. He demanded _____ his dues.
138. He has qualified _____ tier-II which will be held on 22nd Jan.
139. He has qualified ____ tier-II and will prepare _____ tier-III now.
140. He didn't emphasize/stress _____ the matter.
141. He laid great emphasis/stress _____ grammar.
142. I thank _____ God _____ his kindness.
143. We wrote _____ a letter every day.
144. He wrote _____ me every day.
145. He is busy and engrossed in her work. (Correct the sentence)

Answer Key

136.	for
137.	×
138.	for
139.	×, for
140.	×
141.	on
142.	×, for
143.	×
144.	to
145.	add 'with' after busy

Preposition (Practice Set)

146. I find this problem hard to deal _____ .

147. He finds sugar quite profitable to deal _____.

148. He dealt ____ the pamphlets advertising great offers.

149. He has a beautiful house live _____ .

150. The poor have no bed to sleep _____ .

151. They have no place to go _____ .

152. He presented a beautiful watch _____ me.

153. He presented _____ me _____ a beautiful watch.

154. His parents are sorry and ashamed of his conduct.
(Correct the sentence)

155. God has provided/bestowed/entrusted/endowed you _____ great power as well as duties.

Answer Key

146. with
147. in 'busy'
148. out
149. to, in
150. in
151. ×
152. to
153. ×, with
154. add 'for' after 'sorry'
155. with

Preposition (Practice Set)

156. They explained the matter _____ me.

157. This book is good except ____ some typographical mistakes.

158. _____ the end truth wins.

159. _____ the end of the class, I summarize the points.

160. _____ the end of the year, we take the final exam.

161. _____ the beginning all girls are sweet but ____ the end you see their true colours.

162. _____ the beginning of every session, we have an orientation programme.

163. He remained an atheist throughout his whole life. (Correct the sentence)

164. Your cannot go near _____ the sun.

165. Birds live _____ nests.

Answer Key

156.	to
157.	for
158.	In
159.	At
160.	At
161.	In, in
162.	At
163.	Remove 'whole'.
164.	×
165.	in

Preposition (Practice Set)

166. Birds live_____ fruits.
167. We live _____ customs and traditions.
168. I am suffering _____ fever.
169. They suffered _____ their mistake.
170. He suffered_____ a great loss.
171. He was ill _____ fever.
172. I am sick _____ my native village. I love my village.
173. He divided the money _____ four parts.
174. He divided his property _____ his four sons.
175. She divided the sweets _____ his son and daughter.

Answer Key

166. on
167. by
168. from
169. for
170. ×
171. with
172. for
173. into
174. among
175. between

Preposition (Practice Set)

176. She will divided her legacy _____ his sons and daughters.
177. I don't agree _____ you.
178. I don't agree _____ your opinion.
179. I don't agree_____ this point.
180. I lived _____ Ooty for two years.
181. He stayed ____ the hotel for two days.
182. I am angry _____ you.
183. I am disgusted _____ my neighbour.
184. I am annoyed _____ my children.
185. I am vexed _____ my arrogant colleagues.

Answer Key

176. among
177. with
178. to
179. on
180. in
181. at
182. with
183. with
184. with
185. with

Preposition (Practice Set)

186. She is exasperated _____ her mother-in-law.

187. I am angry _____ the mismanagement.

188. I am annoyed _____ the misuse of electricity.

189. I am vexed _____ the useless talks.

190. I am obliged/thankful/grateful /indebted _____ you _____ your kindness.

191. I complained _____ the police ____ the wrongdoer ____ the misconduct.

192. A complaint _____ him was lodged _____ the police.

193. You are accountable/answerable _____ god _____ your conduct.

194. He supplied/provided _____ the raw material _____ us.

195. He supplied/provided _____ us _____ the raw material.

Answer Key

186. with
187. at
188. at
189. at
190. to, for
191. to, against , for
192. against, with
193. to, for
194. ×, to
195. ×, with

Preposition (Practice Set)

196. He entrusted _____ me the responsibility.

197. He entrusted _____ the child _____ me.

198. Unhappiness is the result _____ envy.

199. Envy results _____ unhappiness.

200. Nothing equals _____ mother's milk.

201. Nothing is equal _____ mother's love.

202. He is proud _____ my victory.

203. He prides _____ my position.

204. He takes pride _____ my victory.

205. She is in love _____ and addicted _____ sweets.

Answer Key

196. ×, with
197. ×, to
198. of
199. in
200. ×
201. to
202. of
203. on/upon
204. in
205. with, to

Preposition (Practice Set)

206. He copied the essay word _____word .

207. She arrived _____ the party _____ time.

208. We arrived _____ a conclusion.

209. They arrived _____ India for the celebration.

210. The train will arrive_____ platform number 10.

211. The matter will come _____ this court.

212. Please solve the questions one _____ one and proceed step _____ step.

213. Better solve your issues one _____ one basis. Don't involve anyone.

214. His conduct is not _____ suspicion.

215. May I take leave _____ you?

Answer Key

206. for
207. at, on/in
208. at
209. in
210. at
211. before
212. by,by
213. on
214. above
215. of

Preposition (Practice Set)

216. May I take leave _____ the office?

217. Amphibians can live on land and water. (Correct the sentence)

218. Decline ____ air pressure causes bleeding through nose.

219. The decline _____ the British empire started in the early nineteenth century.

220. I am familiar _____ him.

221. I am familiar _____ his habits.

222. He jumped _____ the 4th floor.

223. He jumped _____ the lucrative offer.

224. He jumped _____ conclusion.

225. He acted _____ my advice.

Answer Key

216. from
217. add 'in' before 'water'.
218. in
219. of
220. to
221. with
222. off/from
223. at
224. to
225. upon

Preposition (Practice Set)

226. I believe _____ god.

227. I trust/believe _____ you.

228. I have complete trust/belief _____ you.

229. An opinion opposite_____ his was unacceptable.

230. My house is opposite _____ yours.

231. A well balanced diet is essential_____ health.

232. Inside ____ the box were kept all the bottles.

233. They belong _____ cattle class.

234. He comes ____ a middle class family.

235. I want to talk ____ you.

Answer Key

226.	in
227.	×
228.	in
229.	to
230.	×
231.	to
232.	×
233.	to
234.	from
235.	to

Preposition (Practice Set)

236. I had a talk ____him.

237. This case is _____ the jurisdiction of the District Court.

238. He didn't approve _____ my opinion.

239. They are head _____ heels in love.

240. Anushka played the lead role opposite _____ Shahrukh in her first movie.

241. A change _____ climate affects our health.

242. A change _____ place may improve your health.

243. We can change this AC_____ a better one.

244. He was let _____ by the court though everyone was convinced _____ his misconduct.

245. Take the next turn but not the one _____ your left.

Answer Key

236.	with
237.	beyond
238.	of
239.	over
240.	×
241.	in
242.	of
243.	for
244.	off, of
245.	on

Preposition (Practice Set)

246. He jumped _____ hoops and served mankind throughout his life.

247. Heat changes ice _____ water.

248. I am anxious _____ his health.

249. I am anxious _____ the results.

250. She is a victim _____ dowry system.

251. He fell victim _____ Dengue.

252. The title of Rai bahadur was conferred _____ certain sycophants.

253. He was restrained/refrained/debarred ____ taking the test.

254. I prefer milk _____ tea.

255. I prefer riding _____ walking.

Answer Key

246. through
247. into
248. about
249. for
250. of
251. to
252. on
253. from
254. to
255. to

Preposition (Practice Set)

256. She prefers to ride _____ to walk.

257. Please listen _____ me.

258. This music is worth listening.

259. We can take jaggery as a substitute _____ sugar.

260. We can substitute sugar _____ jaggery.

261. There is no substitute _____ hard work.

262. He is negligent _____ his duty.

263. He is neglectful _____ his responsibilities.

264. He didn't pay heed _____ my warnings.

265. He drove recklessly heedless _____ the danger.

Answer Key

256. rather than
257. to
258. ×
259. for
260. with
261. for
262. in
263. of
264. to
265. of

KD Campus

Preposition (Practice Set)

266. He is a capable boy of doing anything. (Correct the sentence)

267. He is an honest businessman in his dealings.(Correct the sentence)

268. They heard _____ a loud thud.

269. Have you heard _____ any such miraculous child?

270. Inspite _____ being ill, he attended the class.

271. Despite _____ being exhausted, he sat from beginning _____ end.

272. Heat changes ice ____ water.

273. Milk has turned _____ sour.

274. My servant has run _____ with my money.

275. This book deals _____ the author's love for India.

Answer Key

266. He is a boy capable of doing anything.

267. He is a businessman honest in his dealings.

268. ×

269. of

270. of

271. ×, to

272. into

273. ×

274. off/away, with

275. with

Preposition (Practice Set)

276. Car industry has come _____ ages.
277. Please write _____ me _____ this address.
278. Please send the letter _____ my address.
279. I am disappointed _____ the exams.
280. You are fortunate _____ having an obedient son.
281. You are fortunate_____ have obedient son.
282. I take pleasure _____ welcoming you.
283. They are required to appear _____ the investigating committee.
284. I had a test _____ mathematics this morning.
285. I wrote a book _____ grammar.

Answer Key

276. through
277. to, at
278. to
279. with
280. in
281. to
282. in
283. before
284. of
285. on

Preposition (Practice Set)

286. Do not write him _____ . I feel he still has the fire smoldering in him.

287. Please go _____ my book.

288. He wrote a book and added another feather ____ his cap.

289. I saw _____ his tricks.

290. He posted some defamatory materials _____ facebook.

291. You can bank _____ us. I will stand _____ you _____ thick and thin.

292. I make both ends meet. I have no one to fall _____ .

293. They broke _____ her house and made _____ with all her jewellery.

294. Do not cut _____ when I speak.

295. The Marathas ultimately gave and the Mughals became the supreme power.

Answer Key

286. off
287. through
288. to
289. through
290. on
291. on,by, through
292. back upon
293. into, away
294. in
295. in/up

Preposition (Practice Set)

296. They were later ousted _____ the power by the British.
297. He couldn't live _____ his parent's expectations.
298. I look _____ my mother as she is strong.
299. I look forward to meet you. (Correct to Sentence)
300. The government hushed _____ to scam.
301. I laid _____ some money for the education of my child.
302. Several employees were laid _____ during recession.
303. Lay your books _____ and lie _____ to rest.
304. The issue of triple talaq came _____ for discussion.
305. He usually picks _____ fights _____ his neighbours.

Answer Key

296. from
297. upto
298. upto
299. change 'meet' into 'meeting'
300. up
301. aside/in
302. off
303. aside, down
304. up
305. ×, with

Preposition (Practice Set)

306. The meeting was called _____ and it was raining heavily.

307. I called _____ you but you were absent.

308. I called _____ your office but you were in a meeting.

309. You must carry _____ my orders.

310. You must carry_____ with the good work.

311. We will have to do away_____ such evil practices.

312. Cases drag _____ for decades in India.

313. Corruption is eating_____ the system.

314. Call _____ a doctor. He is bleeding.

315. I will call you _____ later.

Answer Key

306. off
307. on
308. at
309. out
310. on
311. with
312. on
313. into
314. in
315. up

Preposition (Practice Set)

316. Such rumours usually die _____ . Don't worry.
317. I consult him off and _____ .
318. He went on and _____ and we were pissed _____ .
319. He is out and _____ a rogue.
320. He will understand your value by and _____
321. It was _____ and large a successful event.
322. Let bygones be _____ .
323. Move _____ Don't cry _____ spilt milk.
324. Look _____ you leap. Don't jump _____ conclusion without giving a second thought.
325. Please put _____ some make up.

Answer Key

316. down
317. on
318. on,off
319. out
320. by
321. by
322. bygones
323. on,over
324. before,to
325. on

Campus

Preposition (Practice Set)

326. Her arrogance puts me _____ .

327. Take _____ your shoes before entering the temple.

328. I cannot put _____ the arrogant man anymore.

329. Desirous result didn't come _____ despite my best efforts.

330. The meeting was put _____ .

331. The fire was put_____ .

332. The bomb went _____ suddenly.

333. He laughed ____ me.

334. He laughed _____ his problems.

335. Hard work pays _____ .

Answer Key

326.	off/out
327.	off
328.	up with
329.	off
330.	off
331.	out
332.	off
333	at
334.	away
335.	off

Preposition (Practice Set)

336. The government backed _____ at the eleventh hour.

337. I wonder what has become _____ certain film stars of 1970s.

338. The judge has cleared _____ his name and he is no more in problem.

339. He passed _____ last night and his wife is inconsolable.

340. He passed _____ due to excessive heat and remained unconscious for an hour.

341. He passed himself _____ as a journalist and reached the sensitive area.

342. The polish has worn _____ .

343. We ran short _____ money and we had to borrow to keep the wolf _____ the door.

344. The plane took _____ .

345. We ran _____ petrol and there was no petrol pump nearby.

Answer Key

336.	out
337.	of
338.	of
339.	away
340.	out
341.	off
342.	off
343.	of, from
344.	off
345.	out of

Preposition (Practice Set)

346. This machine has worn _____ .
347. He is unconscious. Send _____ a doctor.
348. We must stand _____ the right cause.
349. The bomb exploded and the building fell _____ .
350. We cannot do _____ water.
351. Drive the cattle _____ of the field.
352. You must cut _____ the intake of salt.
353. I am cut _____ for the profession of teaching.
354. You look run _____. What happened?
355. Never run _____ your friends in public.
356. I ran ____ my friend in the market yesterday after a long time.

Answer Key

346. out
347. for
348. for/by
349. apart
350. without
351. out
352. down
353. out
354. down
355. down
356. into
357. by

Preposition In Idioms & Phrases

1. _____ a stone's throw.
2. Add another feather _____ one's cap.
3. To die _____ harness.
4. _____ sea.
5. _____ home.
6. To take _____ heels.
7. Beat _____ the bush.
8. Give _____ the ghost.
9. _____ lieu _____ .
10. Drink life _____ the lees.
11. _____ fits and starts.
12. _____ cold blood.

Answer Key

1. within
2. to
3. in
4. At
5. At
6. to
7. about
8. up
9. in, of
10. to
11. By
12. In

Preposition In Idioms & Phrases

13. To talk _____ one's hat.
14. To keep _____ one's appearance.
15. To turn _____ a new leaf.
16. _____ and_____ .
17. Pass oneself_____ as.
18. _____ pillar_____ post.
19. Put the cart _____ the horse.
20. Trumped _____ .
21. Gift _____ the gab.
22. _____the brink of.
23. Foam _____one's mouth.
24. Bring_____ light.

Answer Key

13. through
14. up
15. over
16. off, on
17. off
18. From, to
19. before
20. up
21. of
22. On
23. at
24. to

Preposition In Idioms & Phrases

25. To burn candle _____ both ends.
26. Run _____ someone.
27. _____ the spur of the moment.
28. To look_____ one's nose.
29. (i) Take ___ heart. (ii) Take ___ heart.
30. To put up_____ .
31. _____ the nick of time.
32. _____ the cuff.
33. _____ hook or _____ crook.
34. Sit_____ on the fence.
35. _____ sixes and sevens.
36. Egg_____ .

Answer Key

25. at
26. into
27. On
28. down
29. (i)to (ii)×
30. with
31. In
32. Off,
33. By, by
34. on
35. At
36. on

Preposition In Idioms & Phrases

37. Haul _____ the coals.
38. To eke _____ .
39. A bird ___ hand is worth two in the bush.
40. _____ hand.
41. Pick ____ fight.

Answer Key

37. over
38. out
39. in
40. off
41. ×

Meanings

1. very near.
2. another achievement.
3. to die while in service.
4. confused.
5. comfortable.
6. run away.
7. not to come to the main topic.
8. to die.
9. in place of.
10. to lead a life of adventure.
11. irregularly, sporadic.
12. bitterly, in anger.
13. to talk nonsense.
14. to have an outward show of prosperity.
15. to change for better.
16. occasionally.
17. in the guise of.
18. to make a lot of effort.
19. doing things in a wrong way.
20. to cook up
21. oratory, articulation.
22. on the verge of
23. very angry.
24. reveal.

Meanings

25. to squander, to work hard.
26. to meet suddenly, to come across.
27. with delay.
28. to hold in contempt.
29. (i) to feel moved or affected by
    (ii) to receive courage.
30. to tolerate.
31. exactly at the right time.
32. without preparation.
33. by any means.
34. to be impartial
35. in disorder
36. to encourage / to instigate.
37. to scold.
38. to supplement.
39. Better to have a lesser but certain advantage than the possibility of a greater one that may come to nothing.
40. Without preparation.
41. To start a quarrel.

10:32

Learn English | Let's Talk - Free Engli...
22 hours ago

It took him a fortnight to get ..... his fever and start work.

- through
- over ✓
- into
- out of

Explanation

"get over" means recovering from an illness or an emotional shock. When you say someone is getting over a fever, they are recovering from it and returning to their normal health or state. In this context, "It took him a fortnight to get over his fever and start work" implies that it took two weeks for the person to recover from the fever and be well enough to begin working again.

23K answered

770 7

Home Shorts Subscriptions You

10:34



English Boosting Power

2 days ago

Subscribe

_____ of the mobiles has a camera.

- Everyone
- Every one ✓
- All of the above
- None ✗

Explanation

Everyone is an indefinite pronoun meaning the same as “everybody.” It’s treated as a singular pronoun, so it’s always used with a singular verb form. “Everyone” is only used to refer to people, not things.

Every one is a phrase used to refer to each individual or thing in a group, not the group as a whole. It’s always used with a singular verb form and is typically followed by a phrase starting with the preposition “of.” It can refer to people or to things.

3.6K answered

110 7

Home Shorts Subscriptions You

11:12





Learn English | Let's Talk - Free Engli...
2 days ago

Ria explained _____ her job due to too much stress.

- why she quitted
- that she had quit ✓
- she'd quit

Explanation

It uses the past perfect tense "had quit" to indicate that Ria quitting her job happened before the current moment of explaining why she left.

31K answered

795 25

Home Shorts Subscriptions You

11:28

Learn English | Let's Talk - Free Engli...

3 hours ago

If I _____ you, I _____ give her a special gift at her birthday party.

- were, would ✓
- were, will
- am, would
- am, will

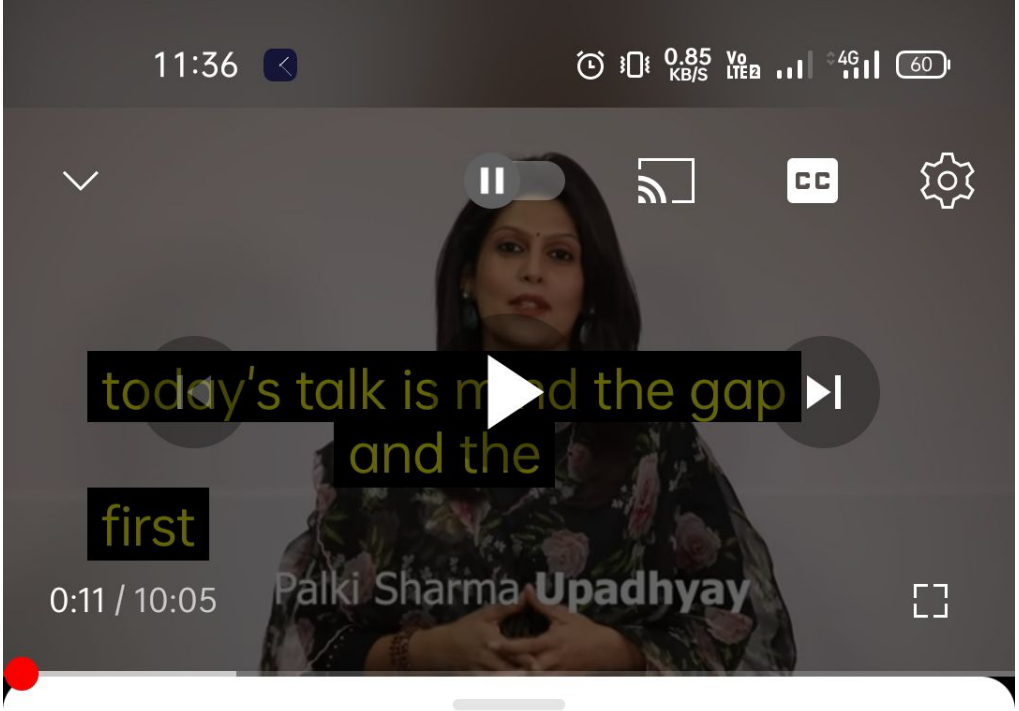
Explanation

The correct answer is "were - would" because the sentence is in the subjunctive mood, indicating a hypothetical or unreal situation. In this case, the speaker is imagining what they would do if they were in a certain position. The verb "were" is used because it is the subjunctive form of "to be" in the past tense. The verb "would" is used to express the hypothetical action of giving a special gift.

8K answered

276 3

Home Shorts Subscriptions You



Comments

@RushiBShahGPlus • 1 yr ago (edited)

Thank you so much Palki for sharing this.
Five pointers for a good story as per Aristotle:
1) Ethos : talking with authority
2) Logos: logical reasoning
3) Pathos: feelings and emotions. Genuine connect with listeners with honest and transperant delivery.
4) Metaphor: comparison by example. Drawing parallels with relatable events.
5) Brevity: short and punchy sentences

27

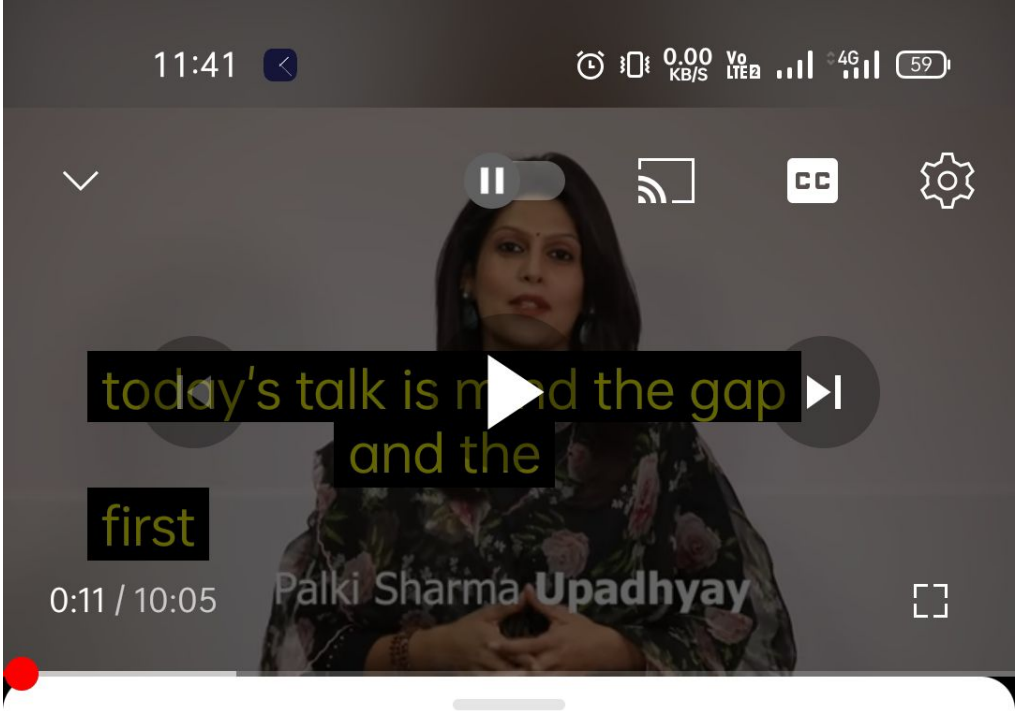
1 reply

@DevathasanAPNair • 1 yr ago (edited)

Story telling is a very large scope. And Palki

S

Add a comment…



Comments

capital of Japan, it is a city on the island of Honshu ... famous for its classi... Read more

27

1 reply

@benkavithi7707 • 1 yr ago

The beauty of a story heavily relies on the storyteller. Palki Sharma is a generational gift to the art of storytelling. Much love from Kenya.

14

@marzenawajnert9987 • 1 yr ago

Palki, you are inspirational . I watch your news and the faith in people and journalism comes back.. sending lots of love from Poland ❤️

Add a comment...

4:25 0.49 KB/S 26
google.com/search?q=pr 2
Google S
pneumonoultramicroscop
All Images Videos Shopping News Bo
हिंदी में खोजें pneumonoultramicroscopics...

Dictionary

Definitions from Oxford Languages · Learn more

English

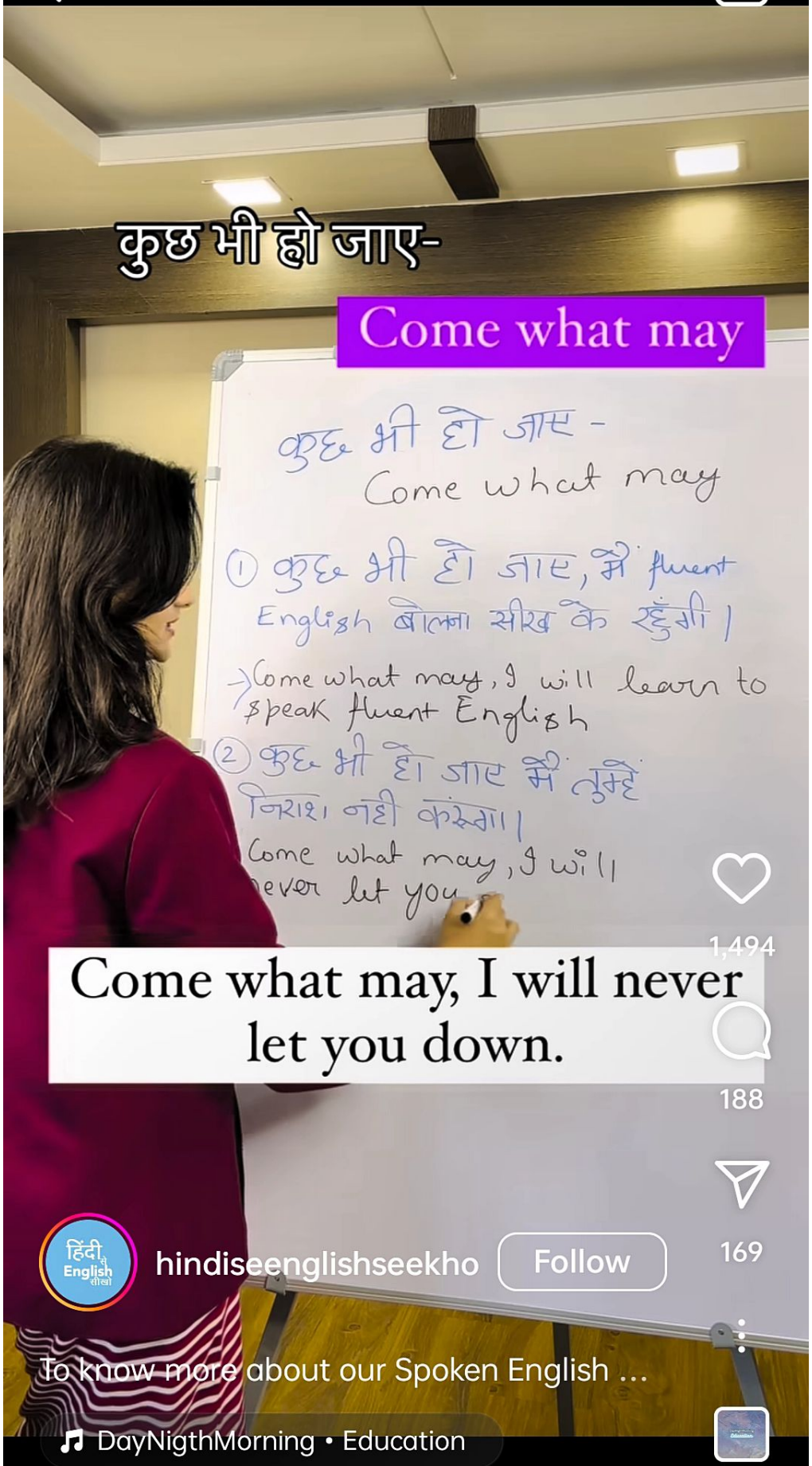
pneumonoultramicroscopicsilicovolcanoconiosis

noun

an invented long word said to mean a lung disease caused by inhaling very fine ash and sand dust.

Feedback

See more ›



1,494

188

169

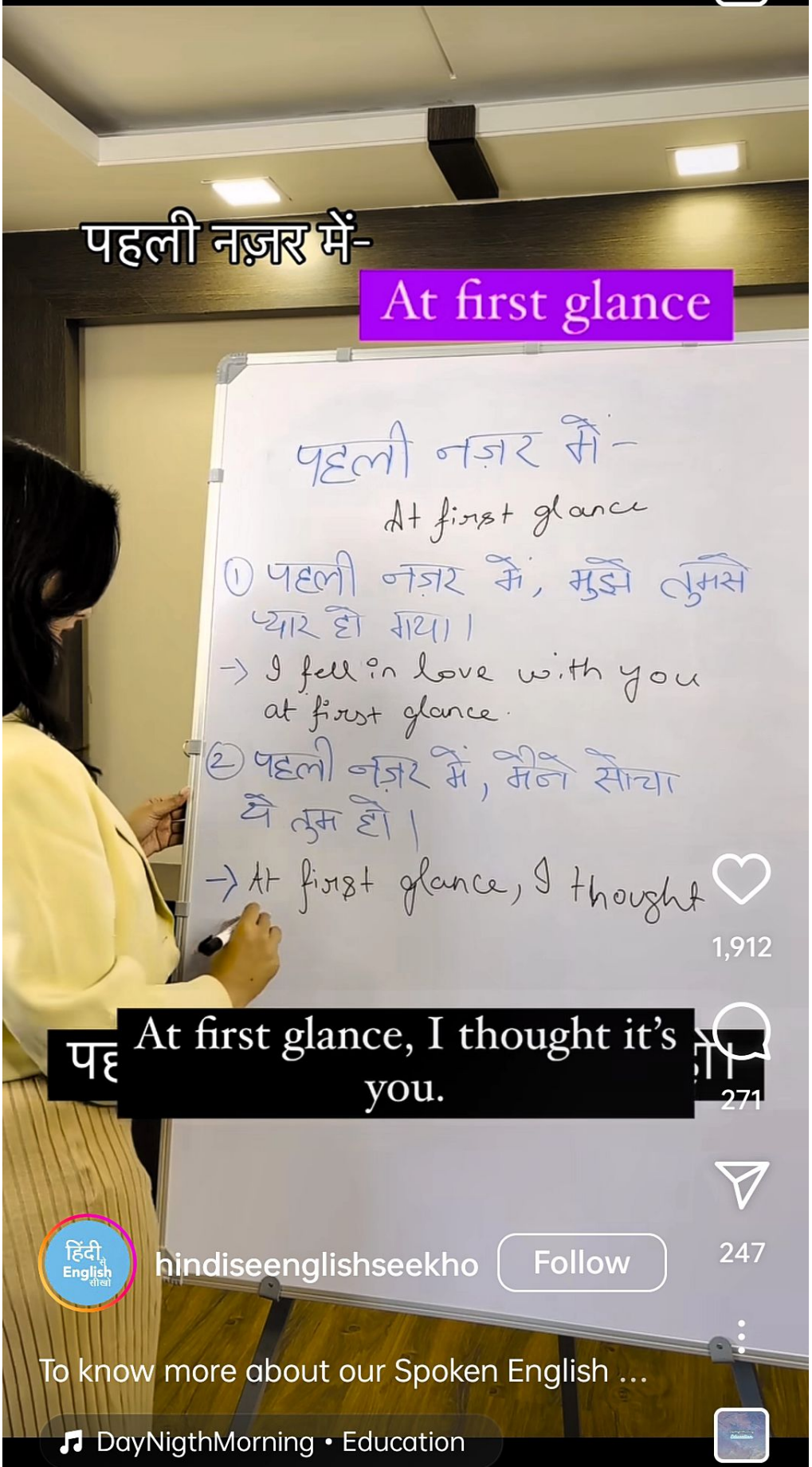
हिंदी English सीखो

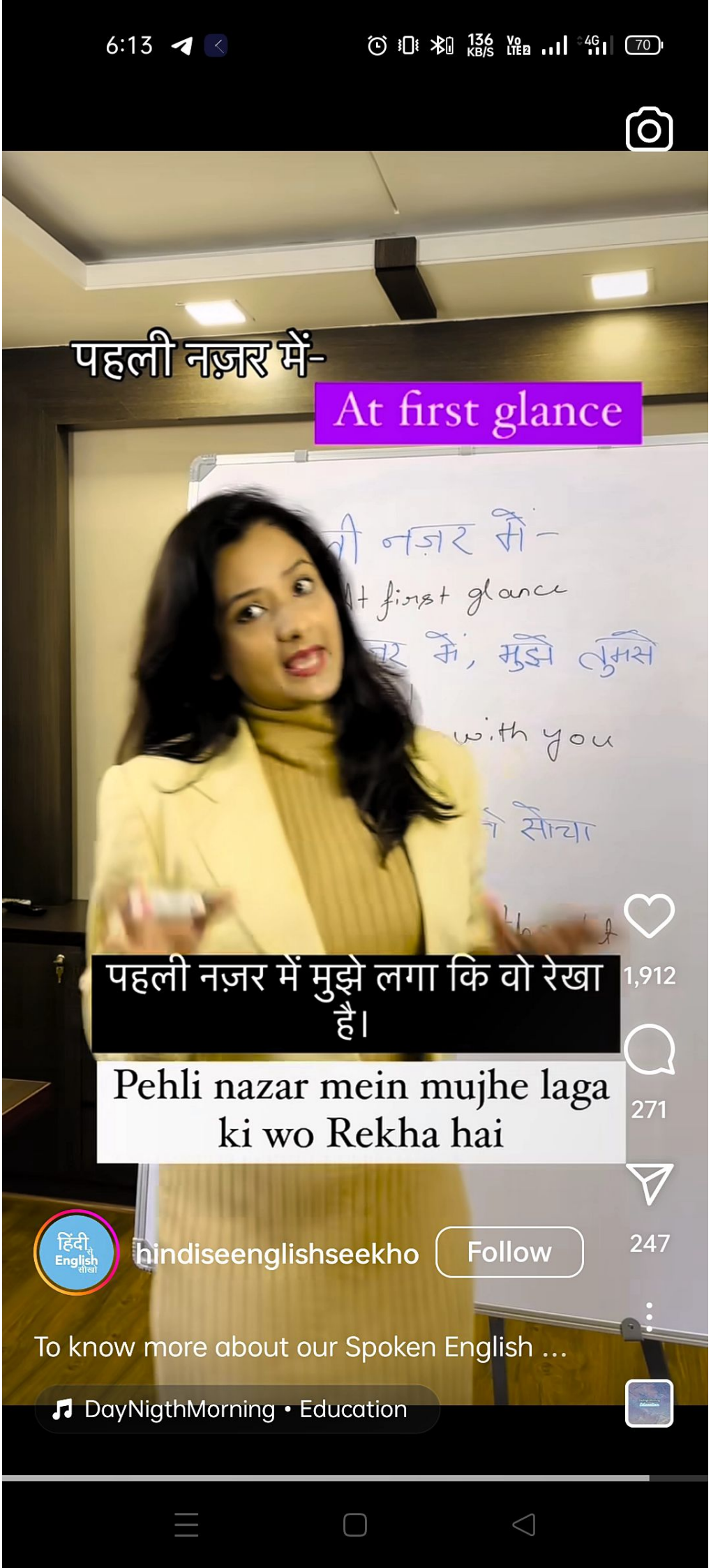
hindiseenglishseekho

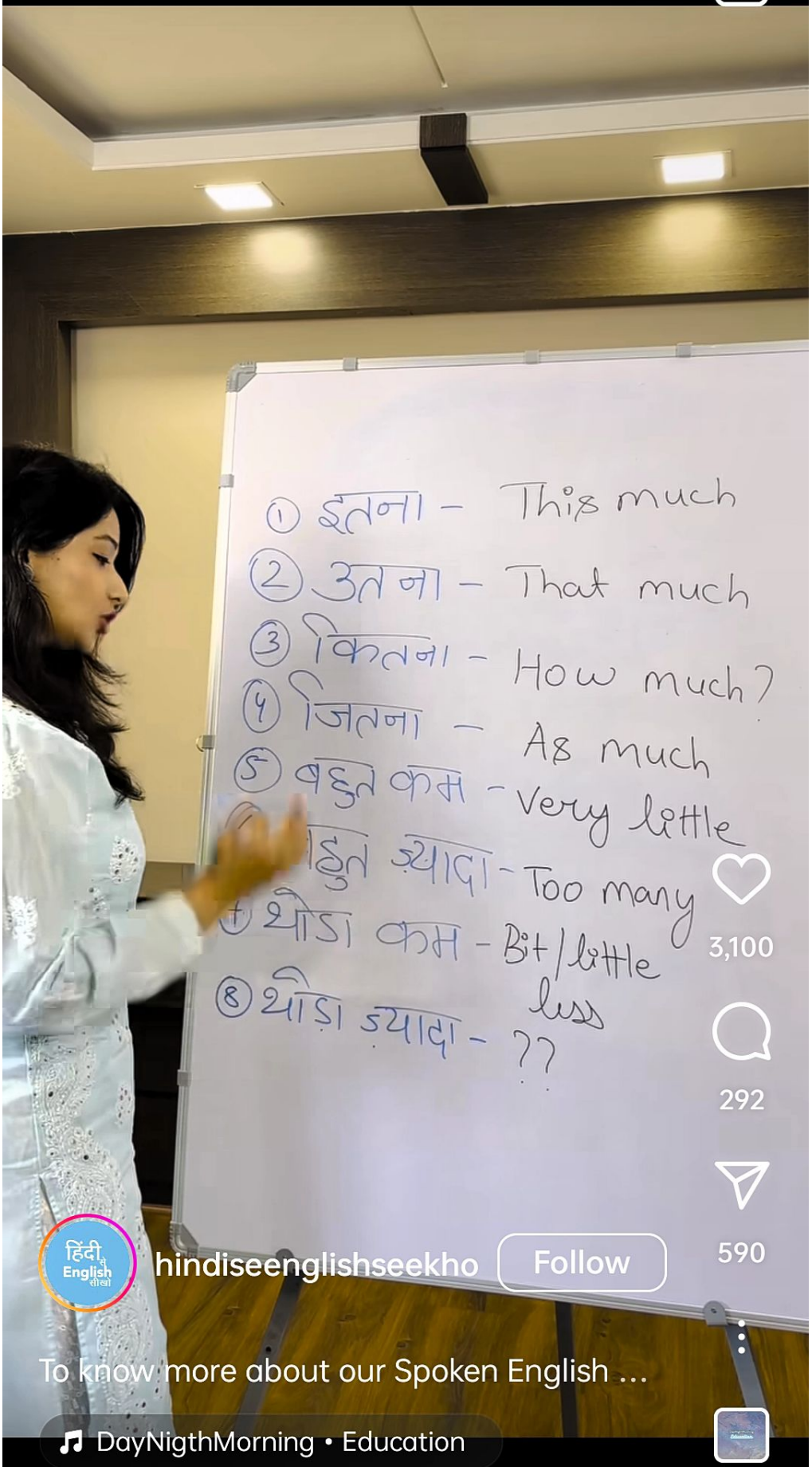
Follow

To know more about our Spoken English ...

DayNigthMorning • Education


पहली नज़र में-
At first glance
पहली नज़र में-
At first glance
① पहली नज़र में, मुझे तुमसे प्यार हो गया।
→ I fell in love with you at first glance.
② पहली नज़र में, मैंने सोचा थे तुम हो।
→ At first glance, I thought
At first glance, I thought it's you.
1,912
271
247
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
To know more about our Spoken English ...
DayNigthMorning • Education


6:13
पहली नज़र में-
At first glance
पहली नज़र में मुझे लगा कि वो रेखा है।
Pehli nazar mein mujhe laga ki wo Rekha hai
1,912
271
247
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
To know more about our Spoken English ...
DayNigthMorning • Education



3,100

292

590

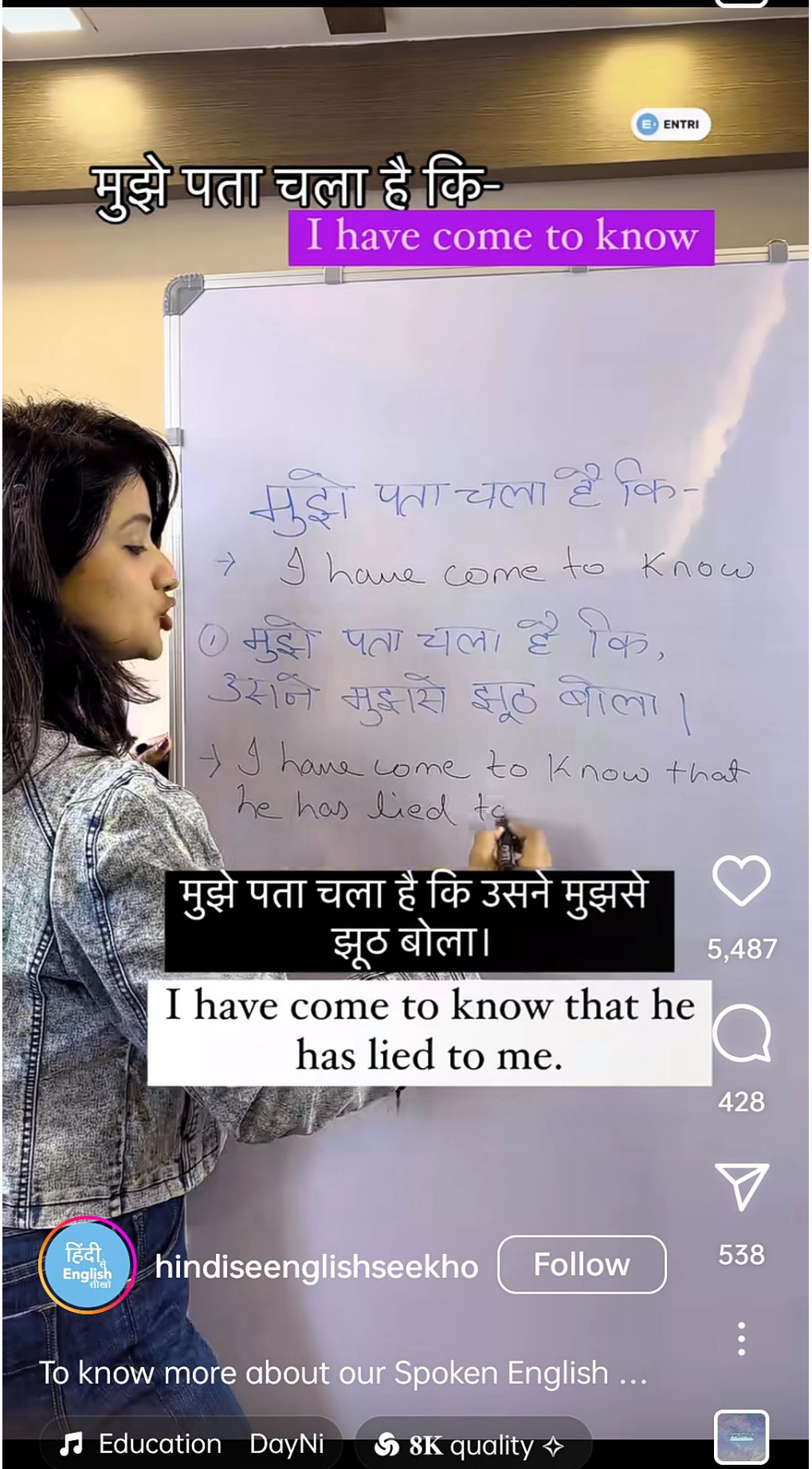
हिंदी English सीखो

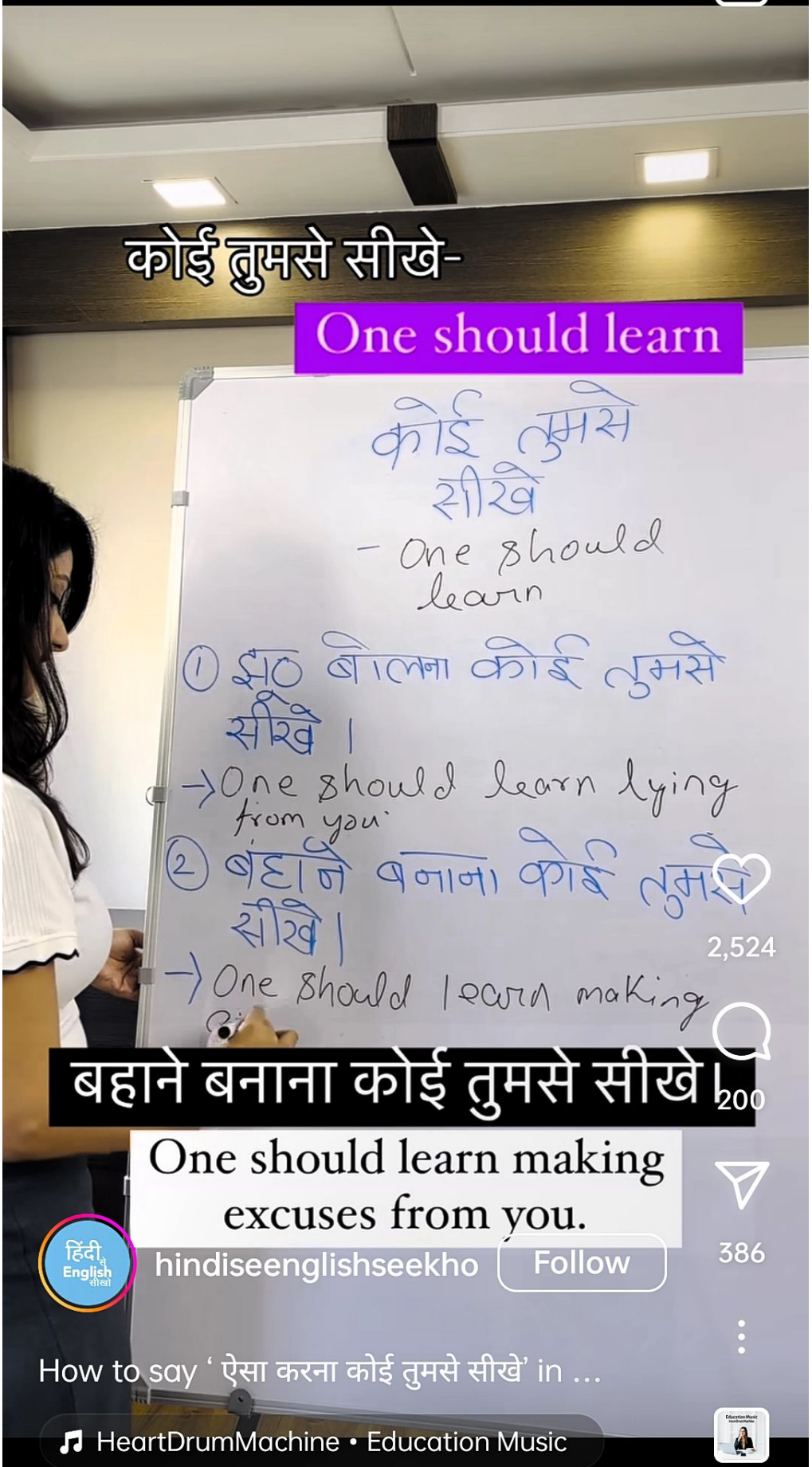
hindiseenglishseekho

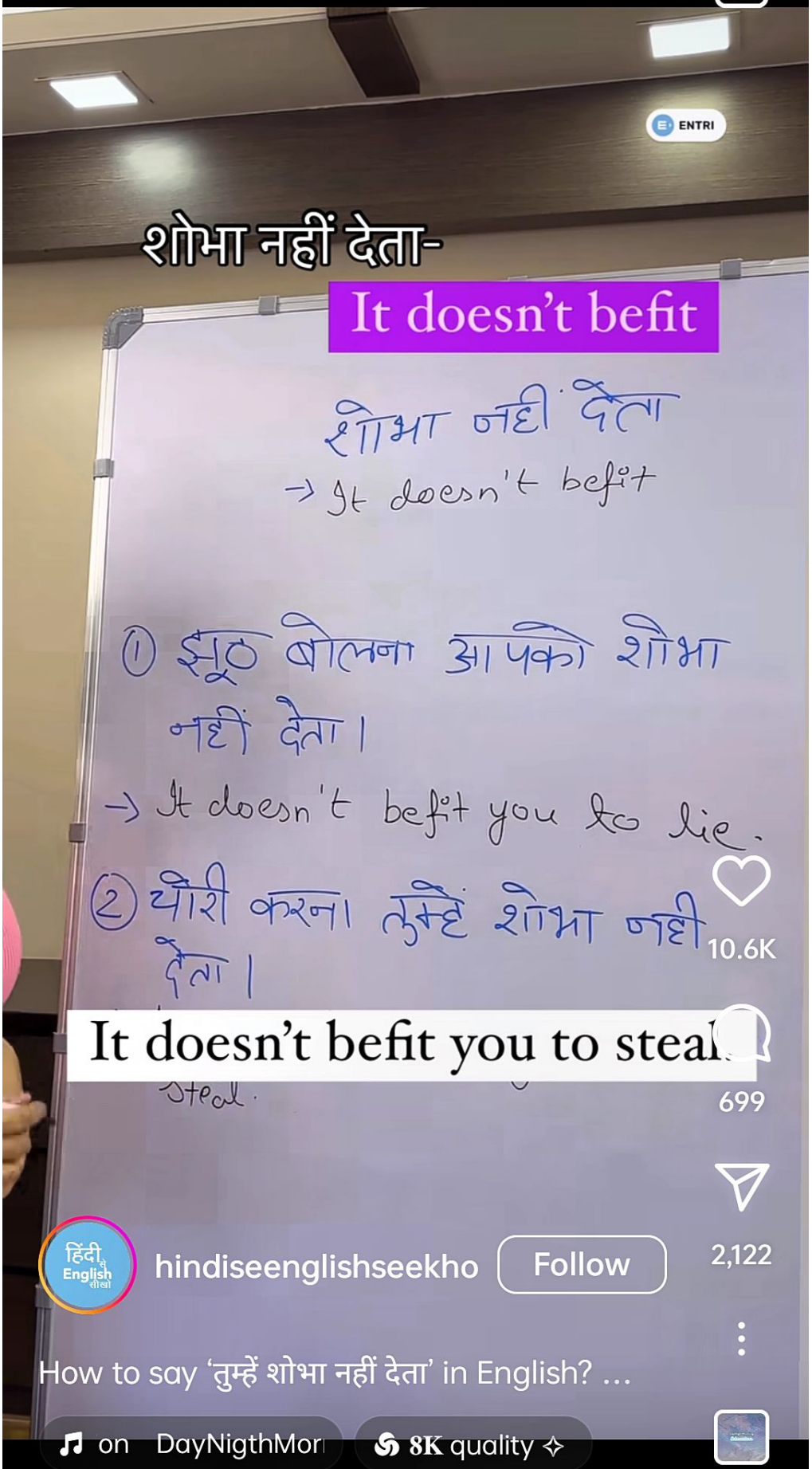
Follow

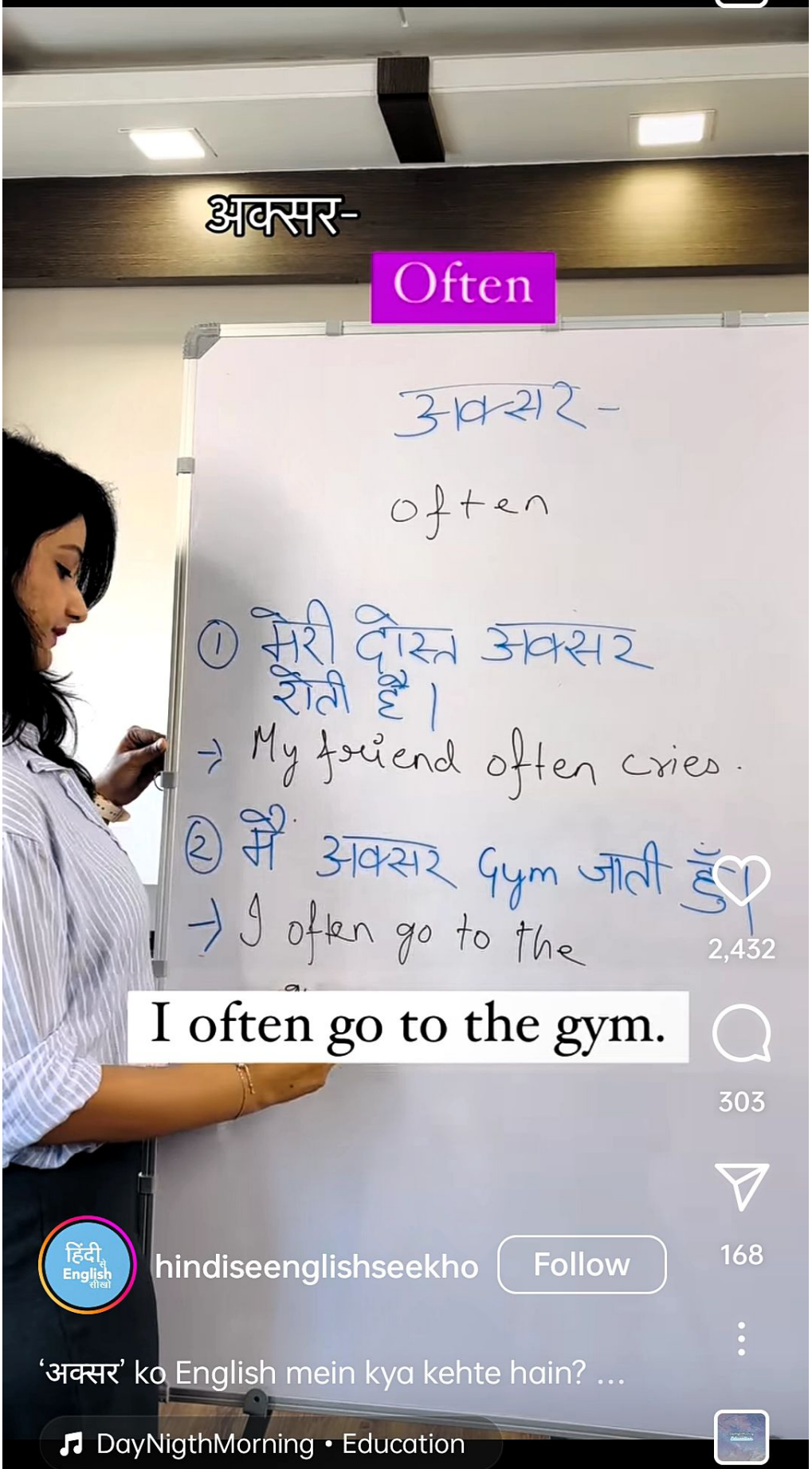
To know more about our Spoken English ...

DayNigthMorning • Education


ENTRI
मुझे पता चला है कि-
I have come to know
मुझे पता चला है कि-
→ I have come to know
① मुझे पता चला है कि,
उसने मुझसे झूठ बोला।
→ I have come to know that
he has lied to
मुझे पता चला है कि उसने मुझसे झूठ बोला।
I have come to know that he has lied to me.
5,487
428
538
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
To know more about our Spoken English ...
Education DayNi
8K quality


कोई तुमसे सीखे-
One should learn
कोई तुमसे सीखे
- One should learn
① झूठ बोलना कोई तुमसे सीखे।
→ One should learn lying from you.
② बहाने बनाना कोई तुमसे सीखे।
→ One should learn making
बहाने बनाना कोई तुमसे सीखे।
One should learn making excuses from you.
2,524
200
386
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
How to say ' ऐसा करना कोई तुमसे सीखे' in ...
HeartDrumMachine • Education Music


शोभा नहीं देता-
It doesn't befit
शोभा नहीं देता
→ It doesn't befit
① झूठ बोलना आपको शोभा नहीं देता।
→ It doesn't befit you to lie.
② चोरी करना तुम्हें शोभा नहीं देता।
It doesn't befit you to steal.
10.6K
699
2,122
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
How to say 'तुम्हें शोभा नहीं देता' in English? ...
on DayNigthMor
8K quality



2,432

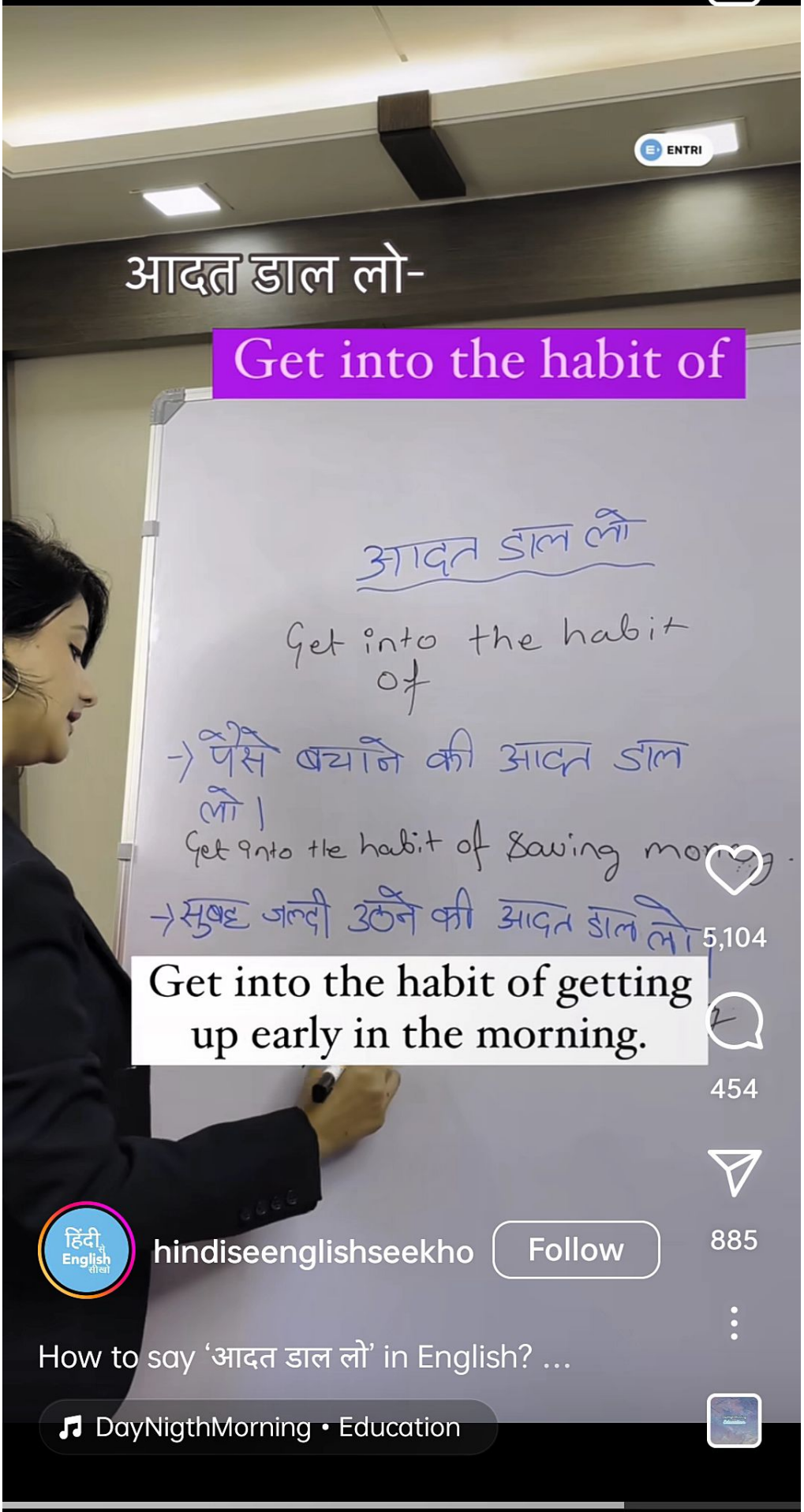
303

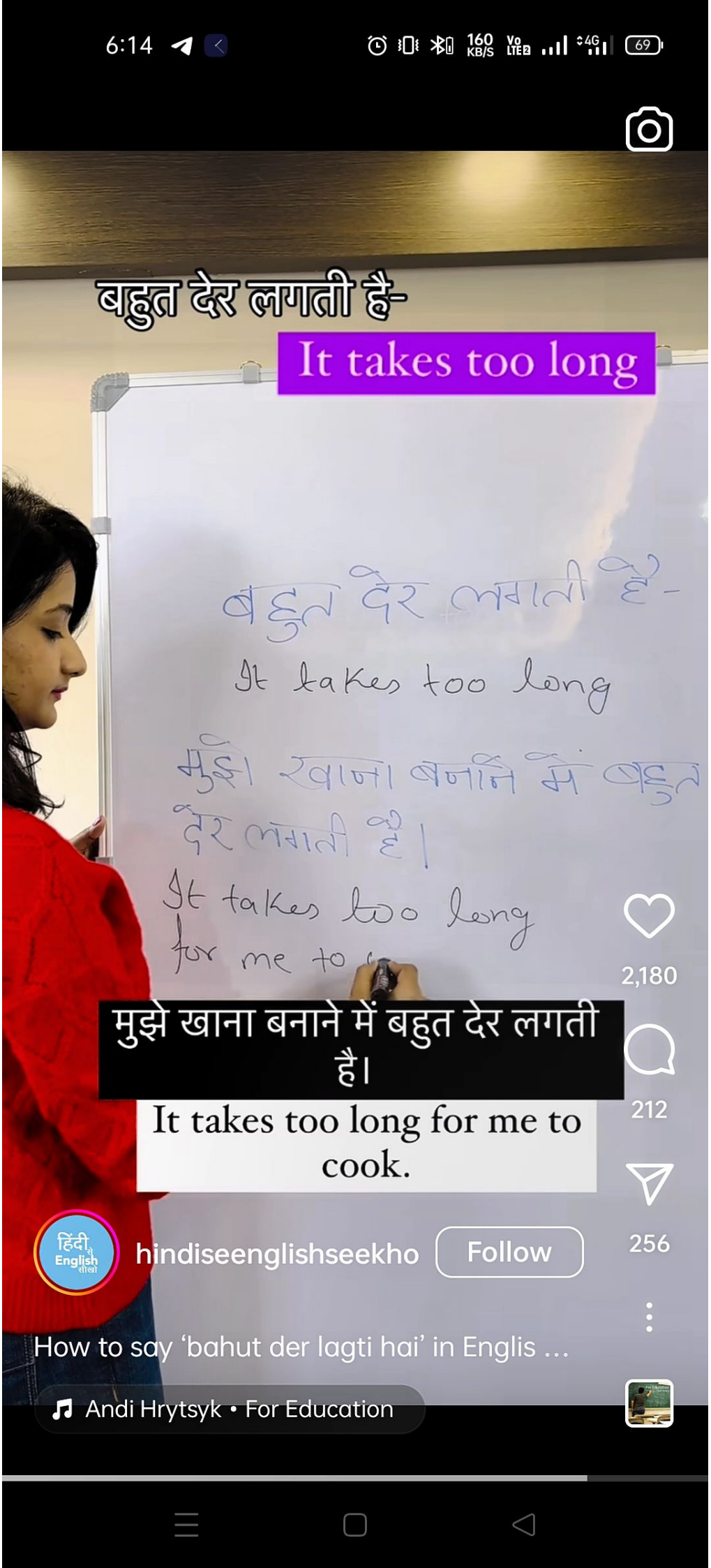
168

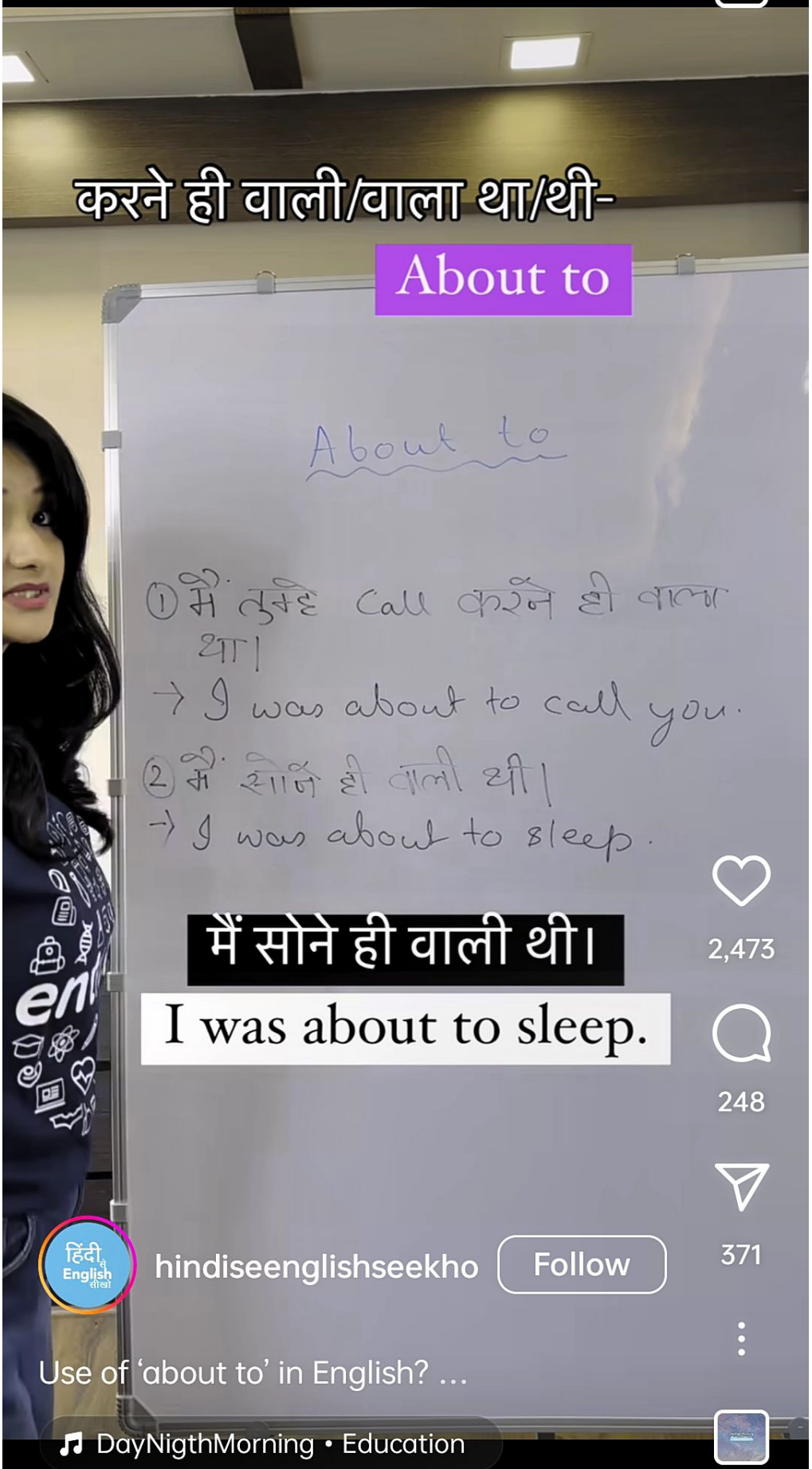
hindiseenglishseekho Follow

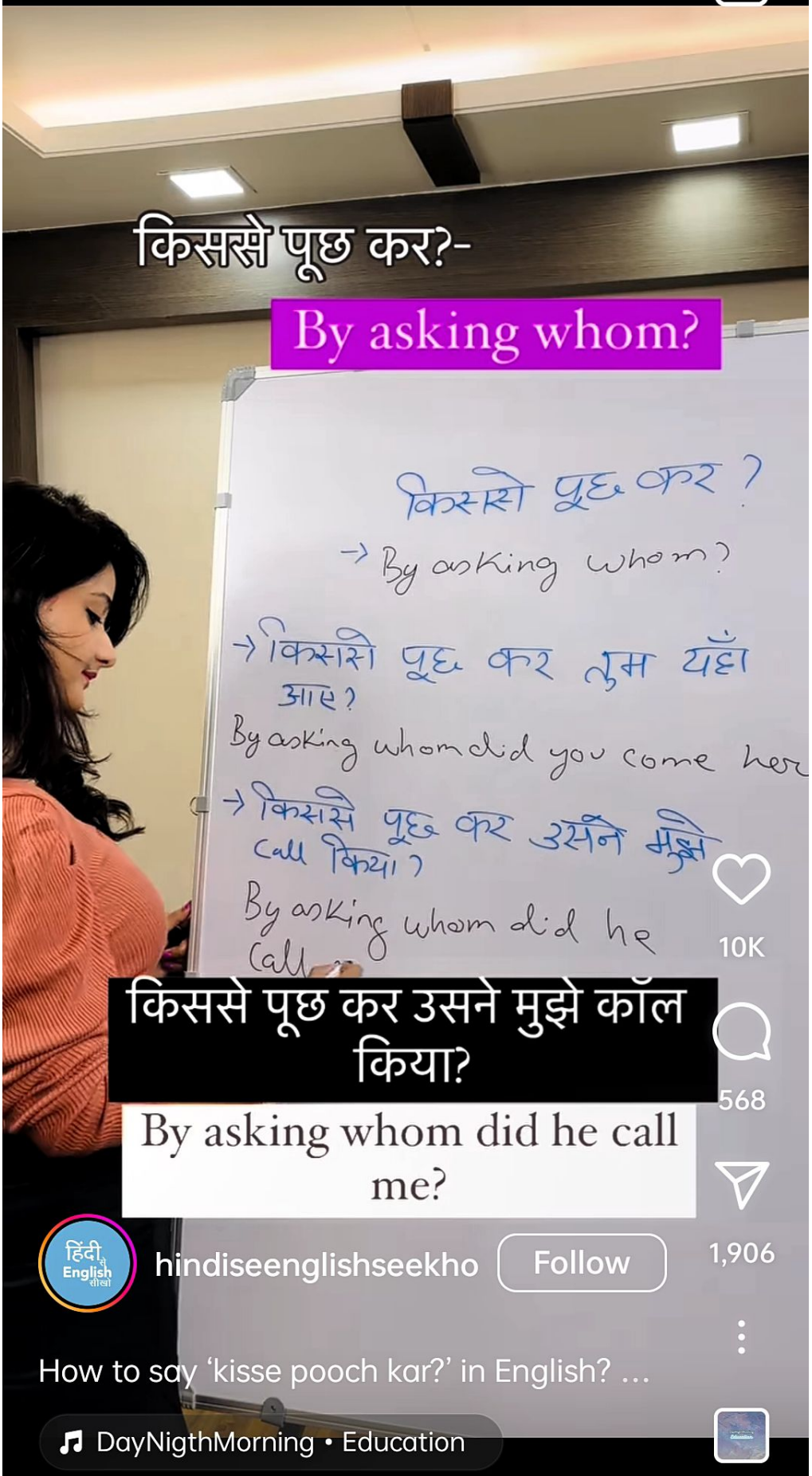
'अक्सर' ko English mein kya kehte hain? ...

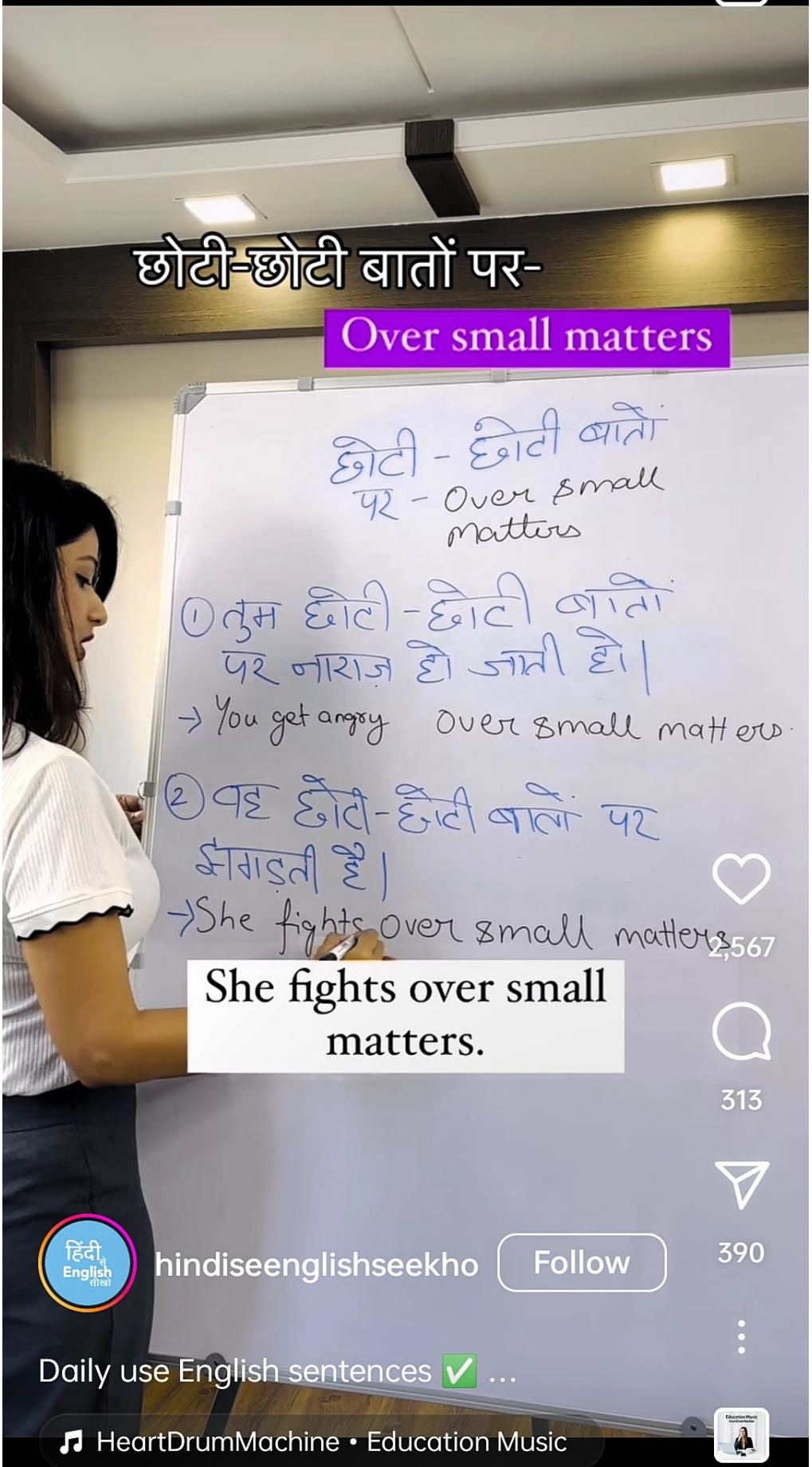
DayNigthMorning • Education

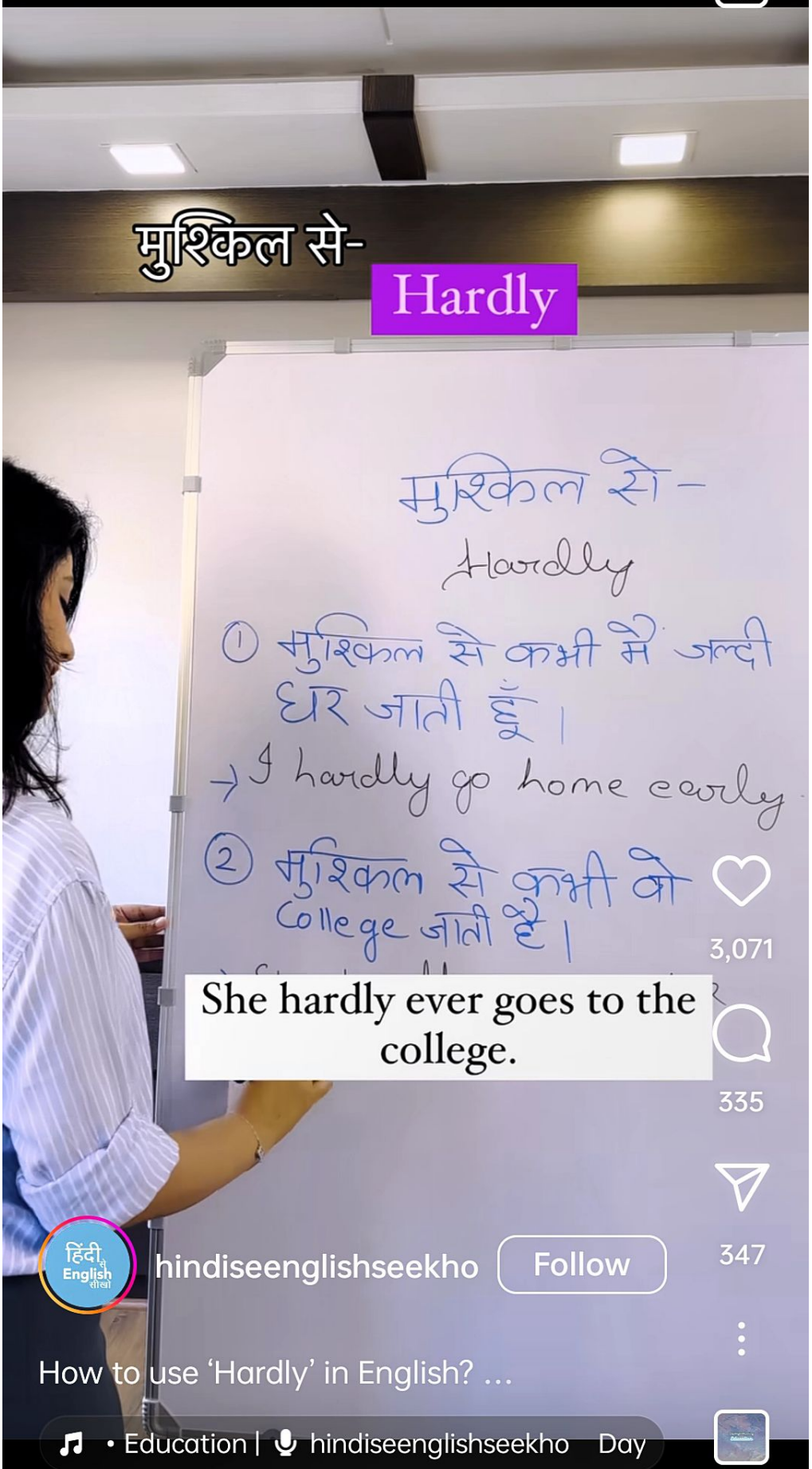

आदत डाल लो-
Get into the habit of
आदत डाल लो
Get into the habit of
-> पैसे बचाने की आदत डाल लो।
Get into the habit of saving money.
-> सुबह जल्दी उठने की आदत डाल लो।
Get into the habit of getting up early in the morning.
5,104
454
885
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
How to say 'आदत डाल लो' in English? ...
DayNigthMorning • Education

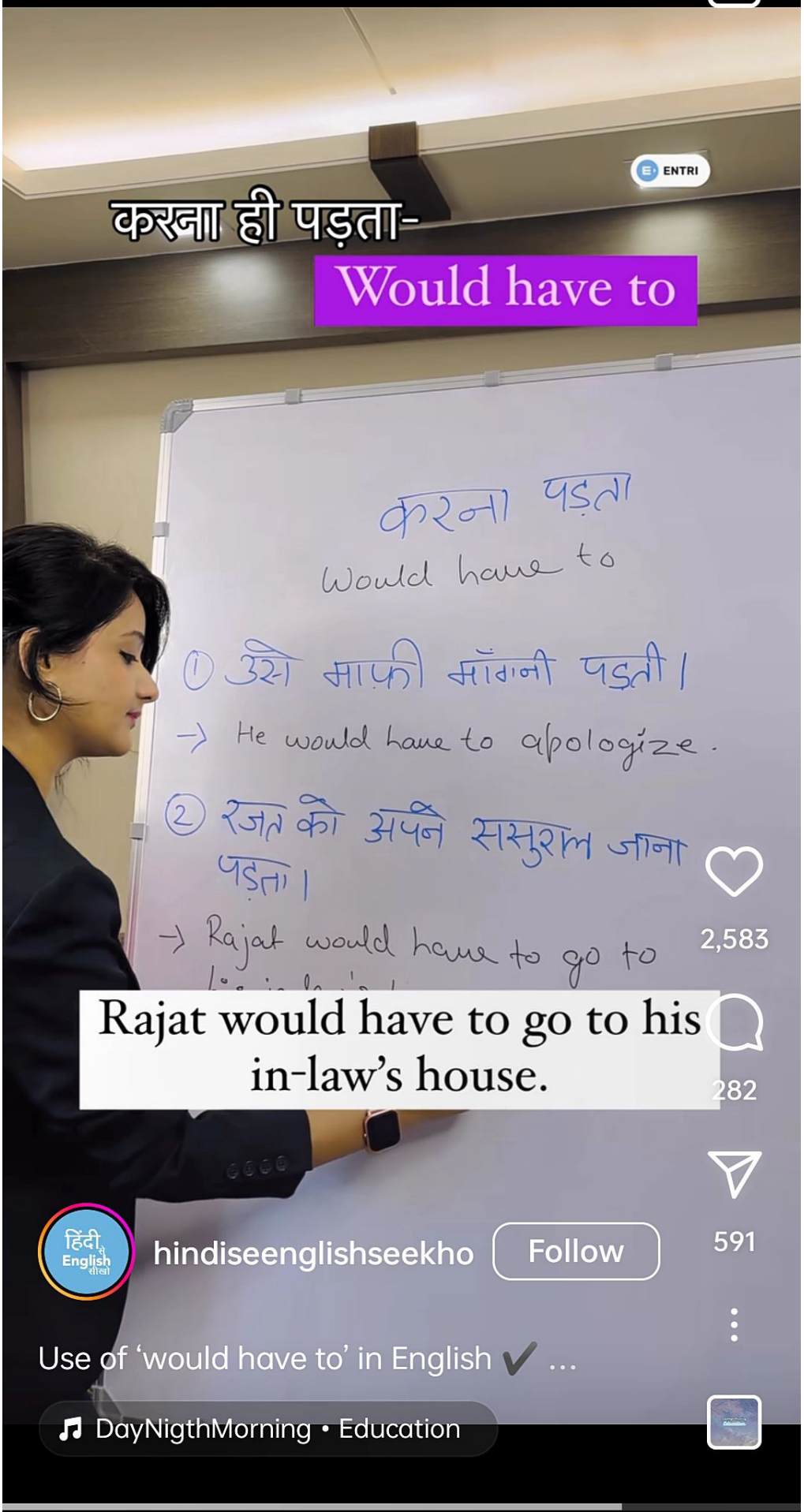

बहुत देर लगती है-
It takes too long
बहुत देर लगती है-
It takes too long
मुझे खाना बनाने में बहुत देर लगती है।
It takes too long for me to
मुझे खाना बनाने में बहुत देर लगती है।
It takes too long for me to cook.
2,180
212
256
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
How to say 'bahut der lagti hai' in Englis ...
Andi Hrytsyk • For Education

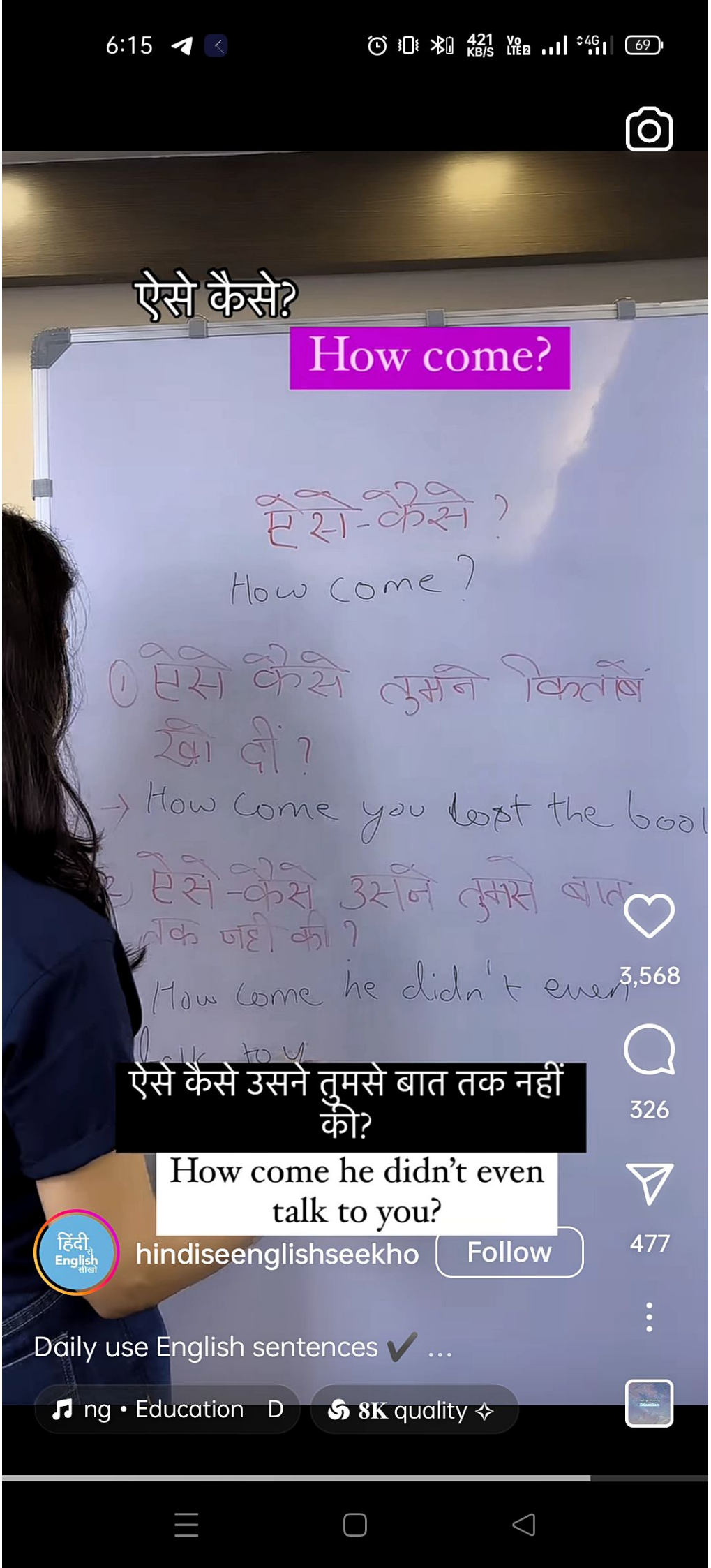

करने ही वाली/वाला था/थी-
About to
About to
① मैं तुम्हें call करने ही वाला था।
→ I was about to call you.
② मैं सोने ही वाली थी।
→ I was about to sleep.
मैं सोने ही वाली थी।
I was about to sleep.
2,473
248
371
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
Use of 'about to' in English? ...
DayNigthMorning • Education

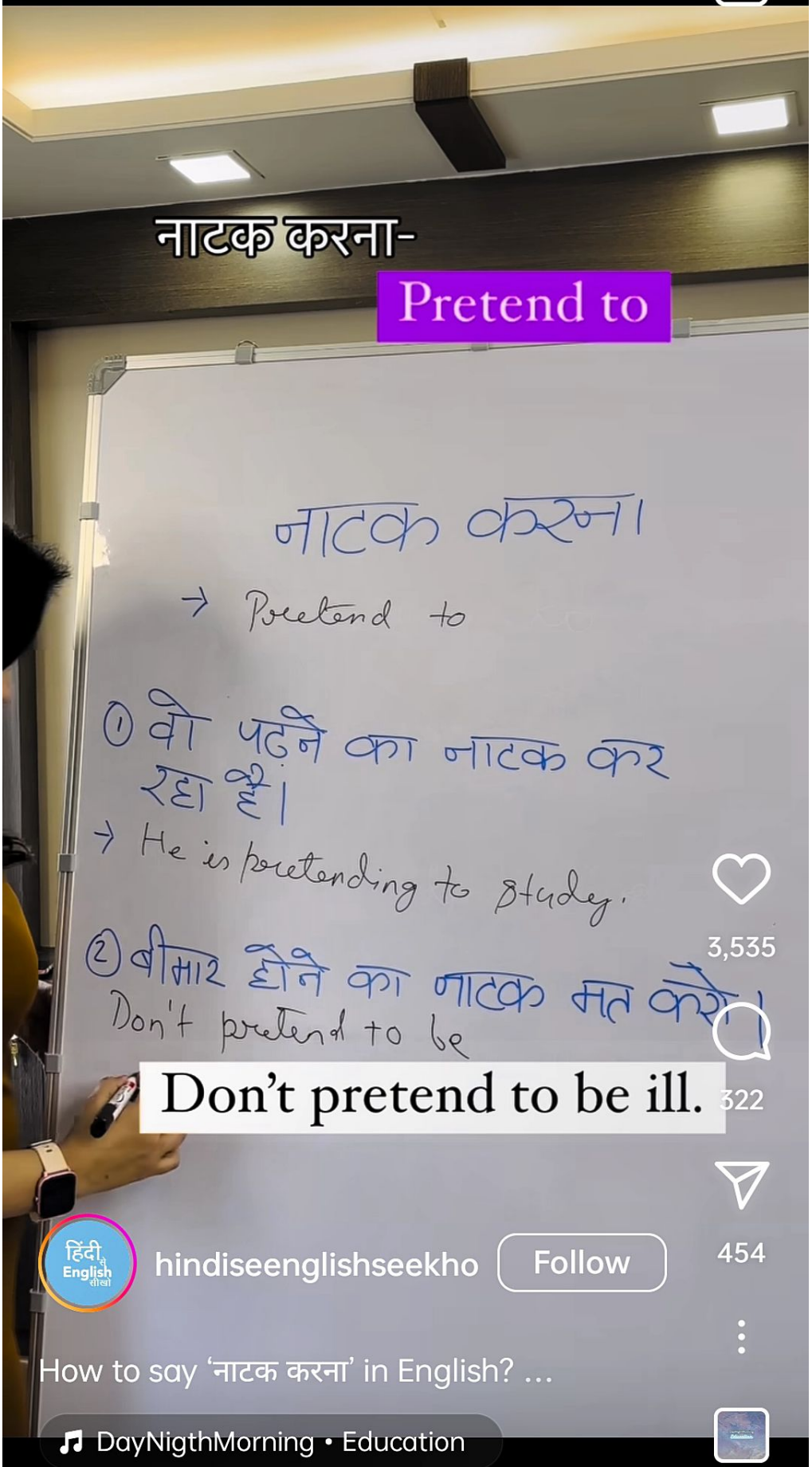

किससे पूछ कर?-
By asking whom?
किससे पूछ कर ?
→ By asking whom?
→ किससे पूछ कर तुम यहाँ आए?
By asking whom did you come her
→ किससे पूछ कर उसने मुझे Call किया?
By asking whom did he Call
किससे पूछ कर उसने मुझे कॉल किया?
By asking whom did he call me?
10K
568
1,906
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
How to say 'kisse pooch kar?' in English? ...
DayNigthMorning • Education

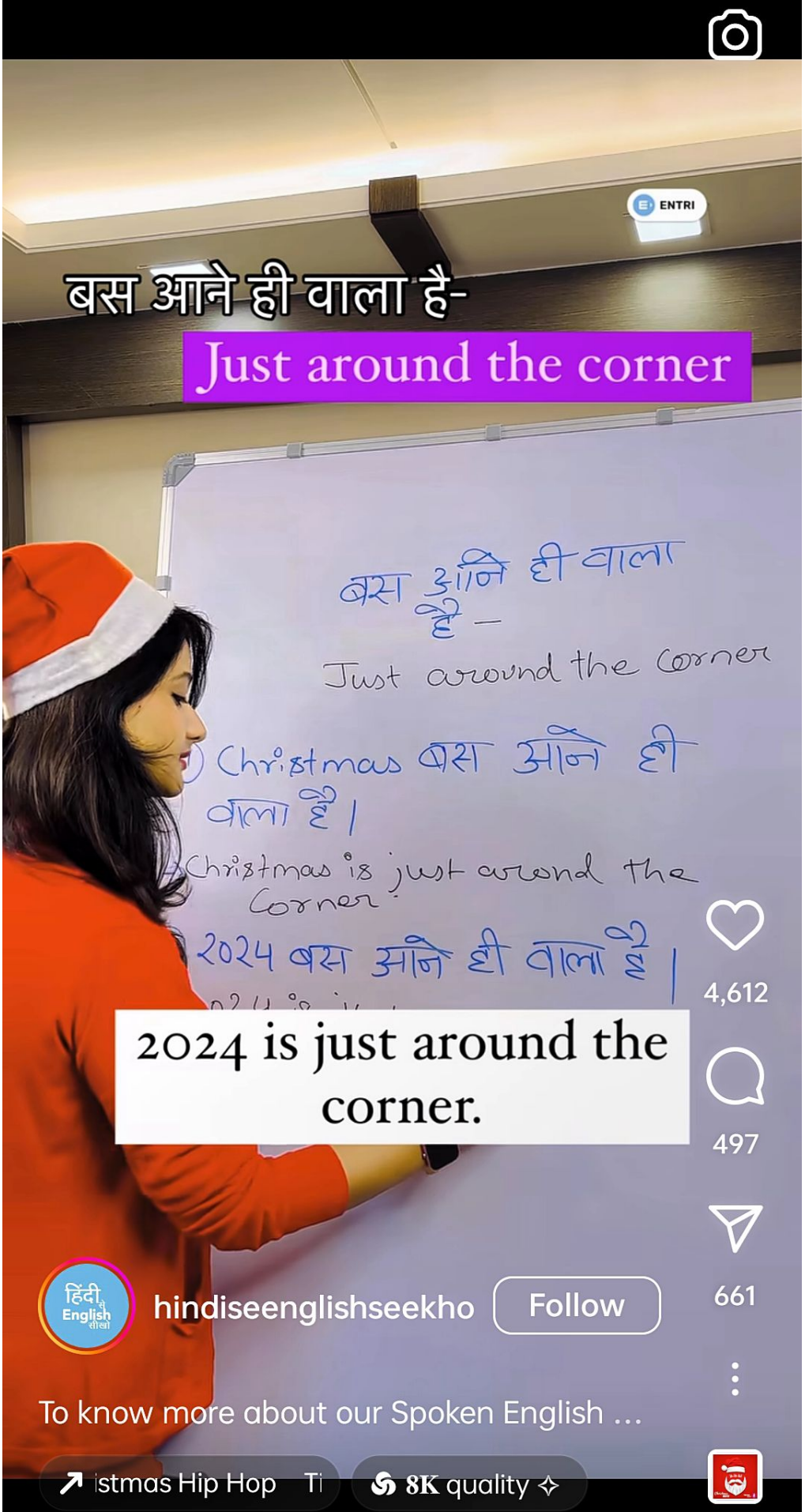

छोटी-छोटी बातों पर-
Over small matters
छोटी - छोटी बातों
पर - Over small
matters
① तुम छोटी-छोटी बातों
पर नाराज़ हो जाती हो।
→ You get angry over small matters.
② वह छोटी-छोटी बातों पर
झगड़ती है।
→ She fights over small matters.
She fights over small
matters.
2,567
313
390
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
Daily use English sentences ✅ ...
HeartDrumMachine • Education Music

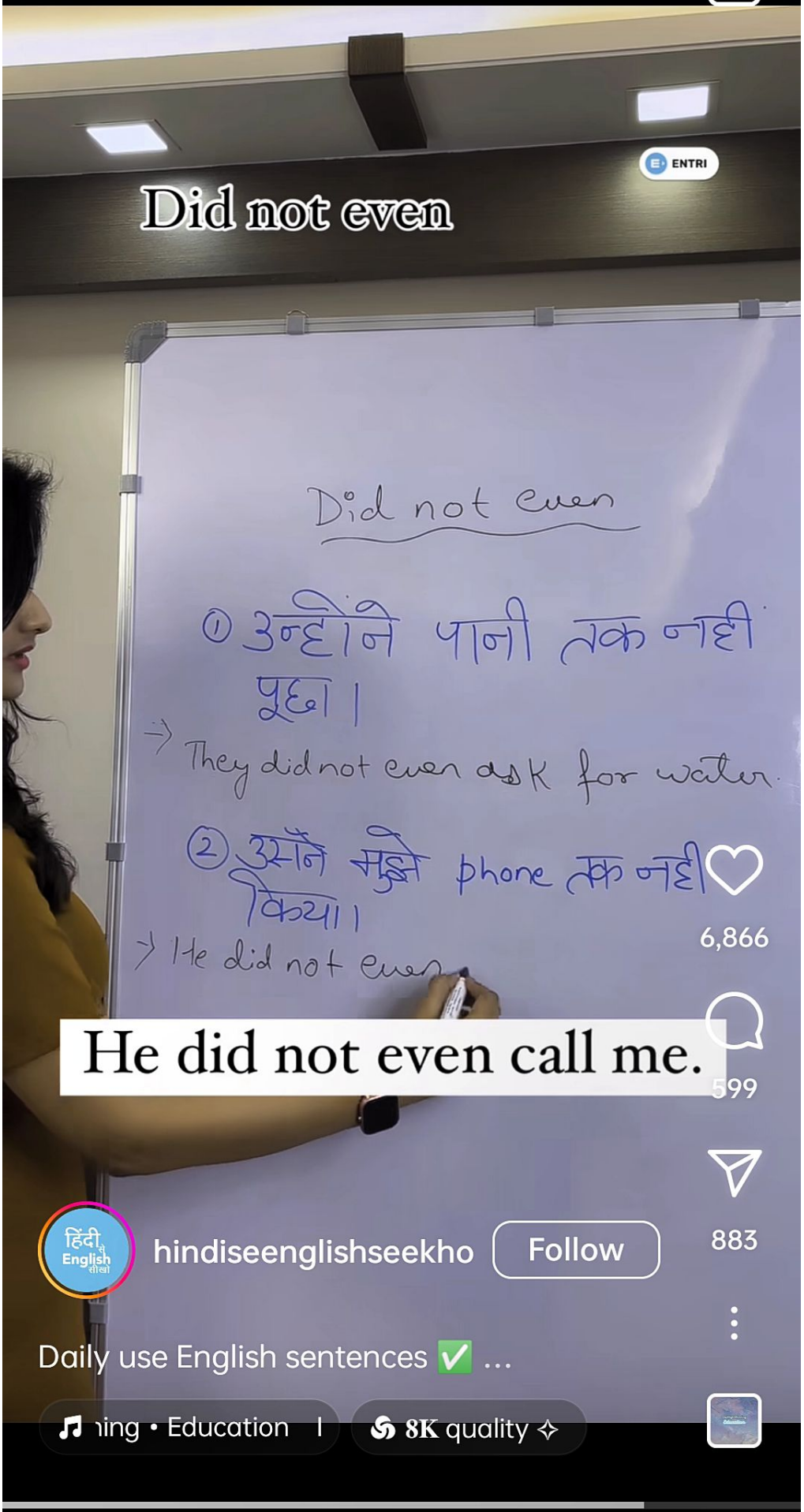

मुश्किल से-
Hardly
मुश्किल से -
Hardly
① मुश्किल से कभी मैं जल्दी घर जाती हूँ।
→ I hardly go home early.
② मुश्किल से कभी वो College जाती है।
She hardly ever goes to the college.
3,071
335
347
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
How to use 'Hardly' in English? ...
• Education | hindiseenglishseekho Day

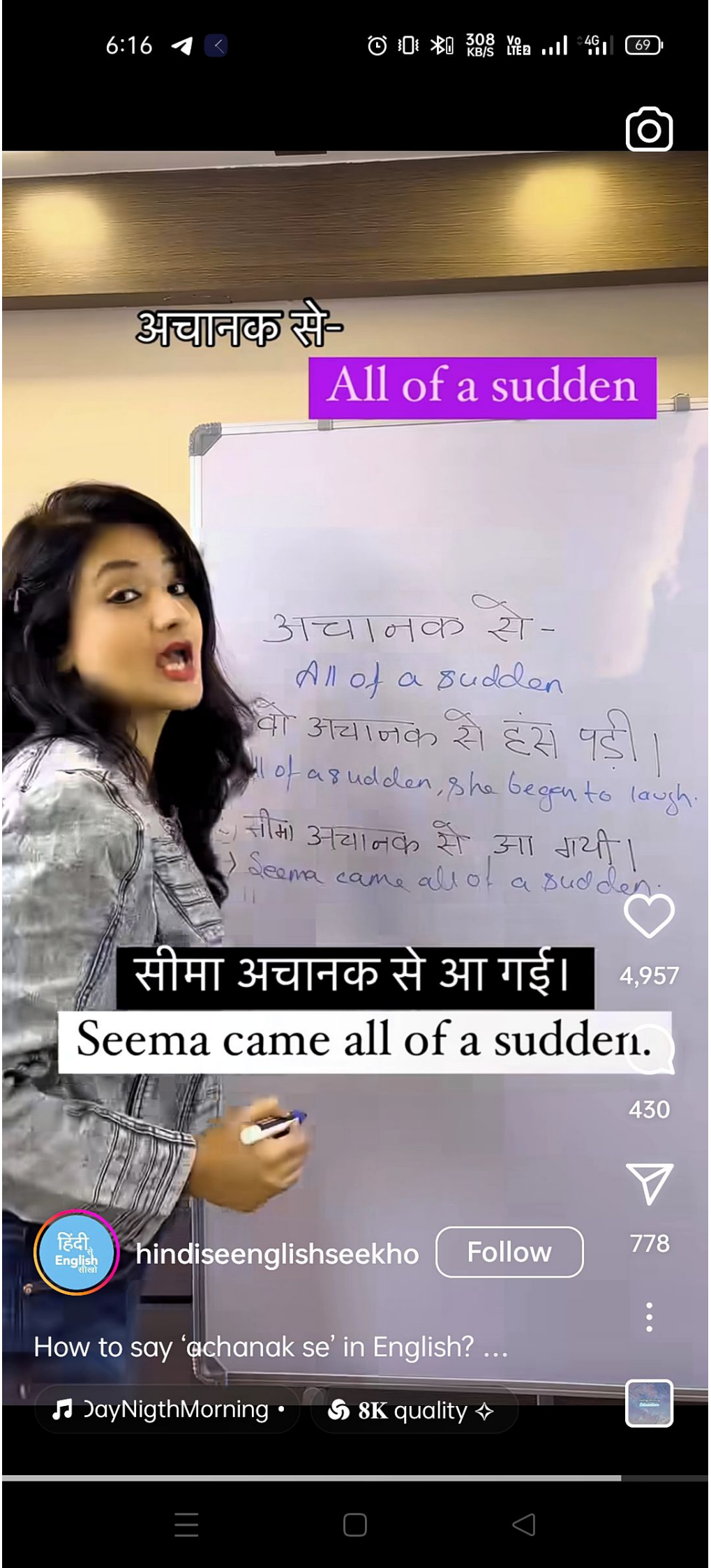

ENTRI
करना ही पड़ता-
Would have to
करना पड़ता
Would have to
① उसे माफ़ी माँगनी पड़ती।
→ He would have to apologize.
② रजत को अपने ससुराल जाना पड़ता।
→ Rajat would have to go to
Rajat would have to go to his in-law's house.
2,583
282
591
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
Use of 'would have to' in English ✔ ...
DayNigthMorning • Education

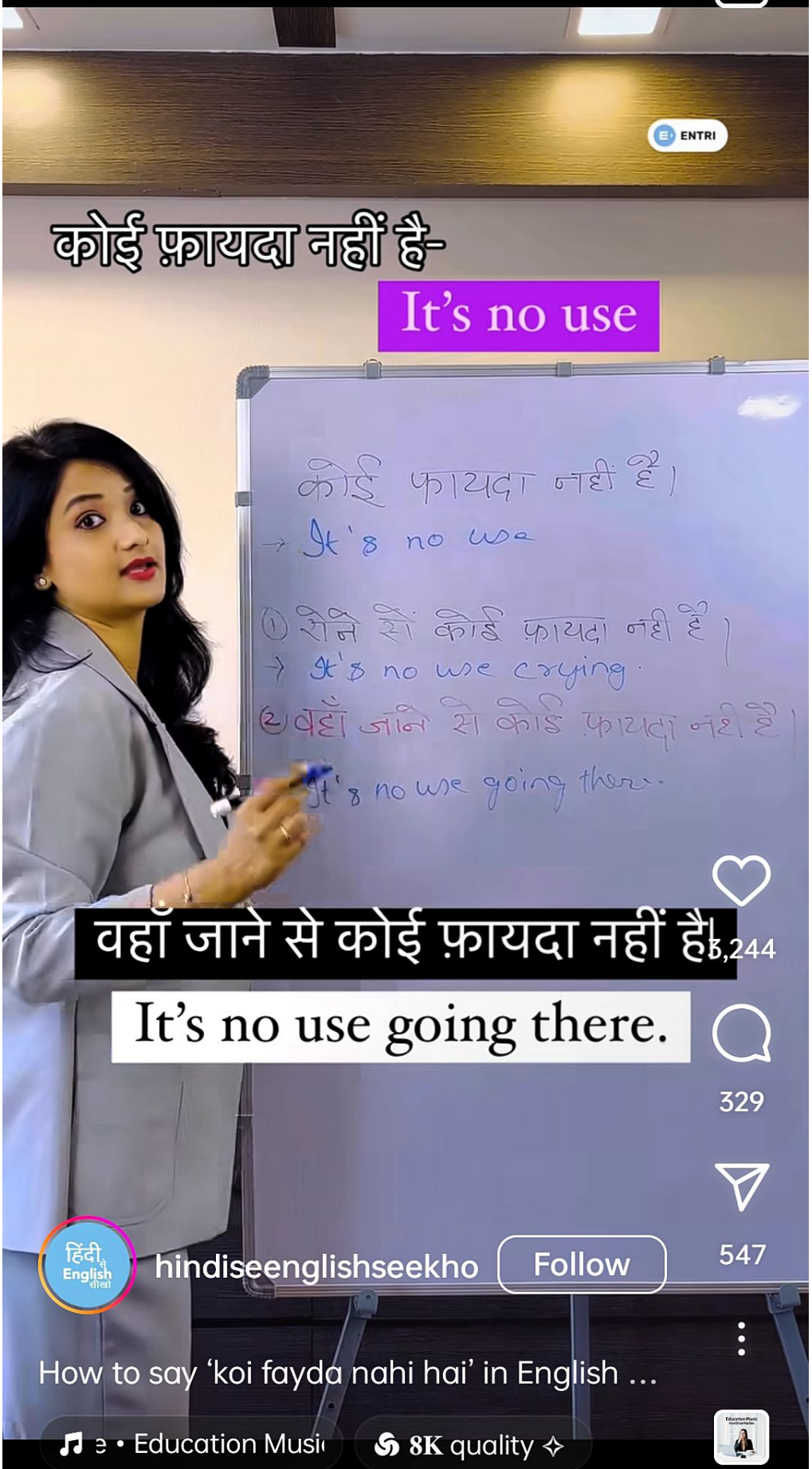

6:15
421 KB/S
69
ऐसे कैसे?
How come?
ऐसे-कैसे ?
How come?
ऐसे कैसे तुमने किताबें खो दीं?
How come you lost the book
ऐसे-कैसे उसने तुमसे बात तक नहीं की?
How come he didn't even talk to you
3,568
326
477
ऐसे कैसे उसने तुमसे बात तक नहीं की?
How come he didn't even talk to you?
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
Daily use English sentences ✔ ...
ng • Education D
8K quality

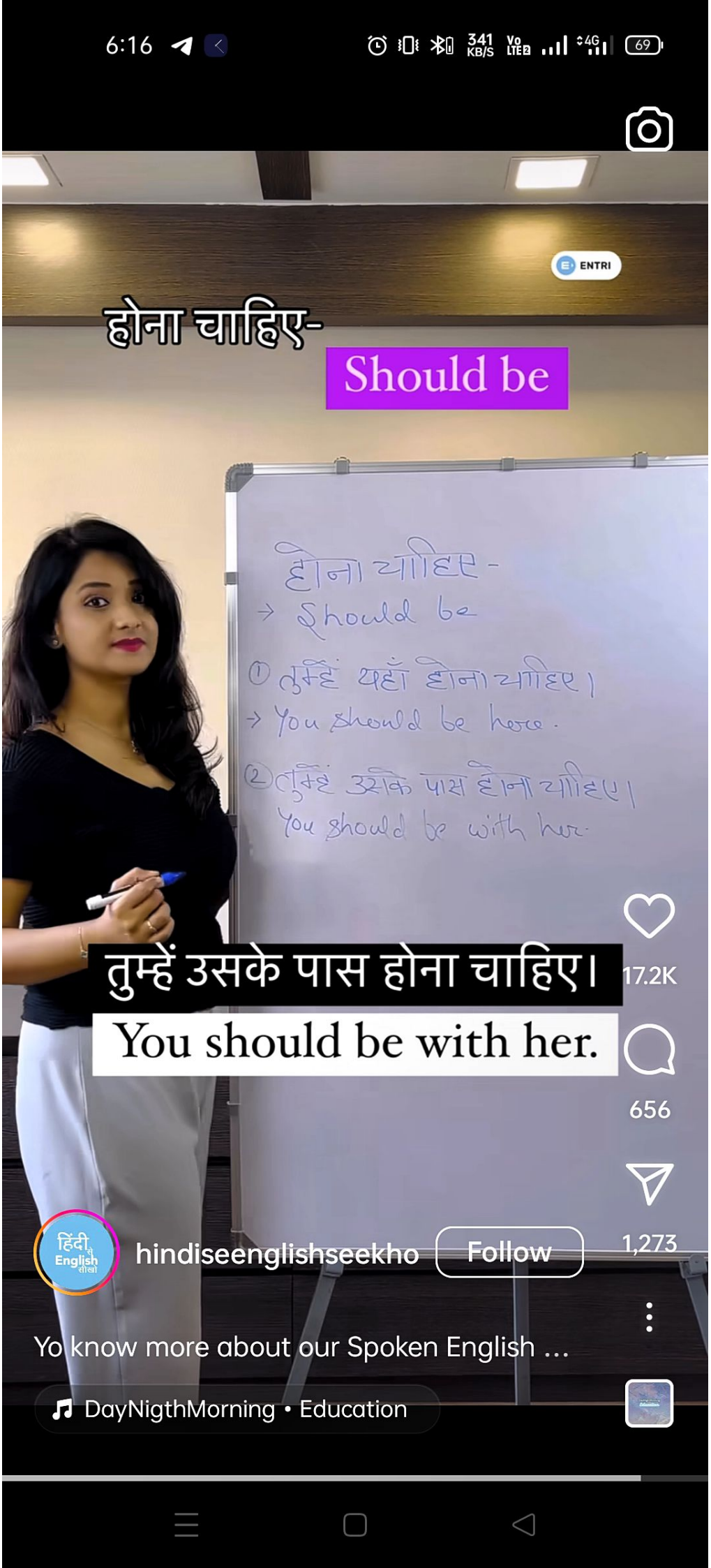

नाटक करना-
Pretend to
नाटक करना।
→ Pretend to
① वो पढ़ने का नाटक कर रहा है।
→ He is pretending to study.
② बीमार होने का नाटक मत करो।
Don't pretend to be
Don't pretend to be ill.
3,535
322
454
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
How to say 'नाटक करना' in English? ...
DayNigthMorning • Education

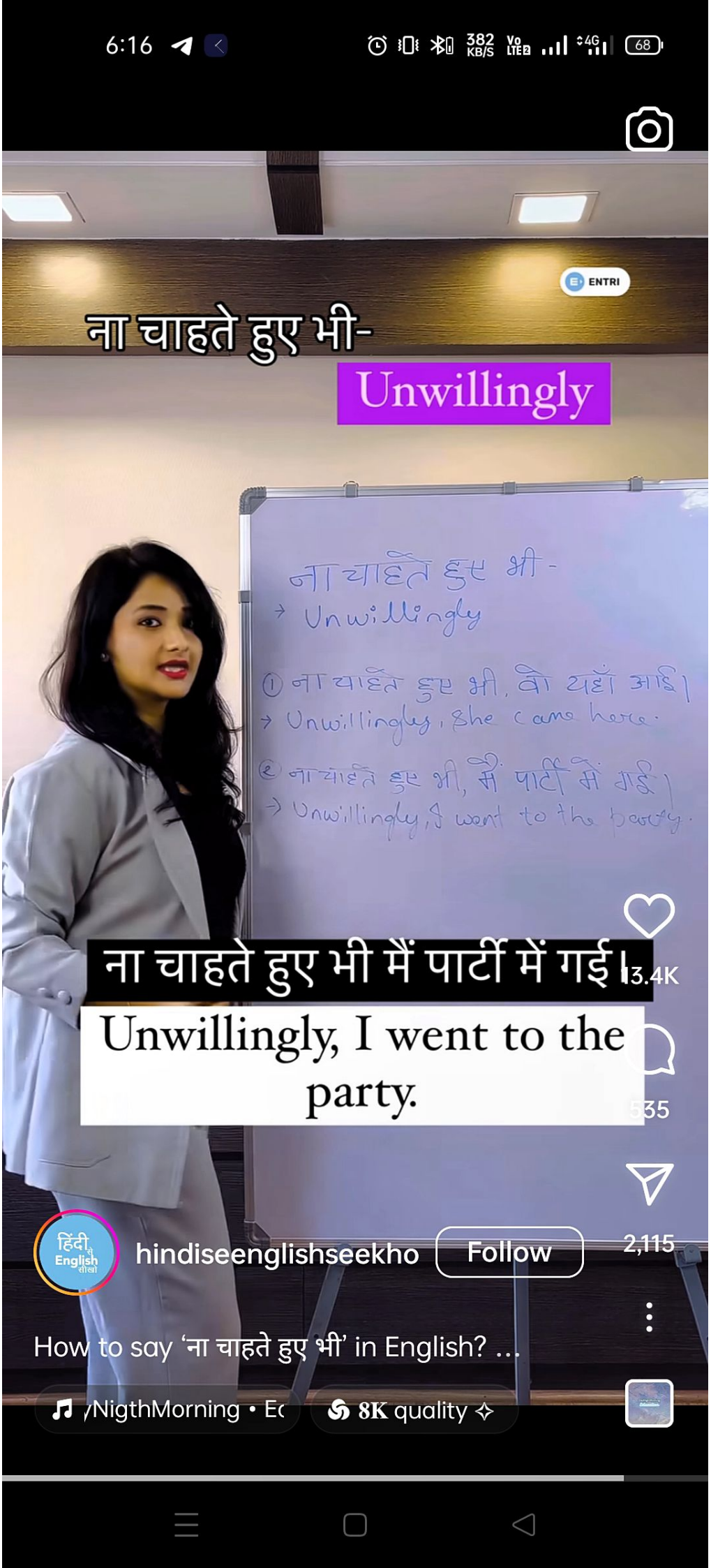

बस आने ही वाला है-
Just around the corner
बस आने ही वाला है –
Just around the Corner
Christmas बस आने ही वाला है।
Christmas is just around the Corner
2024 बस आने ही वाला है।
2024 is just around the corner.
4,612
497
661
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
To know more about our Spoken English ...
istmas Hip Hop Ti
8K quality

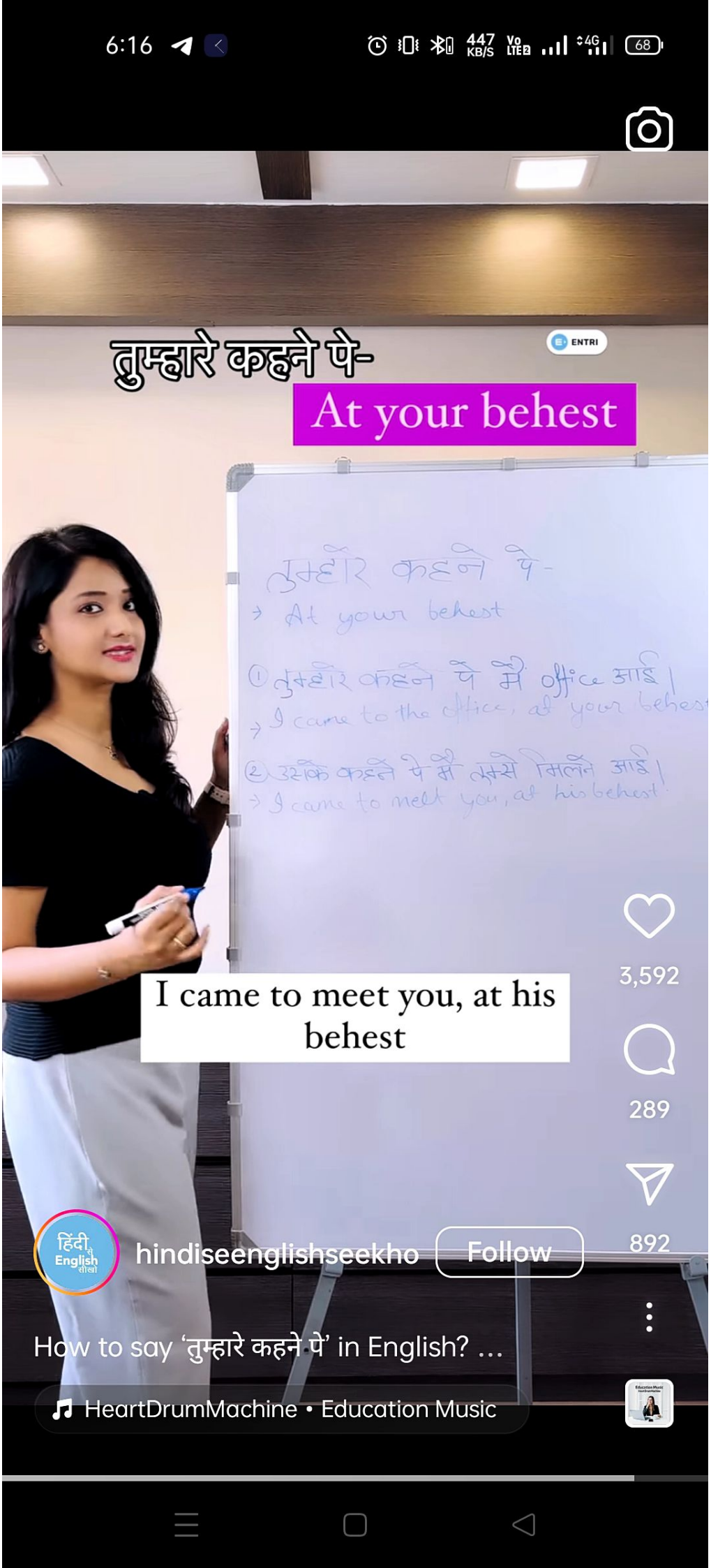

Did not even
ENTRI
Did not even
① उन्होंने पानी तक नहीं पूछा।
→ They did not even ask for water.
② उसने मुझे phone तक नहीं किया।
→ He did not even
He did not even call me.
6,866
599
883
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
Daily use English sentences ✅ ...
ning • Education
8K quality

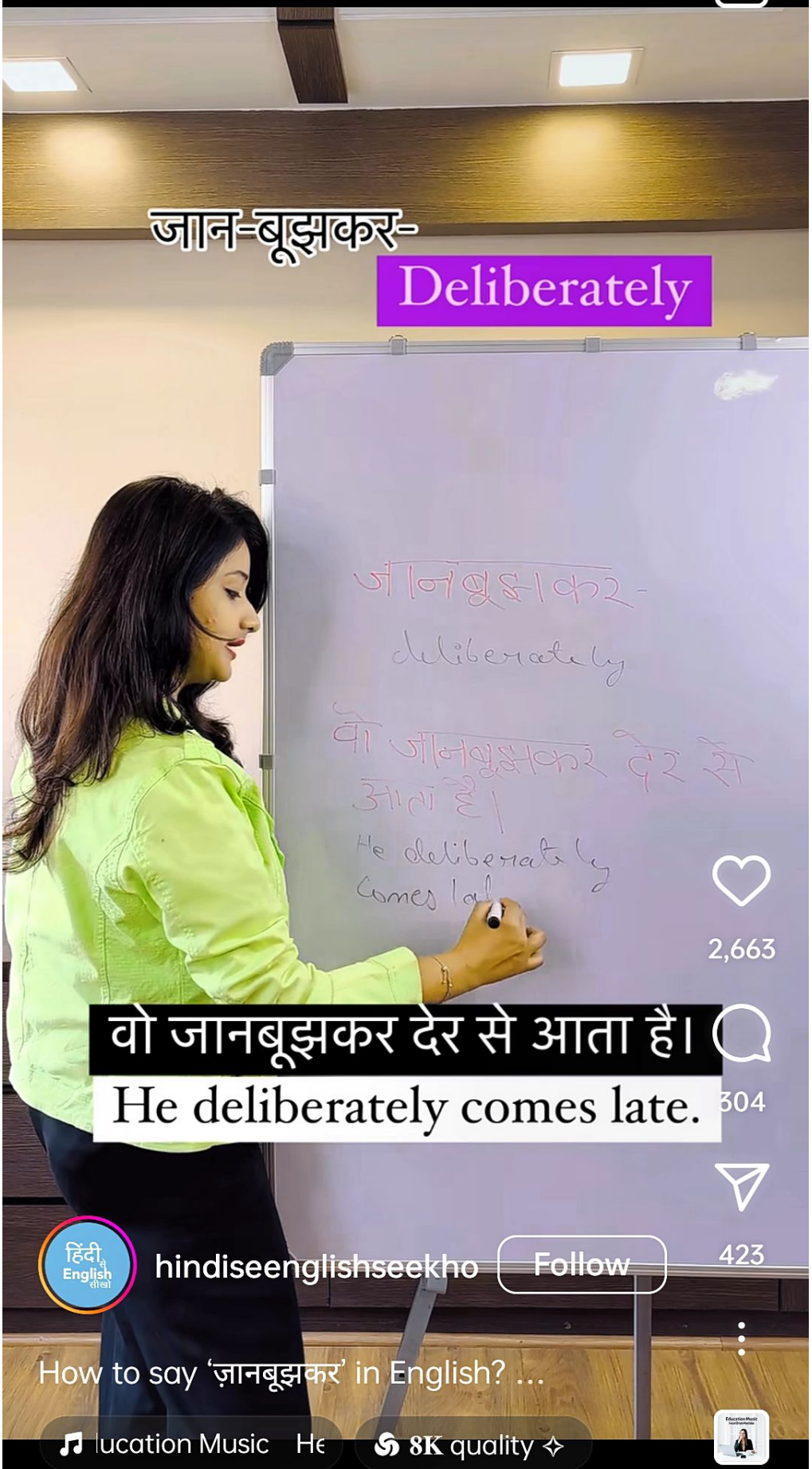

अचानक से-
All of a sudden
अचानक से-
All of a sudden
वो अचानक से हंस पड़ी।
All of a sudden, she began to laugh.
सीमा अचानक से आ गयी।
Seema came all of a sudden.
सीमा अचानक से आ गई।
Seema came all of a sudden.
4,957
430
778
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
How to say 'achanak se' in English? ...
DayNigthMorning •
8K quality

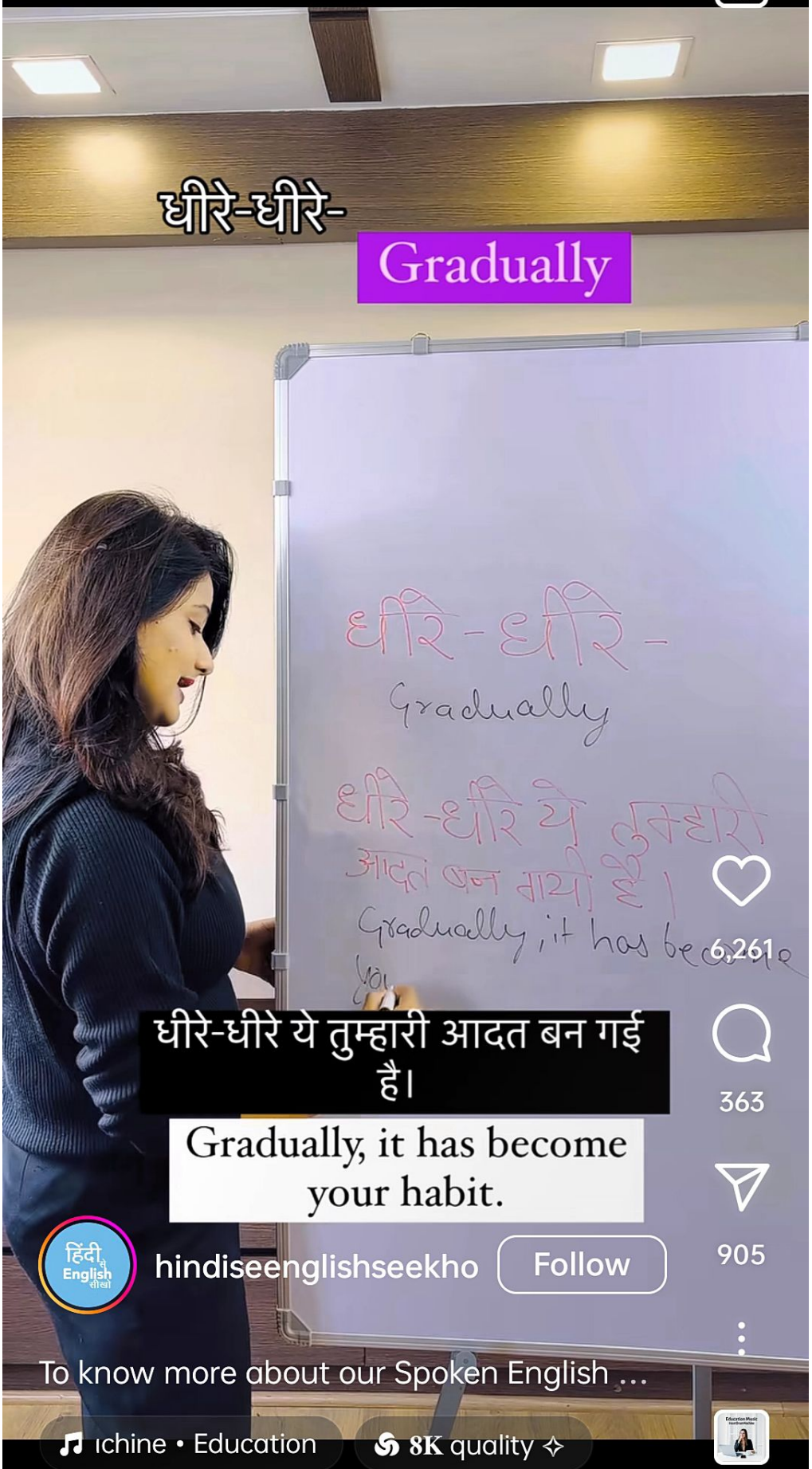

ENTRI
कोई फ़ायदा नहीं है-
It's no use
कोई फायदा नहीं है।
→ It's no use
① रोने से कोई फ़ायदा नहीं है।
→ It's no use crying.
② वहाँ जाने से कोई फ़ायदा नहीं है।
It's no use going there.
वहाँ जाने से कोई फ़ायदा नहीं है।
It's no use going there.
3,244
329
547
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
How to say 'koi fayda nahi hai' in English ...
• Education Musi
8K quality

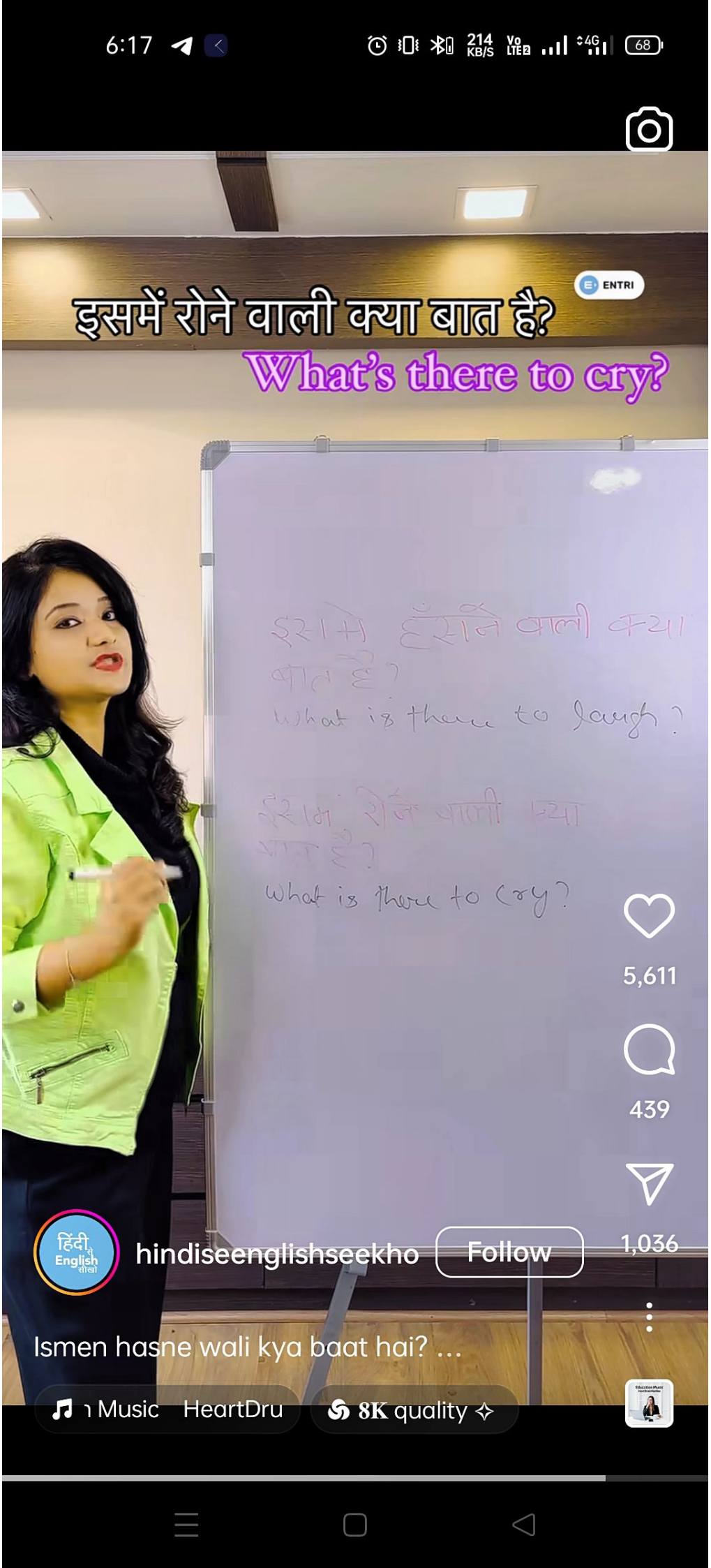

6:16
ENTRI
होना चाहिए-
Should be
होना चाहिए -
→ Should be
① तुम्हें यहाँ होना चाहिए।
→ You should be here.
② तुम्हें उसके पास होना चाहिए।
You should be with her.
तुम्हें उसके पास होना चाहिए।
You should be with her.
17.2K
656
1,273
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
Yo know more about our Spoken English ...
DayNigthMorning • Education

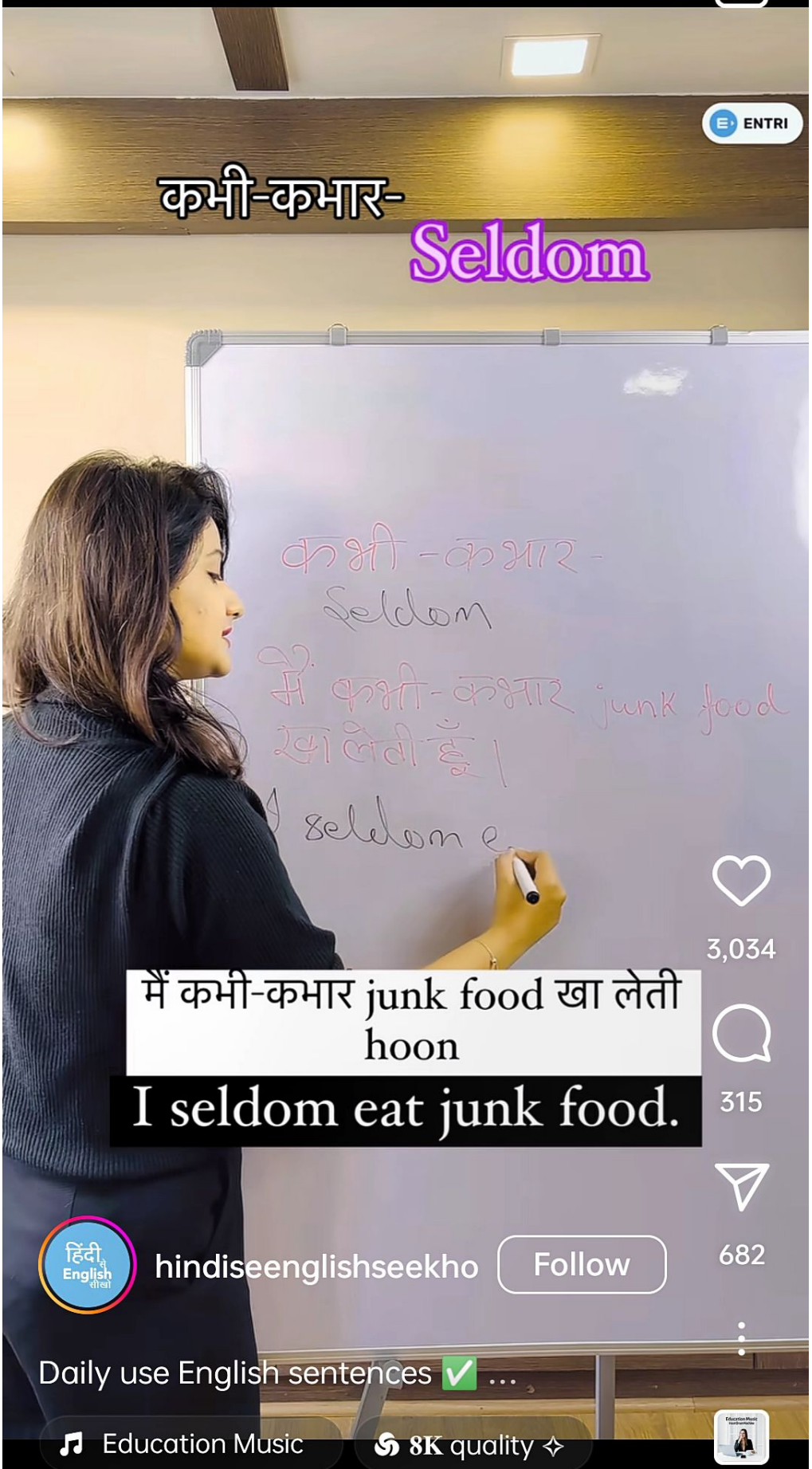

6:16
ENTRI
ना चाहते हुए भी-
Unwillingly
ना चाहते हुए भी-
→ Unwillingly
① ना चाहते हुए भी, वो यहाँ आई।
→ Unwillingly, She came here.
② ना चाहते हुए भी, मैं पार्टी में गई।
→ Unwillingly, I went to the party.
ना चाहते हुए भी मैं पार्टी में गई।
Unwillingly, I went to the party.
13.4K
535
2,115
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
How to say 'ना चाहते हुए भी' in English? ...
/NigthMorning • Ec
8K quality

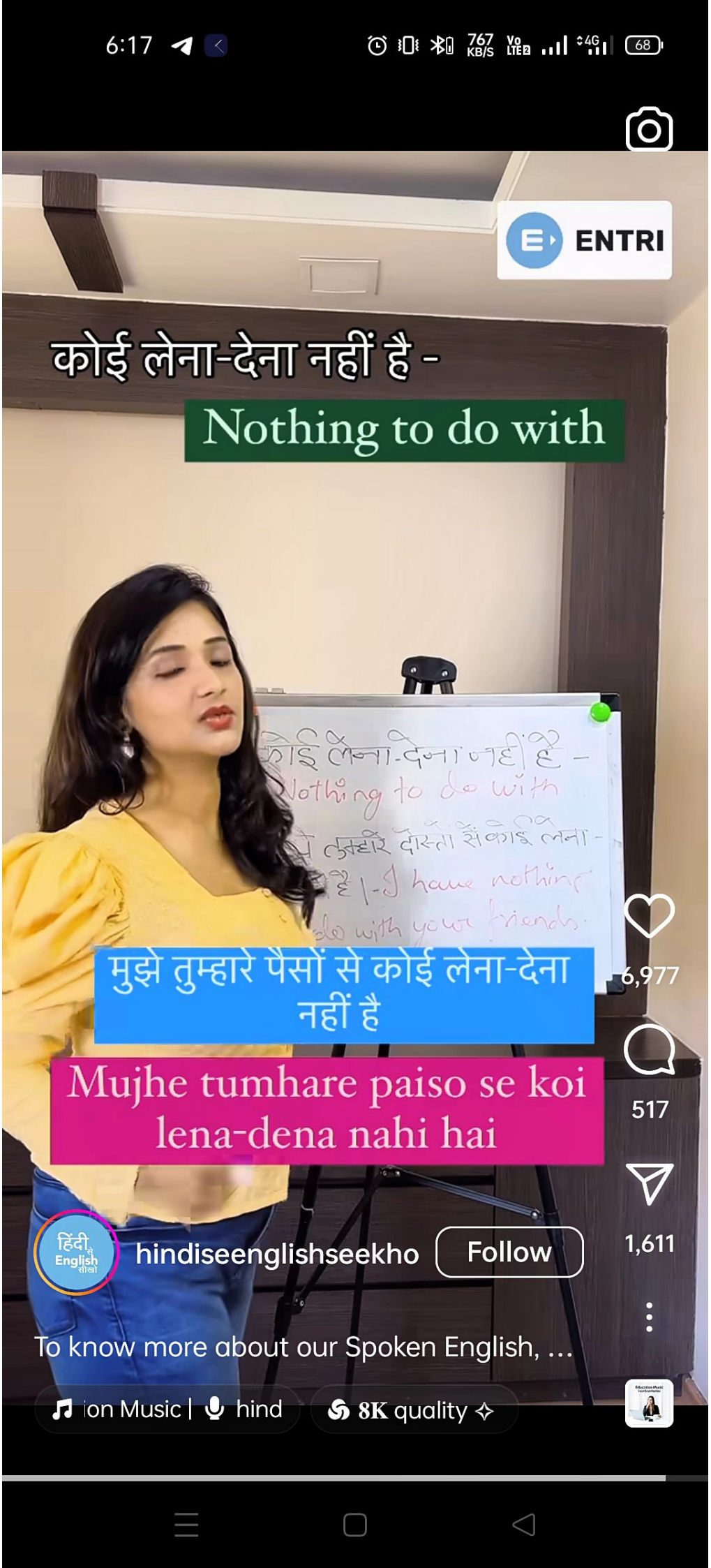

तुम्हारे कहने पे-
ENTRI
At your behest
तुम्हारे कहने पे-
→ At your behest
① तुम्हारे कहने पे मैं office आई।
→ I came to the office, at your behest
② उसके कहने पे मैं तुमसे मिलने आई।
→ I came to meet you, at his behest
I came to meet you, at his behest
3,592
289
892
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
How to say 'तुम्हारे कहने पे' in English? ...
HeartDrumMachine • Education Music

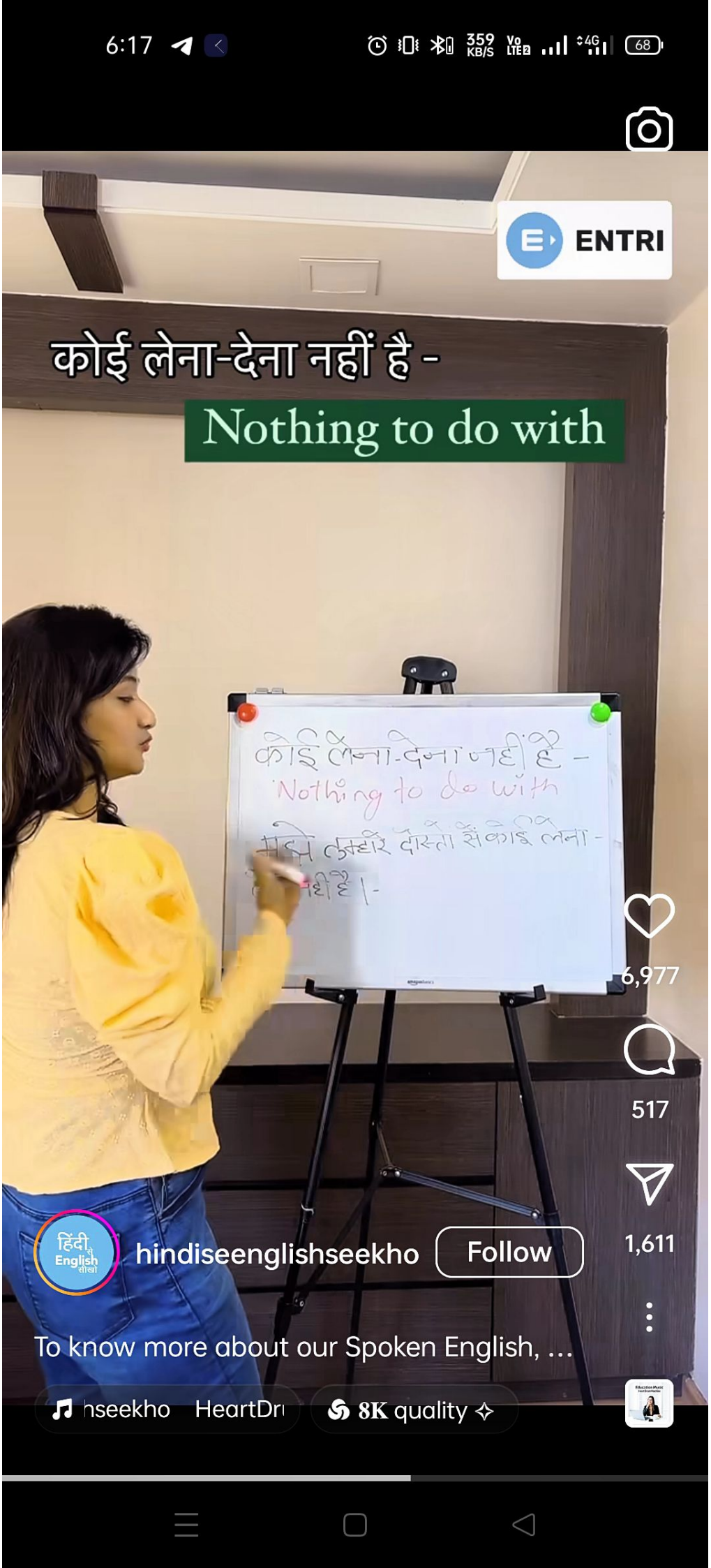

जान-बूझकर-
Deliberately
वो जानबूझकर देर से आता है।
He deliberately comes late.
2,663
304
423
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
How to say 'ज़ानबूझकर' in English? ...
8K quality

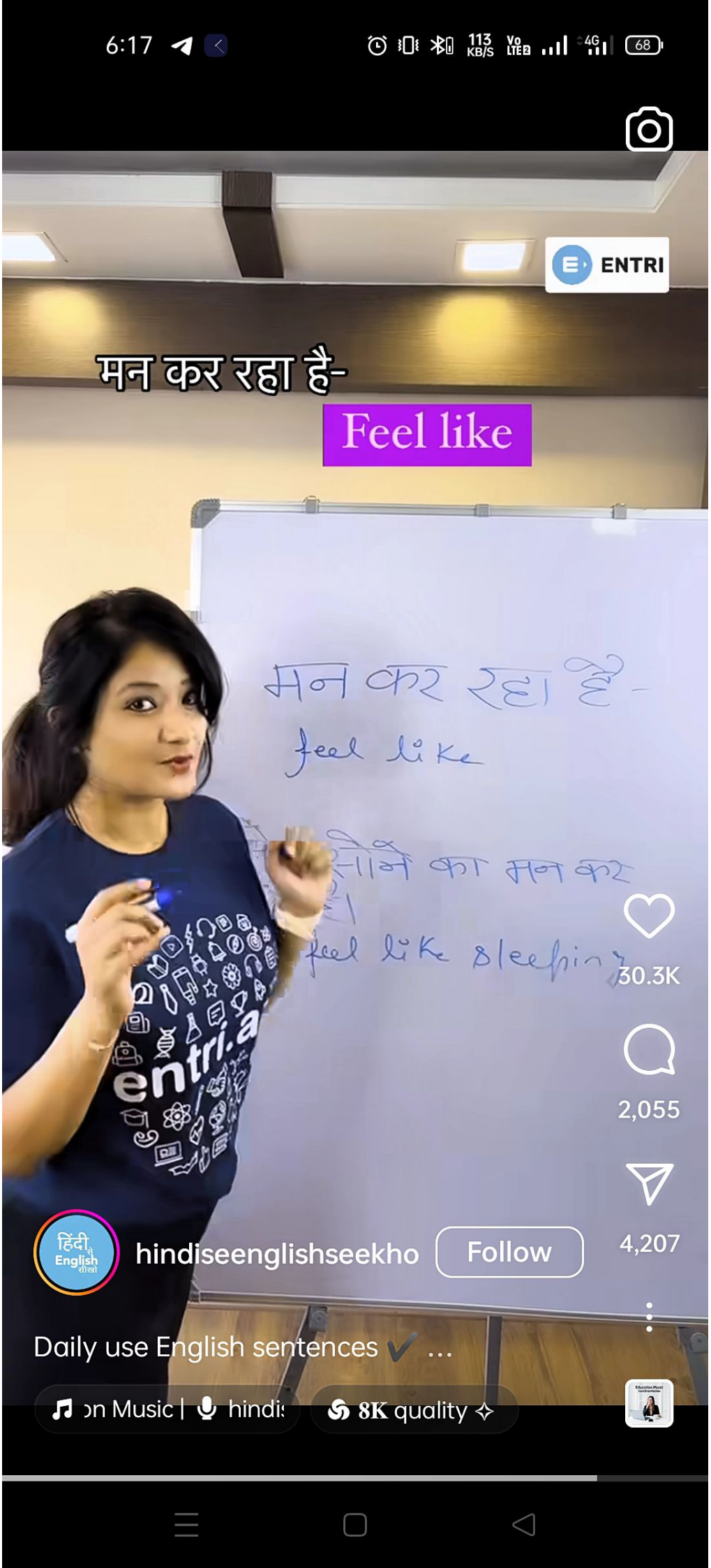

धीरे-धीरे-
Gradually
धीरे-धीरे ये तुम्हारी आदत बन गयी है।
Gradually, it has become your habit.
6,261
363
905
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
To know more about our Spoken English ...
ıchine • Education
8K quality

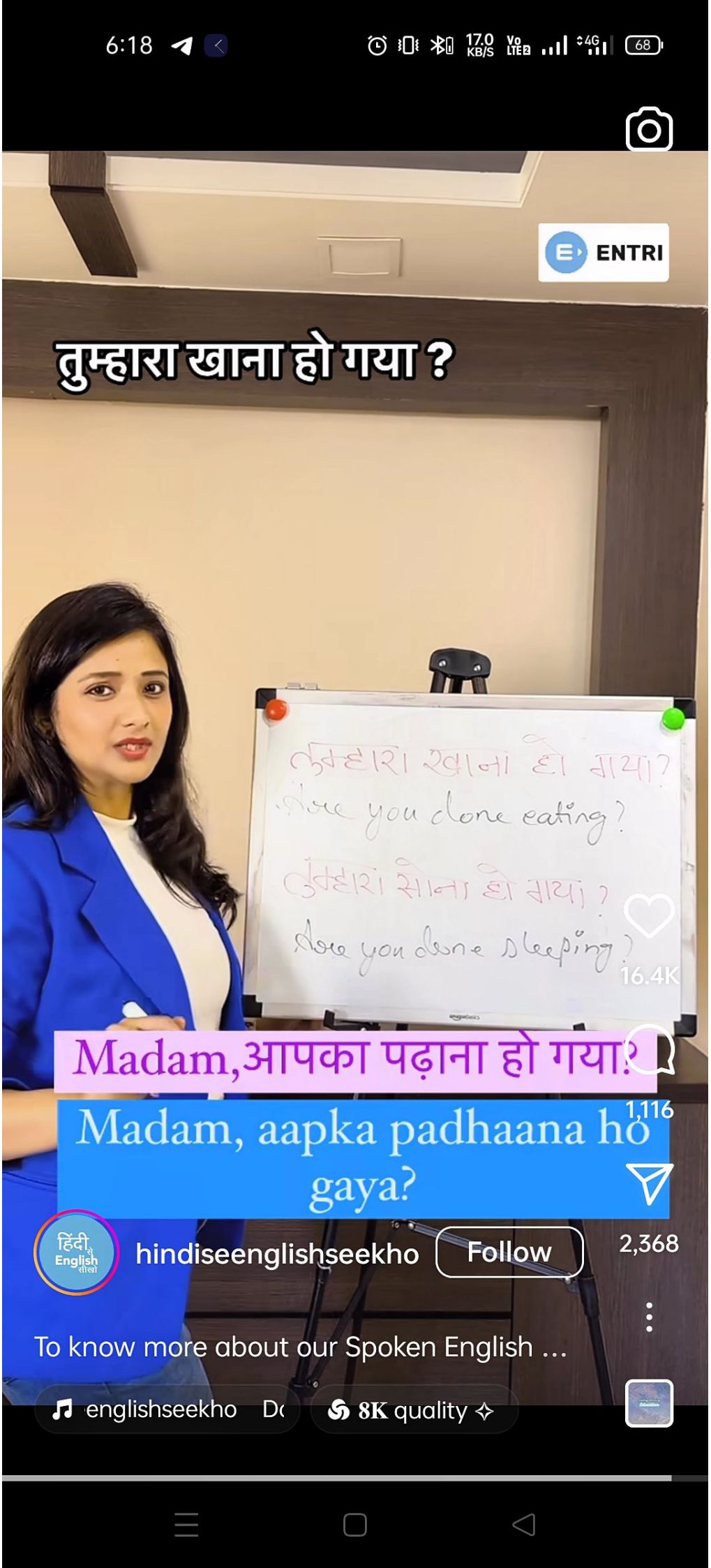

6:17
214 KB/S
68
ENTRI
इसमें रोने वाली क्या बात है?
What's there to cry?
What is there to laugh?
What is there to cry?
5,611
439
1,036
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
Ismen hasne wali kya baat hai? ...
Music HeartDru
8K quality

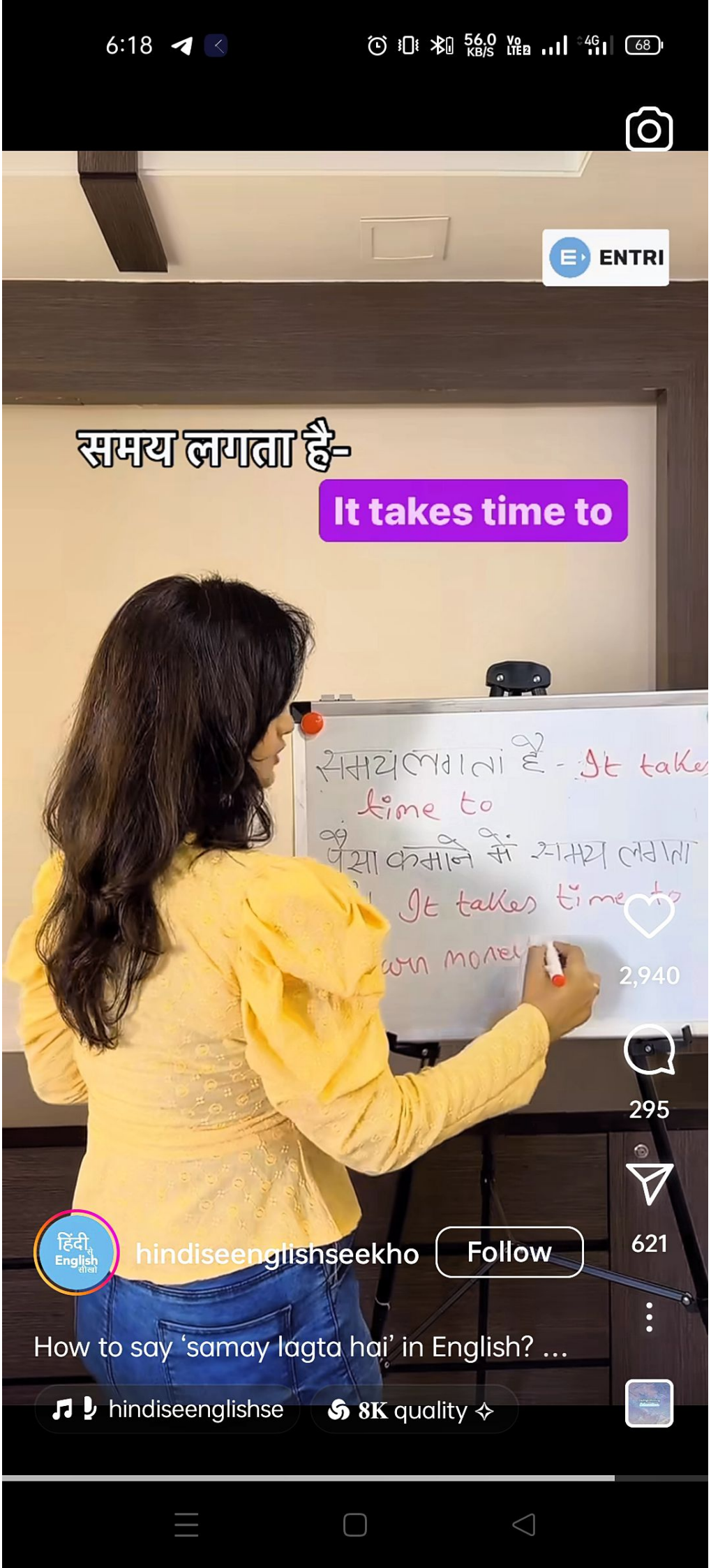

ENTRI
कभी-कभार-
Seldom
कभी-कभार-
Seldom
मैं कभी-कभार junk food
खा लेती हूँ।
I seldom e
मैं कभी-कभार junk food खा लेती hoon
I seldom eat junk food.
3,034
315
682
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
Daily use English sentences ✅ ...
Education Music
8K quality

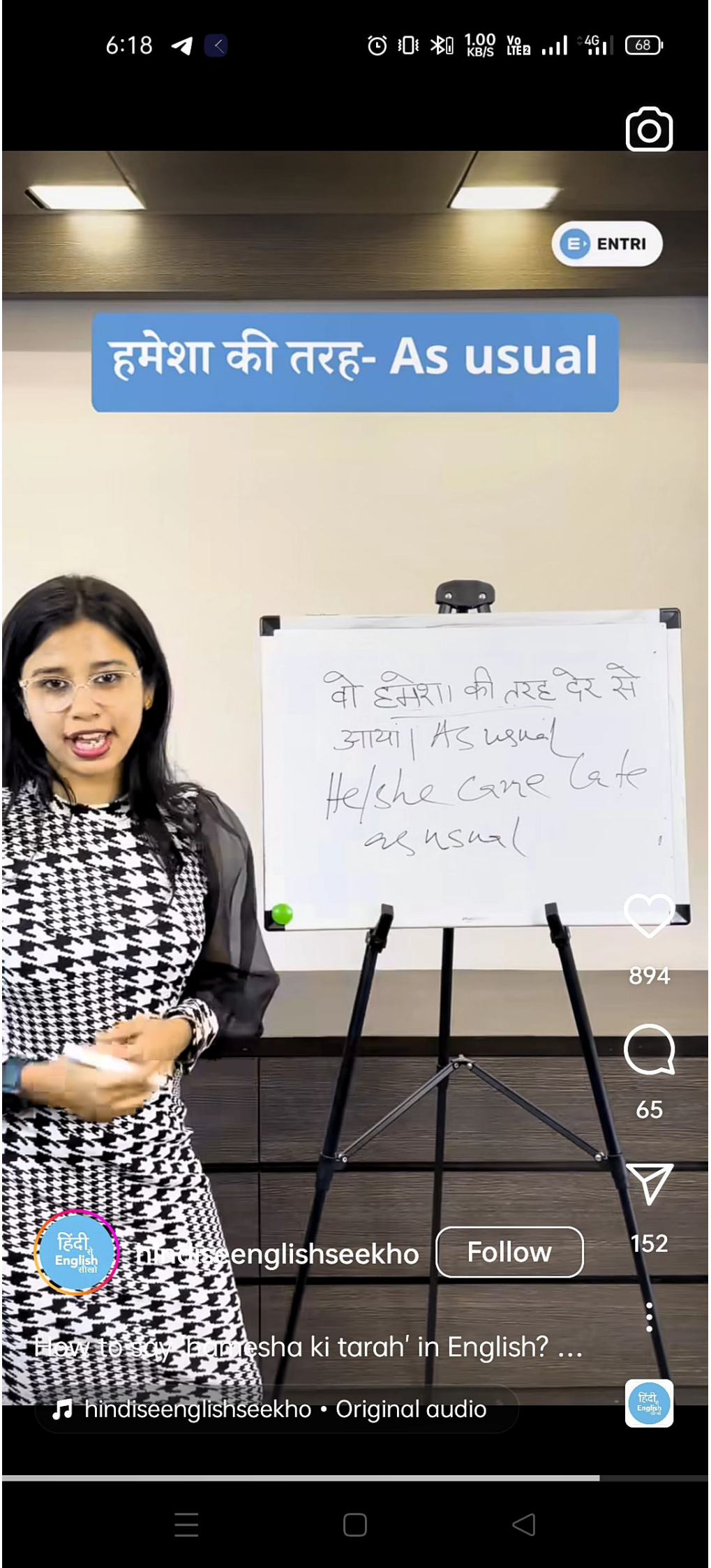

6:17
ENTRI
कोई लेना-देना नहीं है -
Nothing to do with
मुझे तुम्हारे पैसों से कोई लेना-देना नहीं है
Mujhe tumhare paiso se koi lena-dena nahi hai
6,977
517
1,611
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
To know more about our Spoken English, ...
8K quality

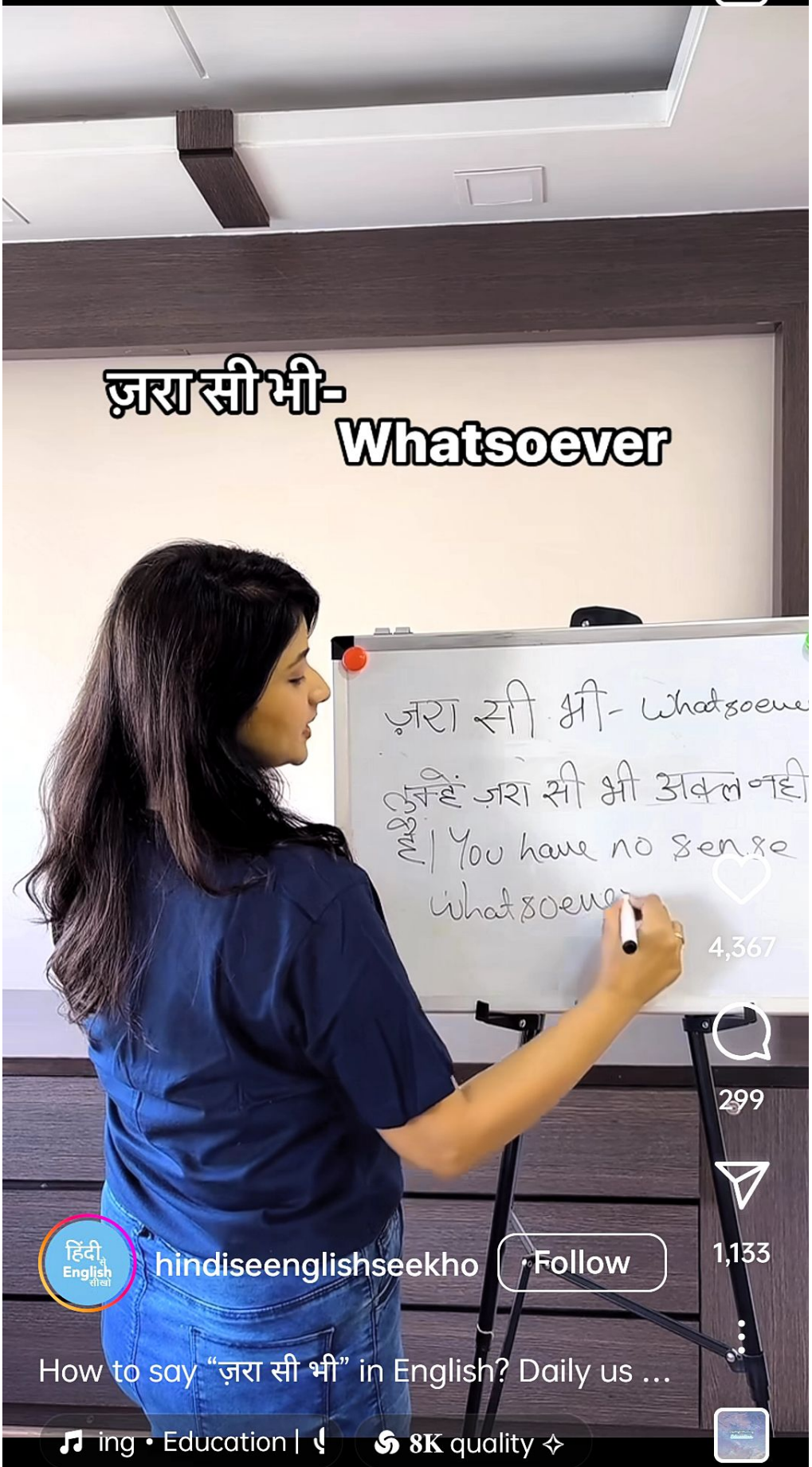

6:17
ENTRI
कोई लेना-देना नहीं है -
Nothing to do with
कोई लेना-देना नहीं है -
Nothing to do with
6,977
517
1,611
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
To know more about our Spoken English, ...
8K quality

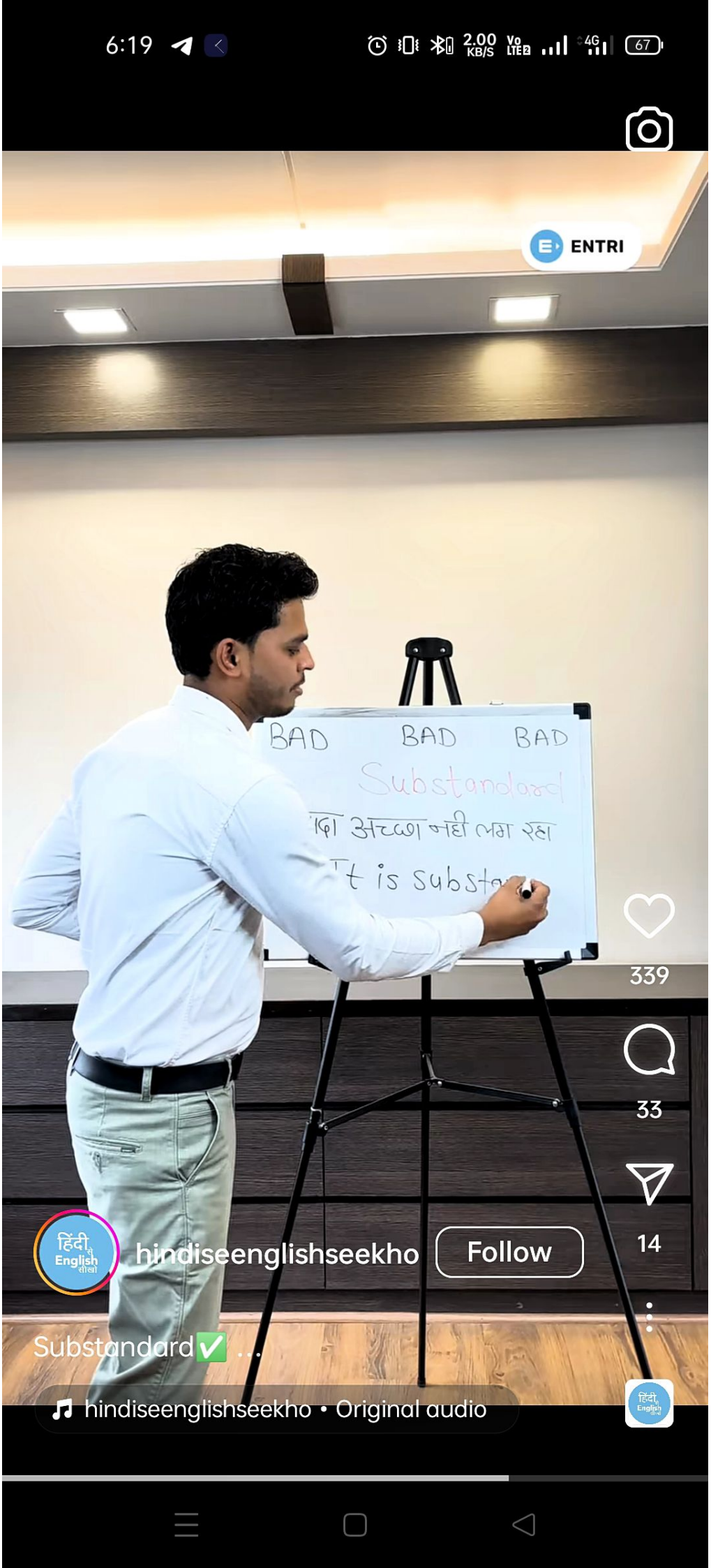

6:17
ENTRI
मन कर रहा है-
Feel like
मन कर रहा है-
feel like
30.3K
2,055
4,207
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
Daily use English sentences ✔️ ...
8K quality

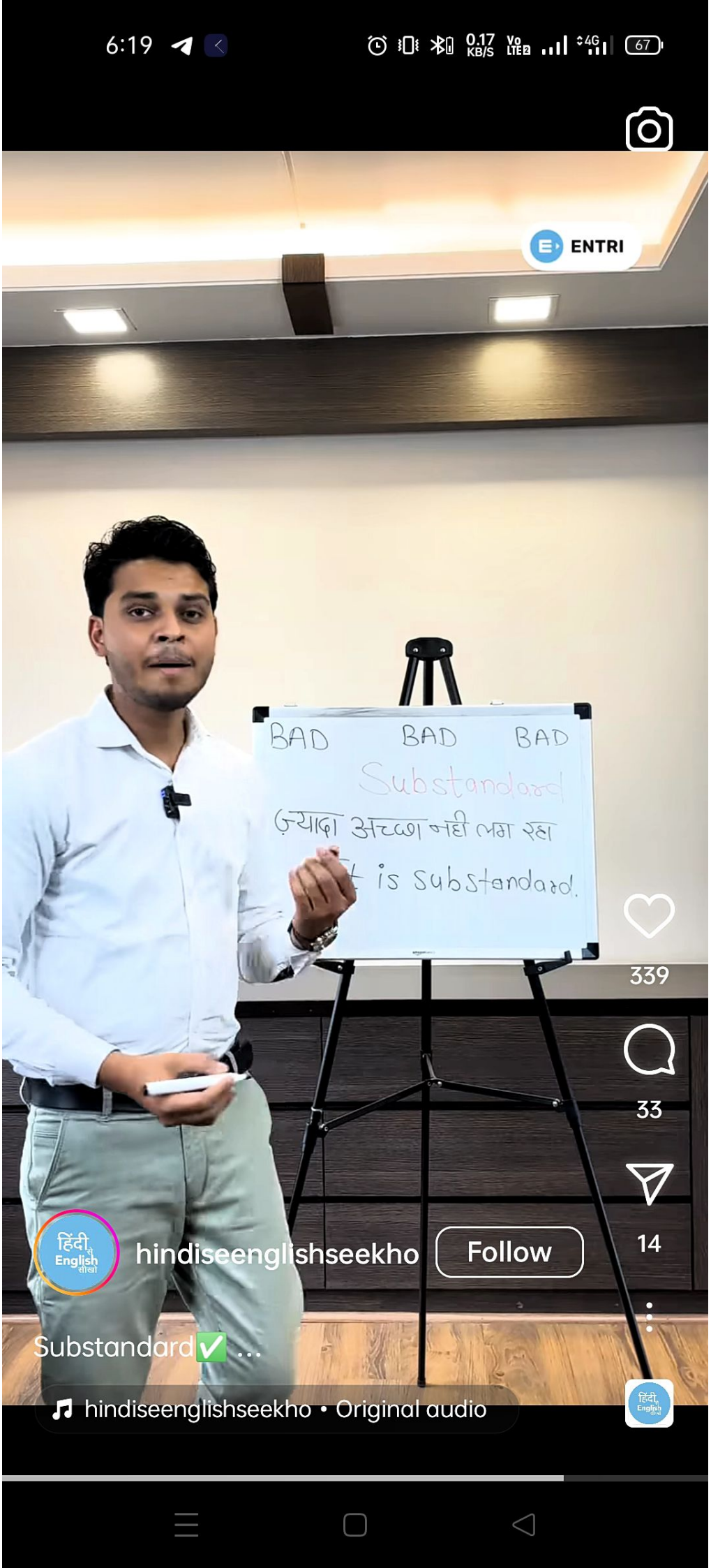

6:18
ENTRI
तुम्हारा खाना हो गया ?
तुम्हारा खाना हो गया?
Are you done eating?
तुम्हारा सोना हो गया?
Are you done sleeping?
16.4K
Madam,आपका पढ़ाना हो गया?
Madam, aapka padhaana ho gaya?
1,116
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
2,368
To know more about our Spoken English ...
englishseekho
8K quality

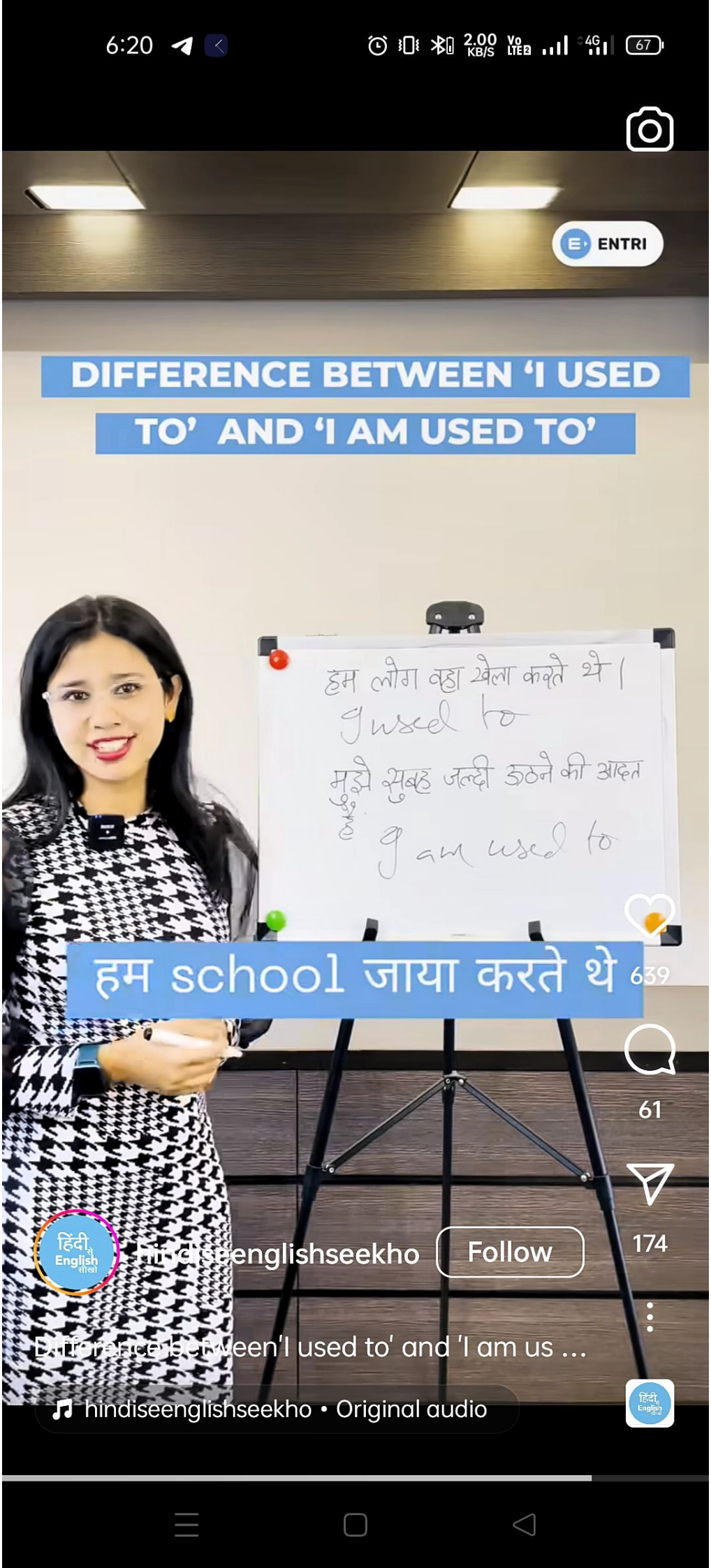

6:18
ENTRI
समय लगता है-
It takes time to
2,940
295
621
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
How to say 'samay lagta hai' in English? ...
hindiseenglishse
8K quality


6:18
ENTRI
हमेशा की तरह- As usual
वो हमेशा की तरह देर से आया। As usual
He/she came late as usual
894
65
152
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
How to say 'hamesha ki tarah' in English? ...
hindiseenglishseekho • Original audio


ज़रा सी भी-
Whatsoever
ज़रा सी भी- Whatsoeve
तुम्हें ज़रा सी भी अक्ल नहीं
है। You have no sense
whatsoeve
4,367
299
1,133
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
How to say “ज़रा सी भी” in English? Daily us ...
ing • Education |
8K quality

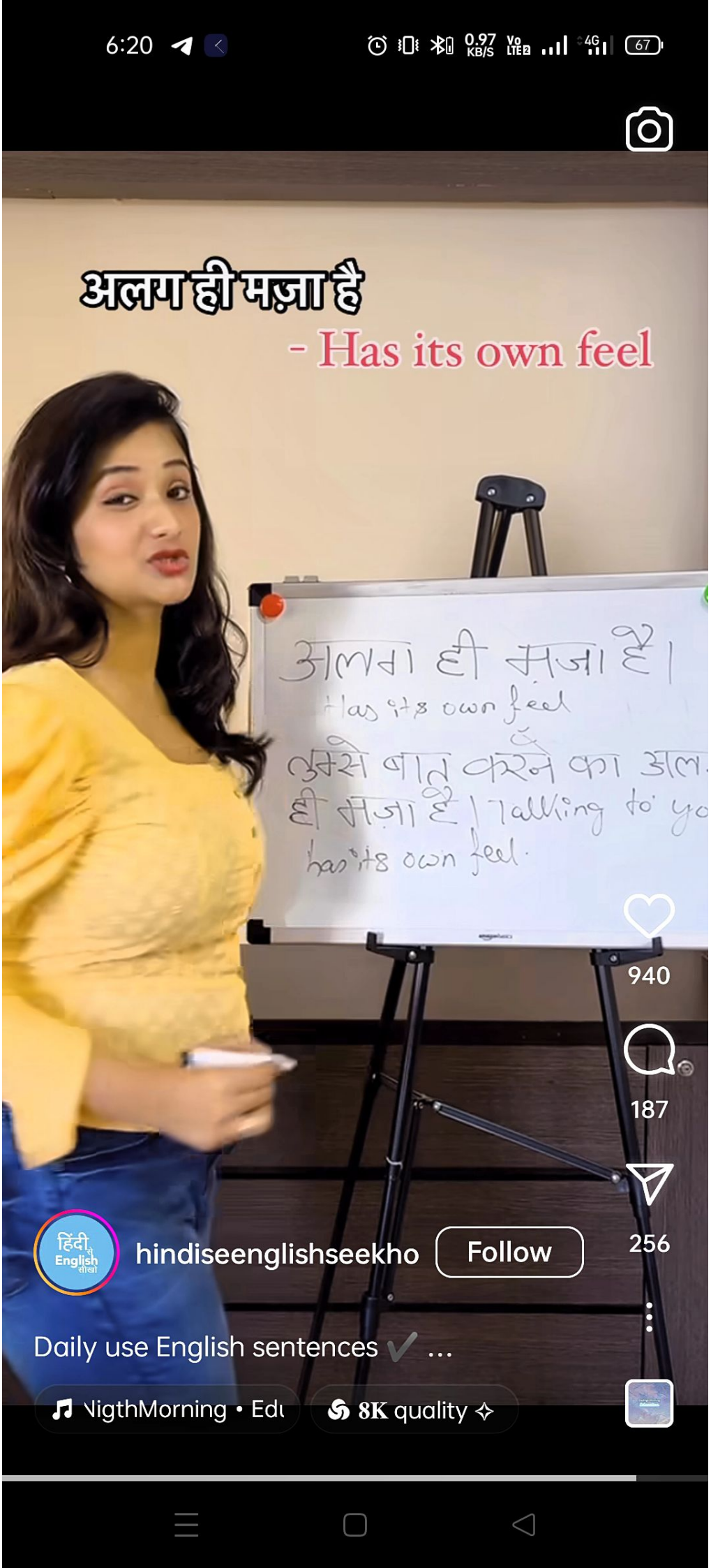

6:19
ENTRI
BAD BAD BAD
Substandard
यह अच्छा नहीं लग रहा
It is substa
339
33
14
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
Substandard✅ ...
hindiseenglishseekho • Original audio

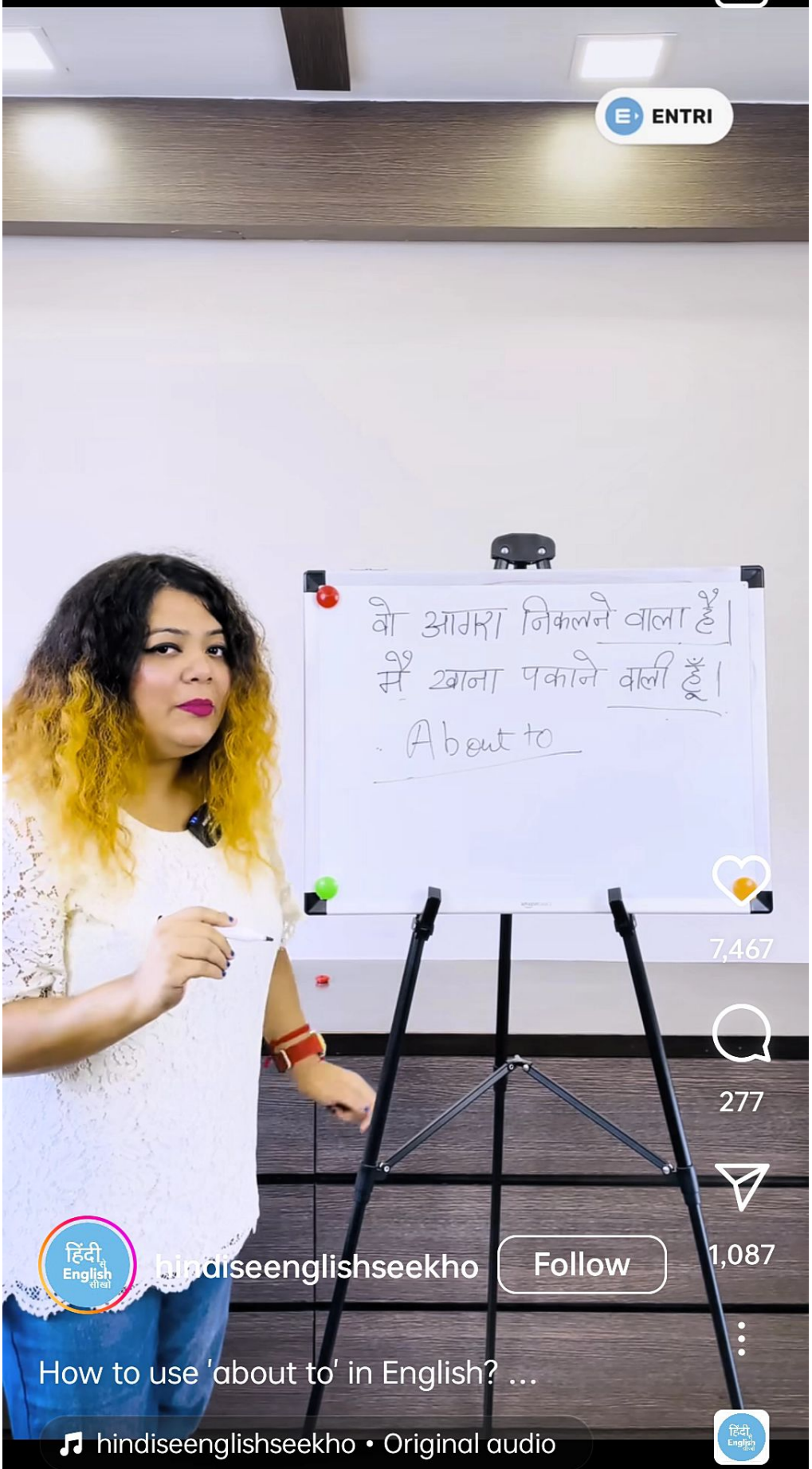

6:19
ENTRI
BAD BAD BAD
Substandard
ज़्यादा अच्छा नहीं लग रहा
is substandard.
339
33
14
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
Substandard✅ ...
hindiseenglishseekho • Original audio


6:20
ENTRI
DIFFERENCE BETWEEN 'I USED TO' AND 'I AM USED TO'
हम लोग वहा खेला करते थे।
I used to
मुझे सुबह जल्दी उठने की आदत है
I am used to
हम school जाया करते थे
639
61
174
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
Difference between 'I used to' and 'I am us ...
hindiseenglishseekho • Original audio


6:20
ENTRI
WH-family Part-2
When
How
Who
When will you go for Party?
How to make an Instagram Account?
Who is the President of India?
178
4
14
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
WH Question Words- Part 2 ...
hindiseenglishseekho • Original audio


6:20
ENTRI
Part-1
WH family
What
Why
Where
What are you doing?
Where are you?
Why are you learning English?
161
2
10
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
Part 1 - WH family ✅ ...
hindiseenglishseekho • Original audio


अलग ही मज़ा है
- Has its own feel
940
187
256
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
Daily use English sentences ✔️ ...
8K quality


ENTRI
वो आगरा निकलने वाला है।
मैं खाना पकाने वाली हूँ।
About to
7,467
277
1,087
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
How to use 'about to' in English? ...
hindiseenglishseekho • Original audio


6:21
4.00 KB/S
67
ENTRI
I was very ill, nevertheless,
I came to work.
652
104
170
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
How to say 'फ़िर भी' in English? ...
DayNigthMorning • Education


6:21
ENTRI
कौन- कौन - Who all?
कौन-कौन Who all
कौन कौन पार्टी में जाएगा
Who all will
288
51
17
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
Daily use English Sentences✅ ...
I • Arjan Vailly (From "ANIMAL") Manan Bhar



178

2

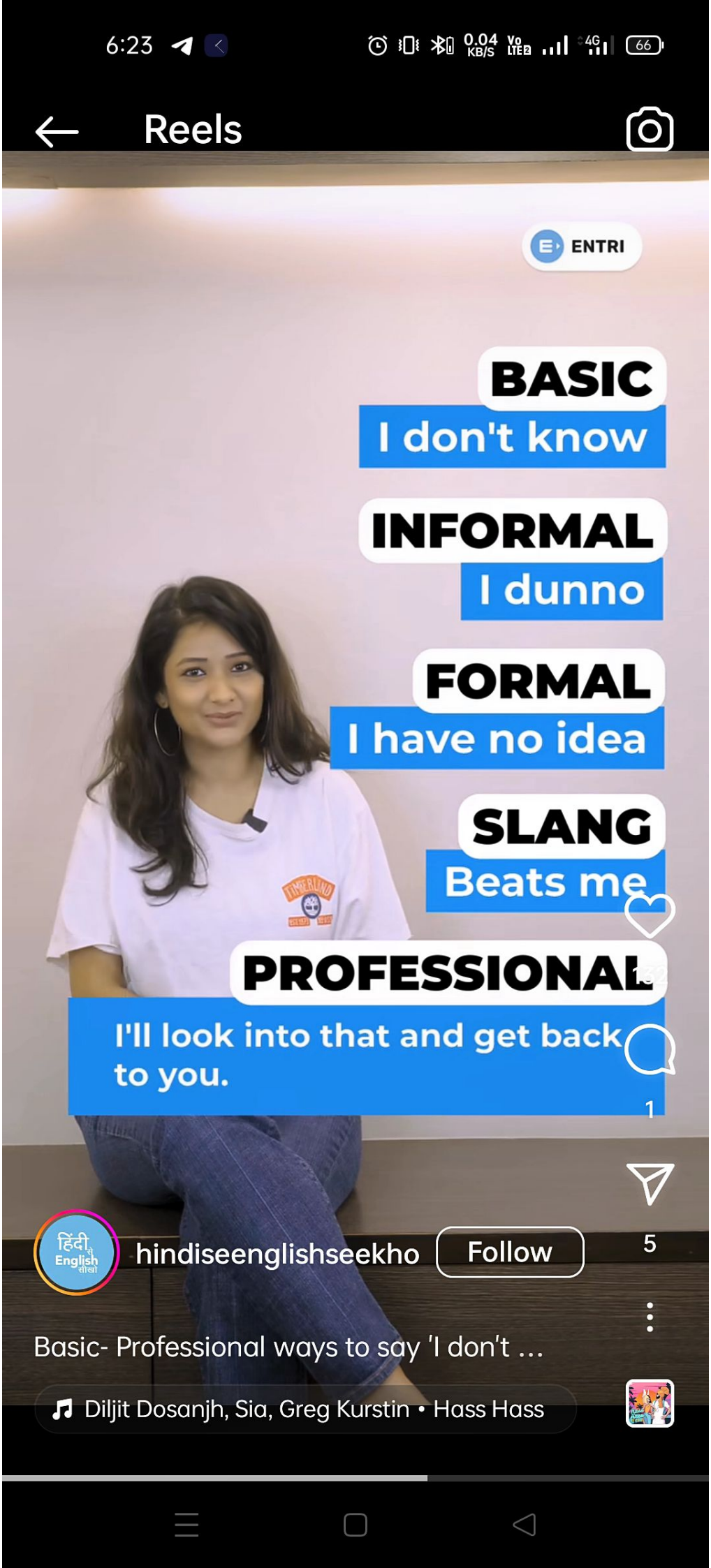
9

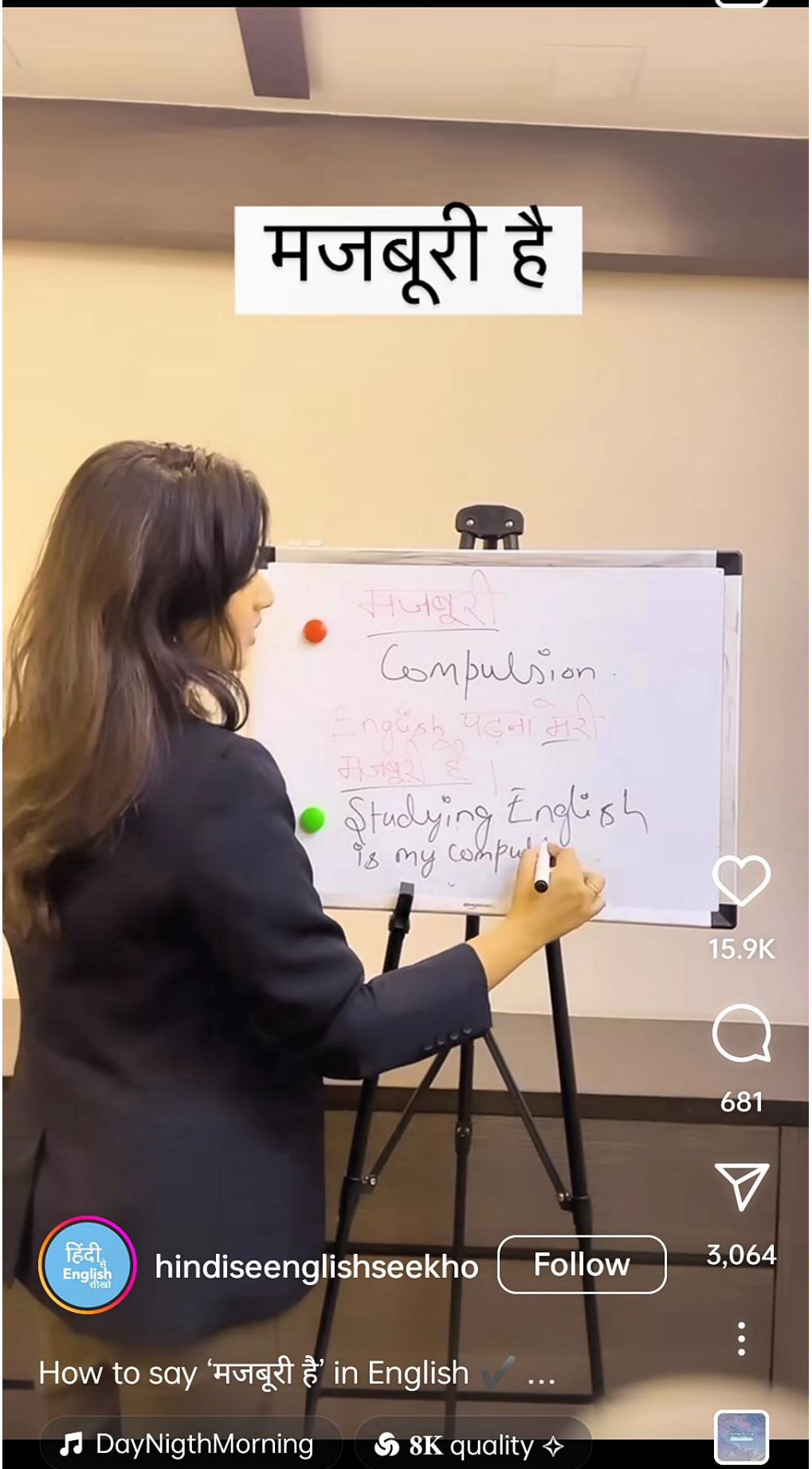
hindiseenglishseekho Follow

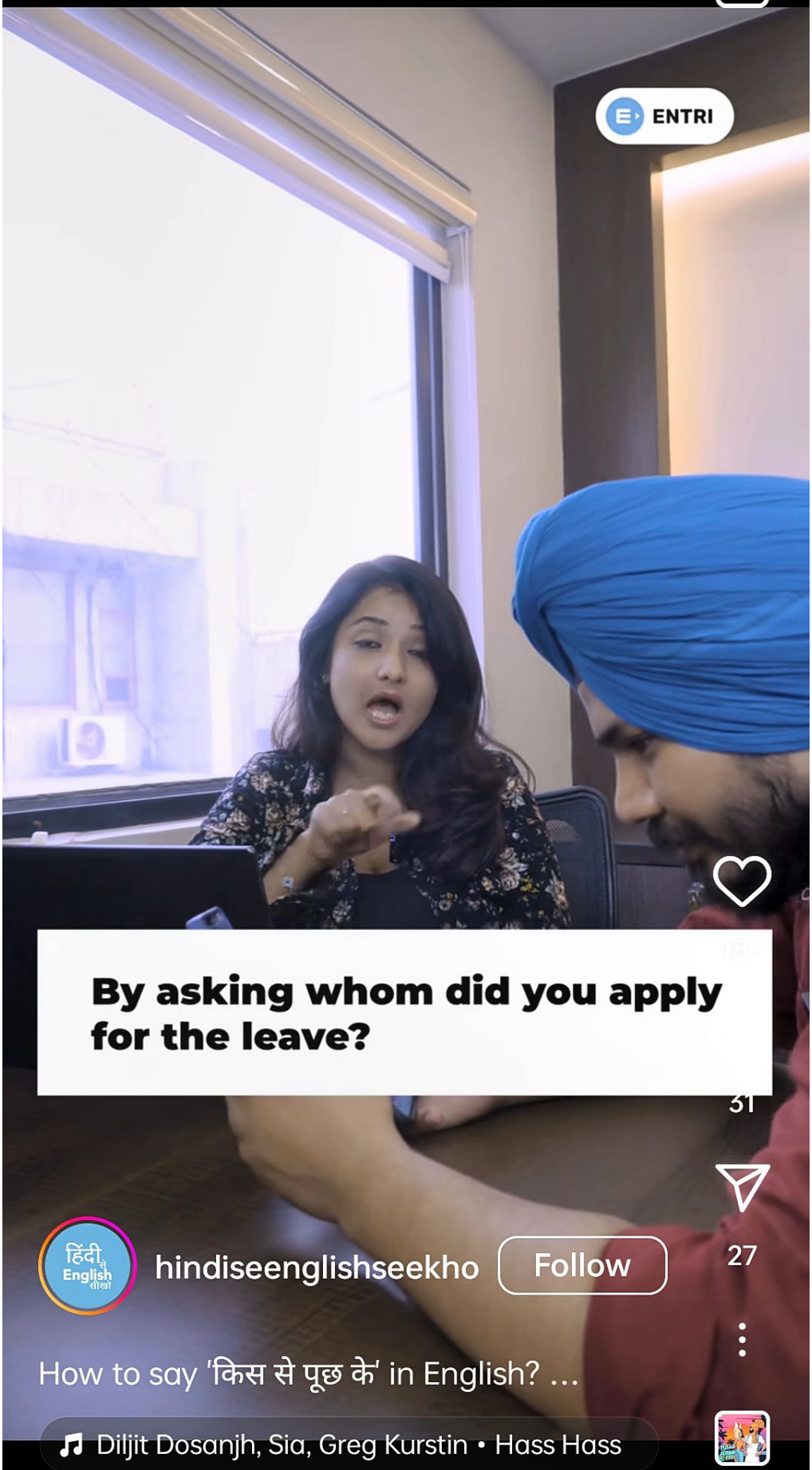
Difference between 'Each' and 'Every' ✅ ...

Diljit Dosanjh, Sia, Greg Kurstin • Hass Hass


जहाँ तक- As far as
जहाँ तक मुझे पता है,
वह एक डॉक्टर है।
As far as, I know,
he is a doct
2,667
264
633
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
Daily Use English Sentences✔️ ...
lishseekho DayNi
8K quality


6:23
Reels
ENTRI
BASIC
I don't know
INFORMAL
I dunno
FORMAL
I have no idea
SLANG
Beats me
PROFESSIONAL
I'll look into that and get back to you.
1
5
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
Basic- Professional ways to say 'I don't ...
Diljit Dosanjh, Sia, Greg Kurstin • Hass Hass


मजबूरी है
मजबूरी
Compulsion
Studying English
15.9K
681
3,064
hिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
How to say 'मजबूरी है' in English ✔️ ...
DayNigthMorning
8K quality


ENTRI
By asking whom did you apply for the leave?
31
27
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
How to say 'किस से पूछ के' in English? ...
Diljit Dosanjh, Sia, Greg Kurstin • Hass Hass


ENTRI
IN THE END, WE ALL
WERE VERY HAPPY AFTER
LEARNING ENGLISH.
अंत में
In the End.
At the End.
257
17
34
हिंदी English सीखो
hindiseenglishseekho
Follow
In the end vs At the end ✅ ...
DayNigthMorning • Education


learn_english_with_mansi
ये सरासर झूट है
It's An Out & Out Lie

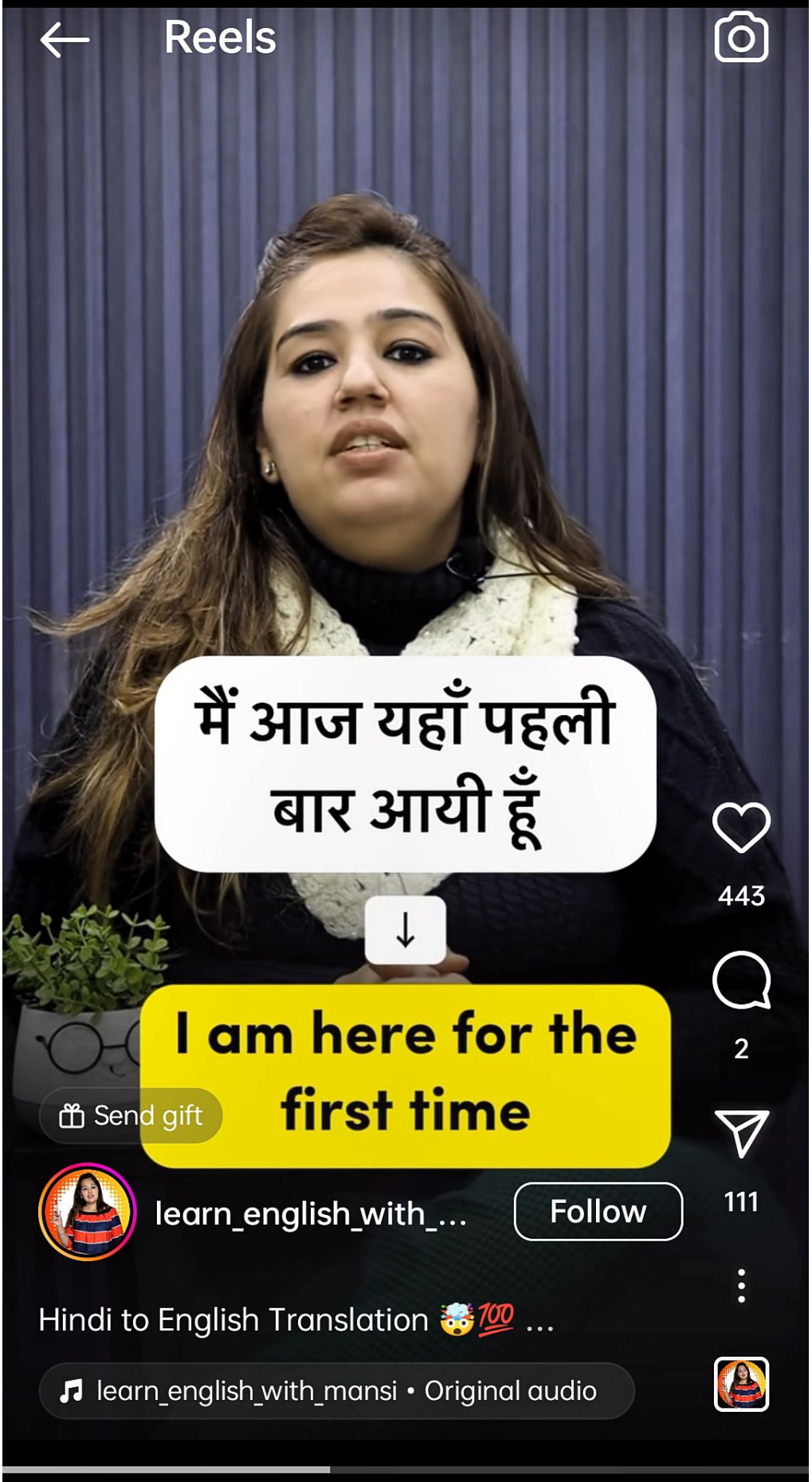

learn_english_with_mansi
मैं तुम्हारी रग रग से वाक़िफ़ हूँ
I Know You Inside Out


learn_english_with_mansi
क्या तुम्हारा दिमाग़ ठीक है ?
Are You in Your Senses ?

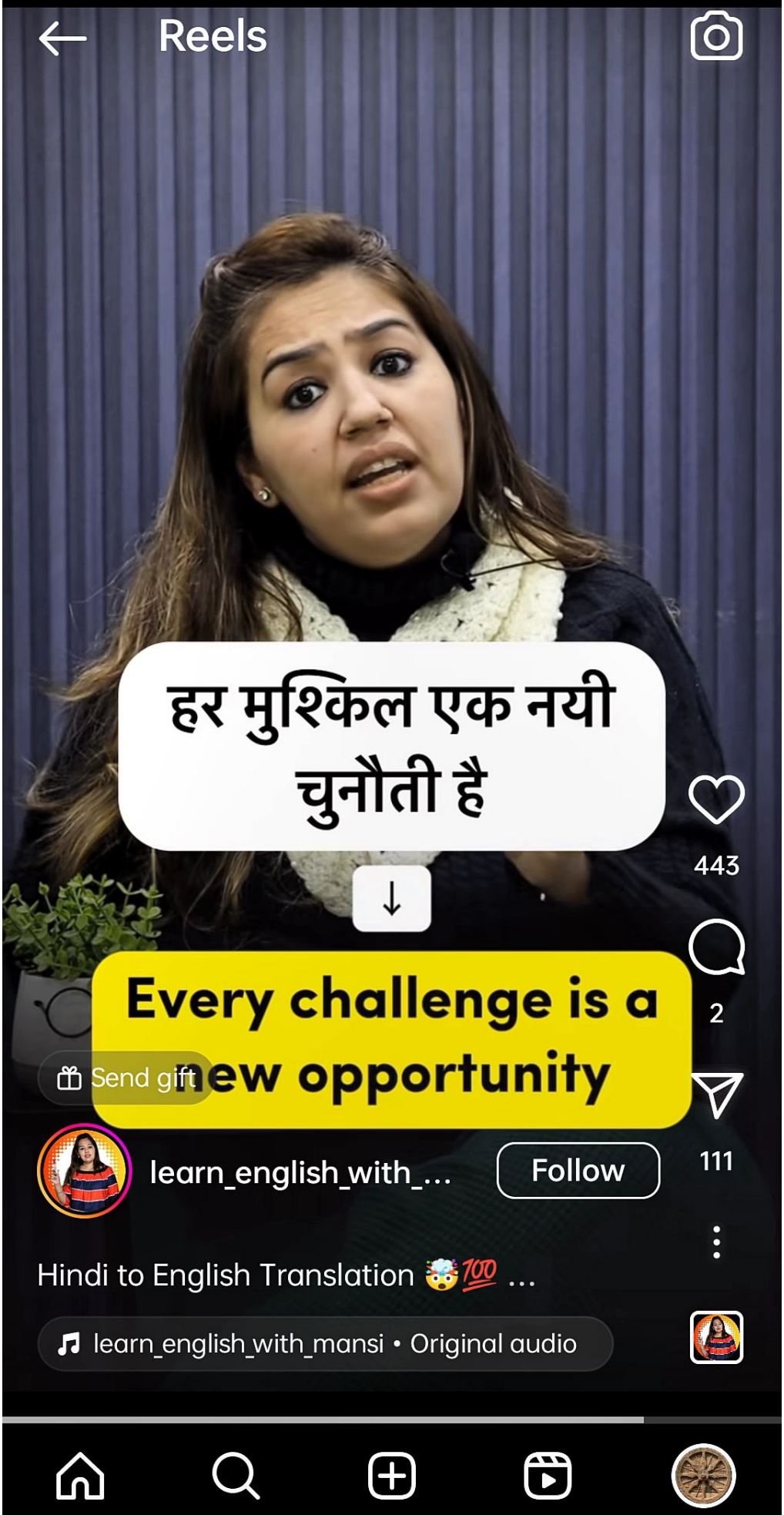

learn_english_with_mansi
यार वो बहुत ही कम अक्ल का है
He Is Dimwit

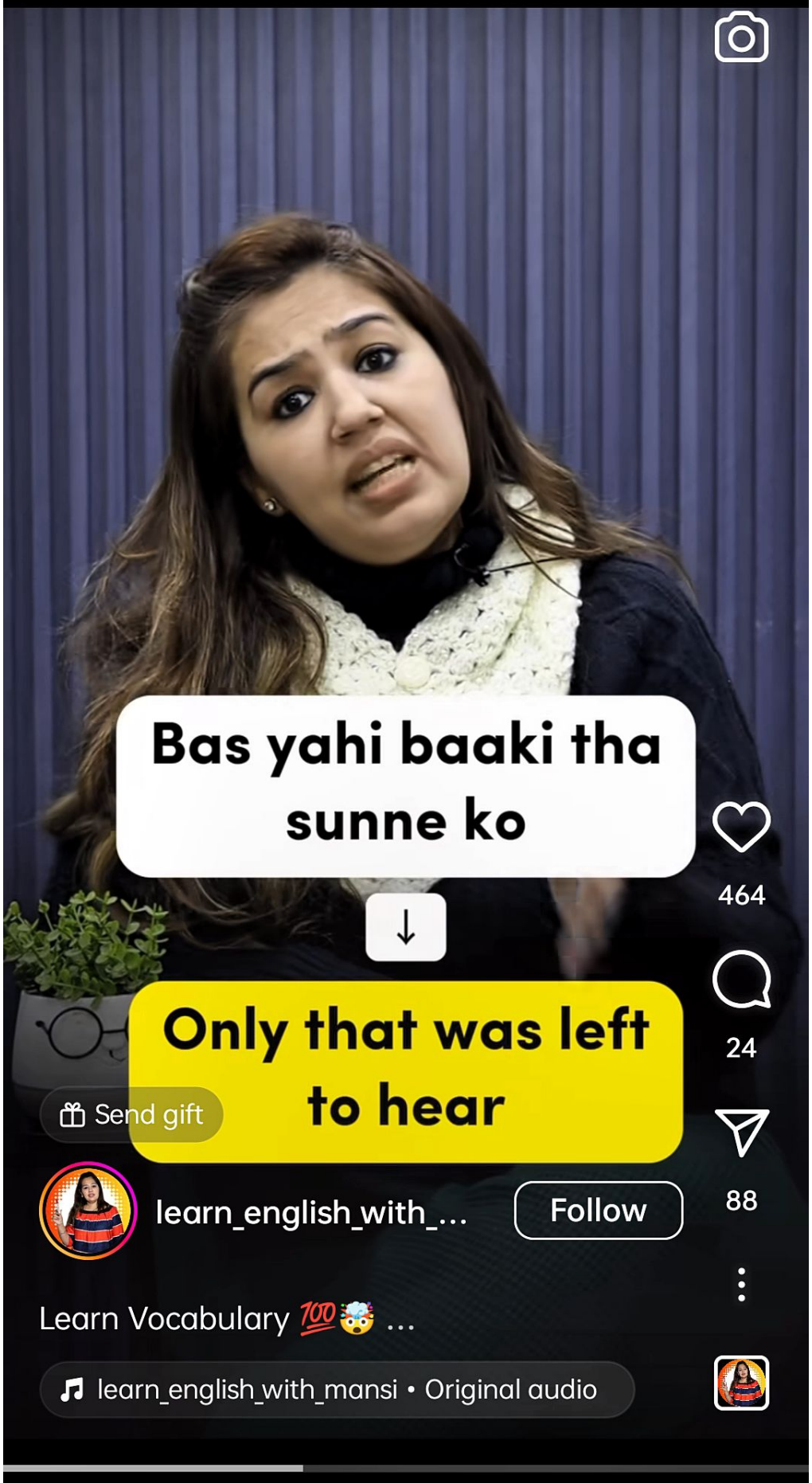

learn_english_with_mansi
वो बहुत ही शातिर है
He Is Vicious

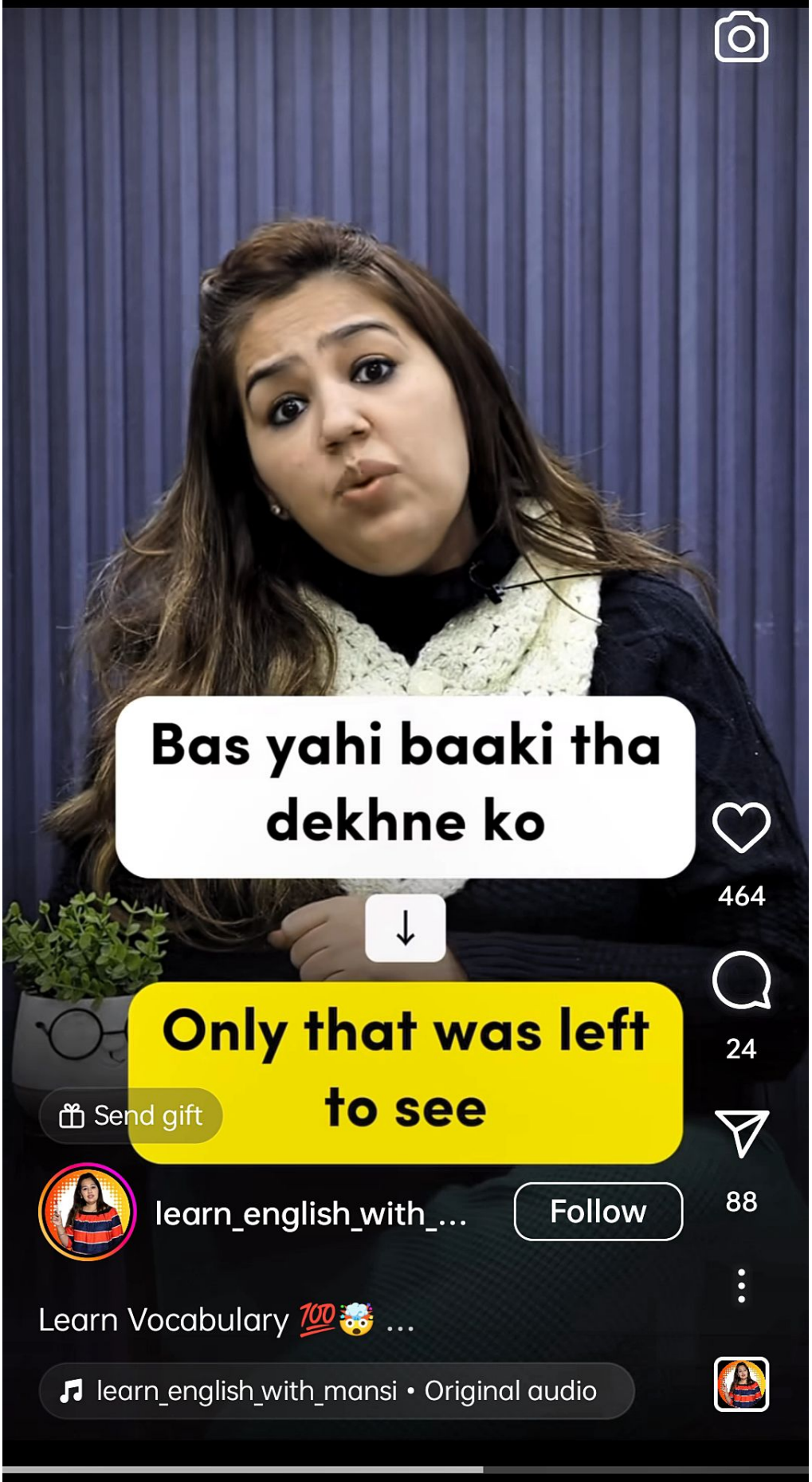

6:25
Reels
तुम्हें एक फूटी कौड़ी भी नहीं मिलेगी
You will not get even a single penny
Send gift
443
2
111
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

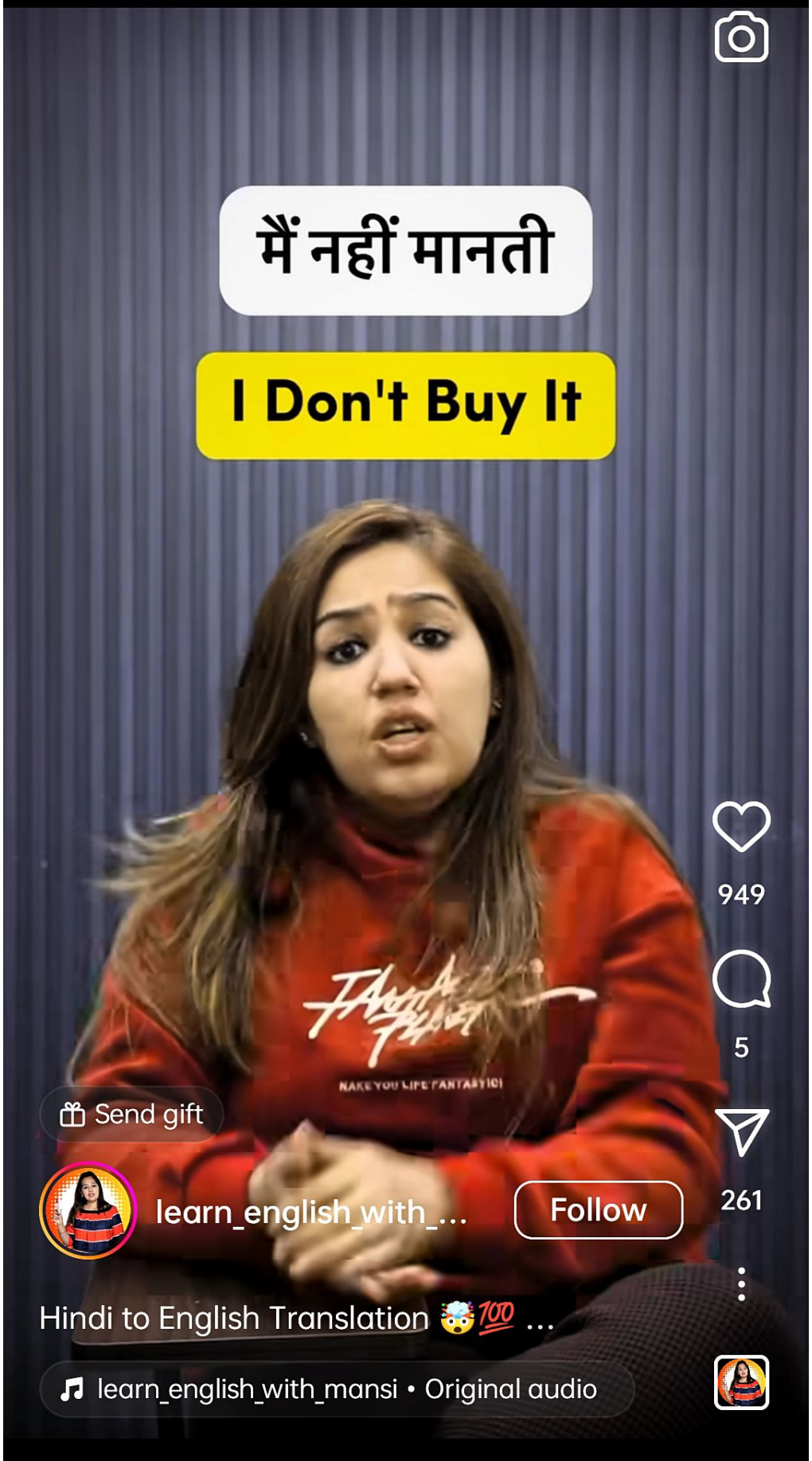

6:25
Reels
मैं आज यहाँ पहली बार आयी हूँ
I am here for the first time
Send gift
443
2
111
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Reels
आज का काम ना
कल पर मत छोड़ो
443
2
Don't procastinate
today's work for tomorrow
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
111
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


6:25
Reels
हर मुश्किल एक नयी चुनौती है
Every challenge is a new opportunity
443
2
111
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

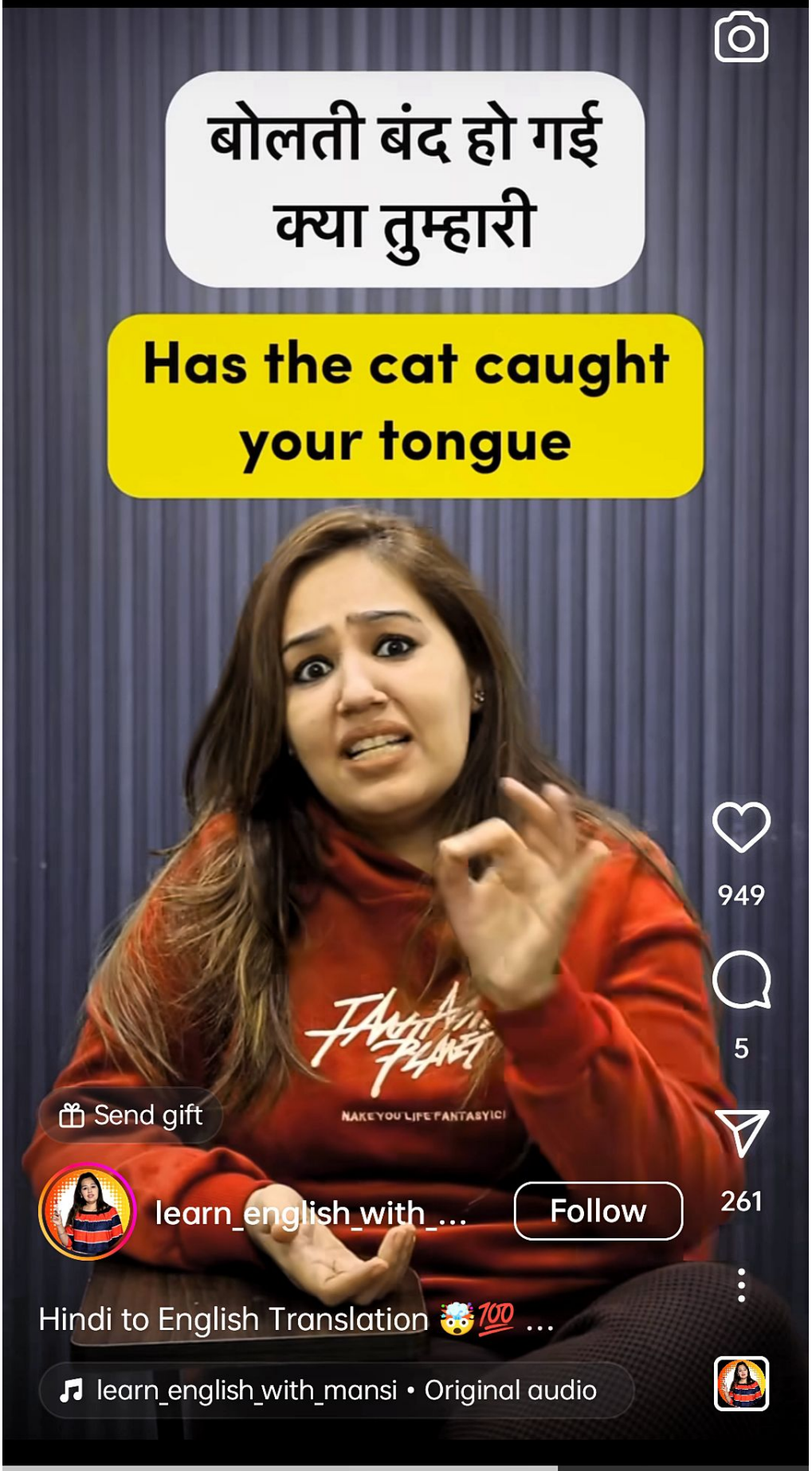

Bas yahi baaki tha sunne ko
Only that was left to hear
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
464
24
88


Bas yahi baaki tha dekhne ko
Only that was left to see
Send gift
464
24
88
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

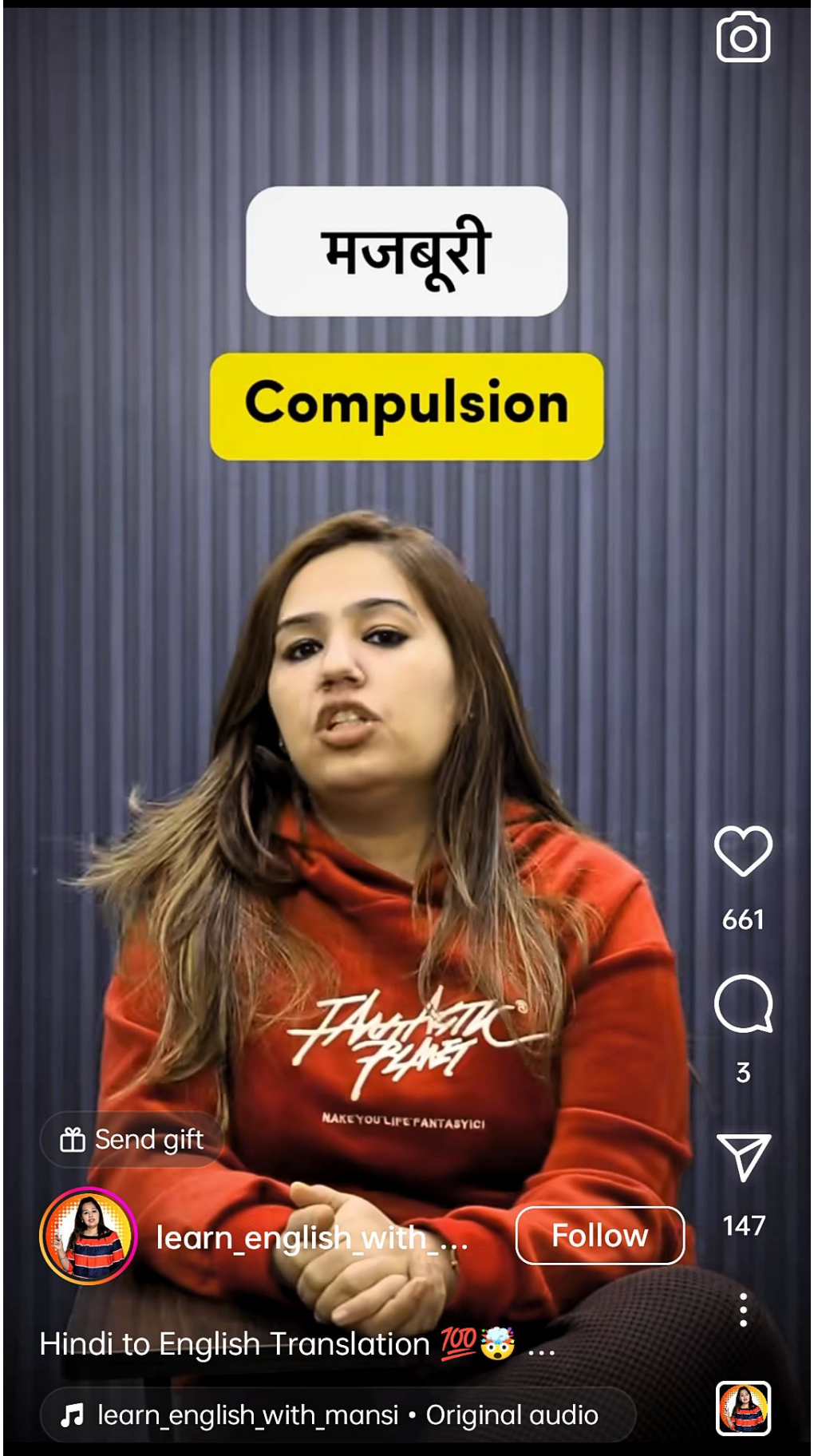

मैं नहीं मानती
I Don't Buy It
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
949
5
261

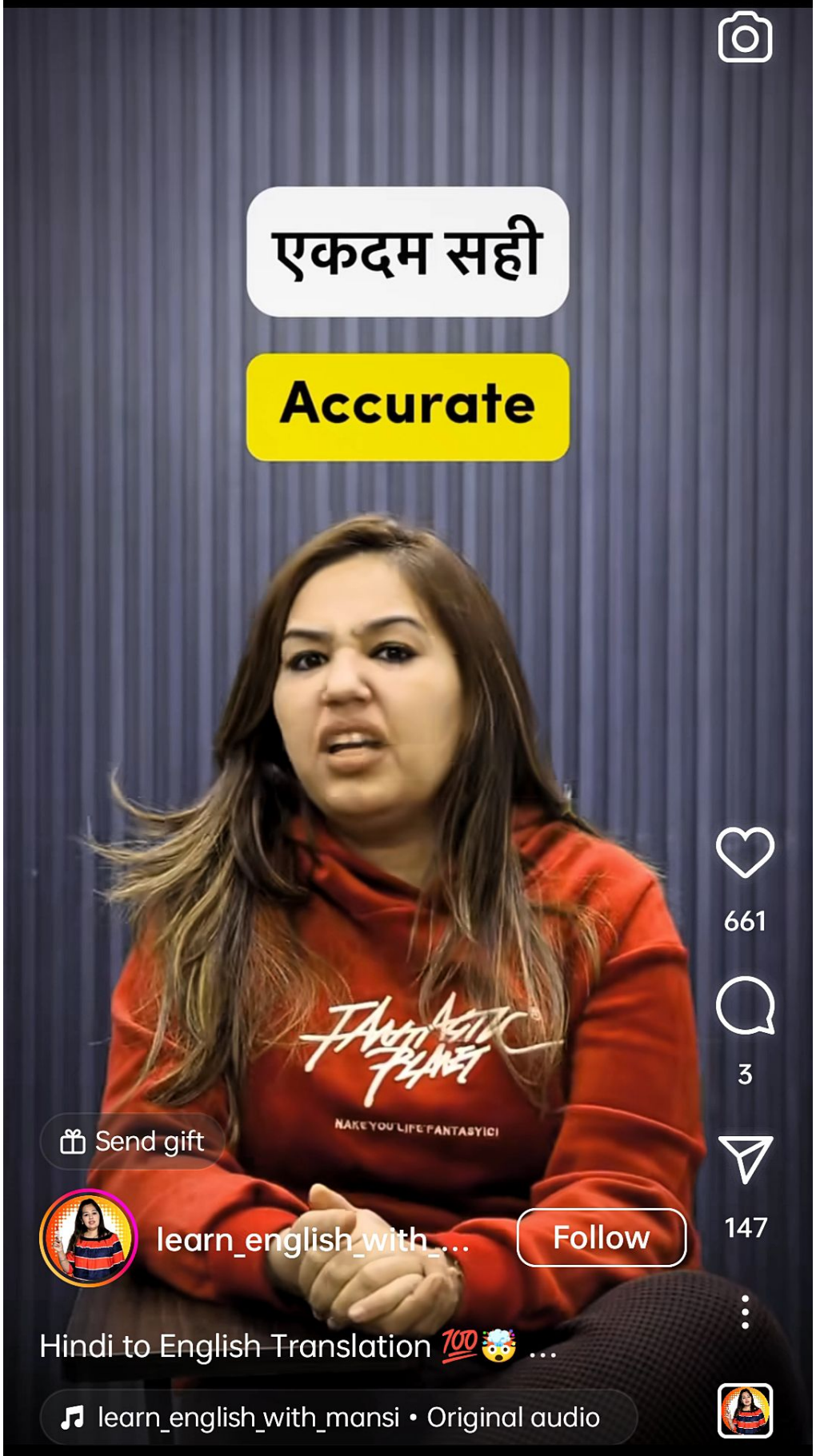

तुम्हें क्या खाये जा रहा है
What's Eating You
949
5
261
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

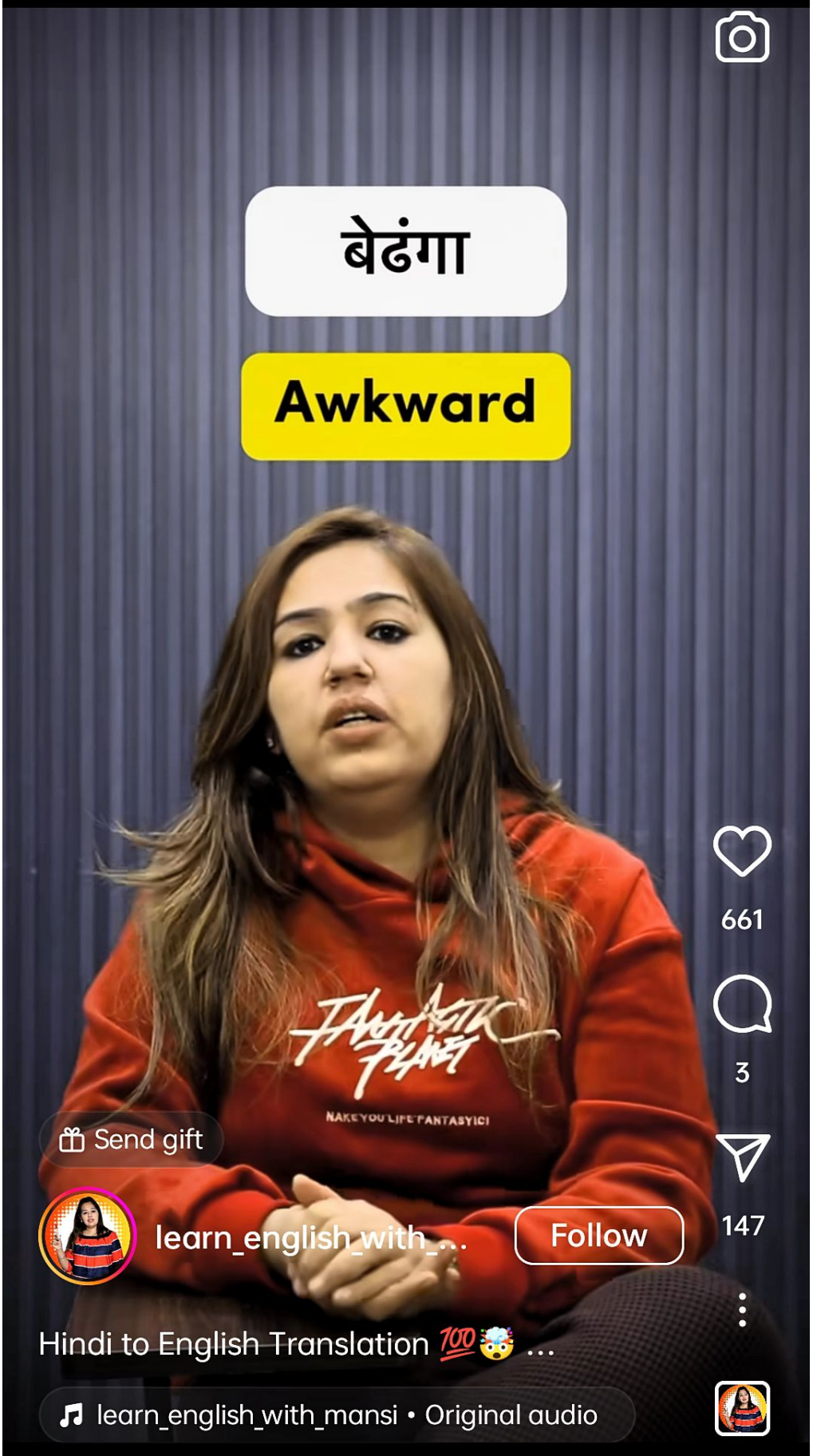

बाल बाल बचना
A Close Call
949
5
261
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

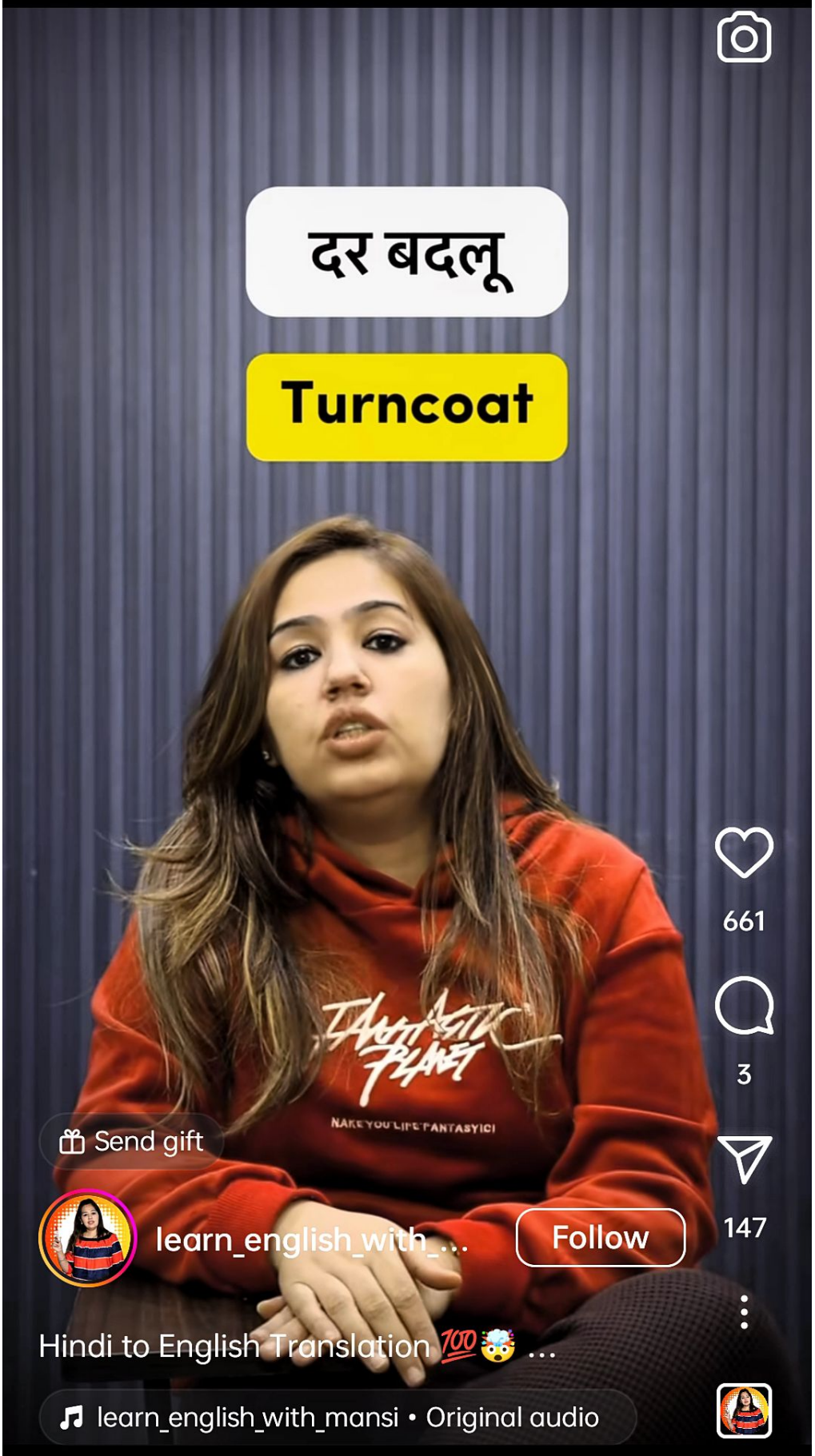

बोलती बंद हो गई
क्या तुम्हारी
Has the cat caught
your tongue
949
5
261
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

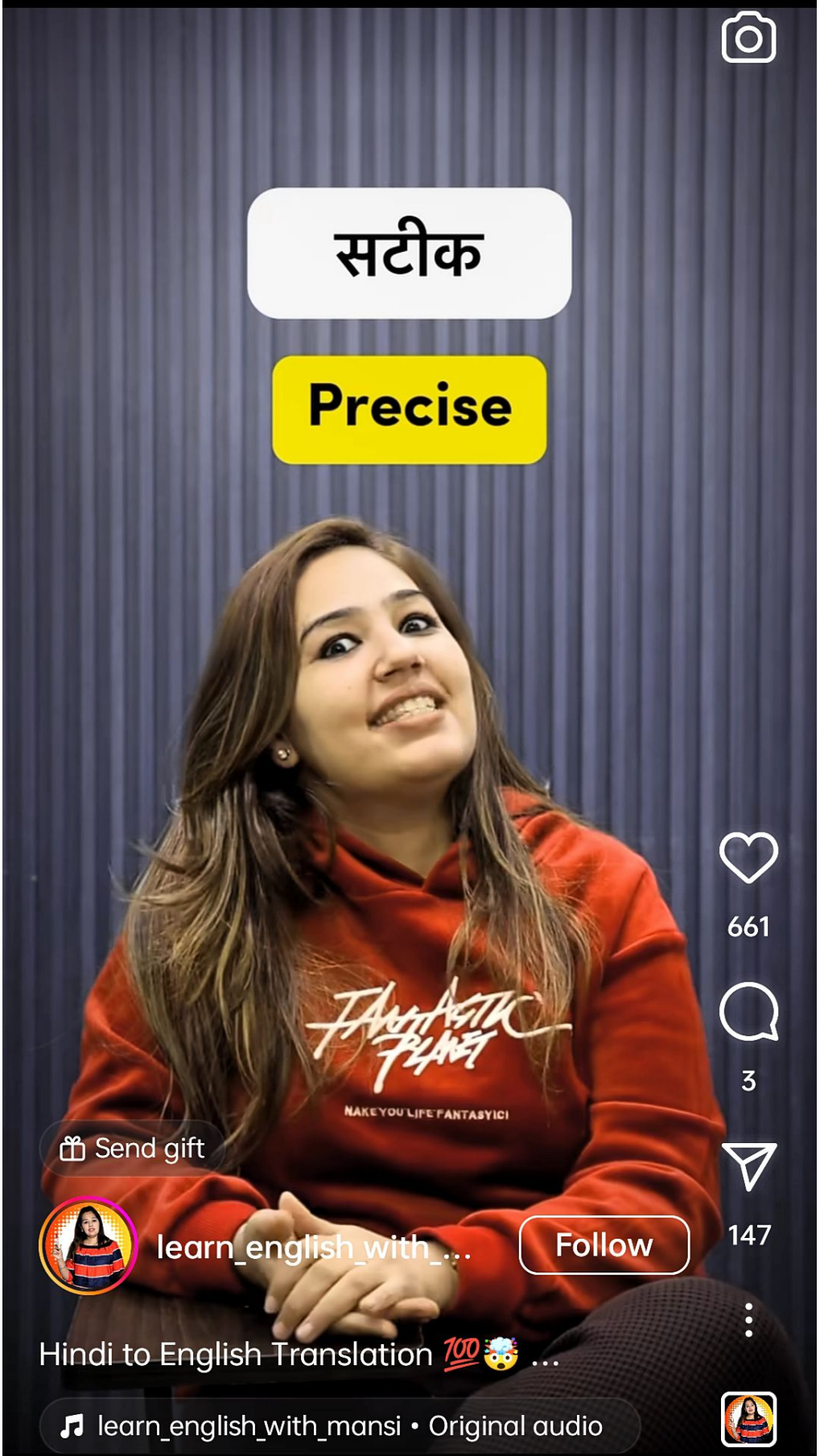

कोई दिक़्क़त नहीं है
No sweat
949
5
261
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

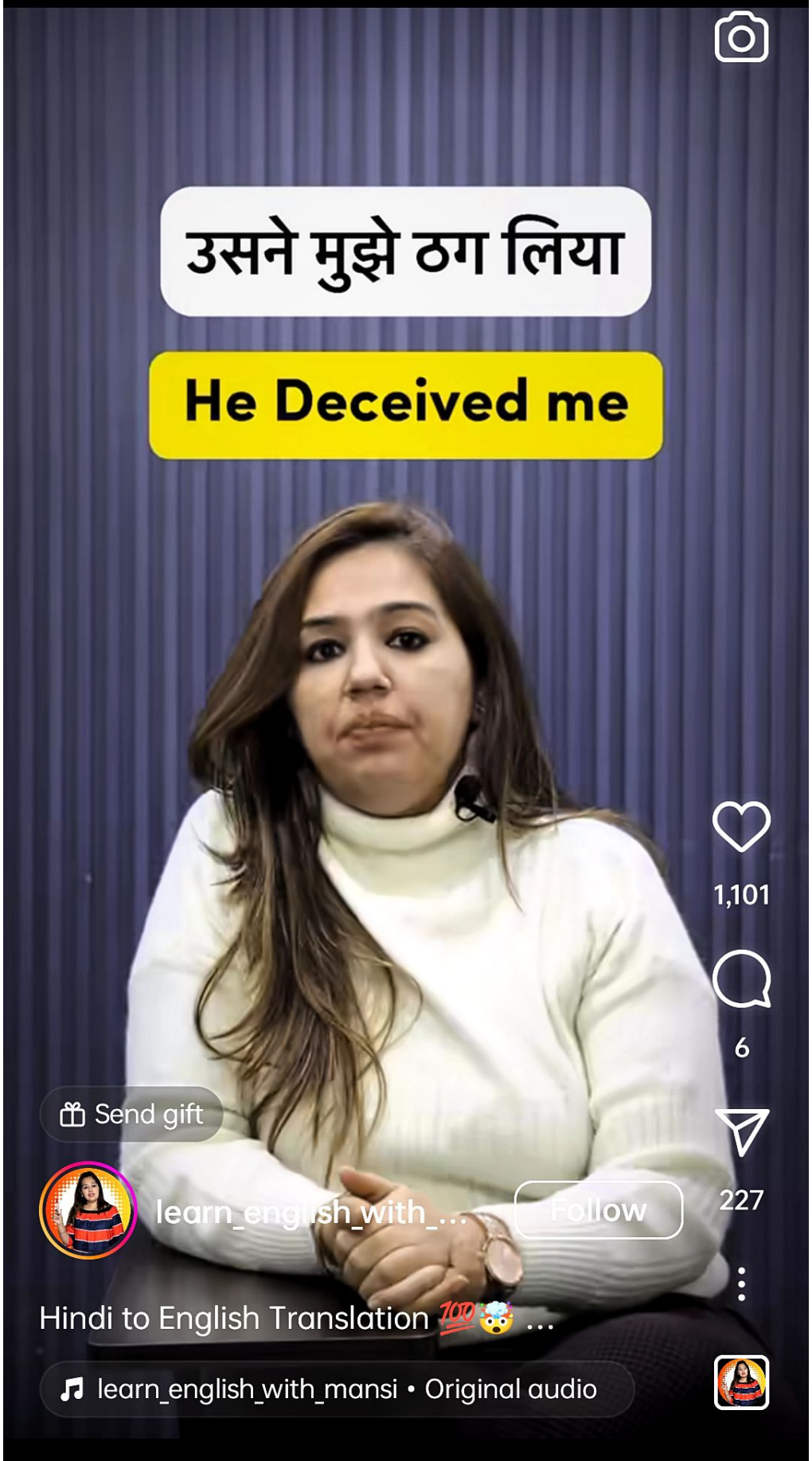

मजबूरी
Compulsion
661
3
147
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

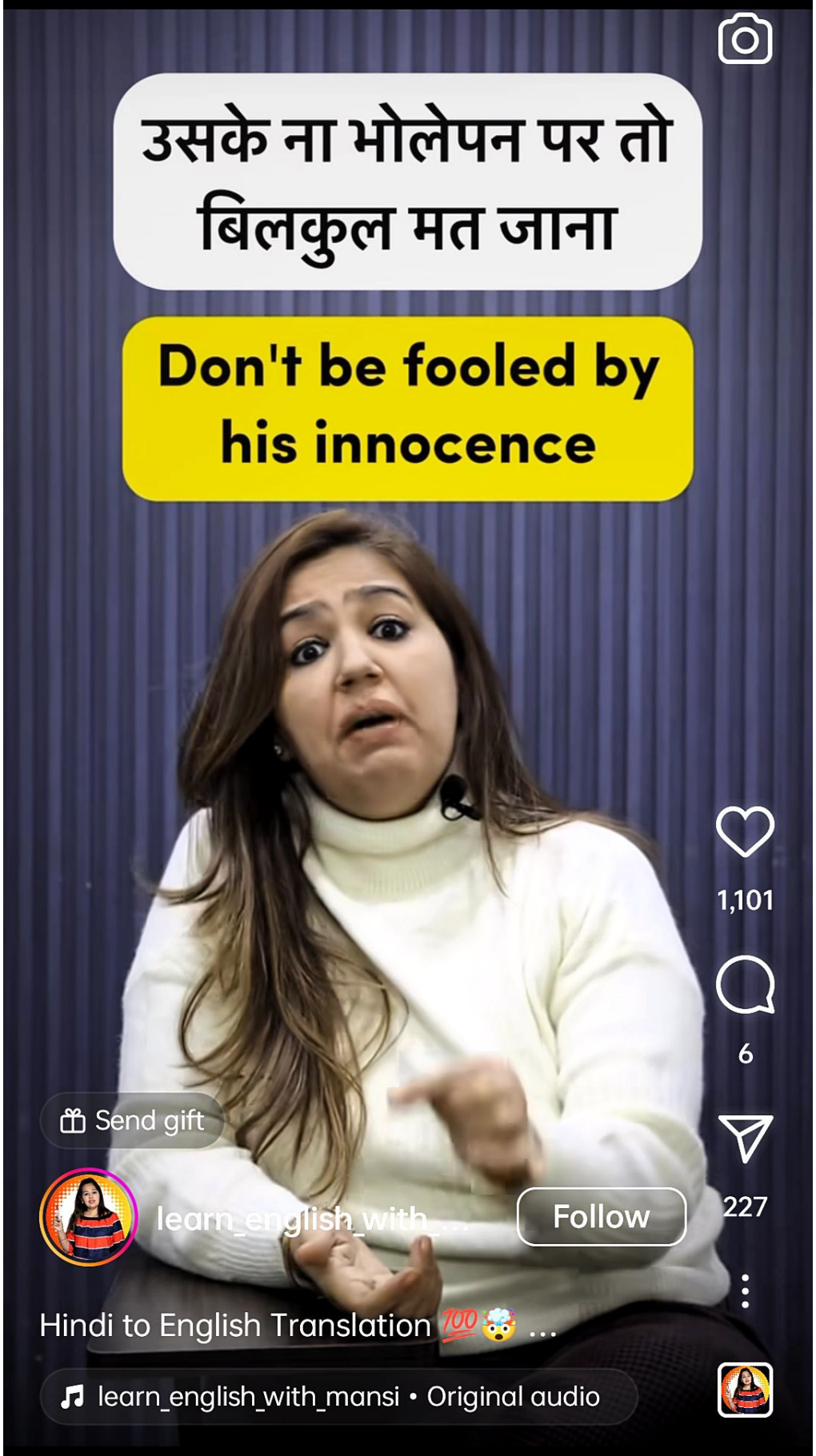

एकदम सही
Accurate
661
3
147
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

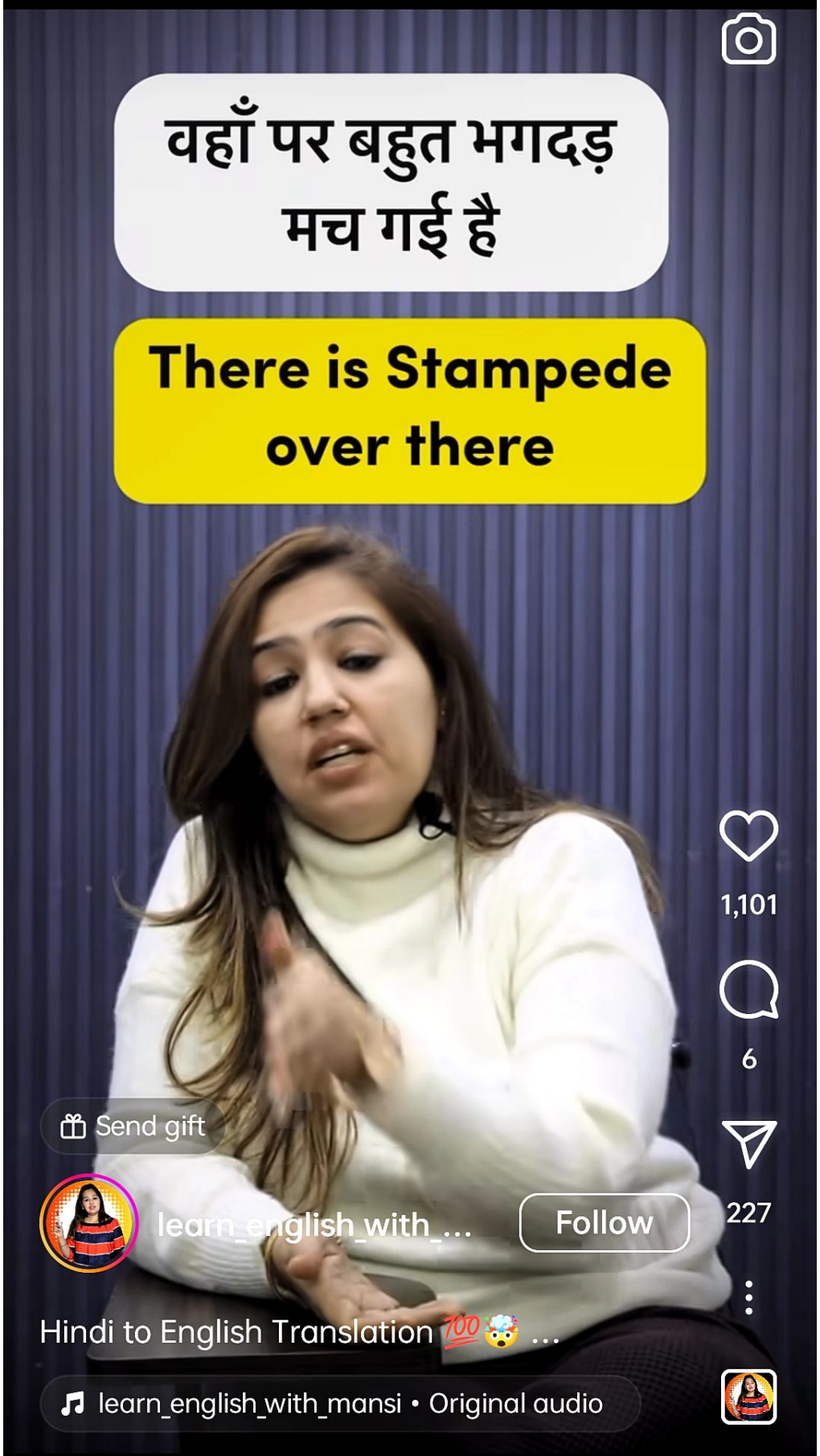

बेढंगा
Awkward
661
3
147
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


दर बदलू
Turncoat
661
3
147
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


सटीक
Precise
FANTASTIC PLANET
MAKE YOU LIFE FANTASYIC!
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
6:26
661
3
147


उसने मुझे ठग लिया
He Deceived me
1,101
6
227
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


उसके ना भोलेपन पर तो बिलकुल मत जाना
Don't be fooled by his innocence
1,101
6
227
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


वहाँ पर बहुत भगदड़ मच गई है
There is Stampede over there
1,101
6
227
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio





Isle

Aisle

295

Send gift

learn_english_with_...

Follow

37

Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...

learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

6:26 112 KB/S 65



Steel



Steal

295

37

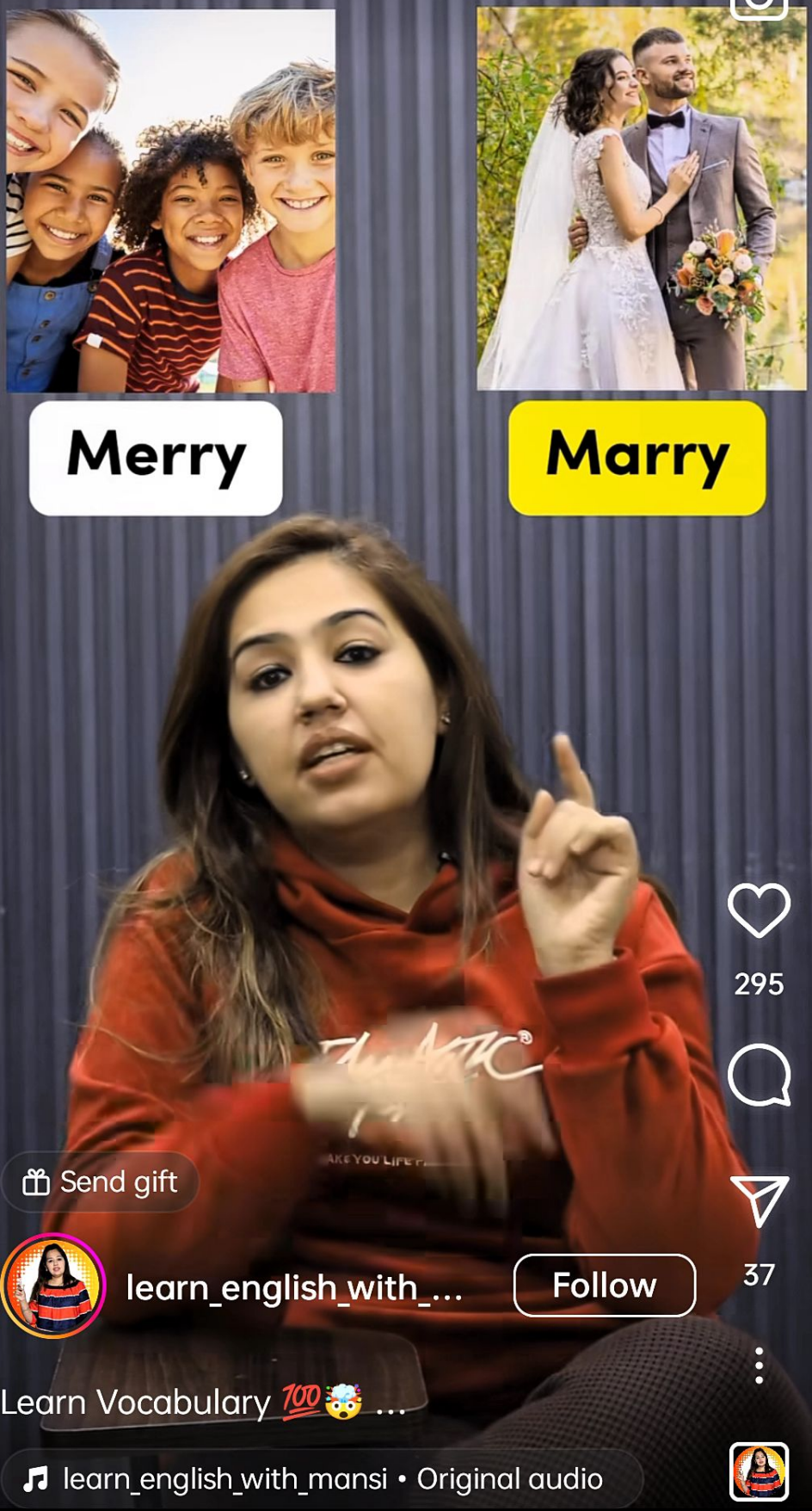
Send gift

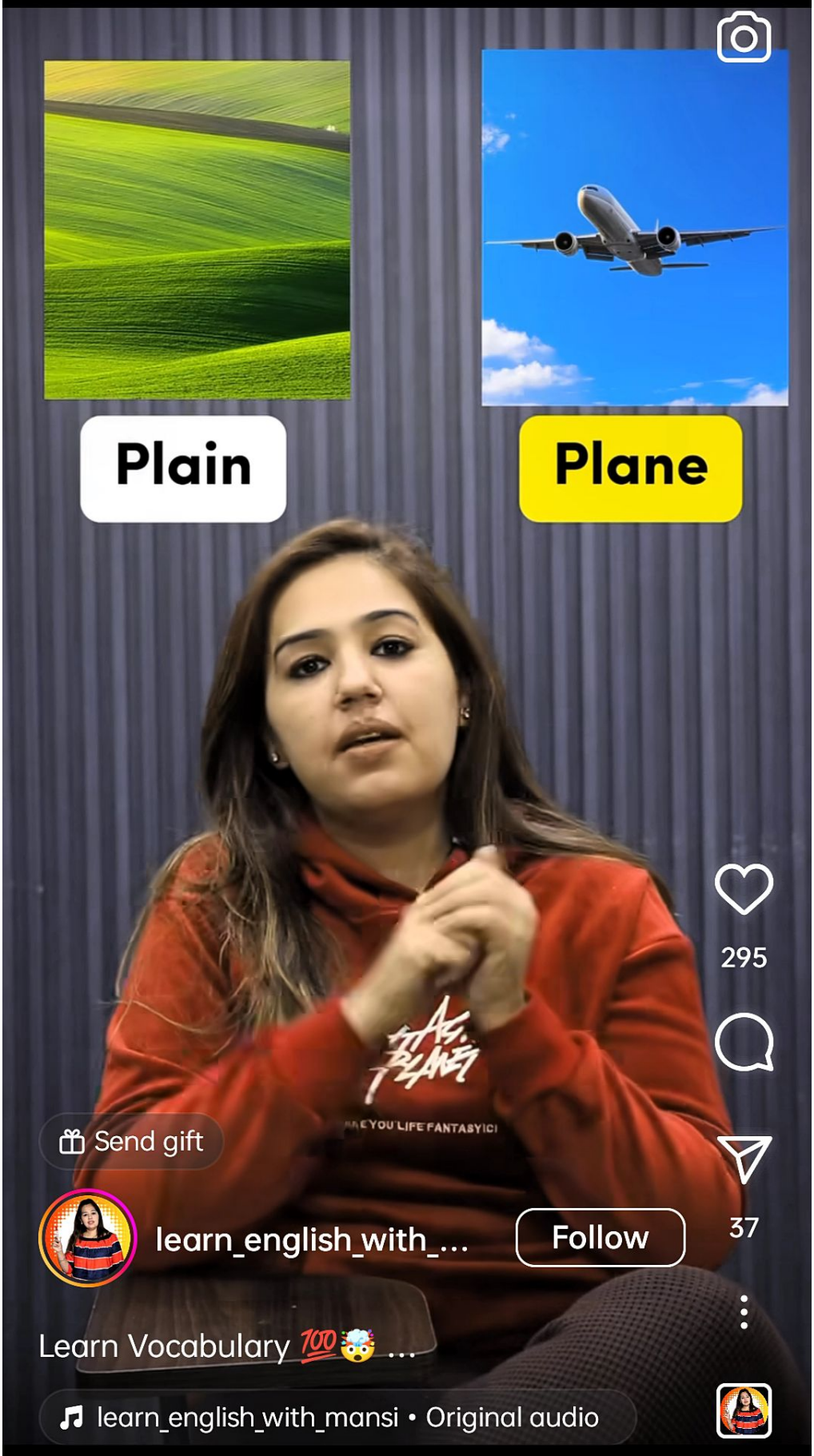
learn_english_with_...

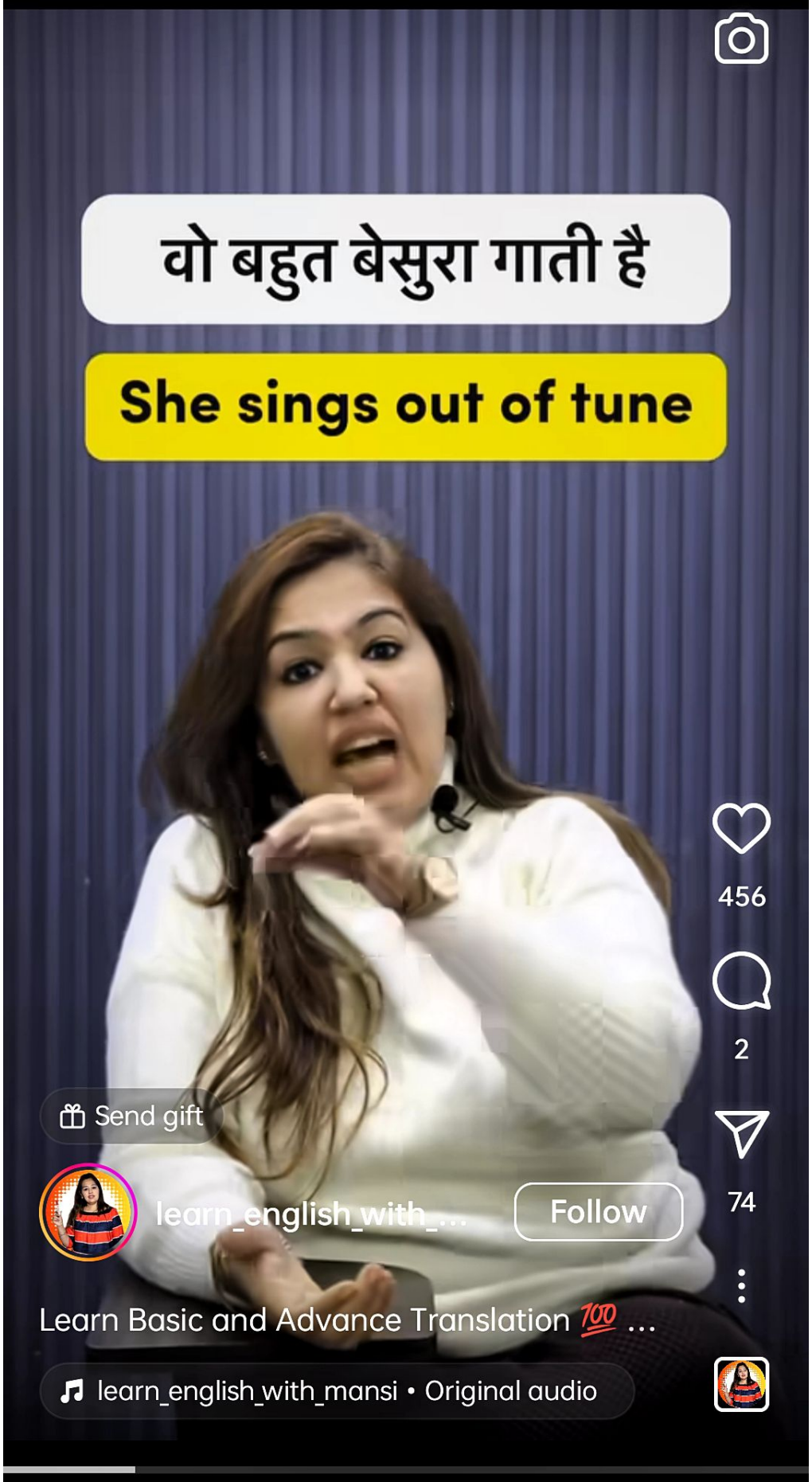
Follow

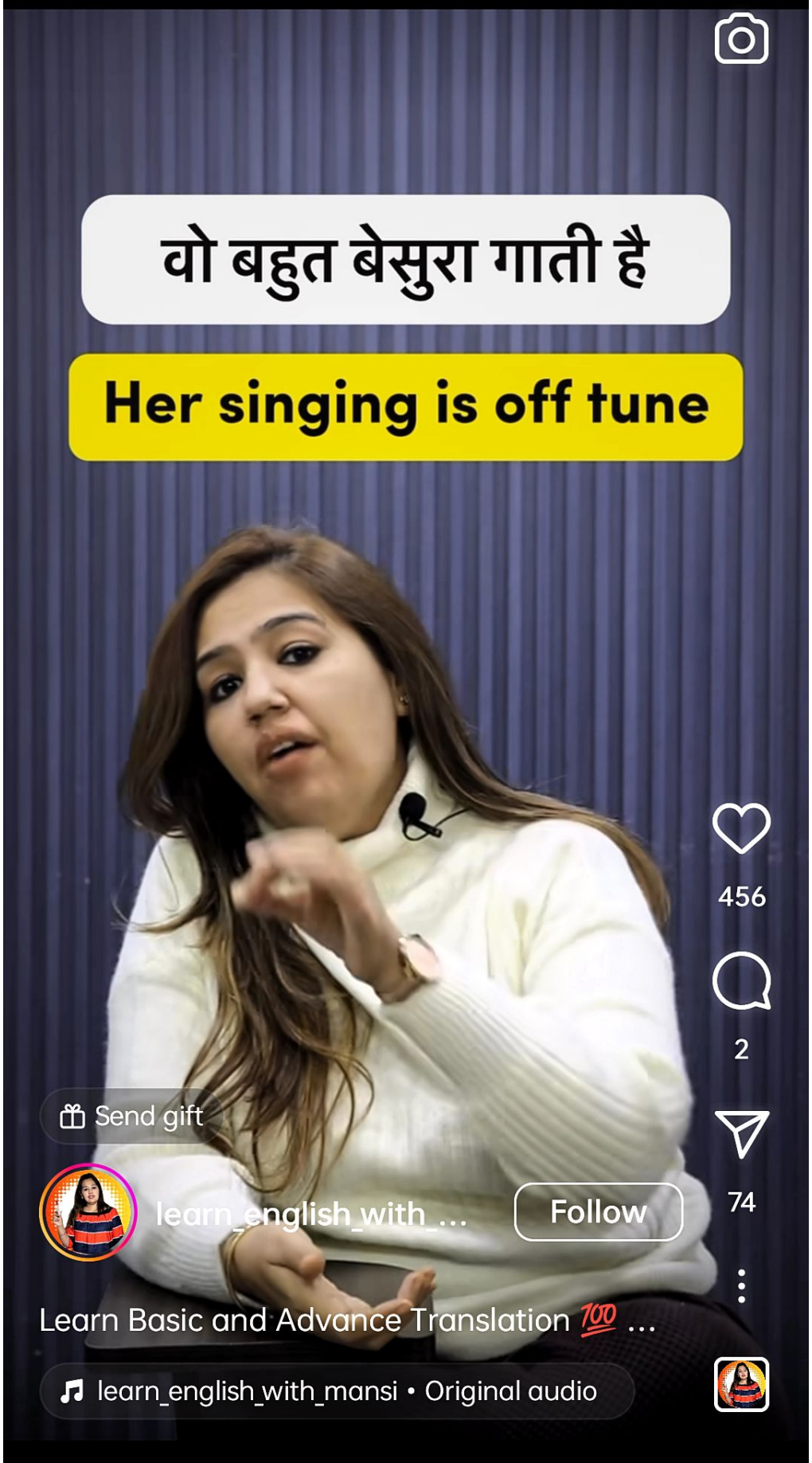
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...

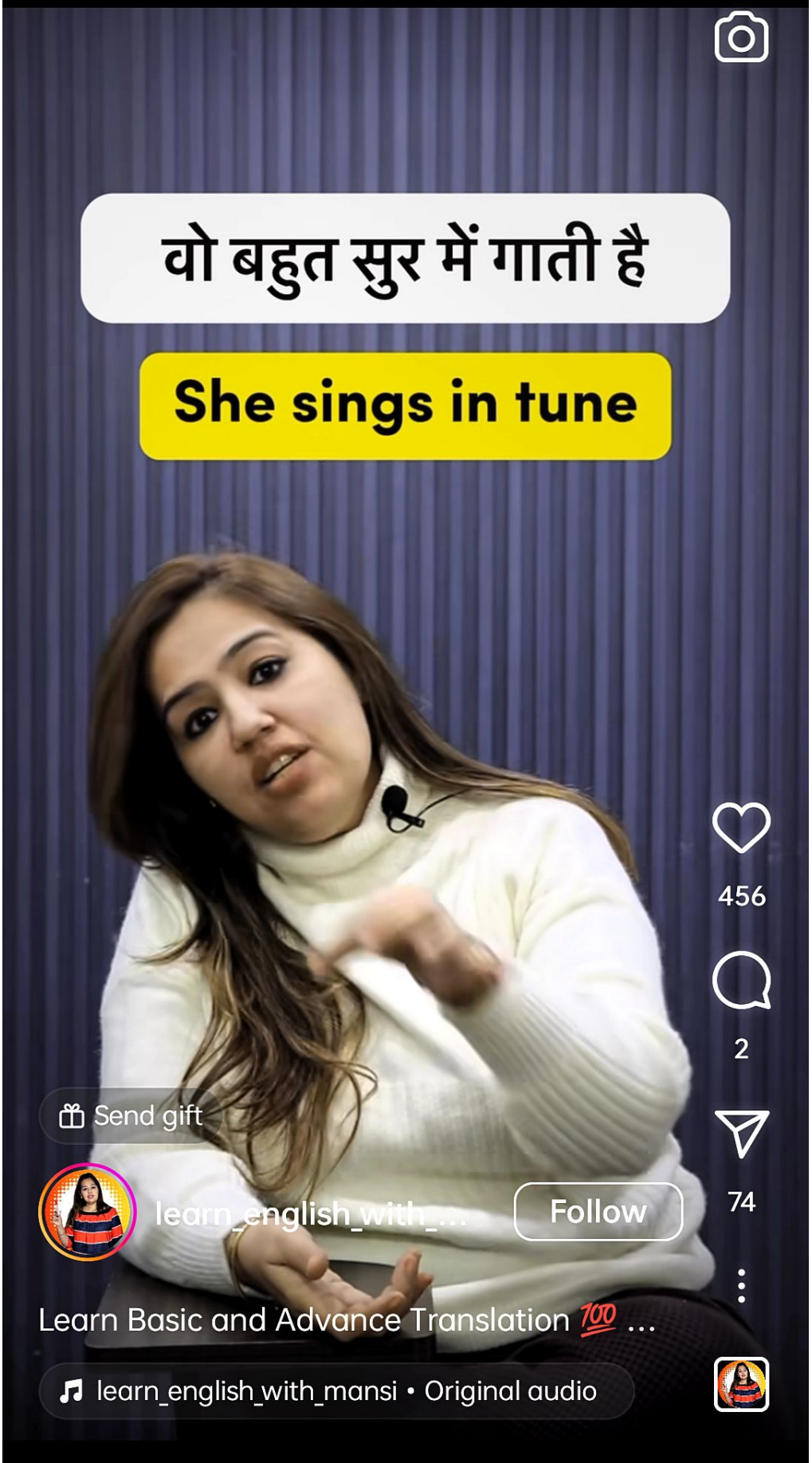
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

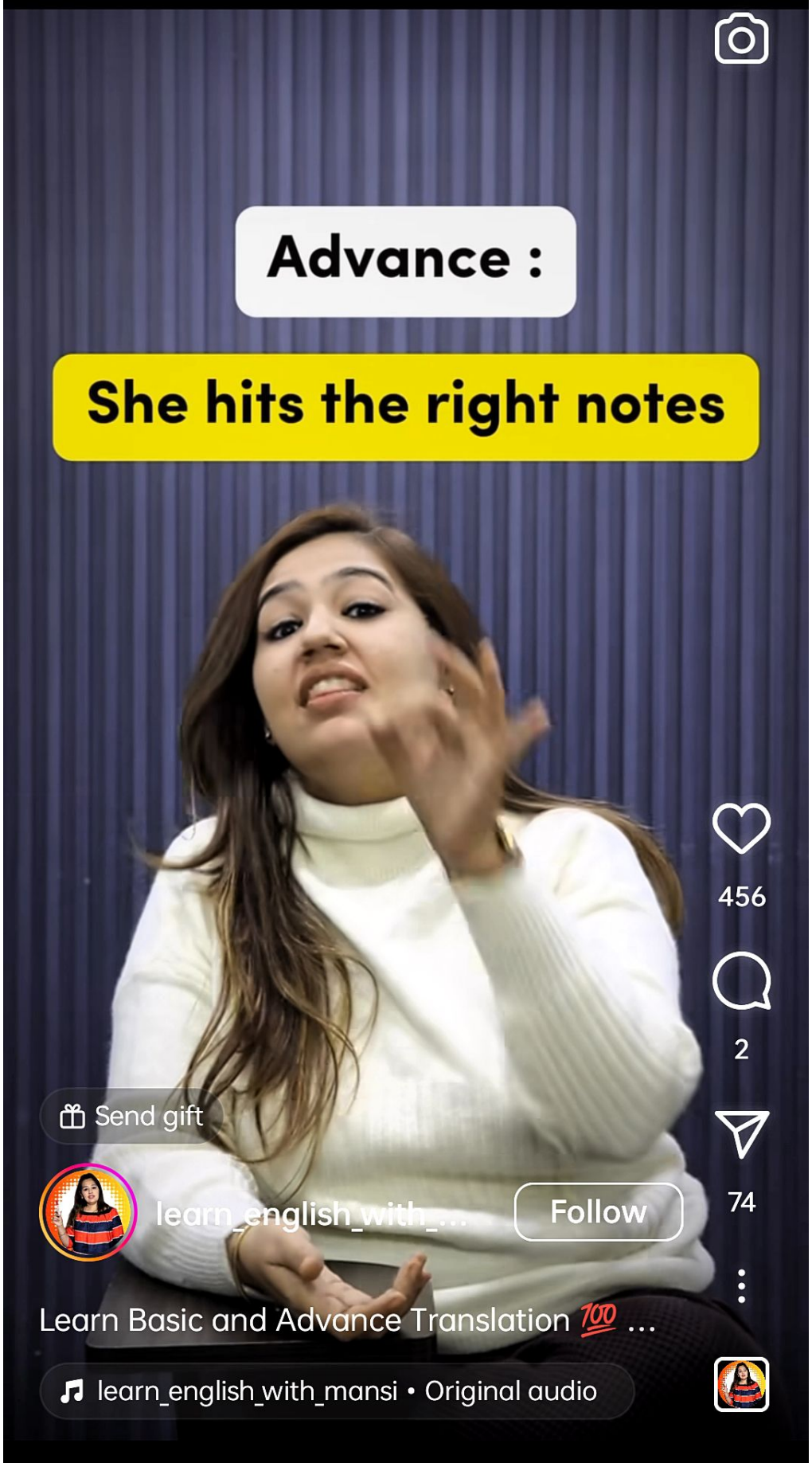

Merry
Marry
295
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
37
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

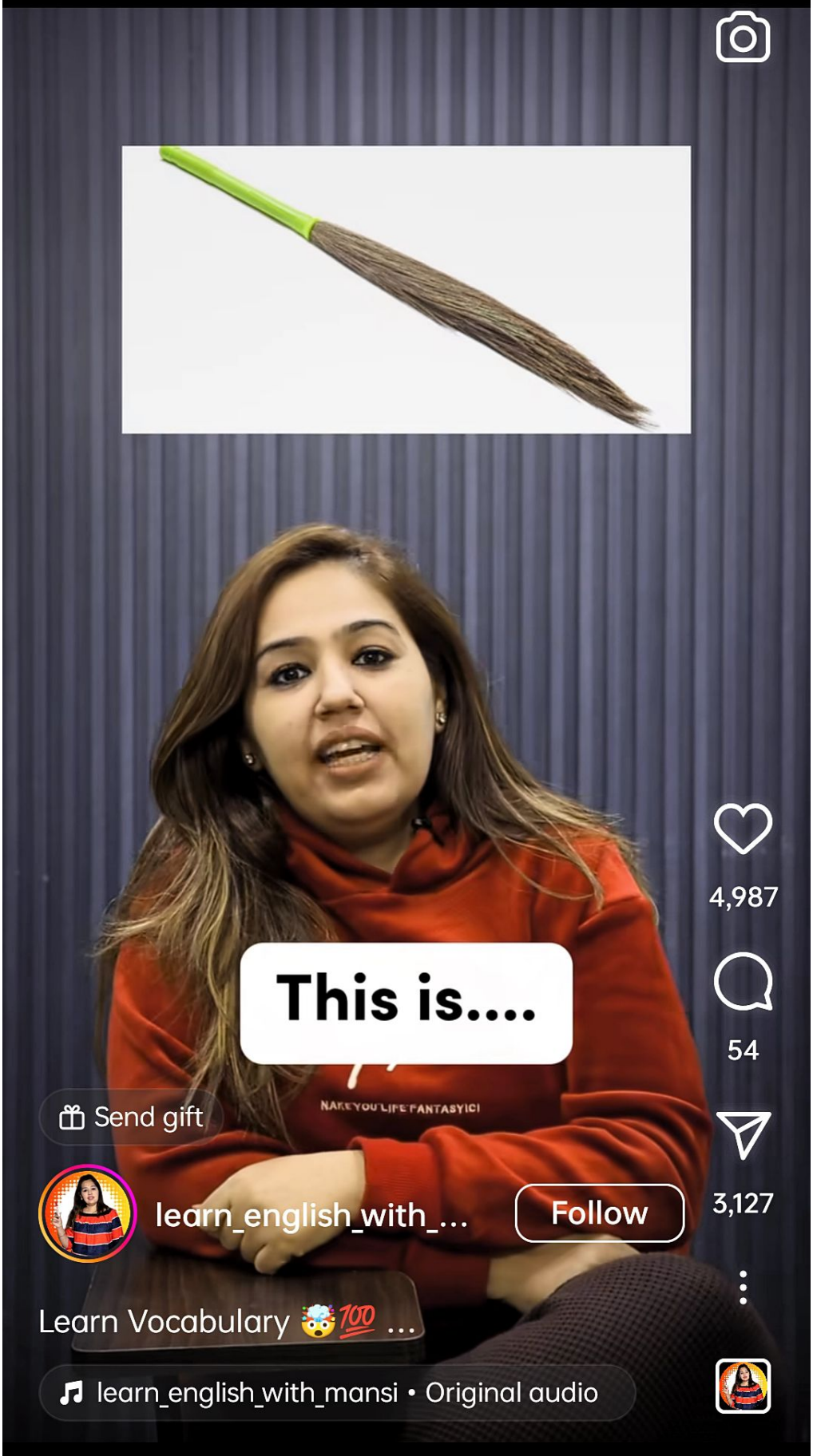

Plain
Plane
295
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
37
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

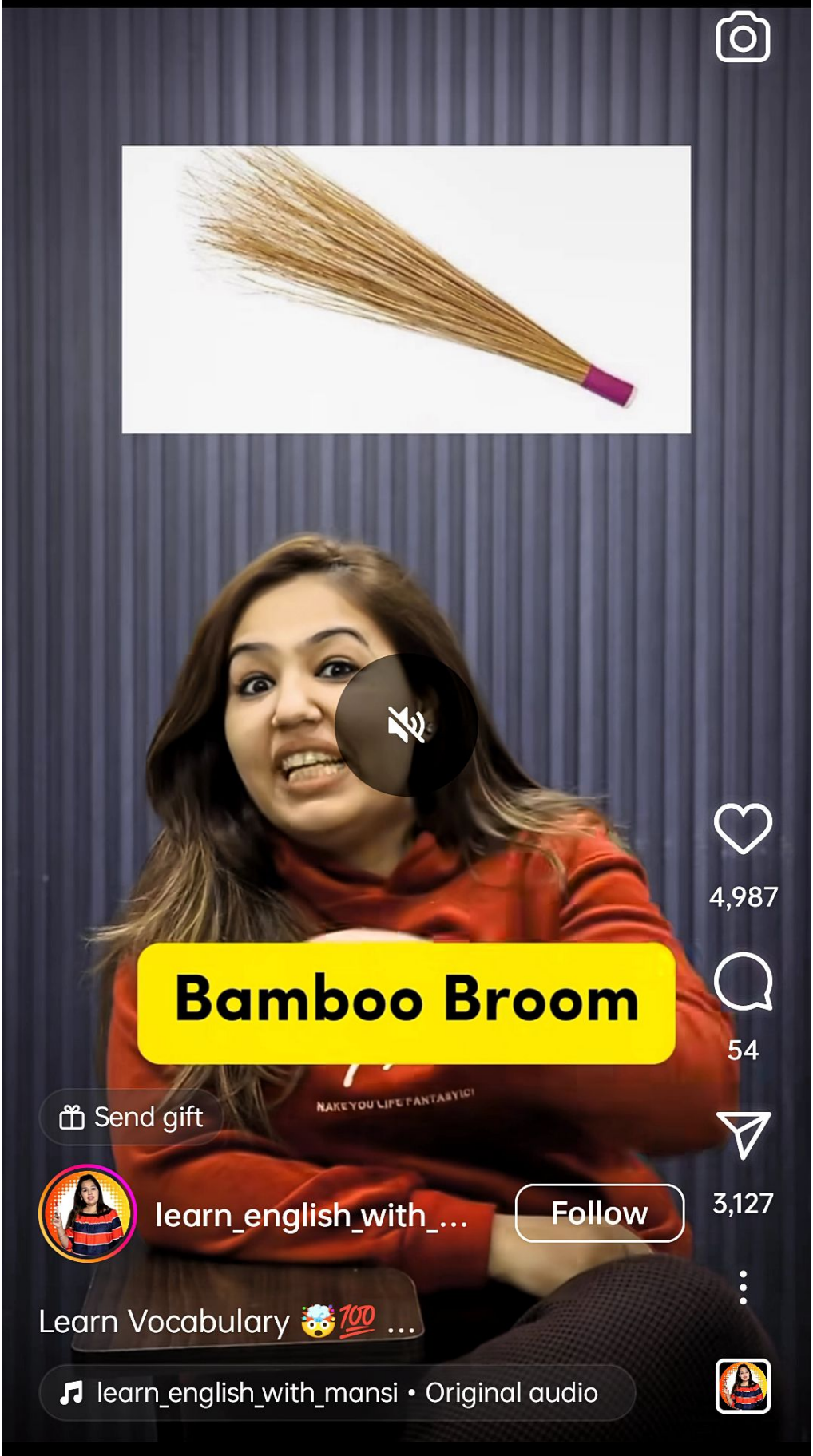

वो बहुत बेसुरा गाती है
She sings out of tune
456
2
74
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Basic and Advance Translation 💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


वो बहुत बेसुरा गाती है
Her singing is off tune
456
2
74
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Basic and Advance Translation 💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


वो बहुत सुर में गाती है
She sings in tune
456
2
74
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Basic and Advance Translation 💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Advance :
She hits the right notes
456
2
74
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Basic and Advance Translation 💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


This is....
4,987
54
3,127
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Bamboo Broom
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
4,987
54
3,127



Push Broom

4,987

54

3,127

Send gift

learn_english_with_...

Follow

Learn Vocabulary 🤯💯 ...

learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio



Stick Broom

Send gift

learn_english_with_...

Follow

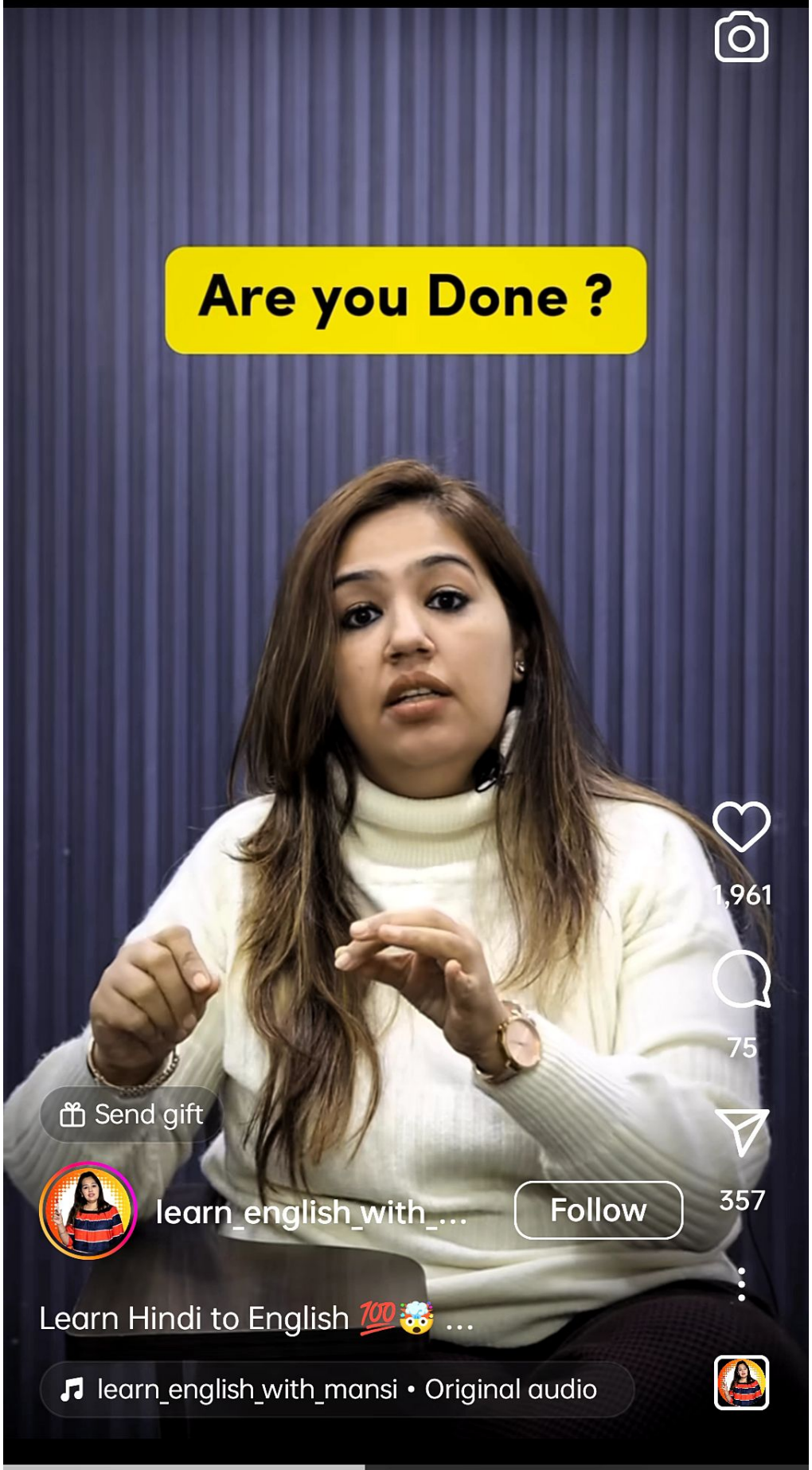
Learn Vocabulary 🤯💯 ...

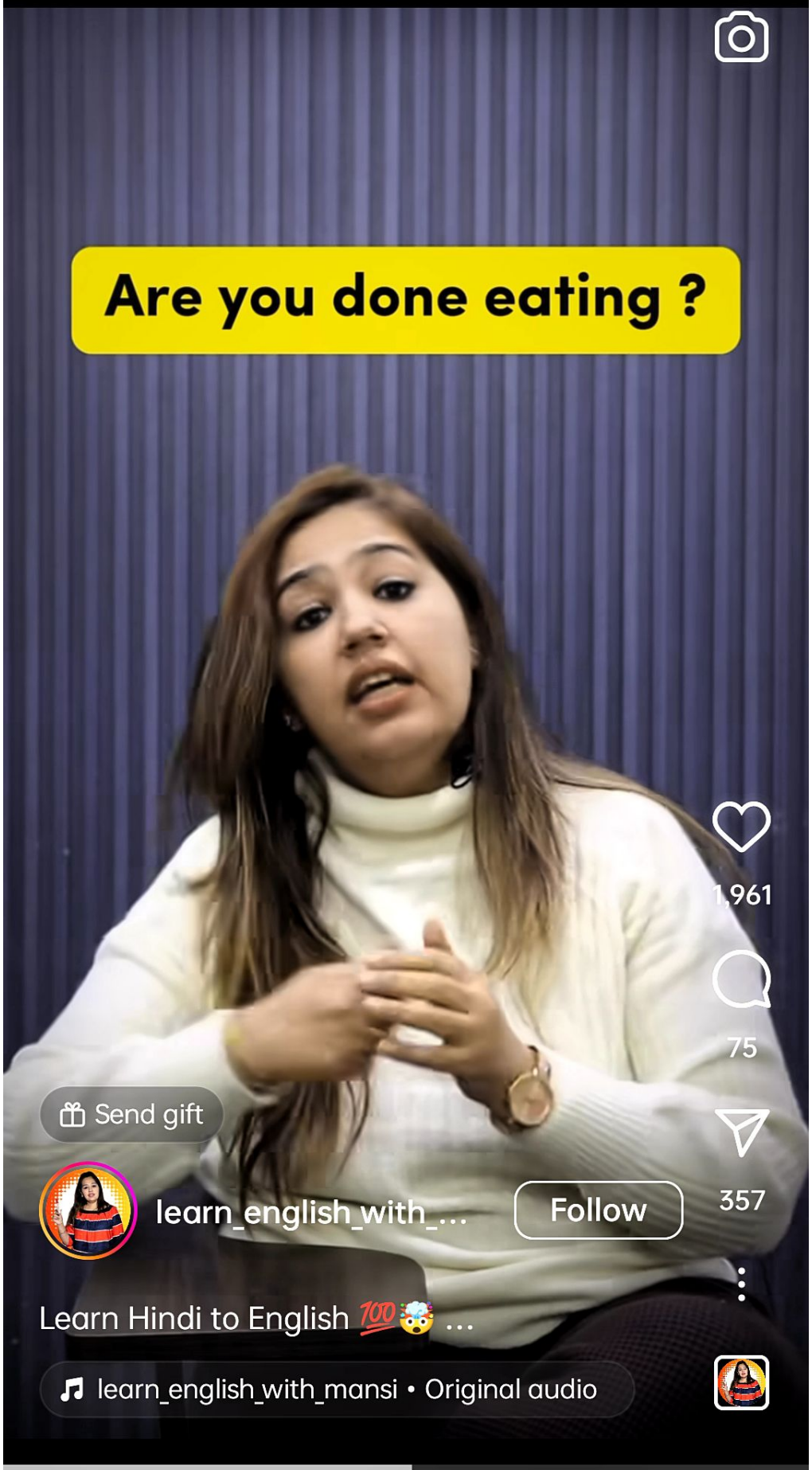
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

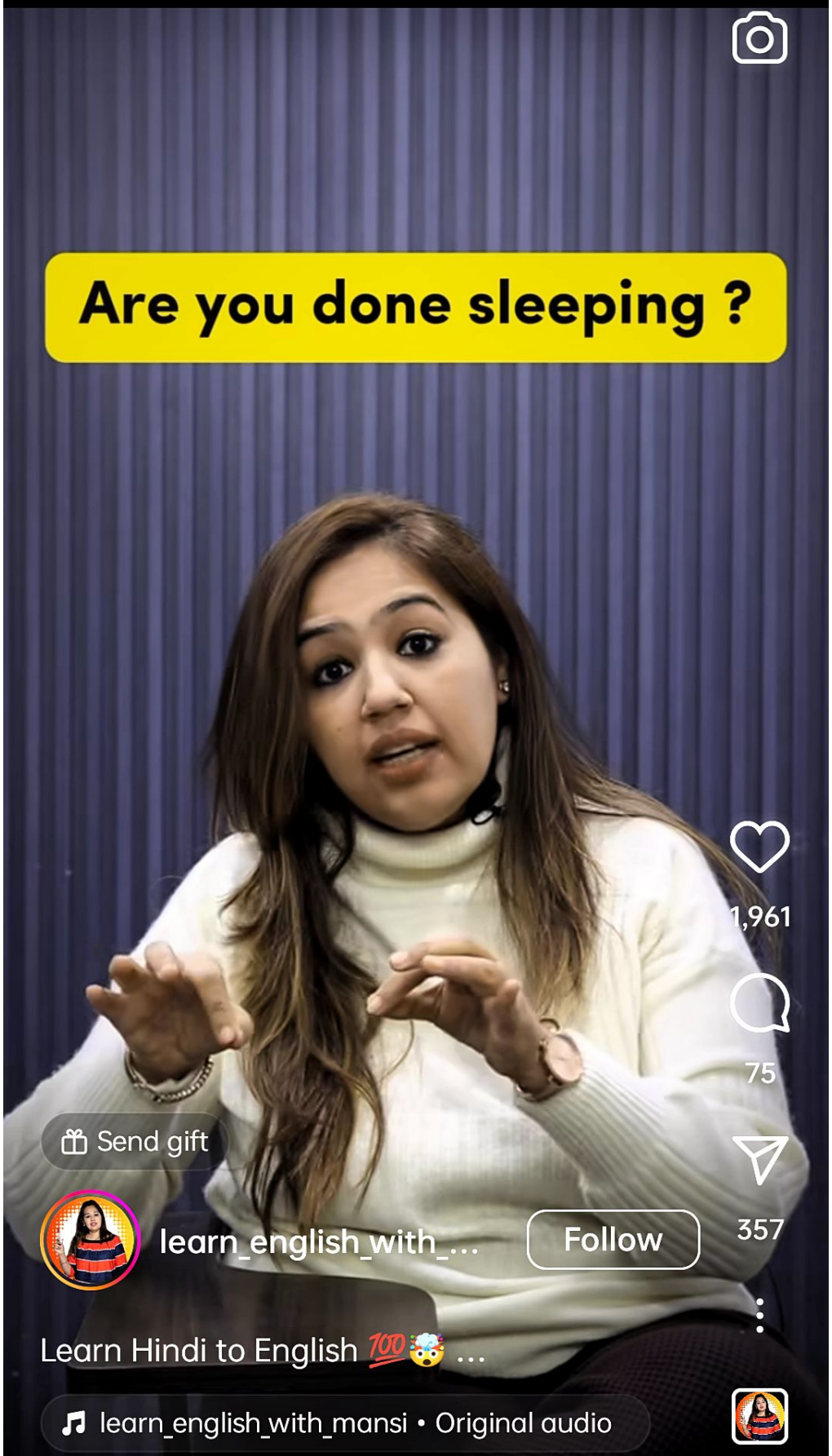
4,987

54

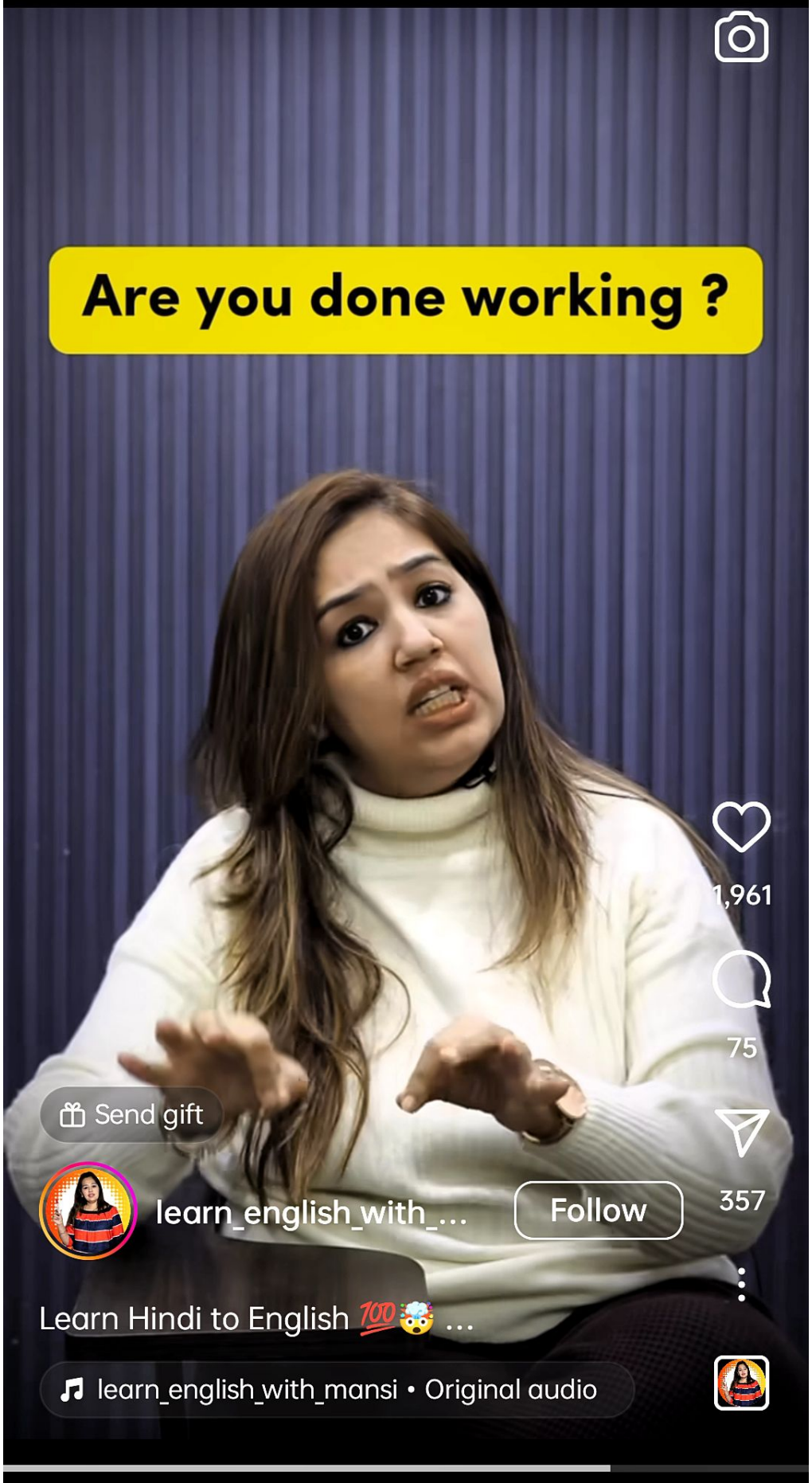
3,127

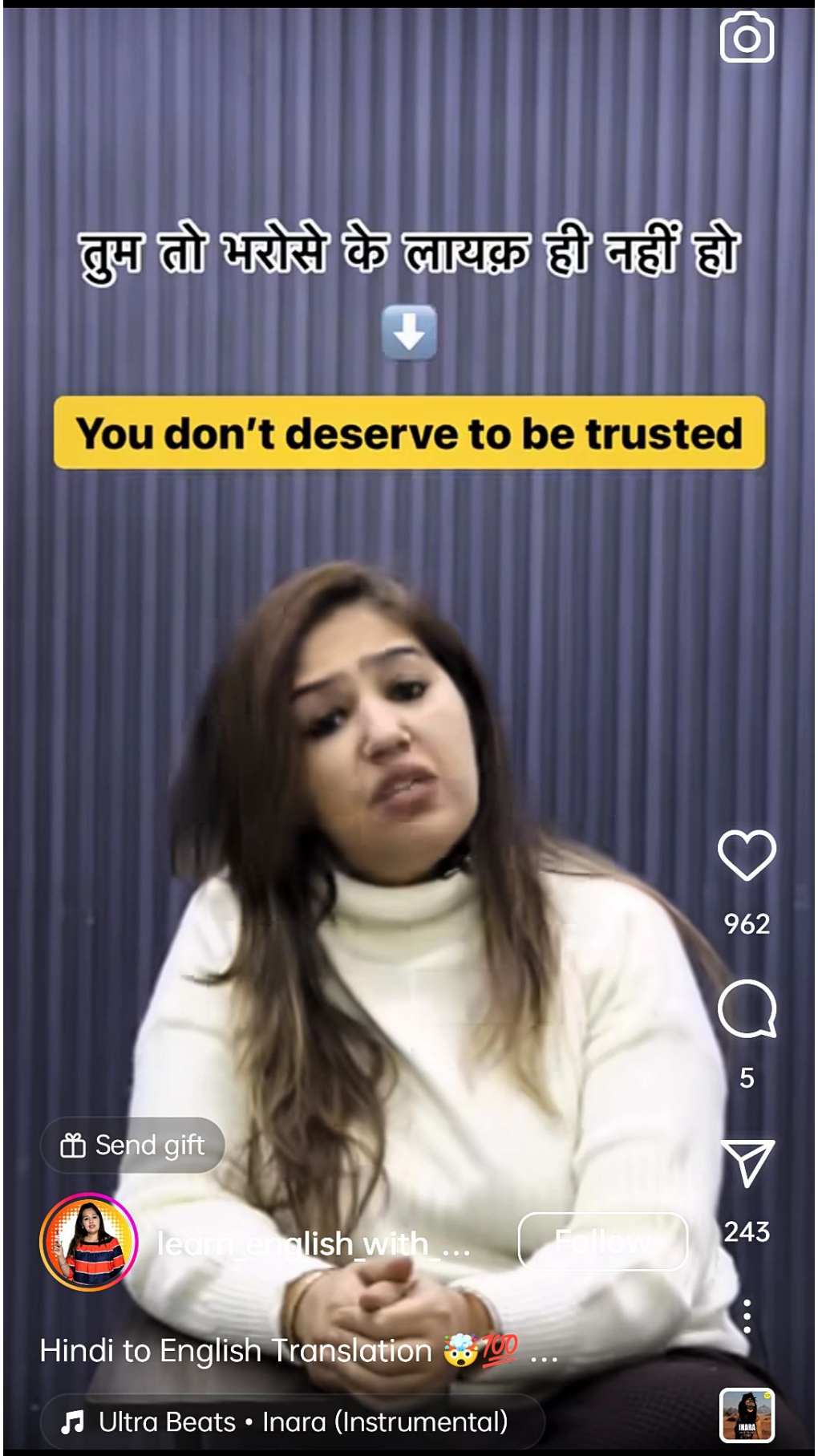

Are you Done ?
1,961
75
357
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Hindi to English 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

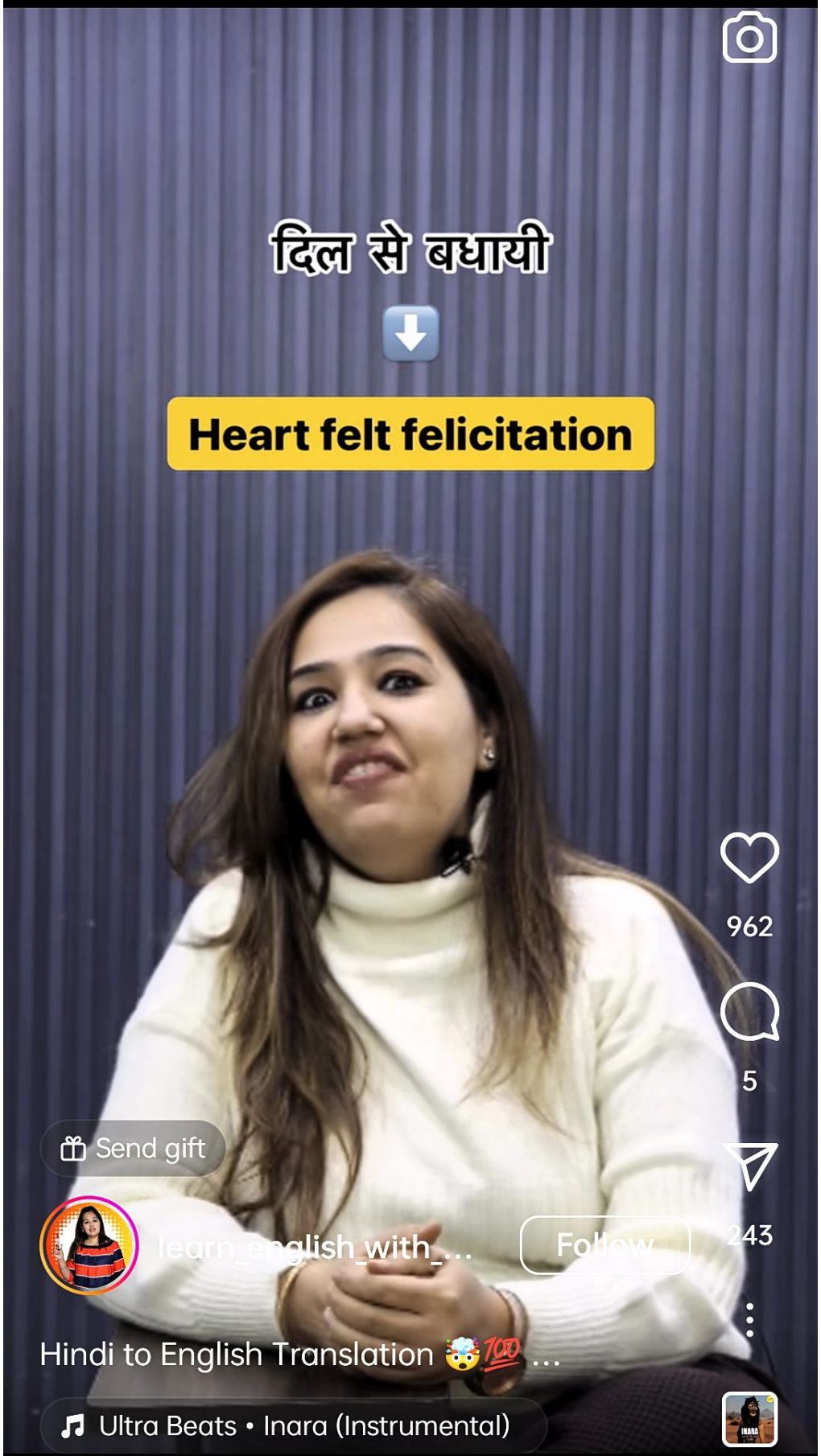

Are you done eating ?
1,961
75
357
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Hindi to English 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Are you done sleeping ?
1,961
75
357
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Hindi to English 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

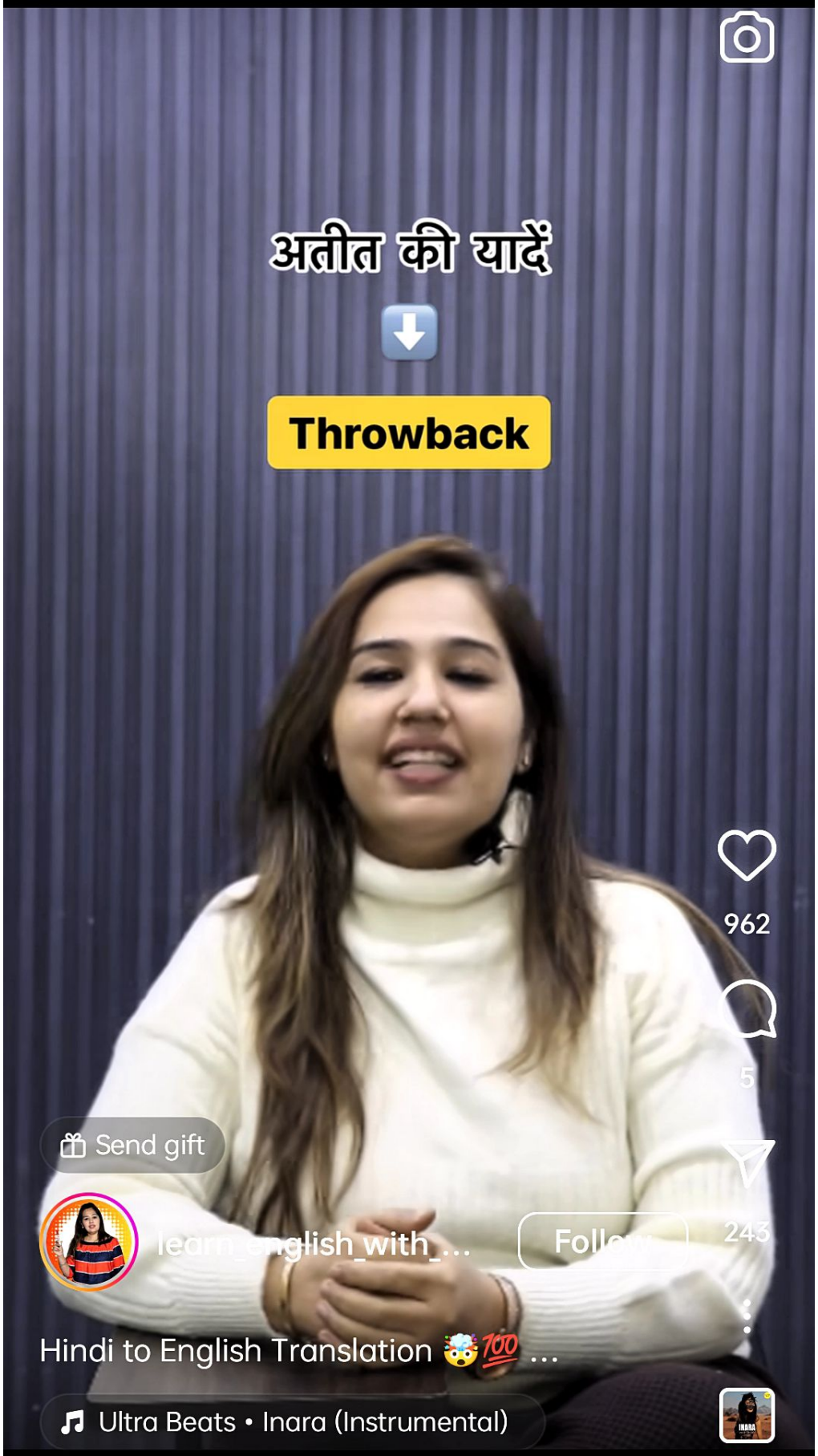

क्या तुम्हारा काम करना हो गया ?
1,961
75
357
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Hindi to English 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Are you done working ?
1,961
75
357
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Hindi to English 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


तुम तो भरोसे के लायक़ ही नहीं हो
⬇️
You don't deserve to be trusted
962
5
243
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
Ultra Beats • Inara (Instrumental)


दिल से बधायी
⬇️
Heart felt felicitation
962
5
243
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
Ultra Beats • Inara (Instrumental)


भगवान ना करे
⬇️
God forbid
962
5
Send gift
243
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
Ultra Beats • Inara (Instrumental)


अतीत की यादें
⬇️
Throwback
962
5
243
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
Ultra Beats • Inara (Instrumental)


तुम तो किसी काम के नहीं हो
You are good for nothing
Send gift
1,334
6
311
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


मैं तो तुम पर बिलकुल
विश्वास नहीं कर सकती
I can't count on you
1,334
6
311
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


जो होता है ना अच्छे के लिए होता है
Whatever happens, happens for the better
Send gift
1,334
6
311
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


मुझे तो अपने भगवान पर
बहुत भरोसा है
I have faith in God
1,334
6
311
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

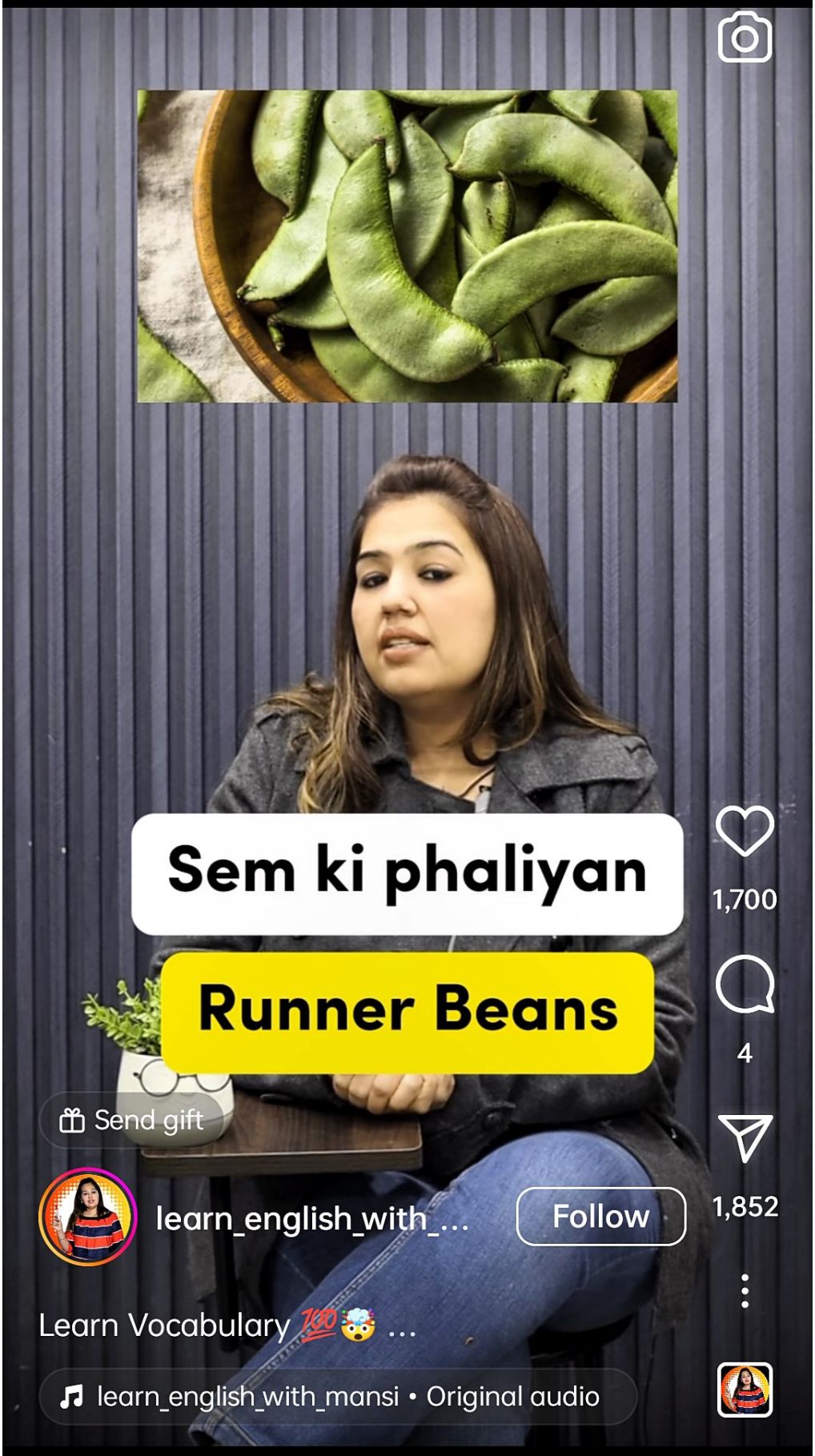

@learn_english_with_mansi
समझदार को इशारा ही काफ़ी है
A word to the wise is sufficient
1,141
6
337
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


@learn_english_with_mansi
हमारी खूब नहीं बनती है
We are not on good terms
1,141
6
337
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


@learn_english_with_mansi
क्या आपको मेरी बात समझ में आई
Did you get me ?
1,141
6
337
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


@learn_english_with_mansi
इस बारे में ना बाद में सोचना
Think about it later
1,141
6
337
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Bathua
White Goosefoot
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
1,700
4
1,852


Sem ki phaliyan
Runner Beans
1,700
4
1,852
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio



Ganvaar ki phali

Cluster Beans

1,700

4

1,852

Send gift

learn_english_with_...

Follow

Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...

learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio



Petha

Ash Gourd

1,700

4

1,852

Send gift

learn_english_with_...

Follow

Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...

learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio



Karela

Bitter Gourd

1,700

4

1,852

Send gift

learn_english_with_...

Follow

Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...

learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio



Lauki

Bottle Gourd

1,700

4

1,852

Send gift

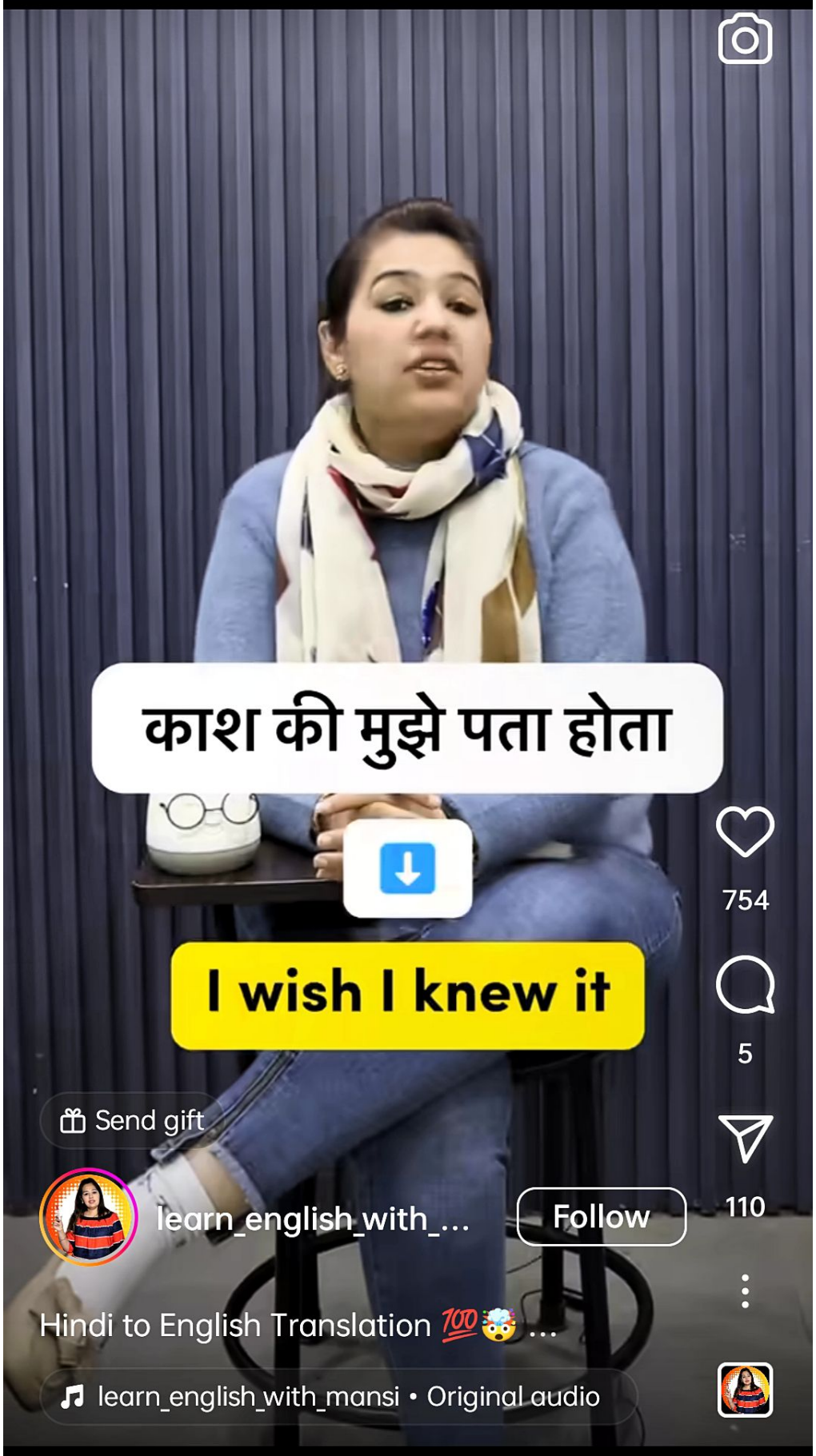
learn_english_with_...

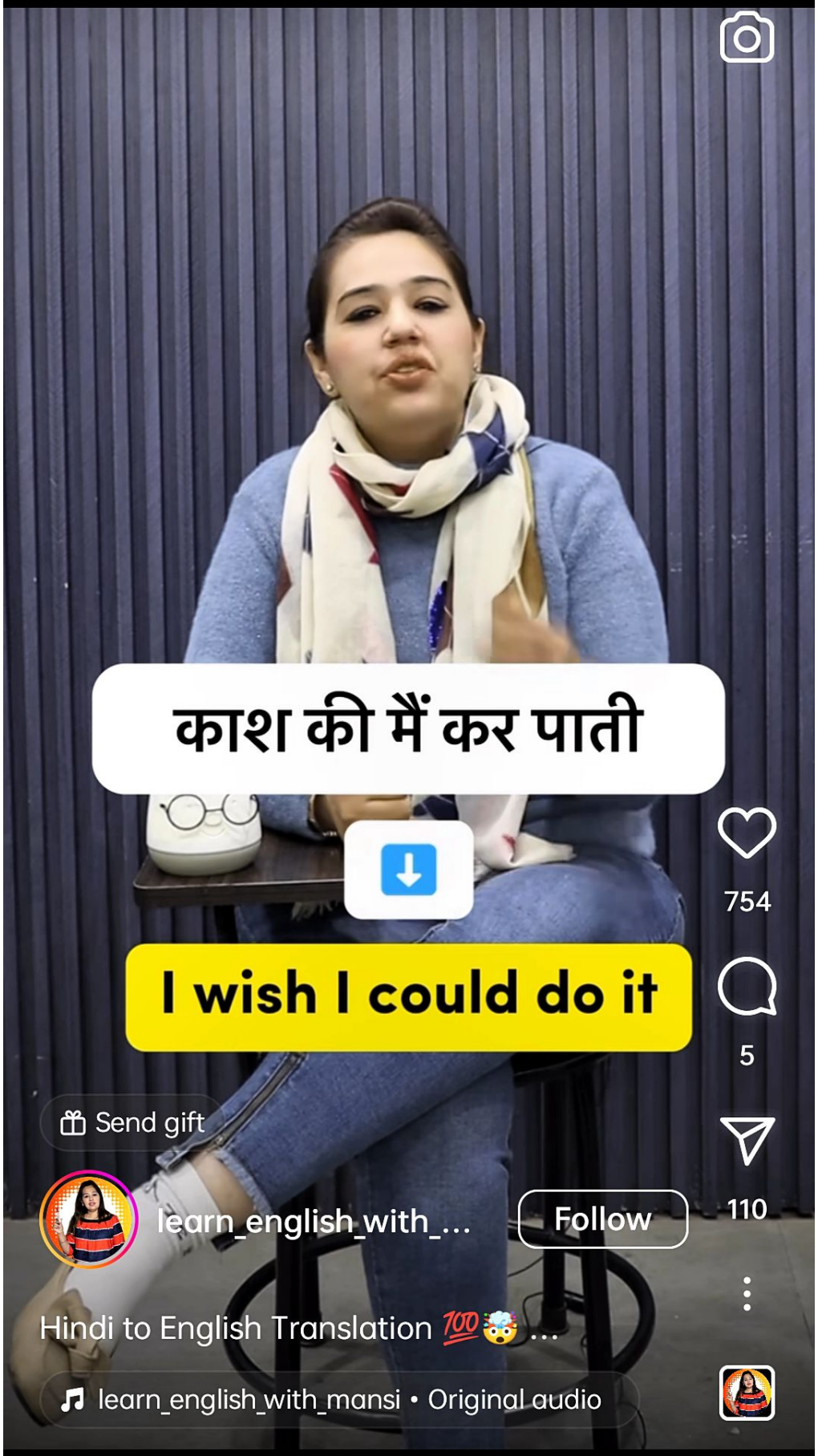
Follow

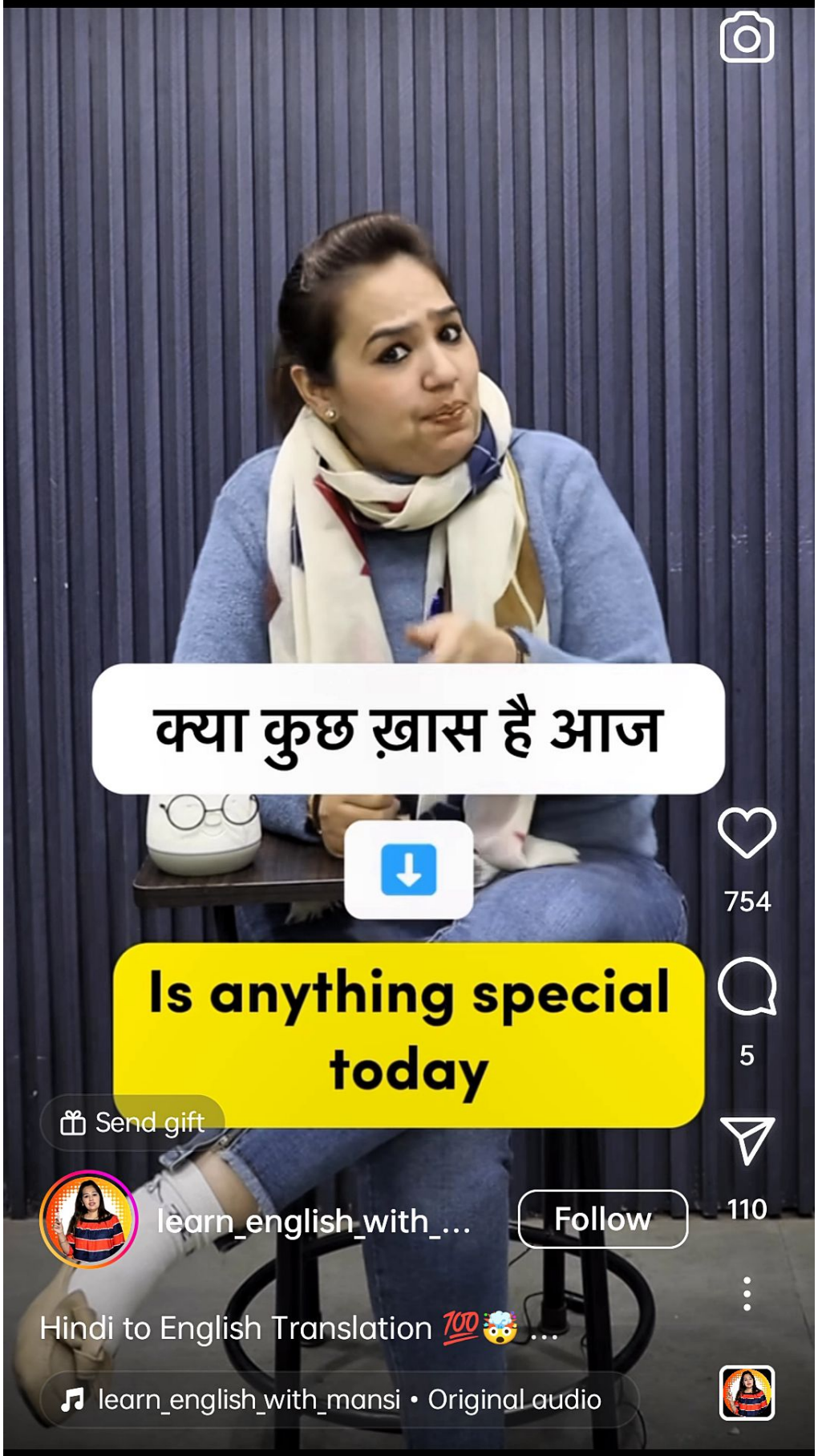
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...

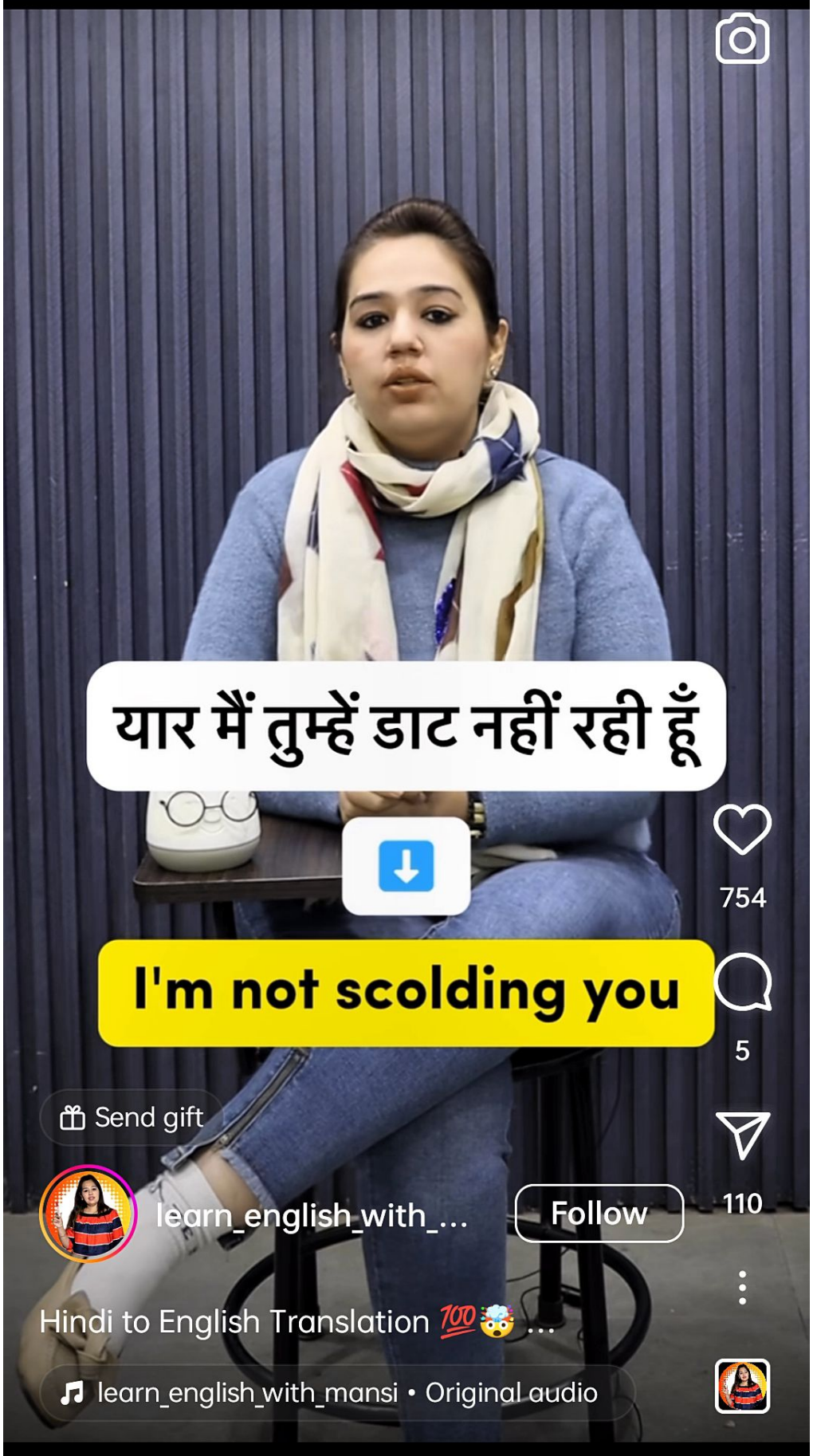
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

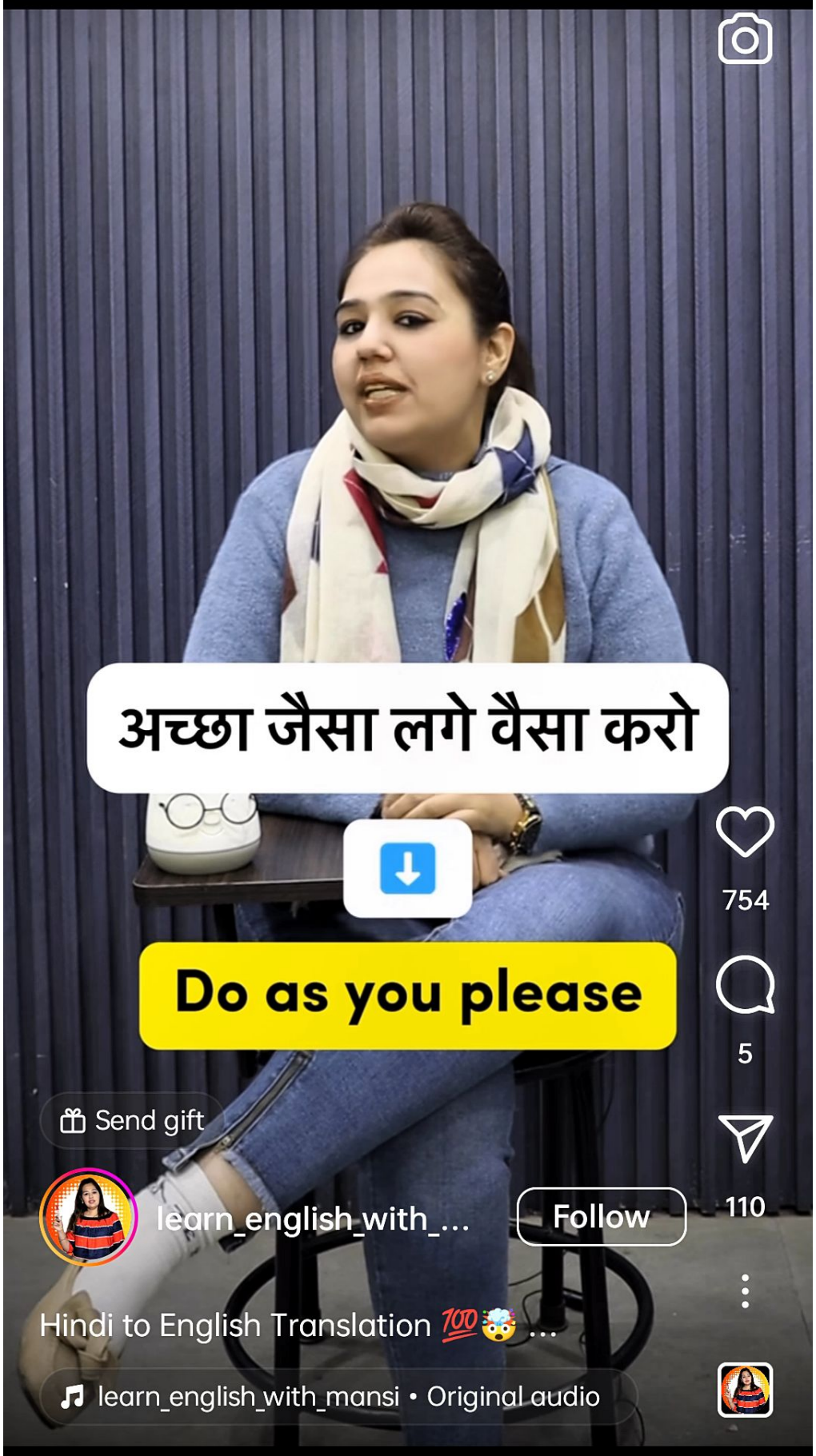

Tinda
Round Gourd
1,700
4
1,852
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

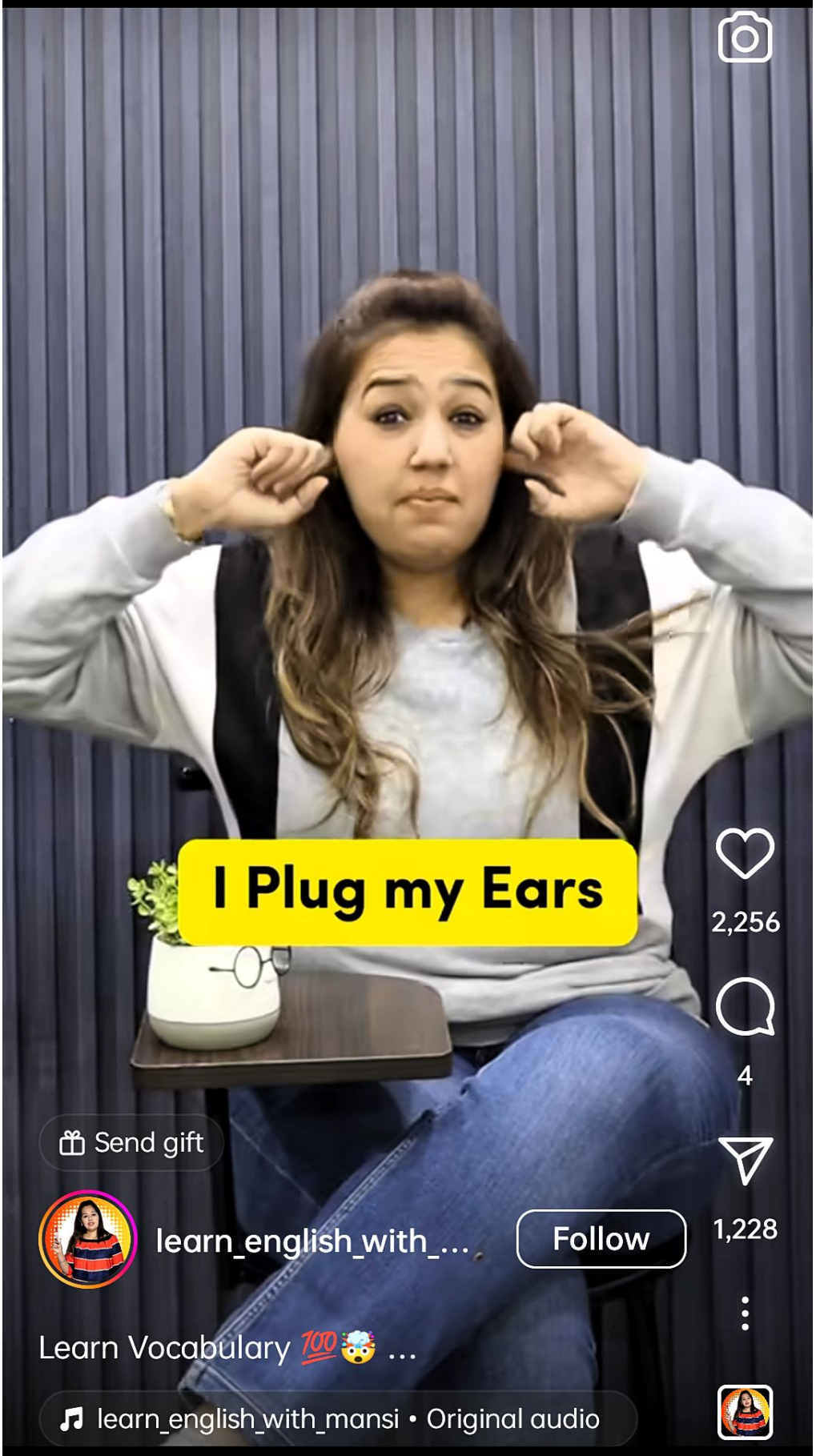

काश की मुझे पता होता
I wish I knew it
754
5
110
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

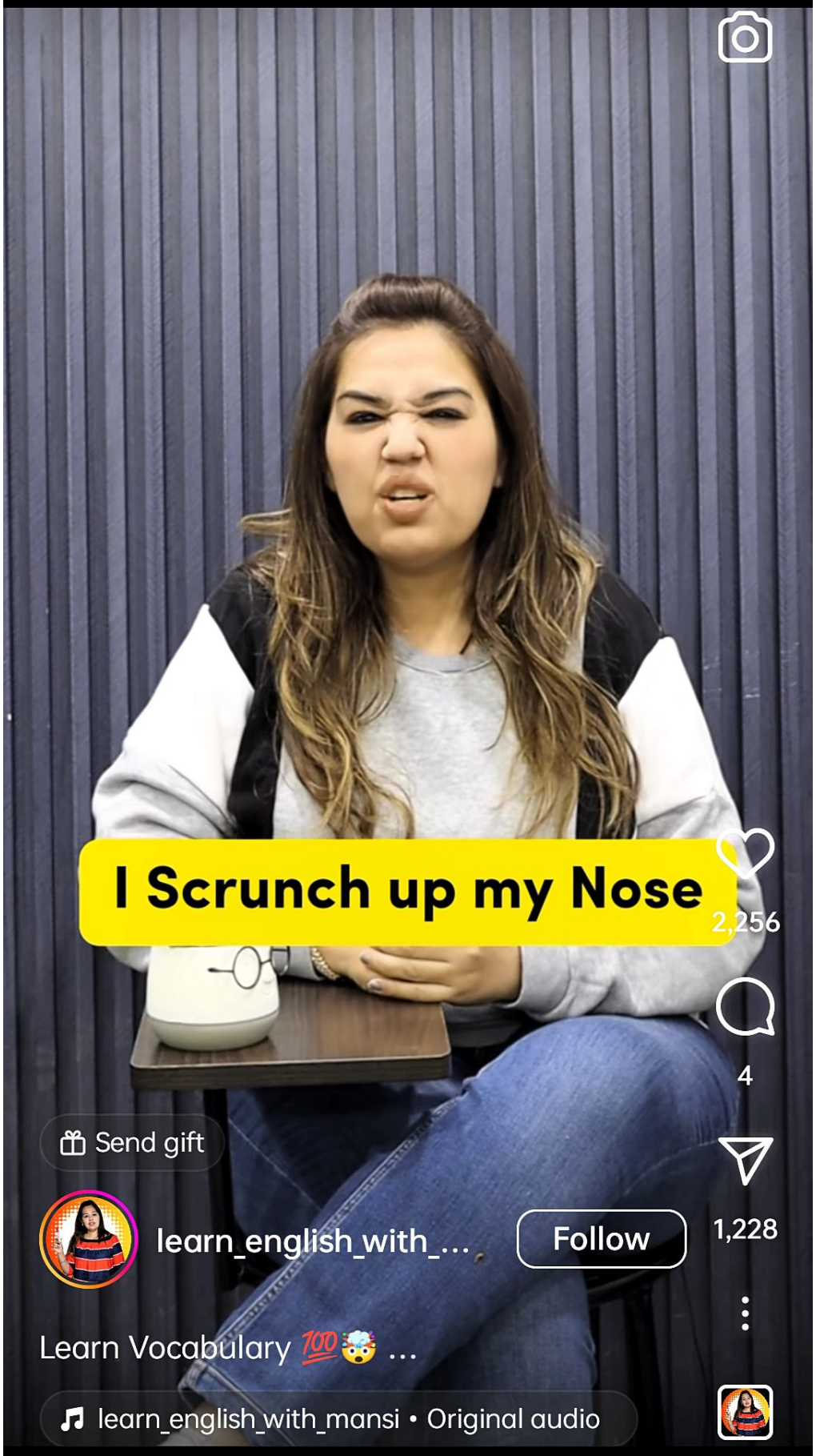

काश की मैं कर पाती
I wish I could do it
754
5
110
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


क्या कुछ ख़ास है आज
Is anything special today
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
754
5
110

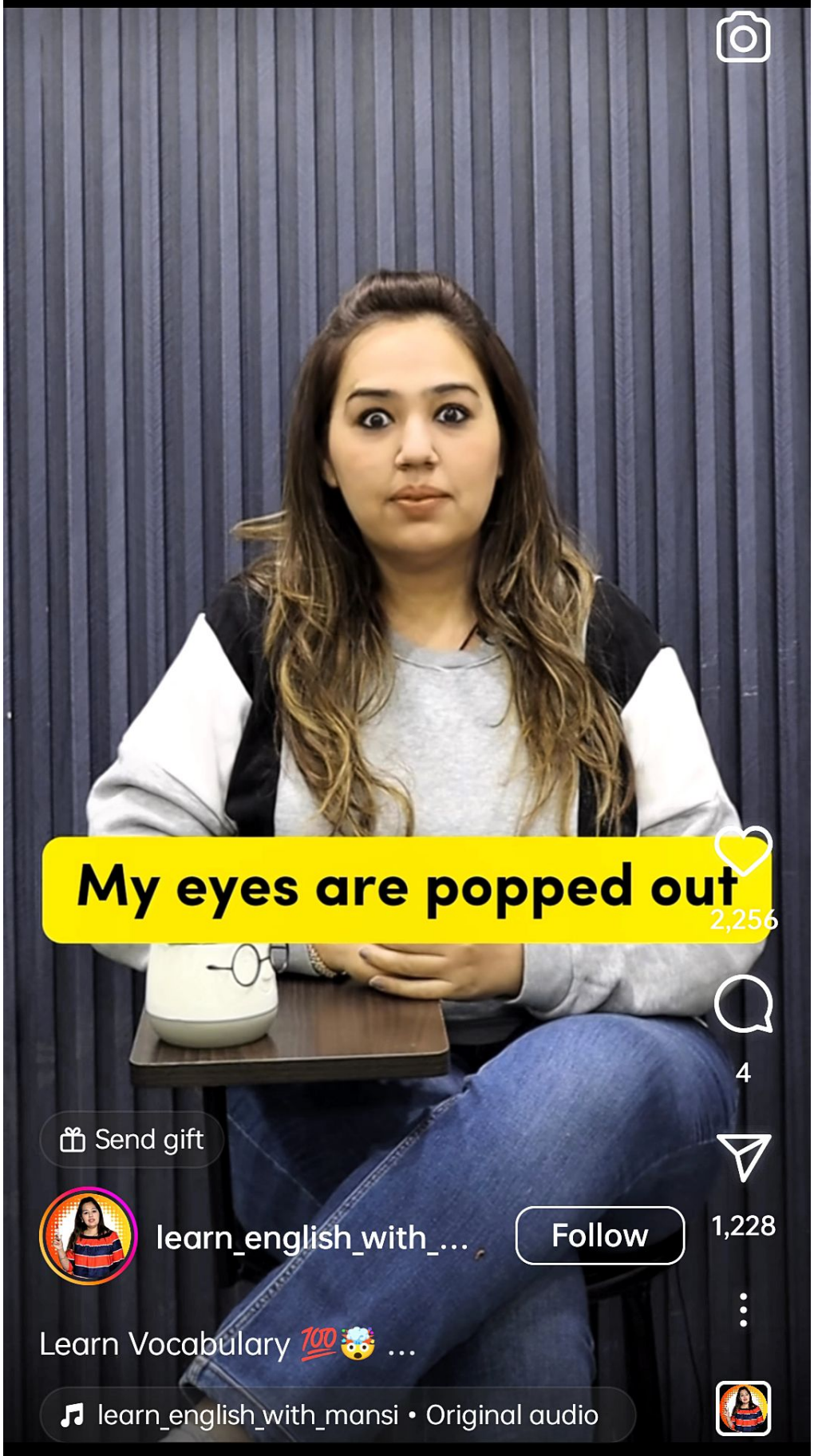

यार मैं तुम्हें डाट नहीं रही हूँ
I'm not scolding you
754
5
110
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

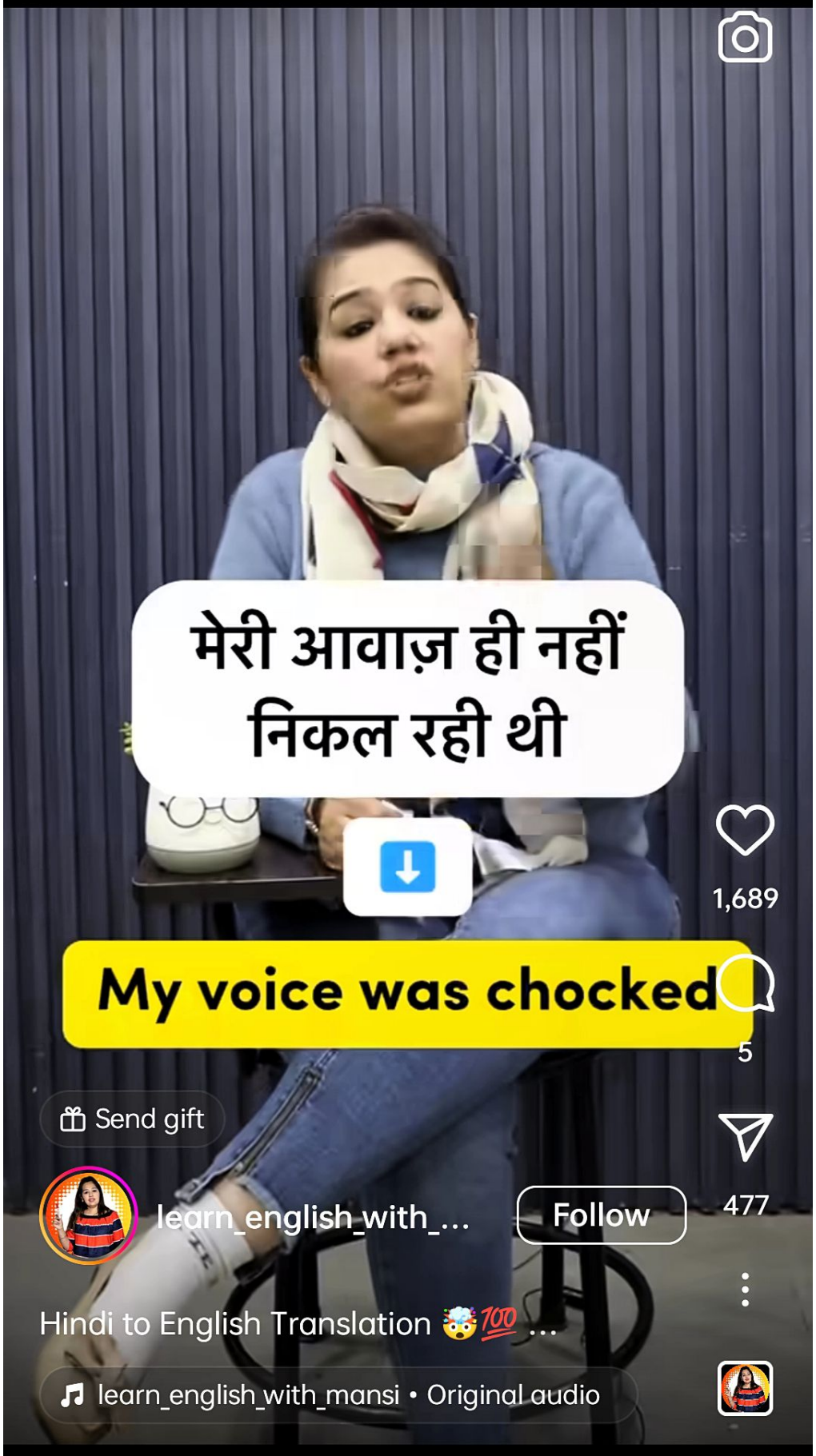

अच्छा जैसा लगे वैसा करो
Do as you please
754
5
110
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


I Plug my Ears
2,256
4
1,228
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

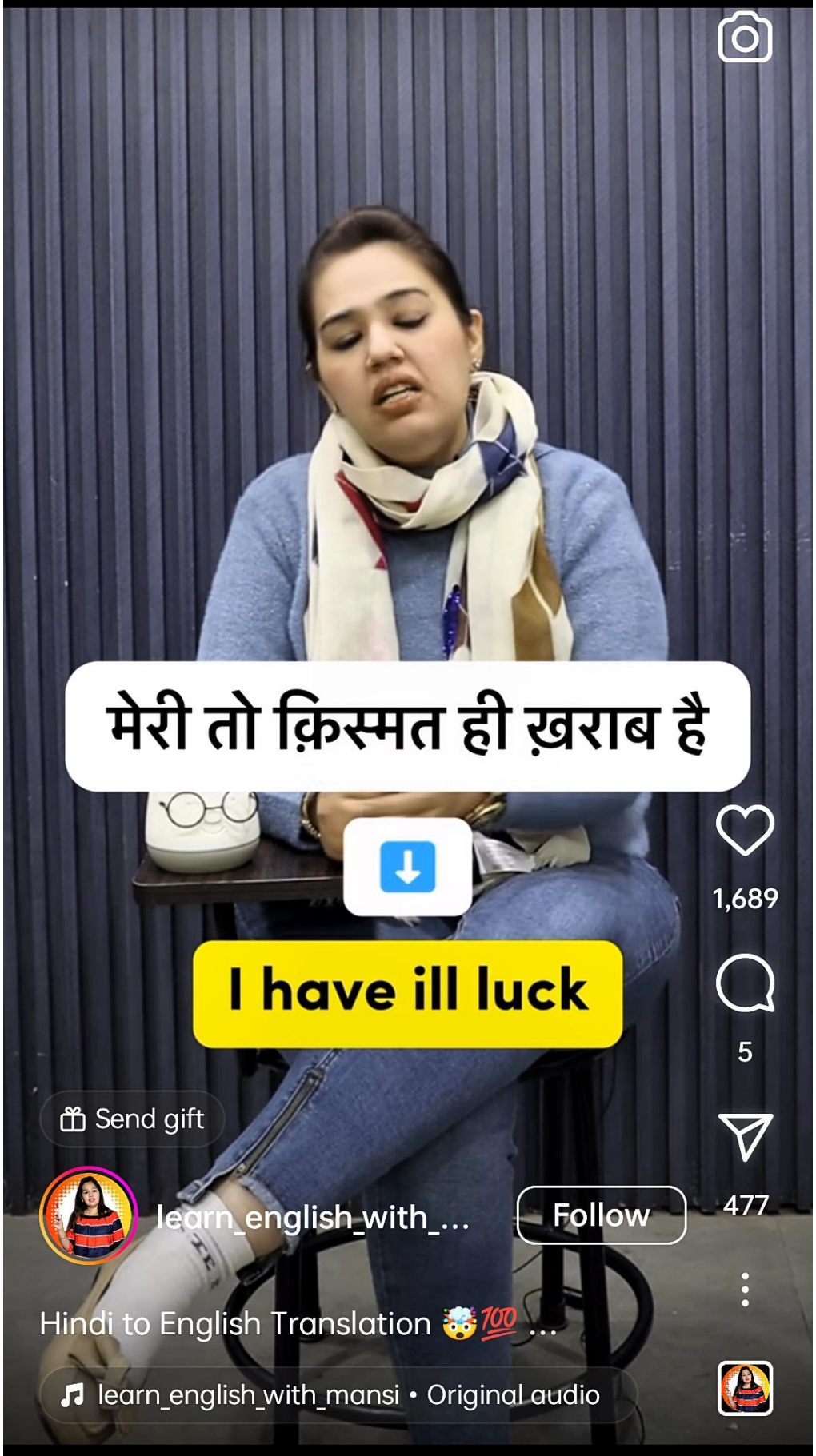

I Scrunch up my Nose
2,256
4
1,228
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

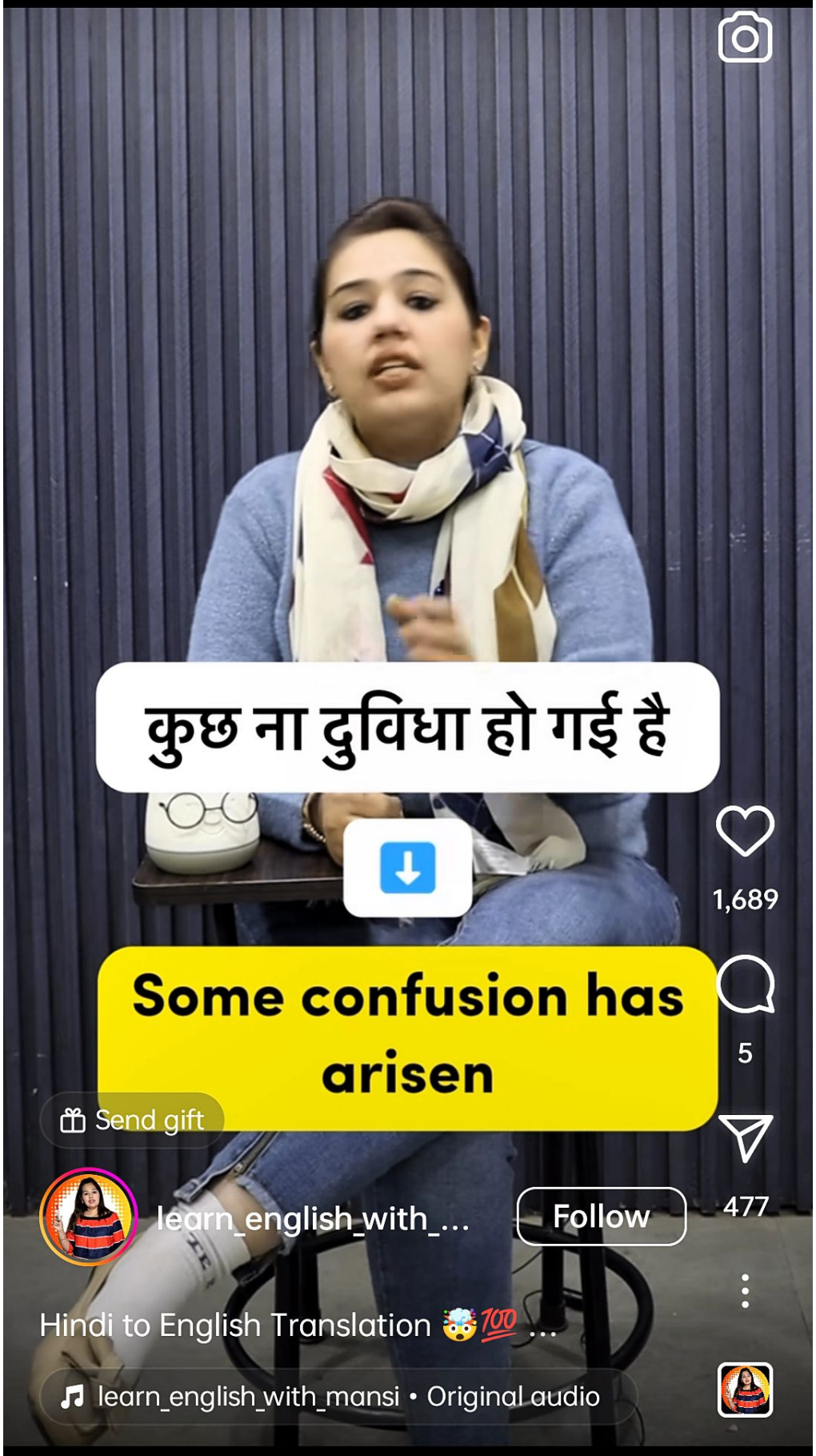

I raise my eyebrows
2,256
4
1,228
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

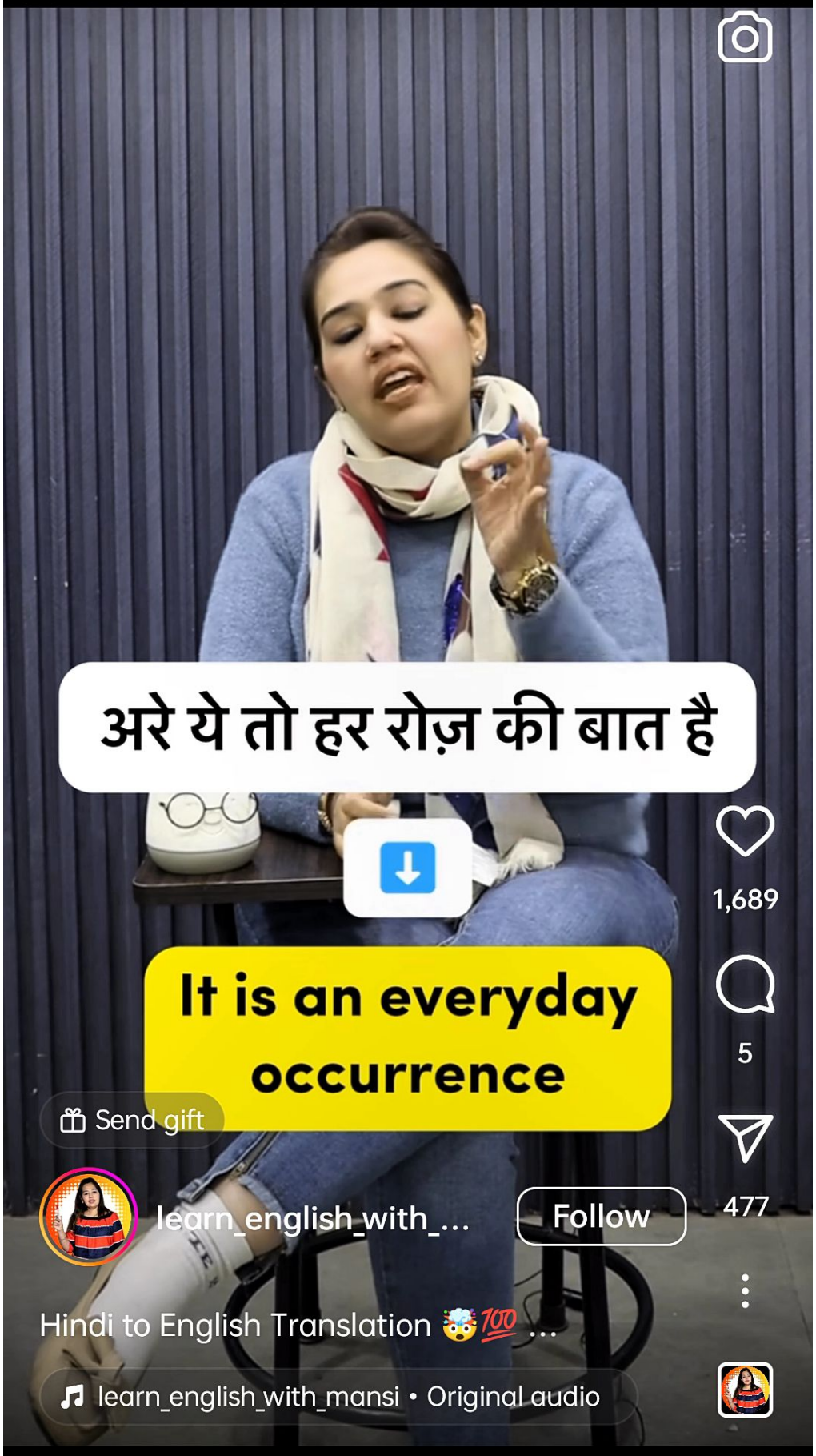

My eyes are popped out
2,256
4
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
1,228
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

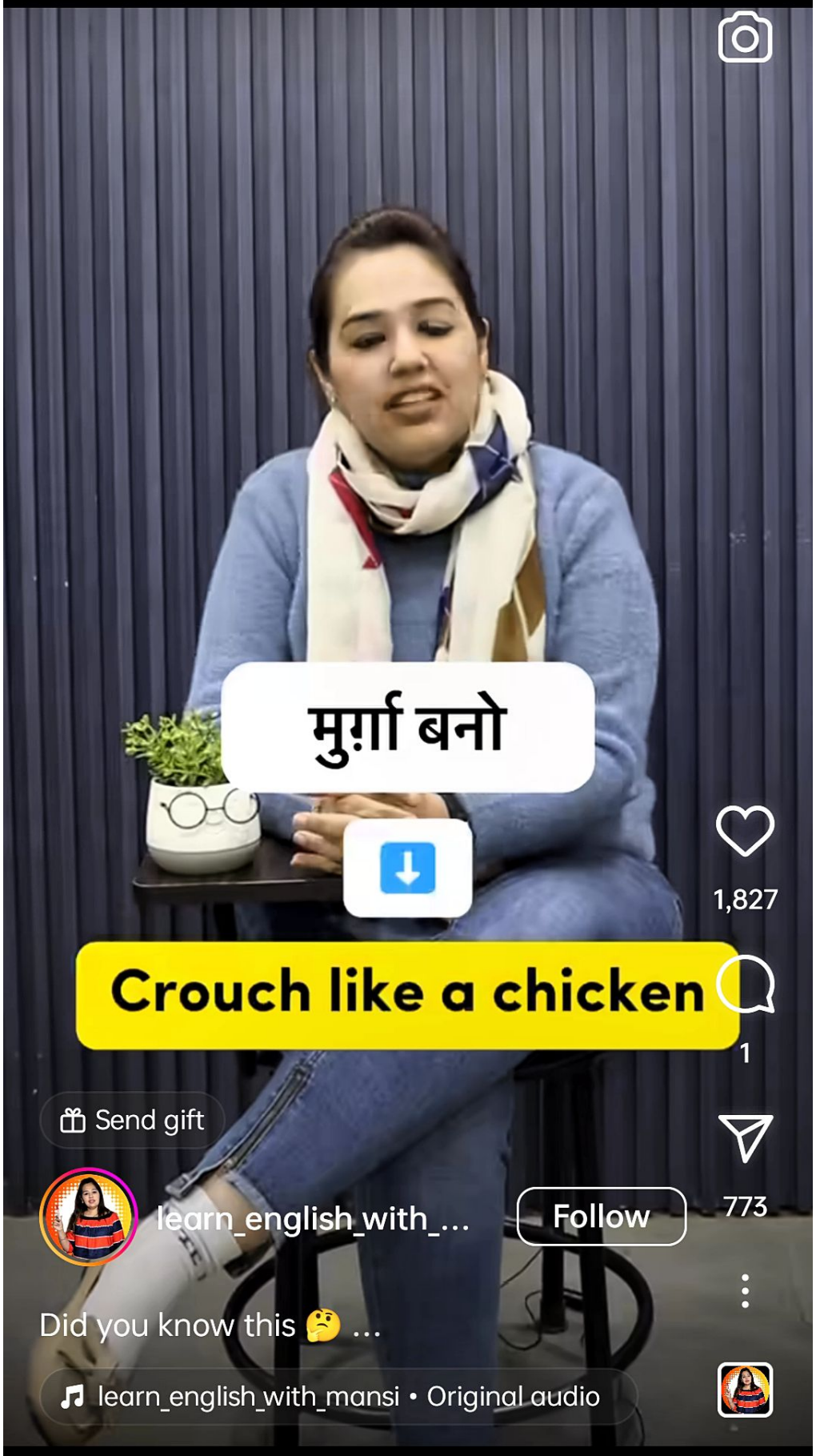

मेरी आवाज़ ही नहीं
निकल रही थी
My voice was chocked
1,689
5
477
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

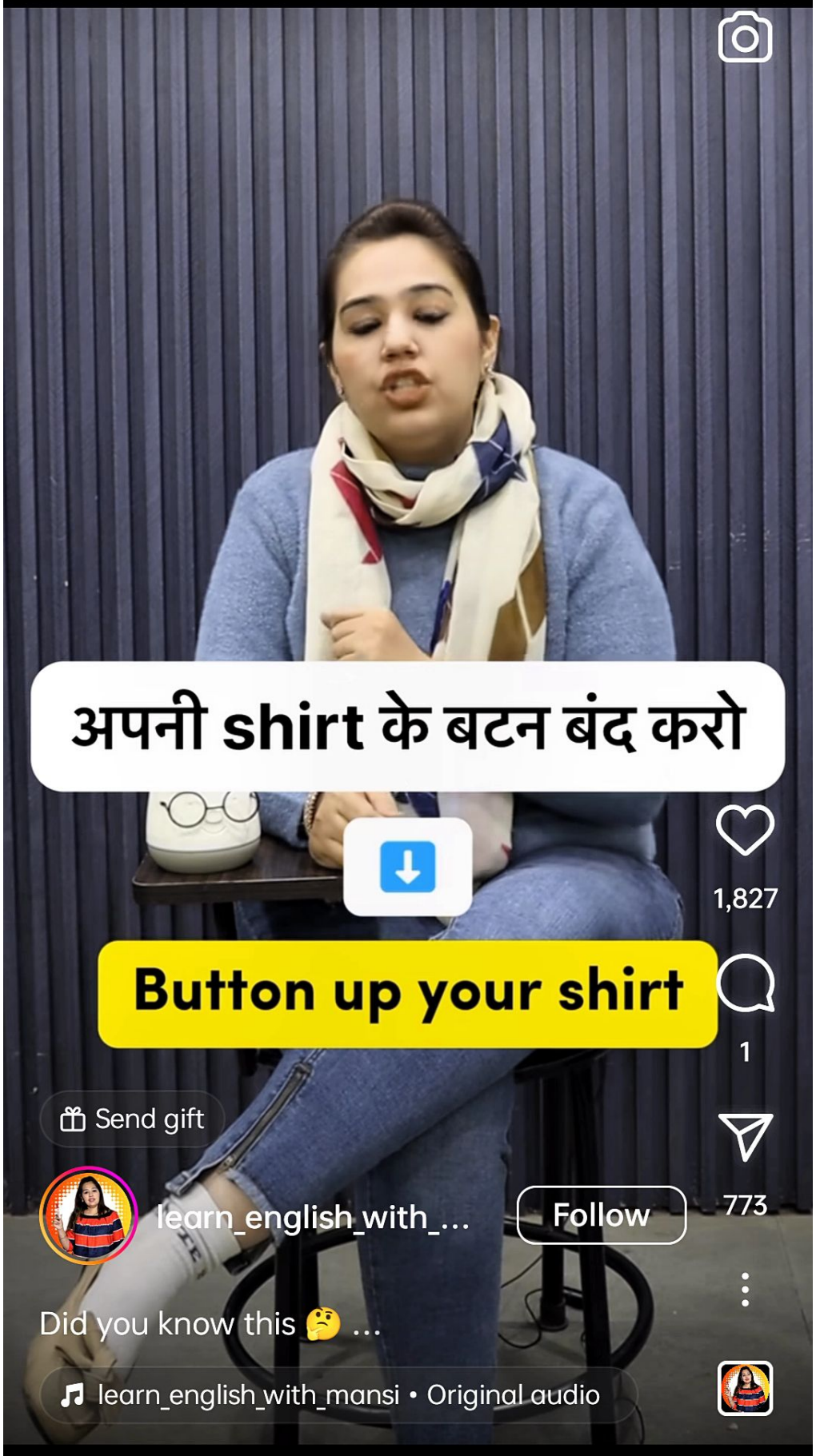

वो आँसूँ बहा रही थी
She was shedding tears
1,689
5
477
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

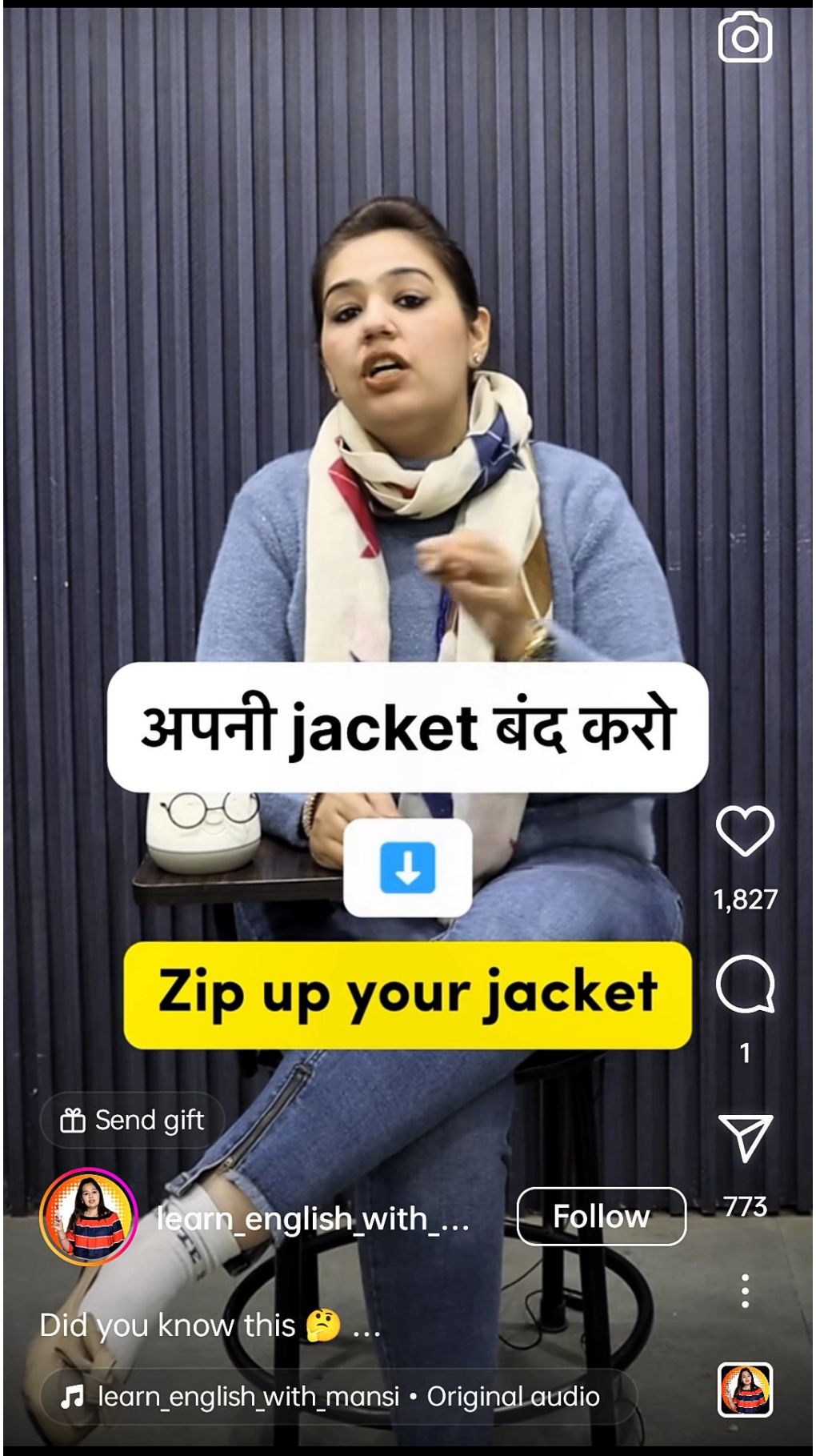

मेरी तो क़िस्मत ही ख़राब है
I have ill luck
1,689
5
477
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

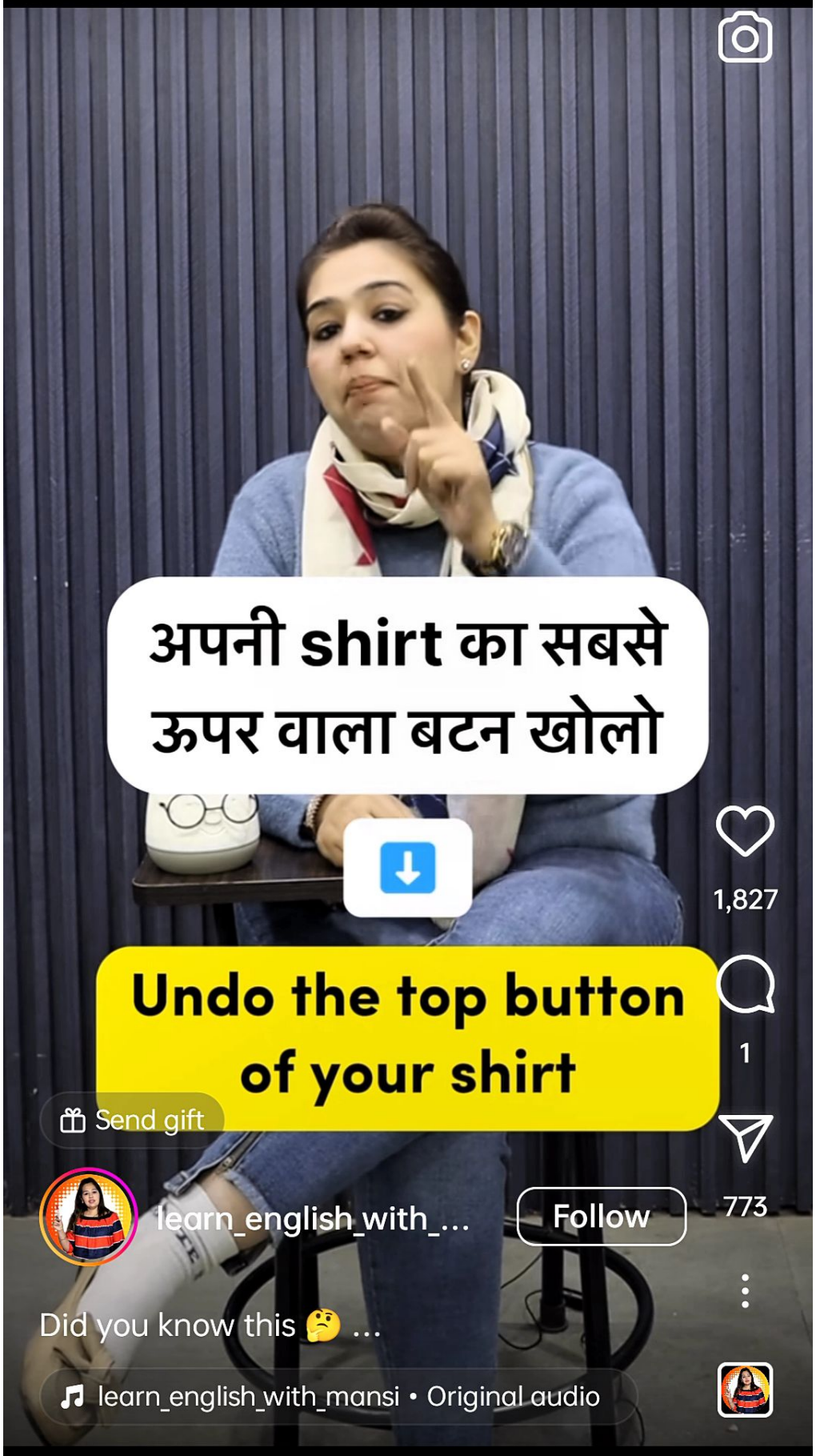

कुछ ना दुविधा हो गई है
Some confusion has arisen
1,689
5
477
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

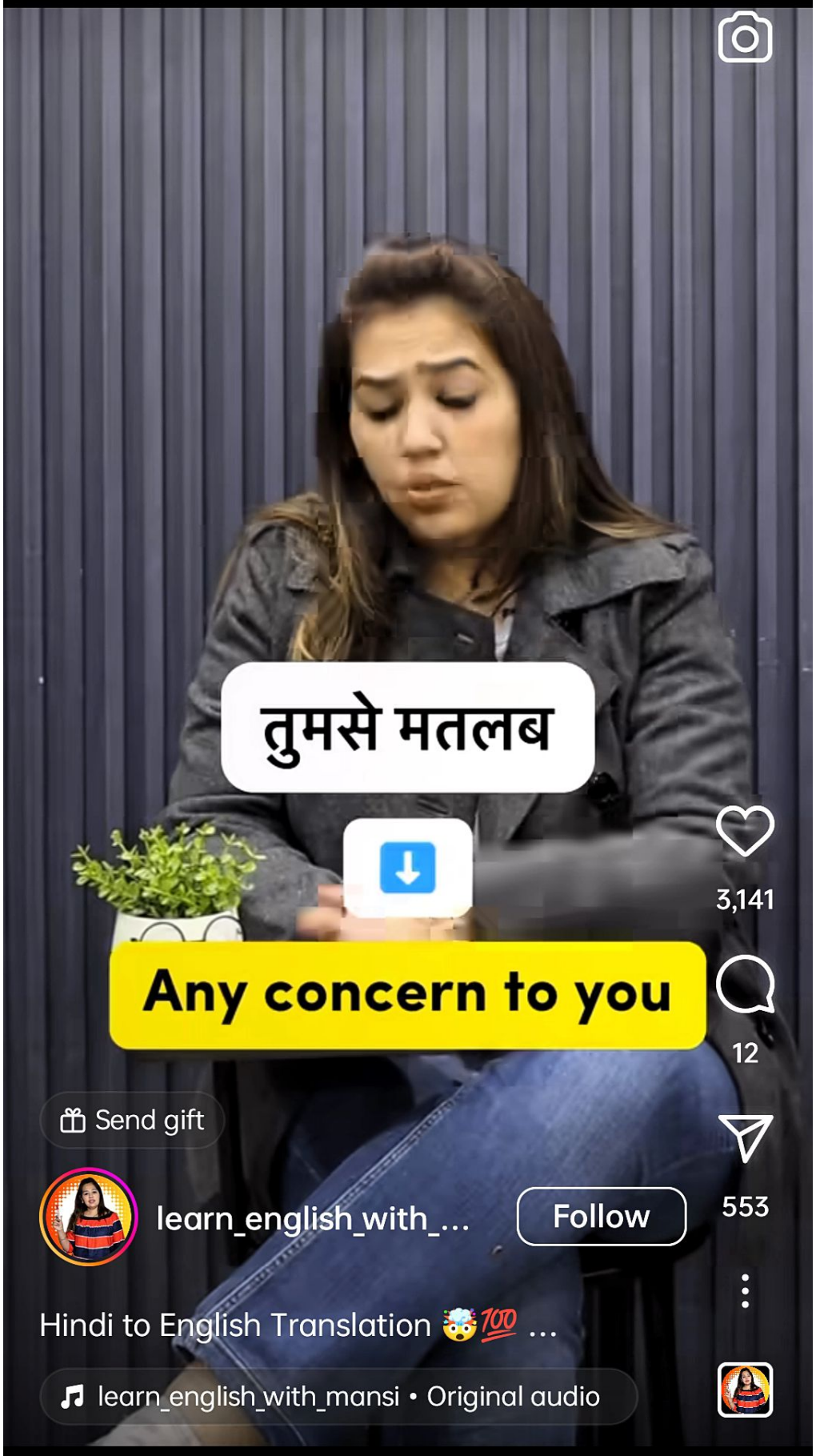

अरे ये तो हर रोज़ की बात है
It is an everyday occurrence
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
1,689
5
477

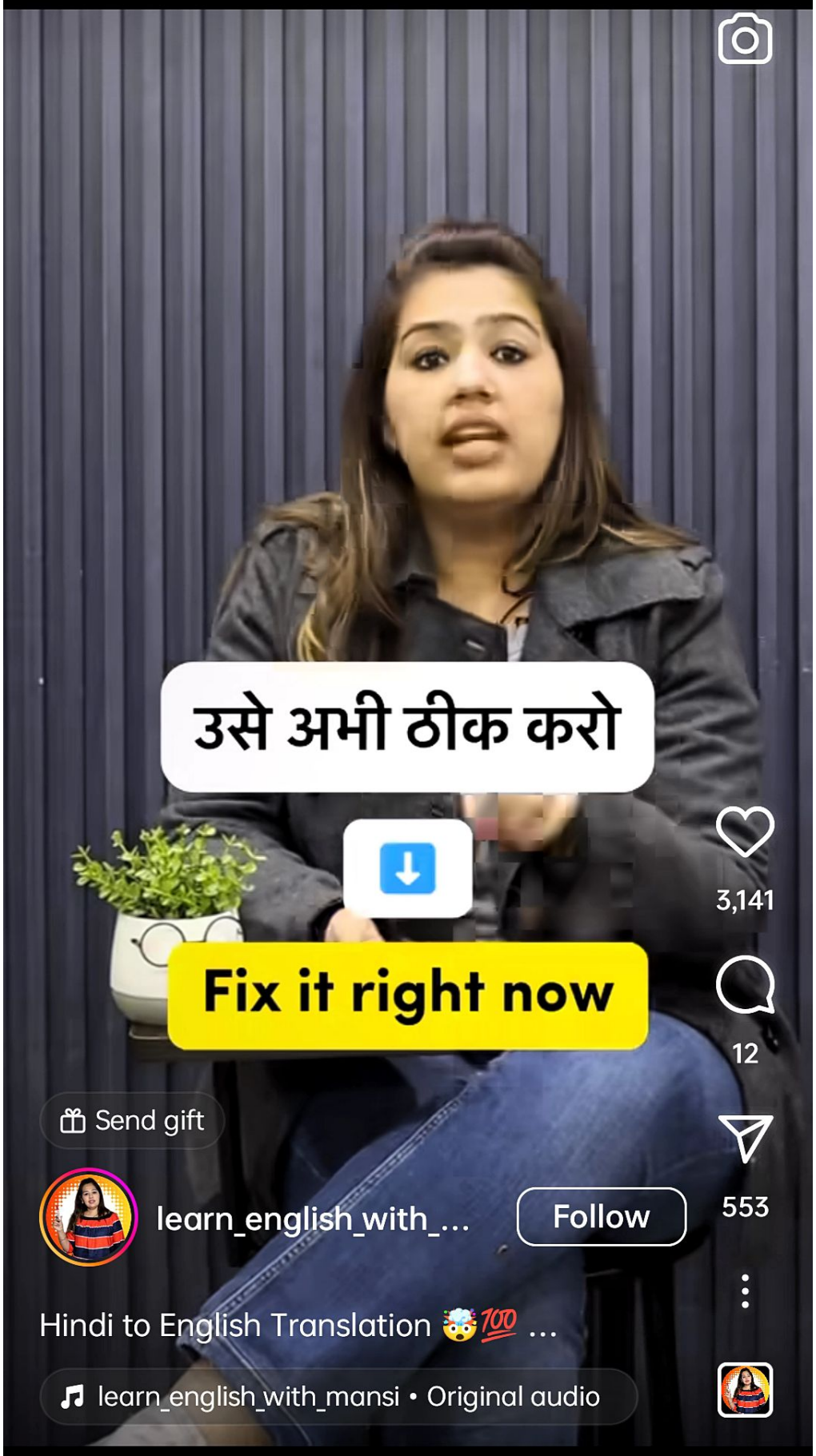

मुर्ग़ा बनो
Crouch like a chicken
1,827
1
773
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Did you know this 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

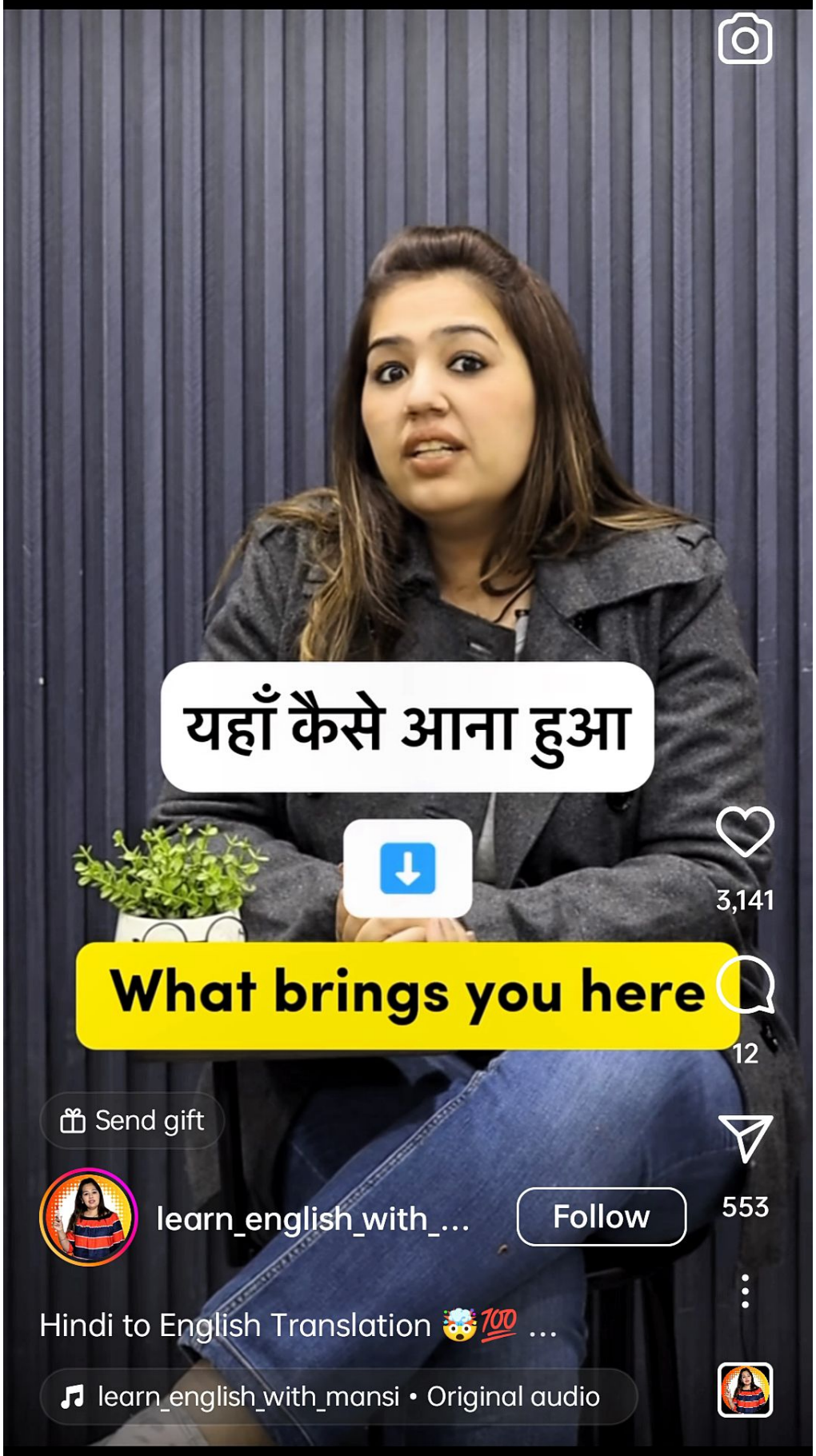

अपनी shirt के बटन बंद करो
Button up your shirt
1,827
1
773
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Did you know this 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


अपनी jacket बंद करो
Zip up your jacket
1,827
1
773
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Did you know this 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


अपनी shirt का सबसे ऊपर वाला बटन खोलो
Undo the top button of your shirt
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Did you know this 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
1,827
1
773


तुमसे मतलब
Any concern to you
3,141
12
553
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


उसे अभी ठीक करो
Fix it right now
3,141
12
553
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


यहाँ कैसे आना हुआ
What brings you here
3,141
12
553
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

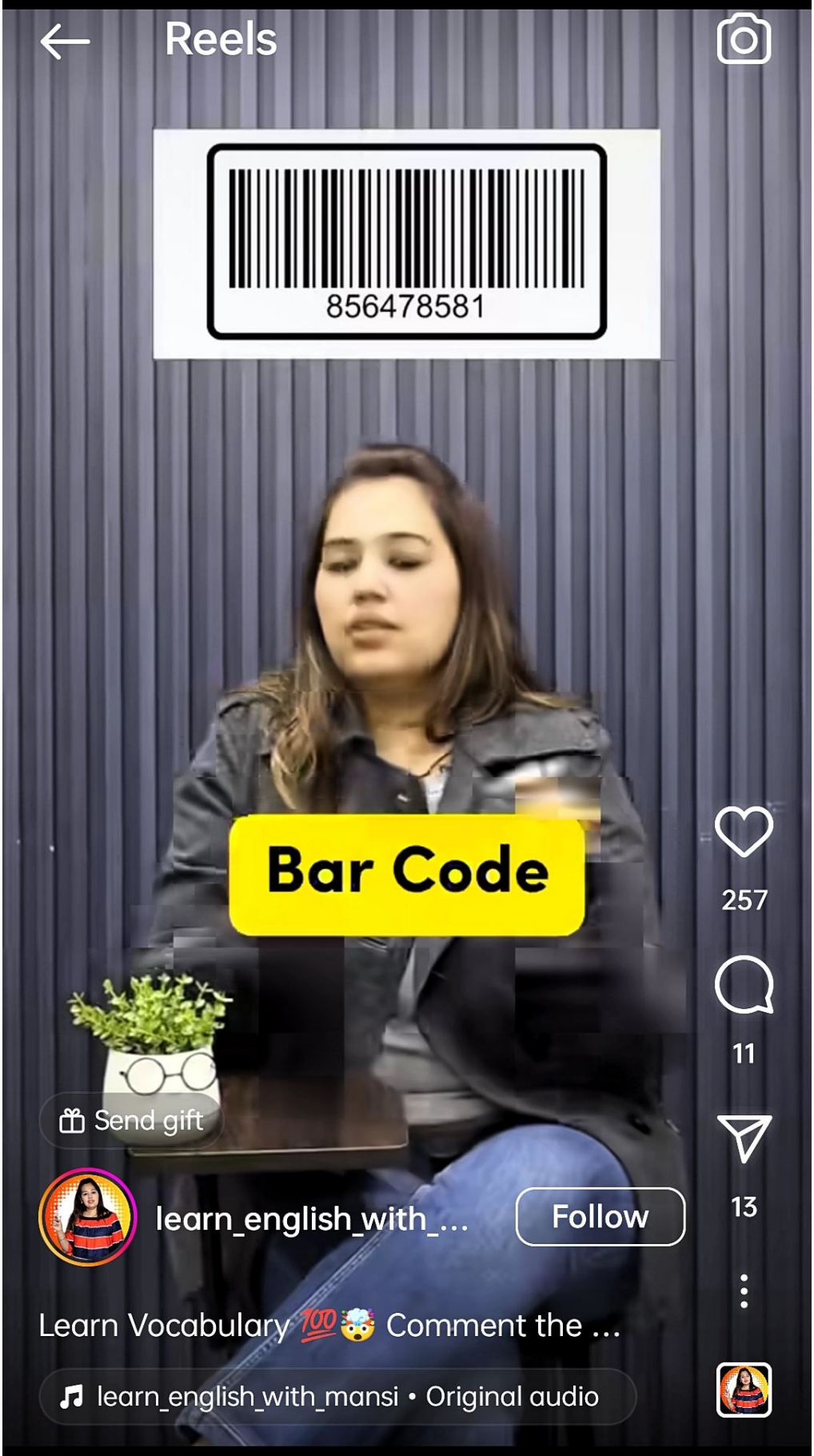

इतने दिनों से कहाँ थे
Where were you so long
3,141
12
553
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


अब मिलते रहना
Be in touch
3,141
12
553
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


कुछ लेलो
Have something
3,141
12
553
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


तुमने सब गड़बड़ करदी
You messed up everything
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
3,141
12
553


अब तुम बच्चे नहीं रहे
You are not a kid anymore
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
3,141
12
553


6:32
Reels
856478581
Bar Code
257
11
13
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 Comment the ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

6:32
Reels
Bar Code Scanner
257
11
13
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 Comment the ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio



Price Tag

257

11

13

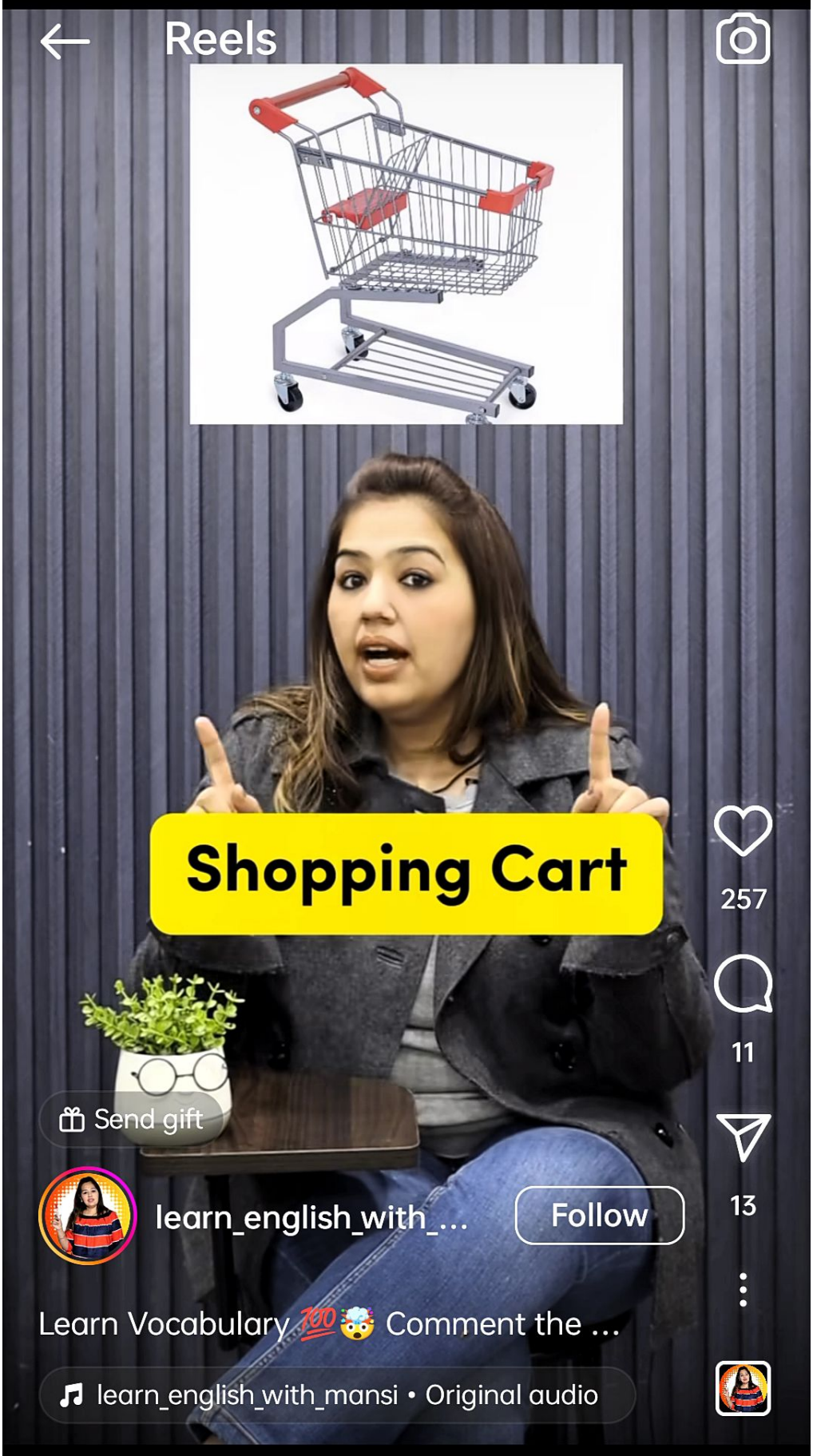
Send gift

learn_english_with_...

Follow

Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 Comment the ...

learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Reels
Shopping Cart
257
11
13
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 Comment the ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

Reels



Trolley Cart

257

11

13

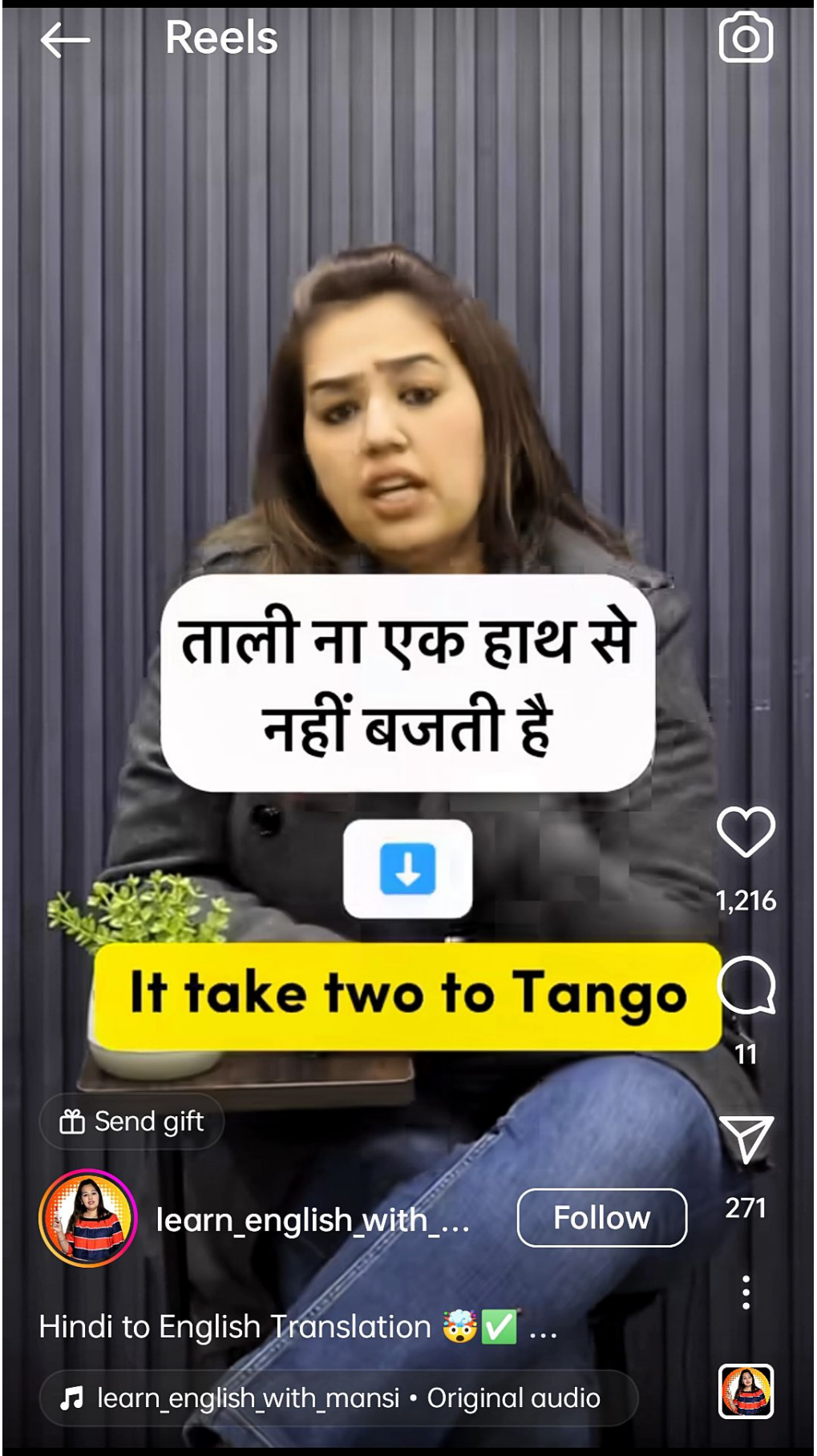
Send gift

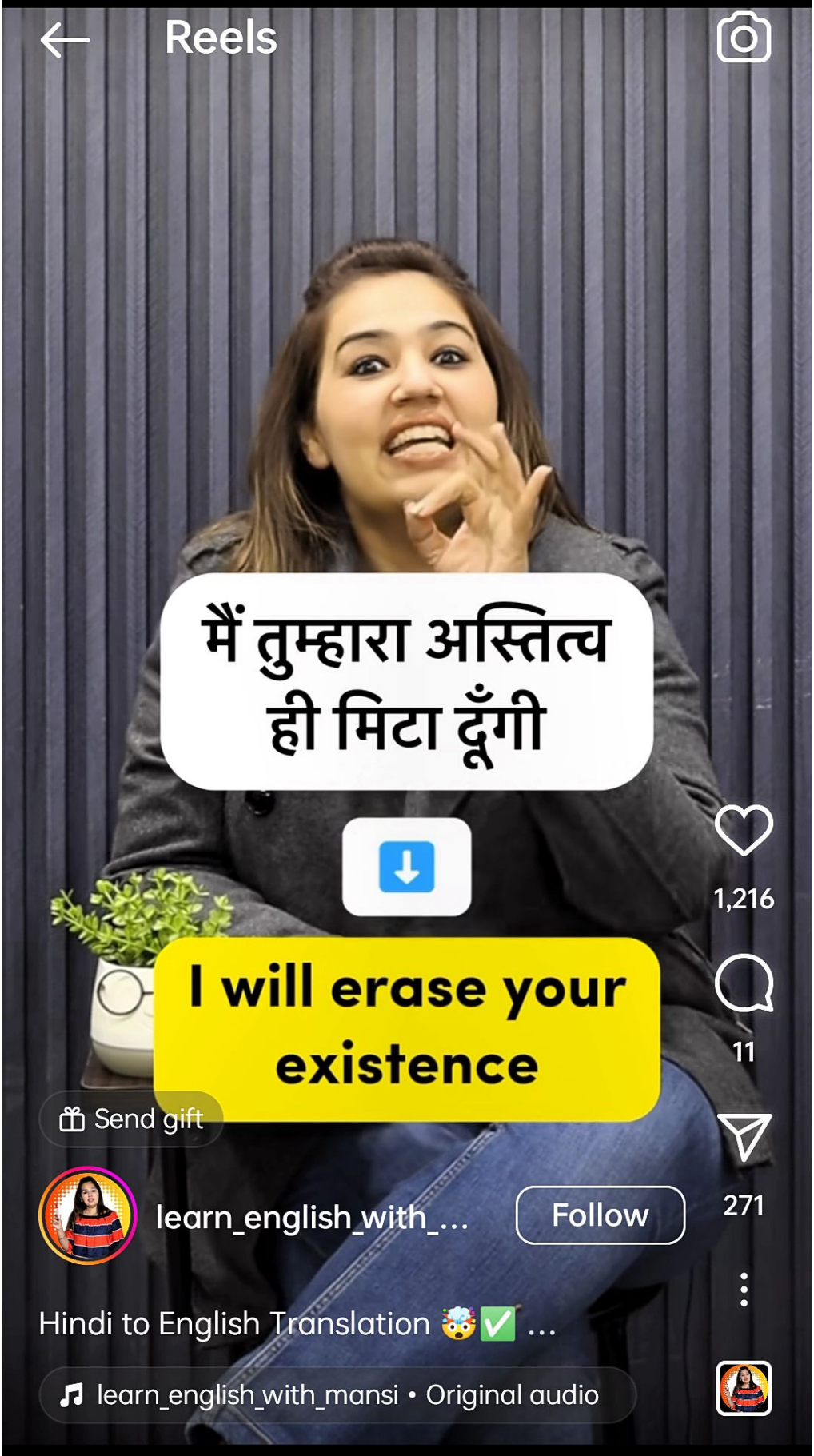
learn_english_with_...

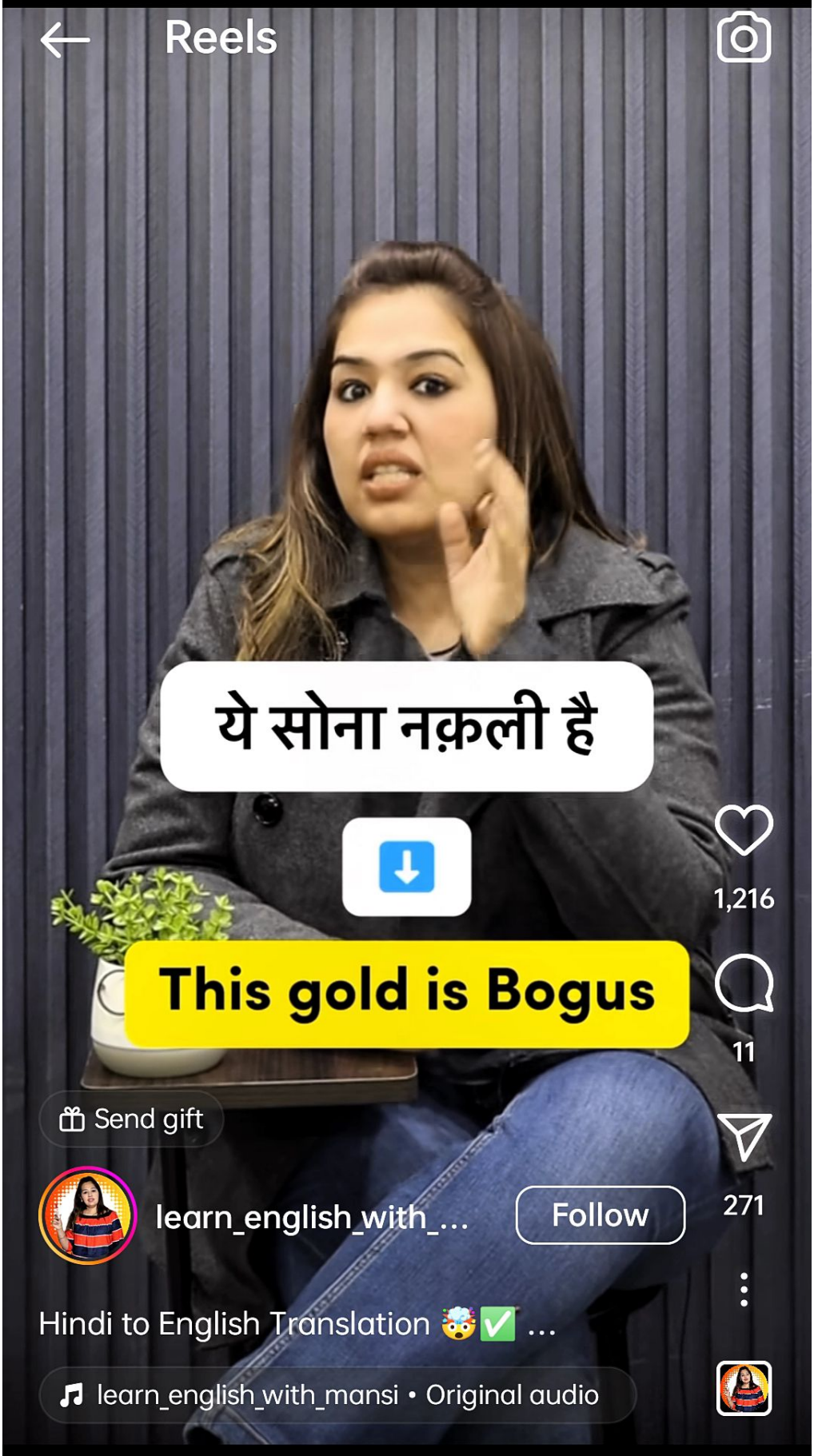
Follow

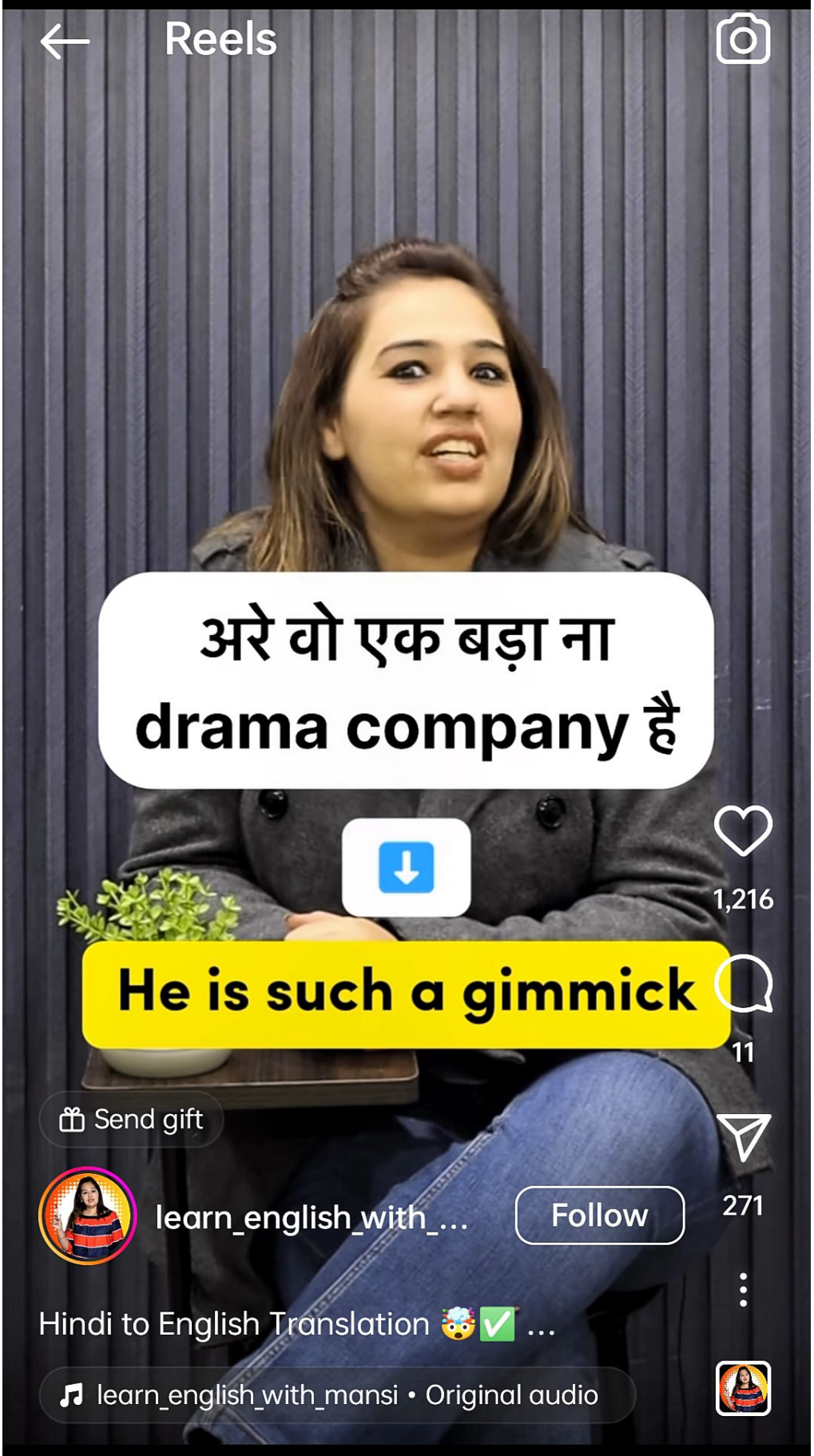
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 Comment the ...

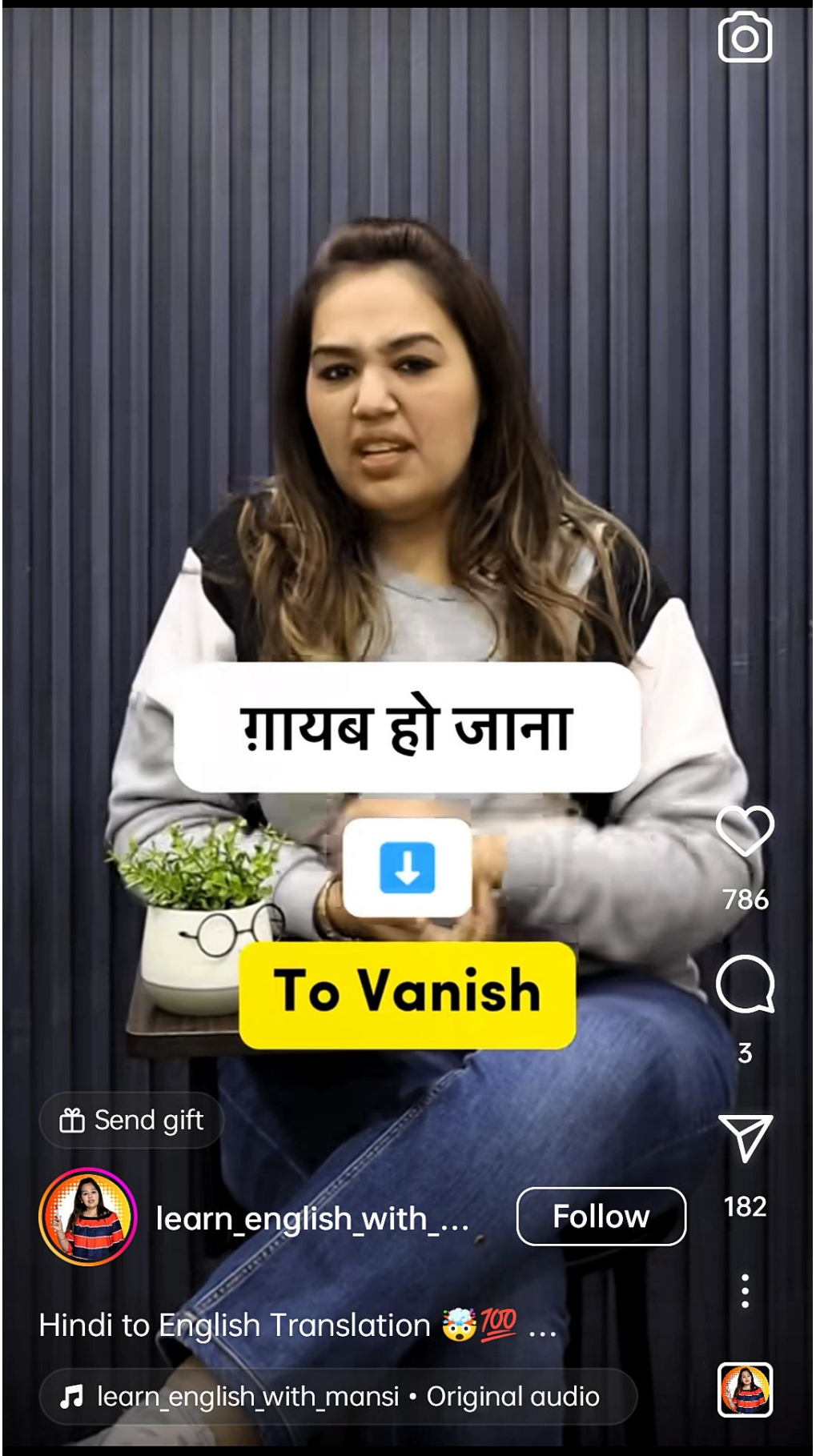
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

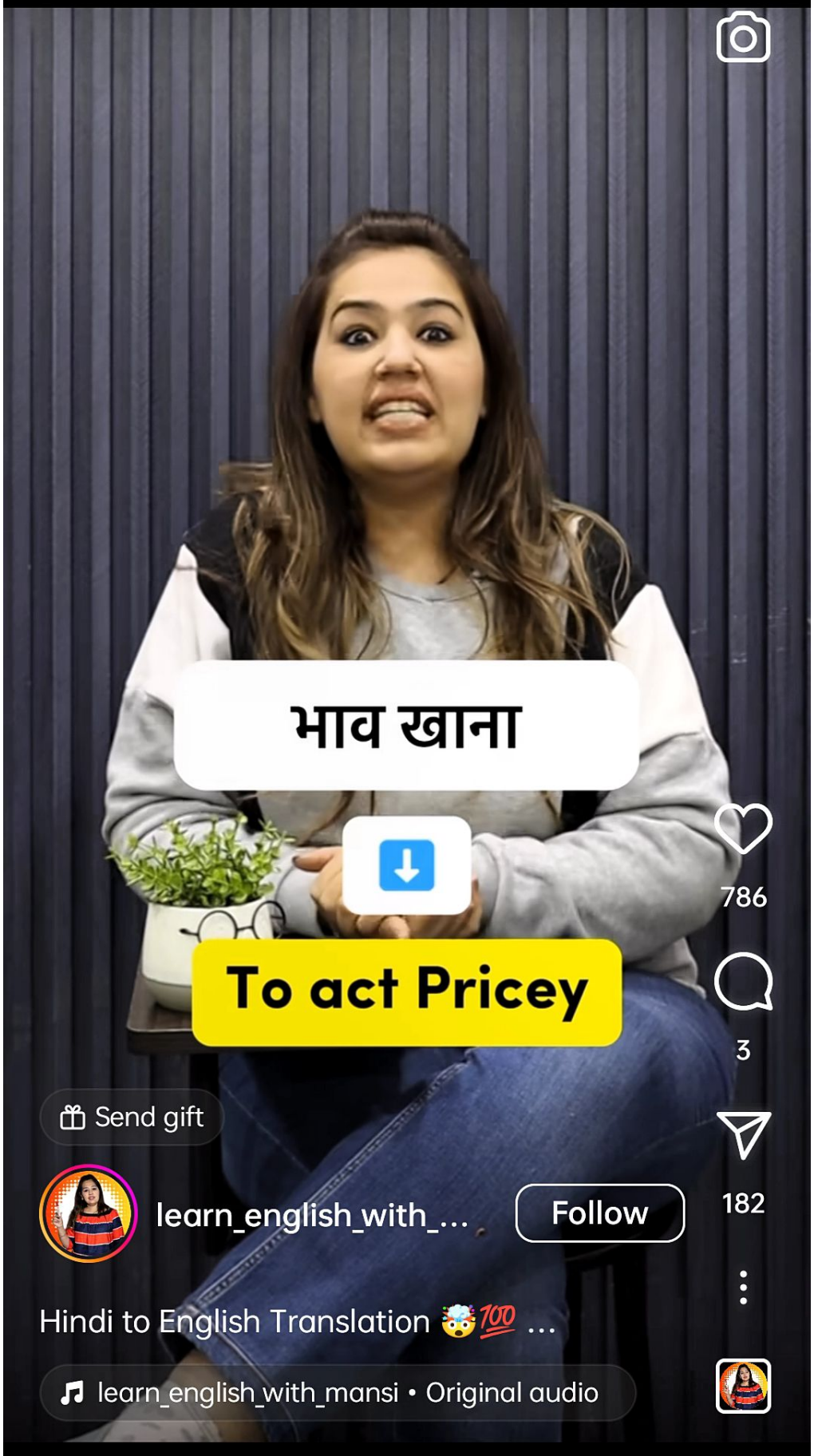

6:32
Reels
ताली ना एक हाथ से
नहीं बजती है
It take two to Tango
1,216
11
271
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


6:33
Reels
मैं तुम्हारा अस्तित्व
ही मिटा दूँगी
I will erase your
existence
1,216
11
271
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Reels
ये सोना नक़ली है
This gold is Bogus
1,216
11
271
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

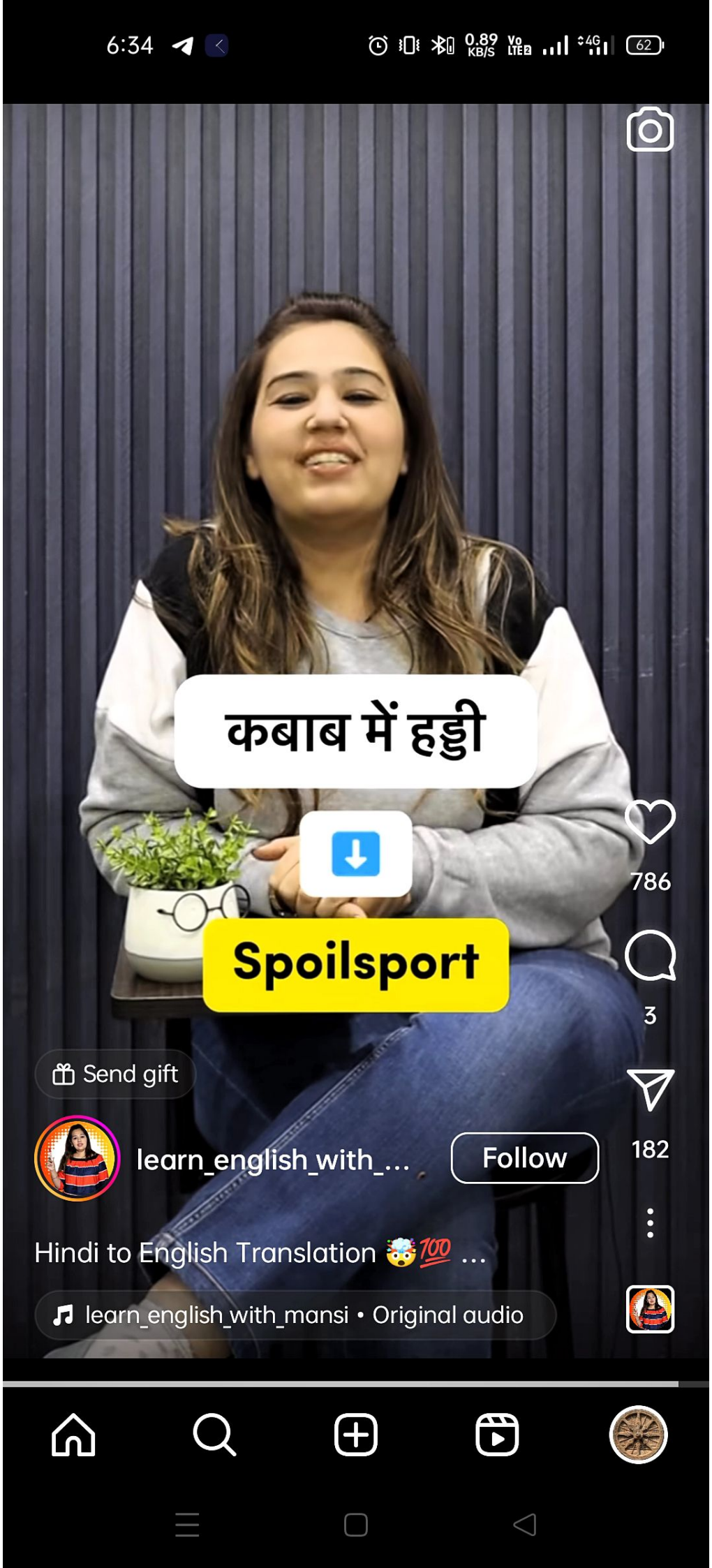

6:33
Reels
अरे वो एक बड़ा ना
drama company है
He is such a gimmick
1,216
11
271
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

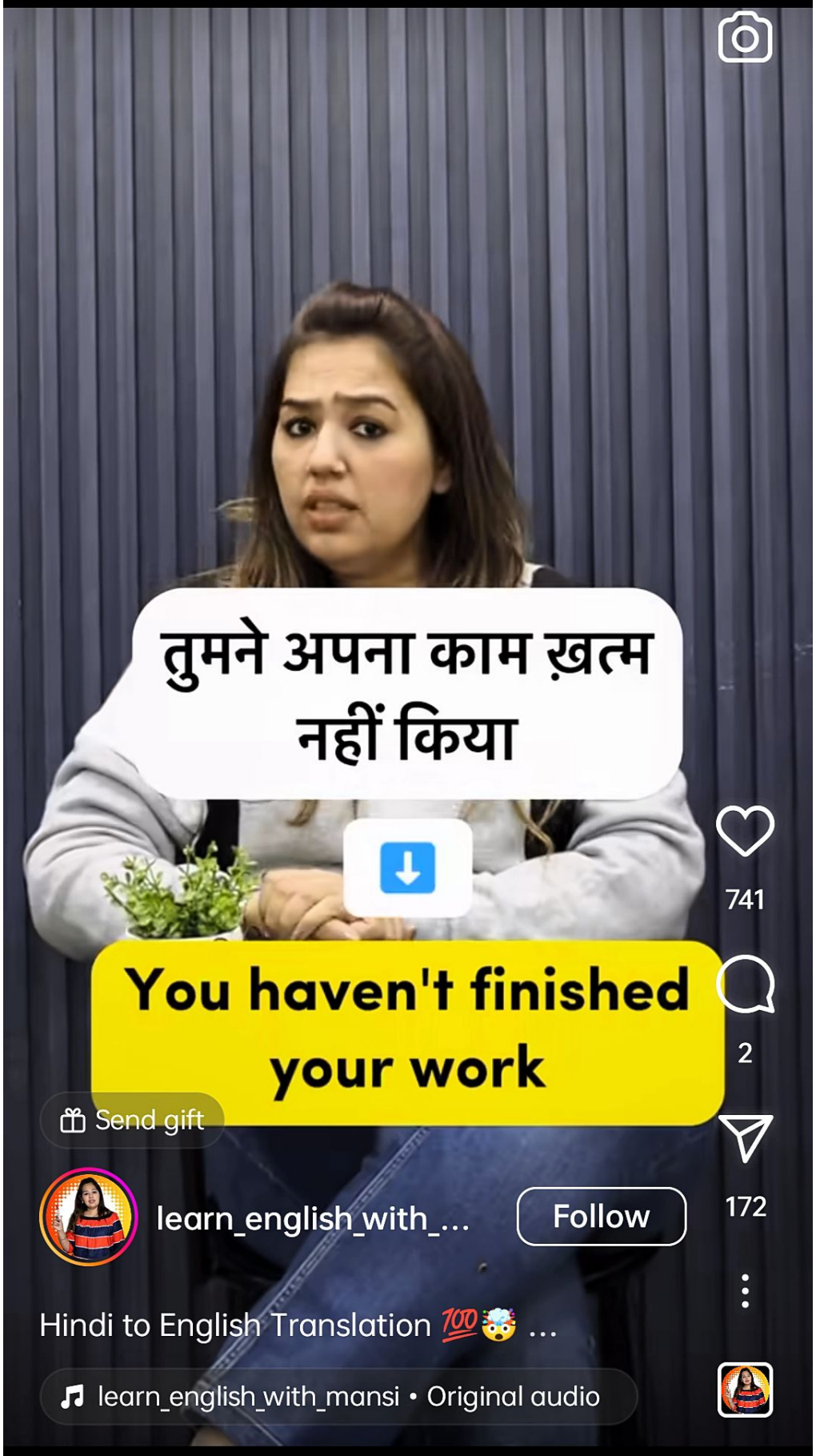

ग़ायब हो जाना
To Vanish
786
3
182
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

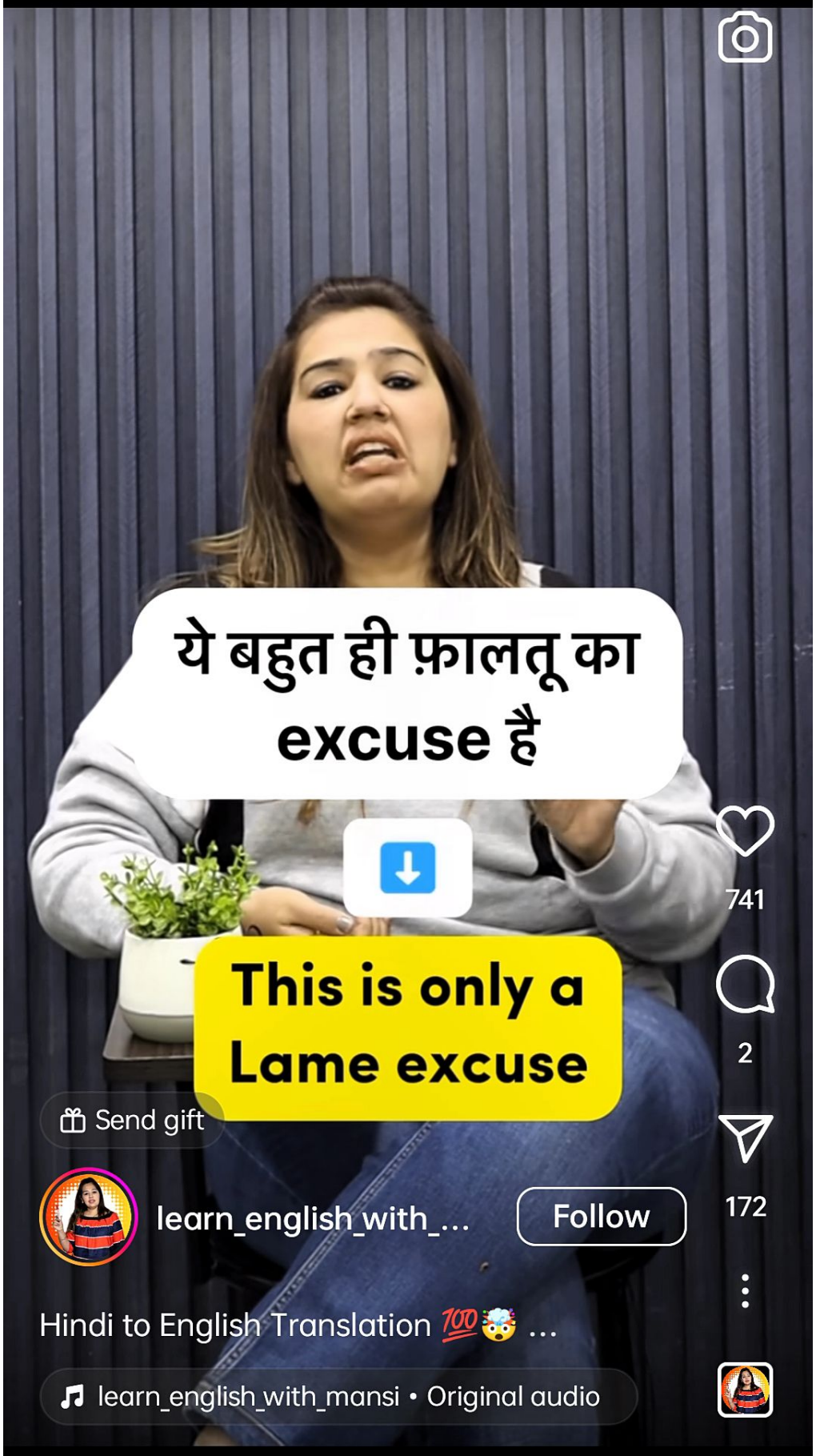

भाव खाना
To act Pricey
786
3
182
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


निचोड़ना
To wring out
786
3
182
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


साकार करना
To Materialize
786
3
182
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

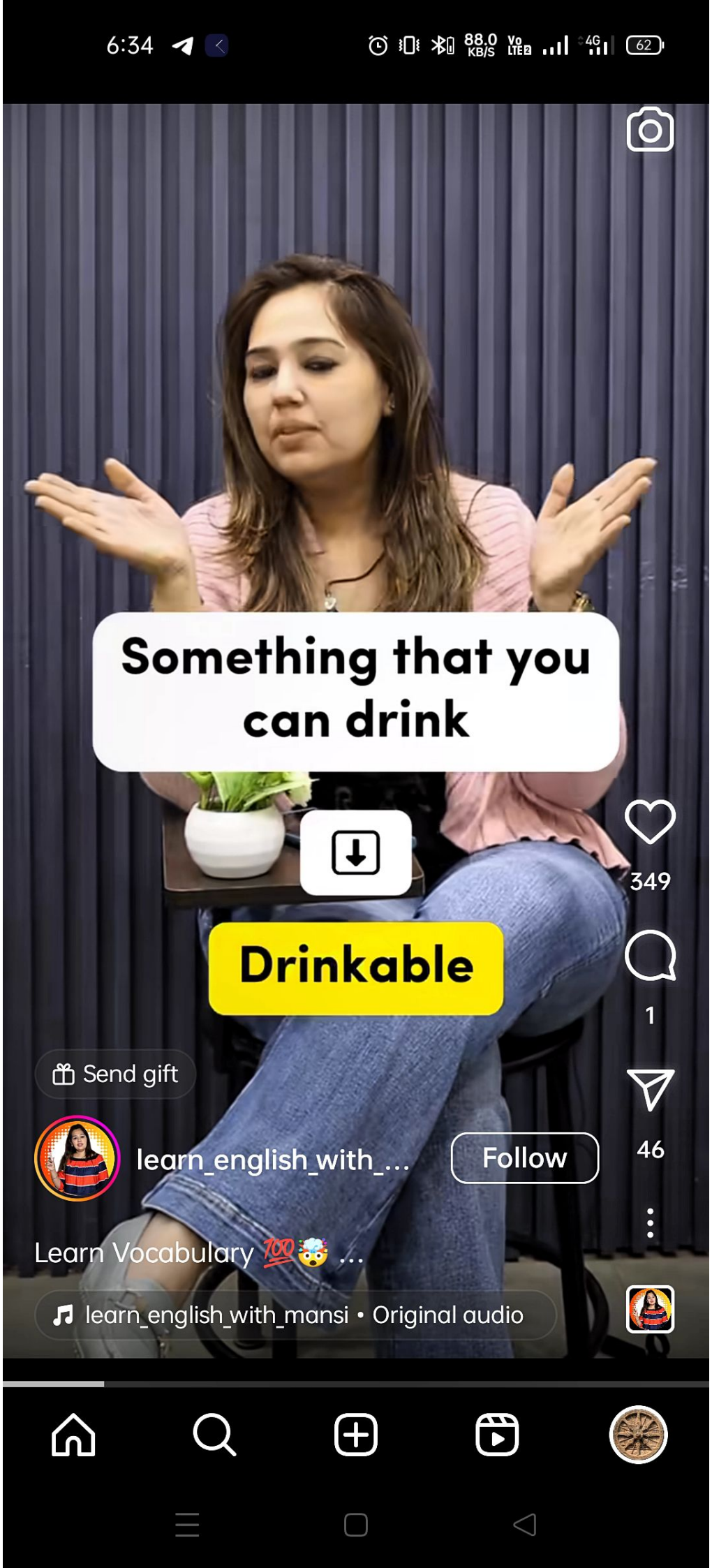

6:34
कबाब में हड्डी
Spoilsport
786
3
182
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

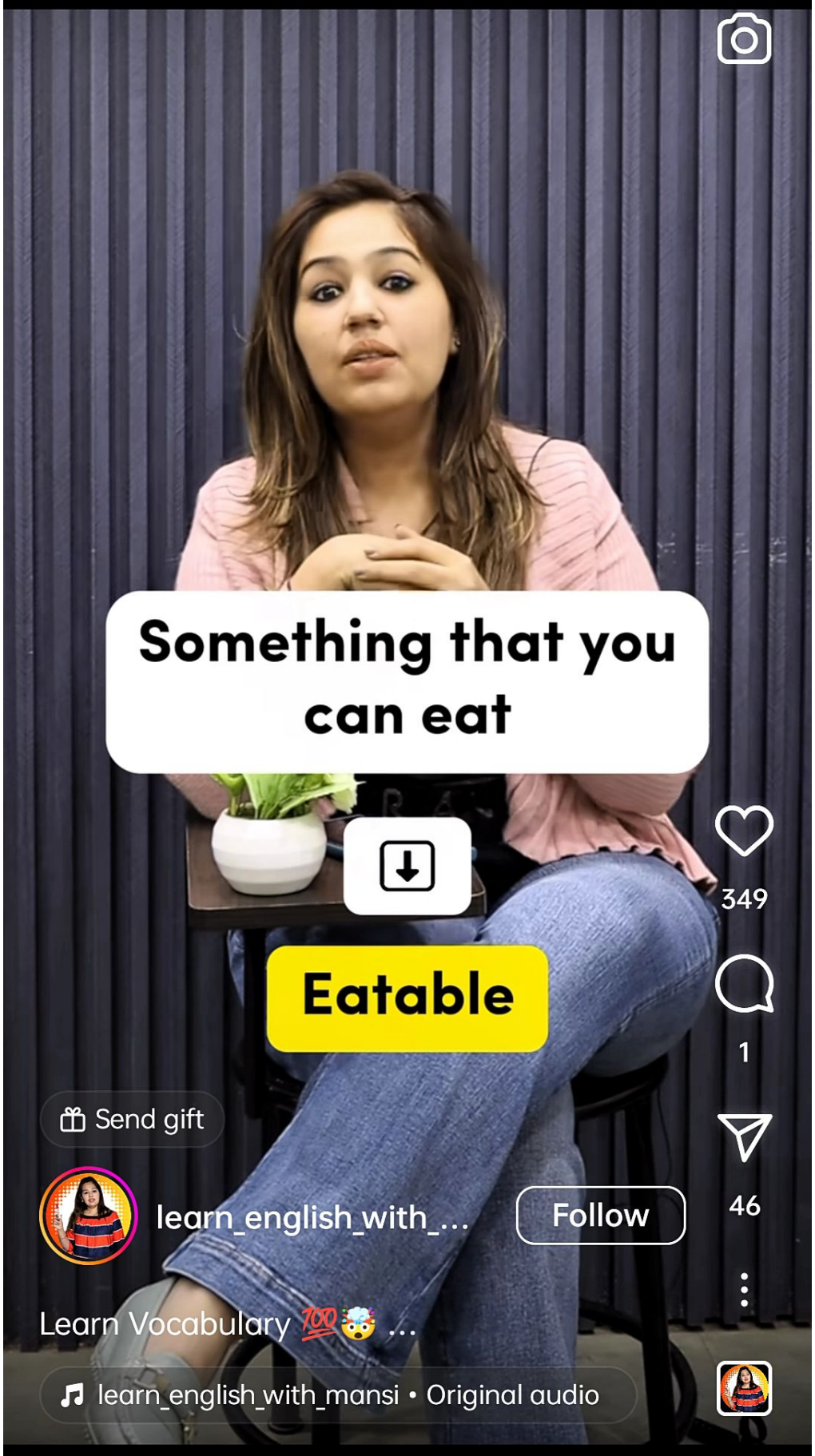

तुमने अपना काम ख़त्म नहीं किया
You haven't finished your work
741
2
172
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

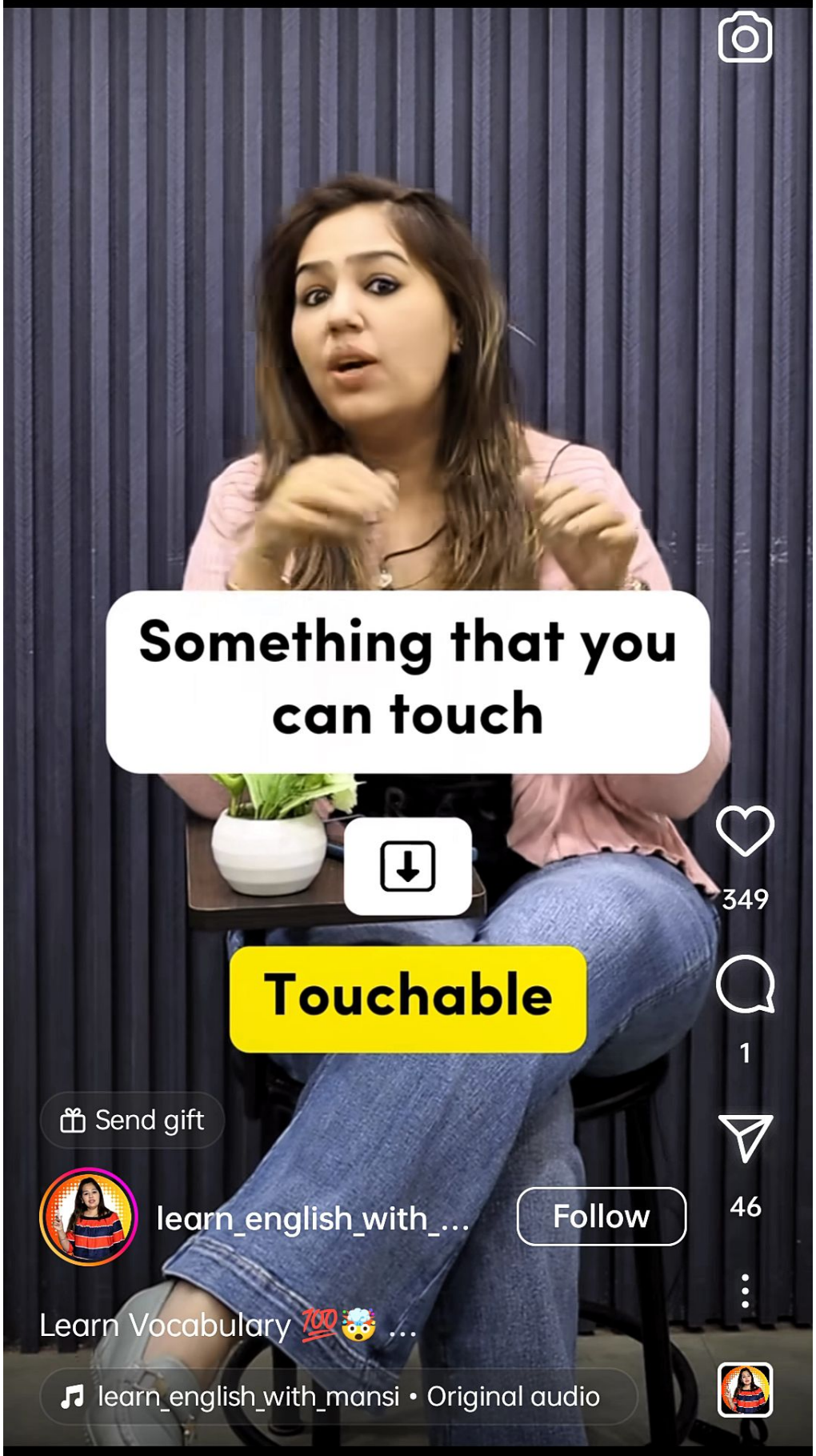

ये बहुत ही फ़ालतू का excuse है
This is only a Lame excuse
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
741
2
172

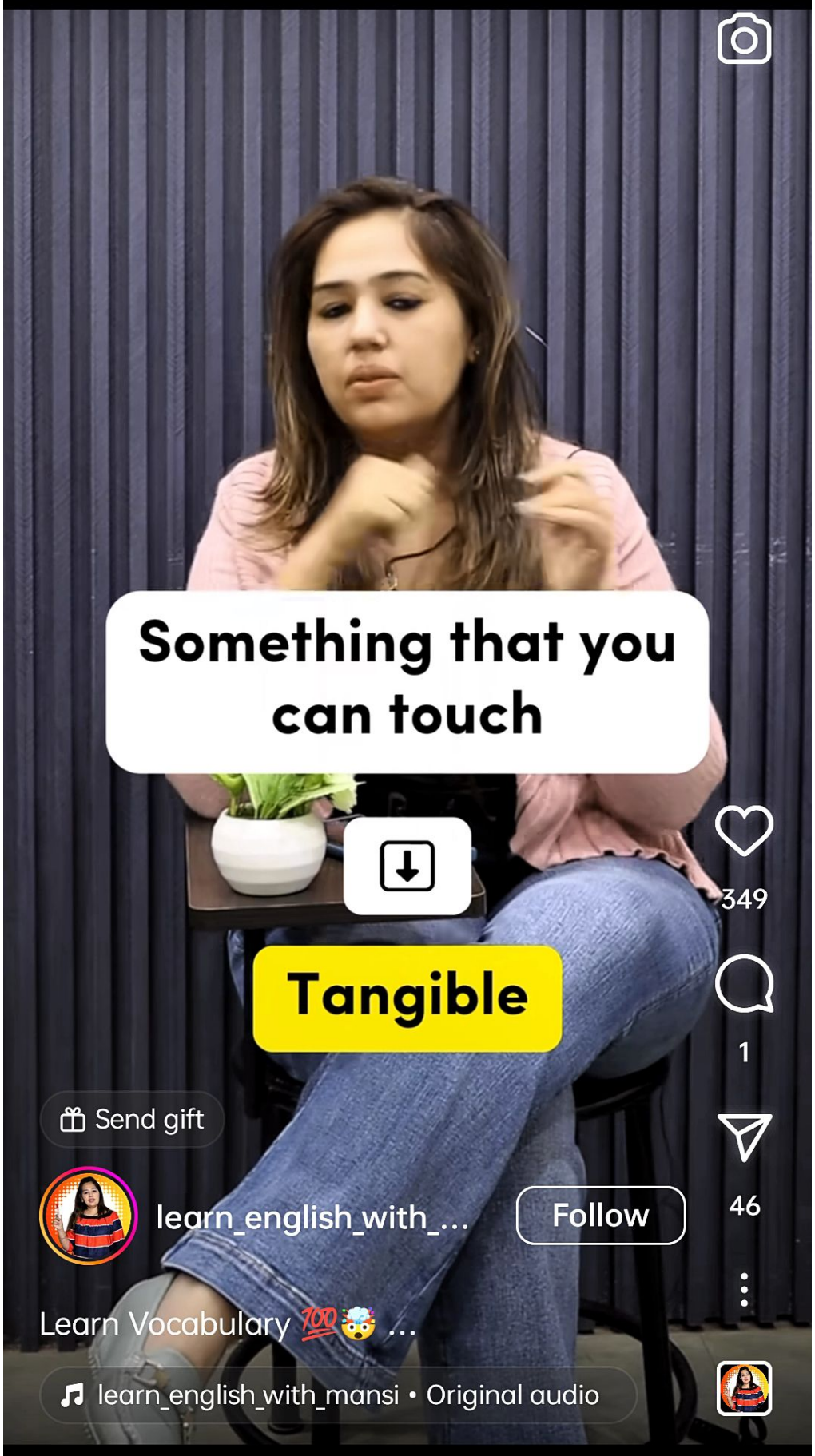

तुम्हें ना बहाने बनाने बहुत आते है
You are skilled at making excuses
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
741
2
172

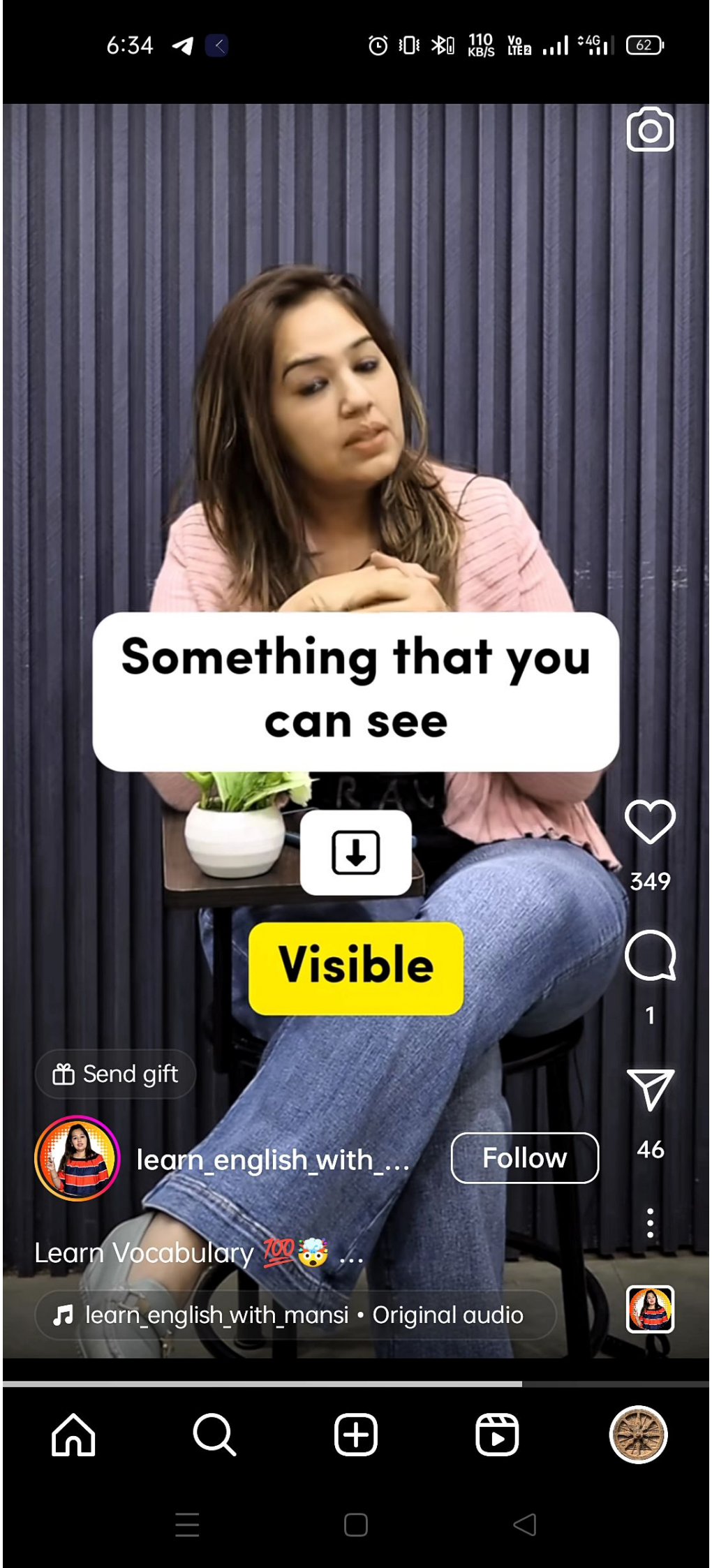

ये कुछ चलने वाला नहीं है यहाँ पे
It won't work here
741
2
172
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

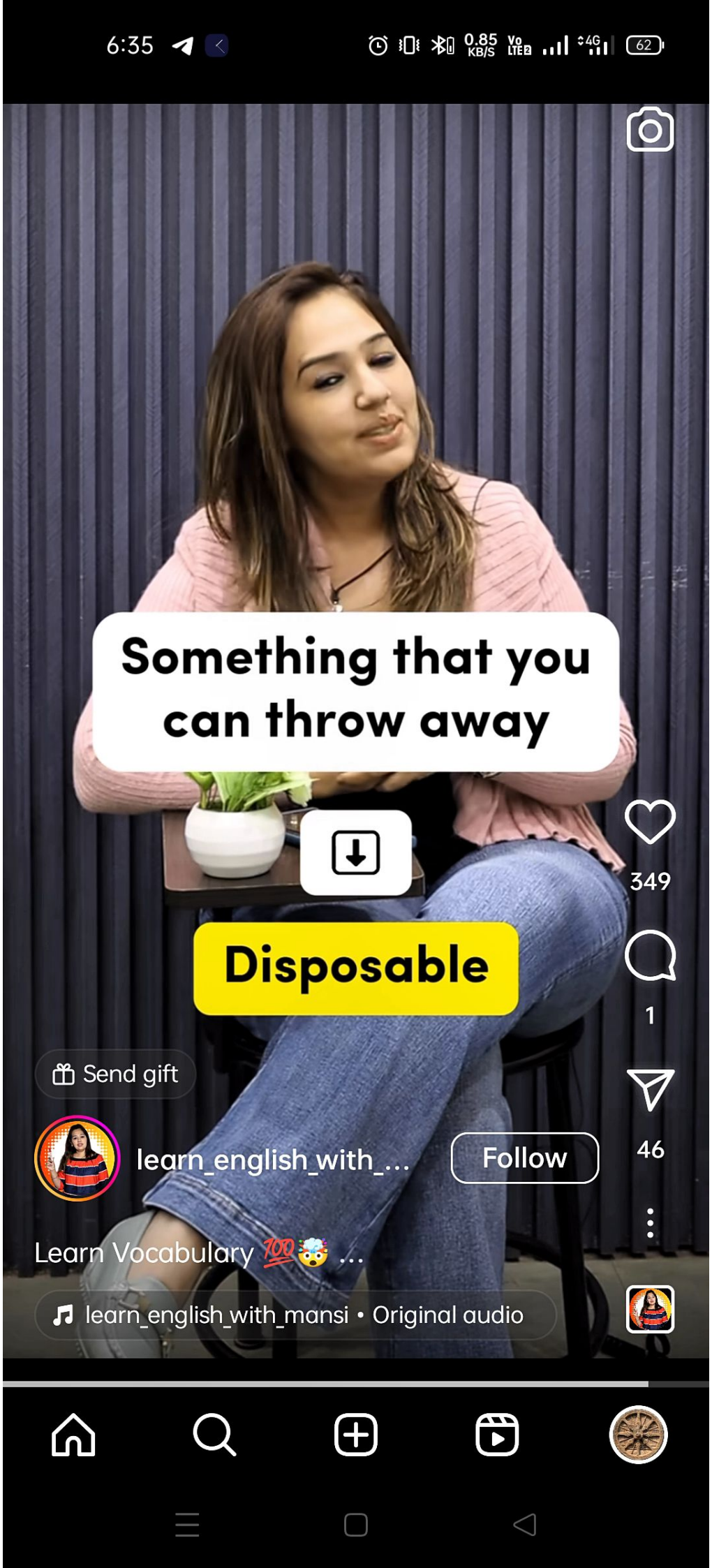

6:34
Something that you can drink
Drinkable
349
1
46
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

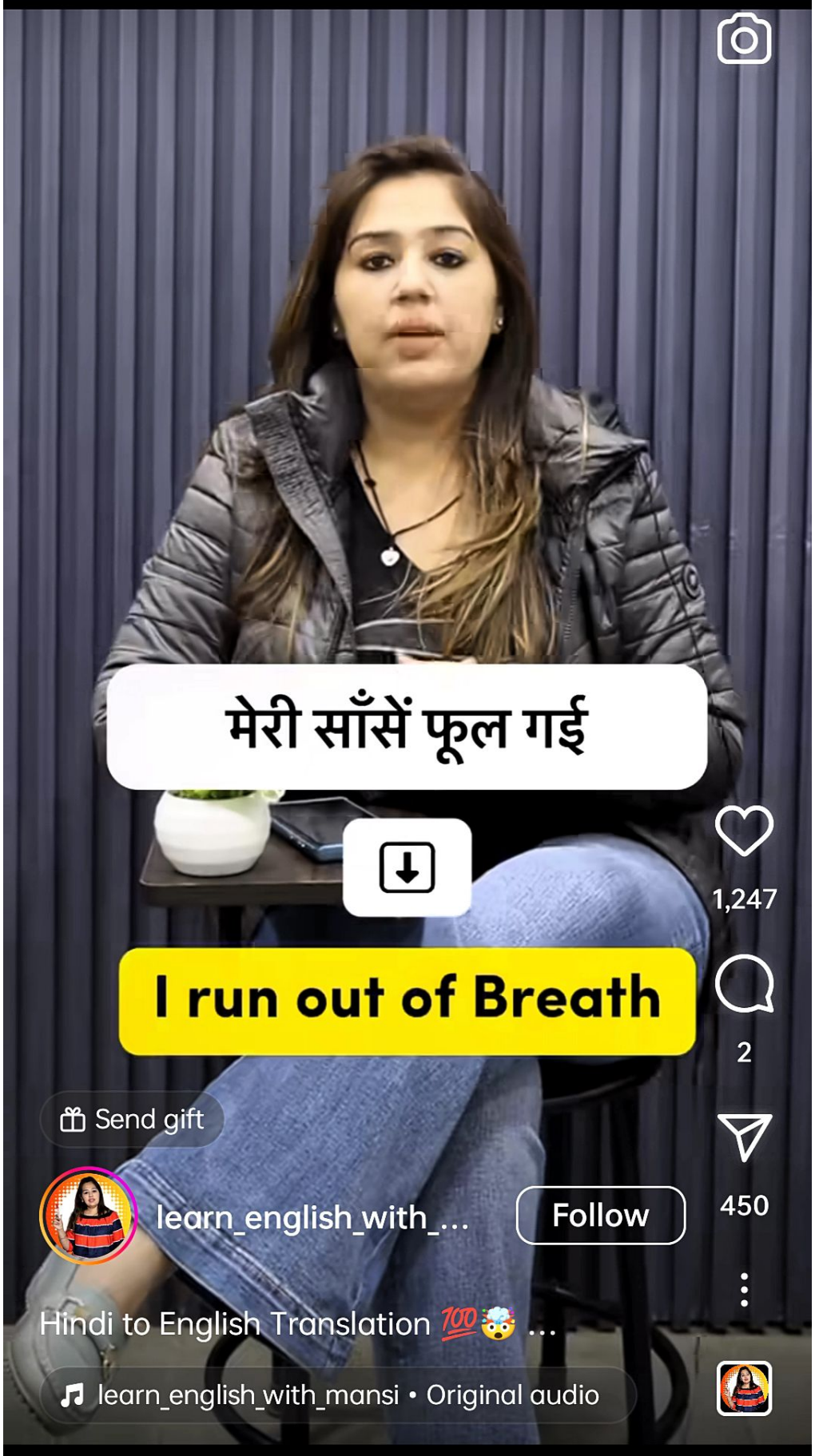

Something that you can eat
Eatable
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
349
1
46

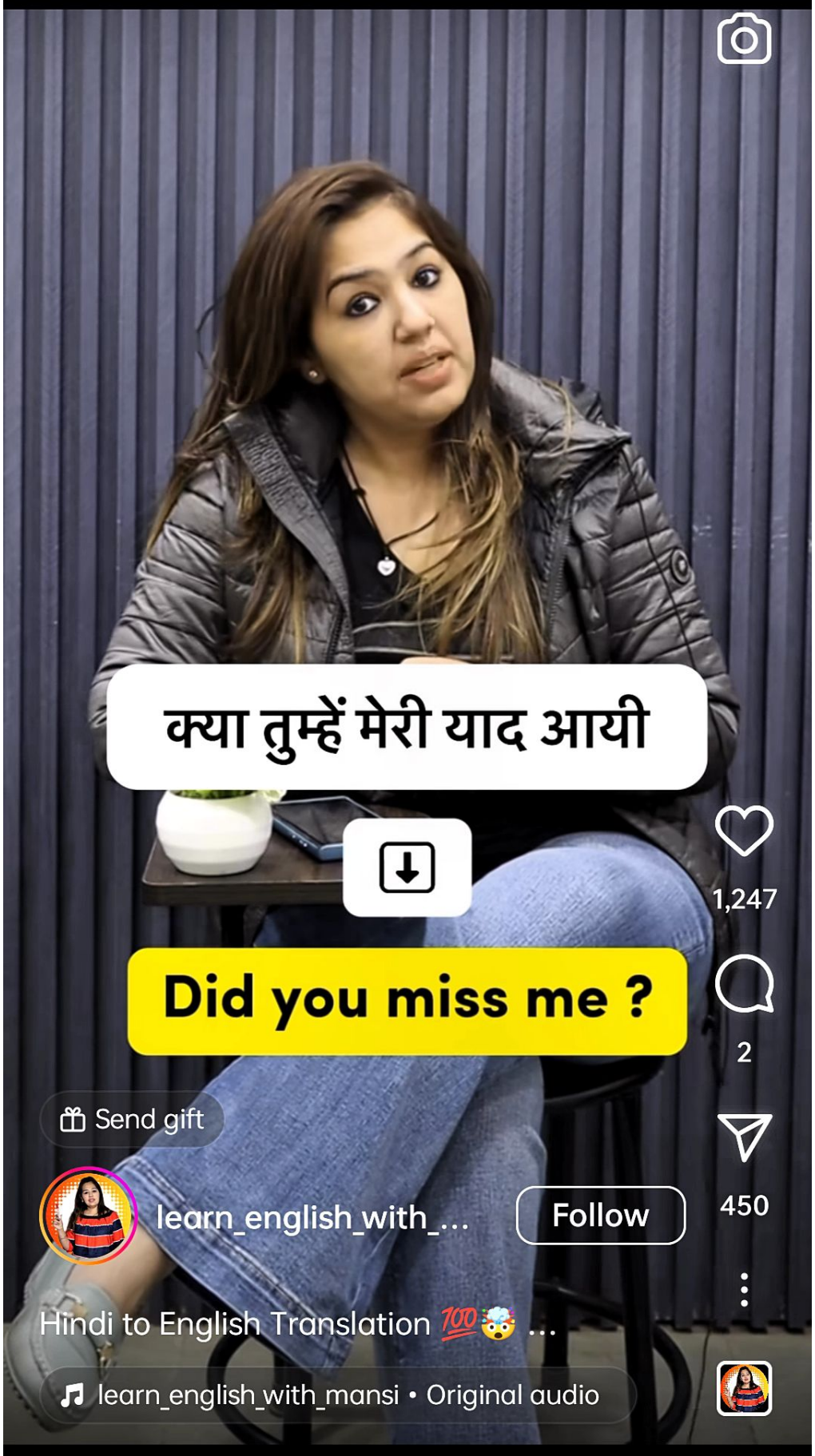

Something that you can touch
Touchable
349
1
46
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

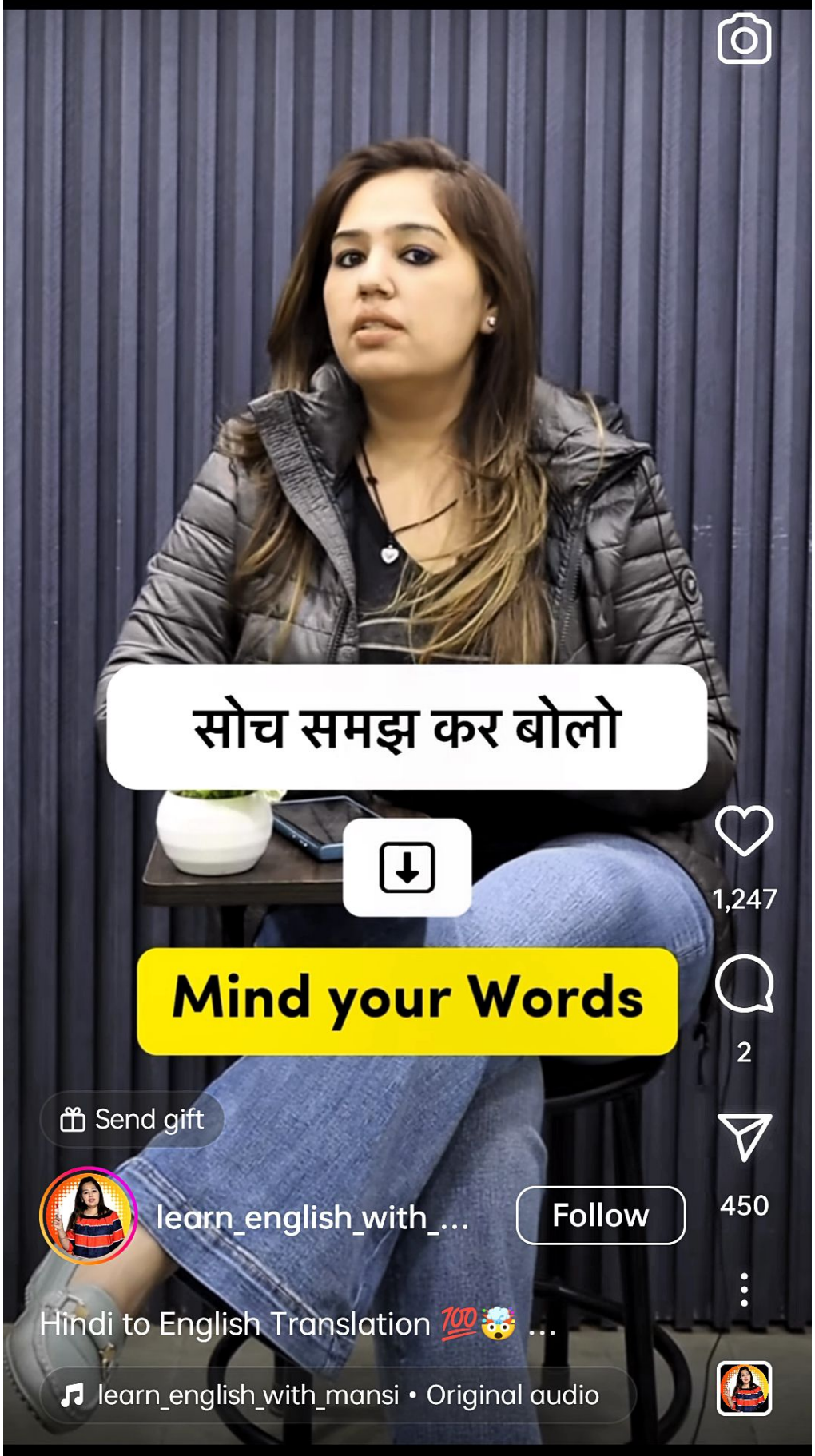

Something that you can touch
Tangible
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
349
1
46

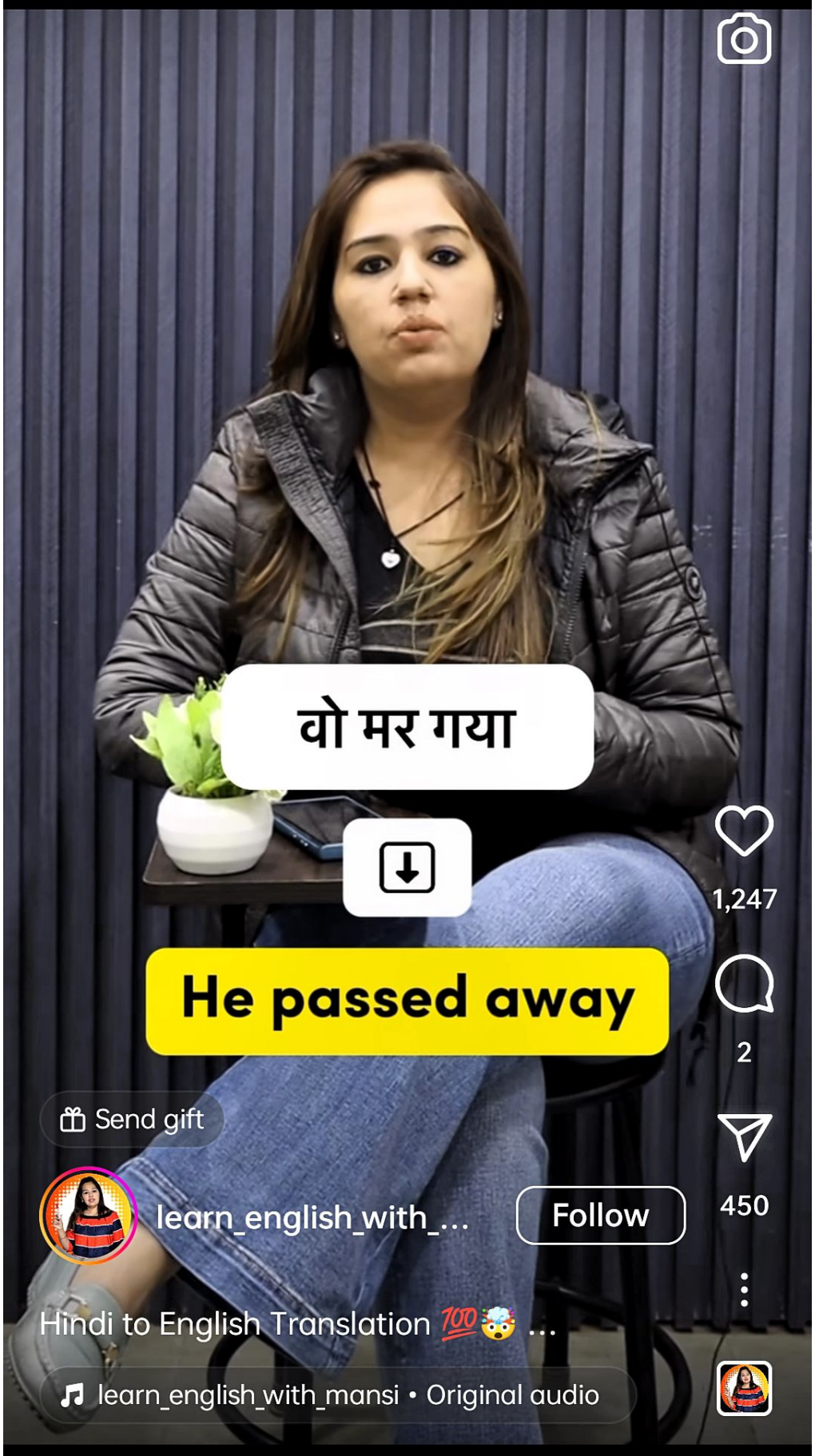

6:34
Something that you can see
Visible
349
1
46
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

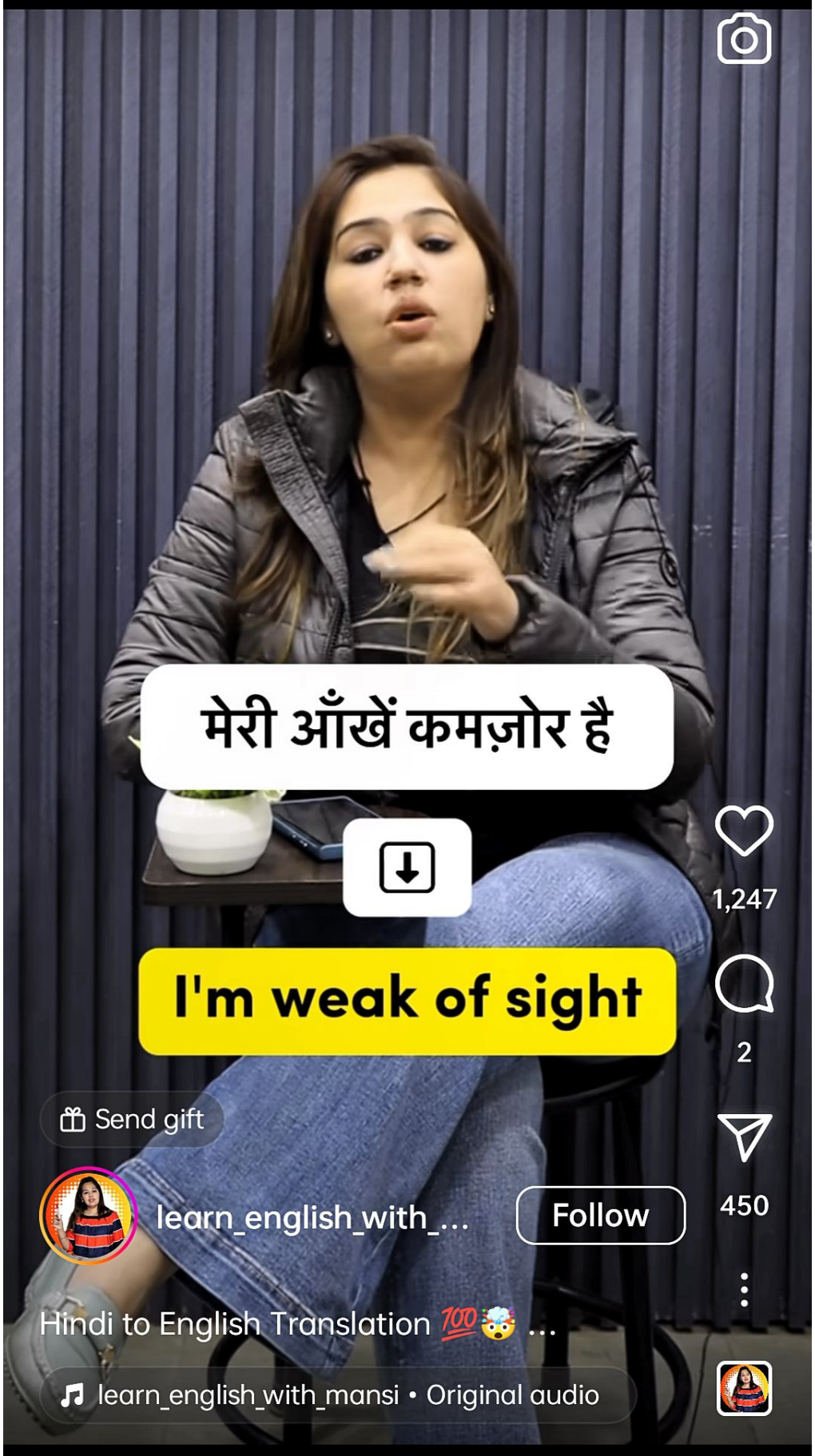

6:35
Something that you can throw away
Disposable
349
1
46
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


मेरी साँसें फूल गई
I run out of Breath
1,247
2
450
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

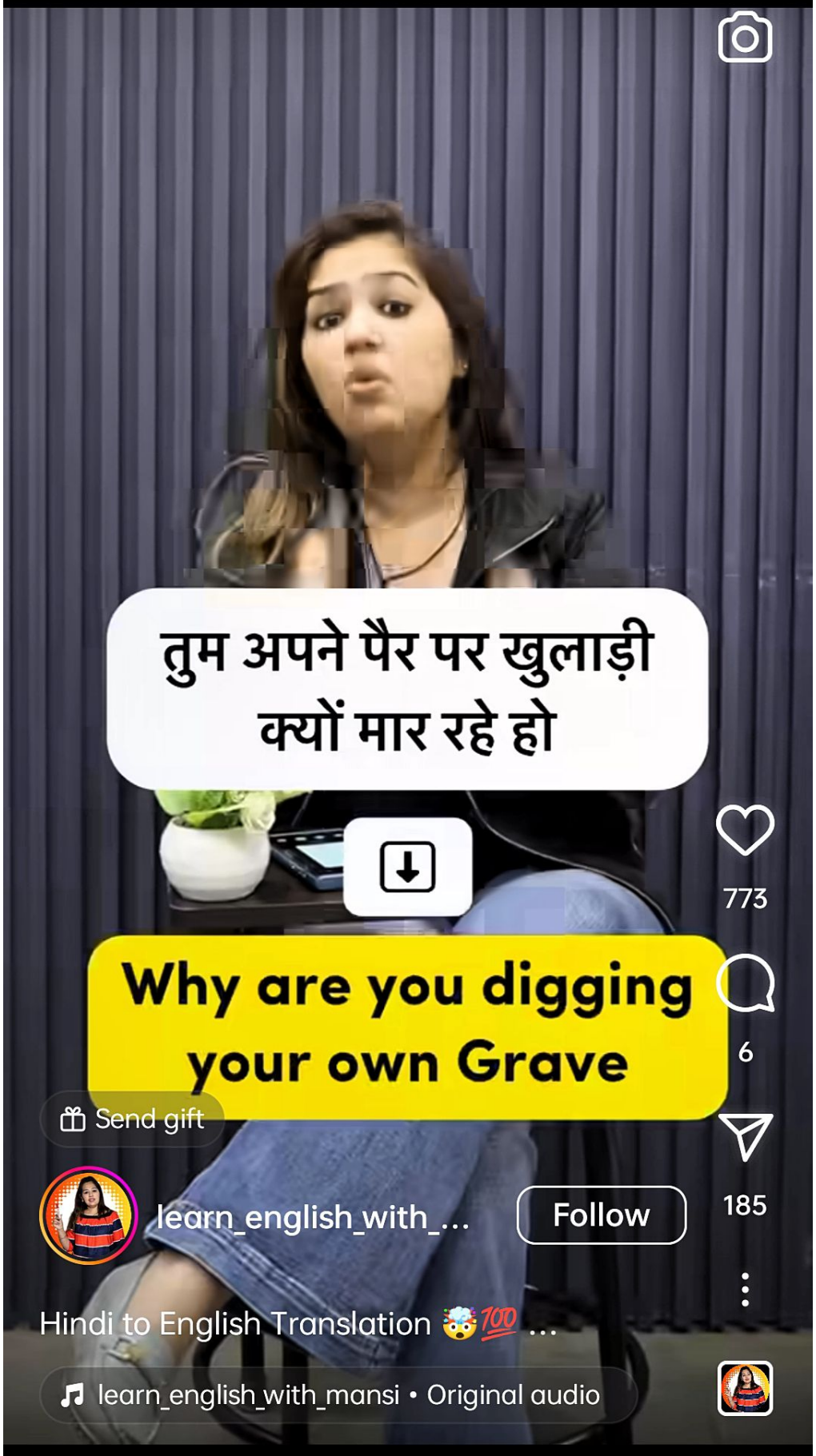

क्या तुम्हें मेरी याद आयी
Did you miss me ?
1,247
2
450
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


6:35
91.0 KB/S
61
सोच समझ कर बोलो
Mind your Words
1,247
2
450
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


वो मर गया
He passed away
1,247
2
450
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


मेरी आँखें कमज़ोर हैं
I'm weak of sight
1,247
2
450
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


ये किस चीज़ से बना है ?
What is it made of ?
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
1,247
2
450

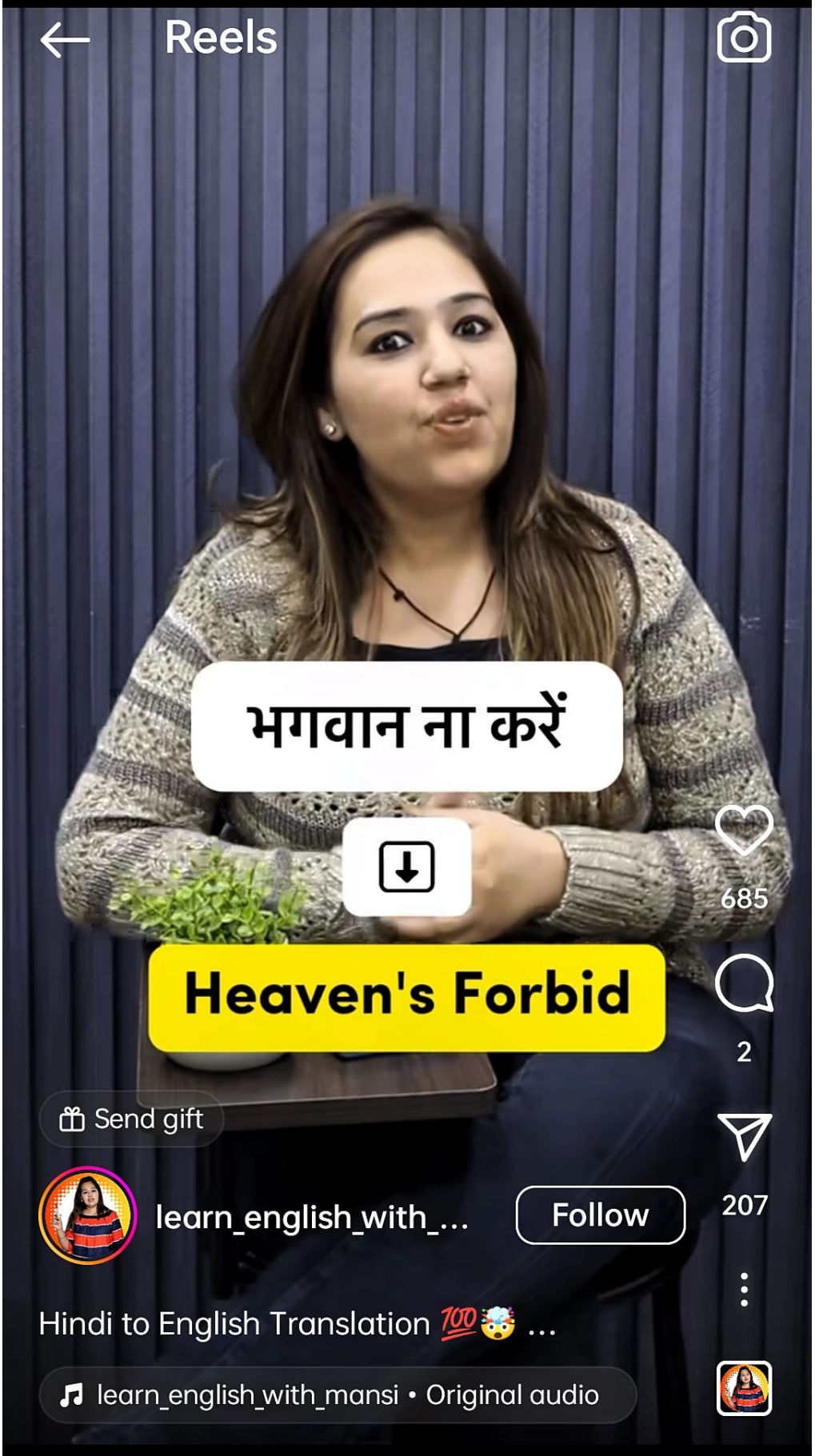

तुम अपने पैर पर खुलाड़ी क्यों मार रहे हो
Why are you digging your own Grave
773
6
185
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


मैंने तुमसे ये उम्मीद बिलकुल नहीं करी थी
I Didn't Expect This from You
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
773
6
185


तुम किसके कहने पर वहाँ गए
At Whose Behest , did you go there
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
773
6
185

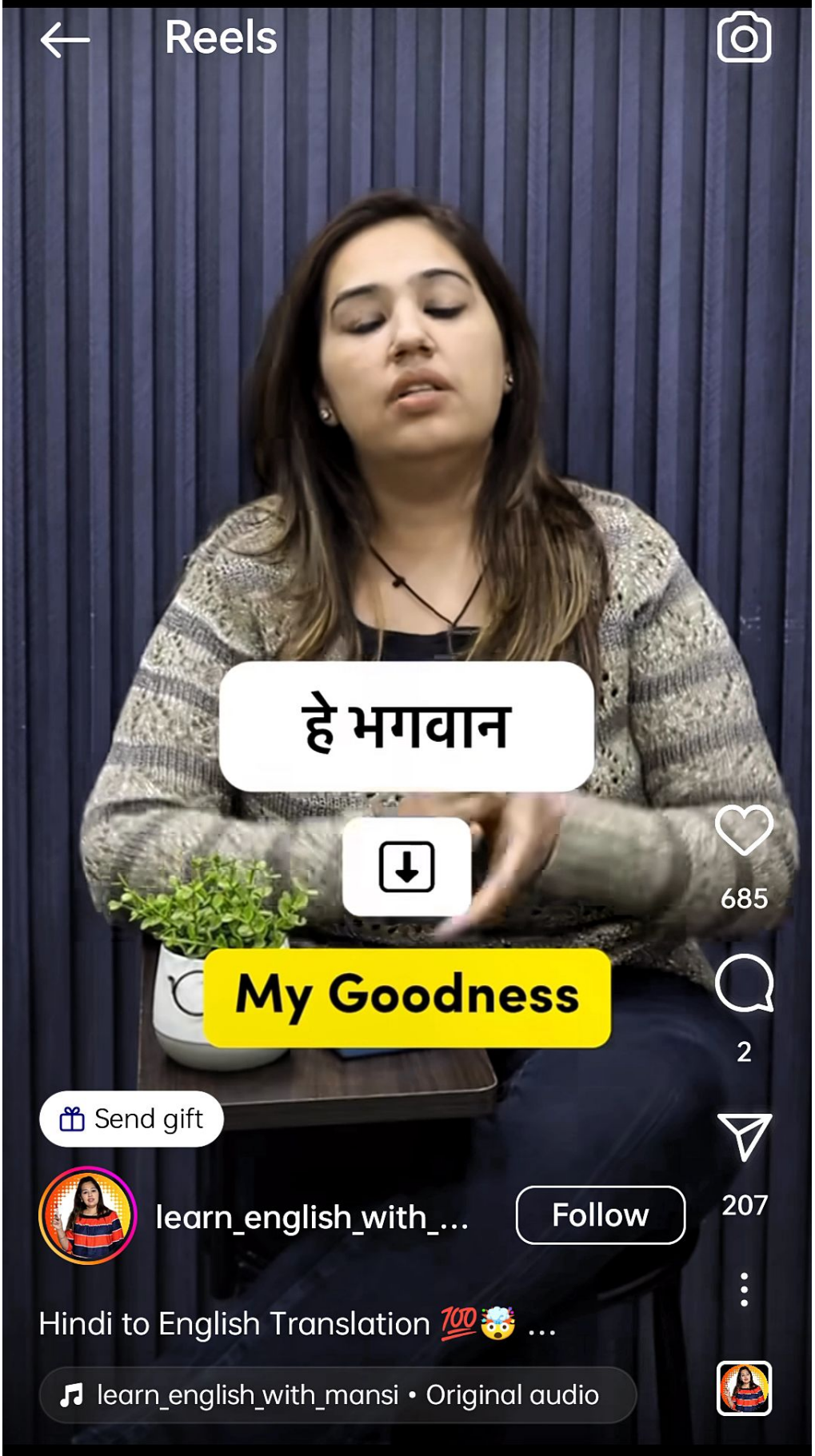

तुम्हें सिर्फ़ अपनी पड़ी रहती है
All you care about is yourself
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
773
6
185


6:36
Reels
ग़ुस्सैल
1,186
5
283
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


6:37
Reels
भगवान ना करें
Heaven's Forbid
685
2
207
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

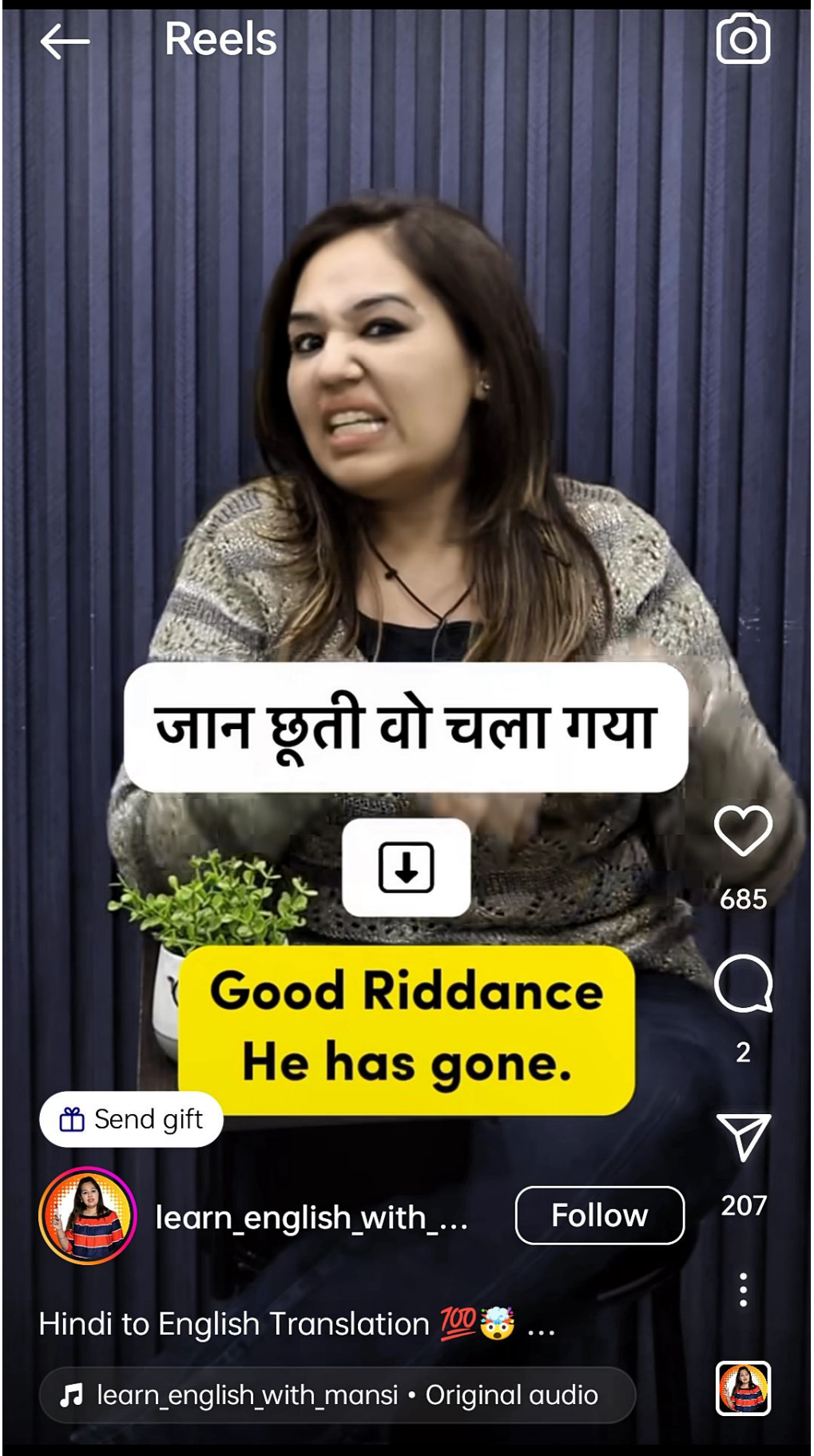

6:37
Reels
भगवान ना करें
God's Forbid
685
2
207
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

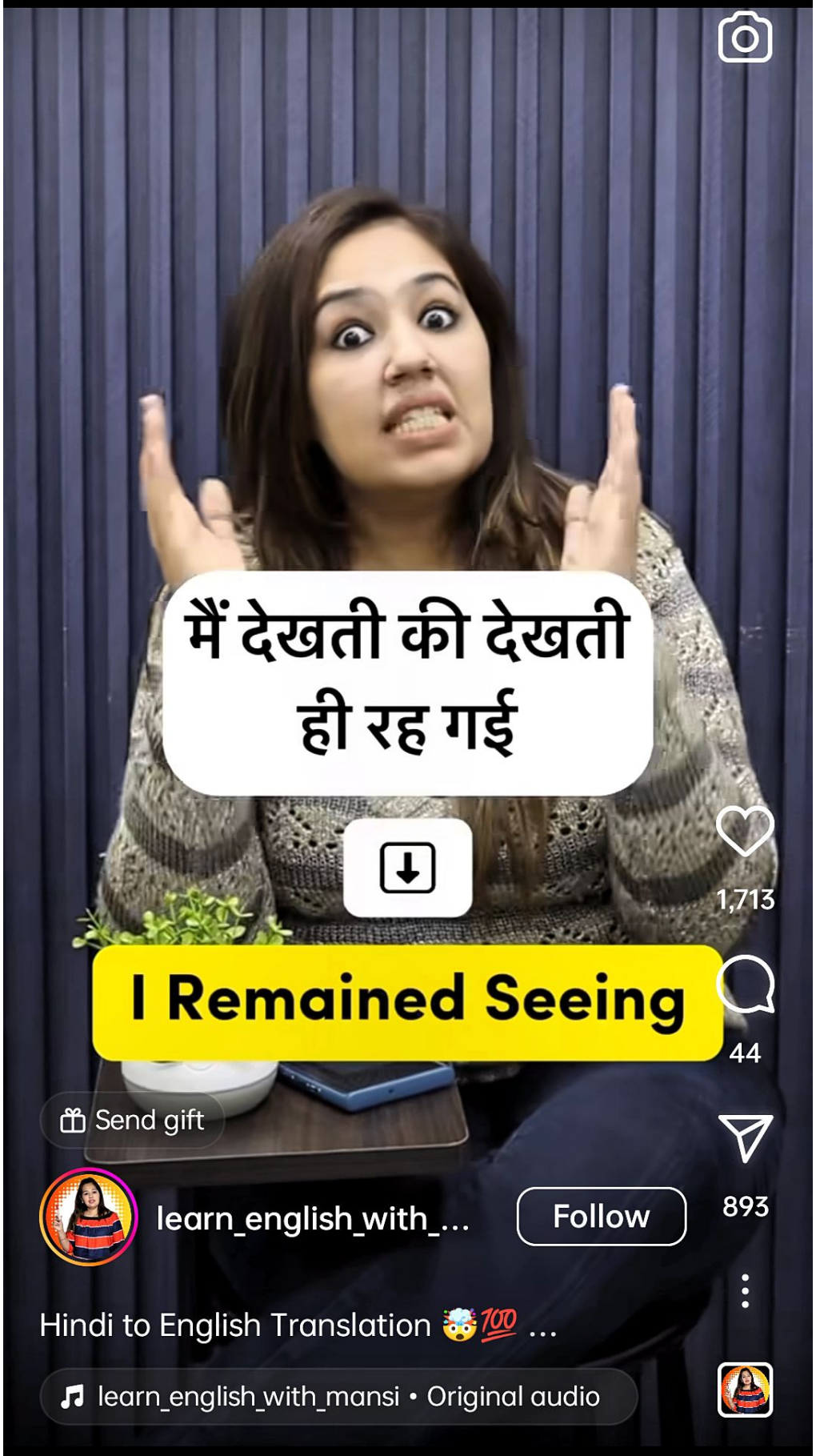

Reels
भगवान ना करें उसके पैरेंट्स को कुछ पता लगे
685
His parents should ever come to know about this
2
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
207
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


6:37
Reels
हे भगवान
My Goodness
685
2
207
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

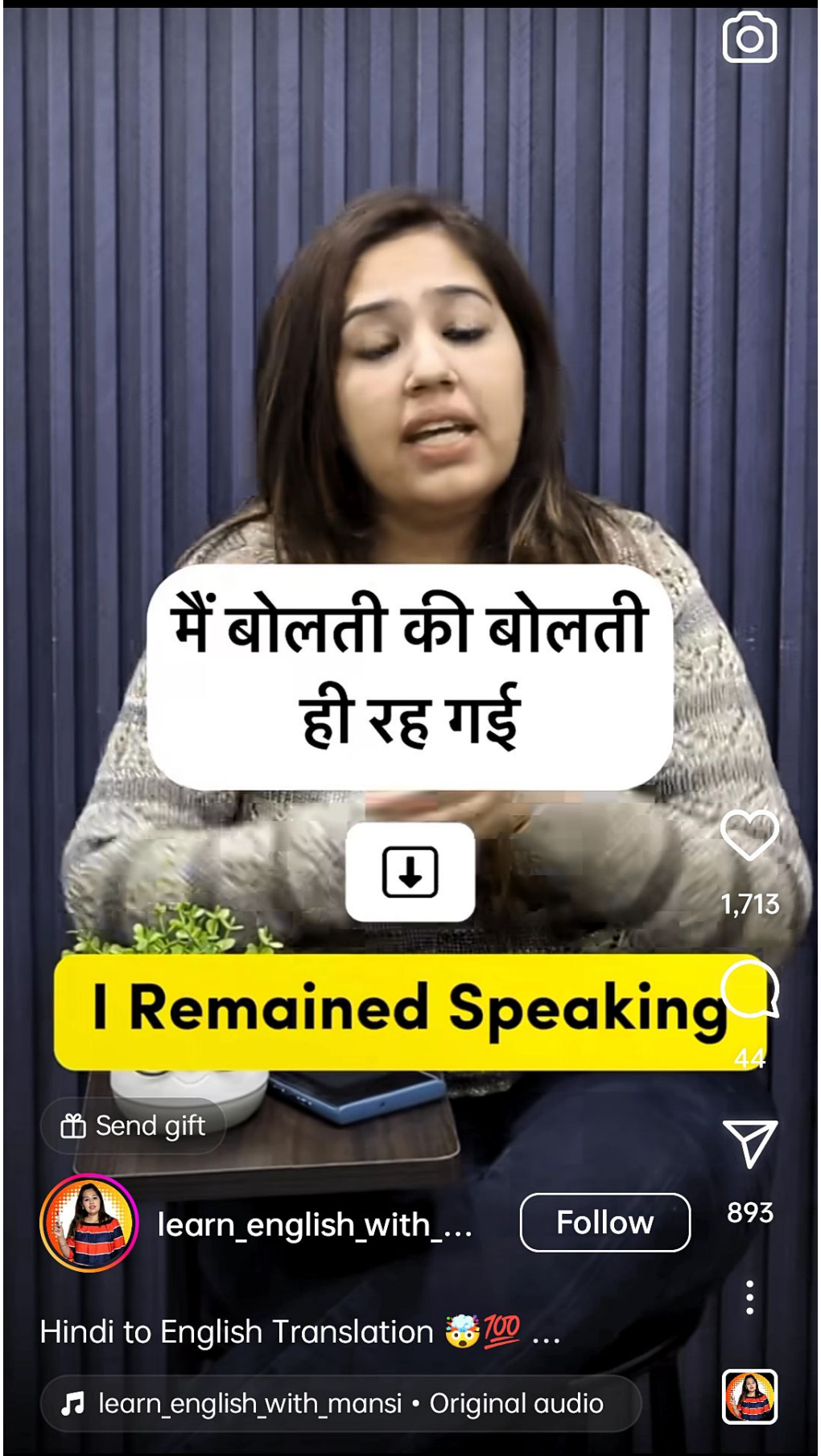

Reels
सब भगवान पर है
Its all upto God
685
2
207
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

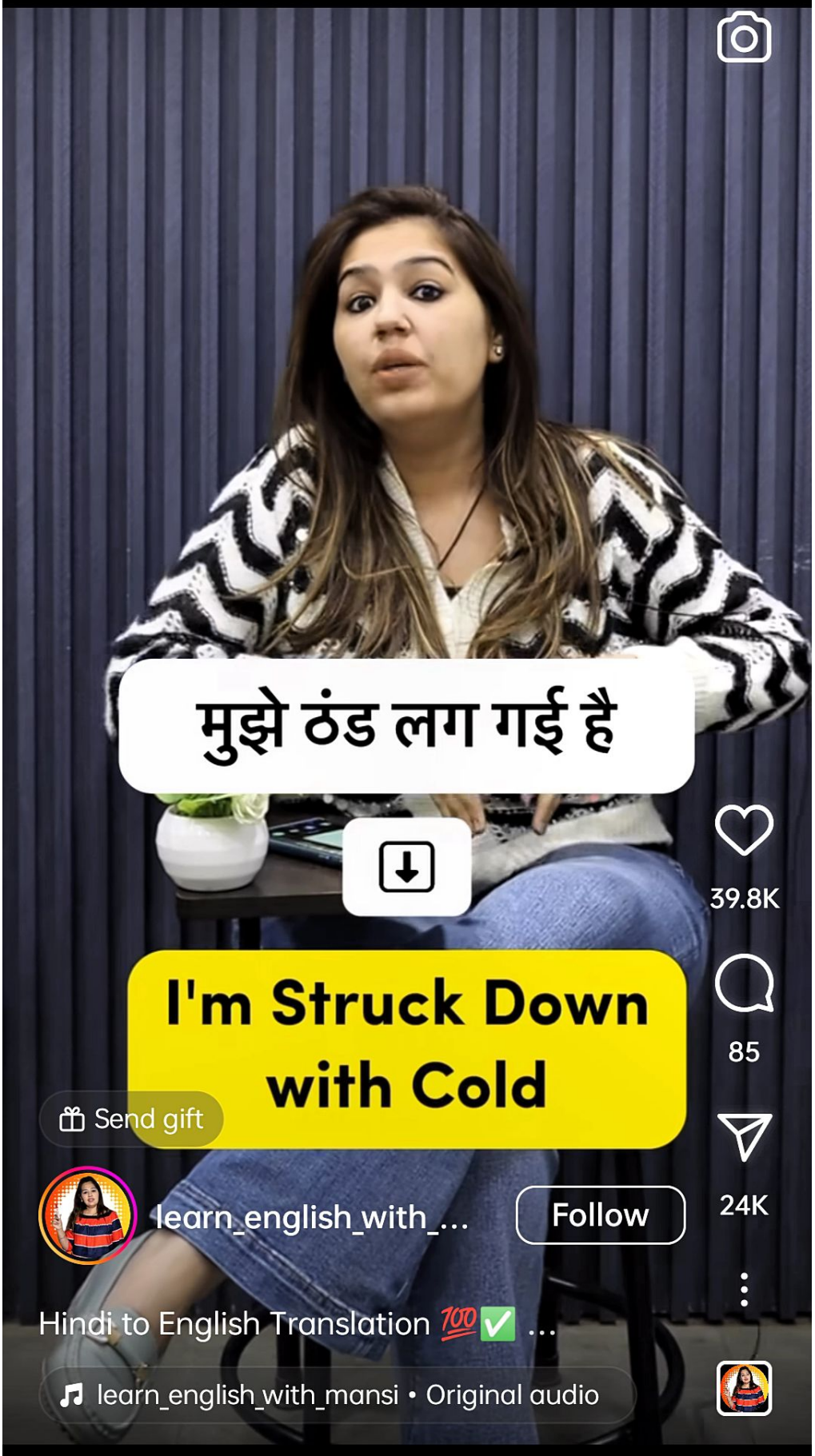

6:38
Reels
पता नहीं ! भगवान की क्या मर्ज़ी है
What's God's Will
685
2
207
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

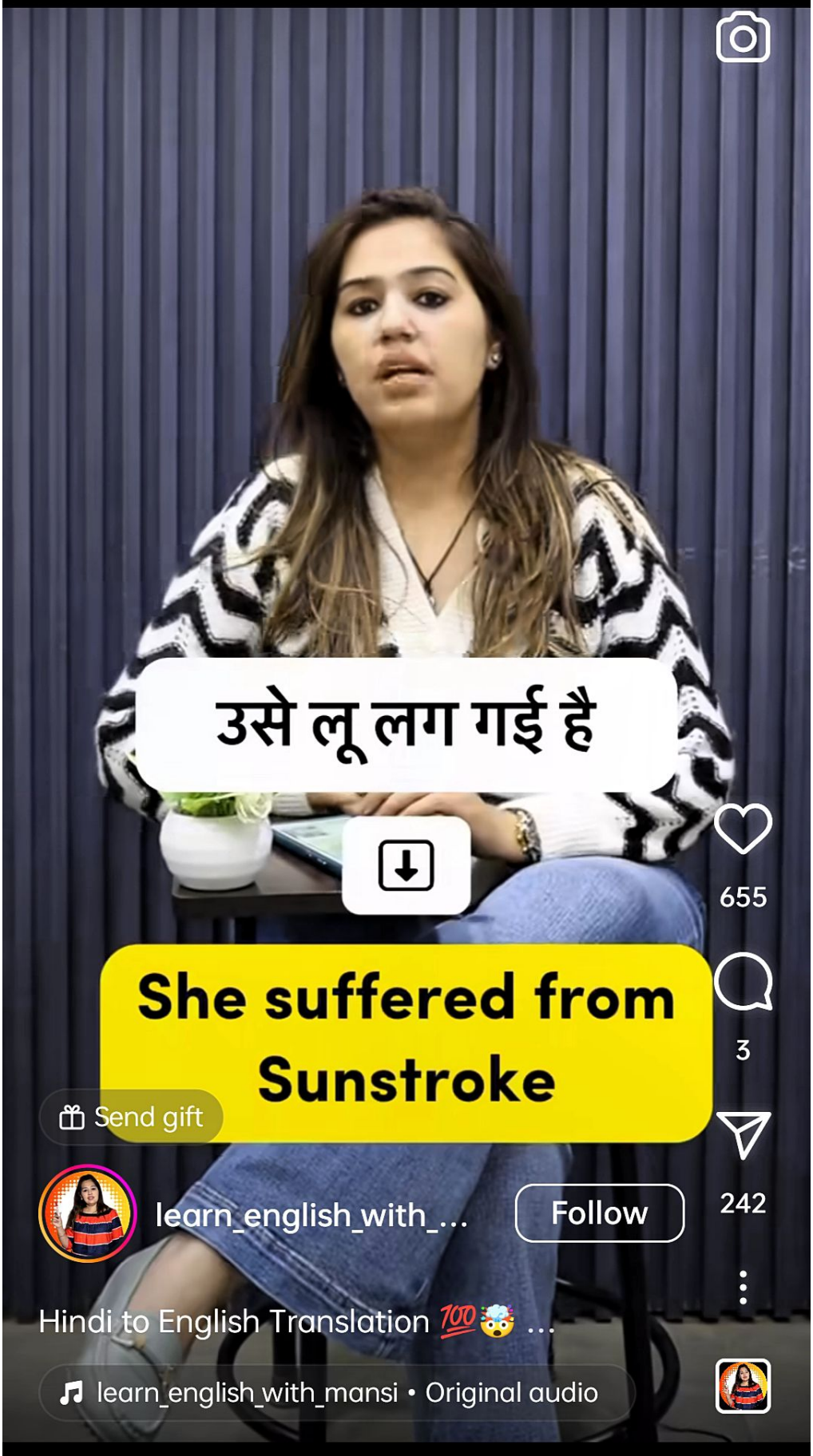

6:38
Reels
जान छूती वो चला गया
Good Riddance
He has gone.
685
2
207
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


मैं देखती की देखती
ही रह गई
I Remained Seeing
1,713
44
893
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

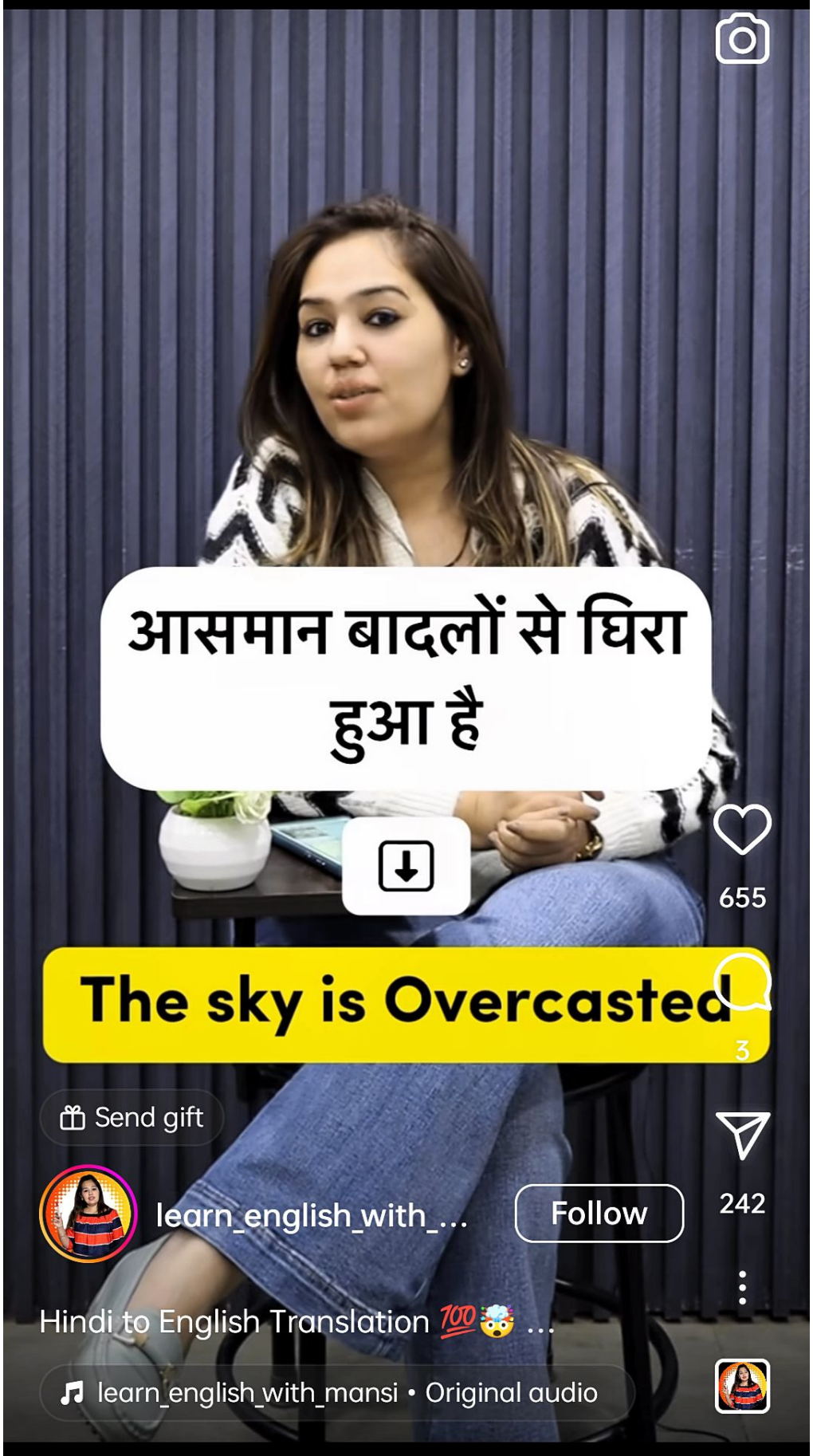

मैं बैठी की बैठी ही रह गई
I Remained Sitting
1,713
44
893
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

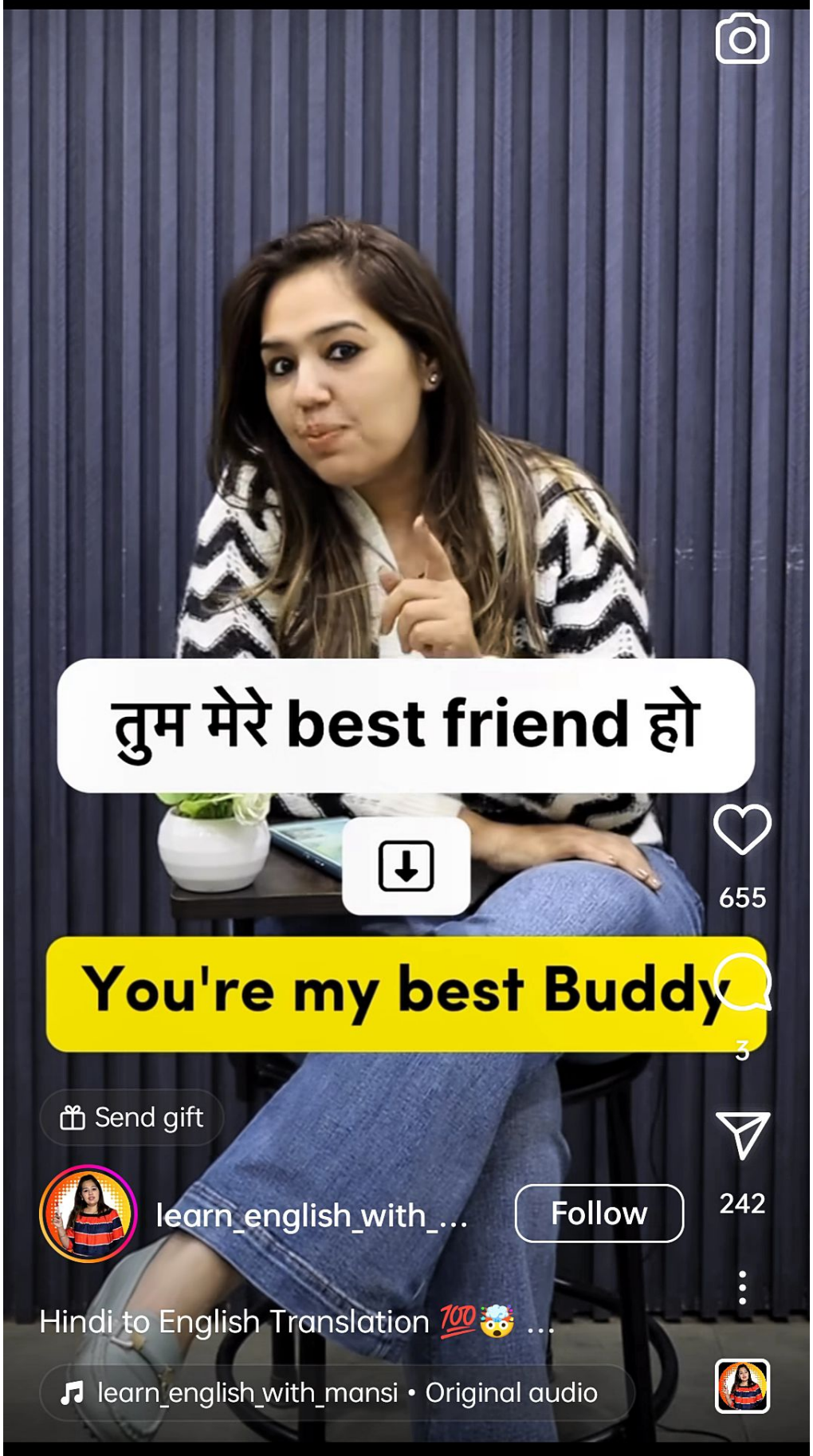

मैं बोलती की बोलती
ही रह गई
1,713
I Remained Speaking
44
Send gift
893
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

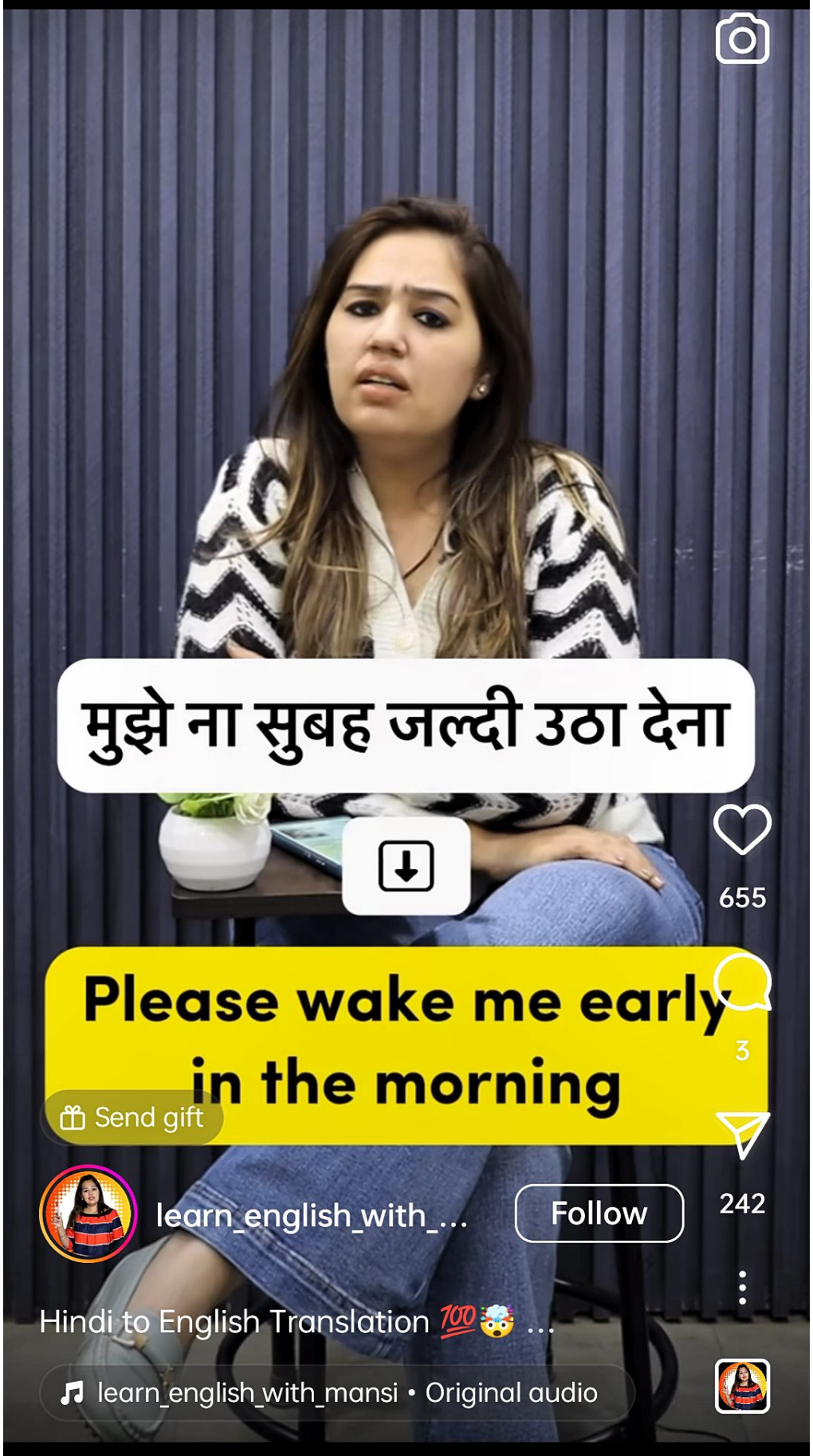

मुझे ठंड लग गई है
I'm Struck Down with Cold
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
39.8K
85
24K


उसे लू लग गई है
She suffered from Sunstroke
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
655
3
242


मेरा ना लड़ने का कोई mood नहीं है
I'm not in mood to fight
Send gift
655
3
242
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


आसमान बादलों से घिरा हुआ है
The sky is Overcasted
655
3
242
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


तुम मेरे best friend हो
You're my best Buddy
655
3
242
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

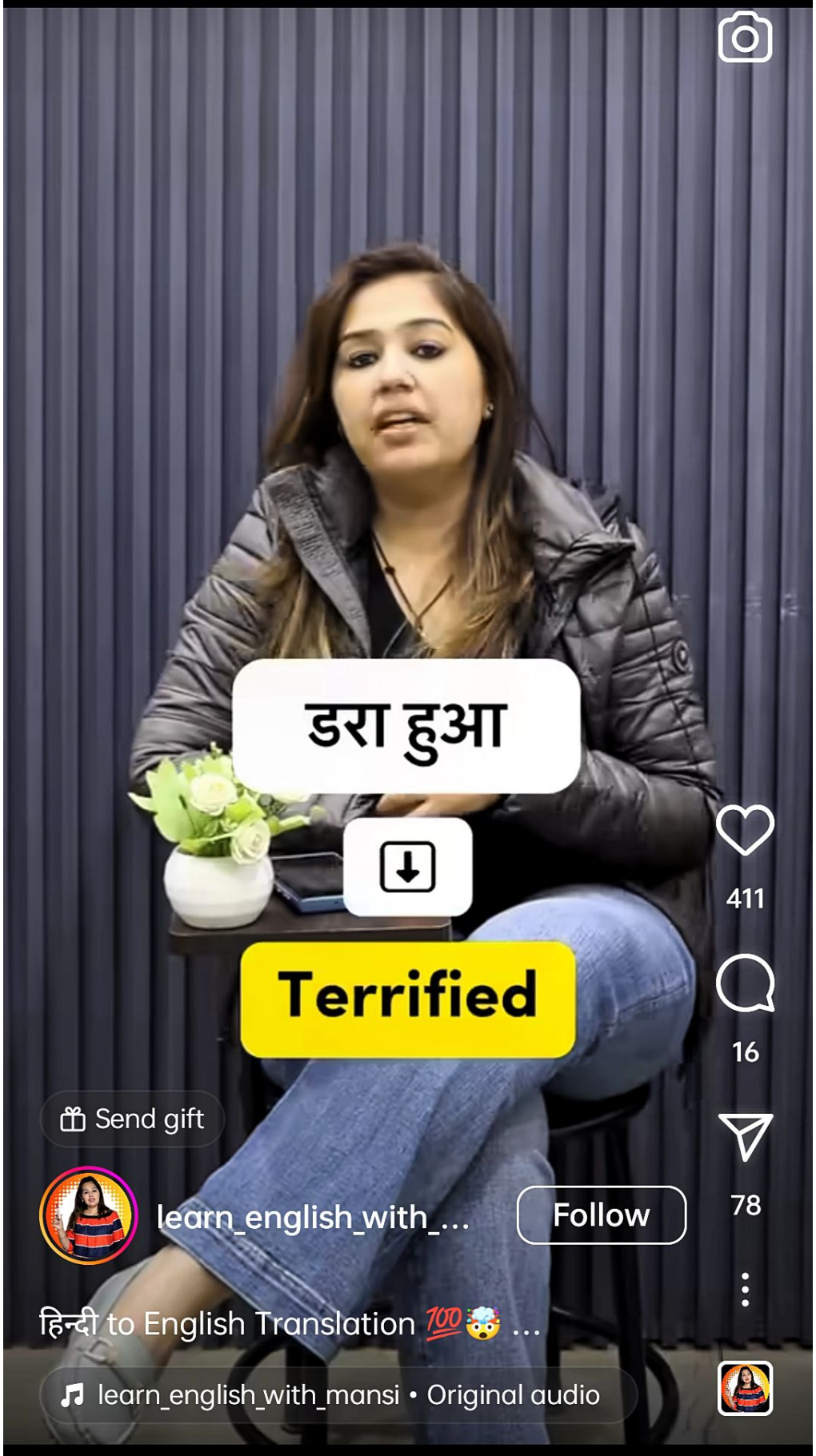

मुझे ना सुबह जल्दी उठा देना
655
Please wake me early in the morning
3
Send gift
242
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

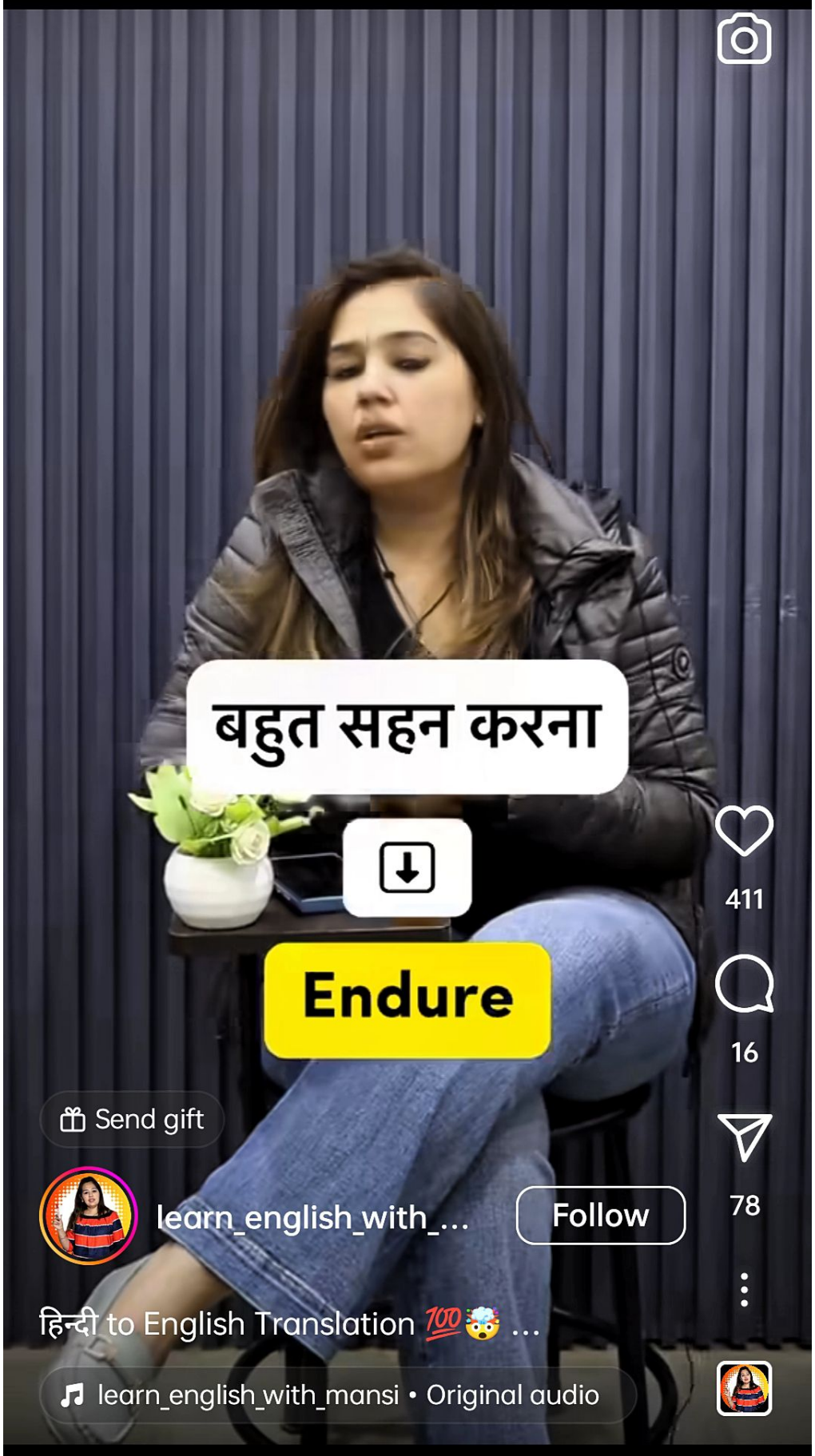

मैं दुविधा में हूँ
I'm in Dilemma
1,258
3
425
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


ये treat मेरी तरफ़ से है
The Treat is on Me
1,258
3
425
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

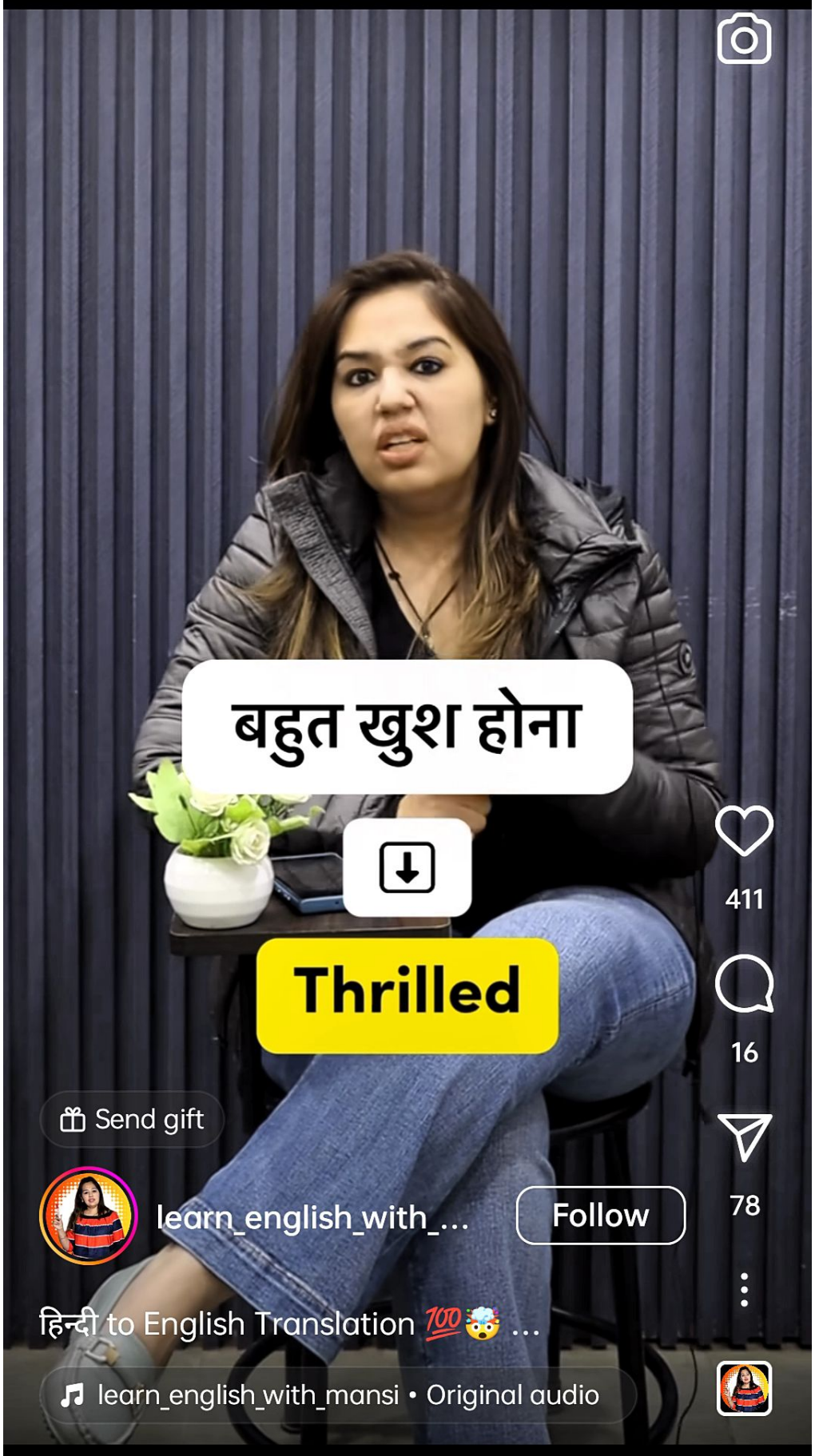

अबे तुमने उल्टा लिख दिया यार
You have written Inverted
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
1,258
3
425

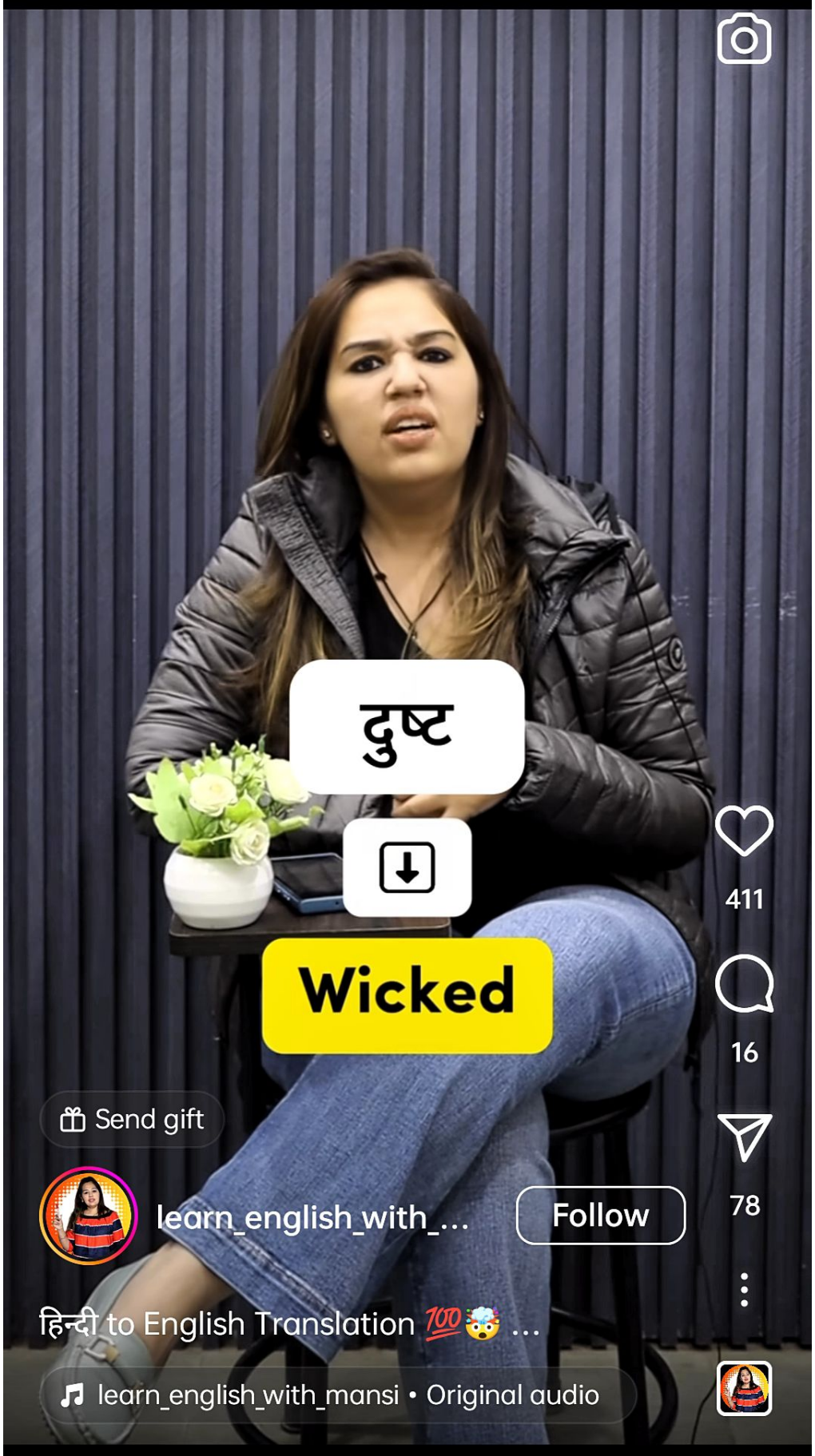

मैं तो साफ़ साफ़ बोलता हूँ
I'm Outspoken
1,258
3
425
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


6:39
डरा हुआ
Terrified
411
16
78
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
हिन्दी to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


बहुत सहन करना
Endure
411
16
78
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
हिन्दी to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


तेज़ी से
Rapidly
411
16
78
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
हिन्दी to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


बहुत खुश होना
Thrilled
411
16
78
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
हिन्दी to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


दुष्ट
Wicked
411
16
78
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
हिन्दी to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


बाल की खाल उखाड़ना बंद करो
Stop Splitting Hair
346
3
95
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


मुझे तो इस बात पर यक़ीन ही नहीं हो रहा
I Can't Wrap My Head Around
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
346
3
95

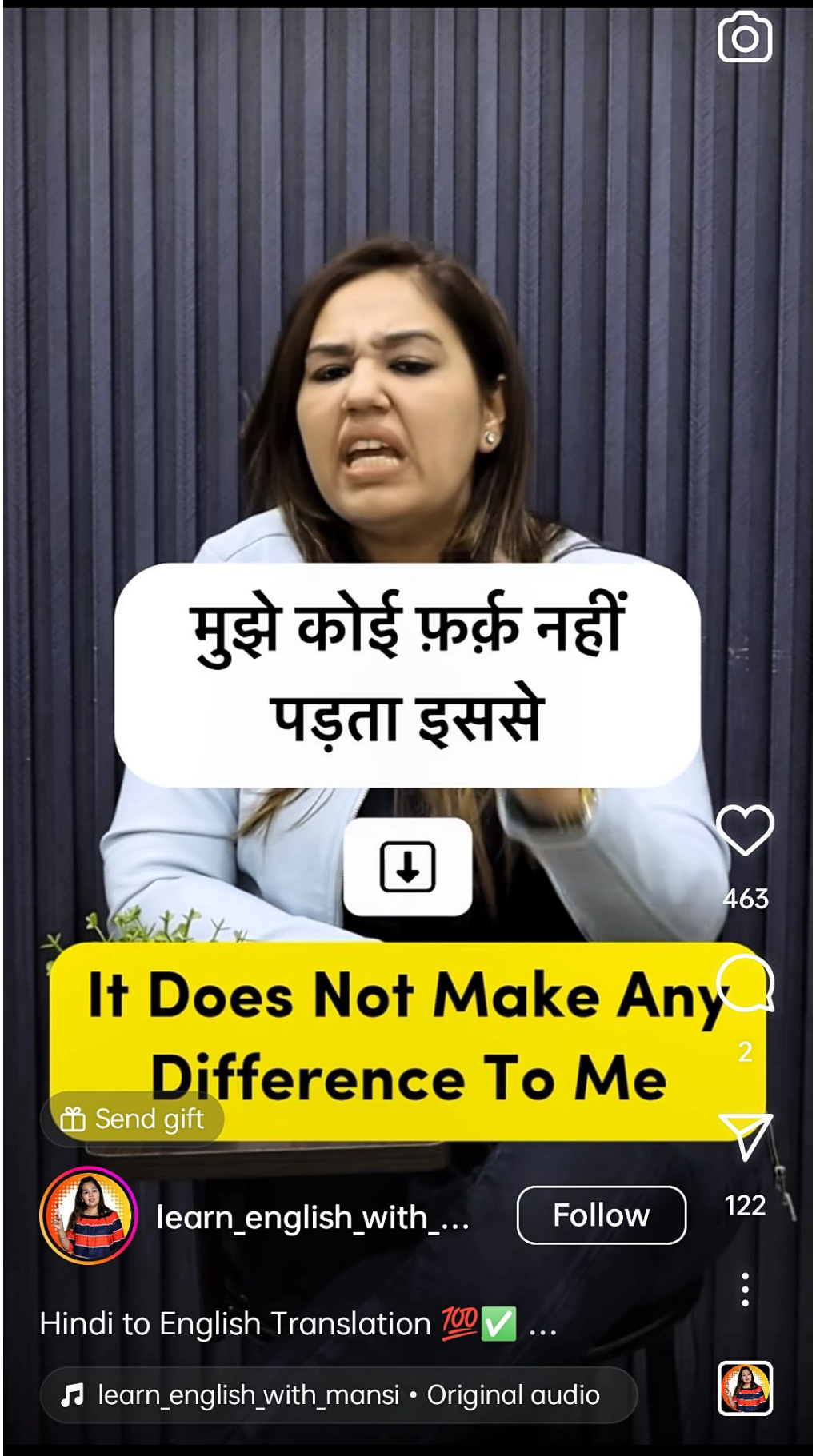

मैंने अनगिनत बार तुमसे कहा है
I Told you Countless Time
Send gift
346
3
95
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


वो कितनी बेवकूफ है
She Is Such A Dipstick
346
3
95
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

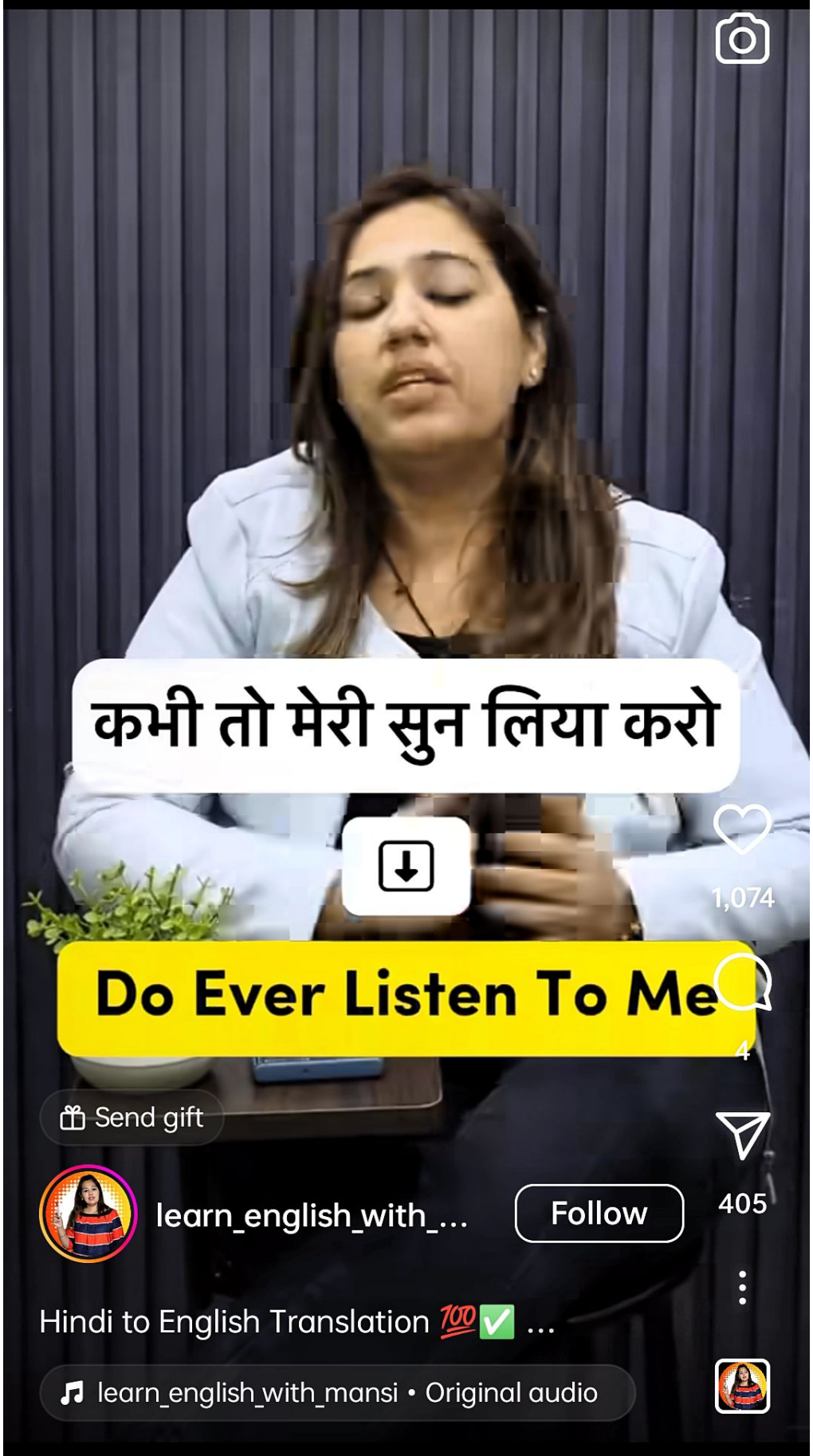

पहेलियाँ मत बुझाओ
Do Not Talk in Riddles
463
2
122
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


6:40
क्या तुम कुछ कहना चाहते हो
Do You Want To Say Something
463
2
122
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

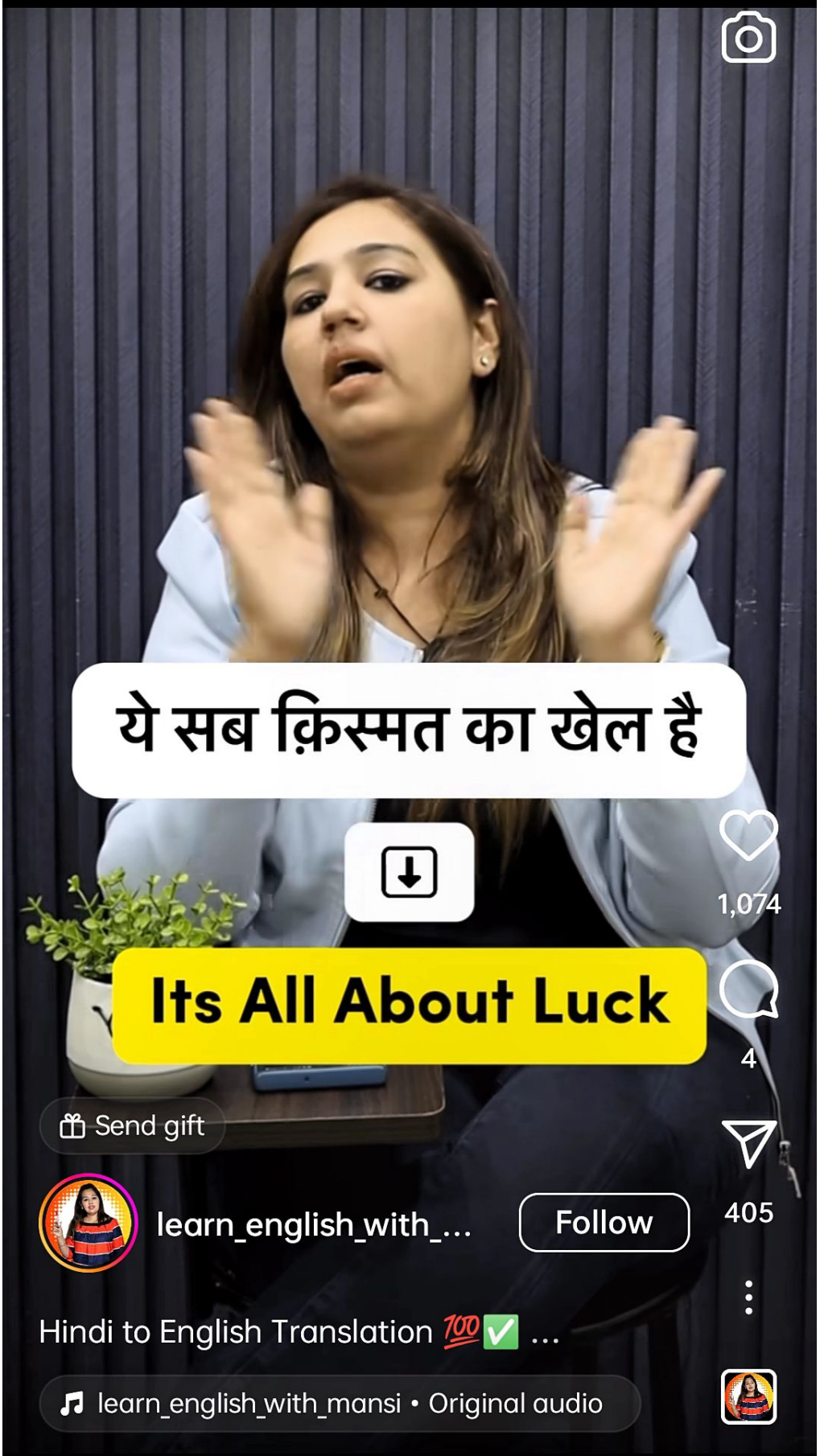

ये ना सुनी सुनाई बात है
It's A Hearsay
Send gift
463
2
122
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

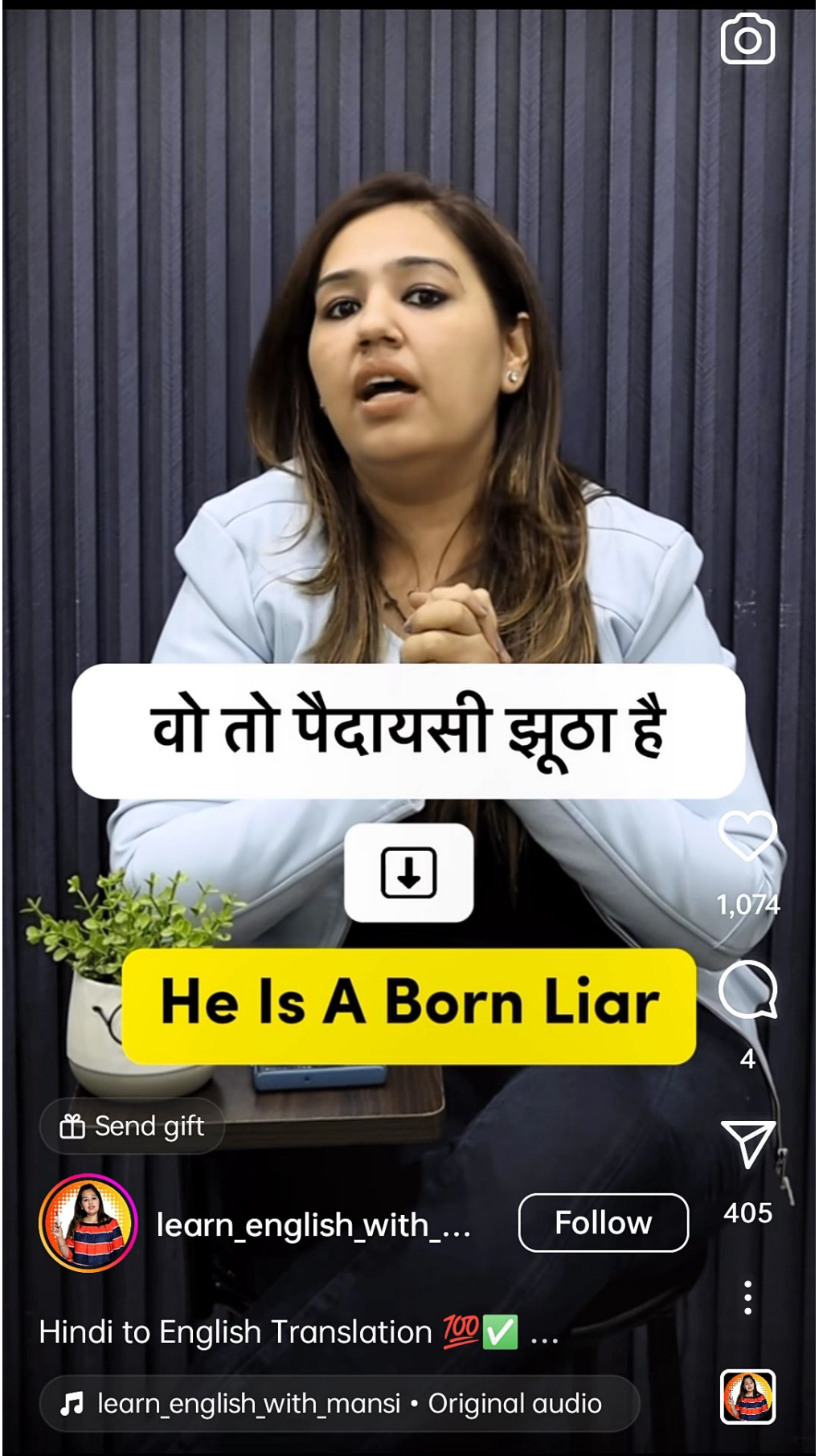

मुझे कोई फ़र्क़ नहीं पड़ता इससे
It Does Not Make Any Difference To Me
Send gift
463
2
122
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


6:40
0.06 KB/S
59
क्या तुम्हें कम सुनाई पड़ता है
Are You Hard of Hearing
463
2
122
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

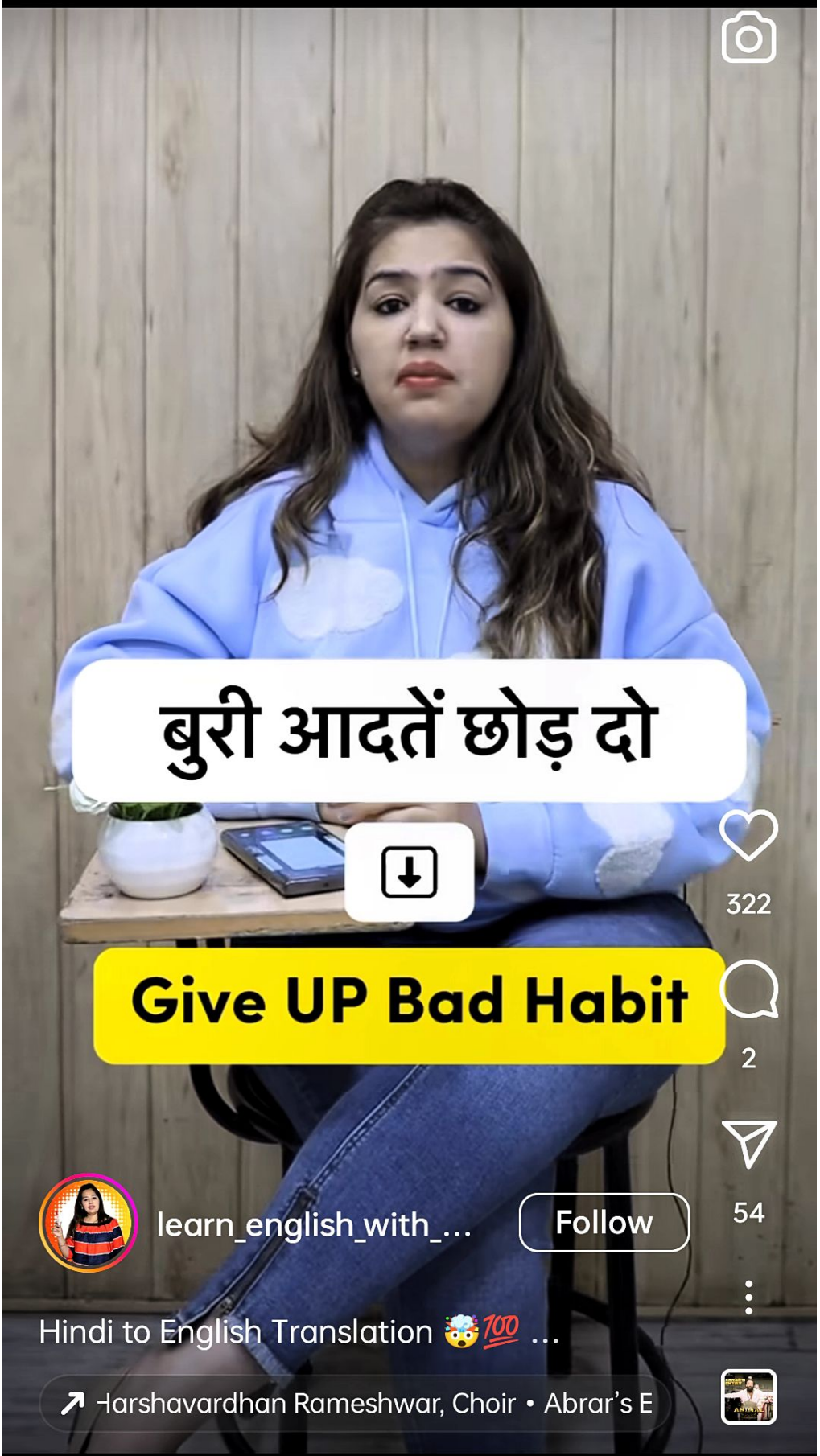

कभी तो मेरी सुन लिया करो
Do Ever Listen To Me
1,074
4
405
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

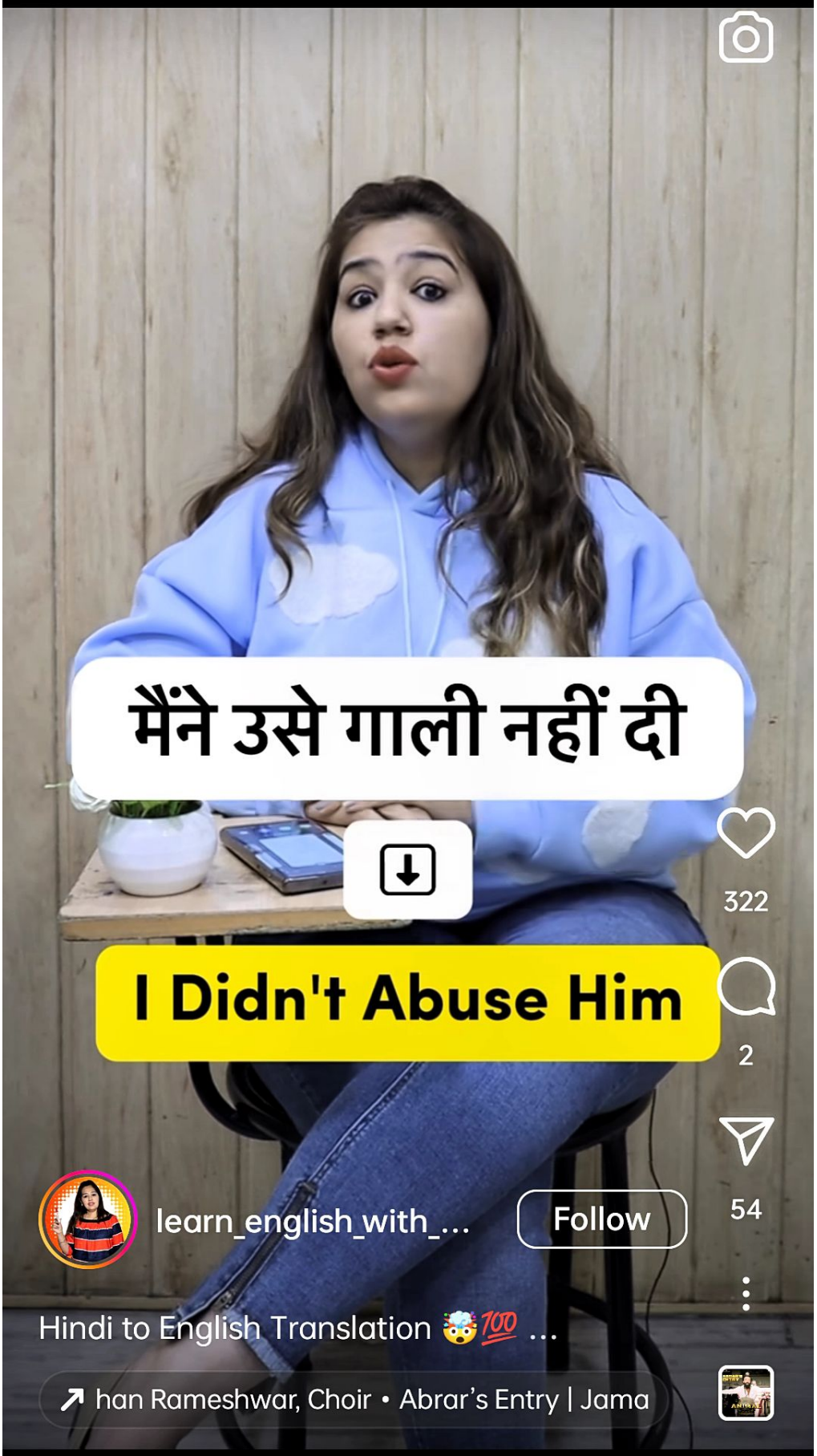

तुम ना उसकी बातों में
बिलकुल मत आना
Do Not Get Into His
Words
1,074
4
405
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

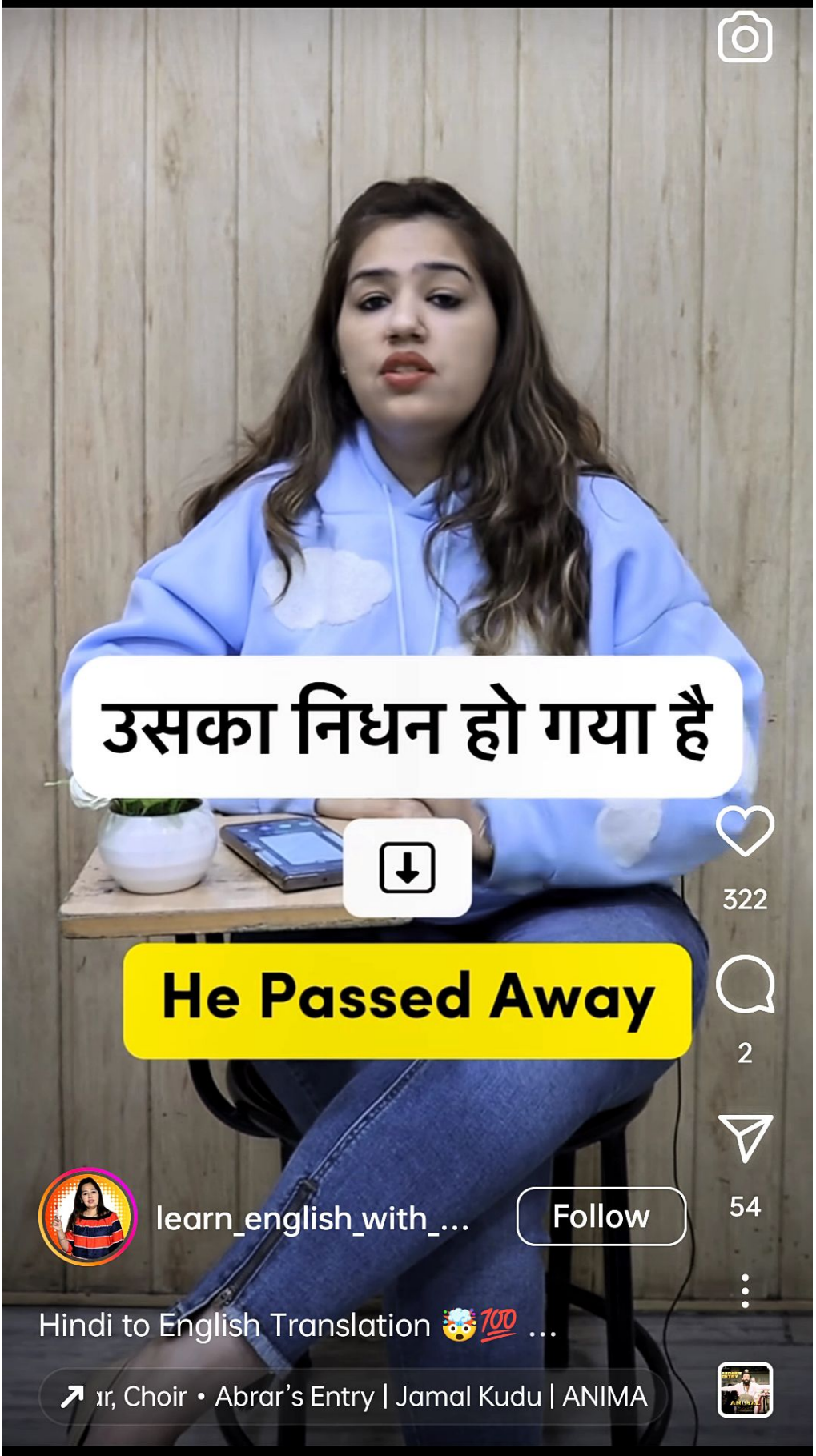

ये सब क़िस्मत का खेल है
Its All About Luck
1,074
4
405
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

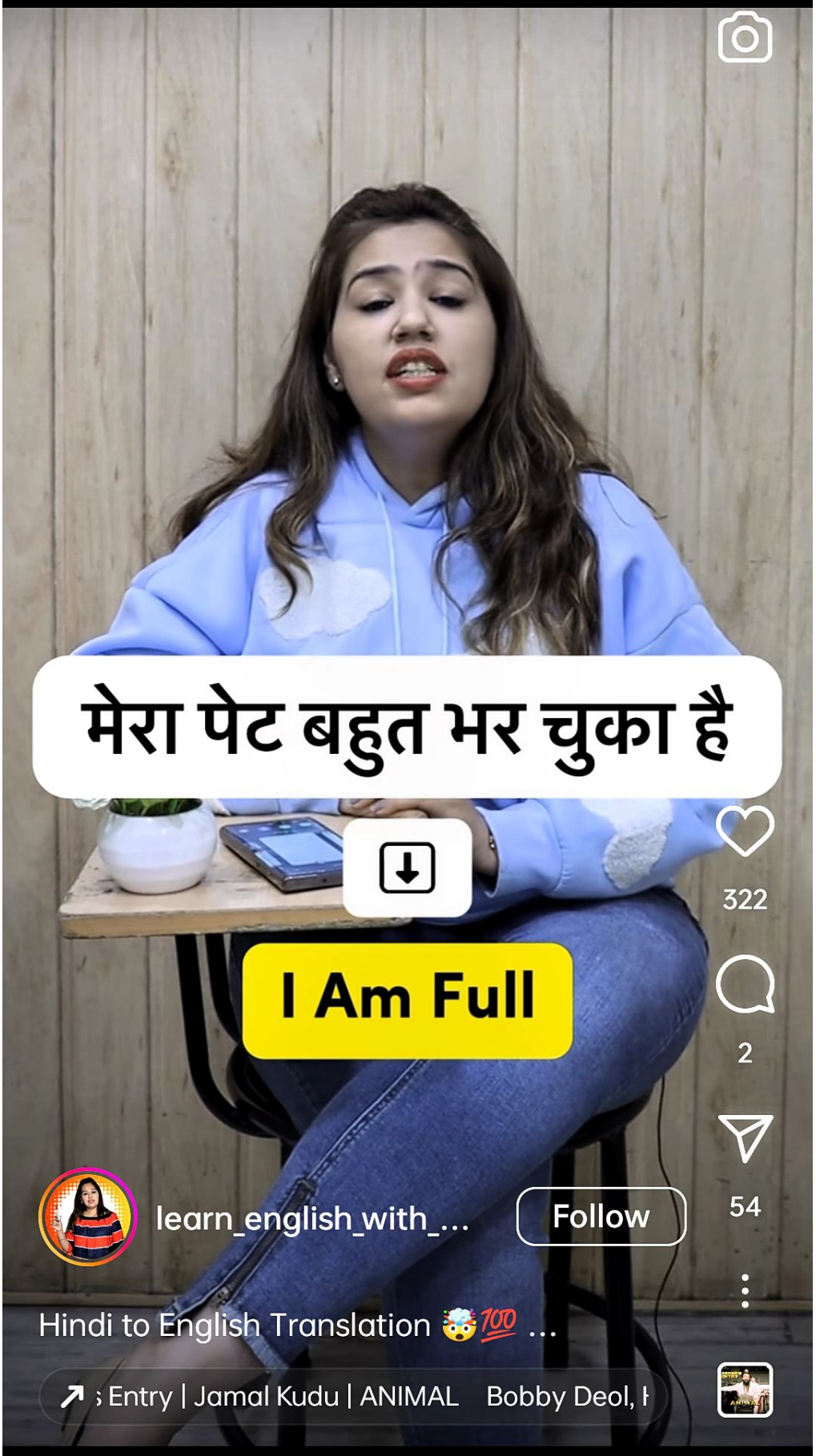

वो तो पैदायसी झूठा है
He Is A Born Liar
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
1,074
4
405


तुम मुझे ग़लत मत समझना
Don't Get Me Wrong
1,074
4
405
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

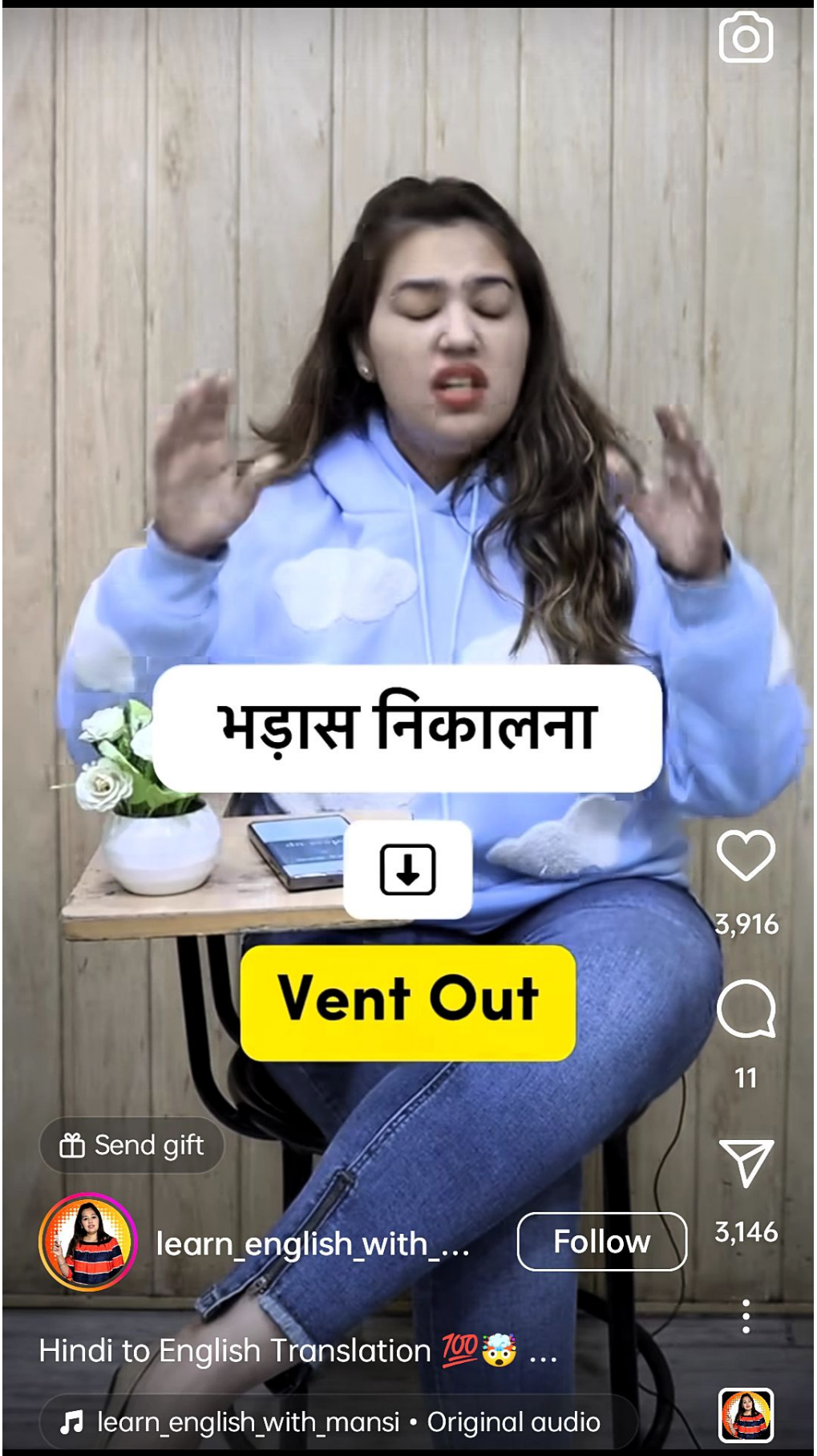

बुरी आदतें छोड़ दो
Give UP Bad Habit
322
2
54
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
Harshavardhan Rameshwar, Choir • Abrar's E

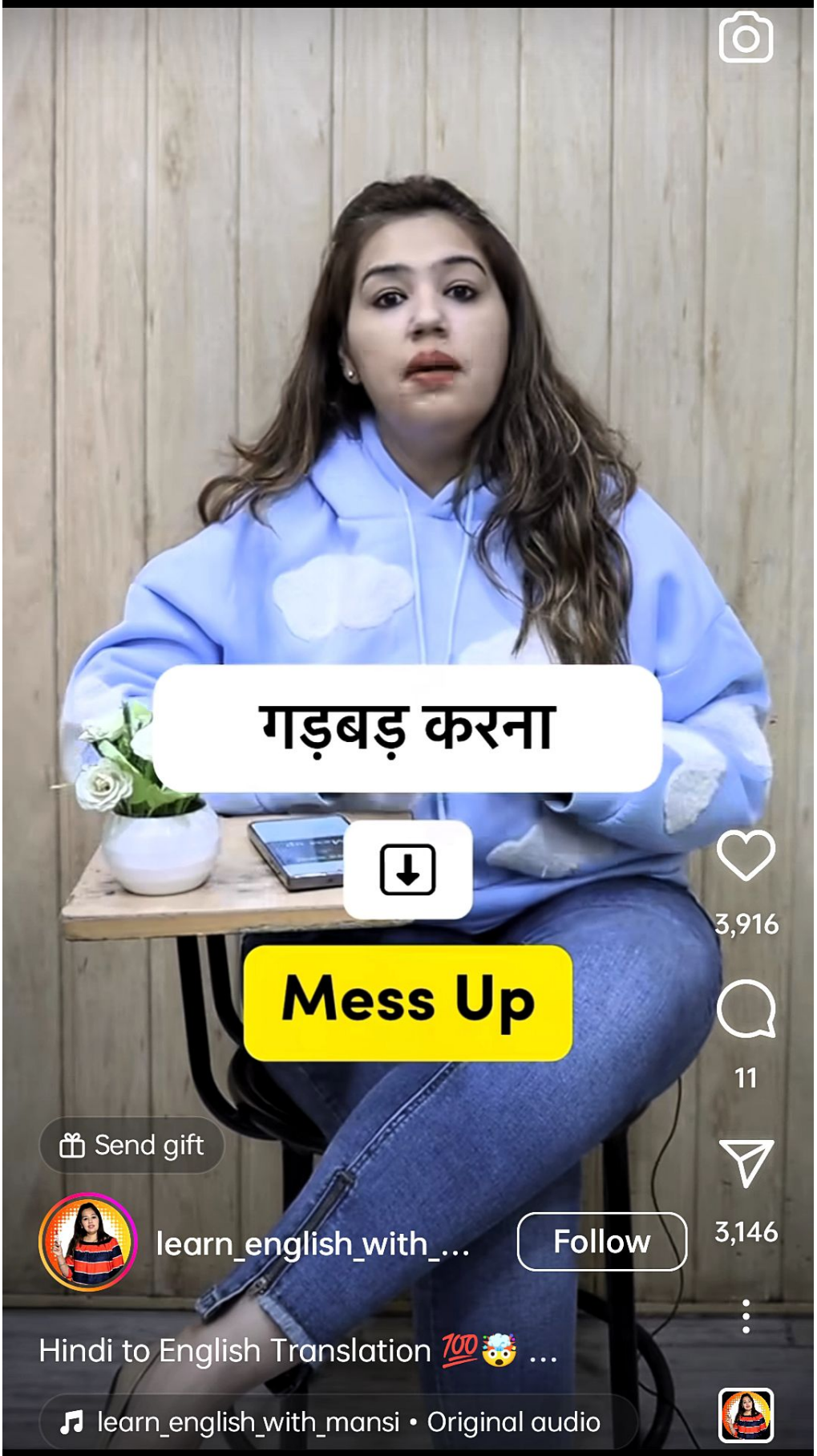

मैंने उसे गाली नहीं दी
I Didn't Abuse Him
322
2
54
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
han Rameshwar, Choir • Abrar's Entry | Jama

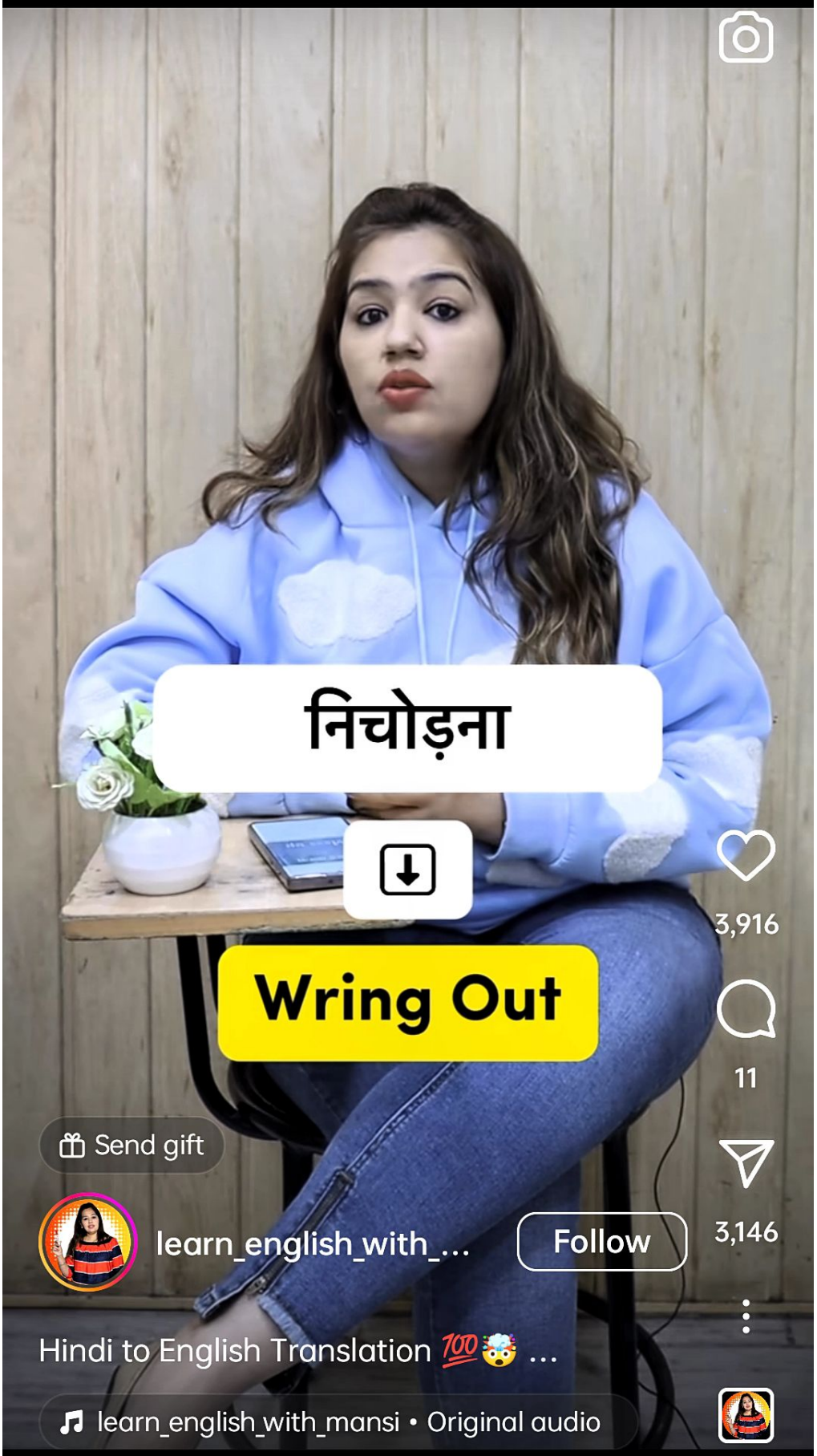

उसका निधन हो गया है
He Passed Away
322
2
54
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
ır, Choir • Abrar's Entry | Jamal Kudu | ANIMA

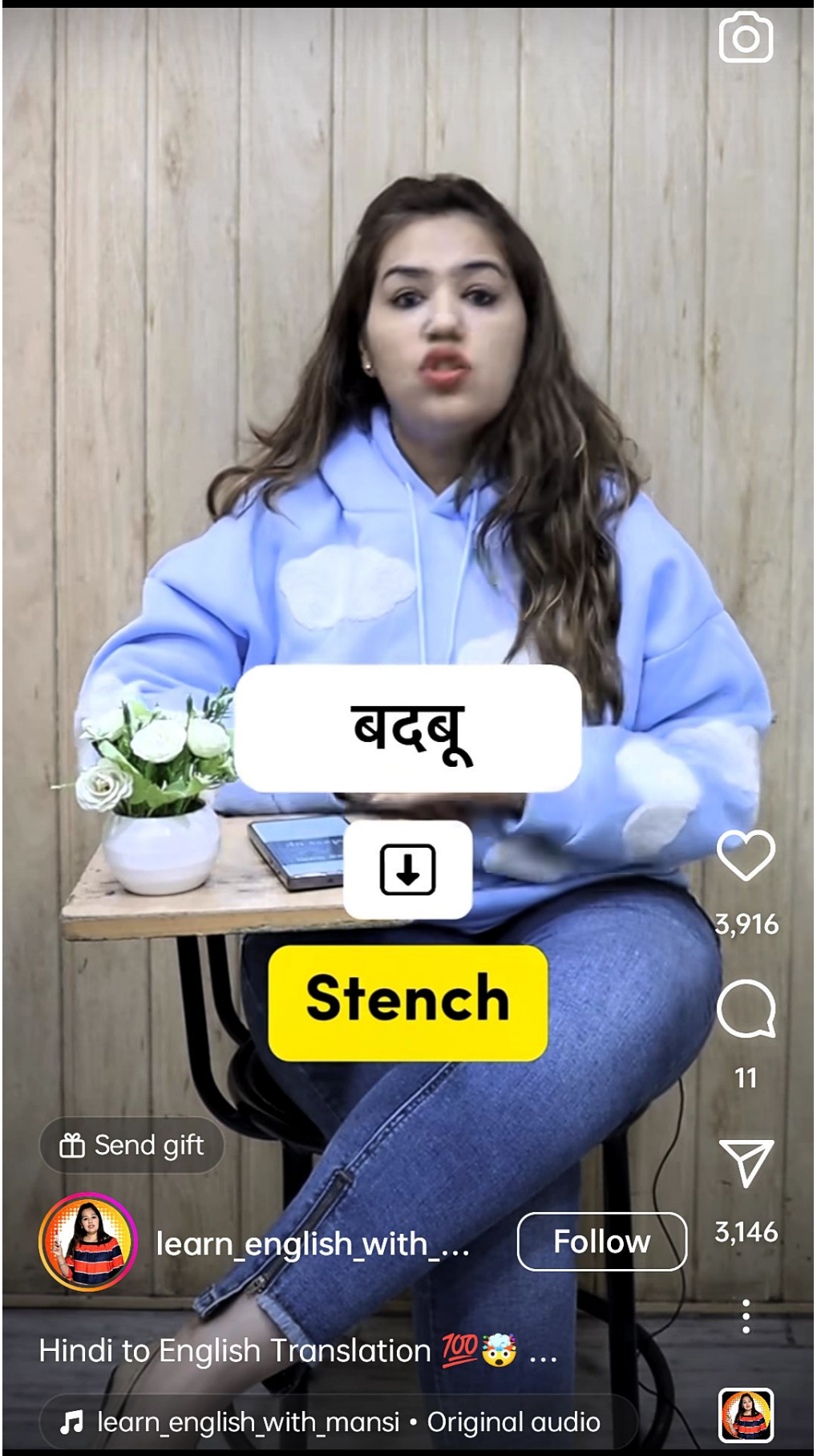

मेरा पेट बहुत भर चुका है
I Am Full
322
2
54
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯💯 ...
; Entry | Jamal Kudu | ANIMAL Bobby Deol, I

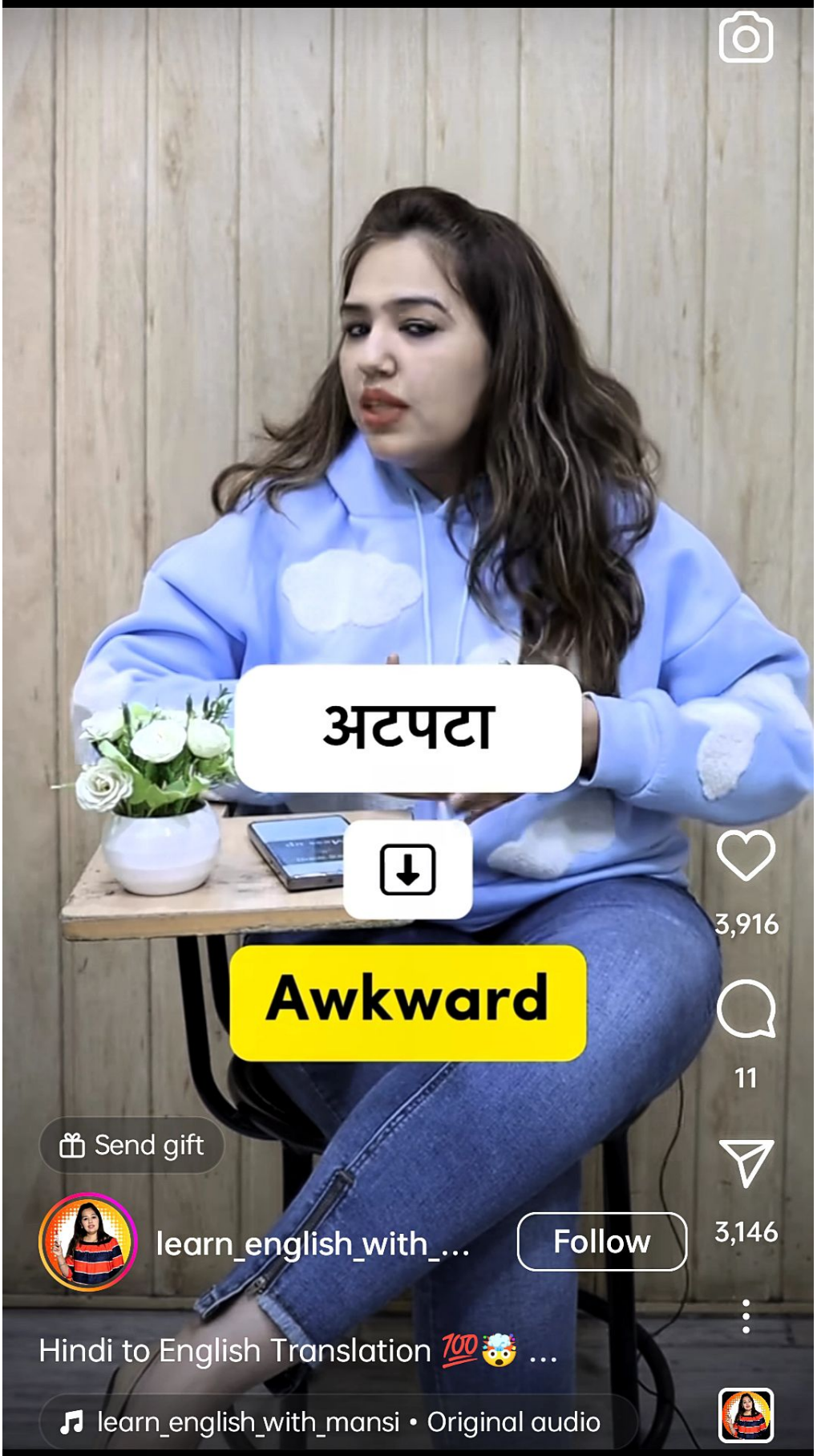

वह मेरे दूर का रिश्तेदार था
He Is My Distant Relative
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Difference Between Distance and Distant ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
733
2
91

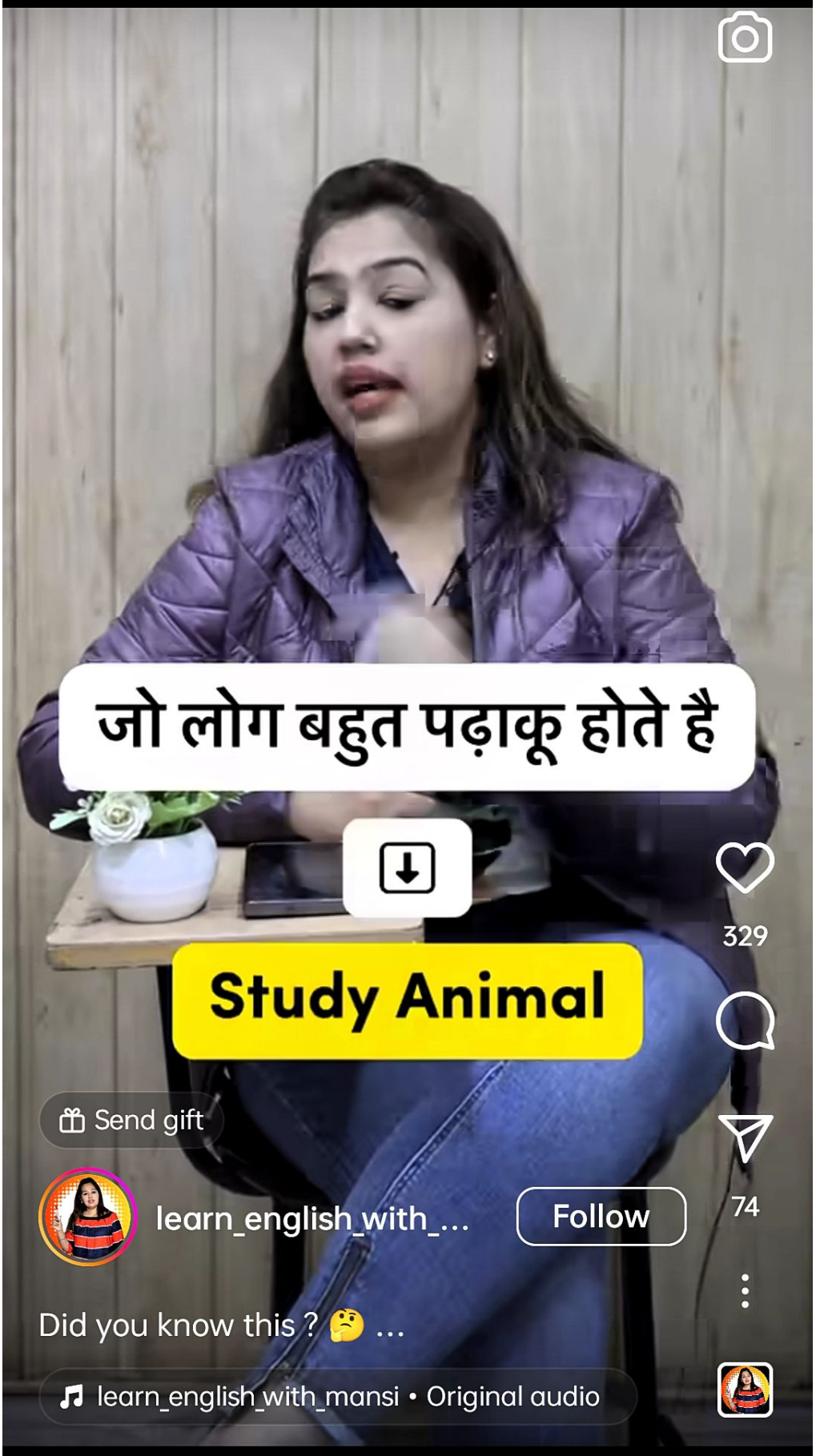

भड़ास निकालना
Vent Out
3,916
11
3,146
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


6:41
गड़बड़ करना
Mess Up
3,916
11
3,146
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

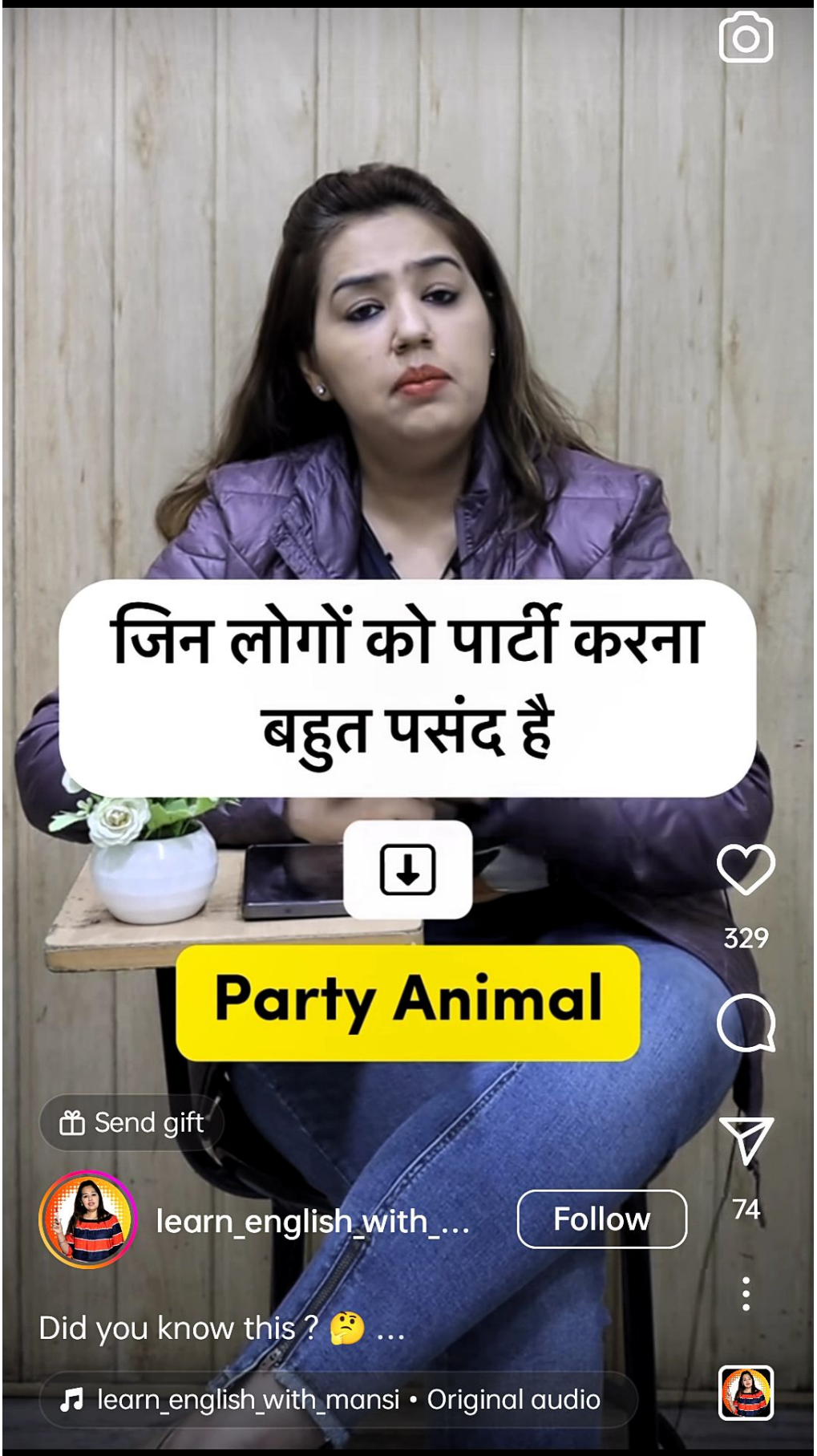

निचोड़ना
Wring Out
3,916
11
3,146
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


बदबू
Stench
3,916
11
3,146
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


अटपटा
Awkward
3,916
11
3,146
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


जो लोग बहुत पढ़ाकू होते है
Study Animal
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Did you know this ? 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
329
74


जो लोग बहुत पढ़ाकू होते है
Egghead
329
74
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Did you know this ? 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

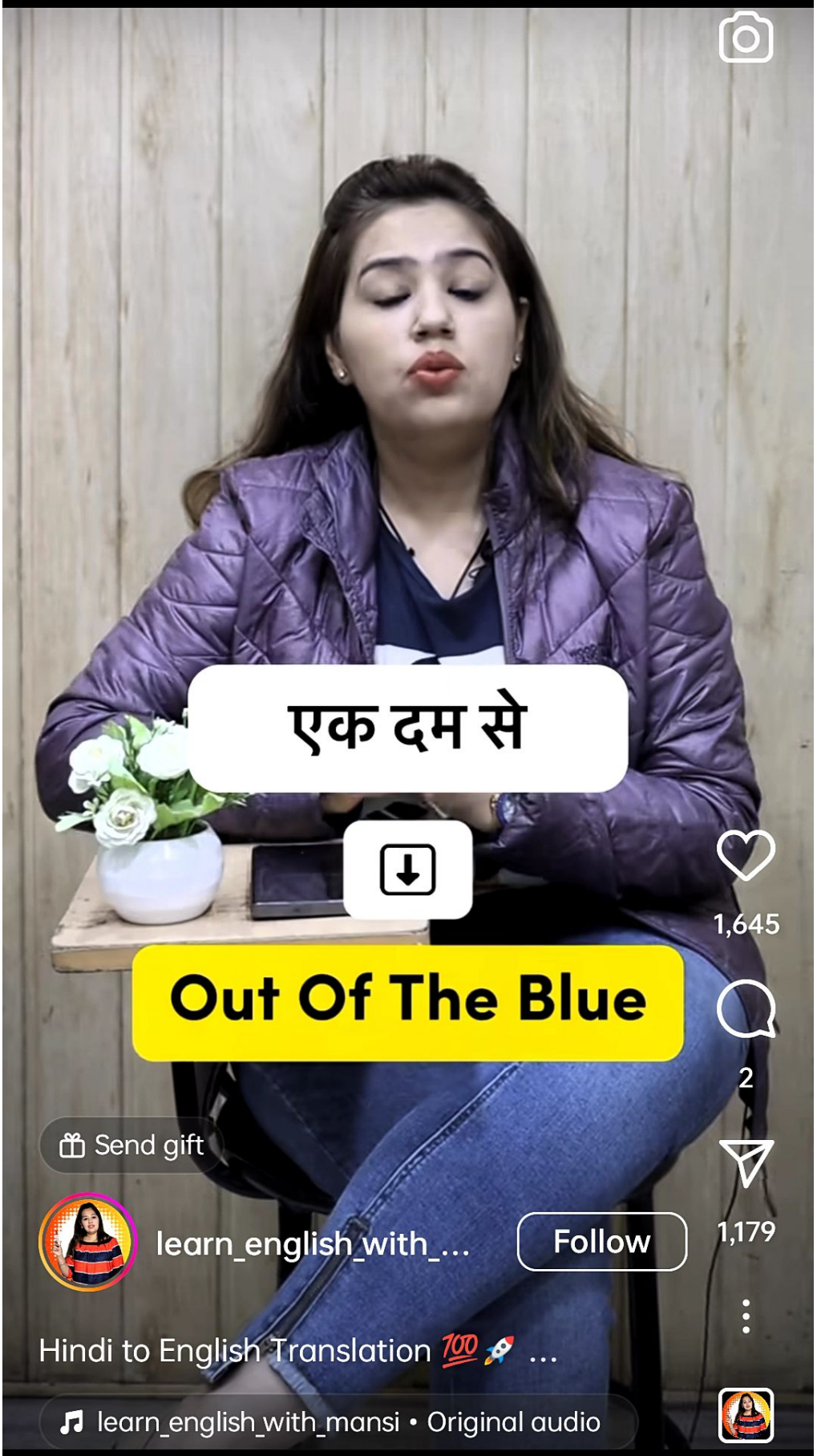

जिन लोगों को पार्टी करना बहुत पसंद है
Party Animal
329
74
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Did you know this ? 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

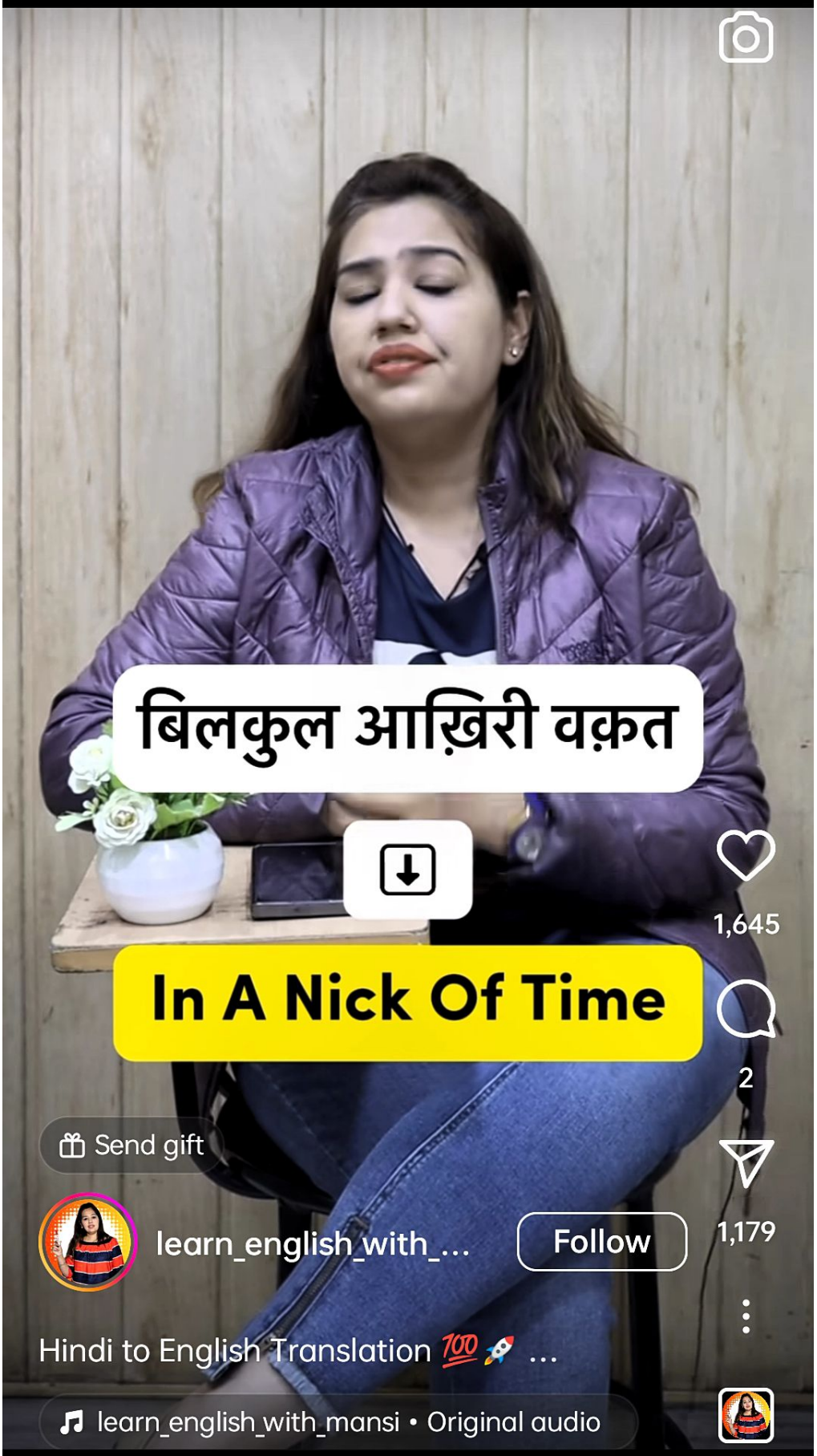

जो लोग बहुत ही
focussed होते है
329
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
74
Did you know this ? 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

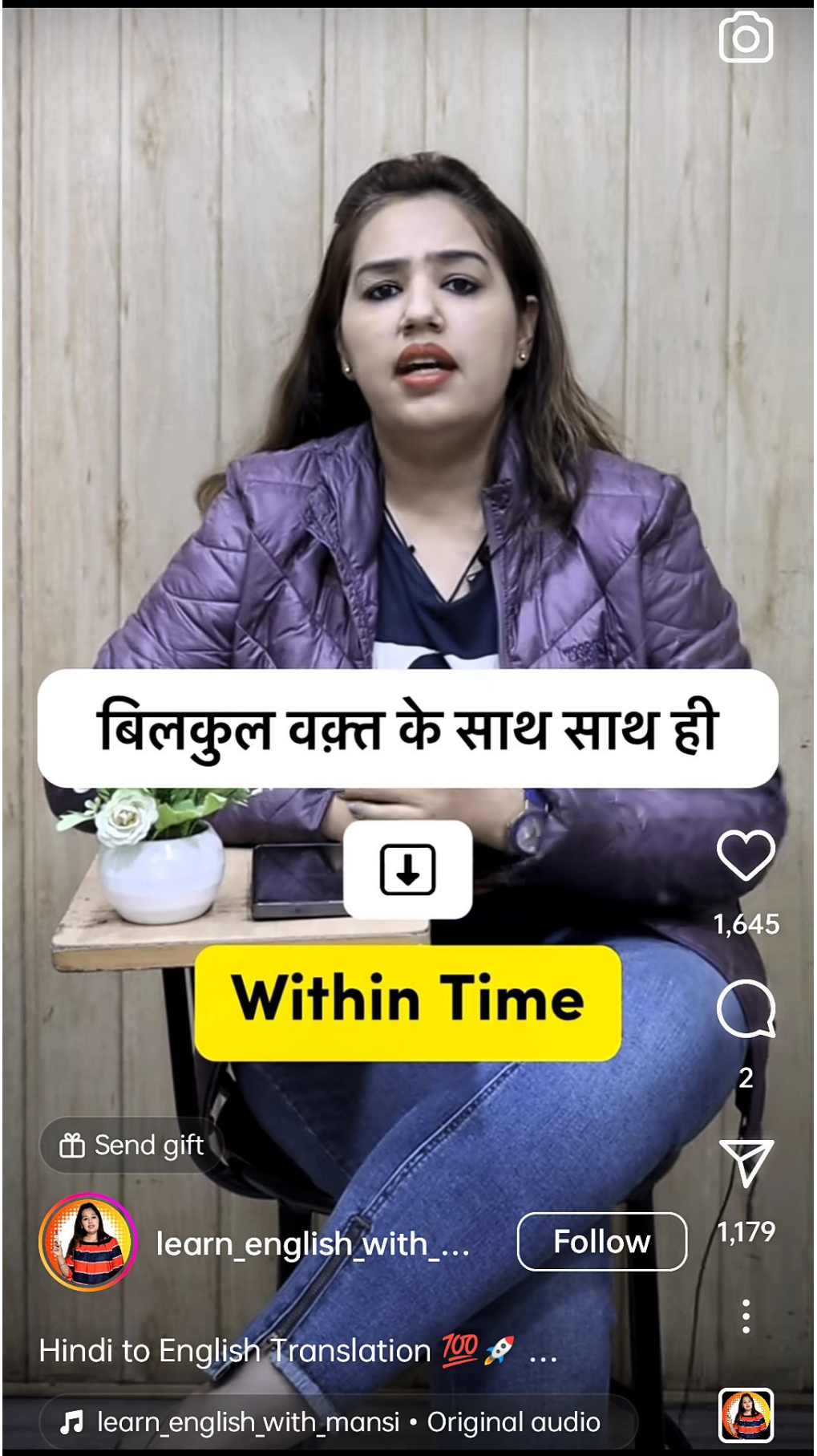

अपने aim के लिए
Tough Cookie
329
74
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Did you know this ? 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

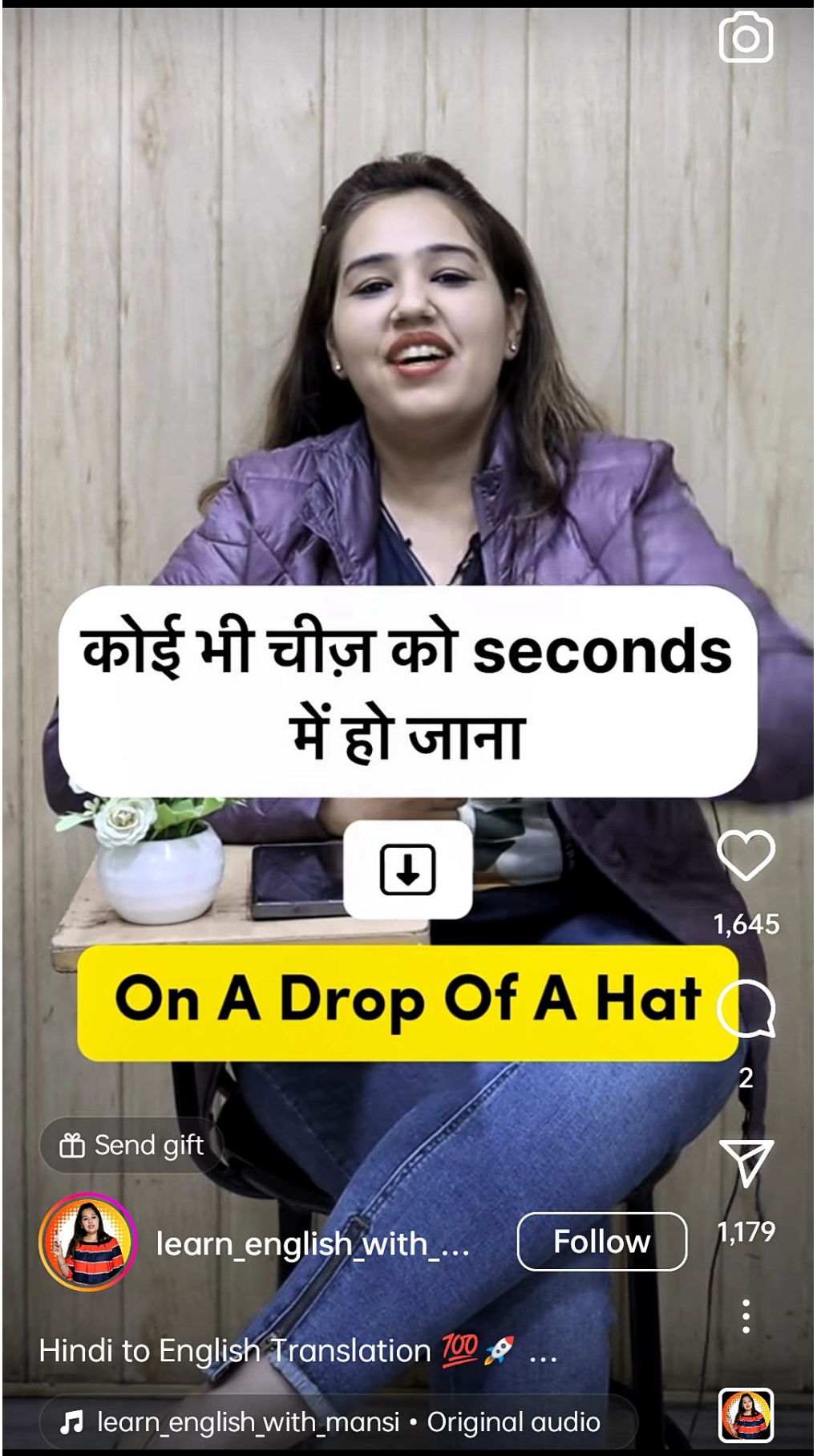

जो लोग बहुत ही smart
और intelligent होते है
329
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
74
Did you know this ? 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

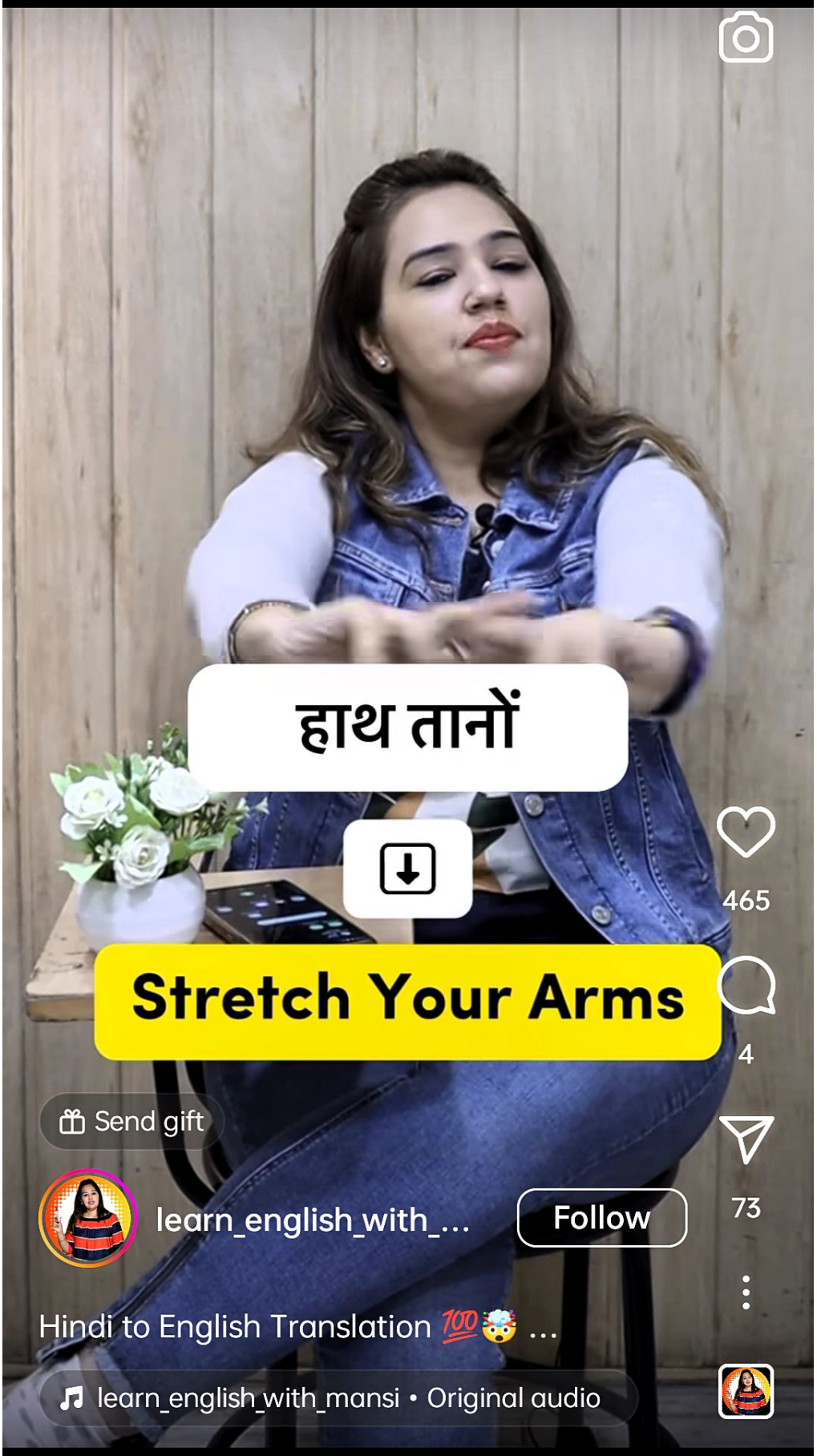

जो लोग बहुत ही smart
और intelligent होते है
Smart Cookie
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Did you know this ? 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
329
74


एक दम से
Out Of The Blue
1,645
2
1,179
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🚀 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


बिलकुल आख़िरी वक़त
In A Nick Of Time
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🚀 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
1,645
2
1,179


बिलकुल वक़्त के साथ साथ ही
Within Time
1,645
2
1,179
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🚀 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


कोई भी चीज़ को seconds में हो जाना
On A Drop Of A Hat
1,645
2
1,179
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🚀 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


हाथ तानों
Stretch Your Arms
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
465
4
73


6:43
167 KB/S
58
आँख मारो
Wink Your Eye
465
4
73
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


पलके झपकाओ
Blink Your Eye
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
465
4
73

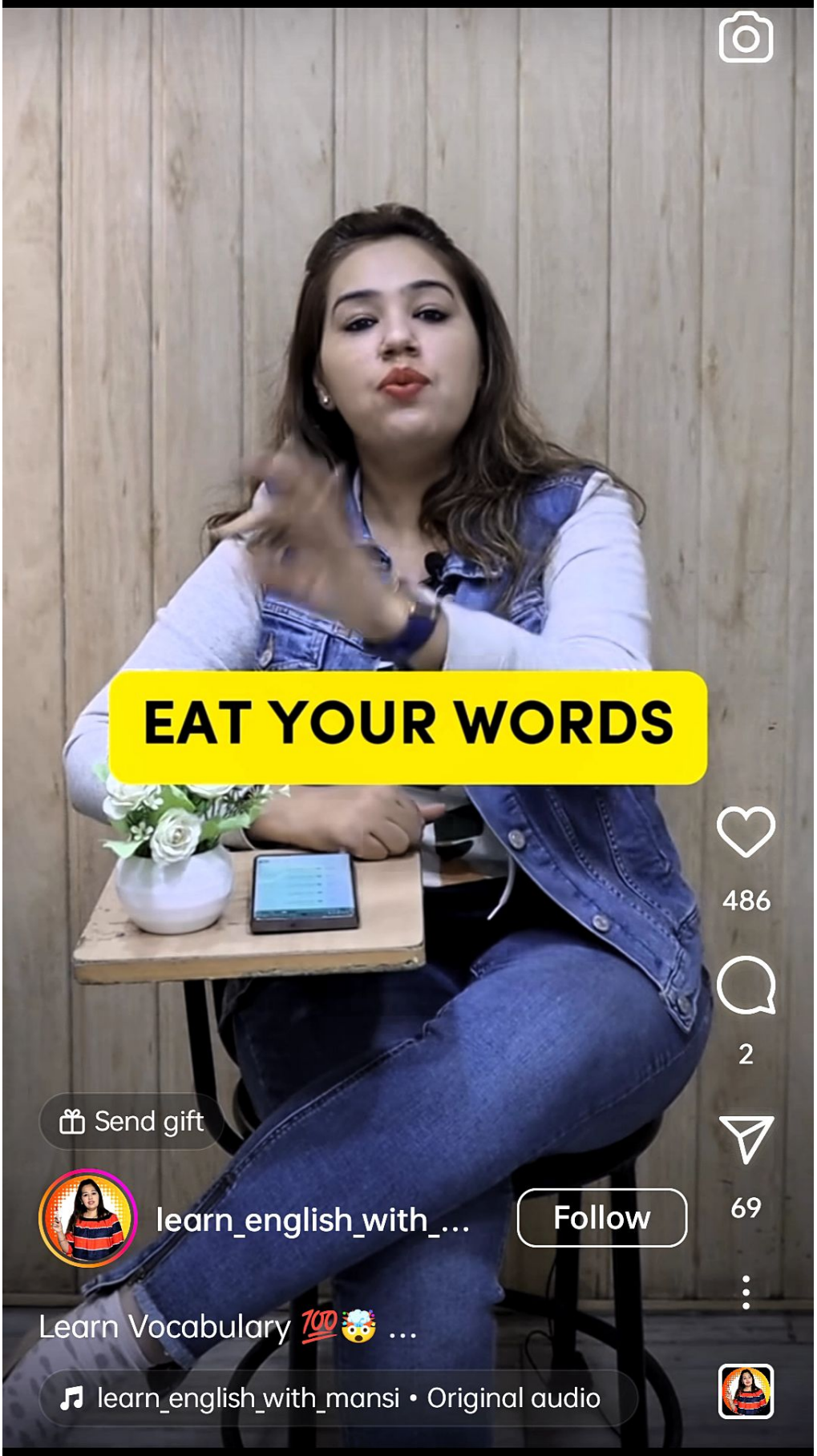

हाथ को गोल गोल घुमाओ
Roll Your Hands
465
4
73
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

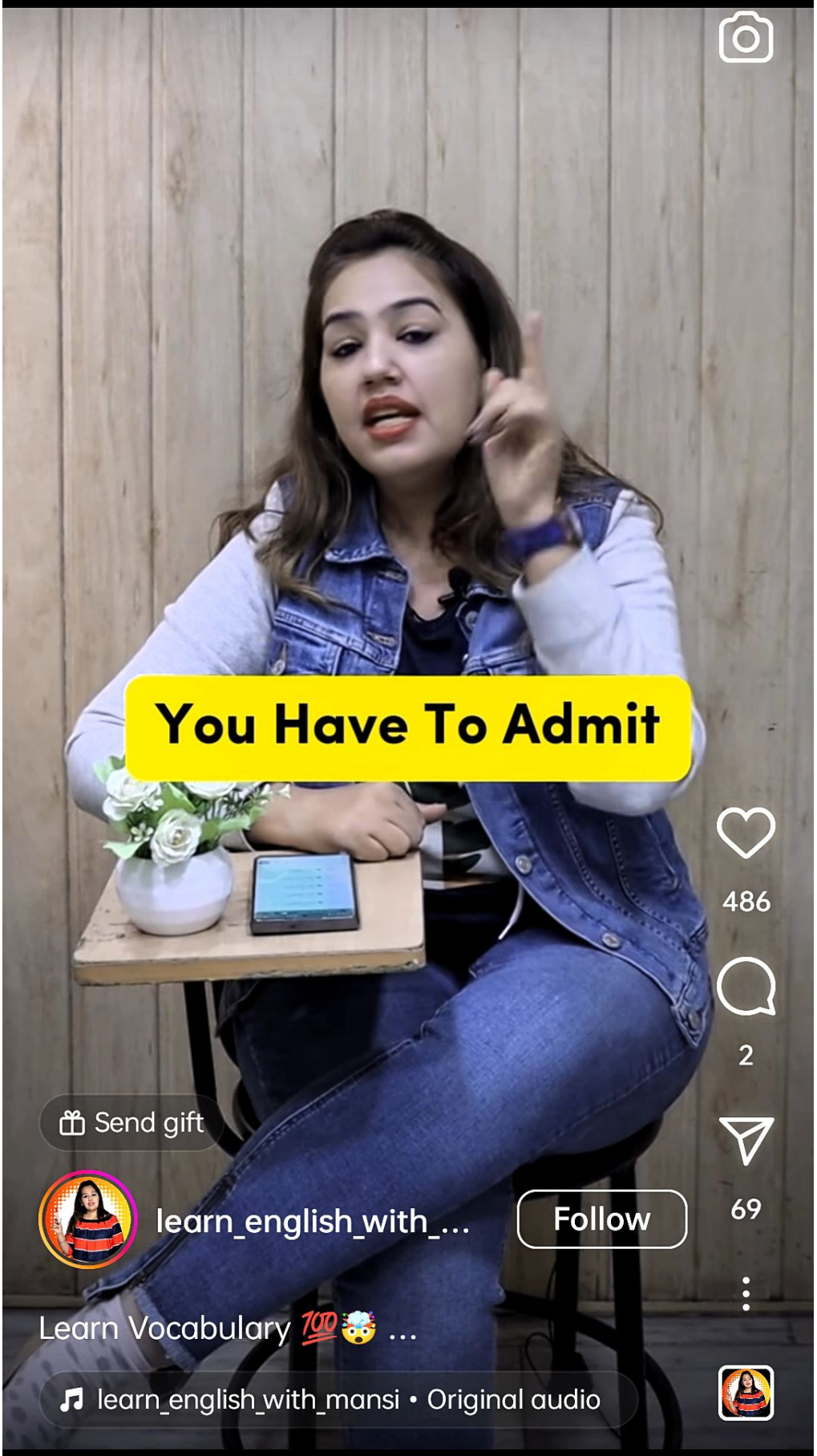

हाथ मिलाओ
Shake Your Hands
465
4
73
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

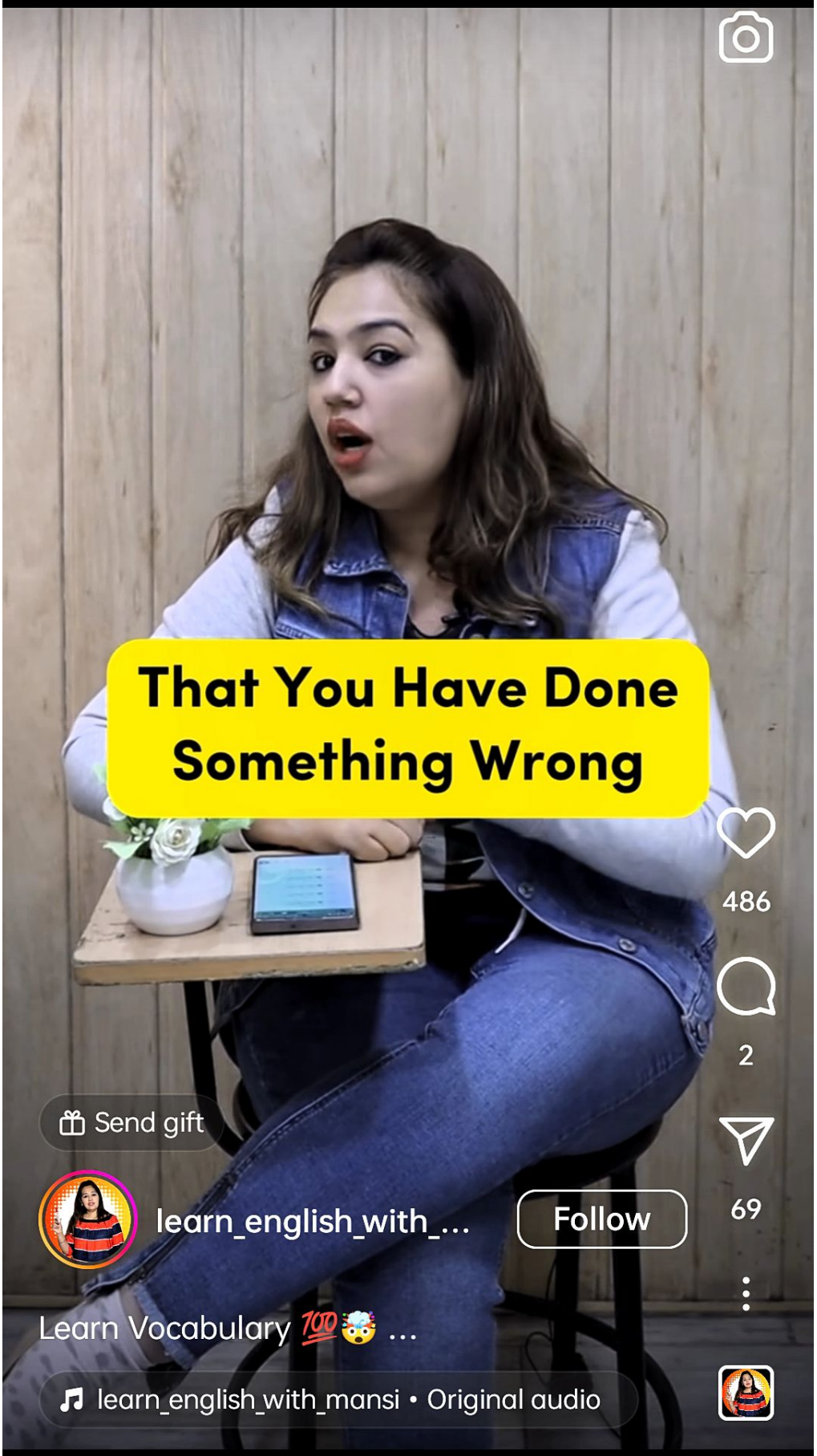

नाक सुरकाओ
Sniff Your Nose
465
4
73
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

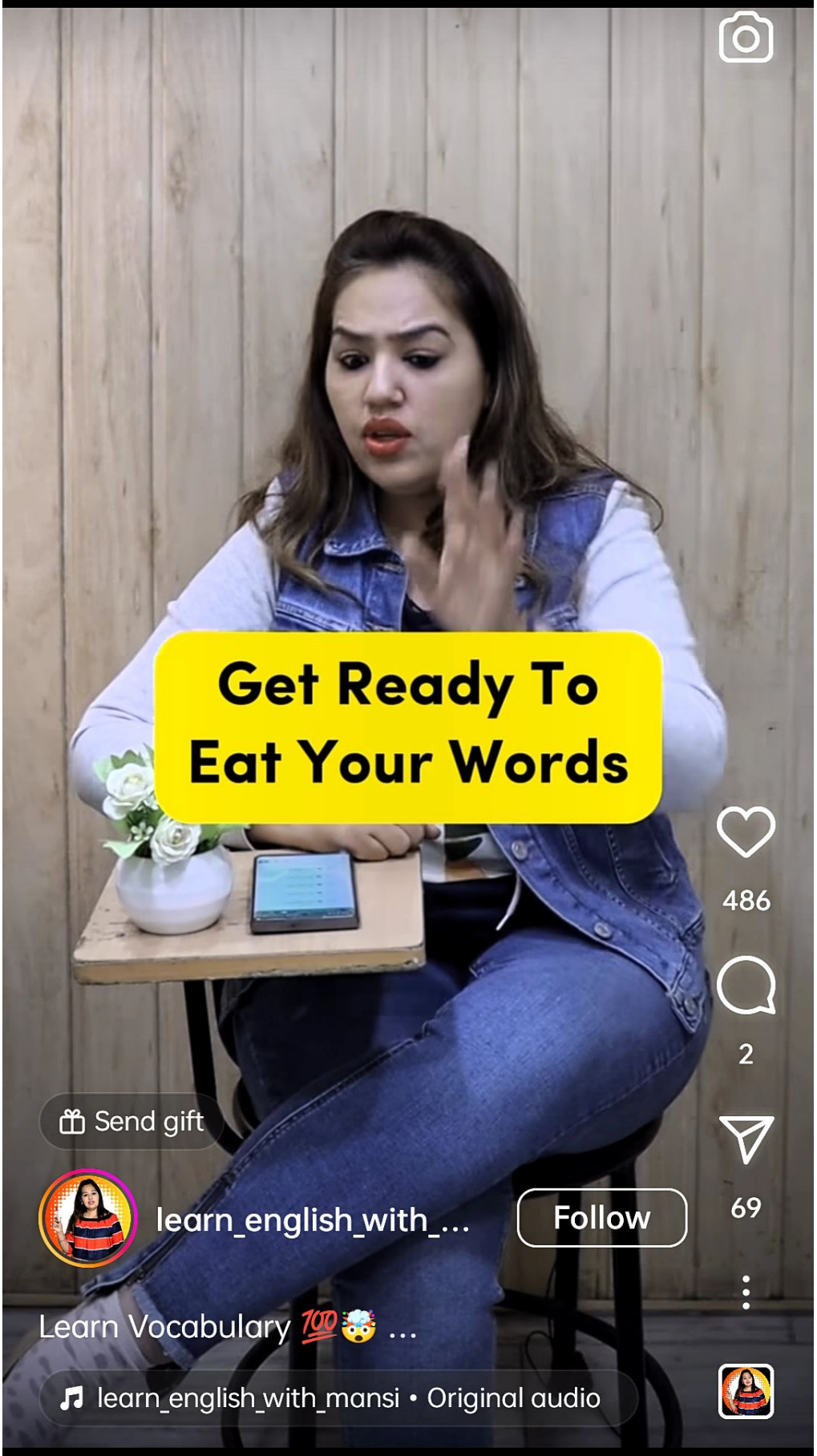

6:43
0.12 KB/S
58
ये ना तुम्हारी गलती है &$!#%
486
2
69
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

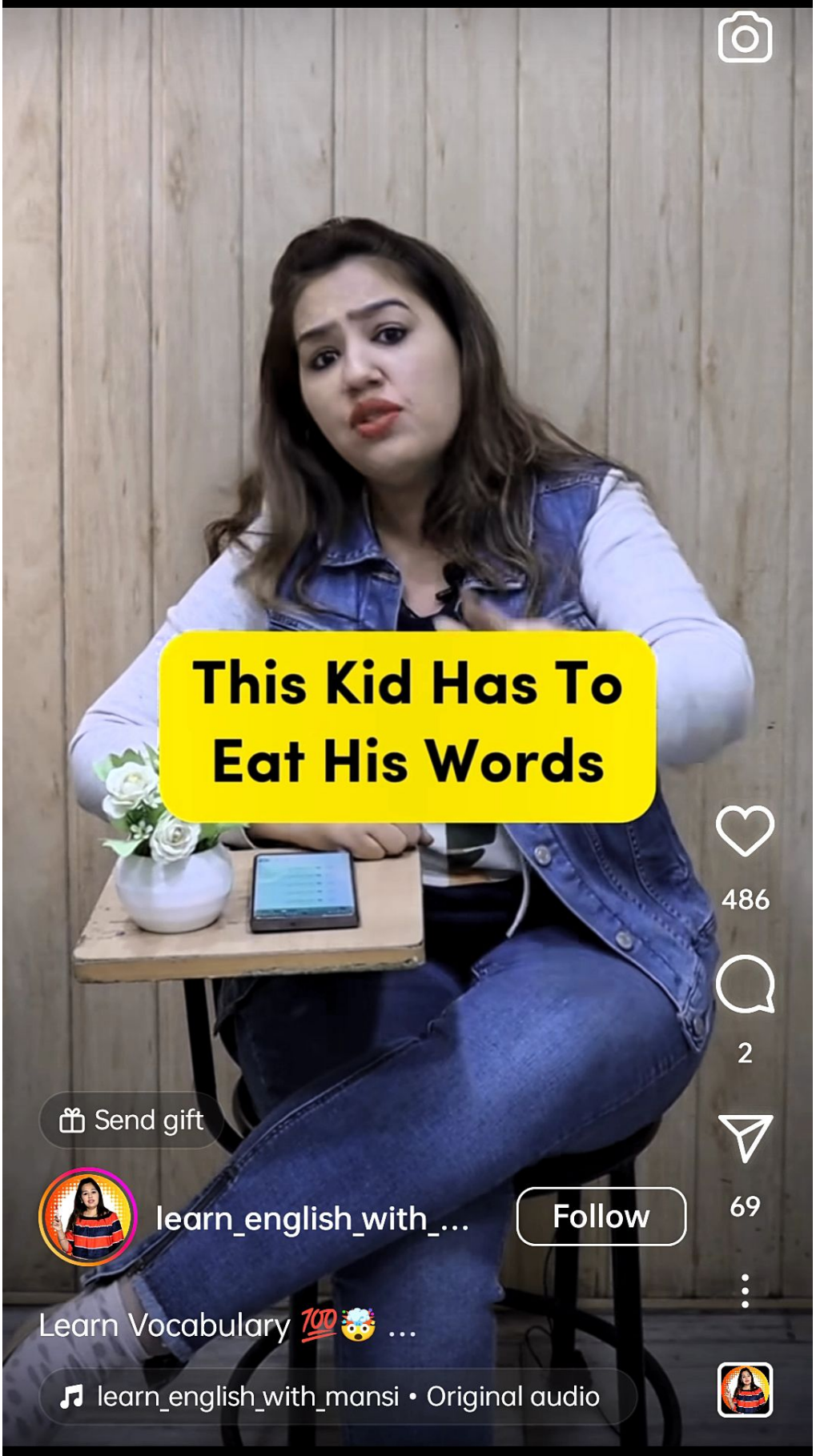

तुम्हें मानना पड़ेगा
तुमने ग़लत किया है
486
2
69
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


EAT YOUR WORDS
486
2
69
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


You Have To Admit
486
2
69
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


That You Have Done
Something Wrong
486
2
69
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Get Ready To
Eat Your Words
486
2
69
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


This Kid Has To
Eat His Words
486
2
69
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


भगवान सब ठीक कर देंगे
God Will Set Everything Right
521
2
85
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


मैं आपके ही कदमों पर चलता हूँ
I Follow Your Footsteps
521
2
85
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


कुछ भी रातों रात नहीं होता
Nothing Happens Overnight
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
521
2
85


उसको ना Chocolate और Pastries खाने का बहुत शौक़ है
He Is Glutton of Eating Pastries & Chocolates
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
521
2
85


अब बस बहुत हो गया
Enough is Enough
496
3
82
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


अब बस बहुत हो गया
Enough is Enough
496
3
82
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


वो बहुत चीख चीख के बातें करता है
He Is A Loud Mouth
496
3
82
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


उसके पेट में तो कोई बात नहीं पचती है
She Is A Big Mouth
496
3
82
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

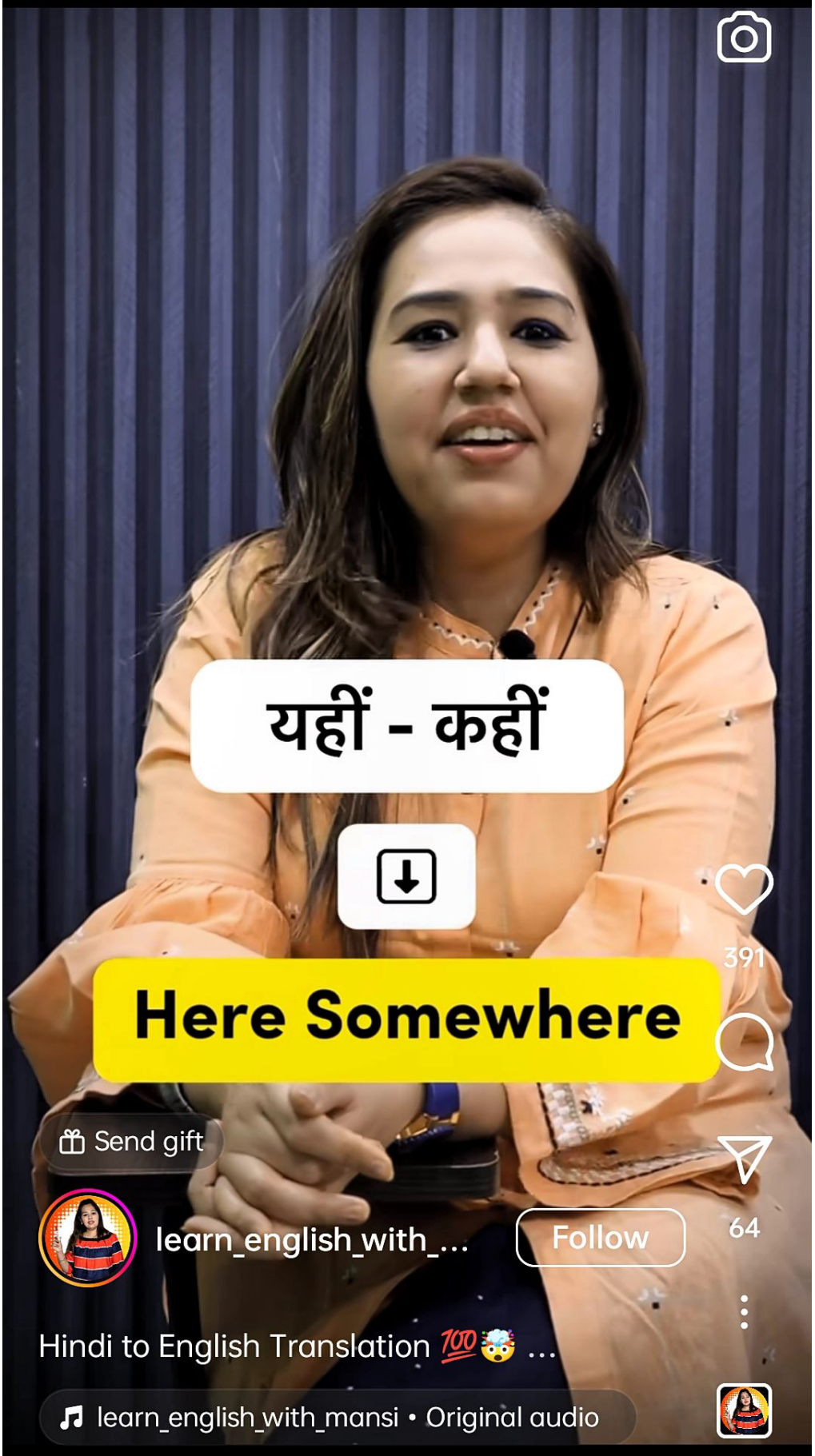

वो बहुत ही मतलबी है
She Is Very Mean
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
496
3
82


मेरे मन में जो था मैंने बोल दिया
I Spoke My Mind
496
3
82
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


भारी भरकम
Heavy & Solid
391
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
64
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


टेड़ा-मेड़ा
Zig Zag
Send gift
391
64
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


बहुत बड़ा
Gigantic
391
64
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

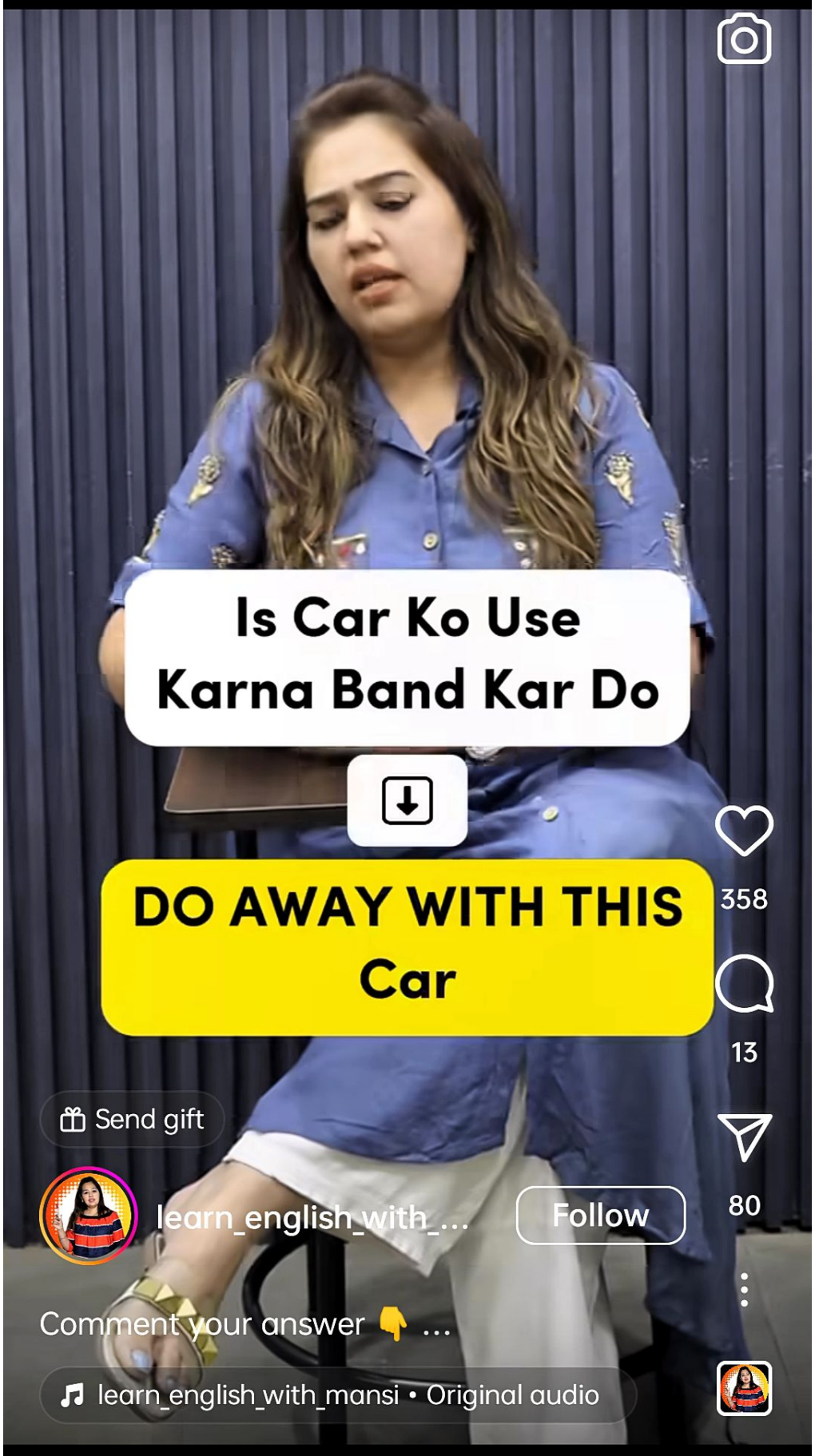

यहीं - कहीं
Here Somewhere
391
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
64
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

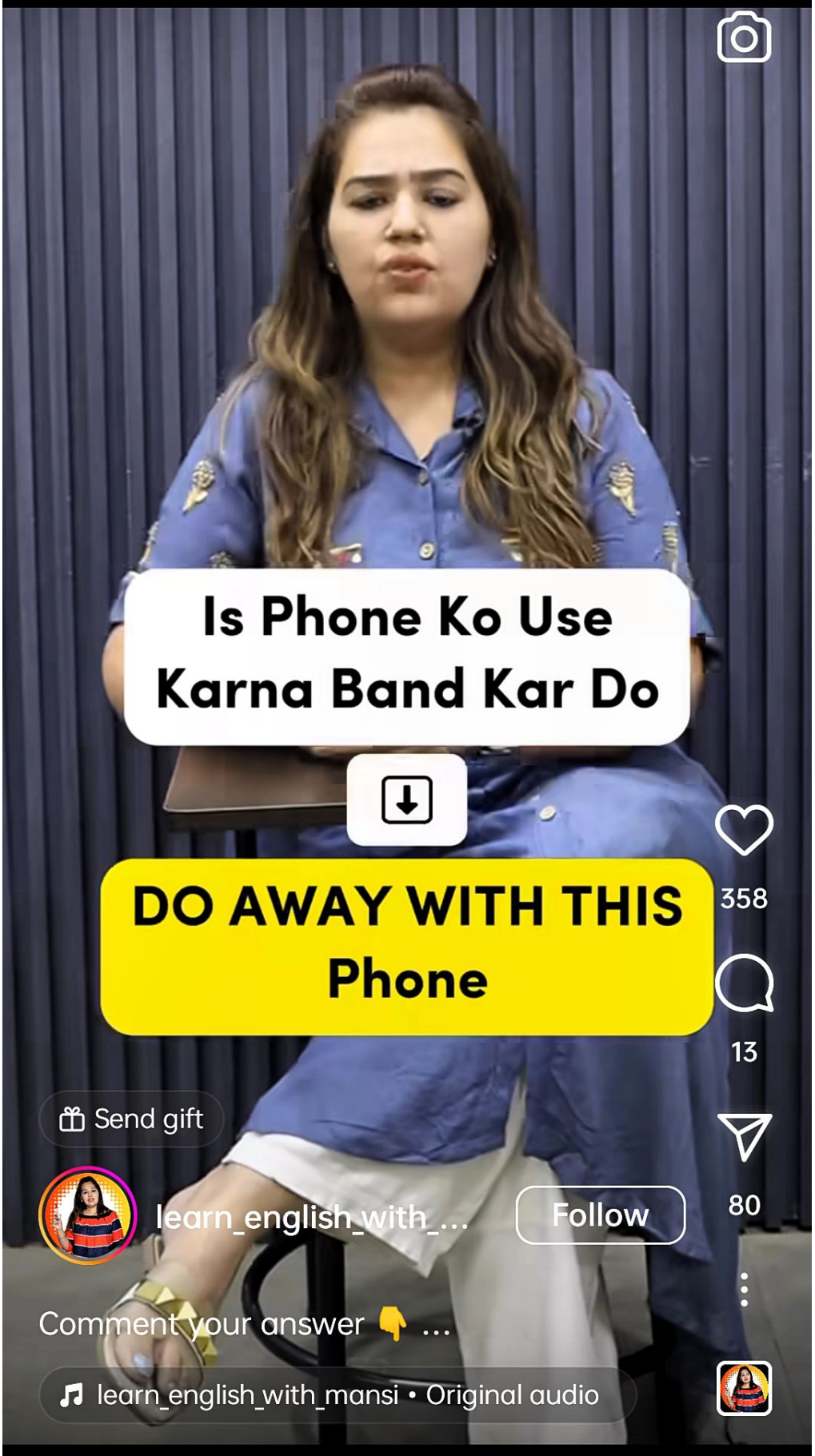

अगर मैं फिसल गई तो
What If I Slip
373
4
63
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

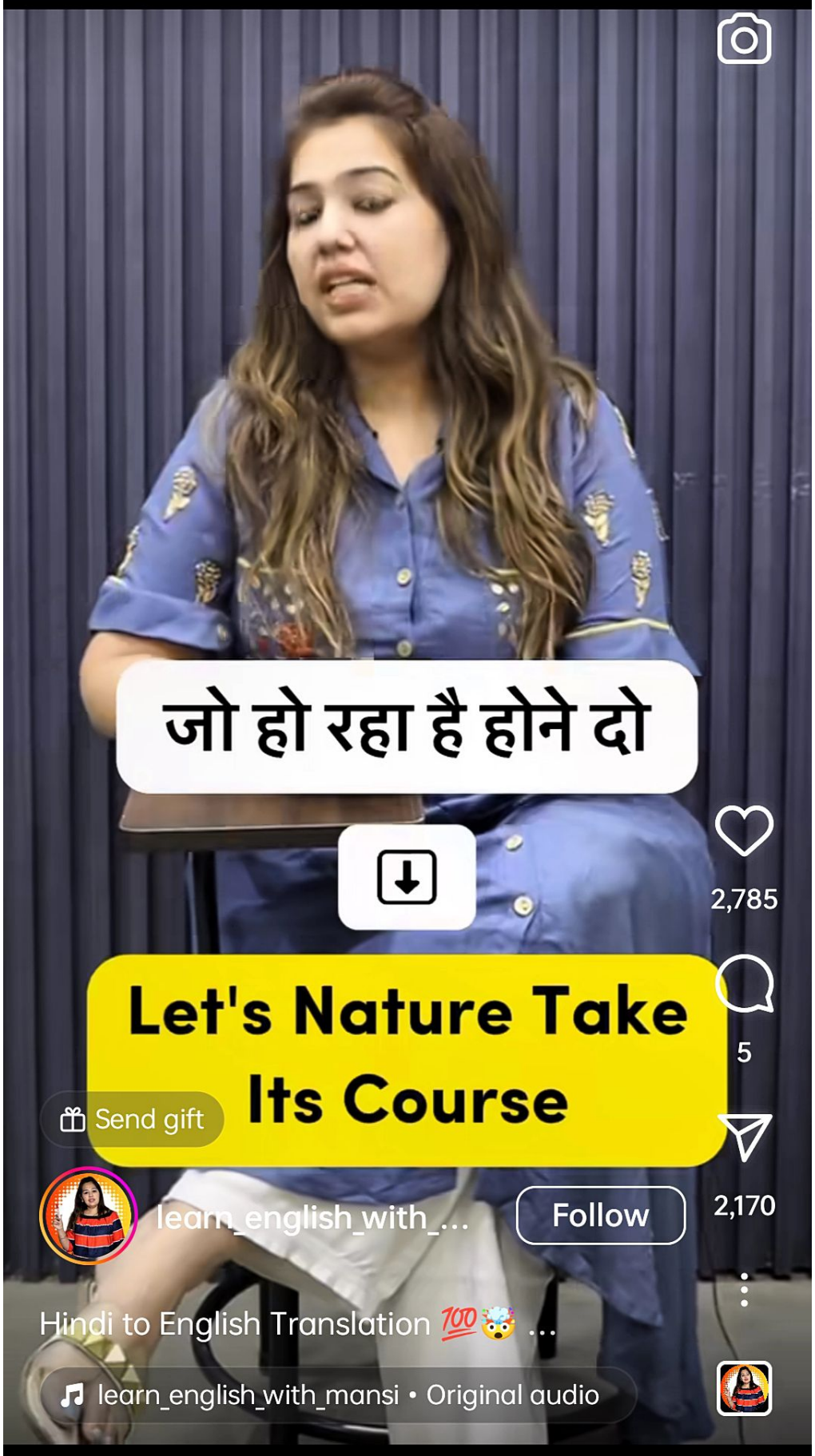

अगर तुमने मेरे पैसे
नहीं लौटाए तो
What If You Don't
Return My Money
373
4
63
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


अगर कुछ बुरा हो गया हो तो
What If Something Bad Happens
373
4
63
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Is Laptop Ko Use Karna Band Kar Do
DO AWAY WITH THIS Laptop
358
13
80
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Comment your answer 👇 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

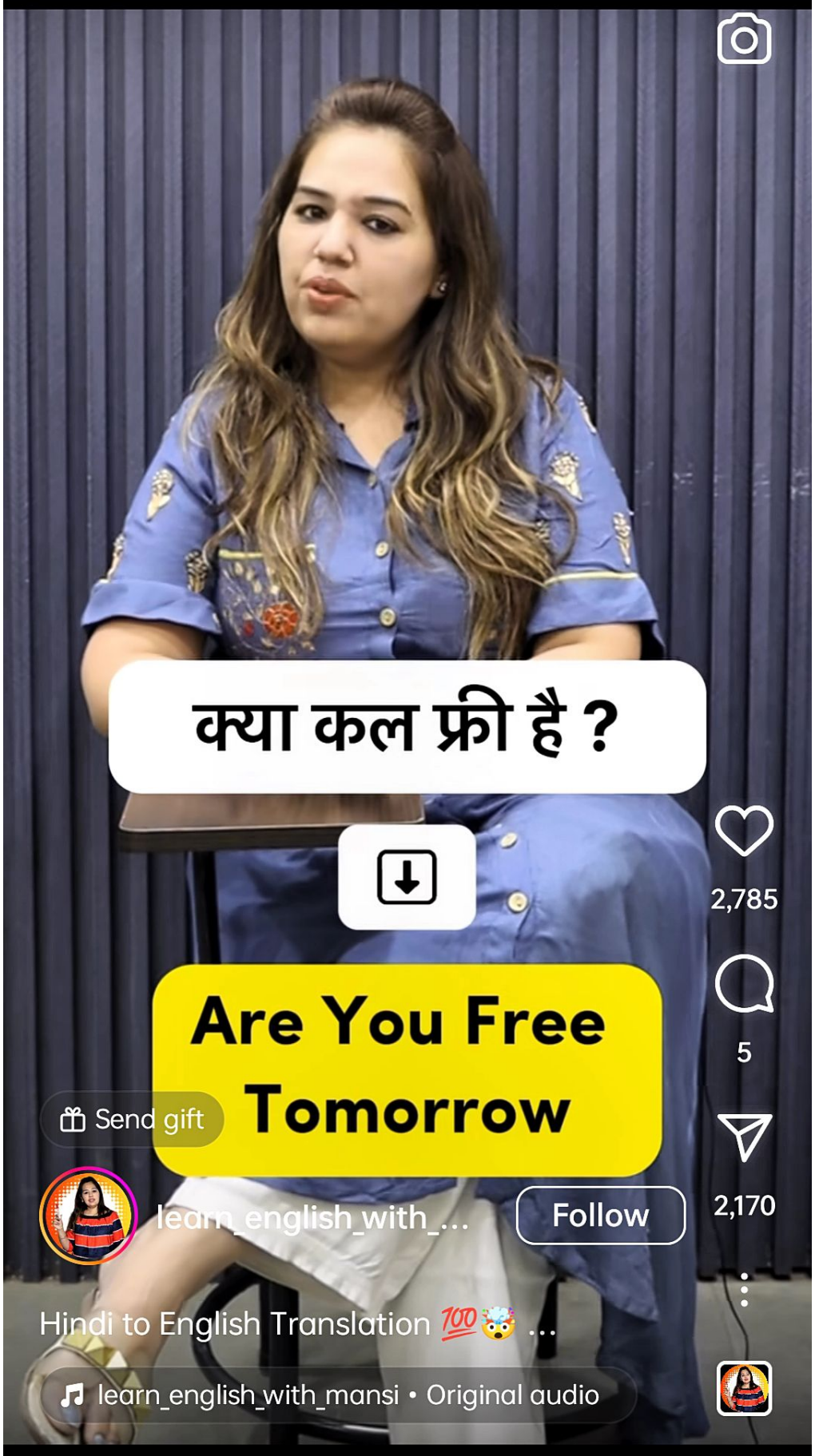

Is Car Ko Use
Karna Band Kar Do
DO AWAY WITH THIS
Car
358
13
80
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Comment your answer 👇 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

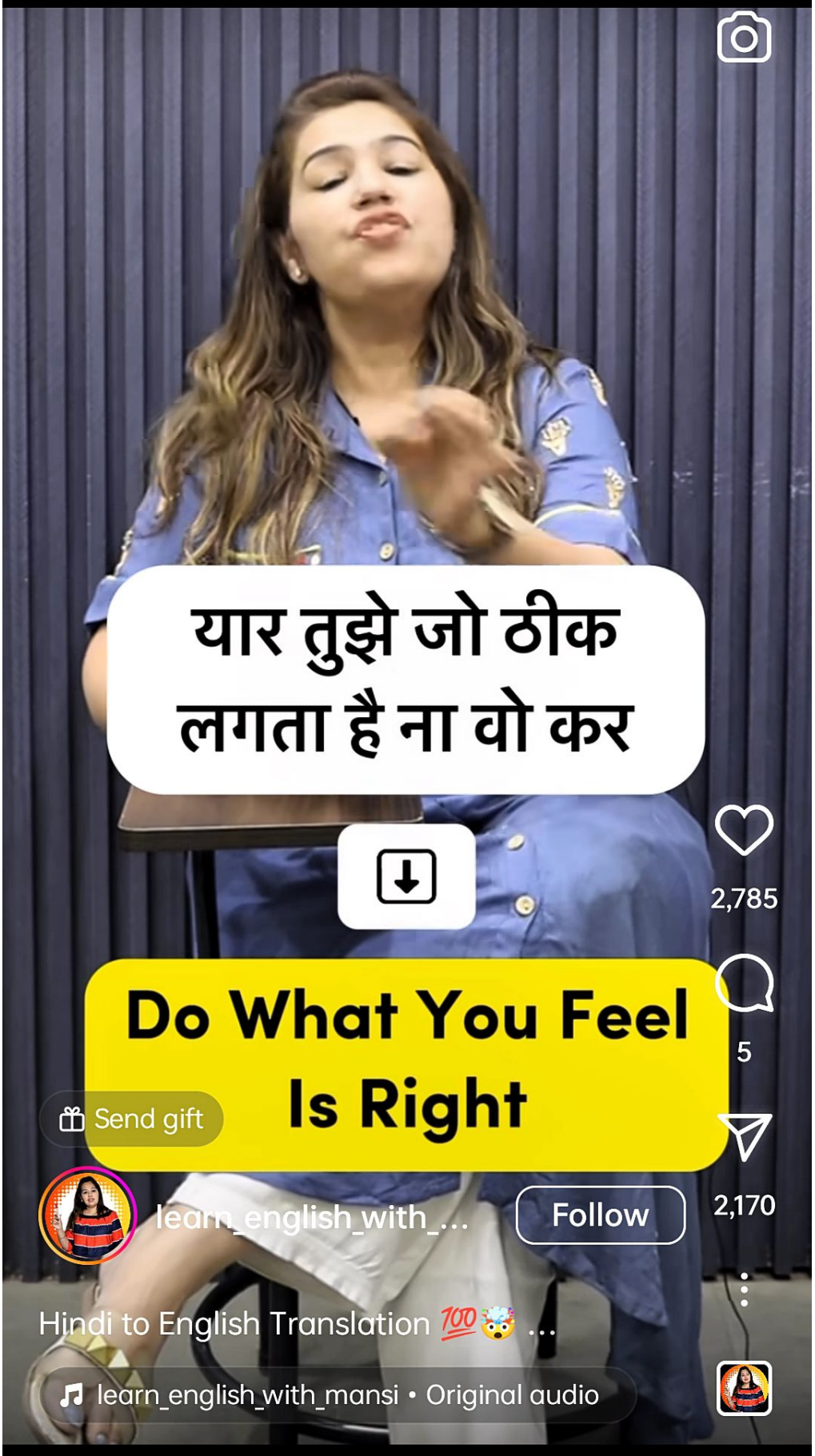

Is Phone Ko Use Karna Band Kar Do
DO AWAY WITH THIS Phone
358
13
80
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Comment your answer 👇 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

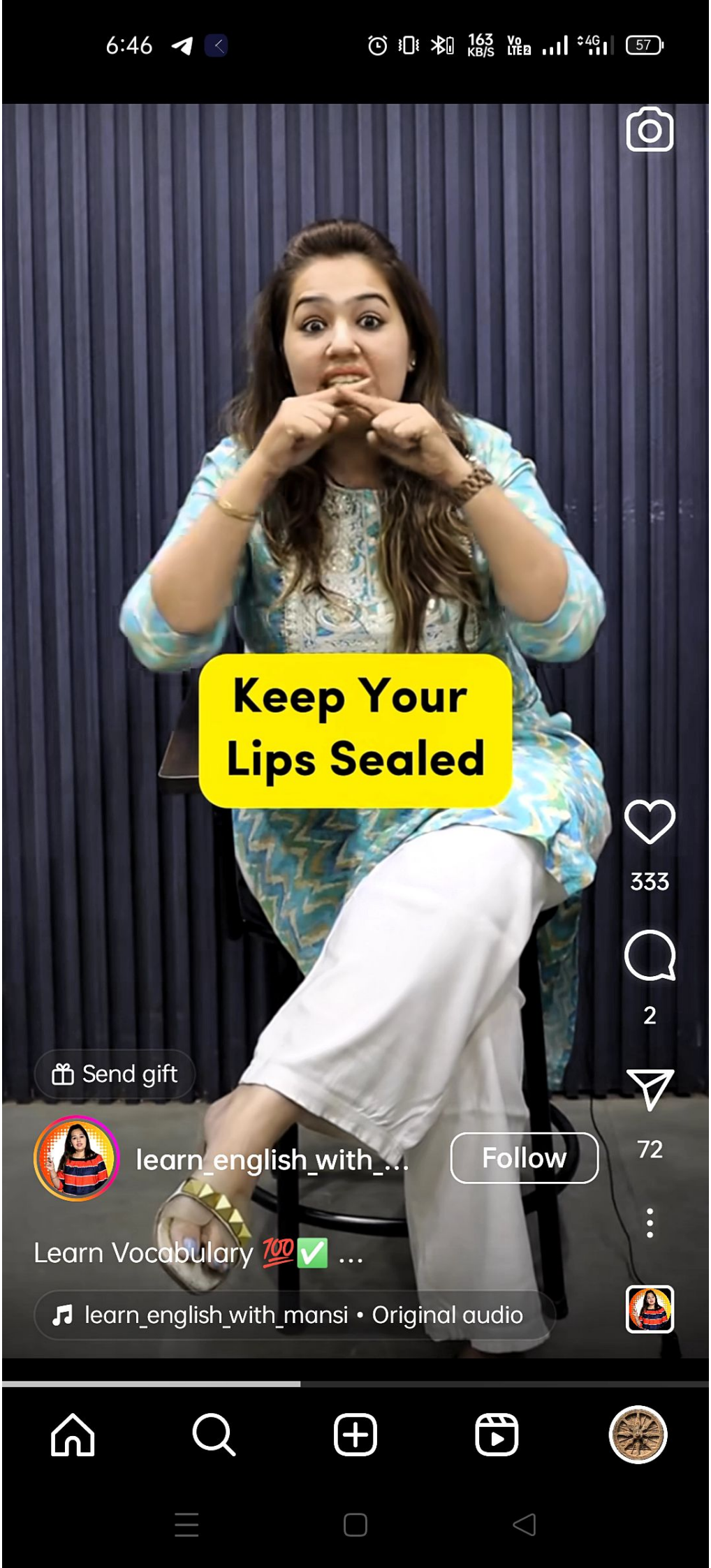

जो हो रहा है होने दो
Let's Nature Take Its Course
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
2,785
5
2,170


यार मेरा एक काम कर दे
Please Give Me A Favour
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
2,785
5
2,170


मेरी ना पूरी बात सुन
Hear Me Out
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
2,785
5
2,170


क्या कल फ्री है ?
Are You Free Tomorrow
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
2,785
5
2,170


यार तुझे जो ठीक लगता है ना वो कर
Do What You Feel Is Right
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
2,785
5
2,170


6:46
Keep Your Lips Sealed
333
2
72
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Keep It Under
The Wraps
333
2
72
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Keep It Hush
333
2
72
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

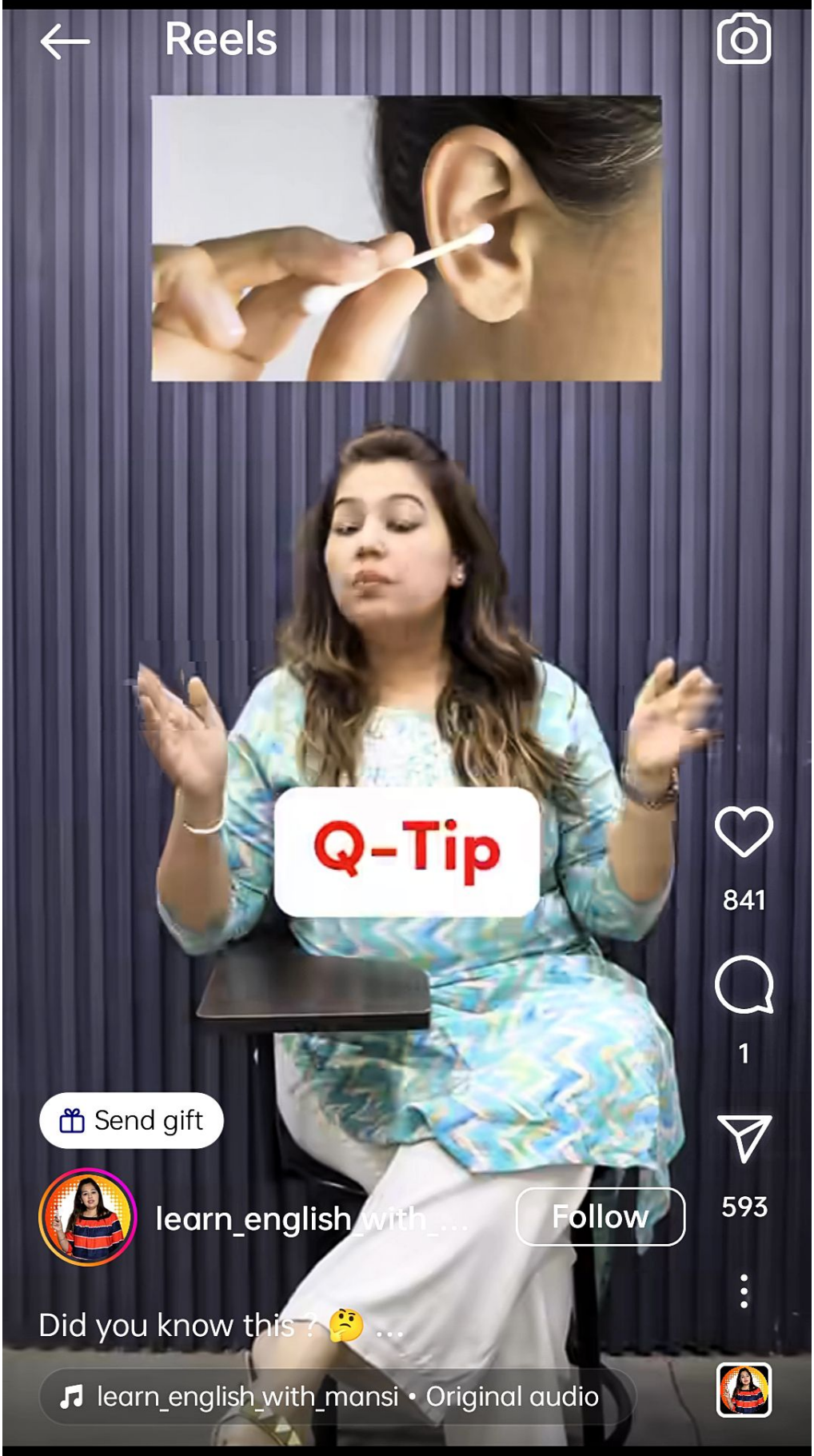

6:47
Reels
फाँस चुभना
Splinter
699
369
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


6:47
Reels
खुजली
Itching
699
369
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

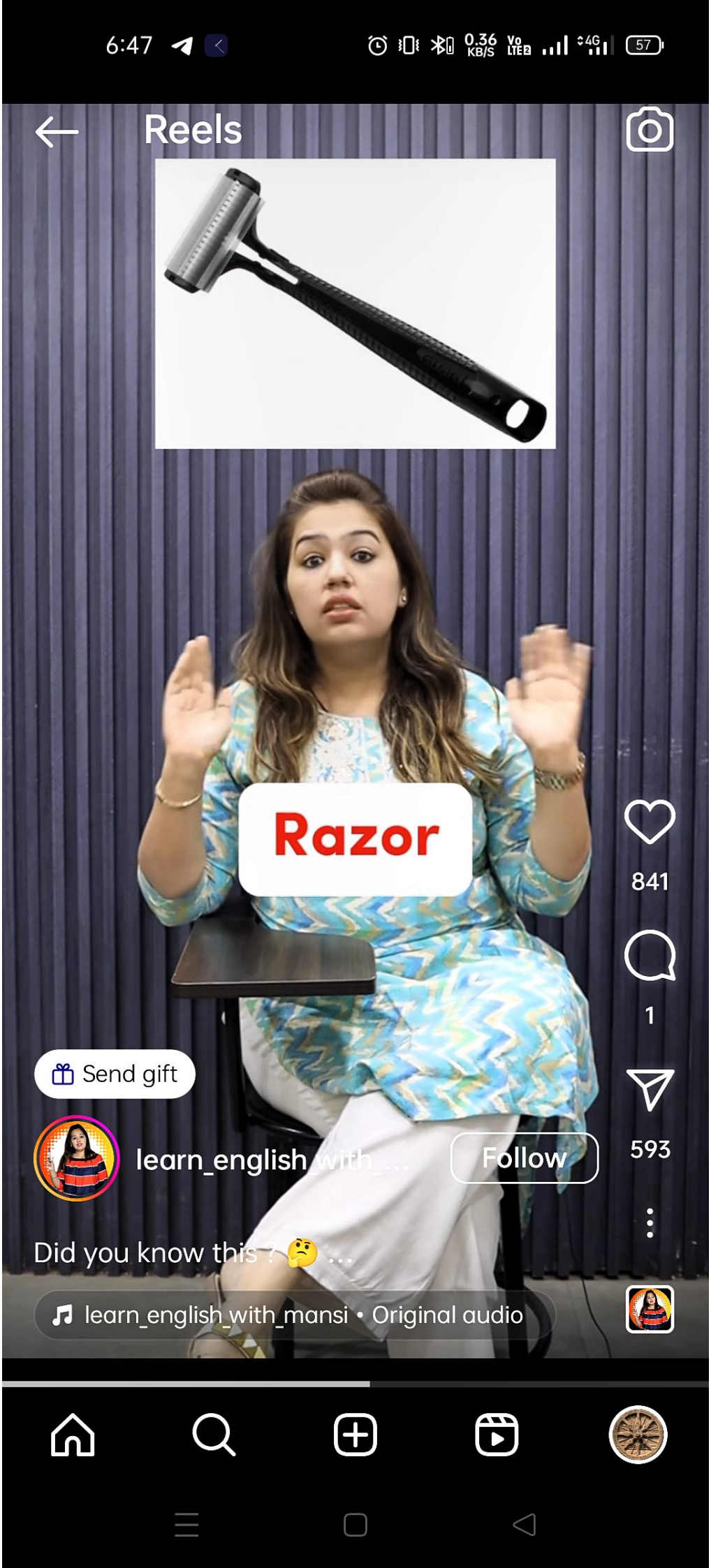

6:47
Reels
छाला
Blister
699
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
369
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


6:47
Reels
मोच आना
Sprain
699
369
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


6:47
Reels
खरोंच
Scratch
699
369
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


6:47
Reels
Q-Tip
841
1
593
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Did you know this ? 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


6:47
Reels
Cotton Round
841
1
593
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Did you know this ? 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


6:47
Reels
Razor
841
1
593
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Did you know this ? 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


6:47
Reels
Tweezers
841
1
593
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Did you know this ? 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

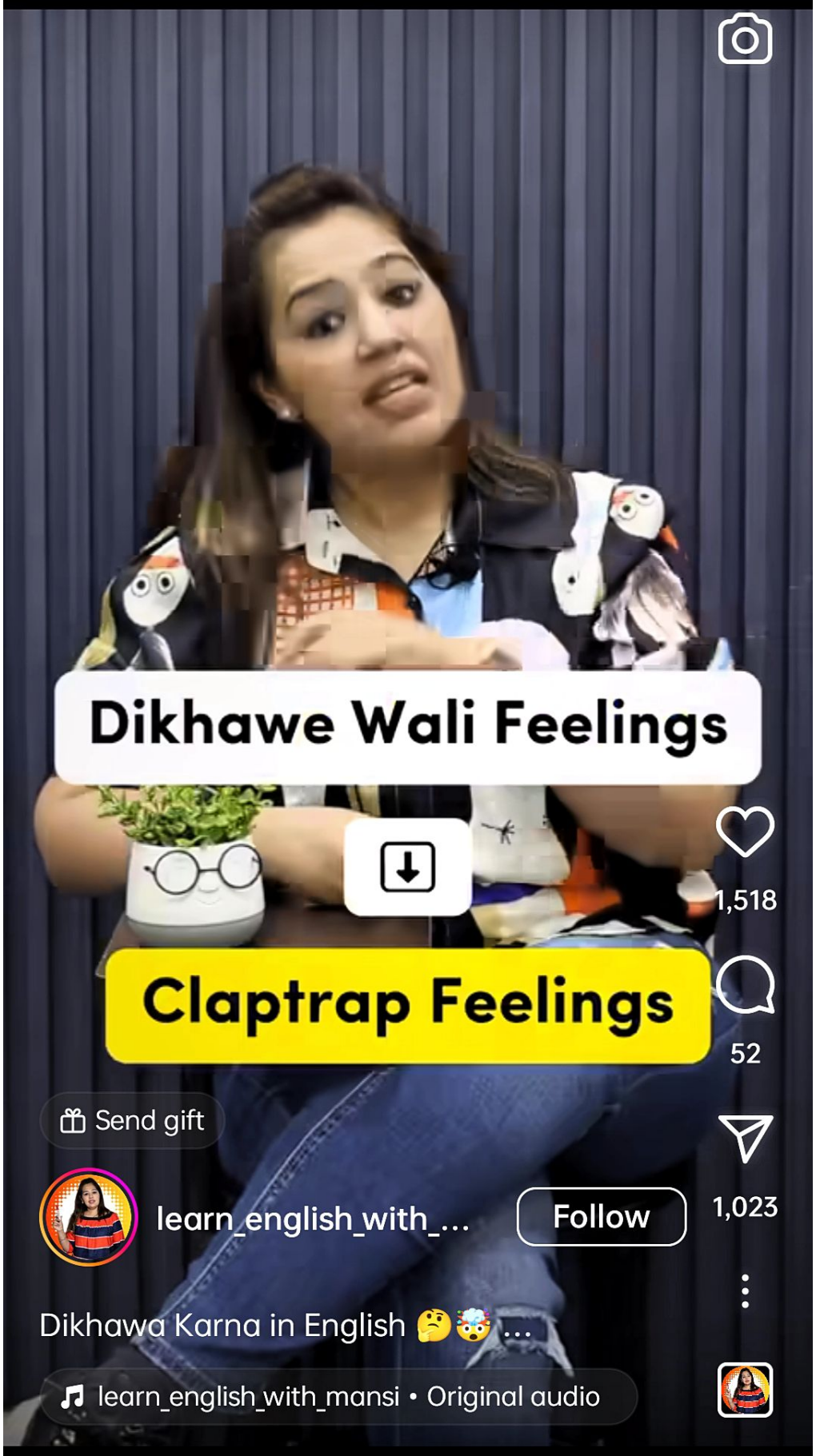

Reels
Nail Clipper
841
1
593
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Did you know this ? 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

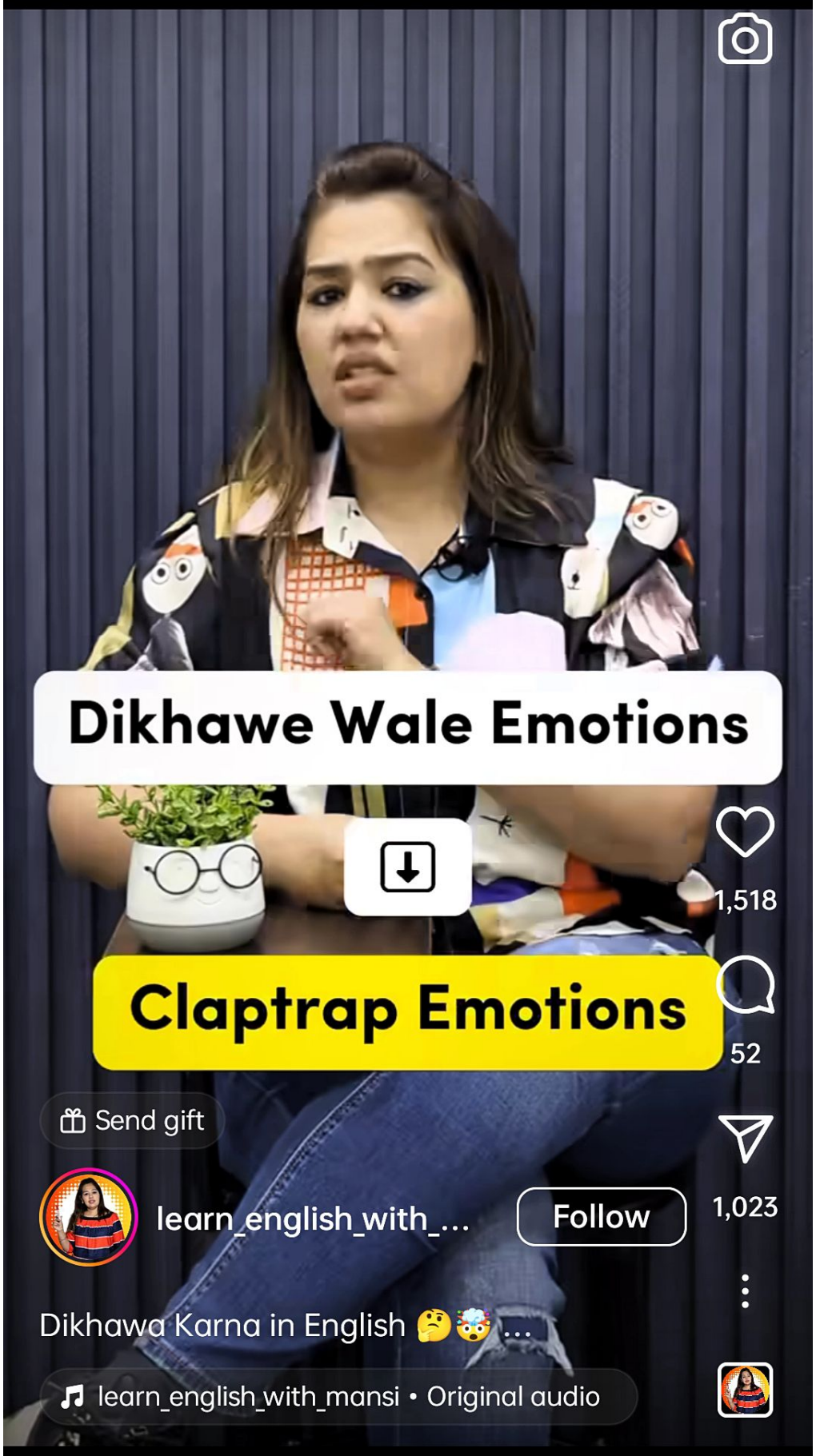

इससे मेरा काम तो चल ही जाएगा
It Will Serve My Purpose
1,089
4
186
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

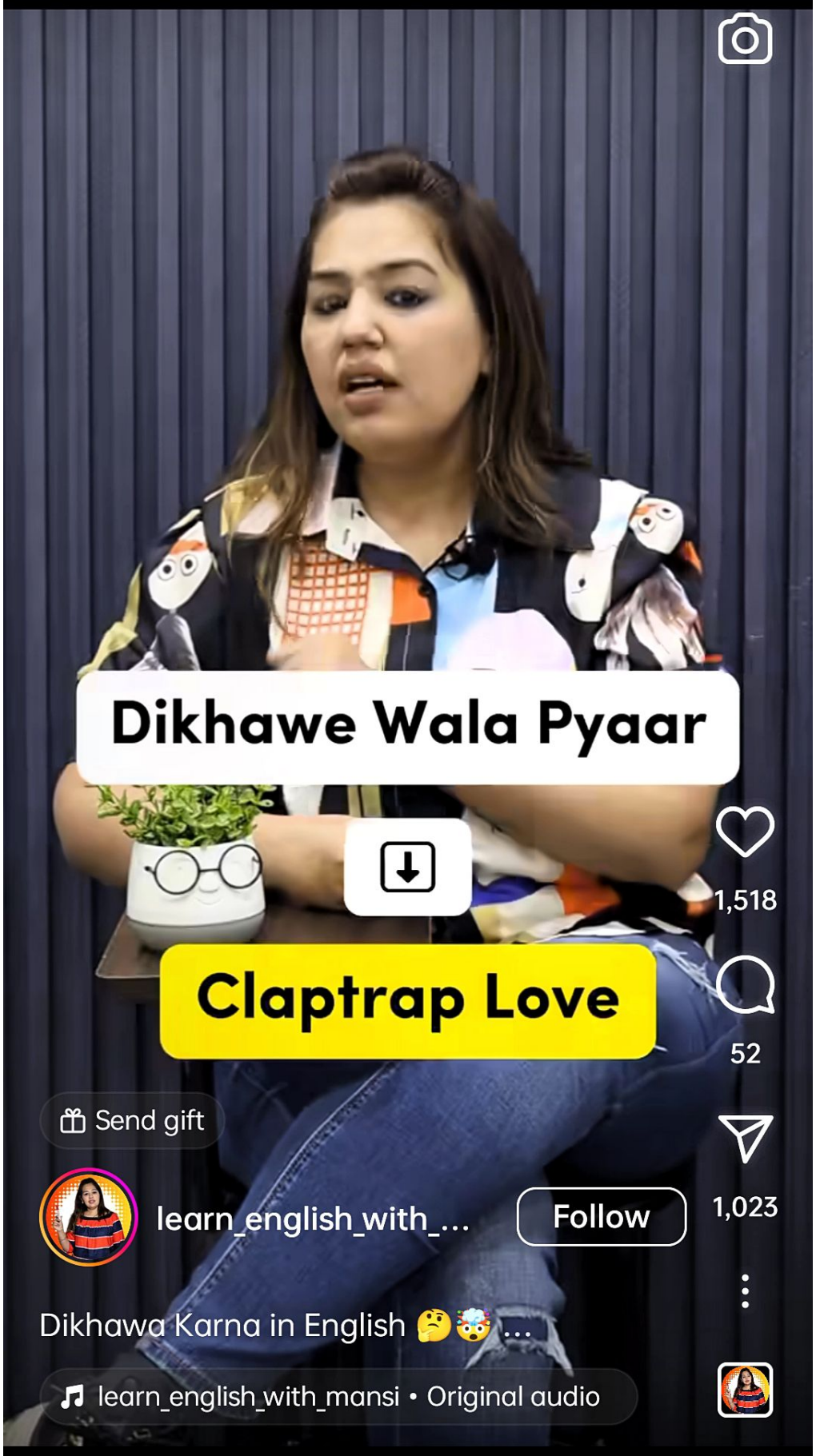

यार ये मेरे बस की बात तो नहीं है
It Is Not My Cup of Tea
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
1,089
4
186


अब तुम पर निर्भर है
तुमने क्या करना है
The Ball is in
Your Court
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
1,089
4
186

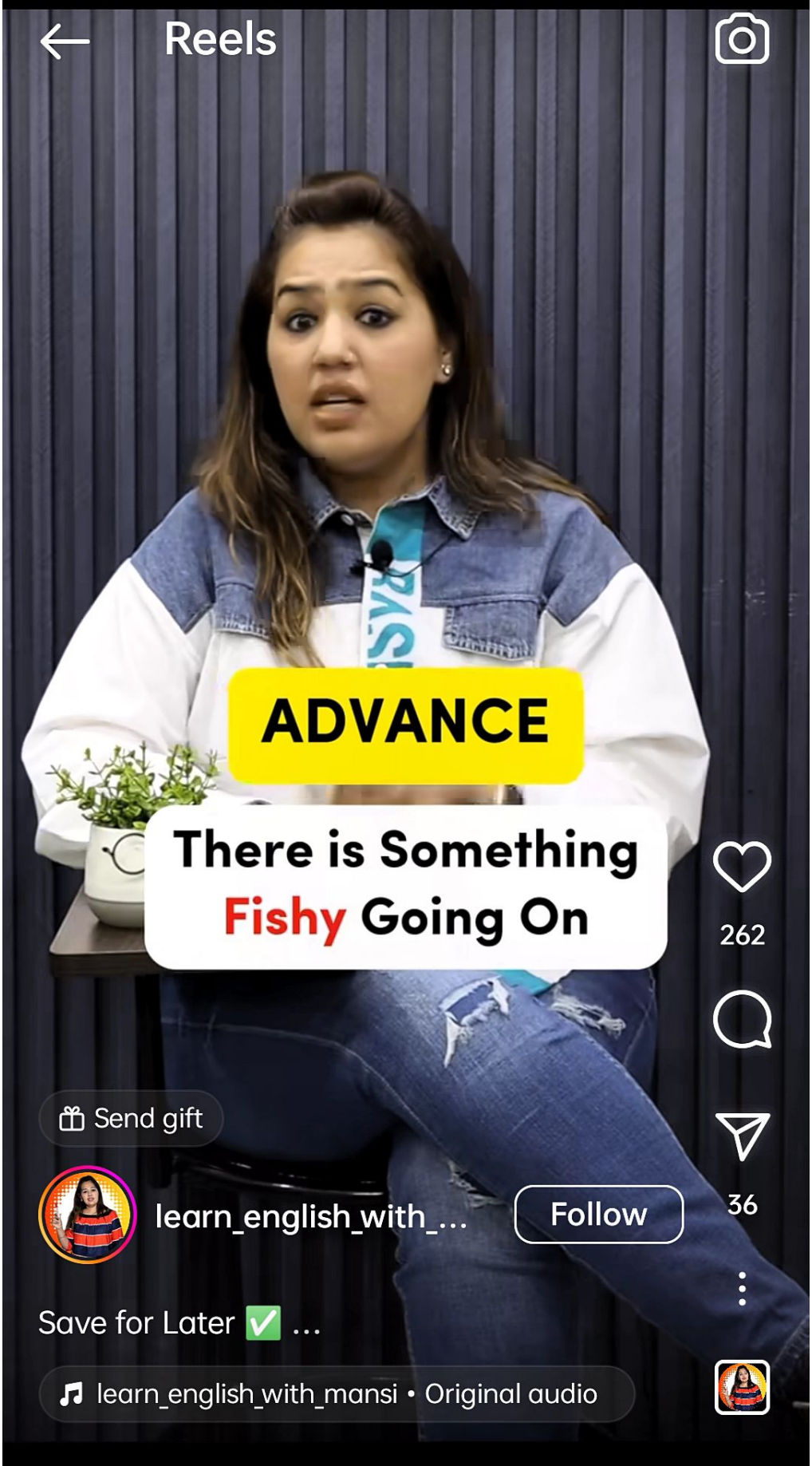

6:48
वो अपनी ज़ुबान की बिलकुल पक्की है
She is a Person of Words
1,089
4
186
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Dikhawe Wali Feelings
Claptrap Feelings
1,518
52
1,023
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Dikhawa Karna in English 🤔🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Dikhawe Wale Emotions
Claptrap Emotions
1,518
52
1,023
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Dikhawa Karna in English 🤔🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Dikhawe Wala Pyaar
Claptrap Love
1,518
52
1,023
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Dikhawa Karna in English 🤔🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

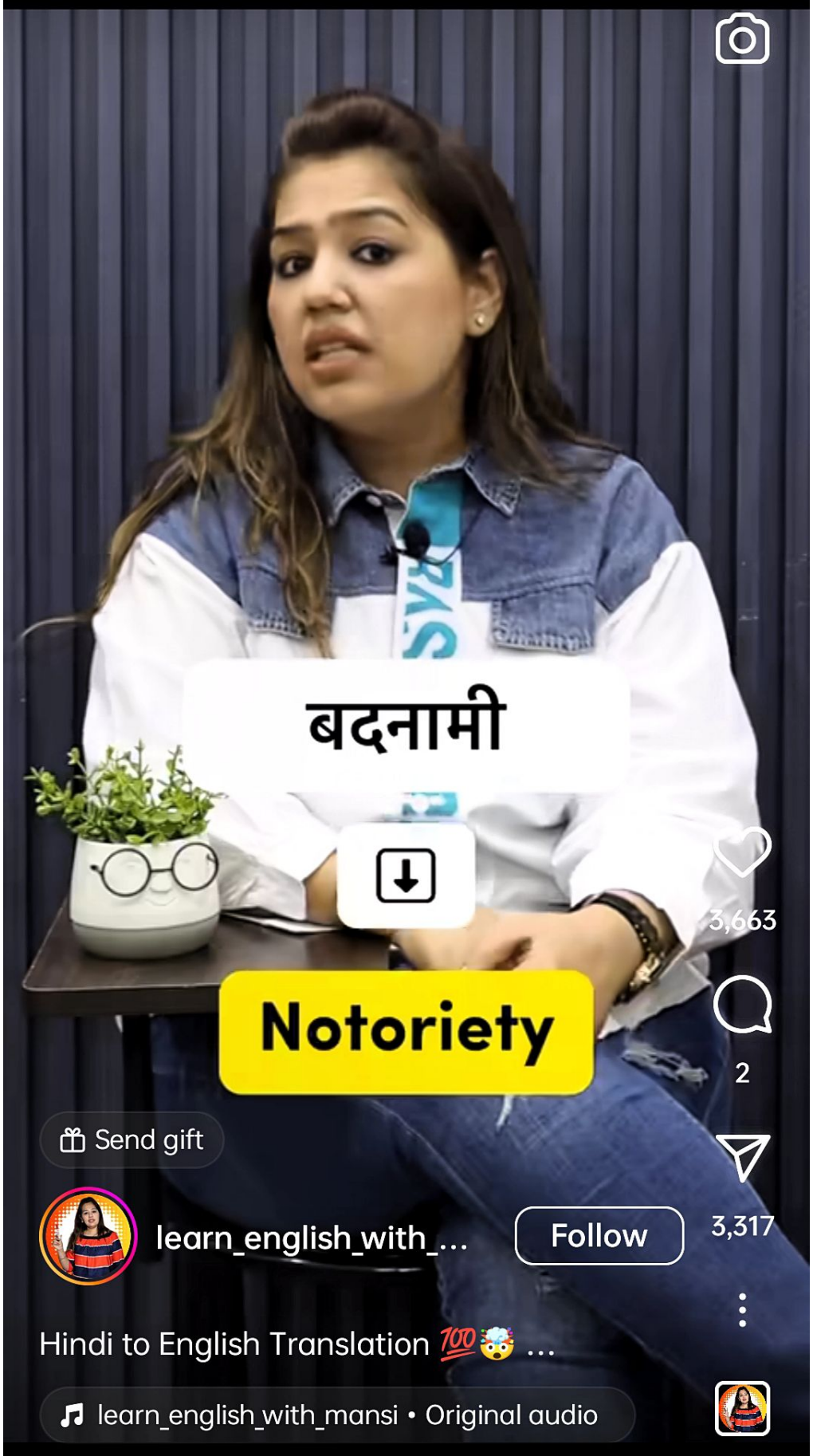

Reels
Kuch Chal Raha Hai Waha Pe
There is Something
Suspicious Going On
262
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
36
Save for Later ✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

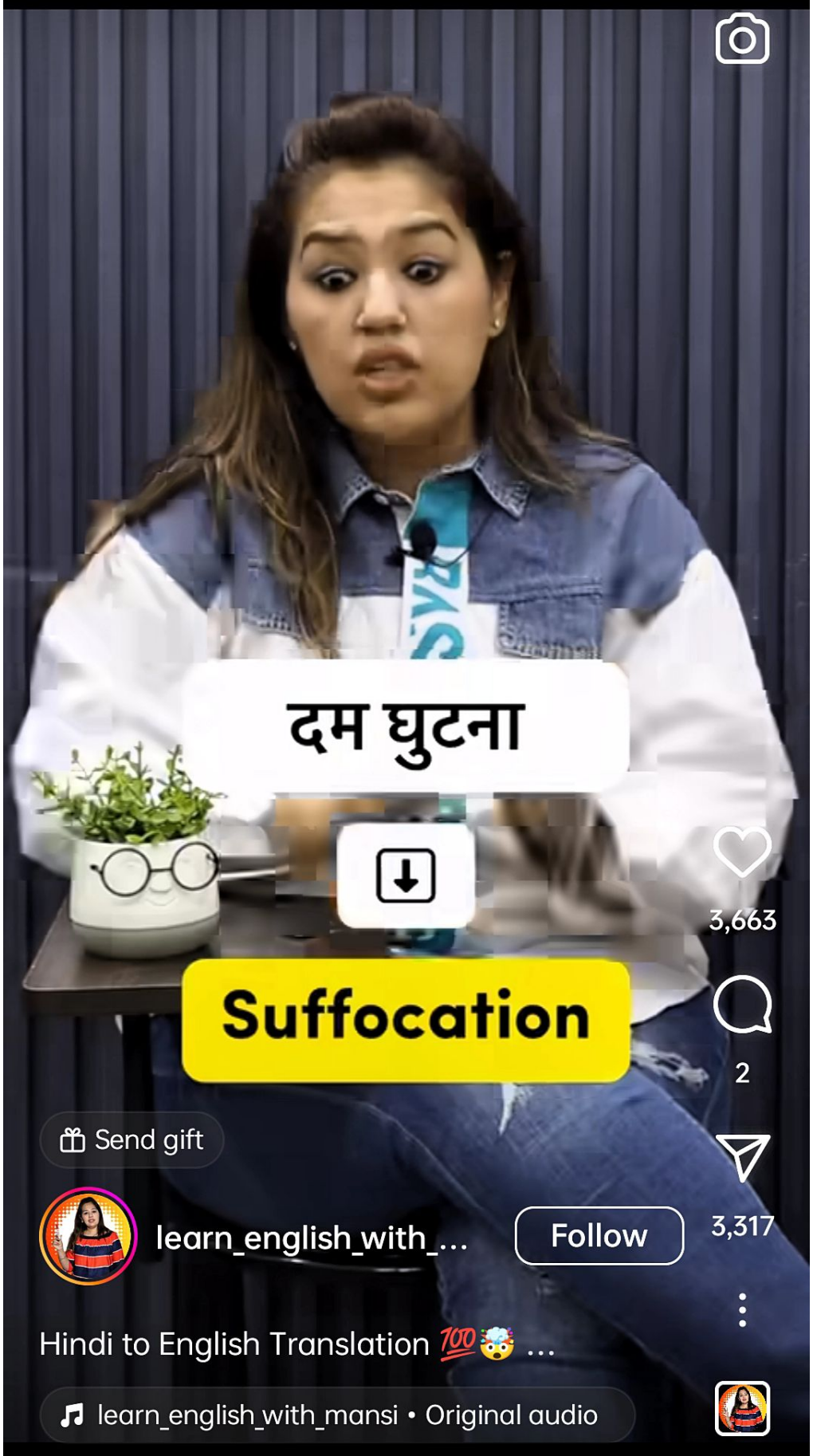

Reels
ADVANCE
There is Something
Fishy Going On
262
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
36
Save for Later ✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

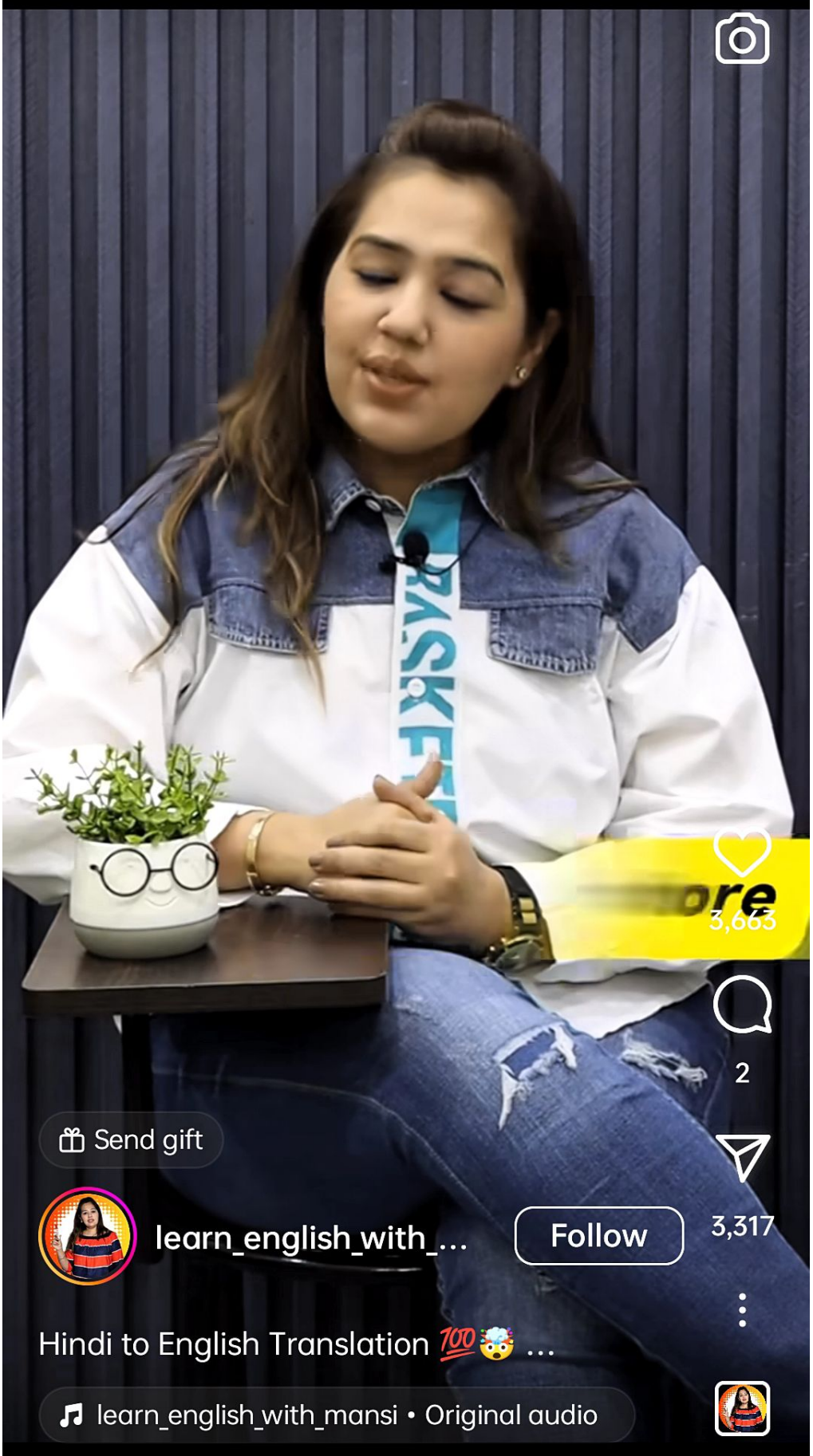

6:49
Reels
BRITISH LANGUAGE
There is Something
Dodgy Going On
262
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
36
Save for Later ✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

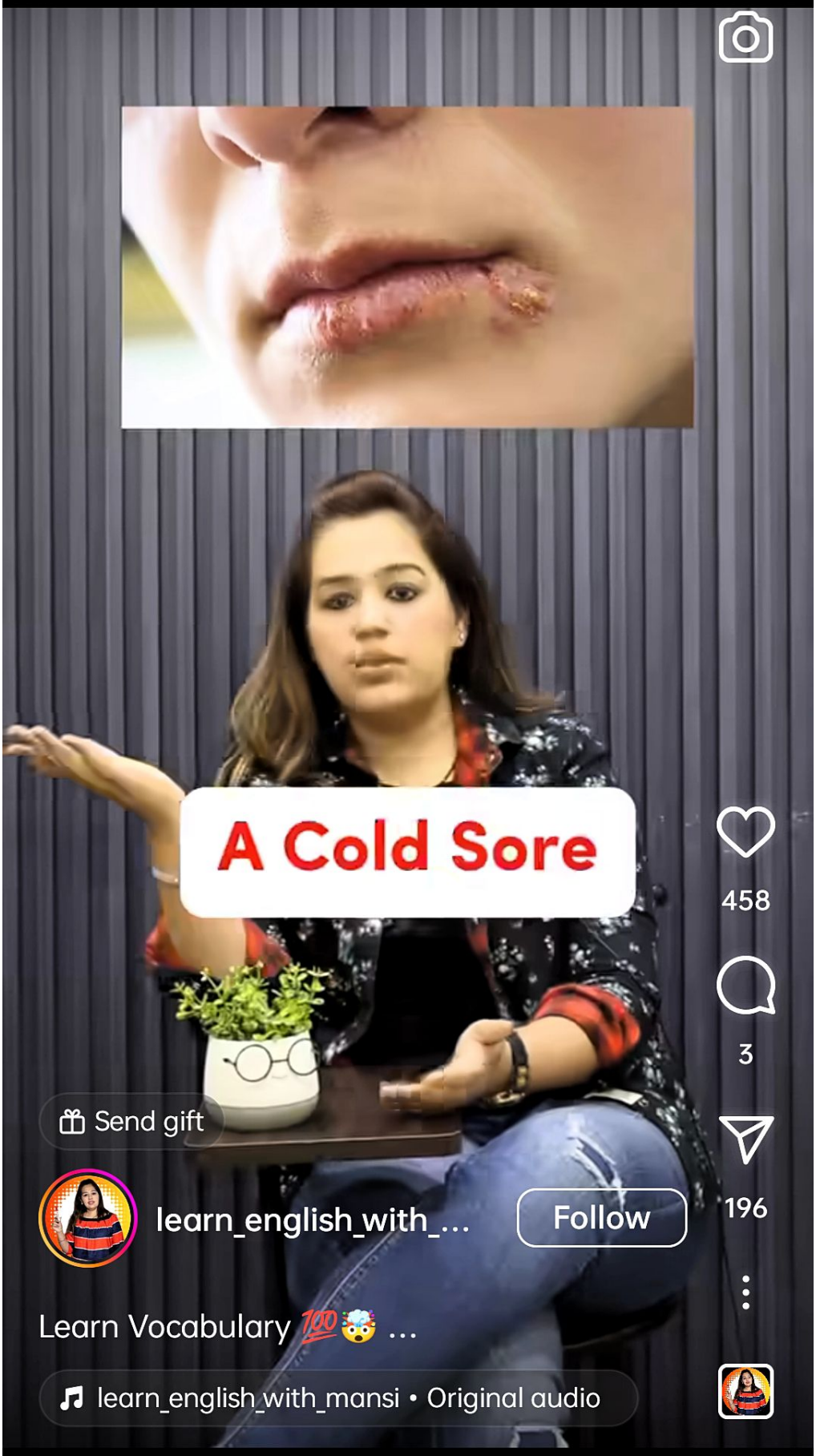

जान बूझ कर
Deliberately
3,663
2
3,317
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


अपमानजनक
Offensive
3,663
2
3,317
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


बदनामी
Notoriety
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
3,663
2
3,317


दम घुटना
Suffocation
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
3,663
2
3,317

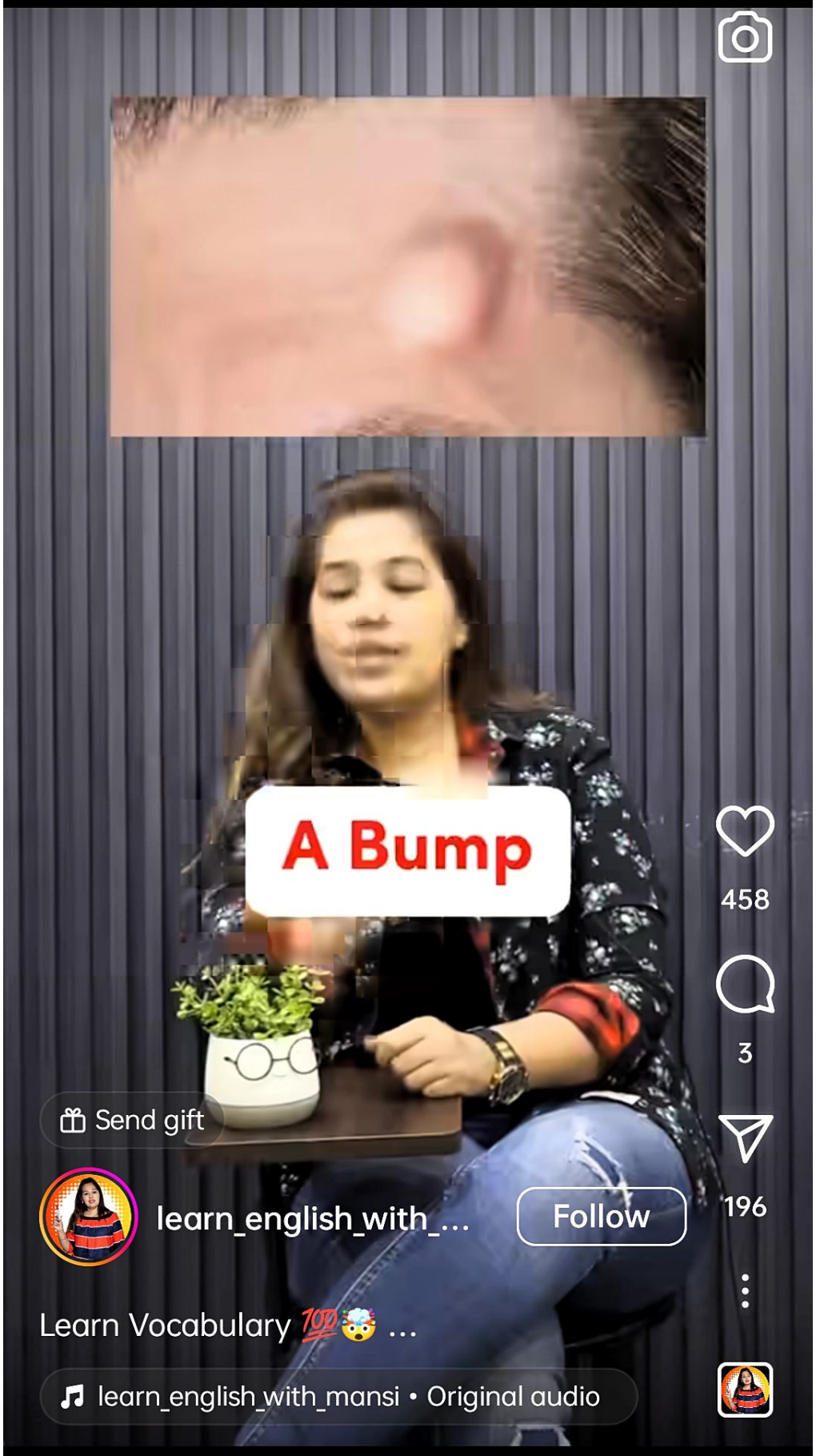

3,663
2
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
3,317
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

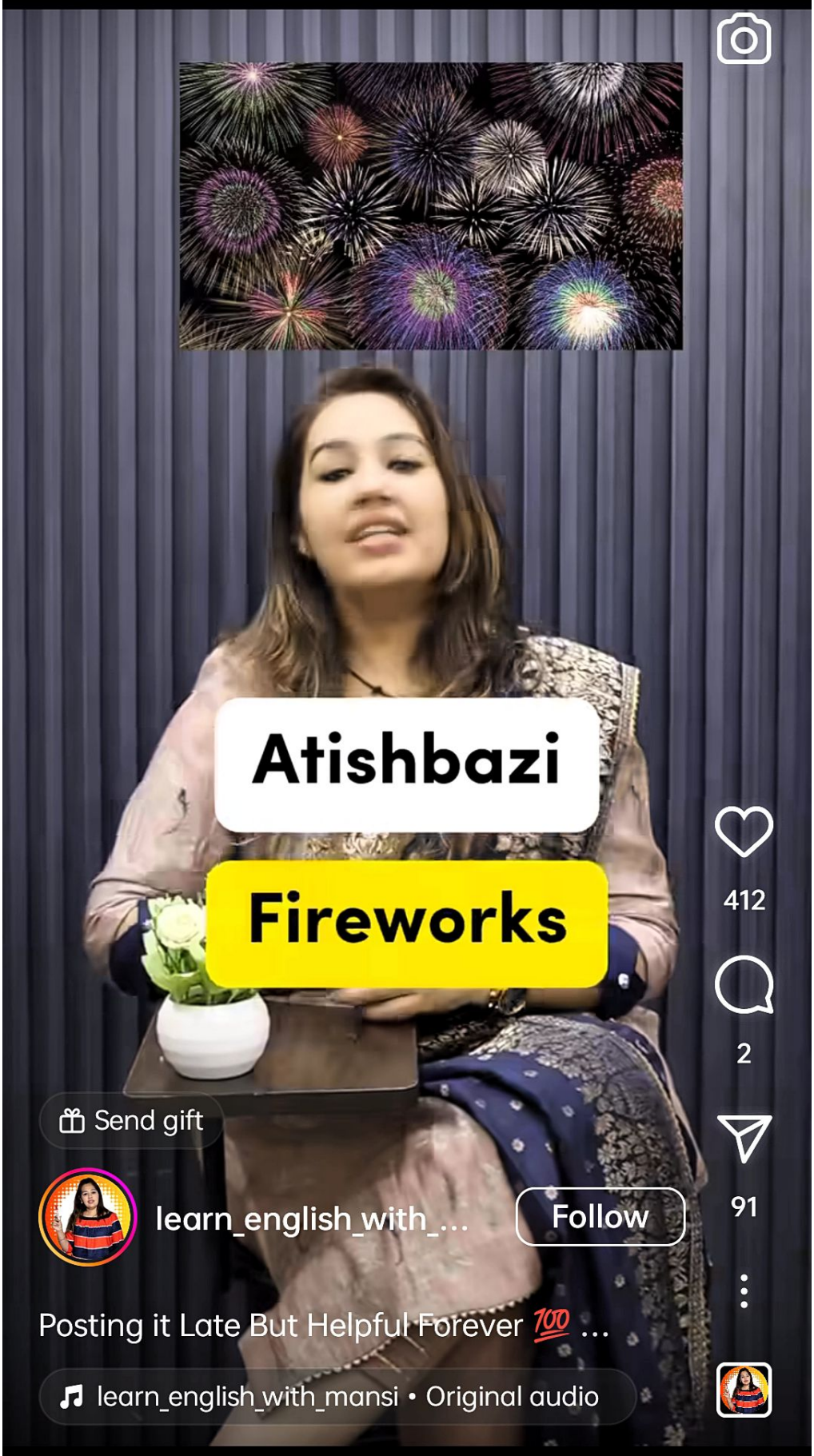

A Cold Sore
458
3
196
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


A Blister
458
3
196
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

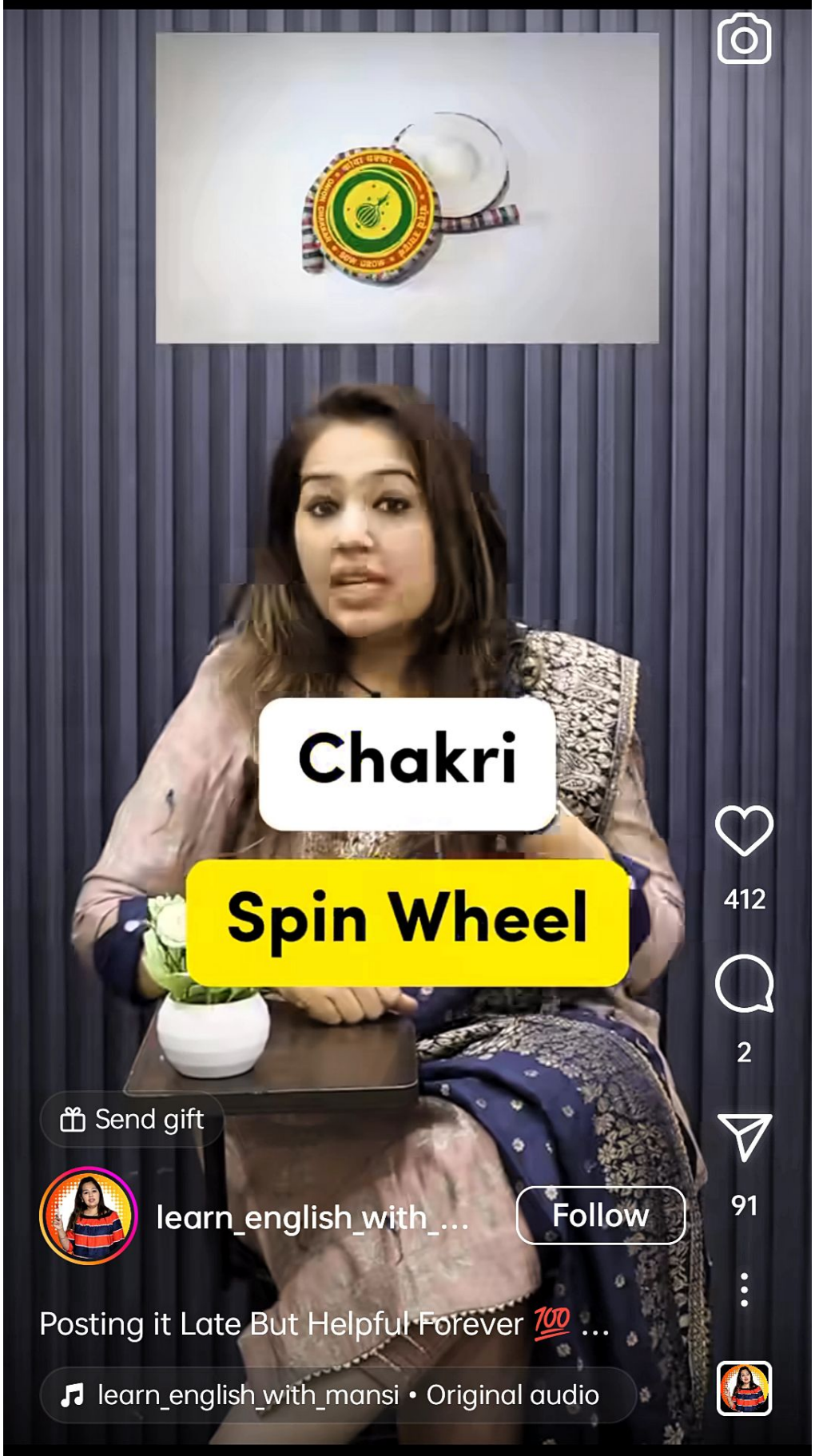

An Ulcer
458
3
196
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

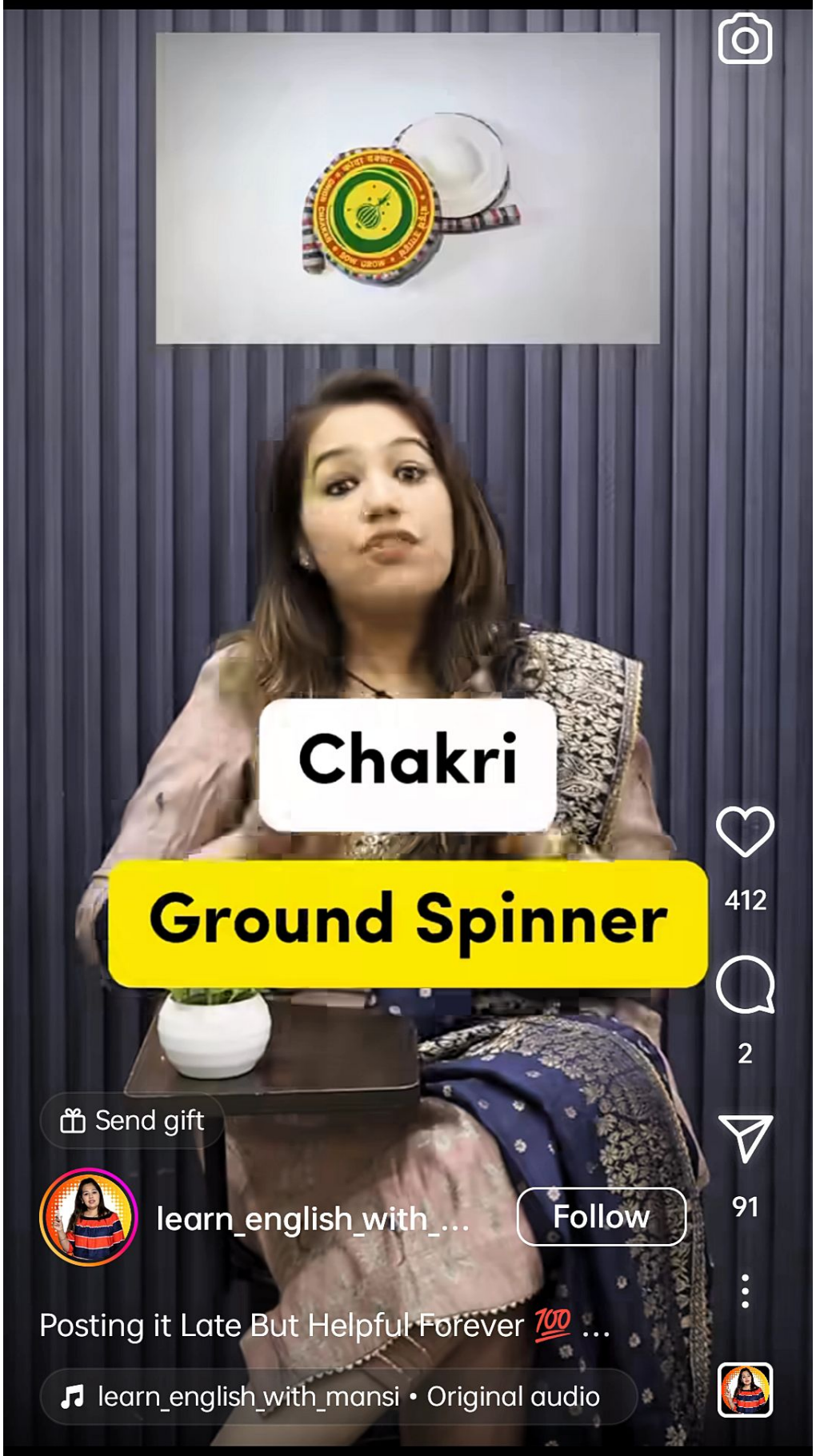

A Splinter
458
3
196
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


A Bump
458
3
196
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

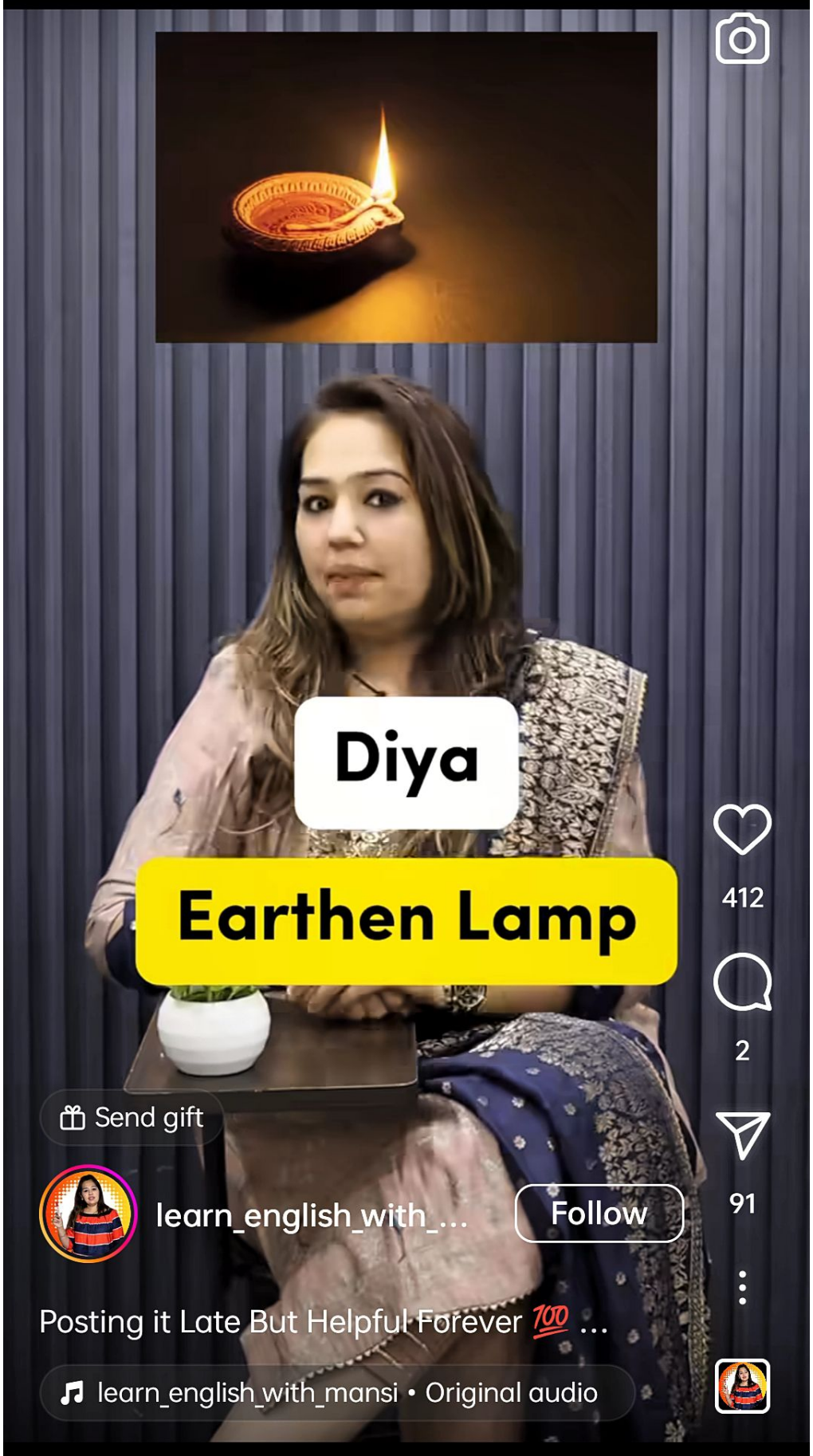

Atishbazi
Fireworks
412
2
91
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Posting it Late But Helpful Forever 💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

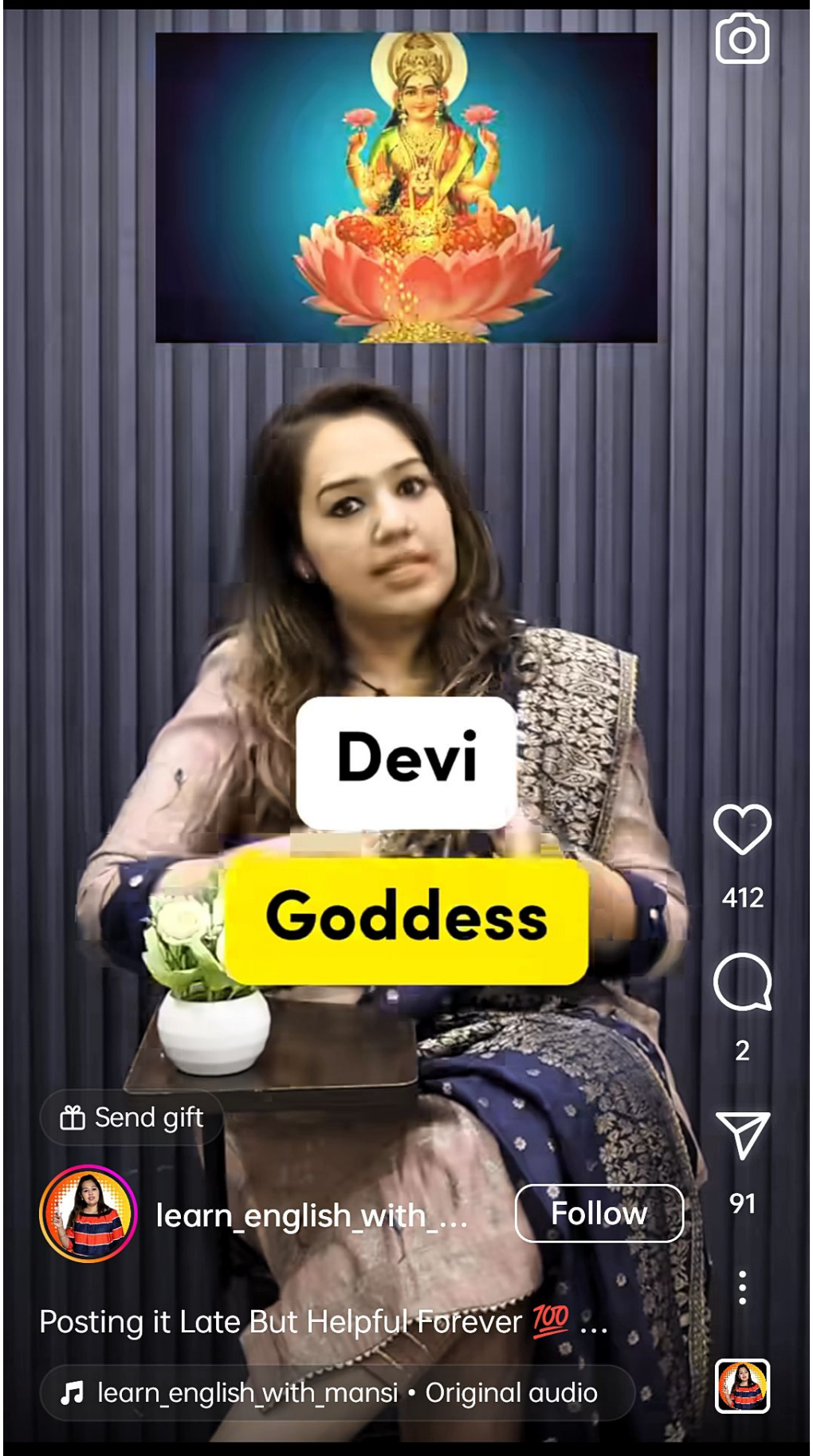

Anar
Fountain Cracker
412
2
91
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Posting it Late But Helpful Forever 💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

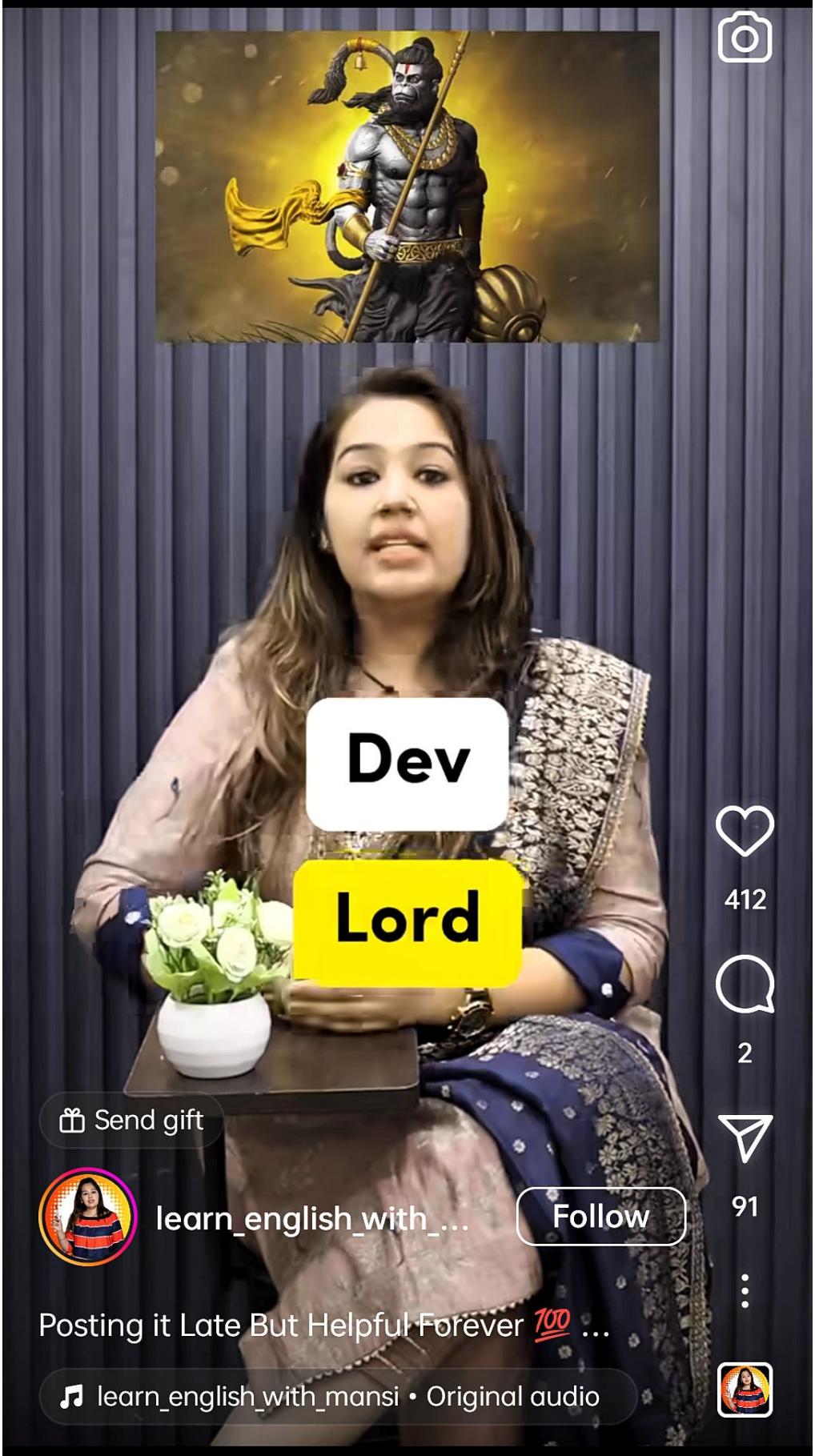

Chakri
Spin Wheel
412
2
91
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Posting it Late But Helpful Forever 💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

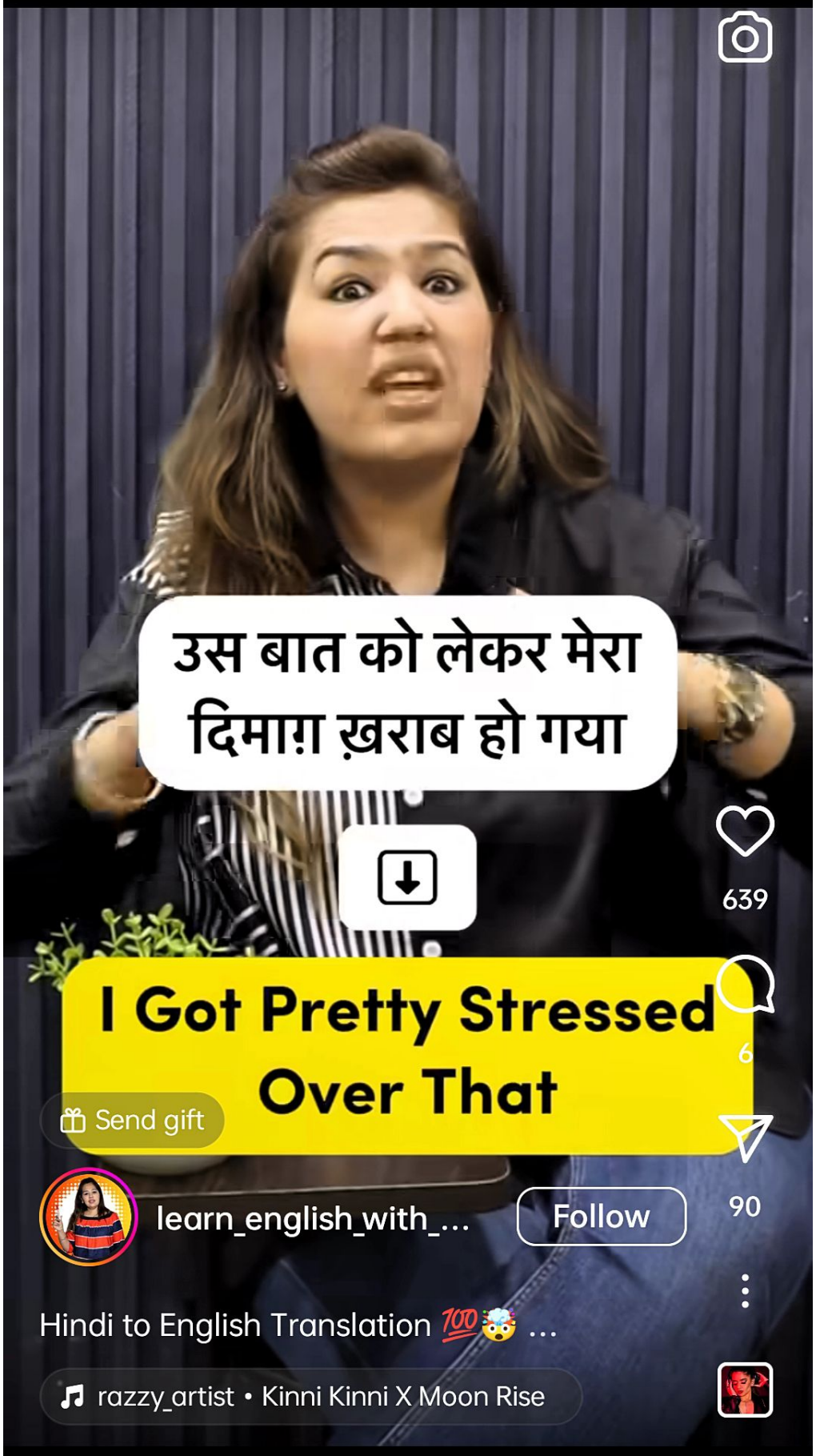

Chakri
Ground Spinner
412
2
91
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Posting it Late But Helpful Forever 💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

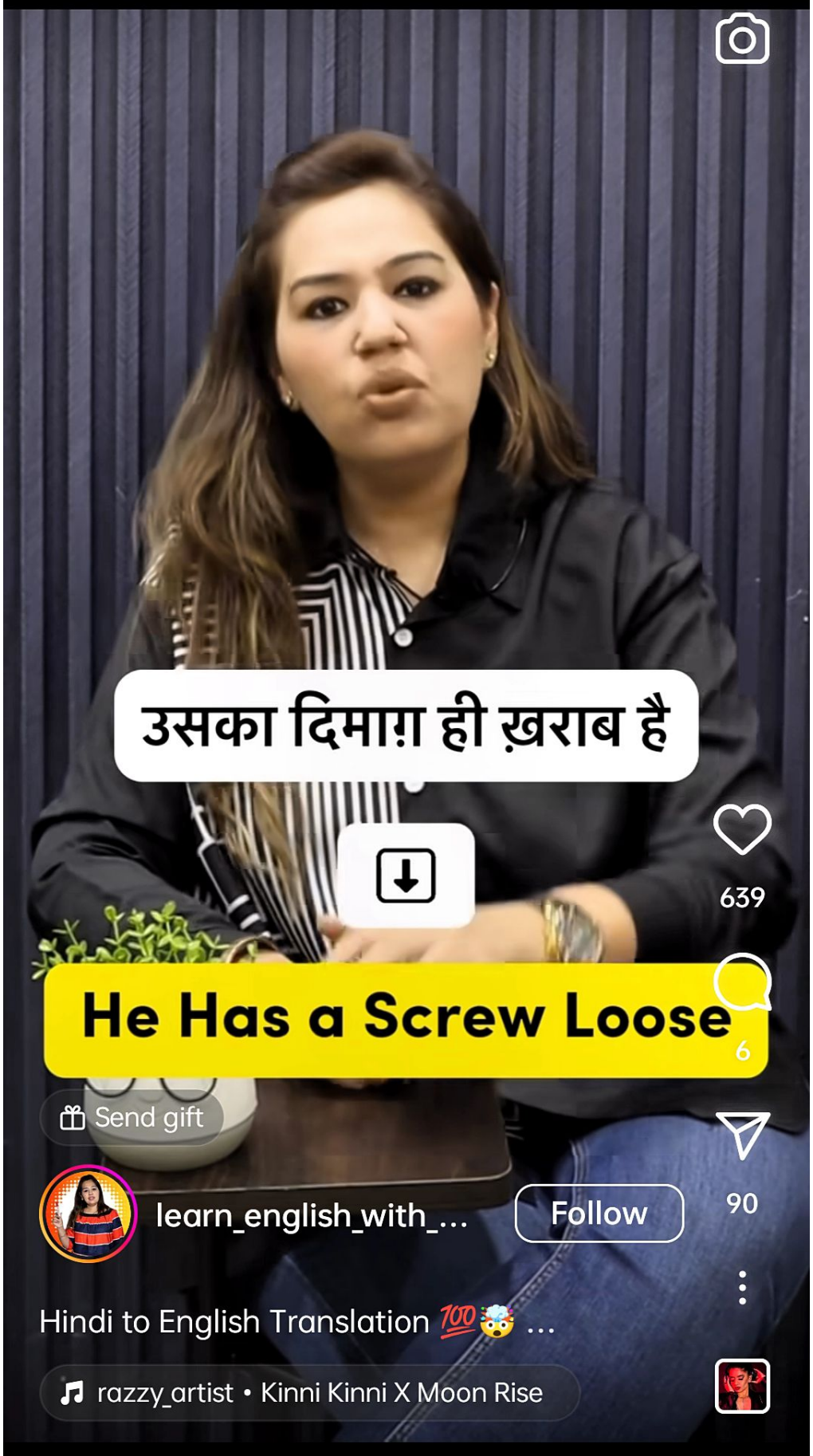

Fulzari
Sparkler
412
2
91
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Posting it Late But Helpful Forever 💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Diya
Earthen Lamp
412
2
91
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Posting it Late But Helpful Forever 💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

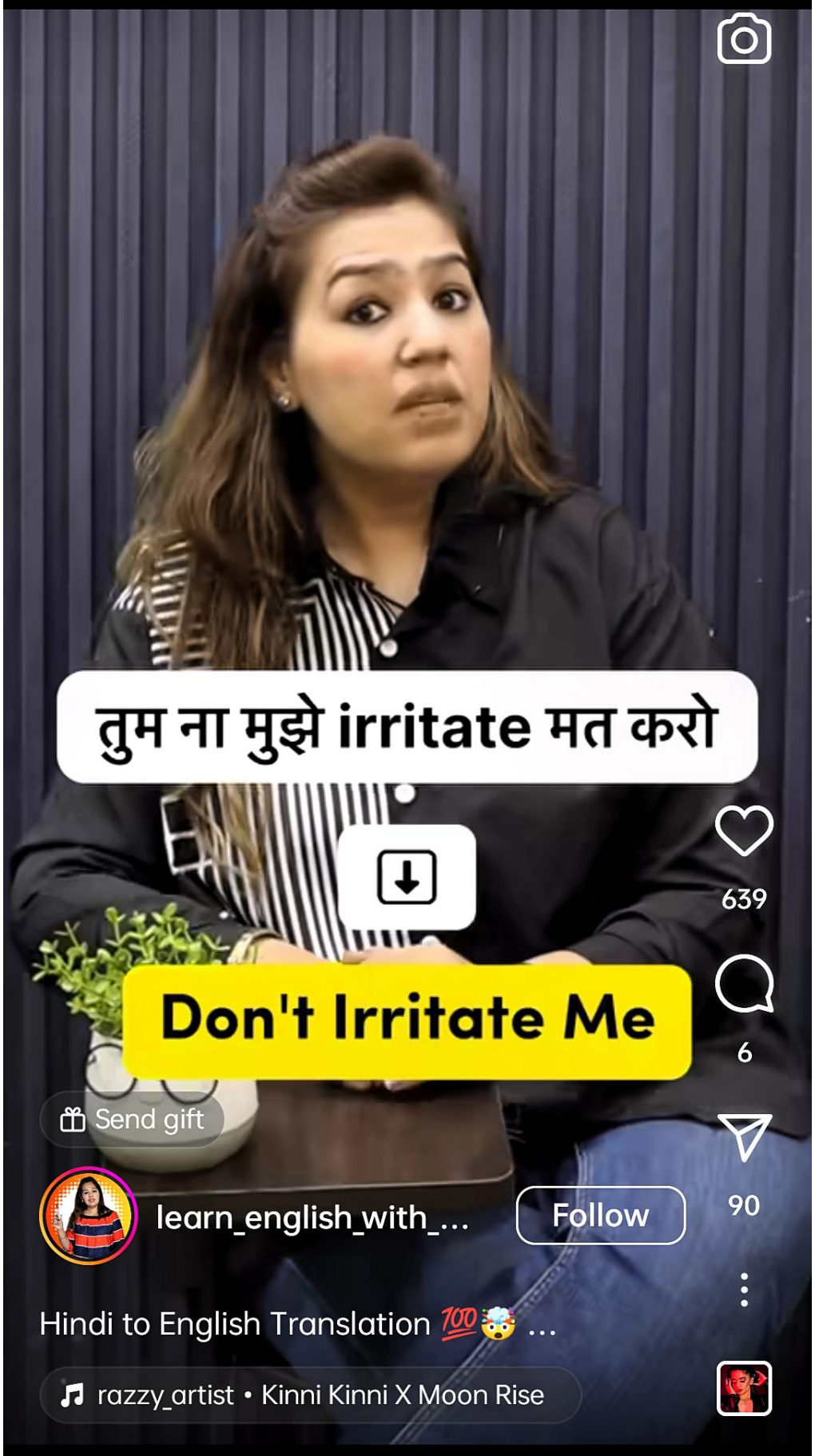

Devi
Goddess
412
2
91
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Posting it Late But Helpful Forever 💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

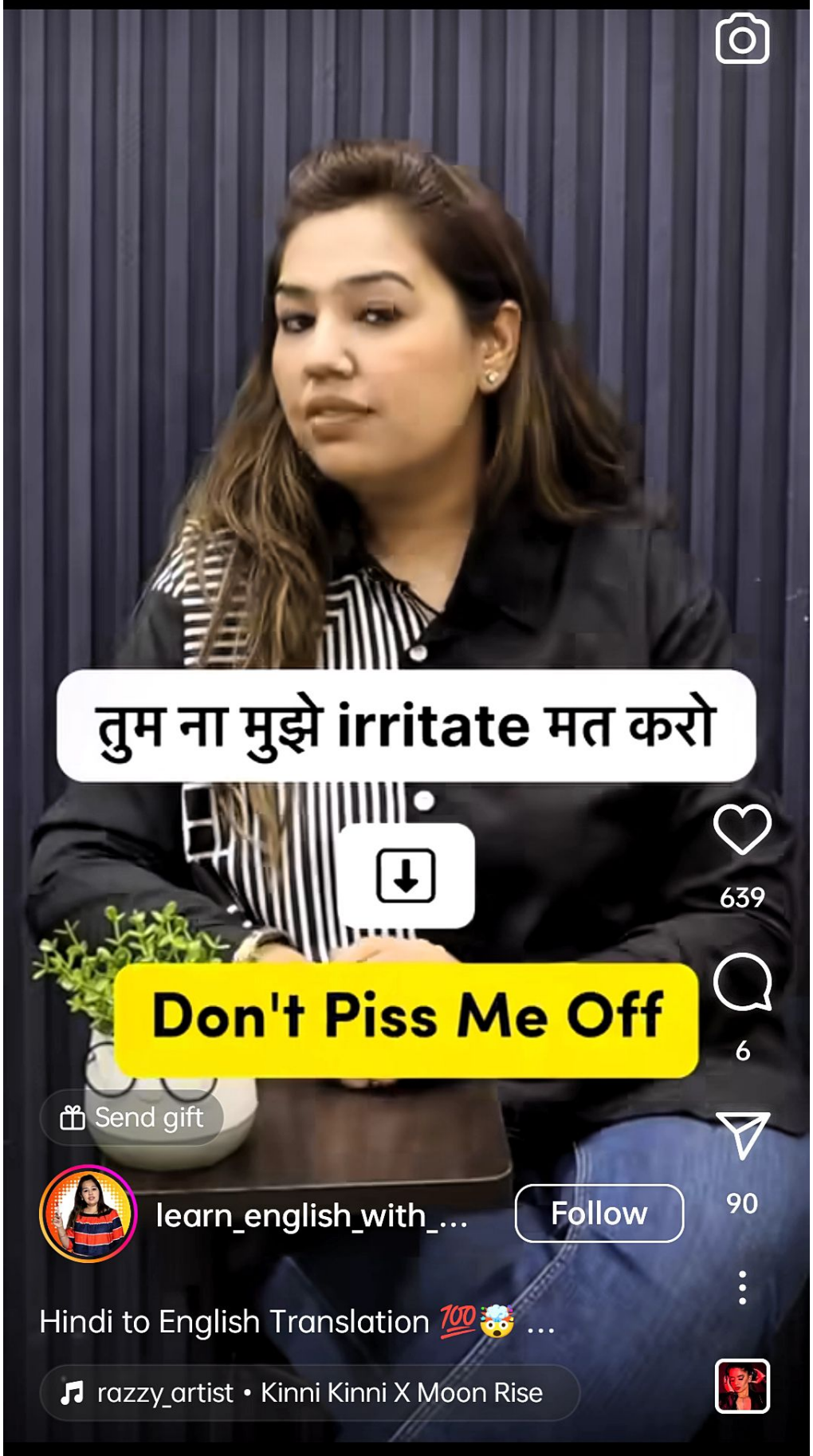

Dev
Lord
412
2
91
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Posting it Late But Helpful Forever 💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

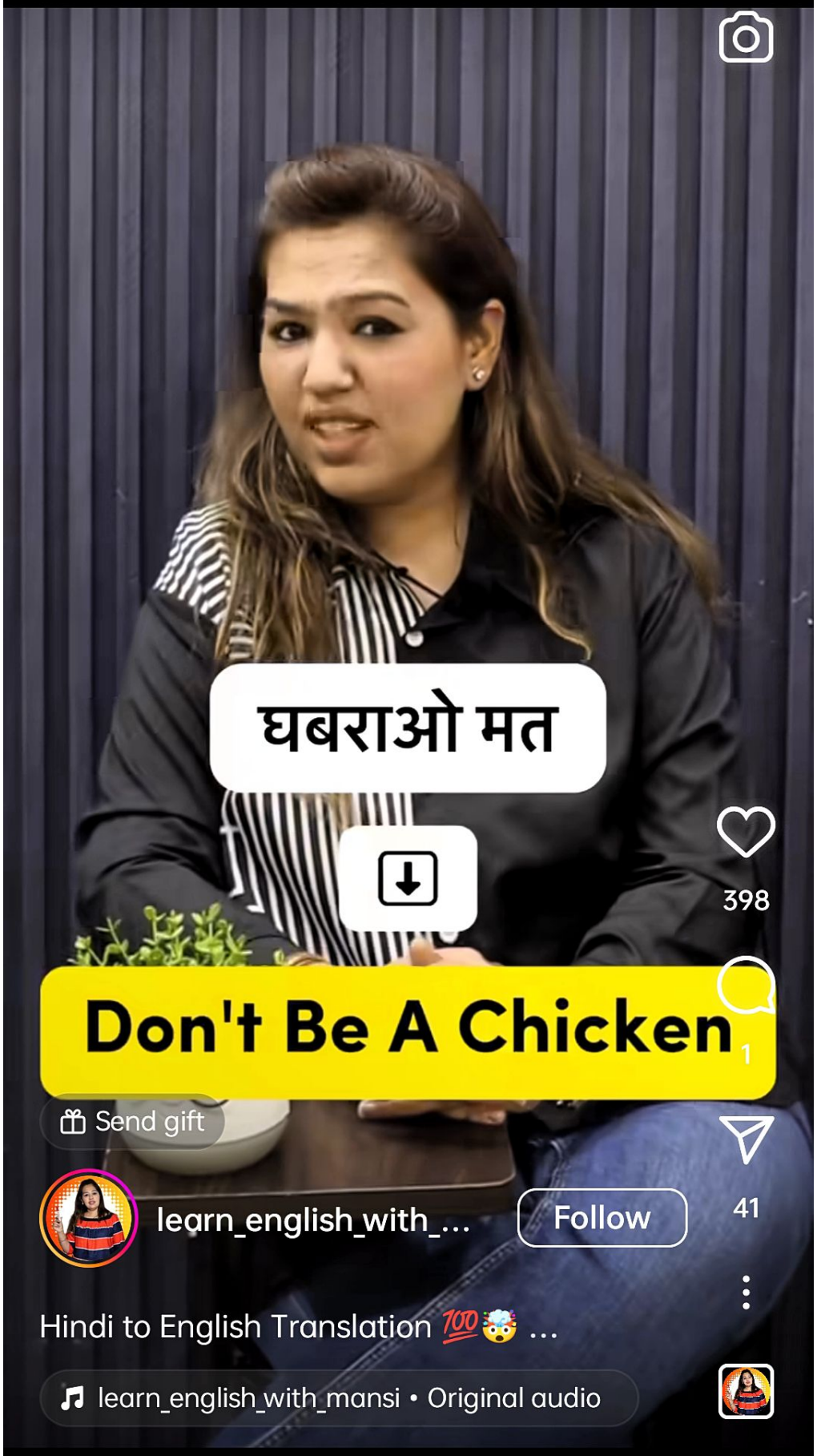

उस बात को लेकर मेरा दिमाग़ ख़राब हो गया
I Got Pretty Stressed Over That
Send gift
639
6
90
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
razzy_artist • Kinni Kinni X Moon Rise

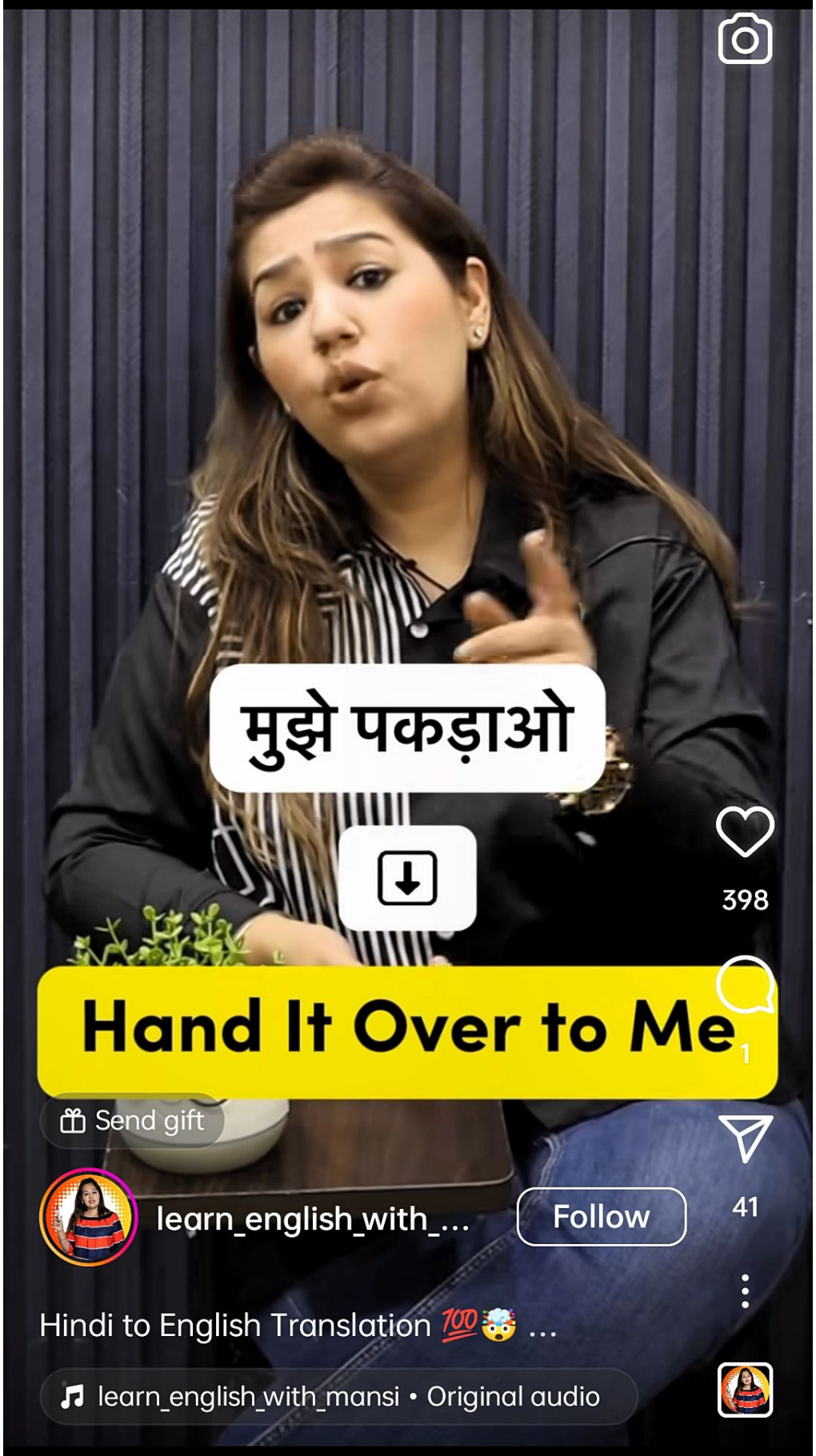

उसका दिमाग़ ही ख़राब है
He Has a Screw Loose
639
6
90
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
razzy_artist • Kinni Kinni X Moon Rise

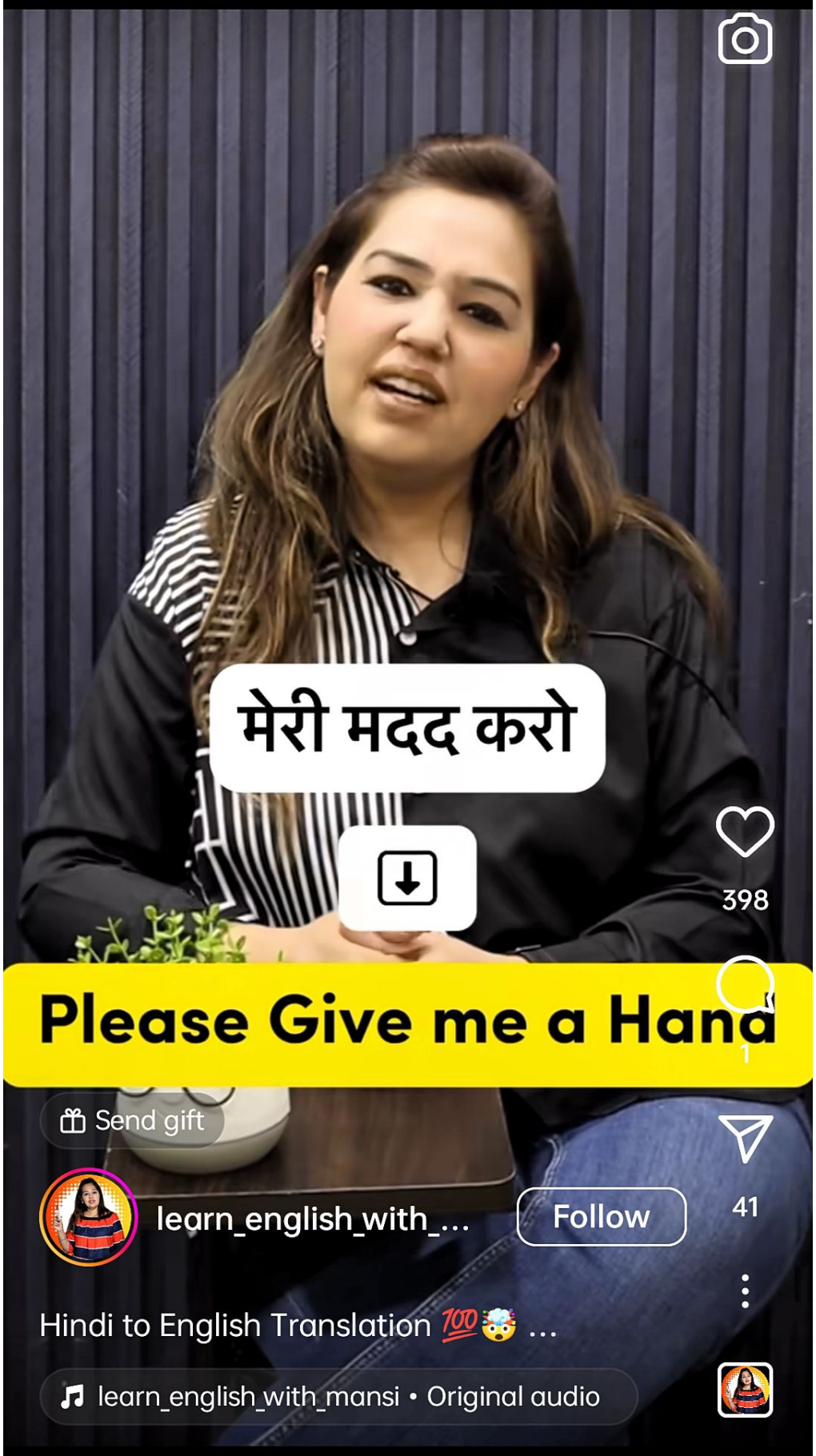

6:51
वो हर बात पे बुरा मान जाती है
She Got Offended So Quickly
639
6
90
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
razzy_artist • Kinni Kinni X Moon Rise

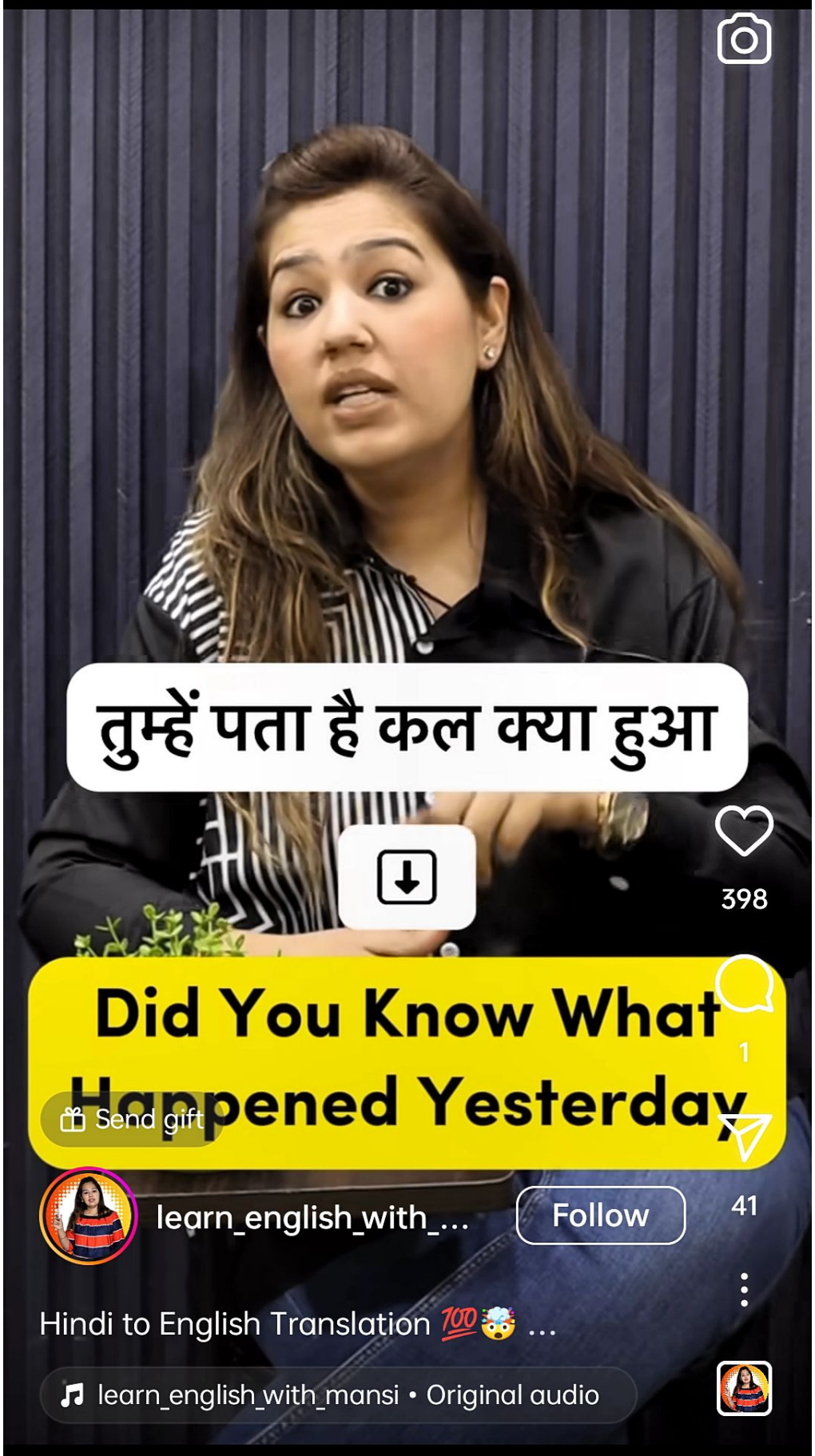

तुम ना मुझे irritate मत करो
Don't Irritate Me
639
6
90
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
razzy_artist • Kinni Kinni X Moon Rise


तुम ना मुझे irritate मत करो
Don't Piss Me Off
639
6
90
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
razzy_artist • Kinni Kinni X Moon Rise

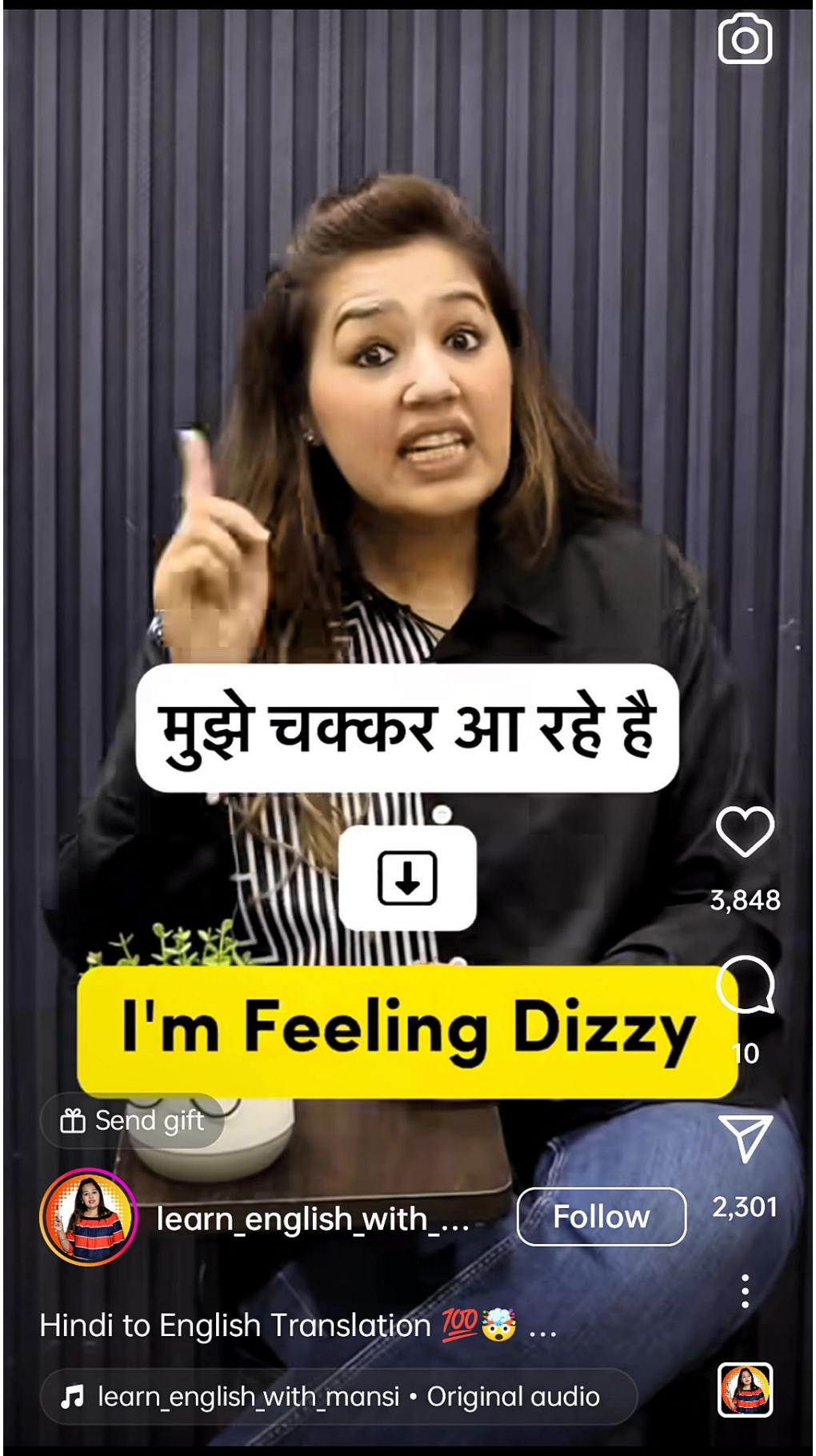

घबराओ मत
Don't Be A Chicken
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
398
1
41

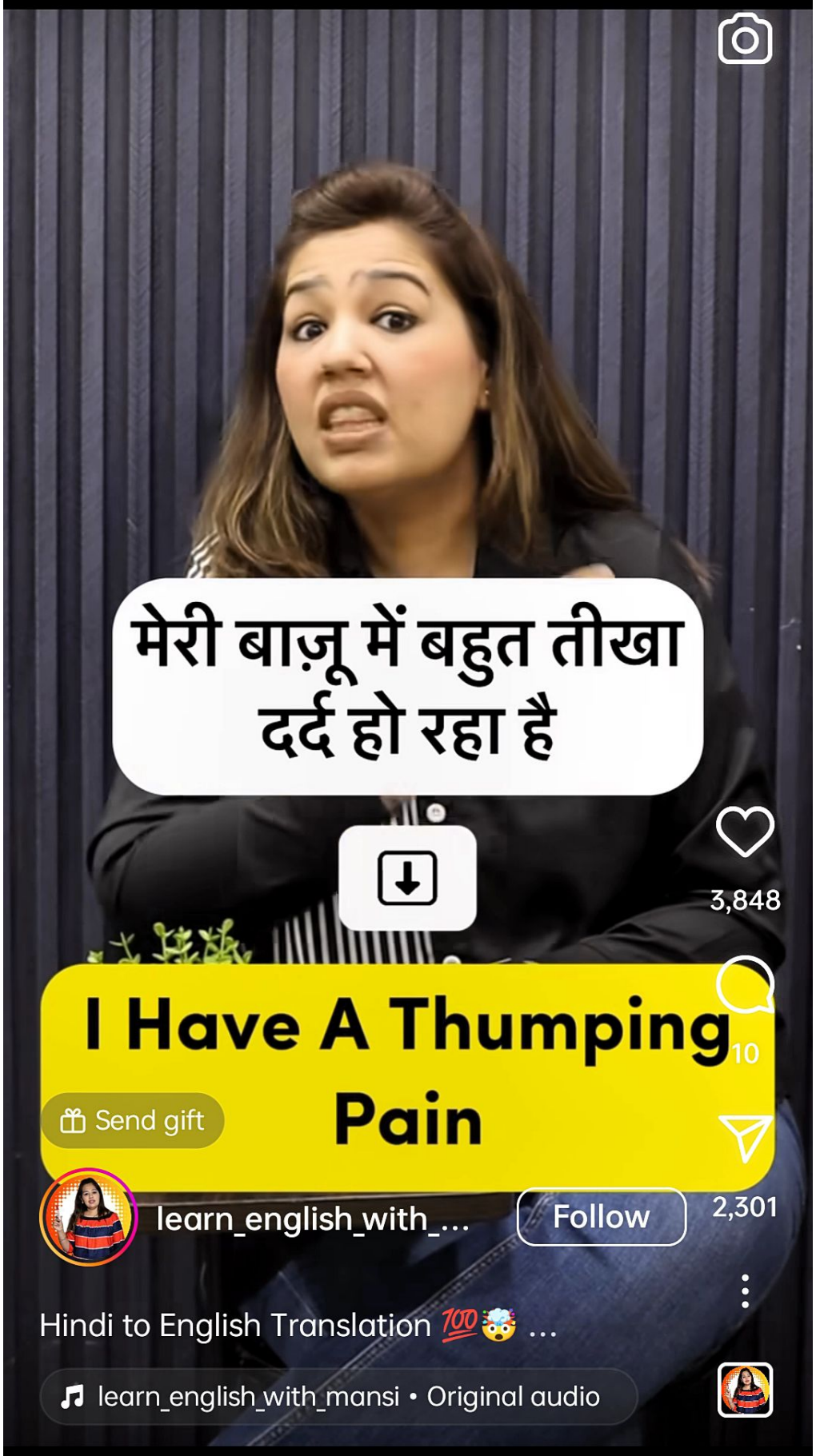

मुझे पकड़ाओ
Hand It Over to Me
Send gift
398
1
41
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

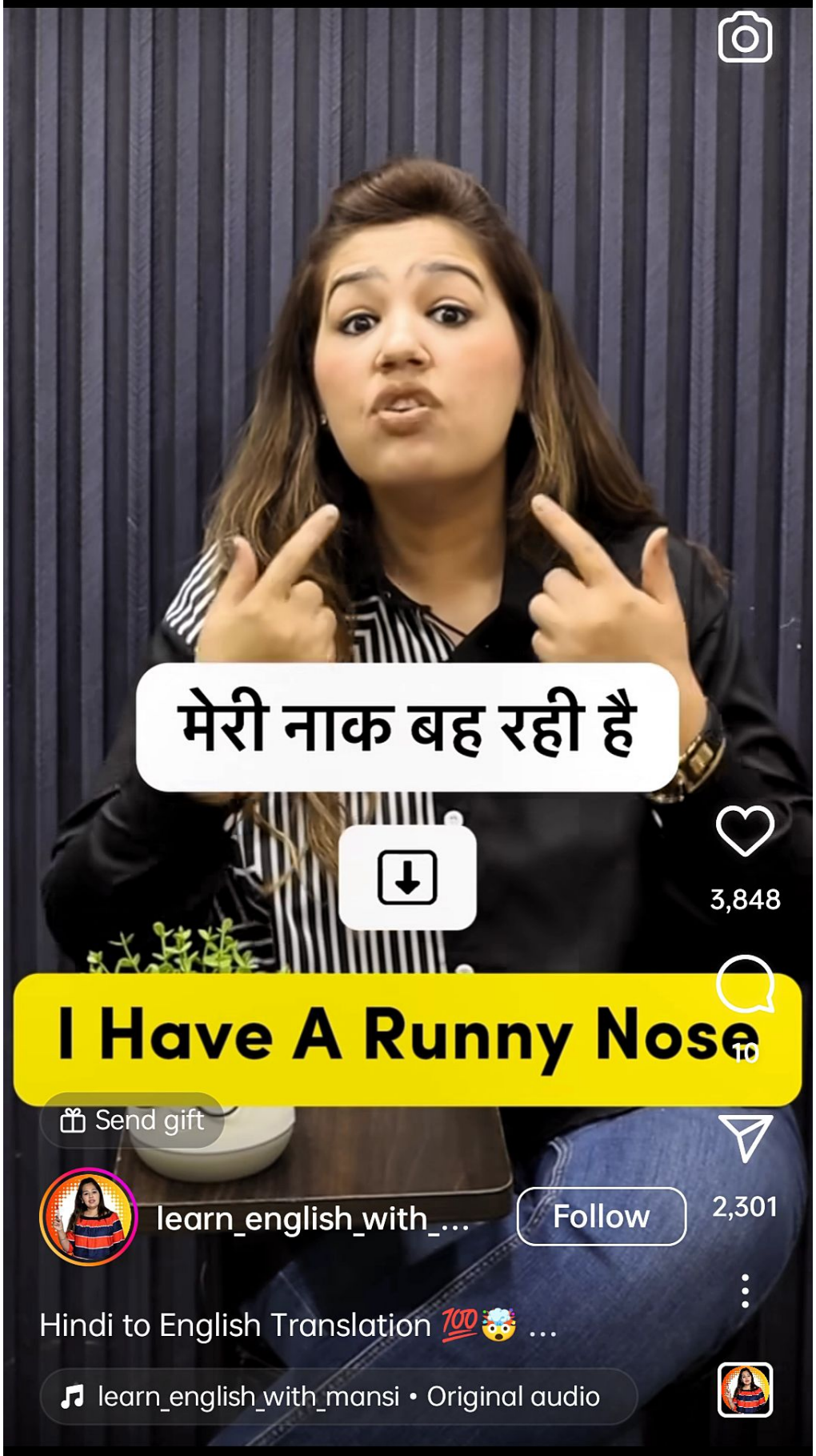

मेरी मदद करो
Please Give me a Hand
398
1
41
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

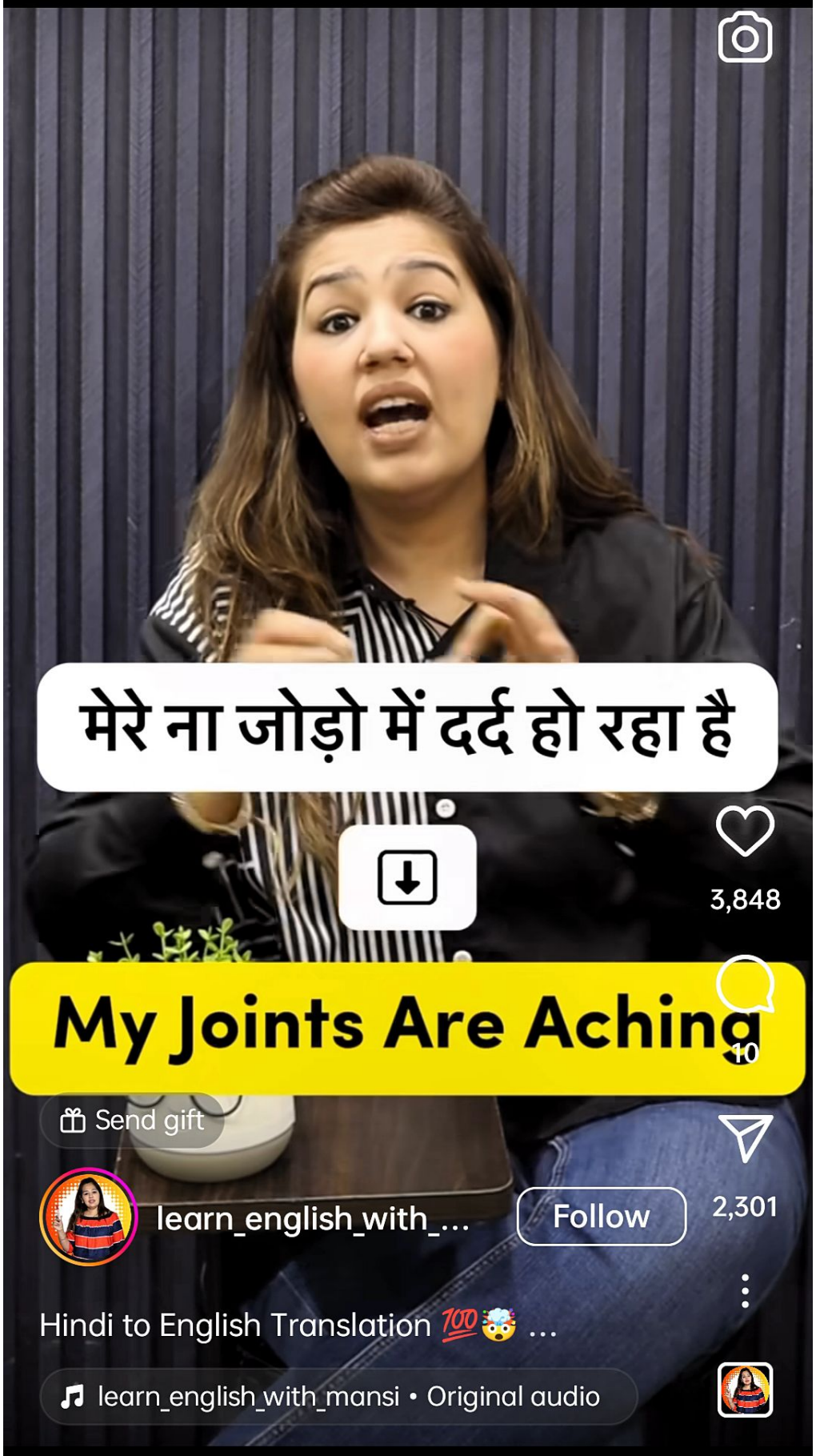

तुम्हें पता है कल क्या हुआ
398
Did You Know What Happened Yesterday
1
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
41
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

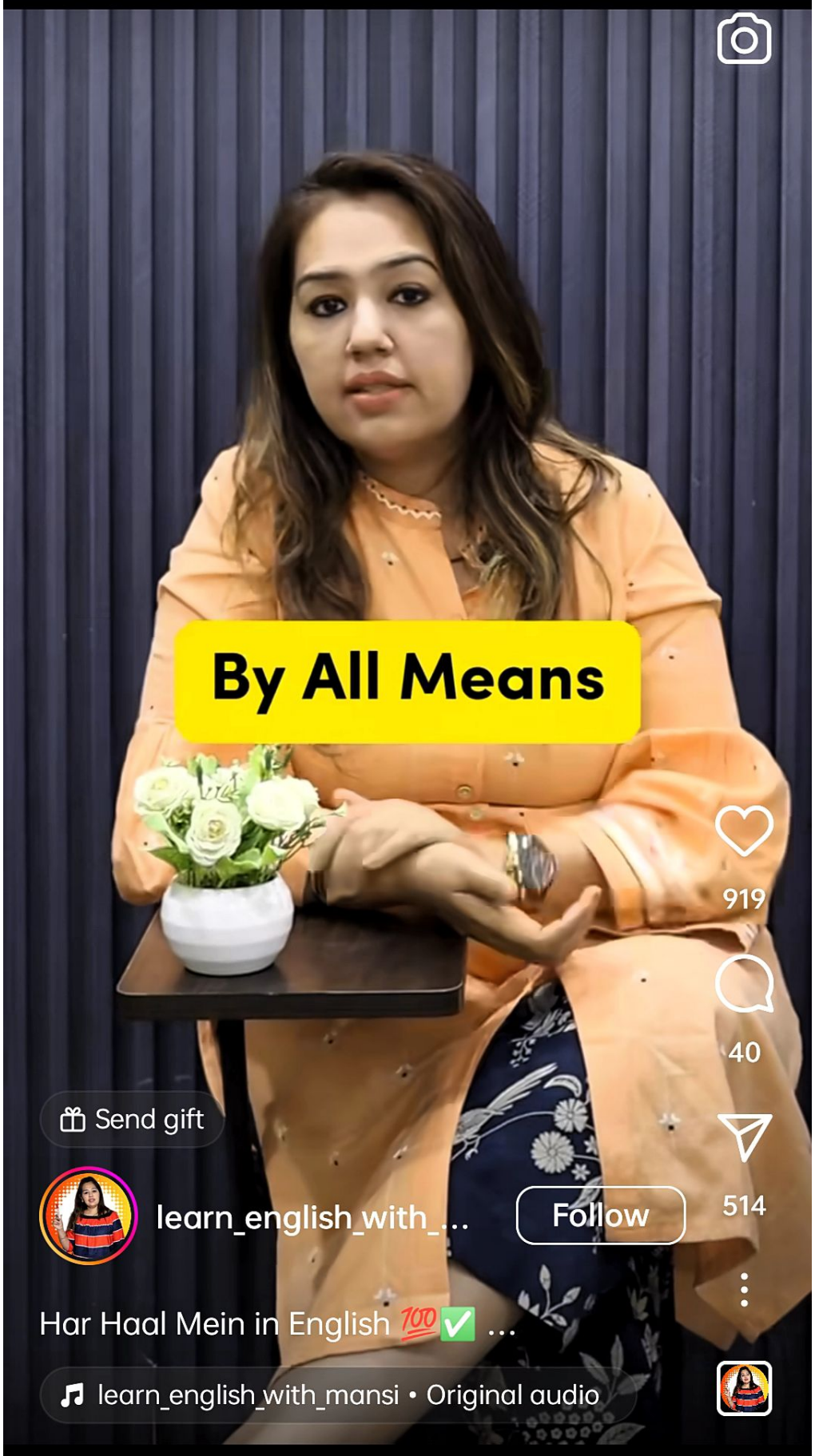

शर्माओ मत
Don't Be Shy
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
398
1
41

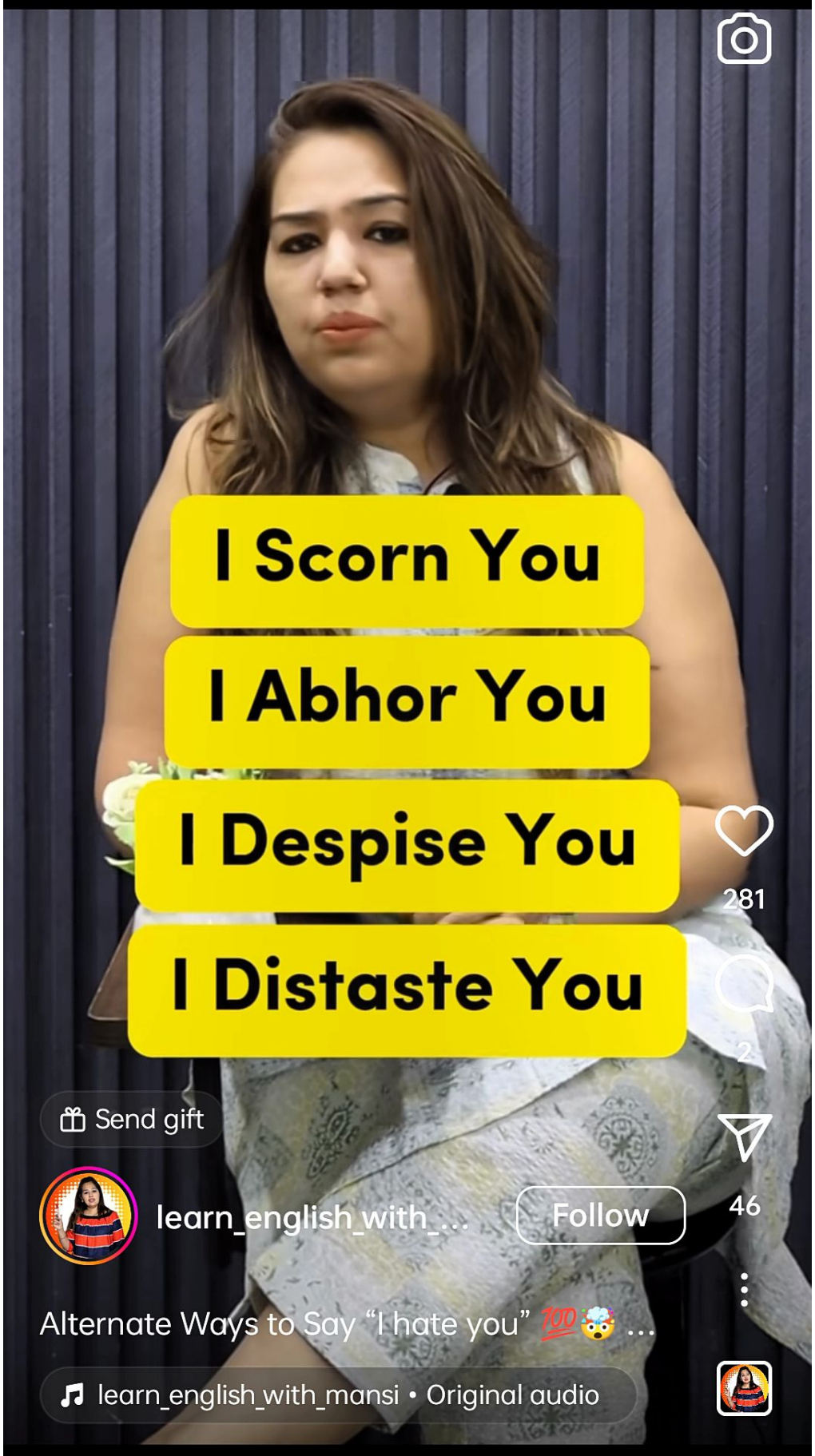

मुझे चक्कर आ रहे है
I'm Feeling Dizzy
3,848
10
2,301
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

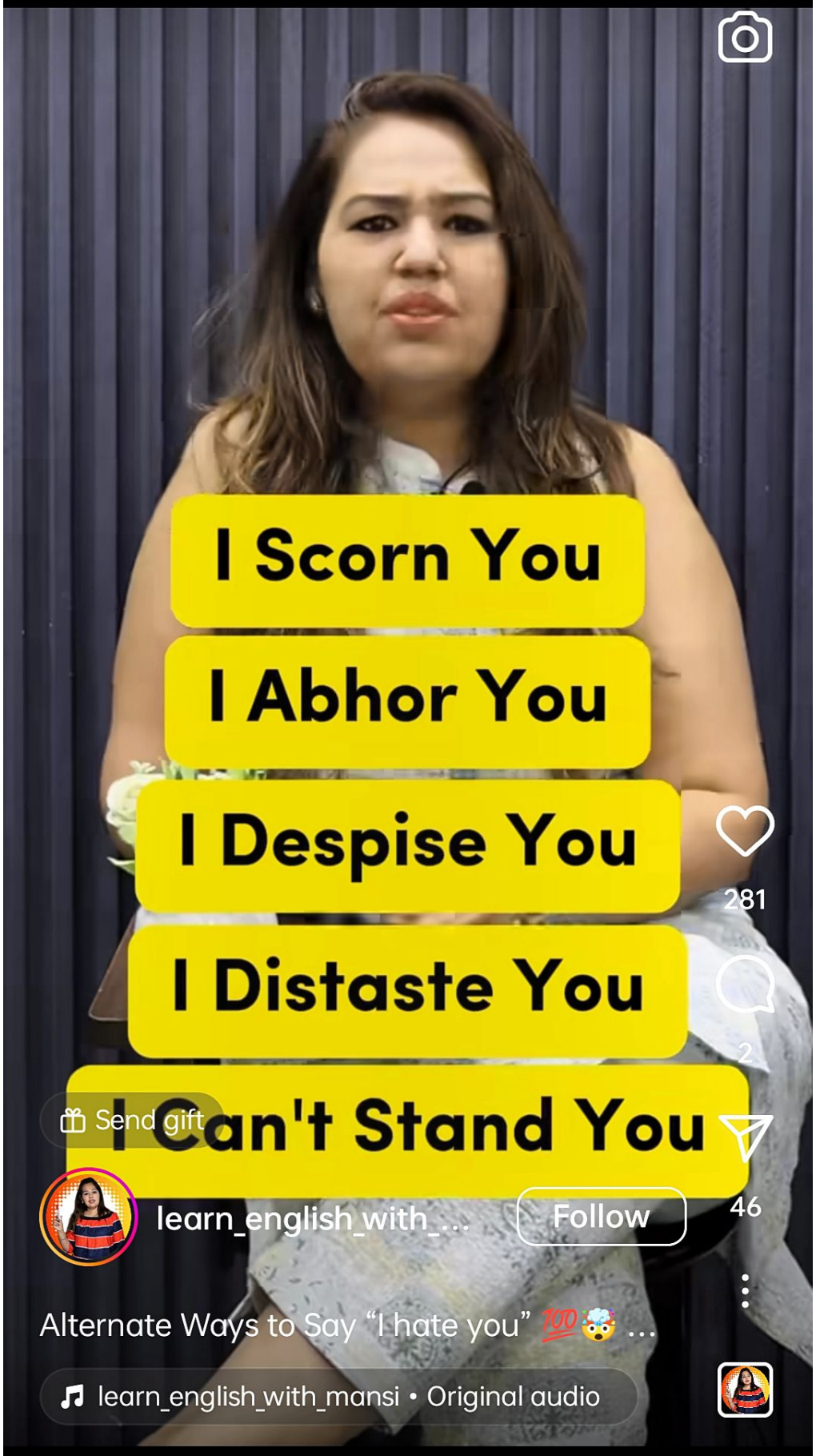

मेरी बाज़ू में बहुत तीखा दर्द हो रहा है
3,848
I Have A Thumping Pain
10
Send gift
2,301
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


मेरी नाक बह रही है
I Have A Runny Nose
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
3,848
10
2,301


मेरे ना जोड़ो में दर्द हो रहा है
My Joints Are Aching
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
3,848
10
2,301


By All Means
919
40
514
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Har Haal Mein in English 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


I Scorn You
I Abhor You
I Despise You
I Distaste You
281
2
46
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Alternate Ways to Say “I hate you” 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


I Scorn You
I Abhor You
I Despise You
I Distaste You
I Can't Stand You
281
2
46
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Alternate Ways to Say “I hate you” 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


समय कैसे बीत गया
How Time Flies
597
4
111
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Time Vocabulary - Hindi to English ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


वह एक एक मिनट
का पाभंड है
He Is Punctual
to the Minute
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Time Vocabulary - Hindi to English ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
597
4
111


वह अपना समय
बर्बाद कर रहा है
He is Mucking Up
The Time
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
597
4
111
Time Vocabulary - Hindi to English ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


वह अपना समय
बर्बाद कर रहा है
He is Faffing Around
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Time Vocabulary - Hindi to English ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
597
4
111


हमे अपने समय का
लाभ उठाना चाहिए
We Should Take The
Advantage of Time
Send gift
597
4
111
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Time Vocabulary - Hindi to English ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

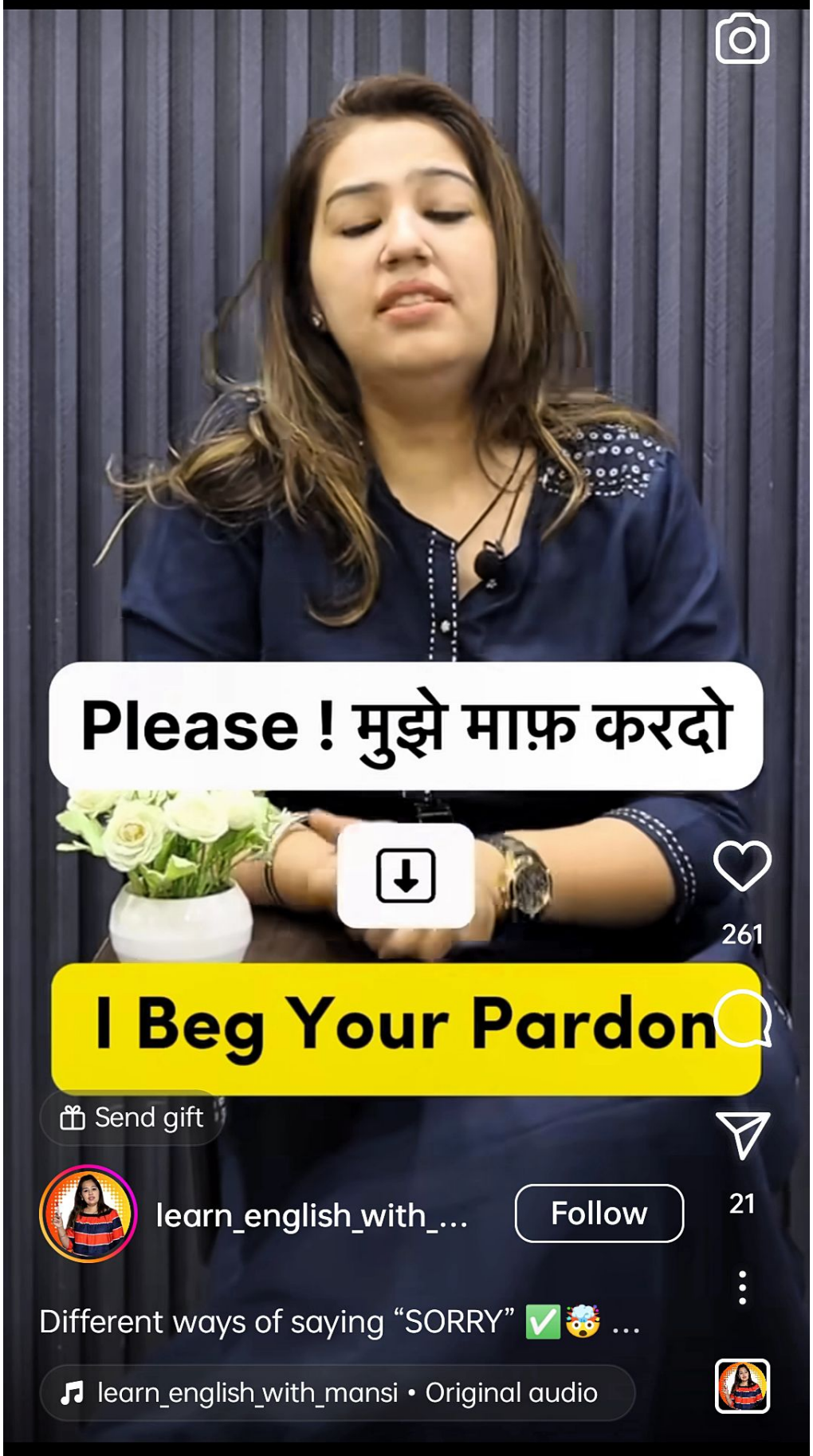

अब उसे समय की
वैल्यू पता लगेगी
597
4
111
Now He Will Understand
The Value Of Time
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Time Vocabulary - Hindi to English ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

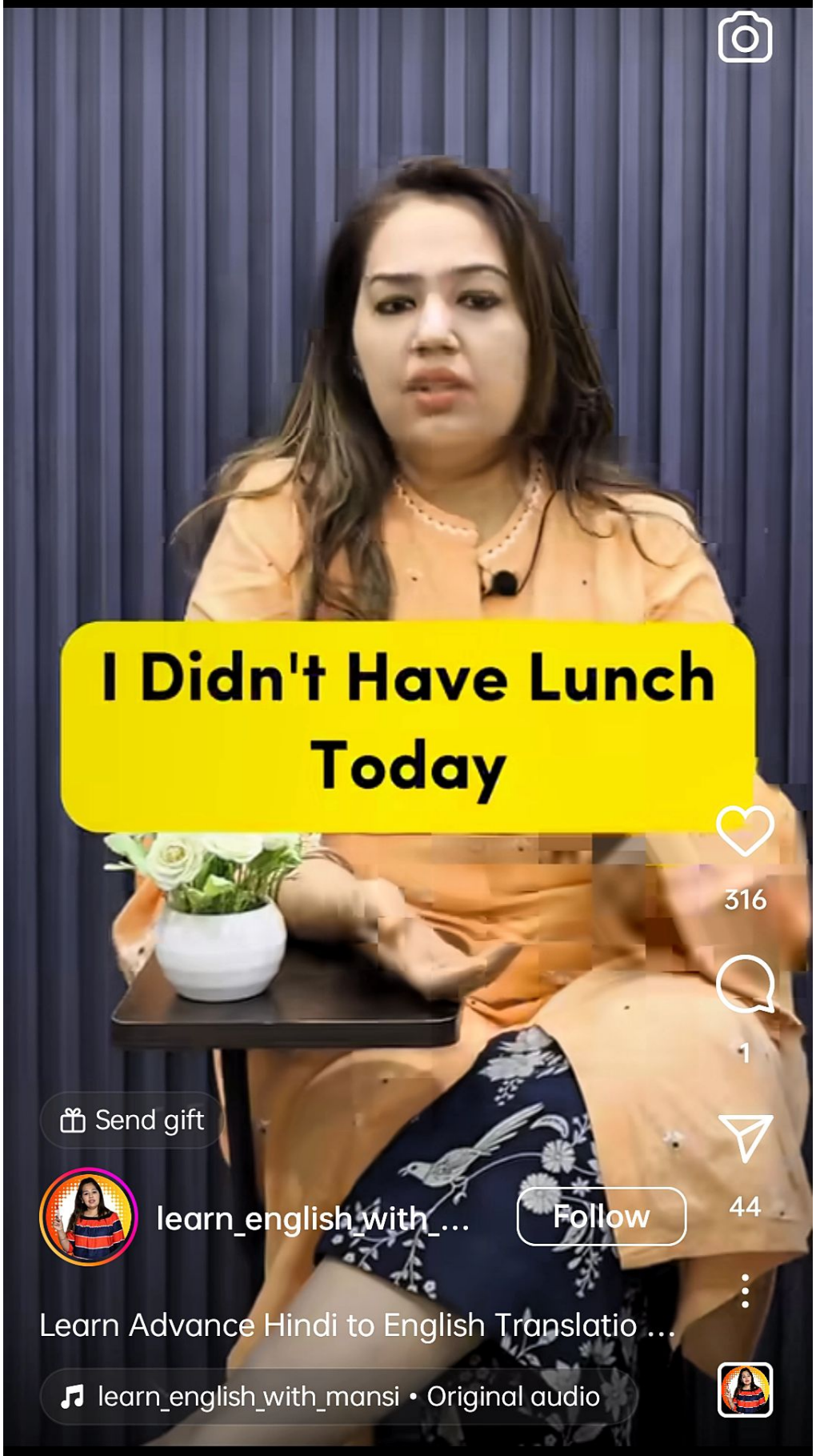

मेरी गलती थी
I Was Wrong
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Different ways of saying “SORRY” ✅🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
261
21

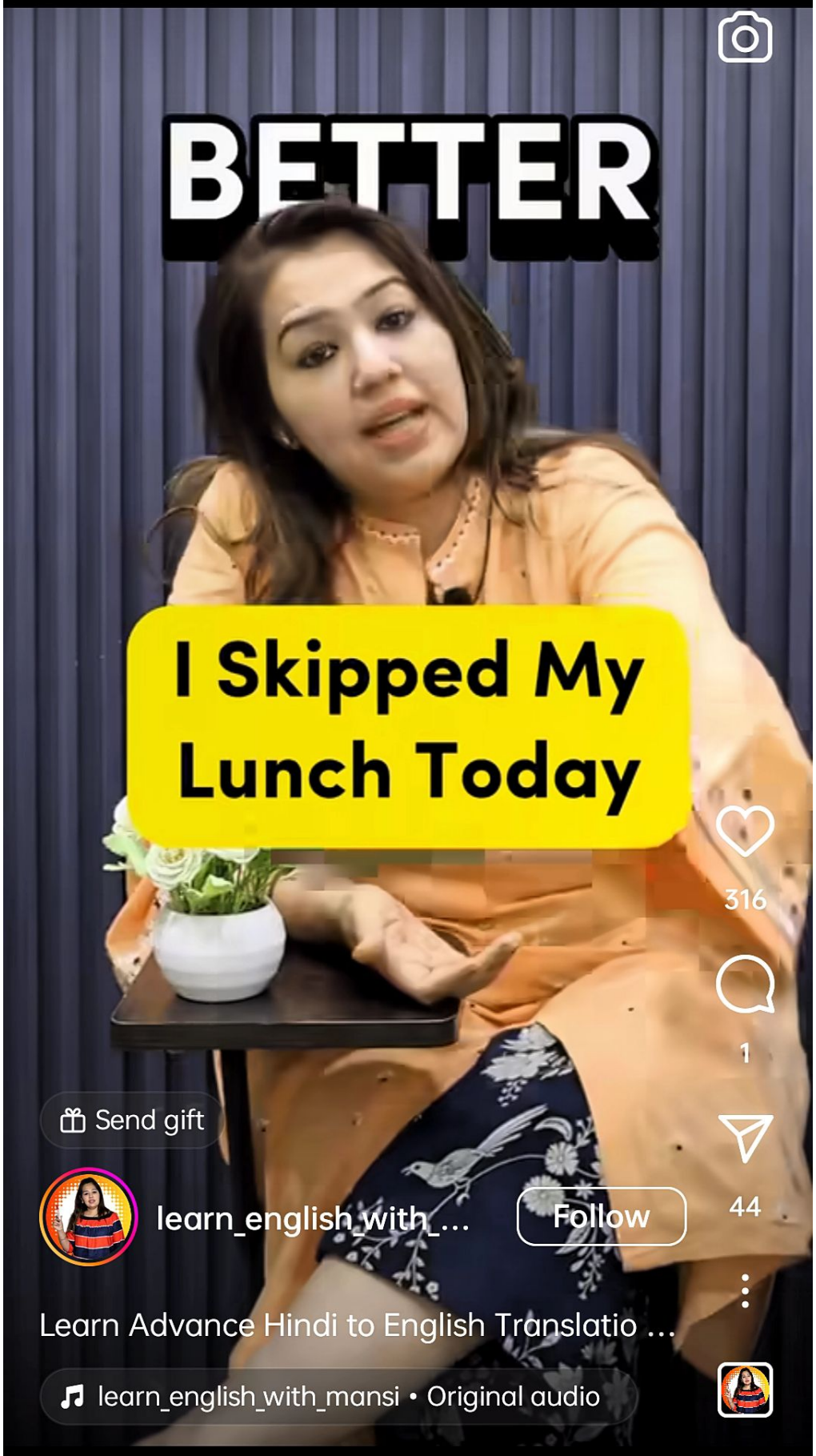

मैं ग़लत था
That Was My Fault
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Different ways of saying “SORRY” ✅🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
261
21


मुझे अफ़सोस है
I Regret
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Different ways of saying “SORRY” ✅🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
261
21

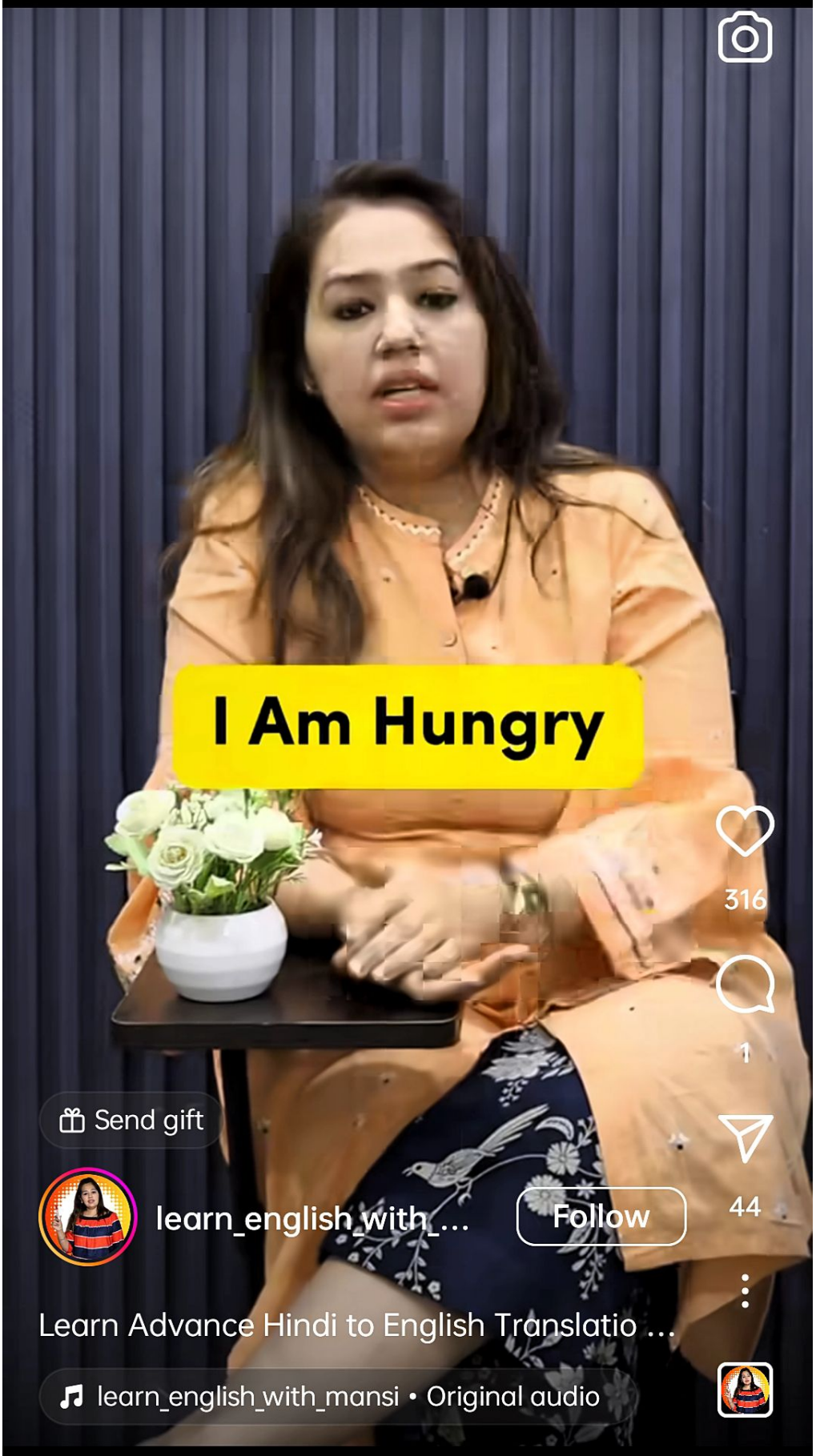

मैं ग़लत हूँ
My Bad
261
21
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Different ways of saying “SORRY” ✅🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Please ! मुझे माफ़ करदो
I Beg Your Pardon
Send gift
261
21
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Different ways of saying “SORRY” ✅🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


I Didn't Have Lunch Today
316
1
44
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Advance Hindi to English Translatio ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


BETTER
I Skipped My Lunch Today
316
1
44
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Advance Hindi to English Translatio ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Mujhe Bahut Bhookh
Lag Rahi Hai
316
1
44
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Advance Hindi to English Translatio ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


I Am Hungry
316
1
44
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Advance Hindi to English Translatio ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


BETTER
I Am Starving
316
1
44
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Advance Hindi to English Translatio ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

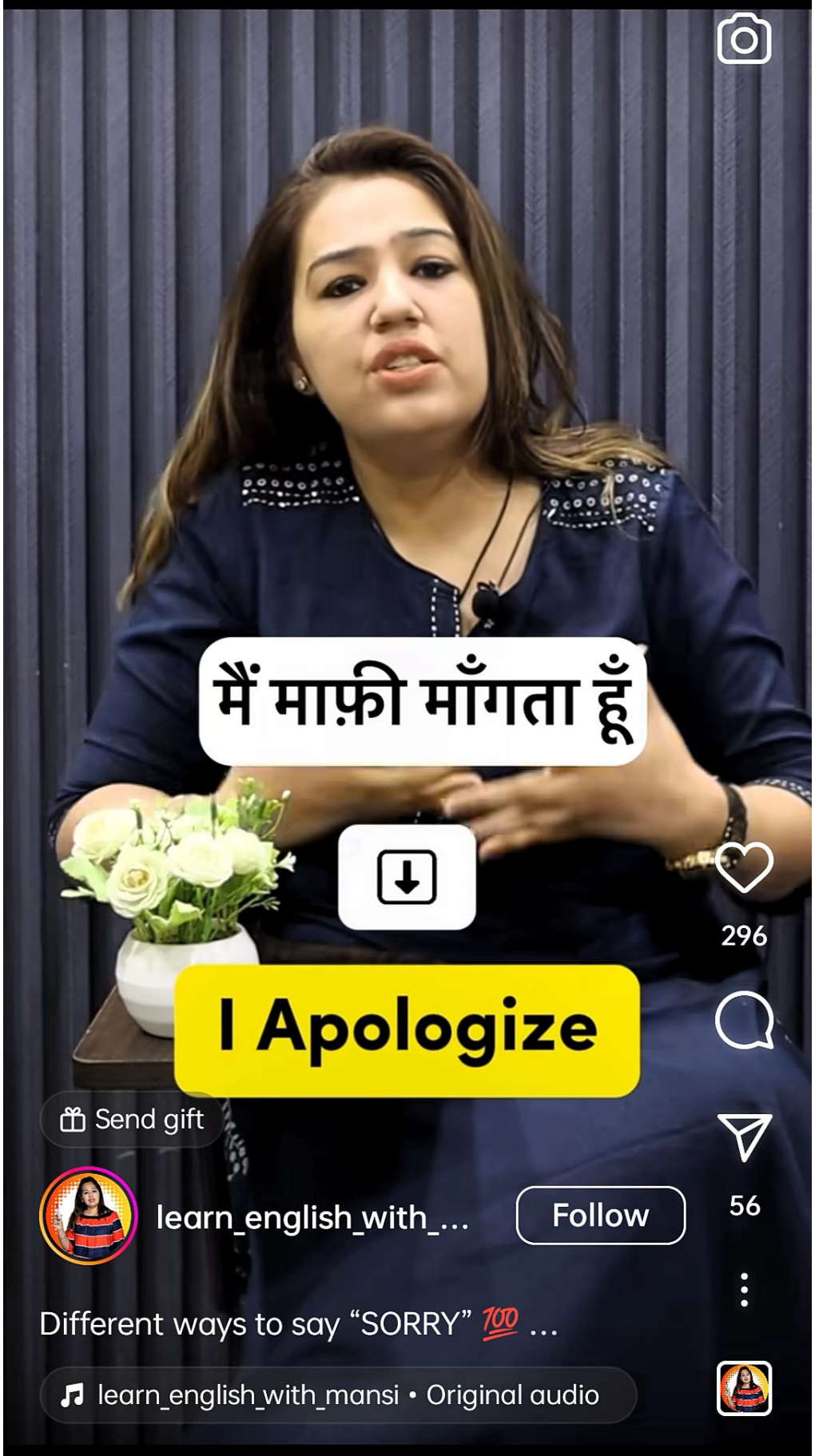

Mera Cookies Khane Ko Bahut Mann Kar Raha Hai
316
1
44
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Advance Hindi to English Translatio ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

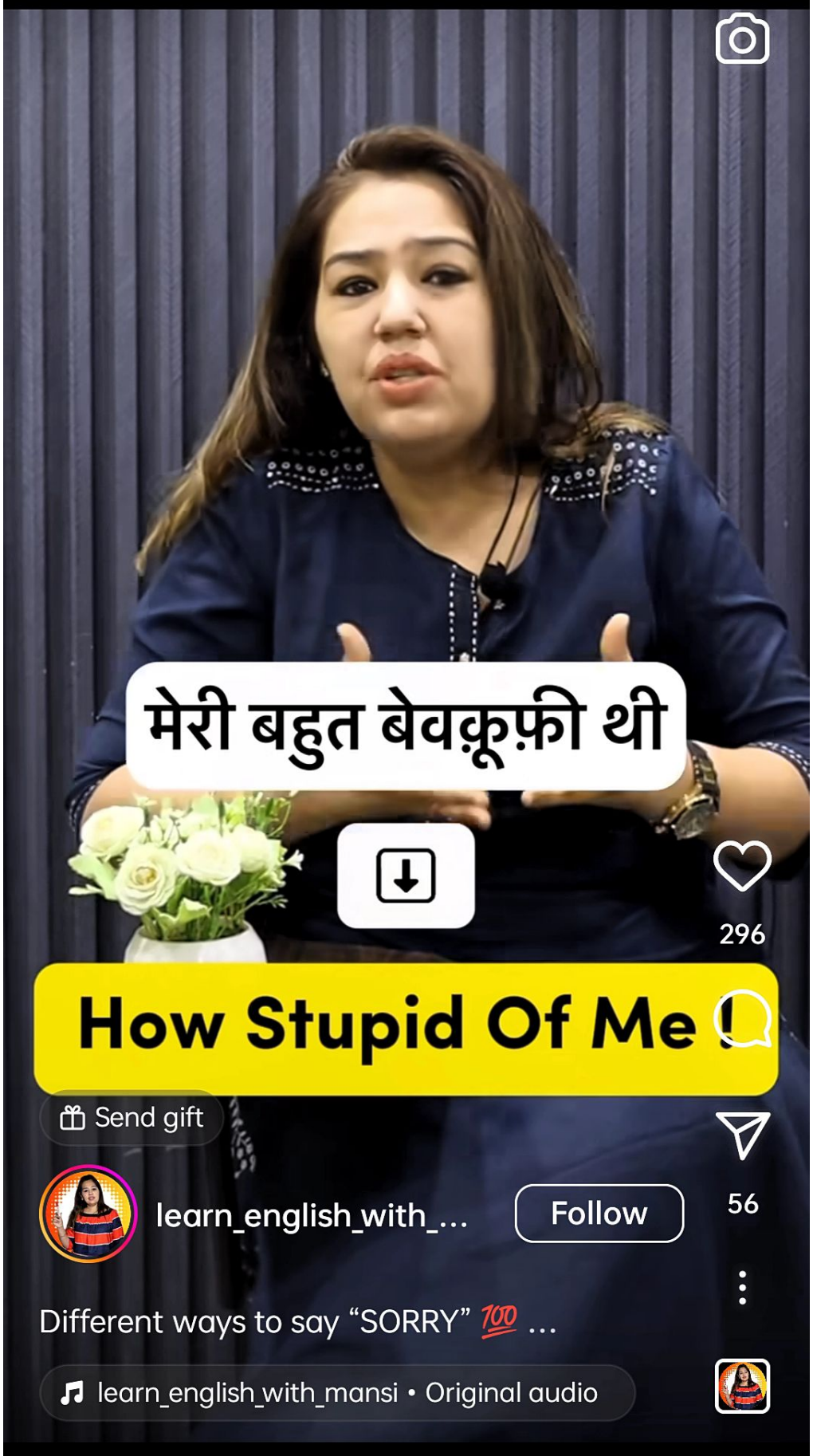

I Really Want To Have Cookies
316
1
44
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Advance Hindi to English Translatio ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

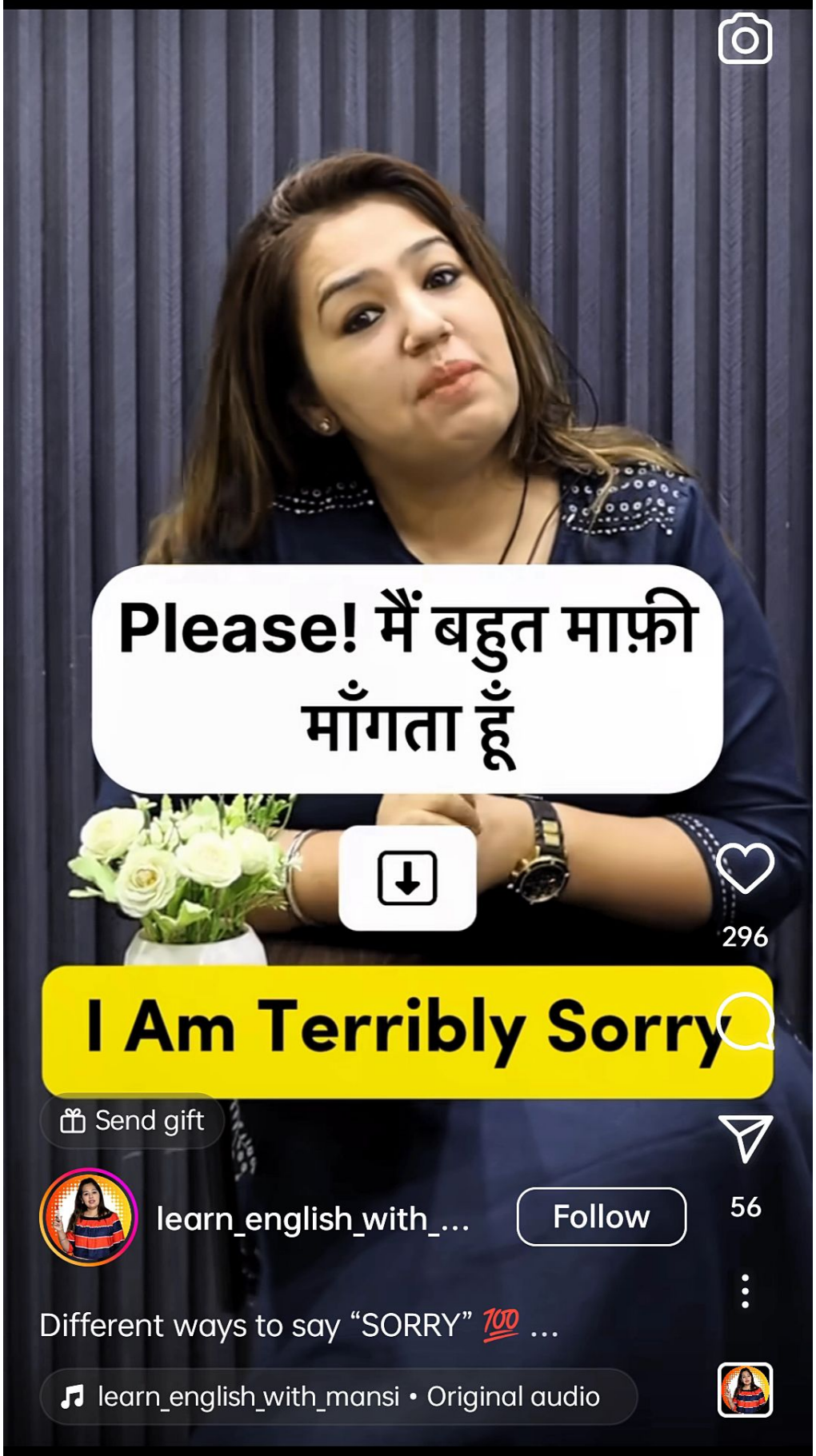

BETTER
I Am Craving For Cookies
316
1
44
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Advance Hindi to English Translatio ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

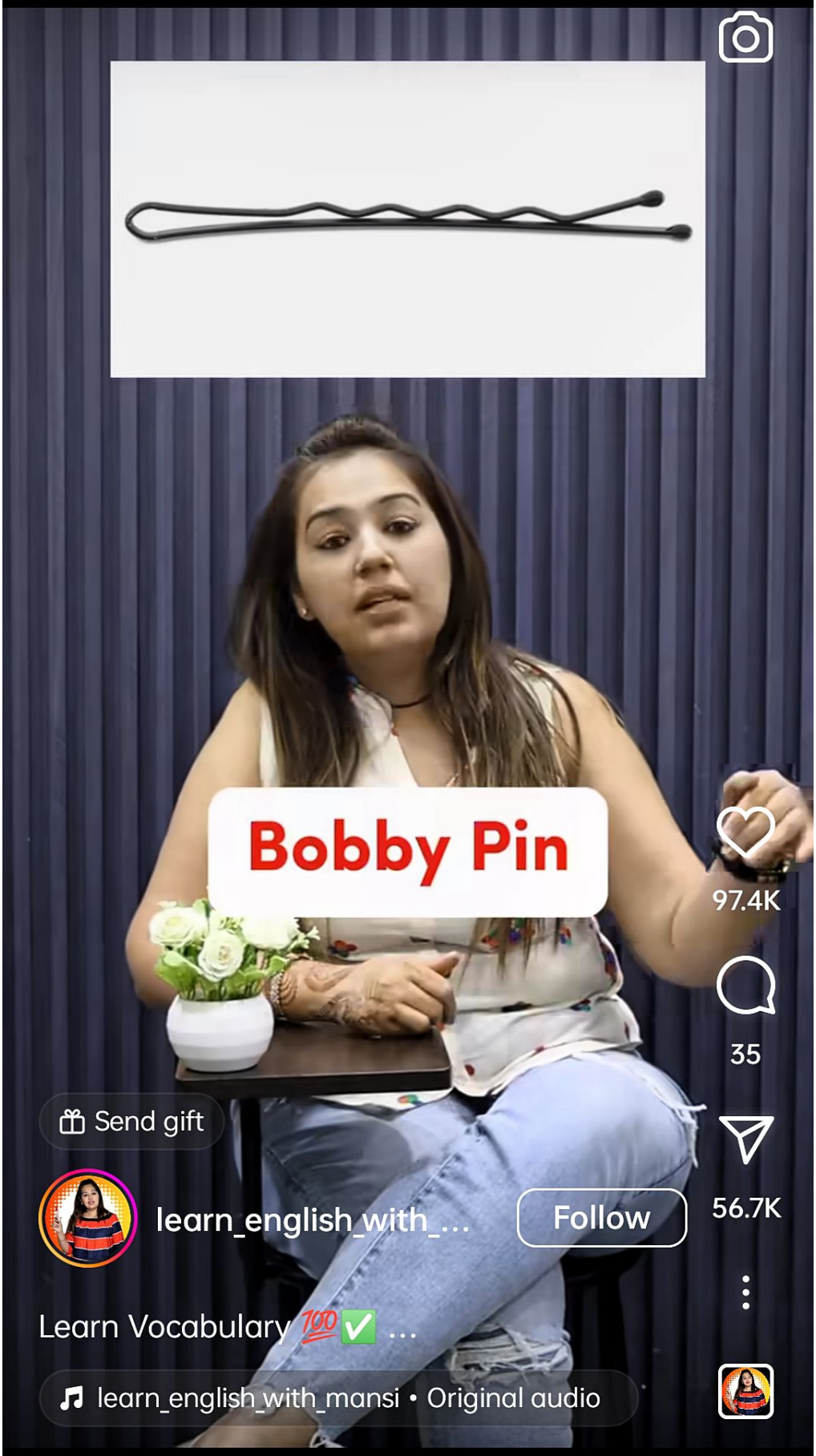

मुझे माफ़ करदो
296
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
56
Different ways to say “SORRY” 💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


6:55
272 KB/S
54
मुझे माफ़ करदो
296
Please Forgive Me
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
56
Different ways to say “SORRY” 💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


मैं माफ़ी माँगता हूँ
I Apologize
296
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
56
Different ways to say “SORRY” 💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


मेरी बहुत बेवक़ूफ़ी थी
How Stupid Of Me !
296
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
56
Different ways to say “SORRY” 💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Please! मैं बहुत माफ़ी माँगता हूँ
I Am Terribly Sorry
296
56
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Different ways to say “SORRY” 💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Bobby Pin
97.4K
35
56.7K
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio



Stick Pin

97.4K

35

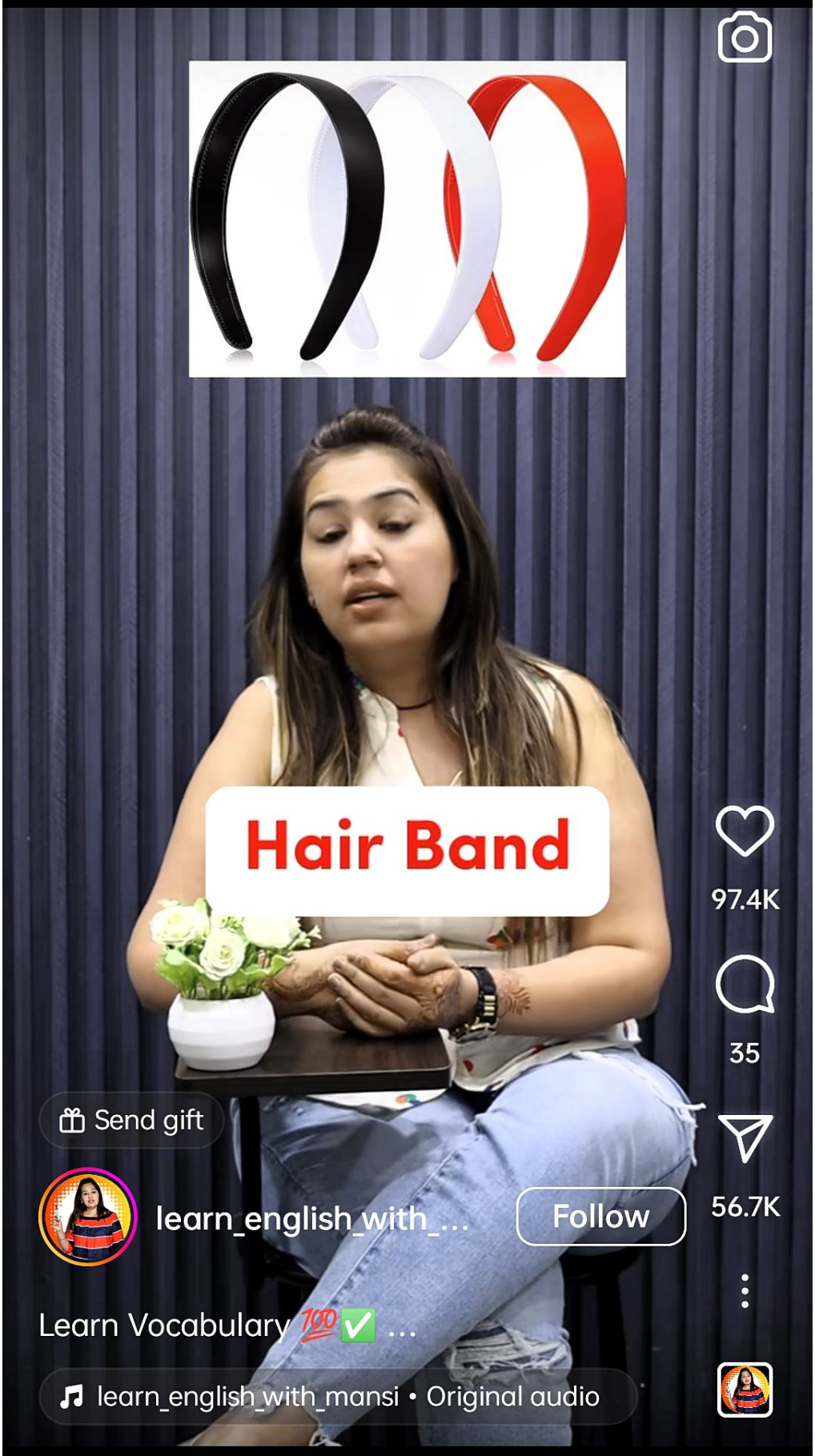
Send gift

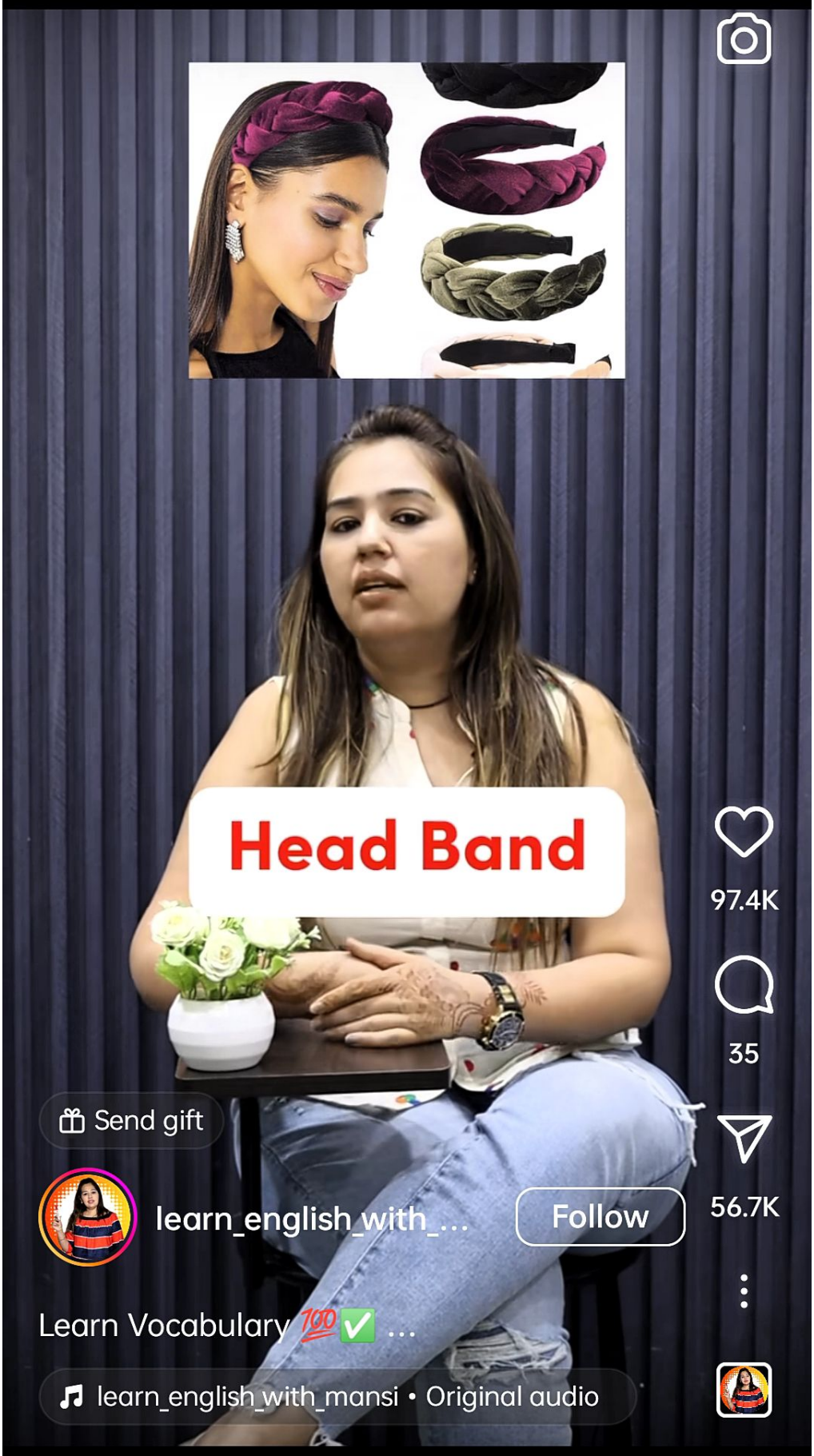
56.7K

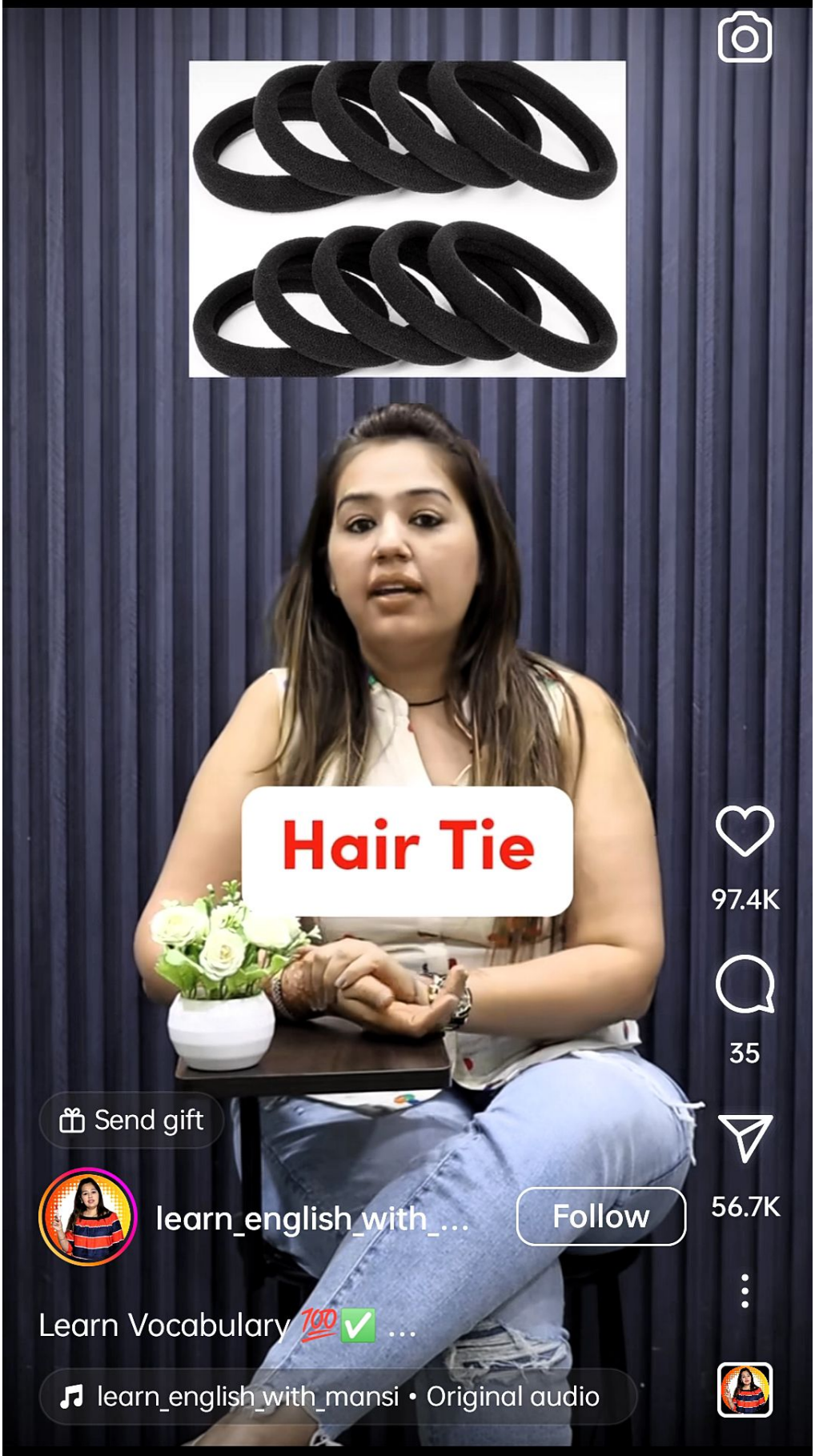
learn_english_with_... Follow

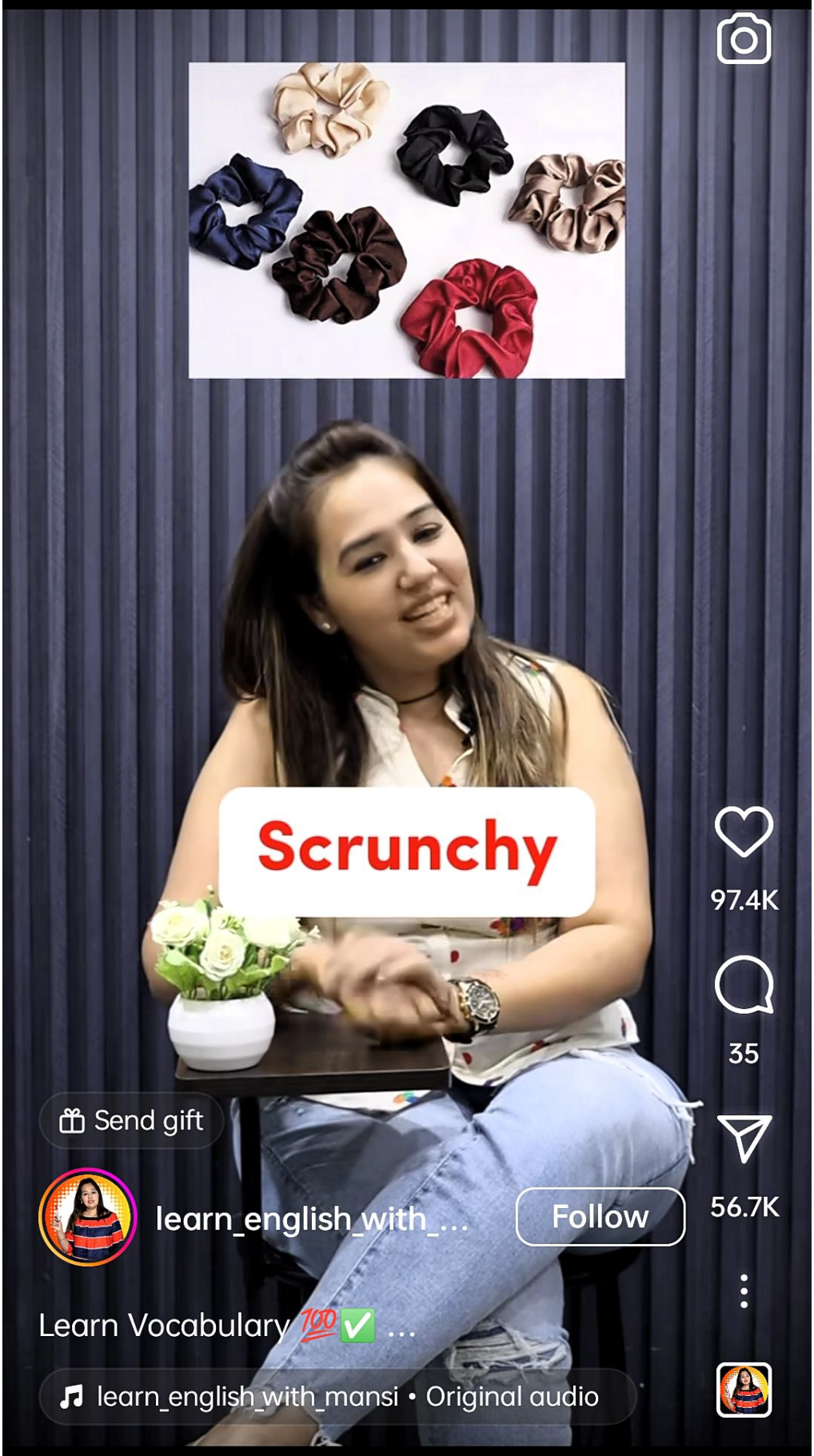
Learn Vocabulary 💯✅ ...

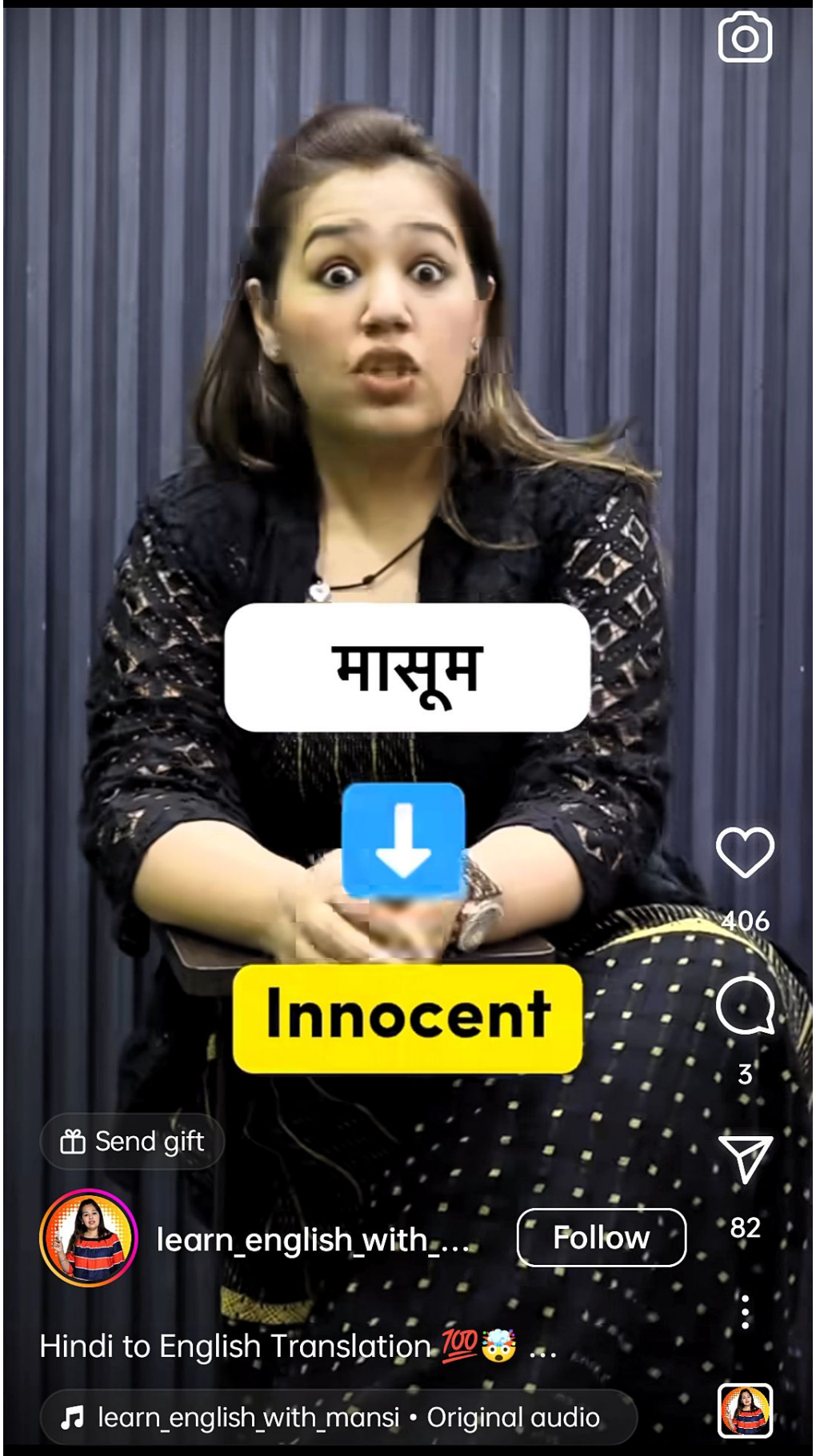
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

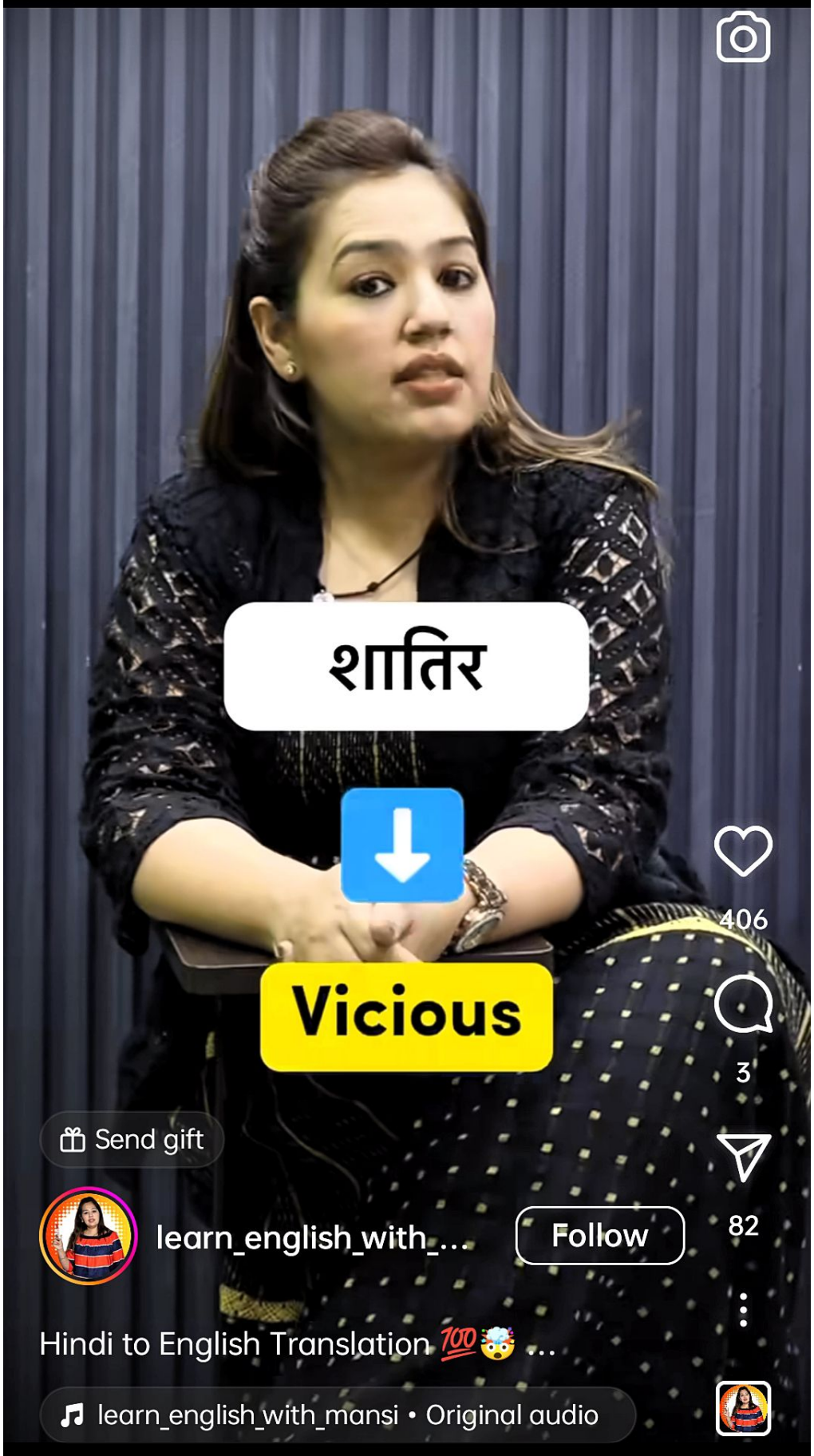

Hair Band
97.4K
35
56.7K
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

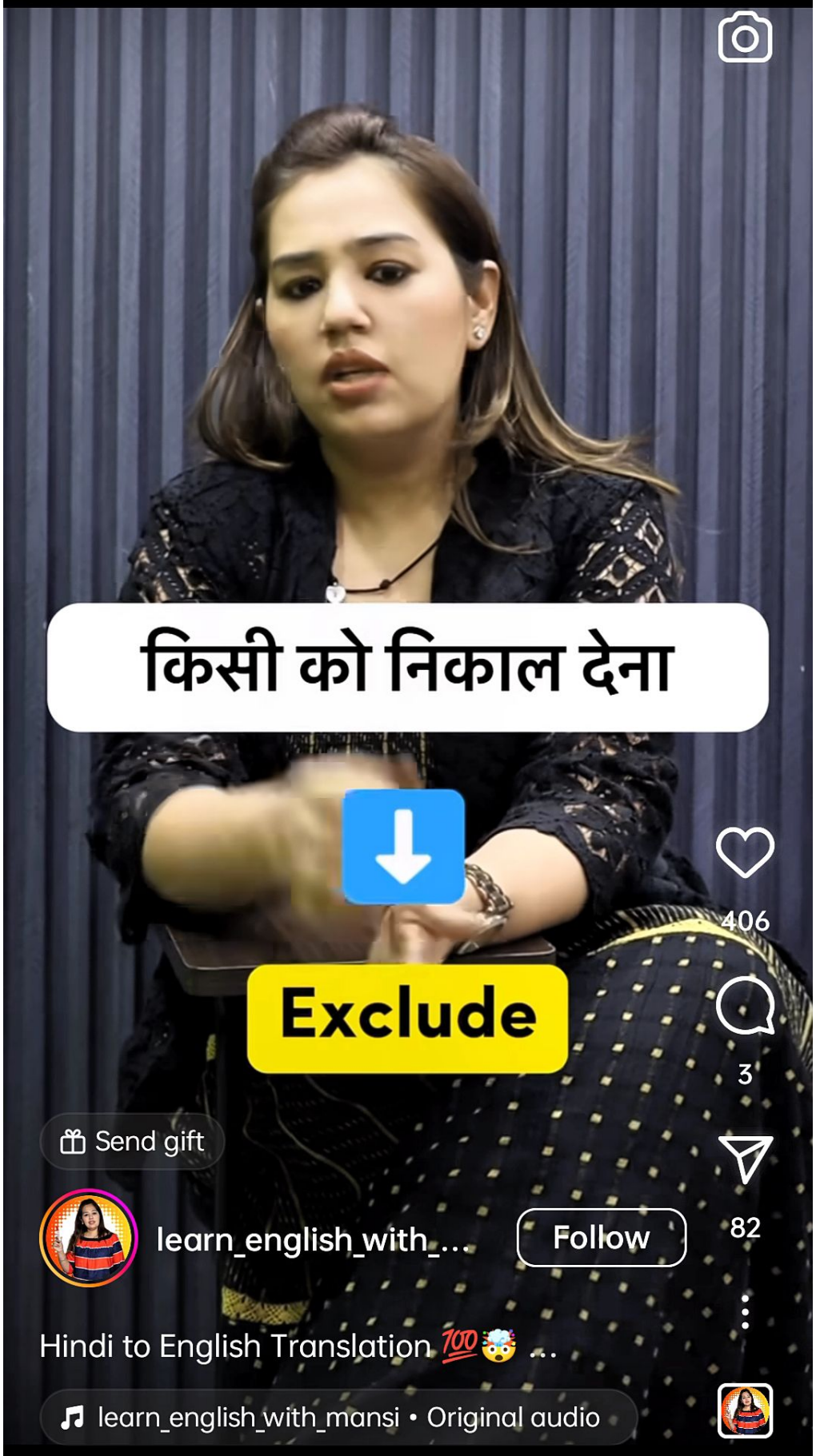

6:55
Head Band
97.4K
35
56.7K
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Hair Tie
97.4K
35
56.7K
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Scrunchy
97.4K
35
56.7K
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

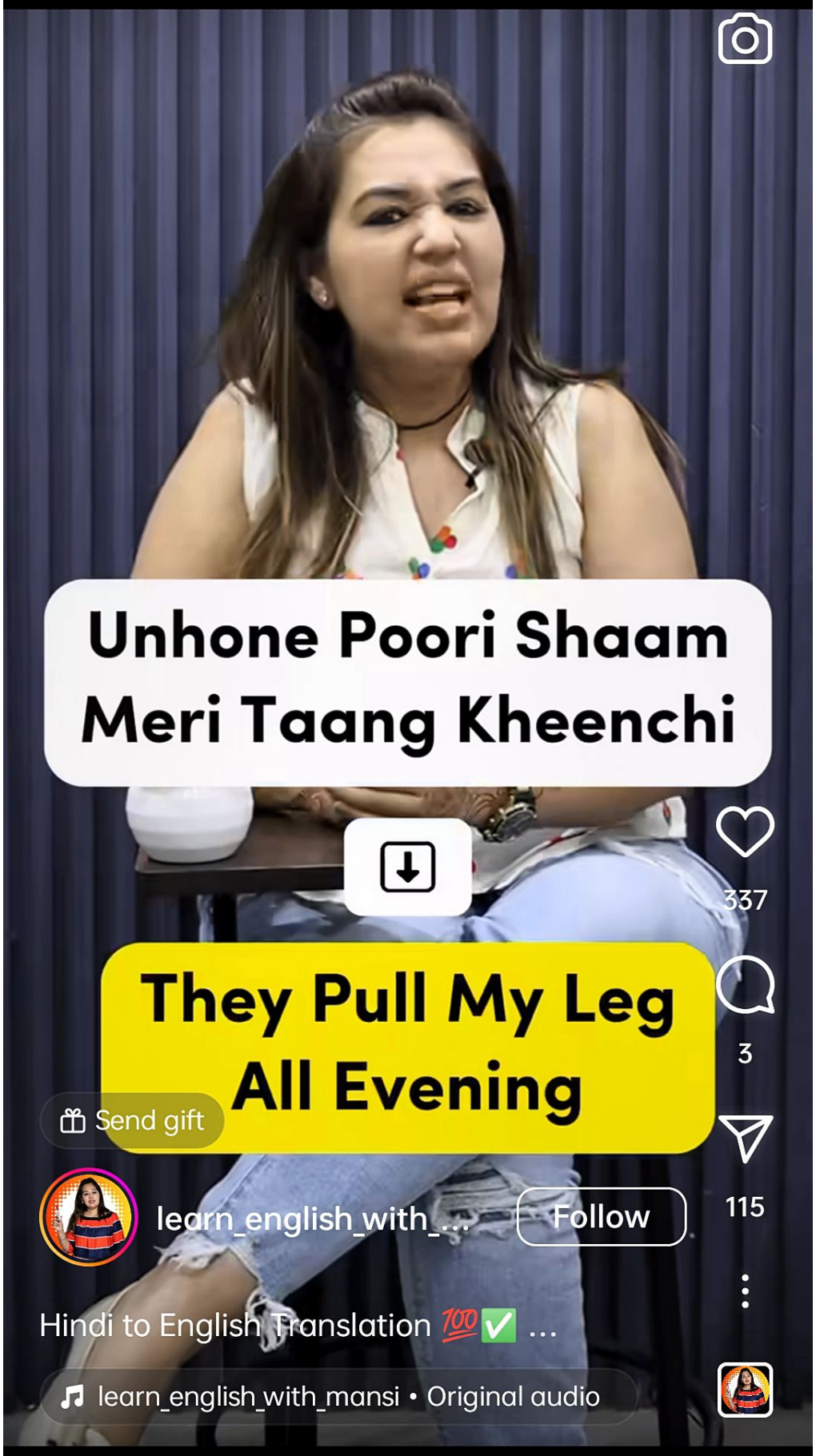

मासूम
Innocent
406
3
82
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


शातिर
Vicious
406
3
82
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


किसी को निकाल देना
Exclude
406
3
82
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


किसी को शामिल करना
Include
406
3
82
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

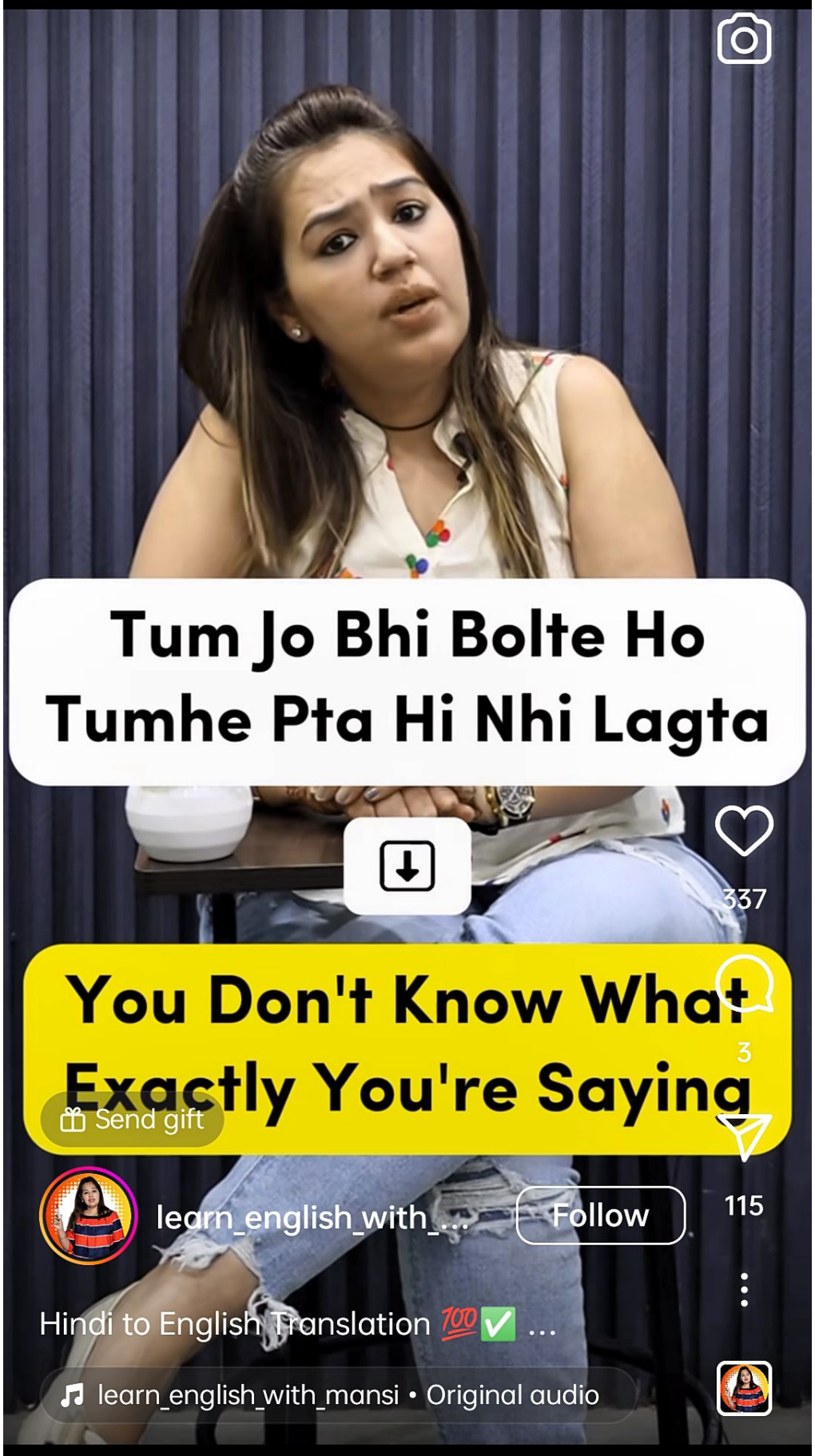

चुग़लख़ोर
Snitcher
406
3
82
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Unhone Poori Shaam Meri Taang Kheenchi
They Pull My Leg All Evening
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
337
3
115


Wo Na Aage Badhne Walon Mein Se Hai
He Is A Go Getter
337
3
115
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Wo Bahut Hatta-
Katta Hai
He Is A Stout
337
3
115
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

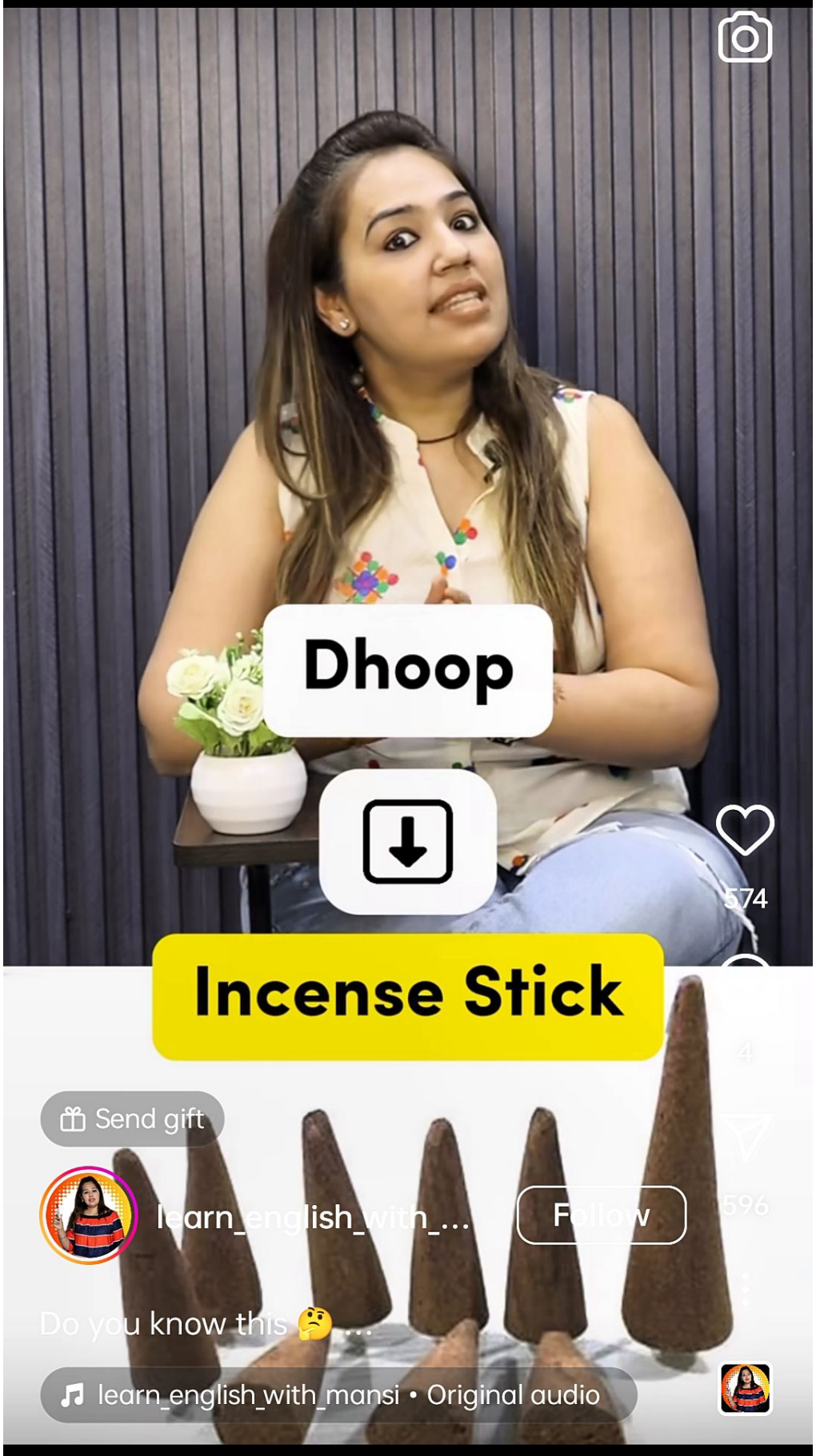

Tum Kya Badbada Rahe Ho
What Are You Muttering
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
337
3
115

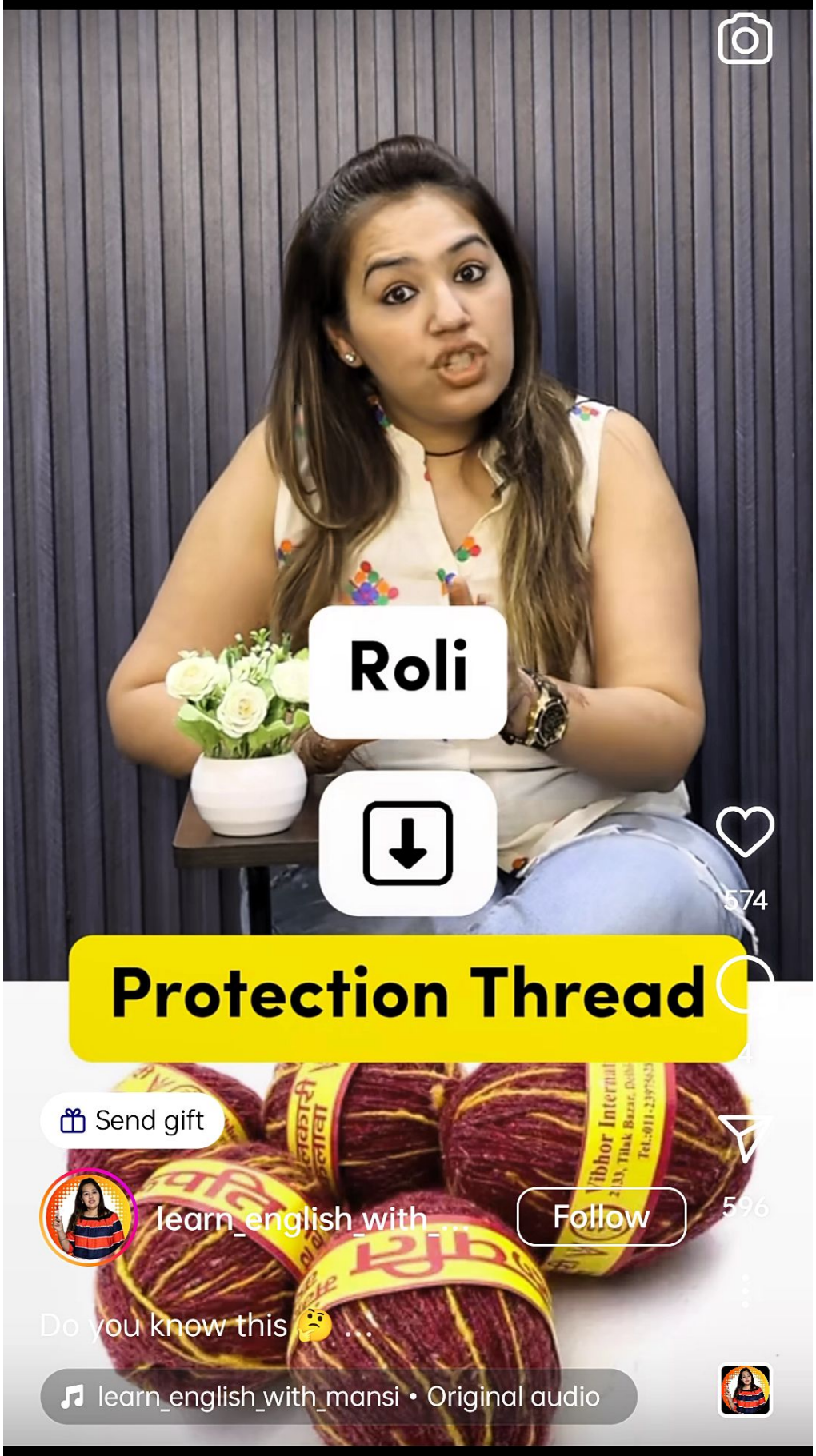

Tum Jo Bhi Bolte Ho
Tumhe Pta Hi Nhi Lagta
337
You Don't Know What
Exactly You're Saying
3
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
115
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Sindoor
Vermilion
574
4
596
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Do you know this 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Kapur
Camphor
574
4
596
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Do you know this 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Agarbatti
Joss Stick
574
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Dhoop
Incense Stick
574
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Do you know this 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Roli
574
Protection Thread
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
596
Do you know this 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


देवता
Deity
10.2K
27
5,391
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

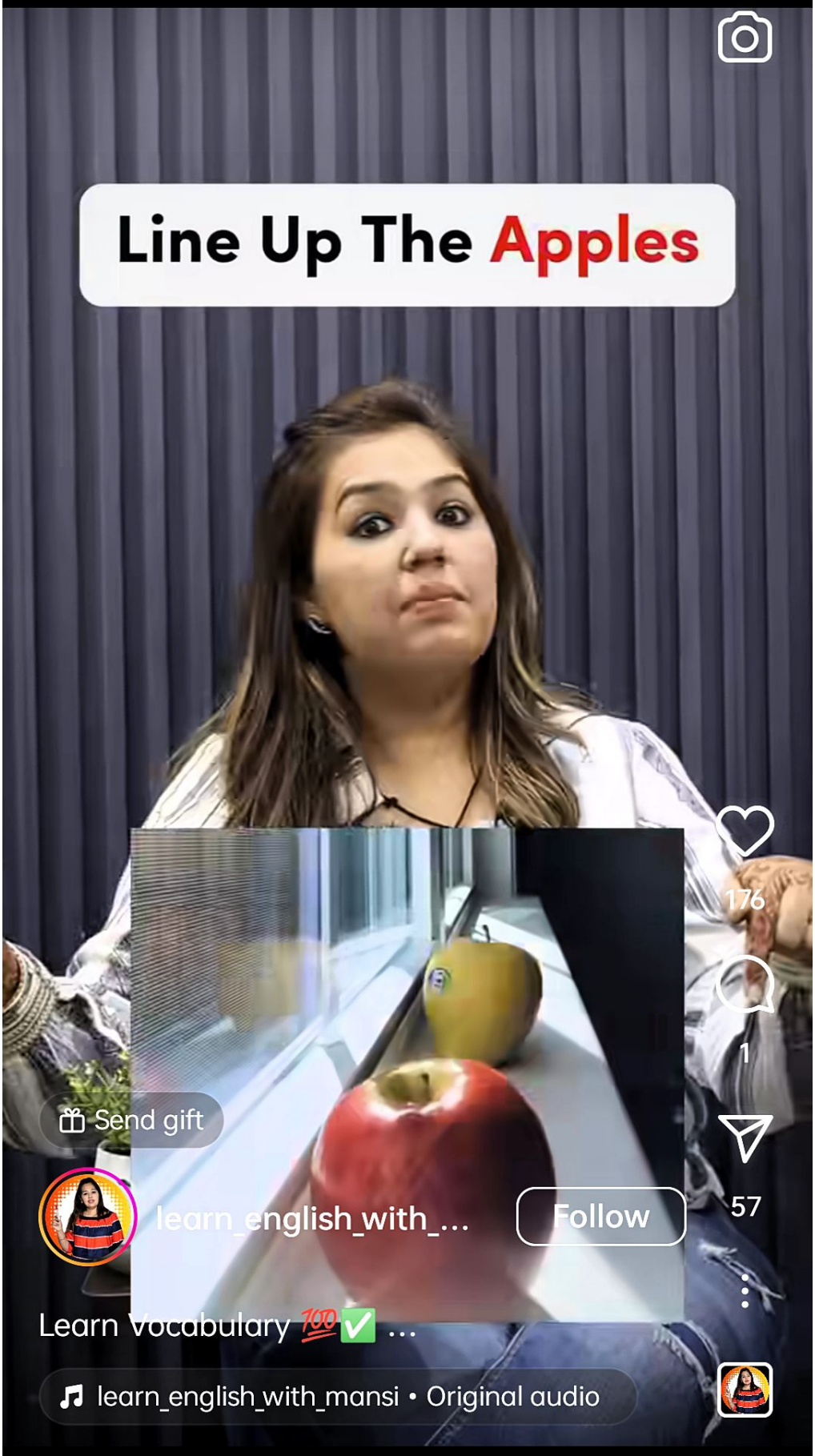

राक्षस
Demon
10.2K
27
5,391
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

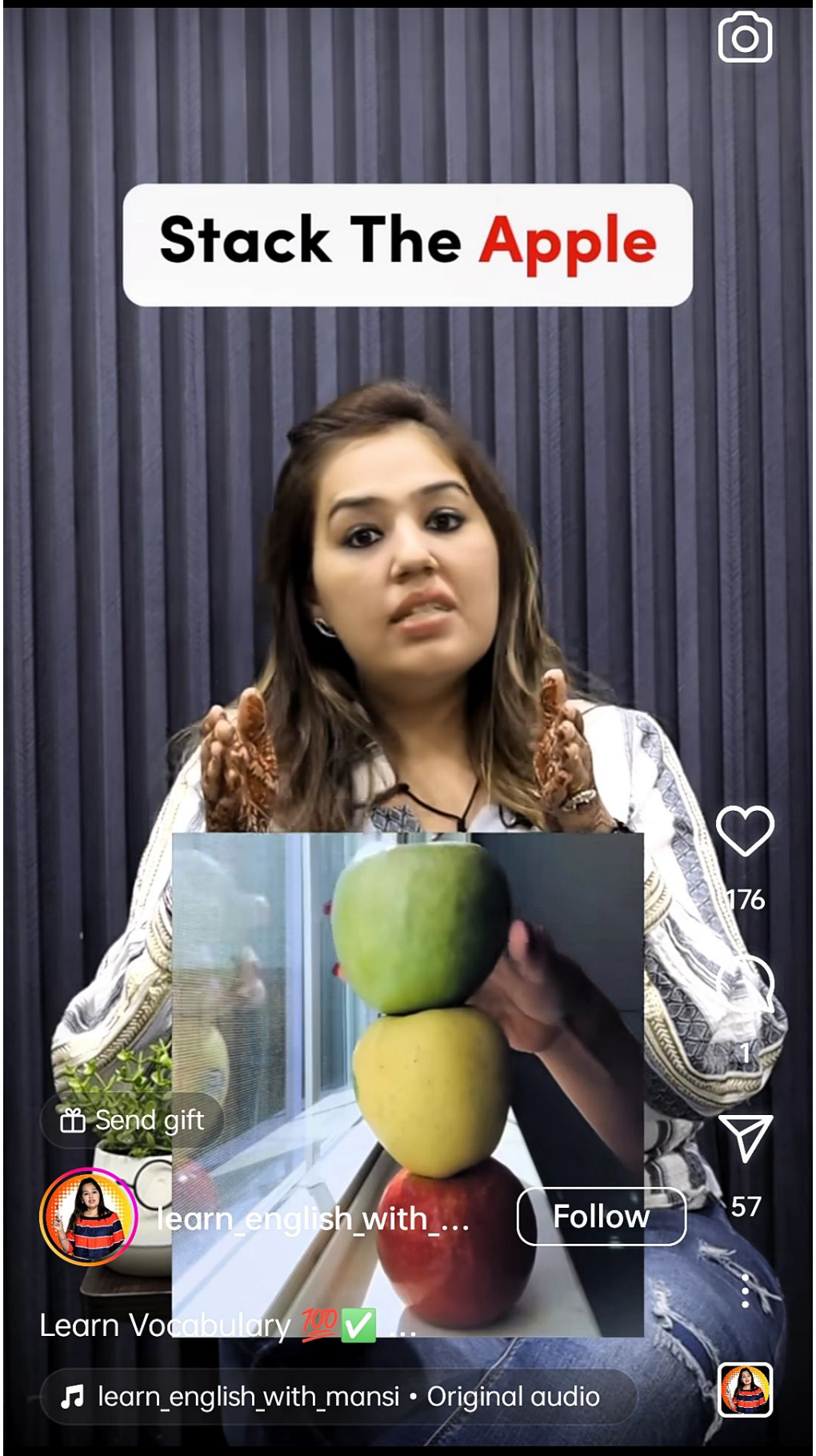

शुभ
Auspicious
10.2K
27
5,391
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

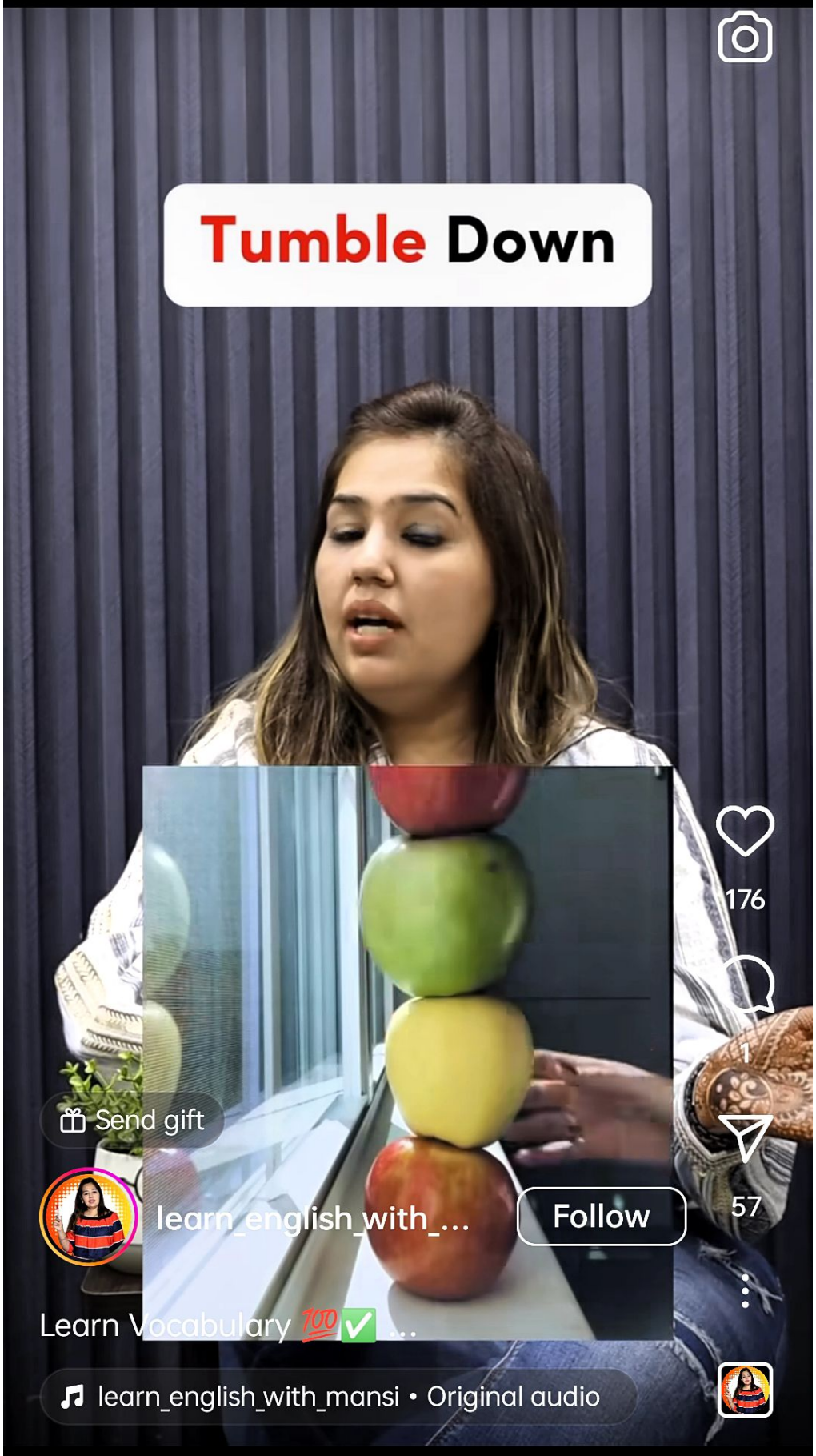

अशुभ
Inauspicious
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
10.2K
27
5,391

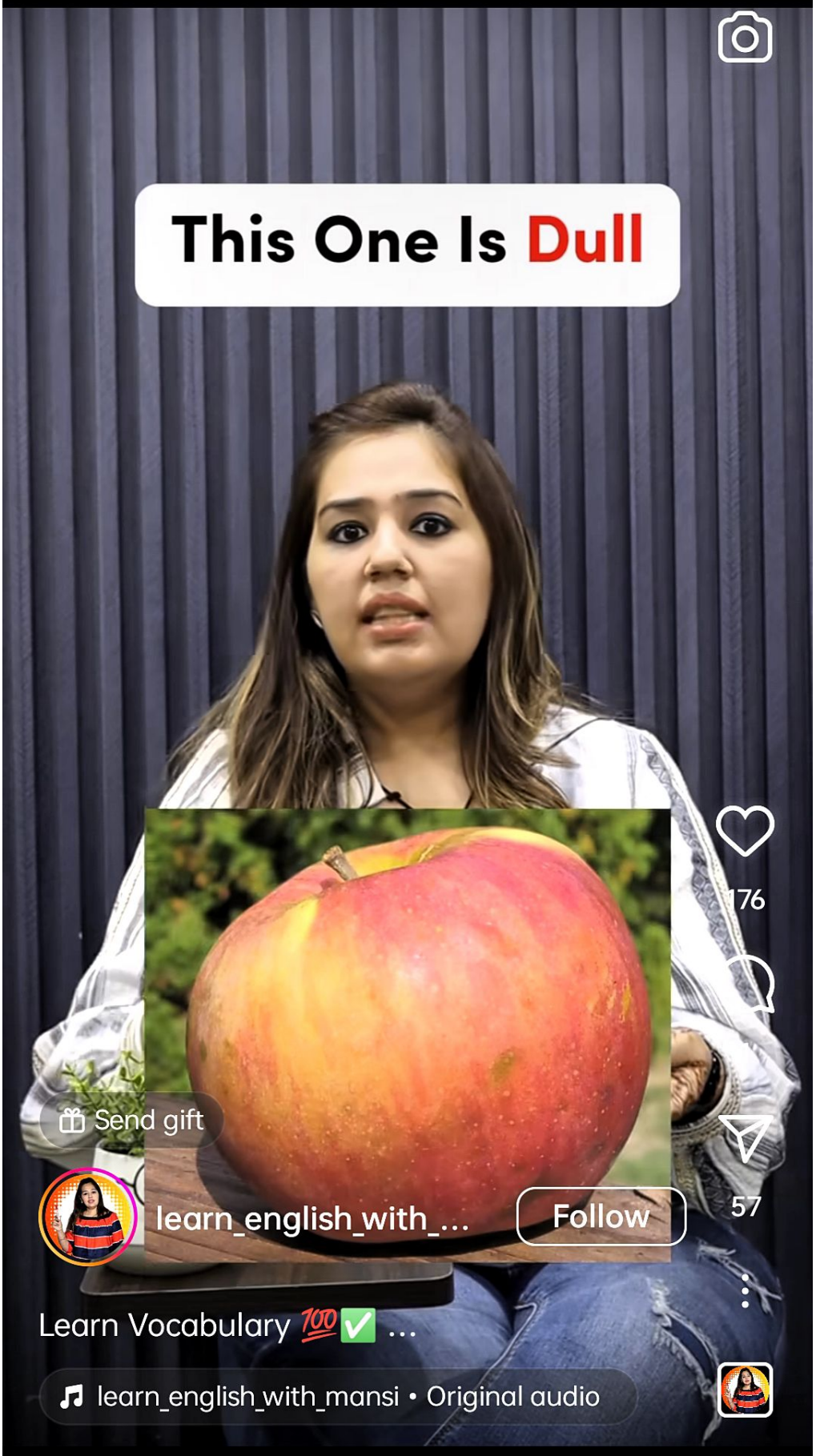

क्रांति
Revolution
10.2K
27
5,391
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


क्रांतिकारी
Revolutionary
10.2K
27
5,391
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Line Up The Apples
176
1
57
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Stack The Apple
176
1
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
57
Learn Vocabulary 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Tumble Down
176
1
57
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Vocabulary 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


This One Is Dull
176
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
57
Learn Vocabulary 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

6:59 93.0 KB/S 52

And This is an Assortment of Apples



176

1

57

Send gift

learn_english_with_... Follow

Learn Vocabulary 💯✅ ...

learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

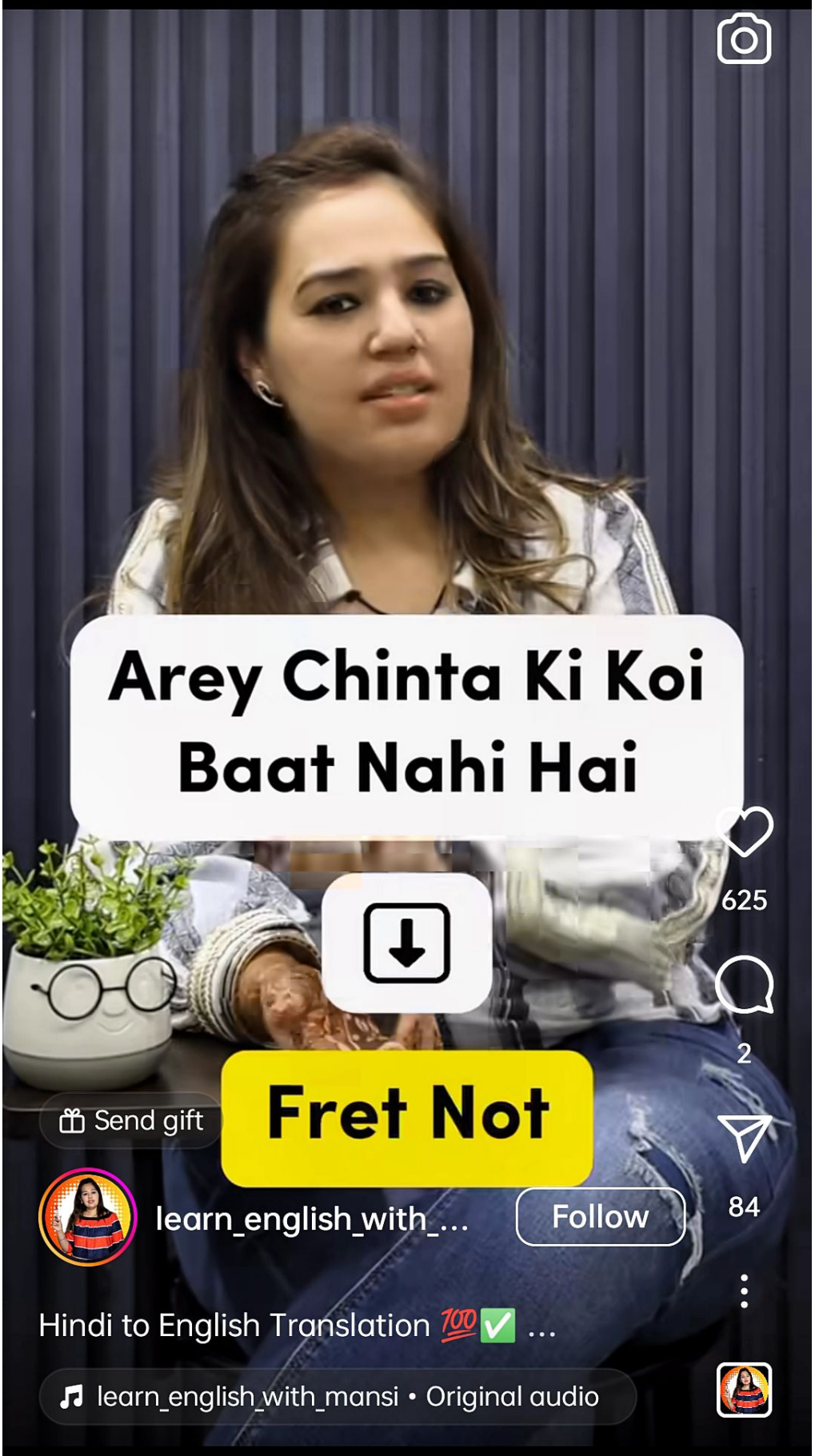

मेरी चीज़ों से दूर रहो
Keep Clear of My Things
1,082
1
344
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi To English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

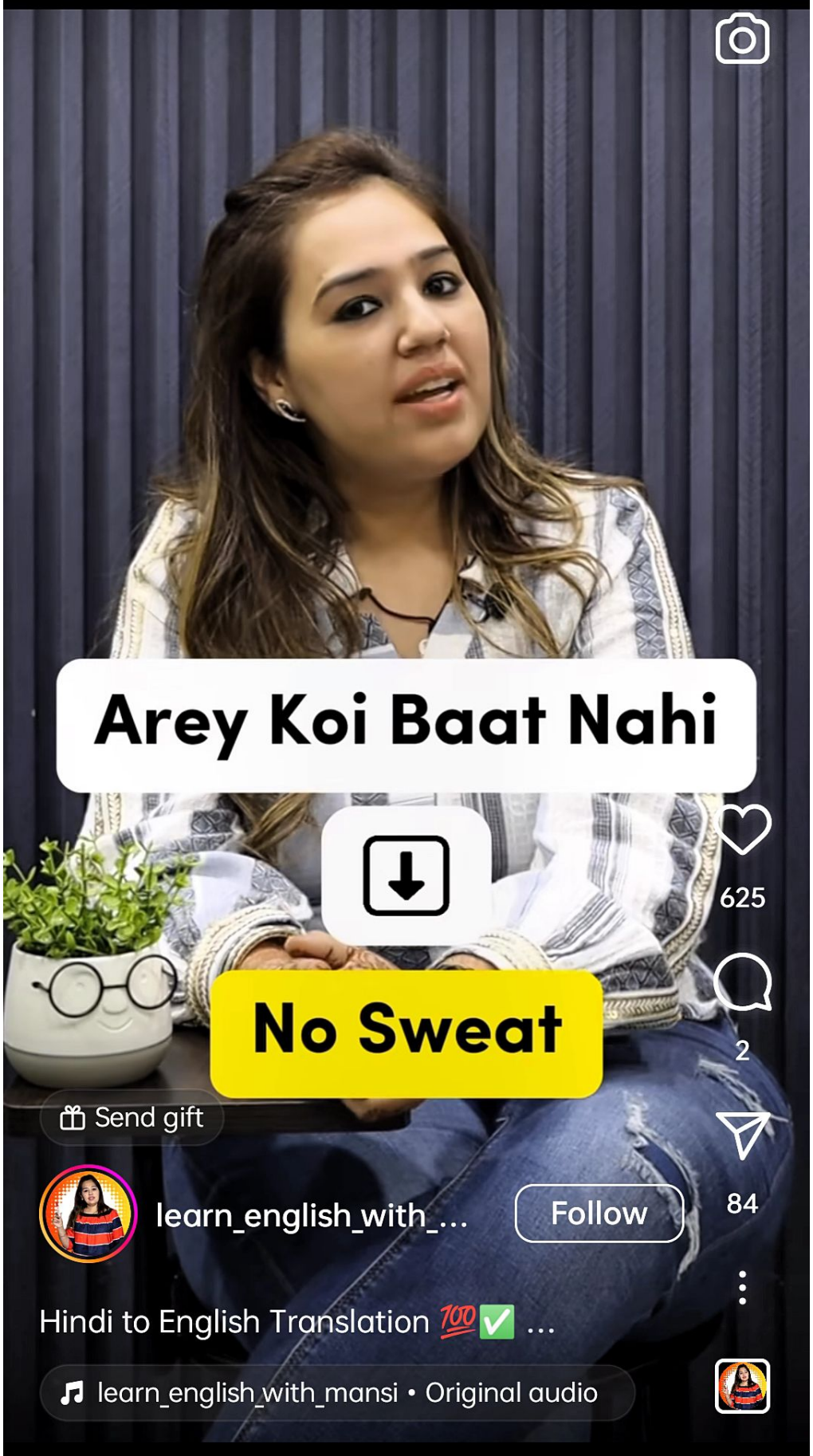

तुम्हारी आवाज़ कट कट कर आ रही है
1,082
Your Voice Is Coming In & Out
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
344
Hindi To English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


मैं बहुत ध्यान से चल रही थी
I Was Walking Gingerly
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi To English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
1,082
1
344


मुझे बहुत चिंता हो रही थी
I Got Panic Stricken
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi To English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
1,082
1
344


वो बहुत ही स्टुपिड है
He Is A Dipstick
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi To English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
1,082
1
344


Arey Chinta Ki Koi Baat Nahi Hai
Fret Not
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
625
2
84

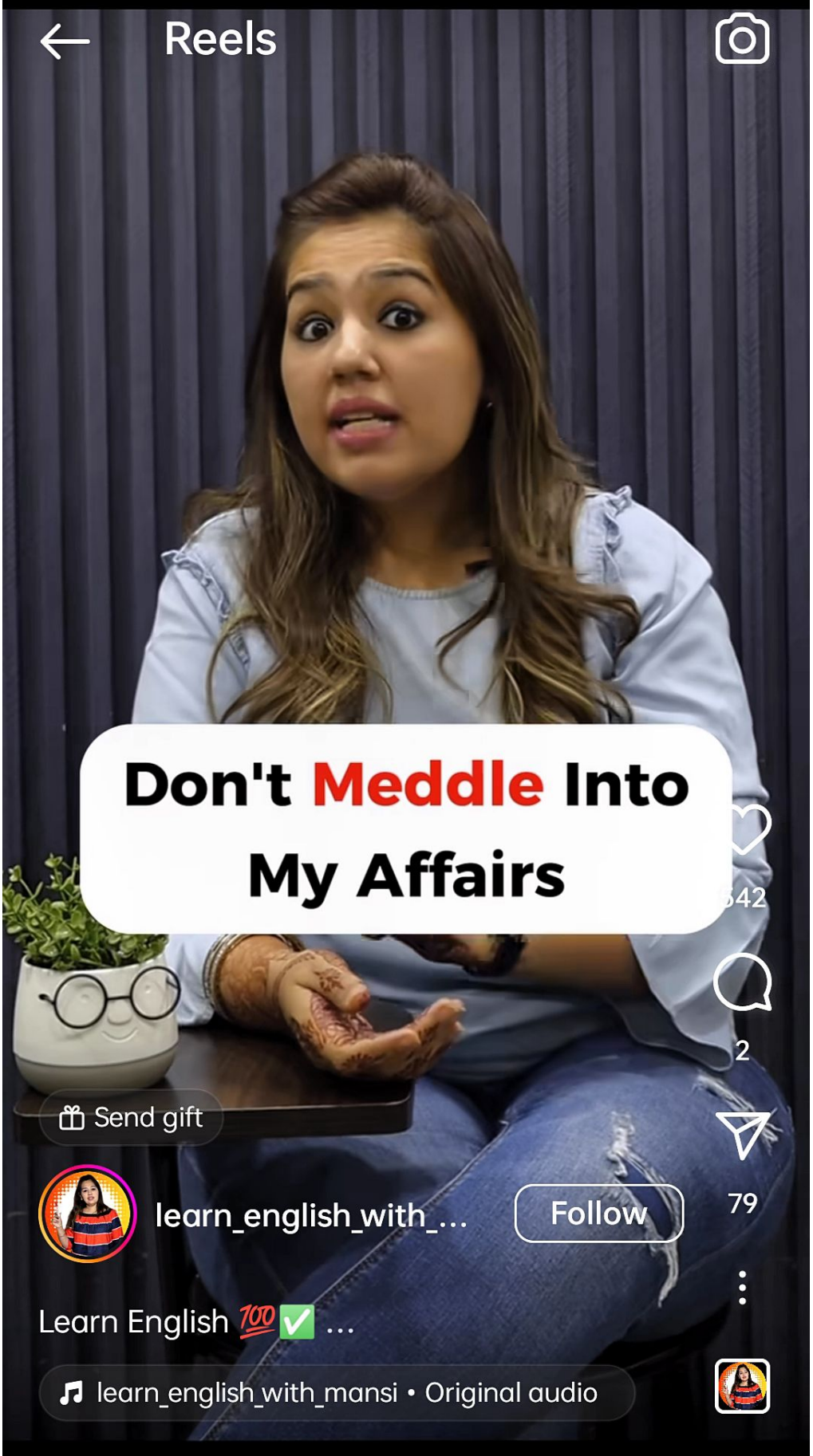

Arey Koi Baat Nahi
No Sweat
625
2
84
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Tumhari Chappal Ulti Padi Hui Hai
Your Slipper Is Upside Down
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
625
2
84
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Tum Mujhe Rasta Dikhao
625
You Lead The Way
2
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
84
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Arey Ab Mujhe Phone Rakhna Padega
I Need To Get Off The Phone
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
625
2
84
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Reels
Mere Kaam Mein
Taang Mat Adao
542
2
Send gift
79
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn English 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


7:00
Reels
Don't Meddle Into My Affairs
342
2
Send gift
79
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn English 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Reels
Mai Kabhi Kabhar Padhti Hu
542
2
79
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn English 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


7:00
Reels
I Study At Times
542
2
79
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn English 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Reels
Ke Bahane Matlab
542
2
Send gift
79
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn English 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


7:00
Reels
On The Pretext
Of Study
542
2
79
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn English 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


मिली भगत
Collusion
3,967
7
3,422
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


गला घोटना
Throttle
3,967
7
3,422
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


सूंघना
Sniff
3,967
7
3,422
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


छुपाना
Conceal
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
3,967
7
3,422

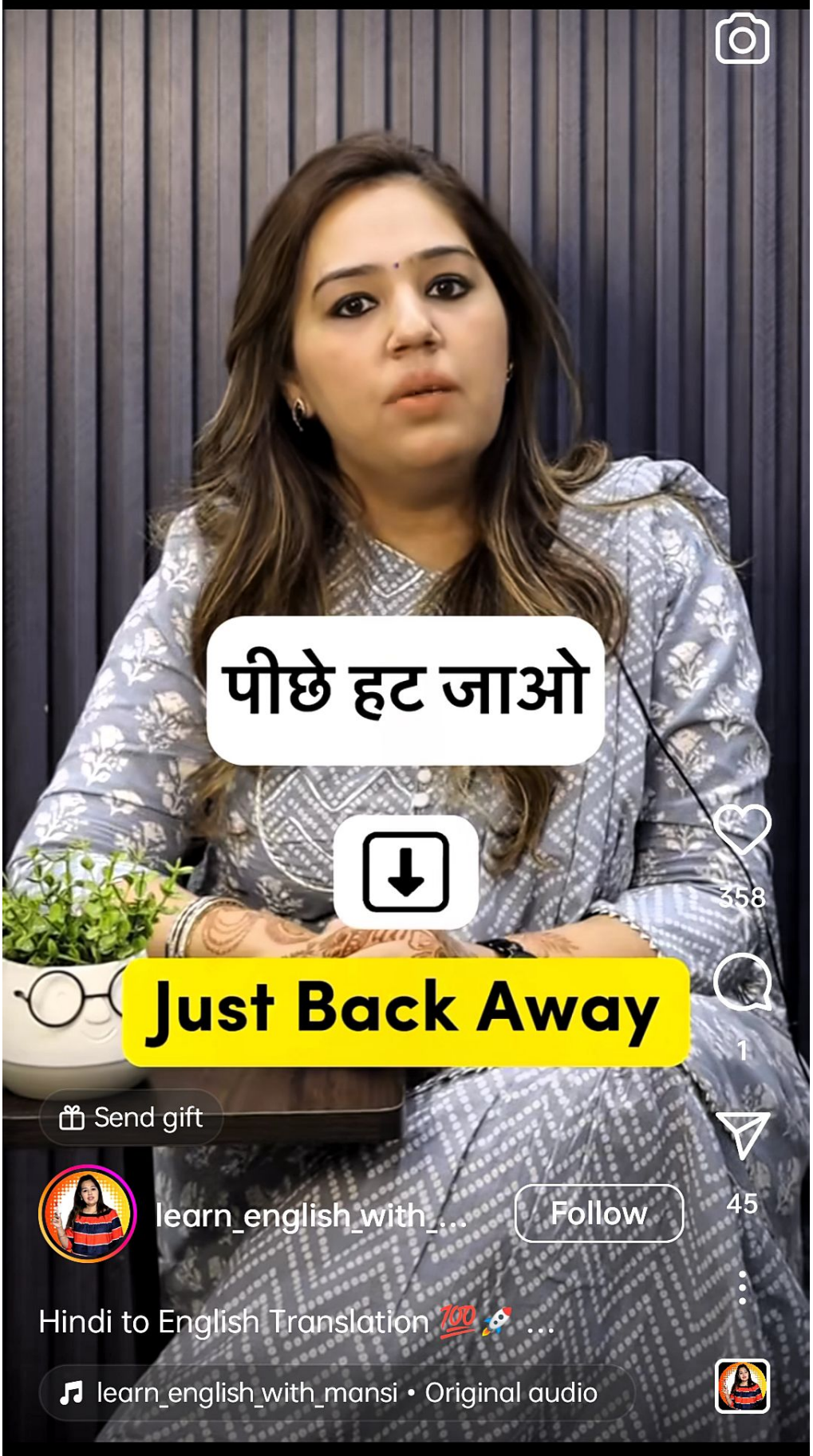

7:00
6.00 KB/S
51
जुगाड़ू
Makeshift
3,967
7
3,422
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


7:01
कुछ भी रातों रात नहीं होता
Nothing Happens Overnight
Send gift
358
1
45
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🚀 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


ये जल्दी में लिया हुआ फ़ैसला था
It Was A Hasty Decision
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🚀 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
358
1
45


7:01
यार जल्दी मत करो
Don't Be Hast
358
1
45
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🚀 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


अपने आप को सम्भालो
Pull Yourself Together
Send gift
358
1
45
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🚀 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


पीछे हट जाओ
Just Back Away
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🚀 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
358
1
45


समय हर घाव भर देता है
Time Heals Everything
358
1
45
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯🚀 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


लड़कियों के झगड़े
Cat Fight
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation ✅💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
2,420
6
1,920

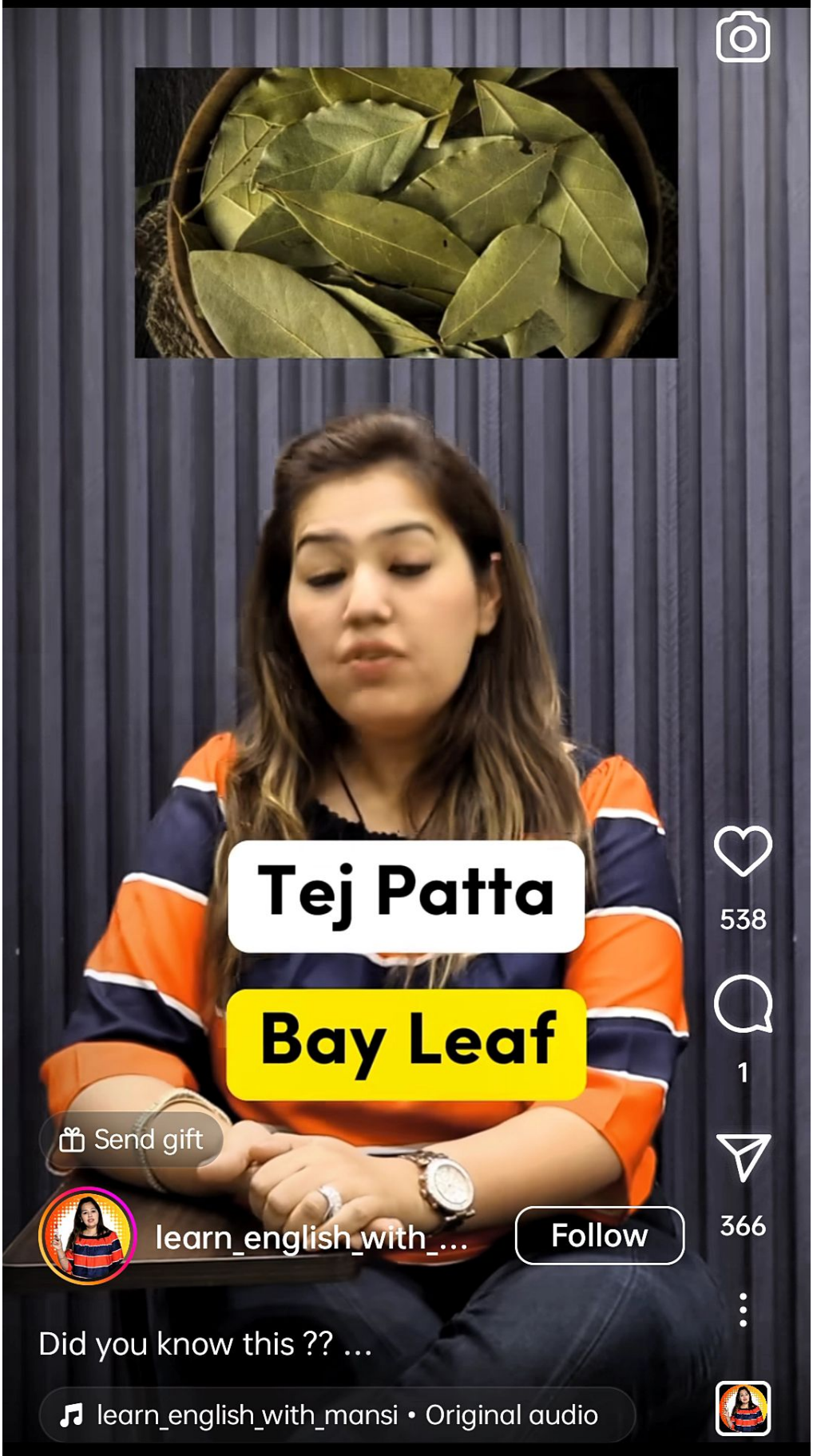

7:01
झगड़ालू औरत
Fishwife
2,420
6
1,920
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation ✅💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


7:01
बूढ़े आशिक़
Sugar Daddy
2,420
6
1,920
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation ✅💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


7:01
नालायक
Unworthy
2,420
6
1,920
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation ✅💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


नासमझ
Goofy
2,420
6
1,920
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation ✅💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


7:01
पढ़ाकू
Study Animal
2,420
6
1,920
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation ✅💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Tej Patta
Bay Leaf
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
538
1
366
Did you know this ?? ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Tej Patta
Malabar Leaf
538
1
366
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Did you know this ?? ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Tulsi
Basil
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
538
1
366
Did you know this ?? ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Pudina
Mint
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
538
1
366
Did you know this ?? ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


PharmEasy
Kadi Patta
Curry Leaves
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
538
1
366
Did you know this ?? ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio



Paan Ka Patta

Betel Leaf

538

1

366

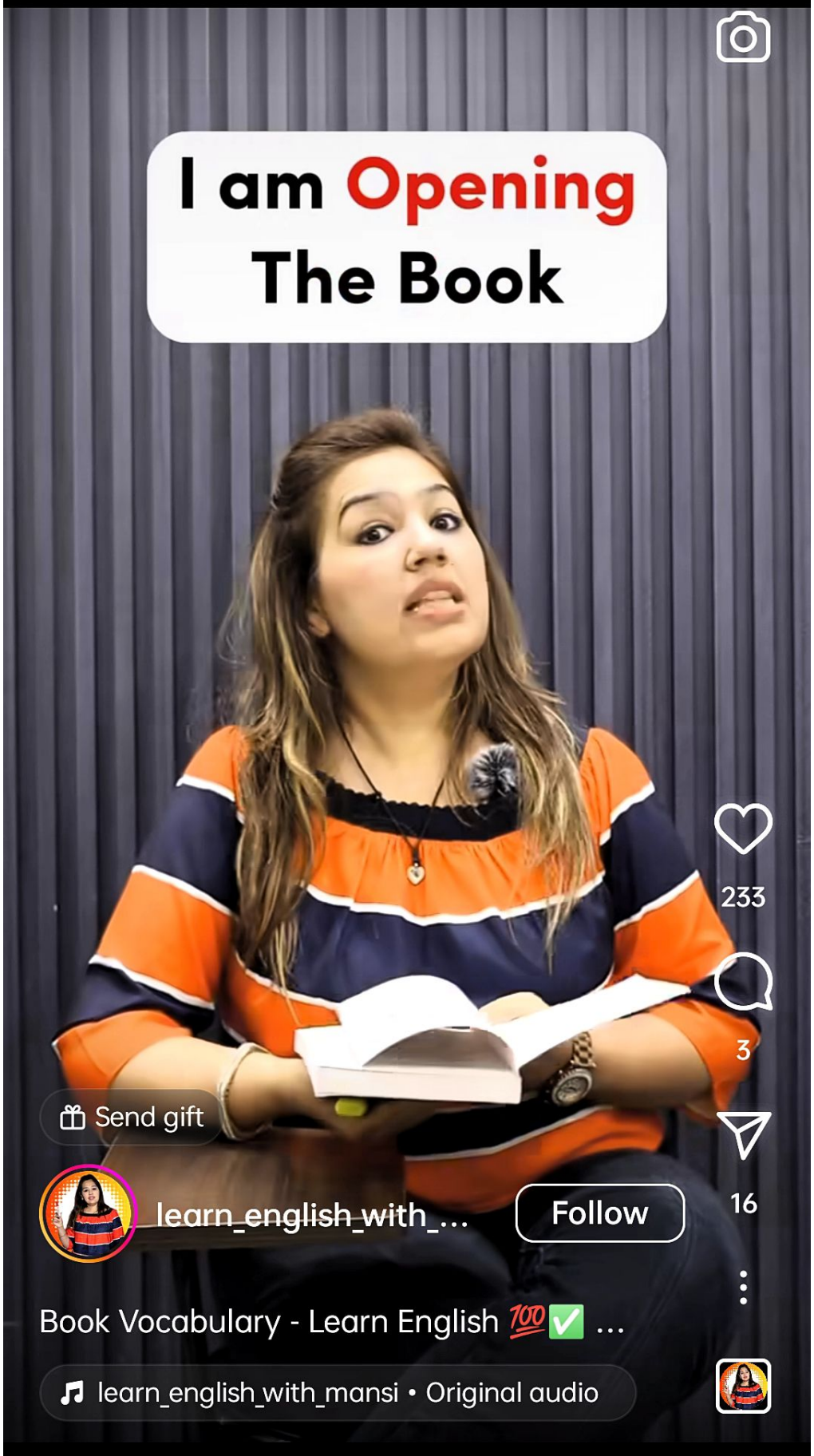
Send gift

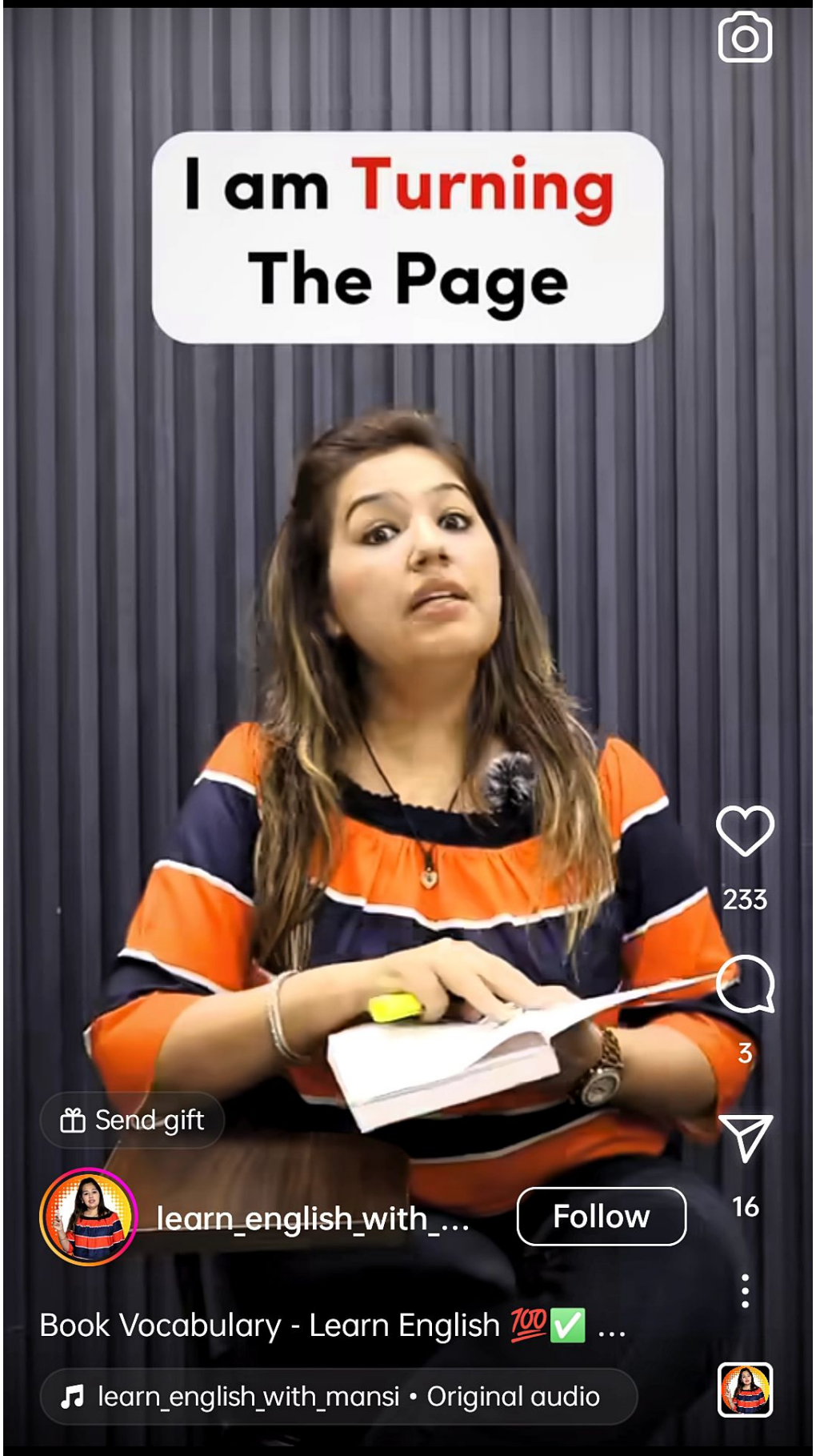
learn_english_with_...

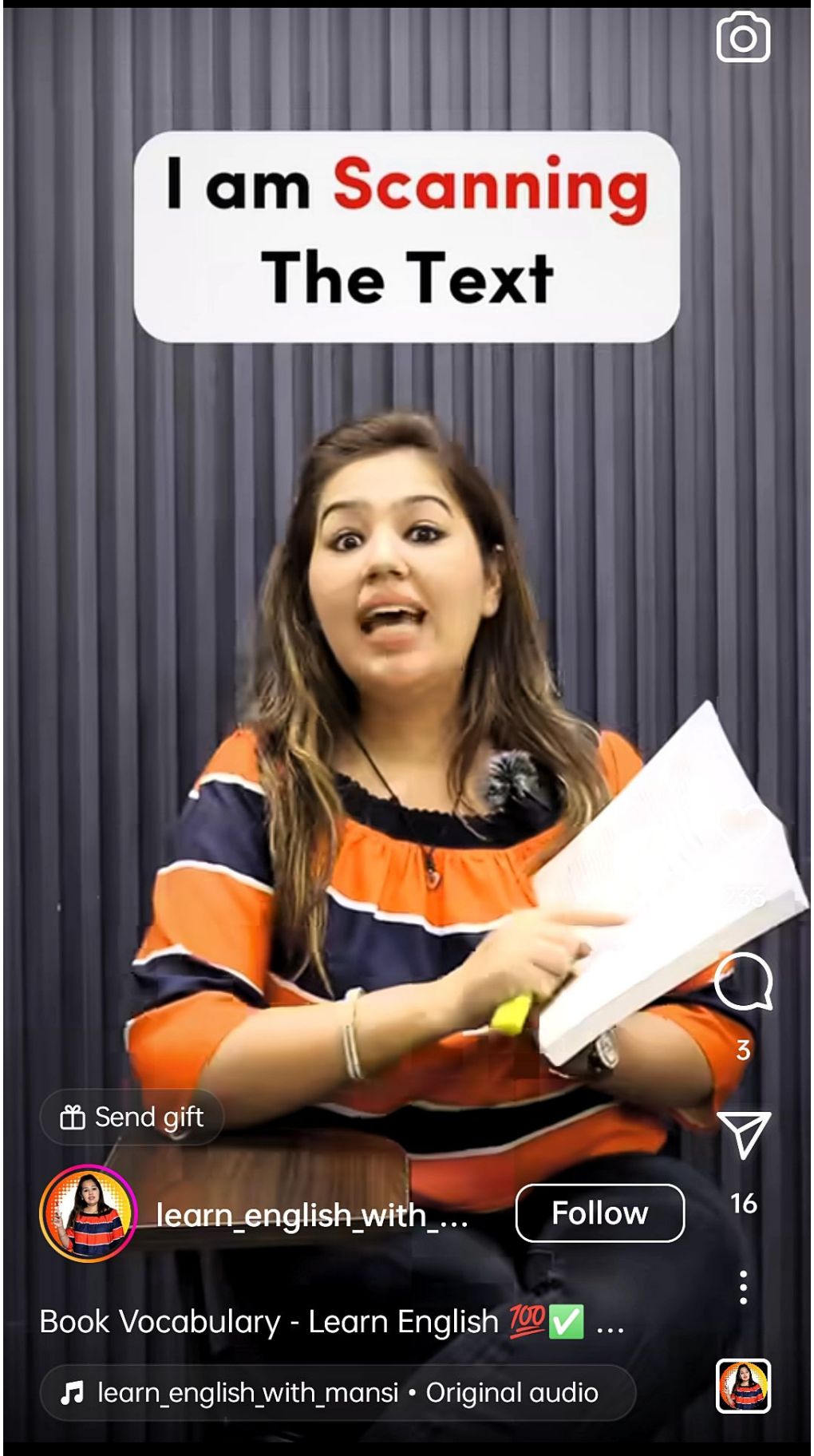
Follow

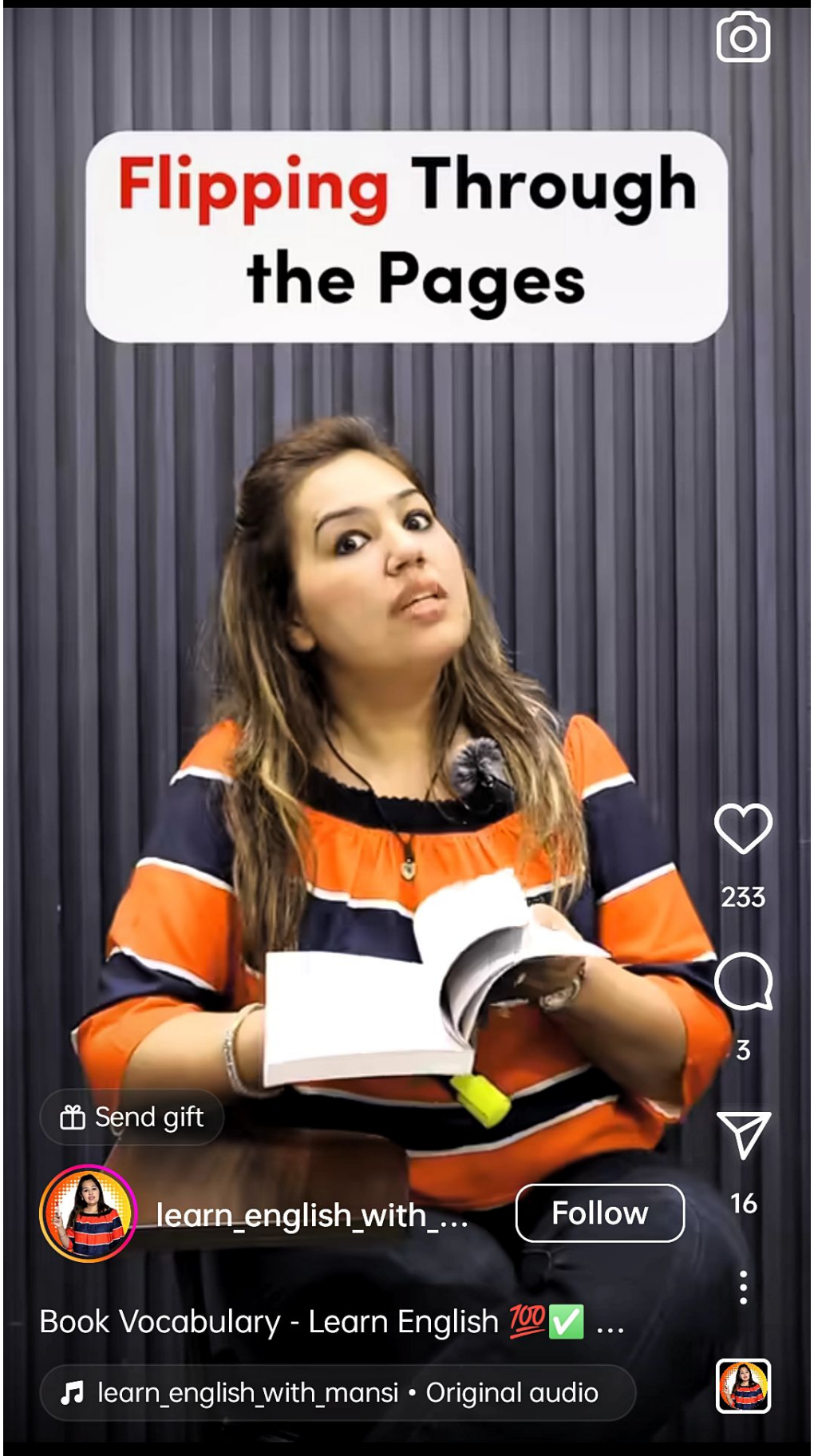
Did you know this ?? ...

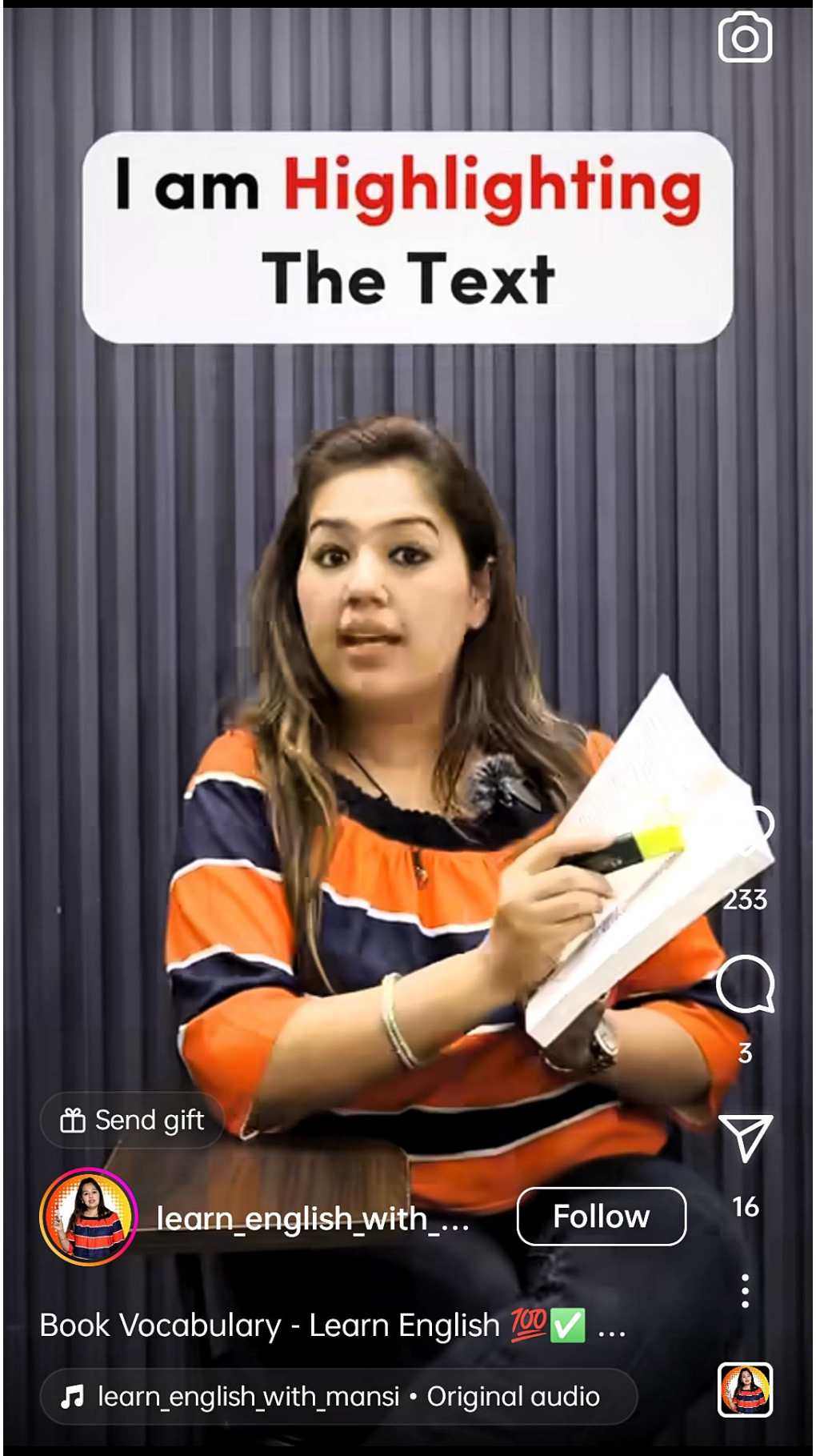
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

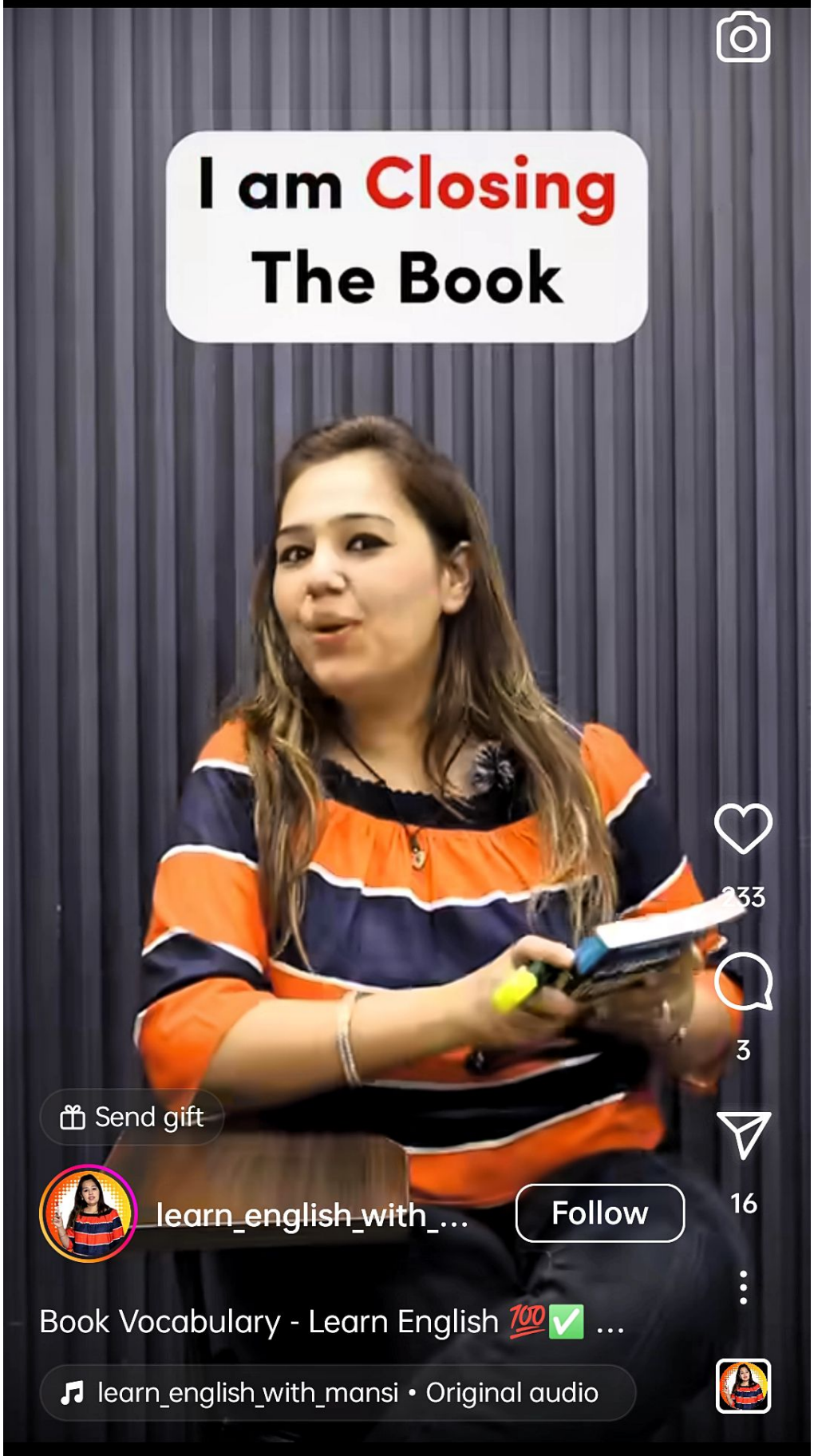

I am Opening
The Book
233
3
16
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Book Vocabulary - Learn English 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

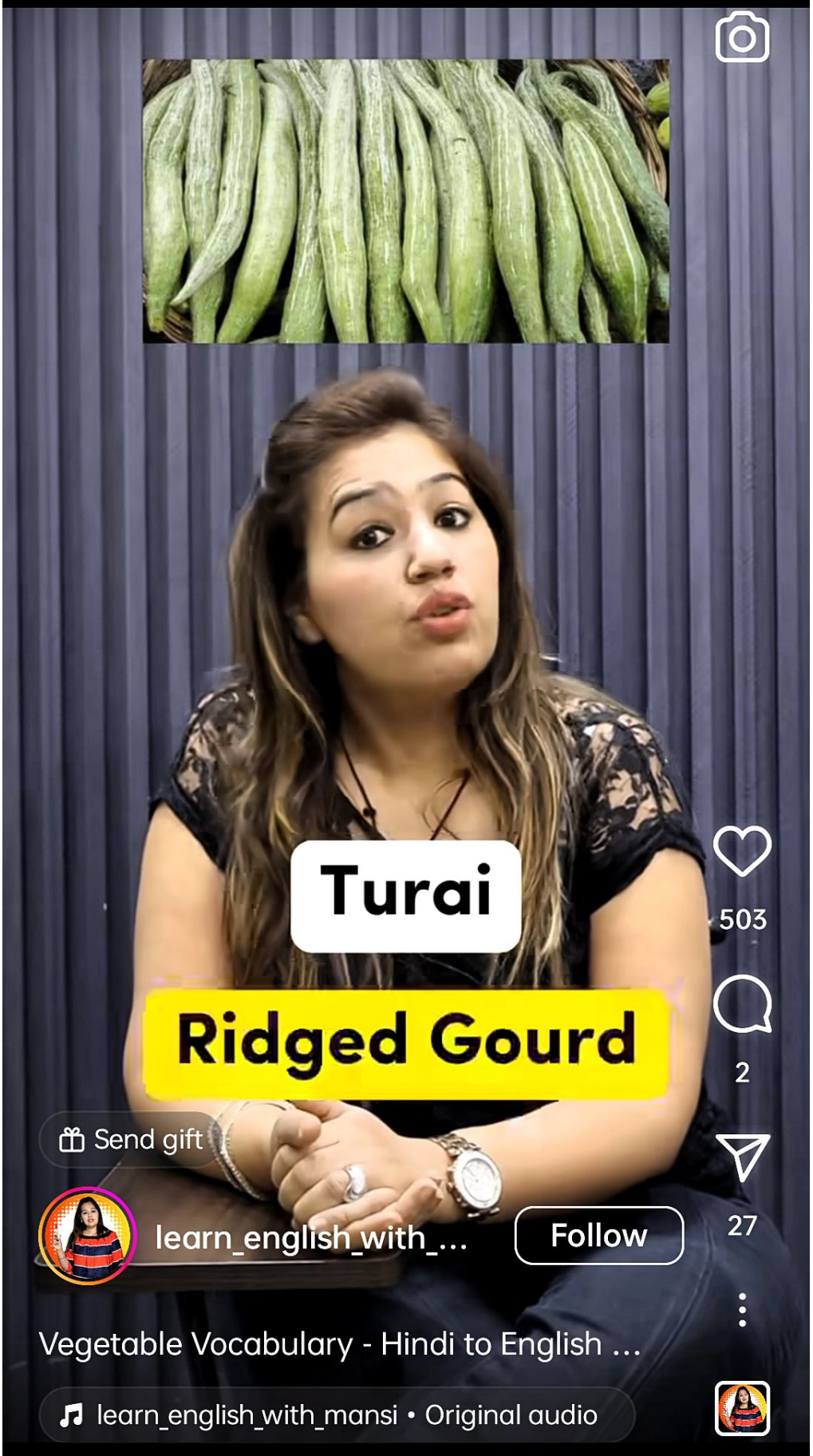

I am Turning
The Page
233
3
16
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Book Vocabulary - Learn English 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


I am Scanning
The Text
3
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
16
Book Vocabulary - Learn English 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Flipping Through the Pages
233
3
16
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Book Vocabulary - Learn English 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


I am Highlighting
The Text
233
3
16
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Book Vocabulary - Learn English 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


I am Closing
The Book
233
3
16
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Book Vocabulary - Learn English 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Turai
Ridged Gourd
503
2
27
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Vegetable Vocabulary - Hindi to English ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Katahal
Jackfruit
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
503
2
27
Vegetable Vocabulary - Hindi to English ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio



Kaddu

Pumpkin

503

2

27

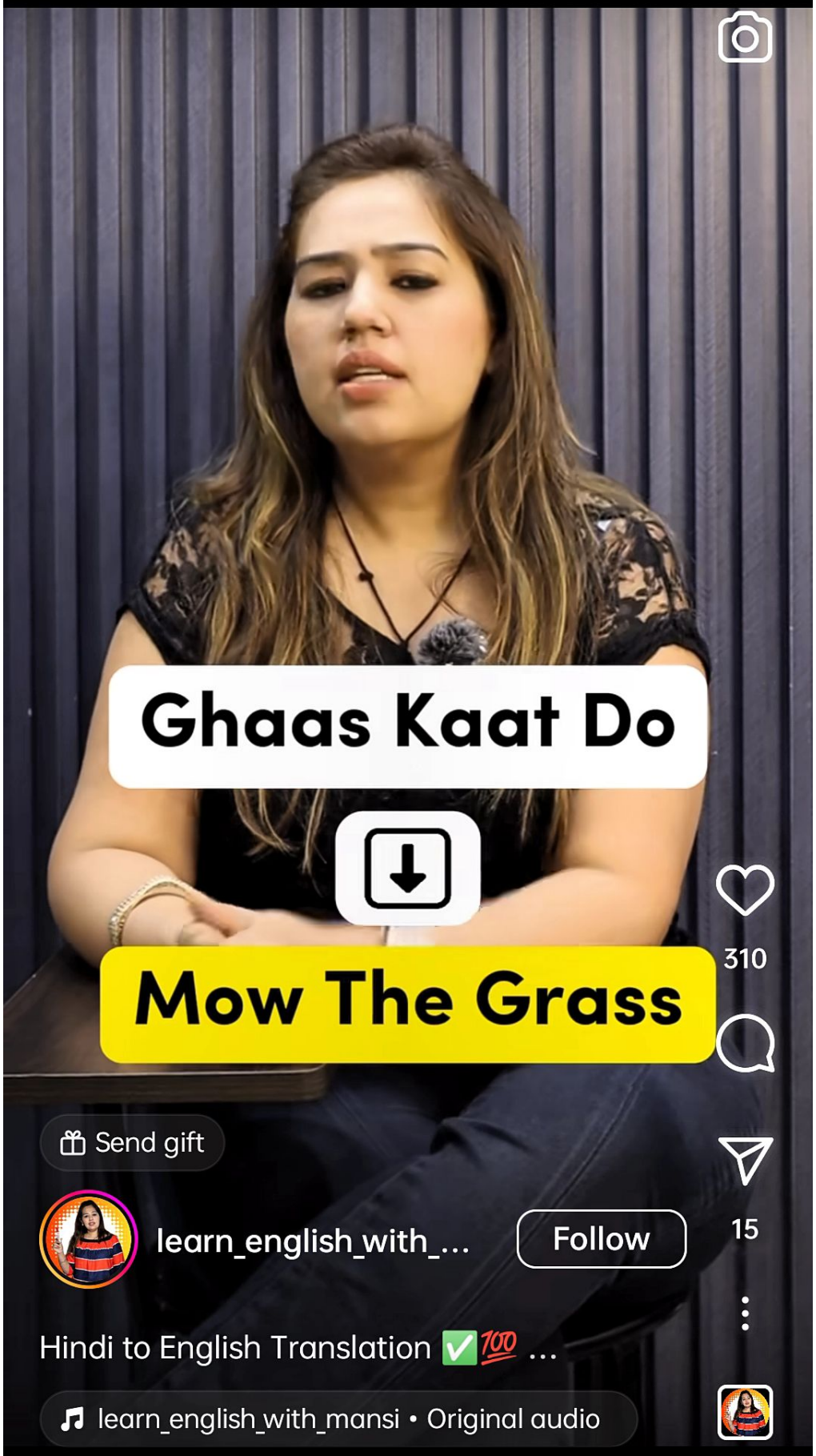
Send gift

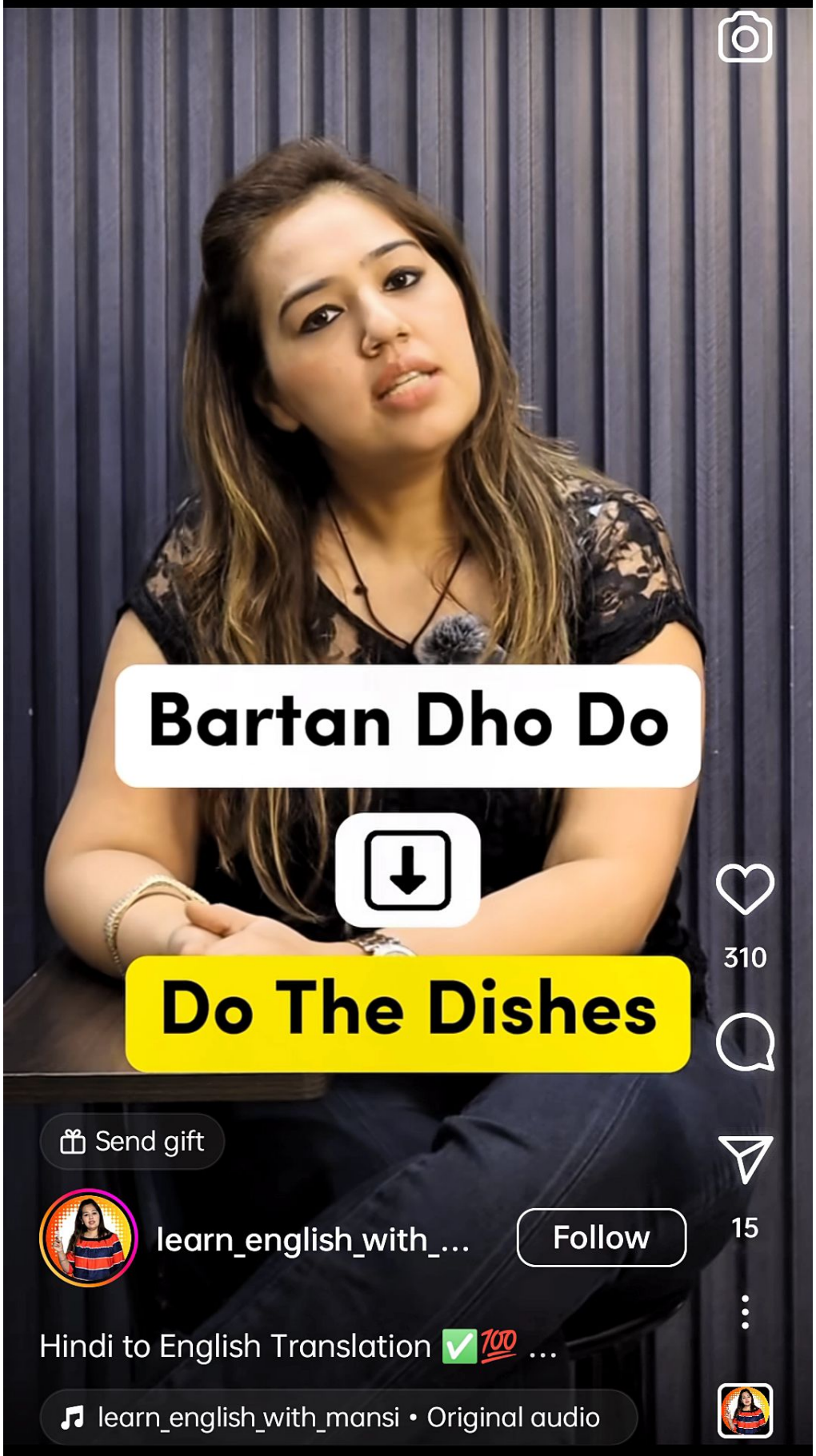
learn_english_with_...

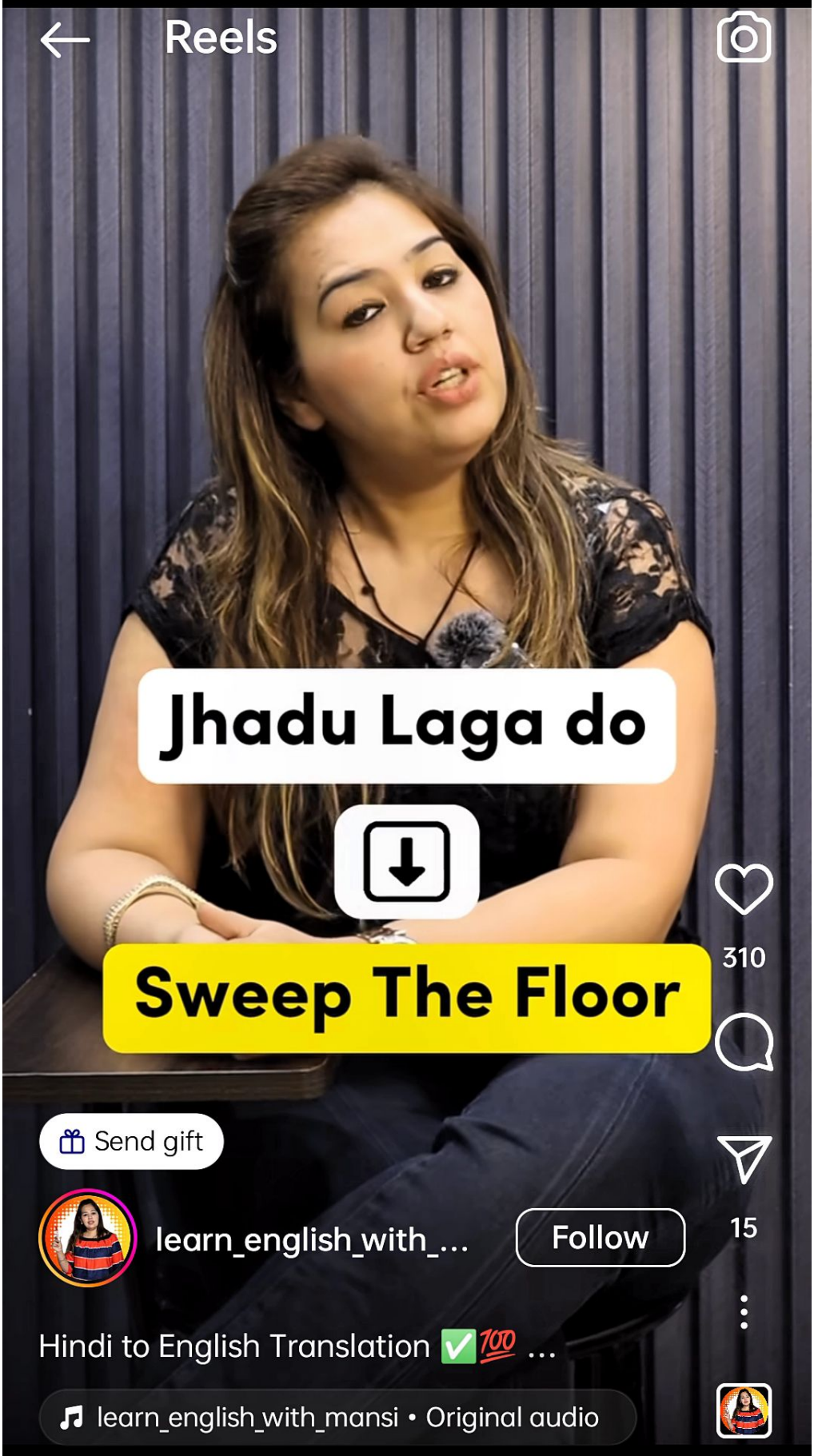
Follow

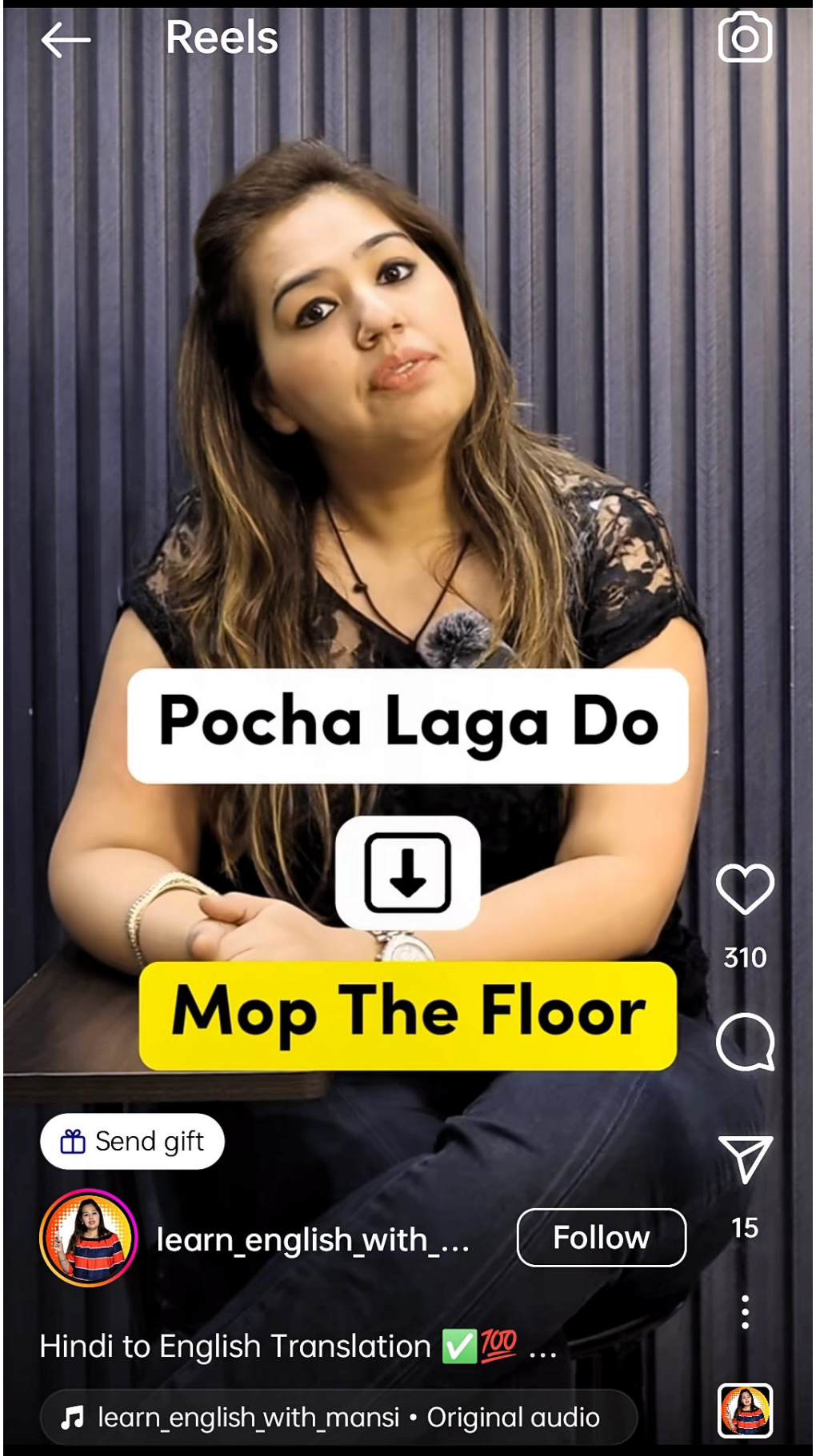
Vegetable Vocabulary - Hindi to English ...

learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Ghaas Kaat Do
Mow The Grass
310
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
15
Hindi to English Translation ✅💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Bartan Dho Do
Do The Dishes
310
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
15
Hindi to English Translation ✅💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

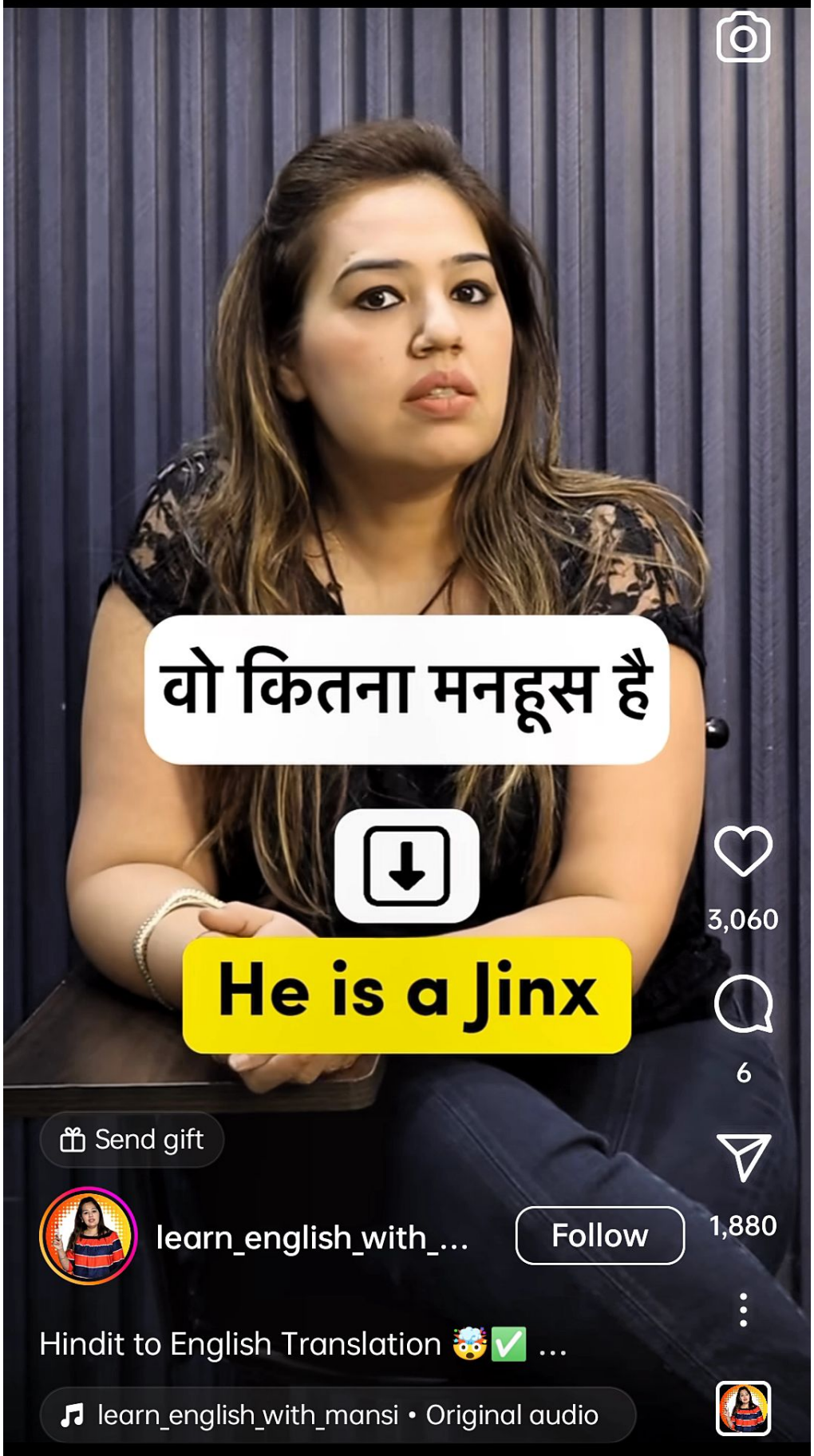

7:03
Reels
Jhadu Laga do
Sweep The Floor
310
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
15
Hindi to English Translation ✅💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

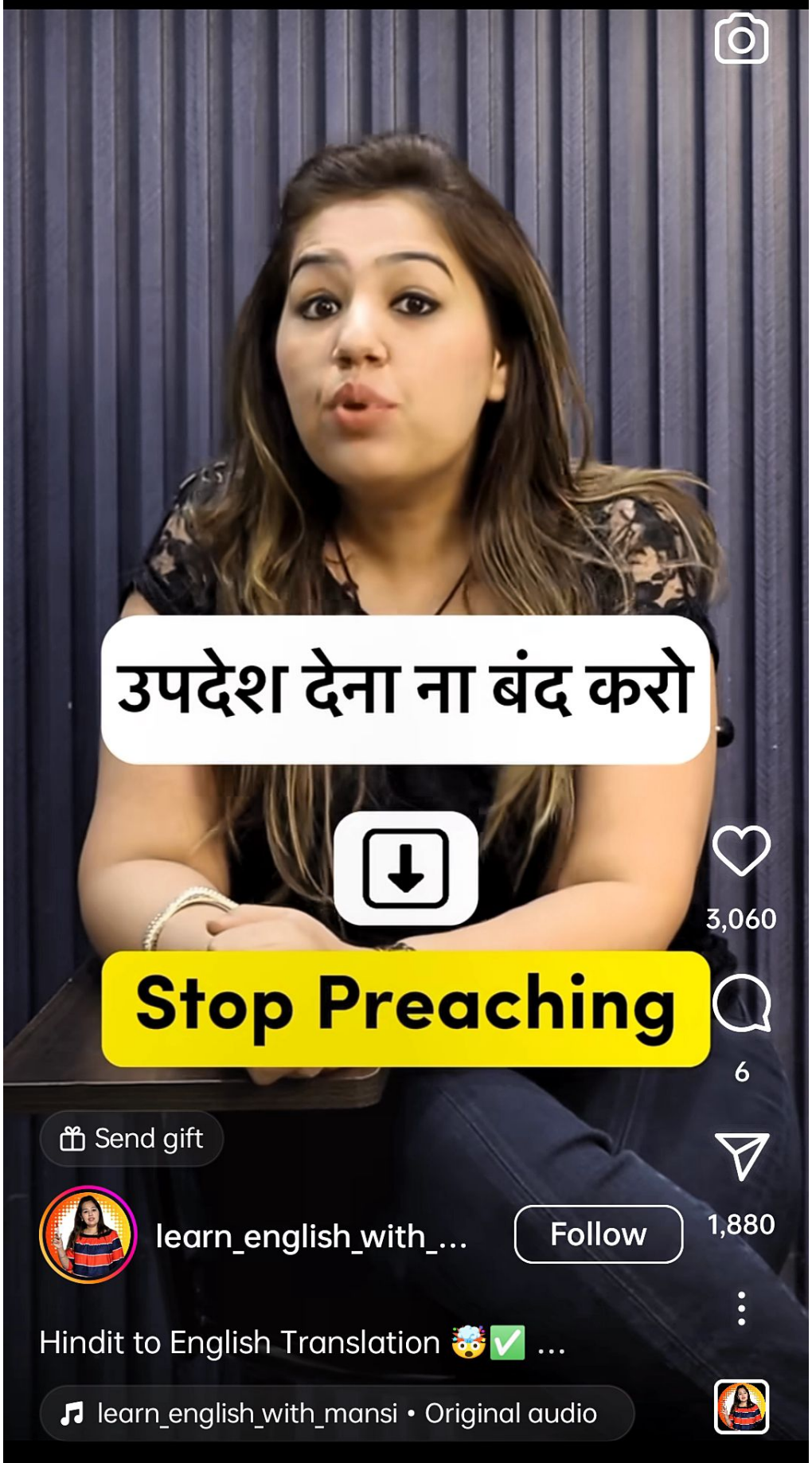

7:03
Reels
Pocha Laga Do
Mop The Floor
310
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
15
Hindi to English Translation ✅💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

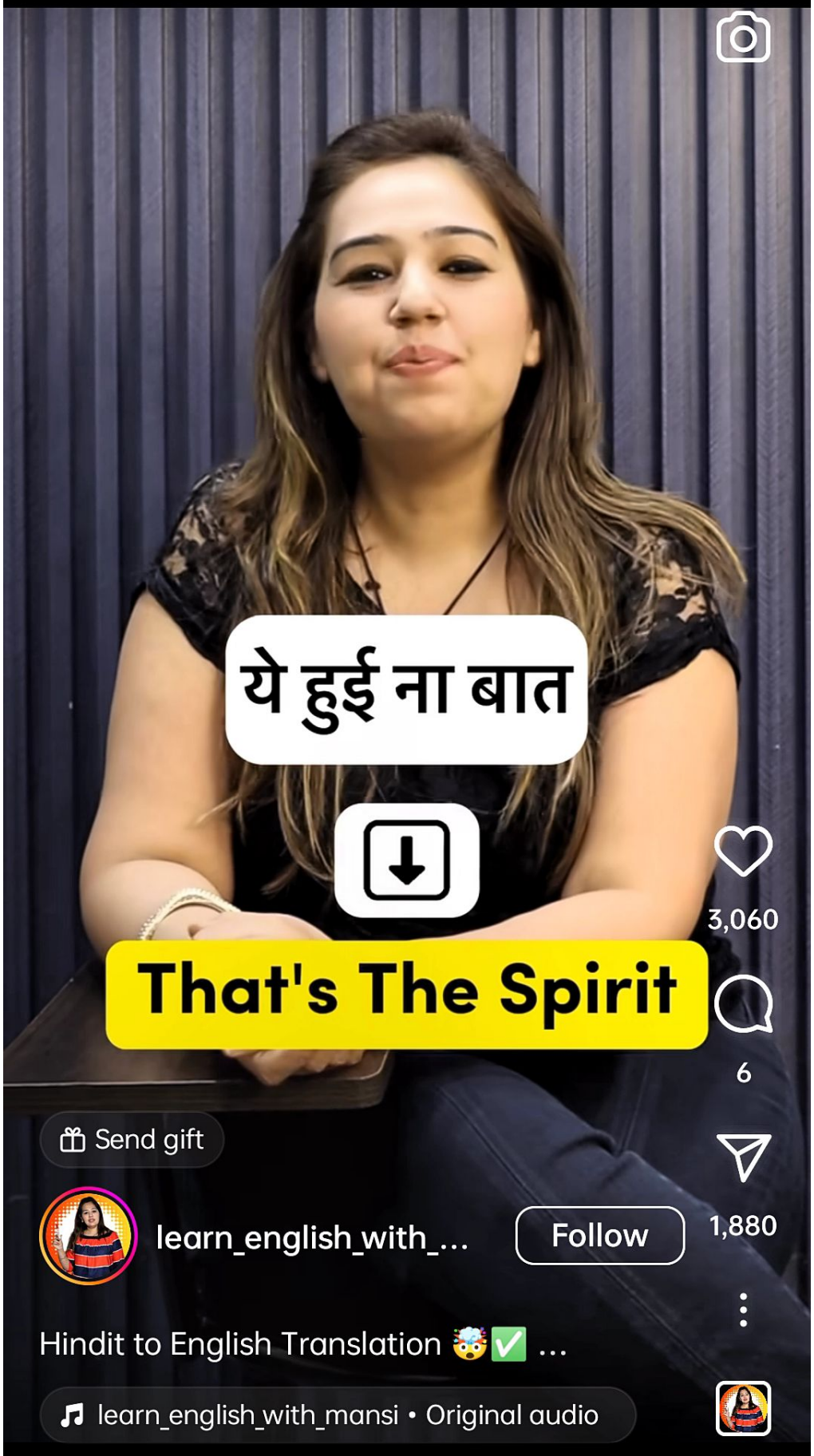

7:03
भड़ास निकालना
Pop Off
3,097
4
1,318
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

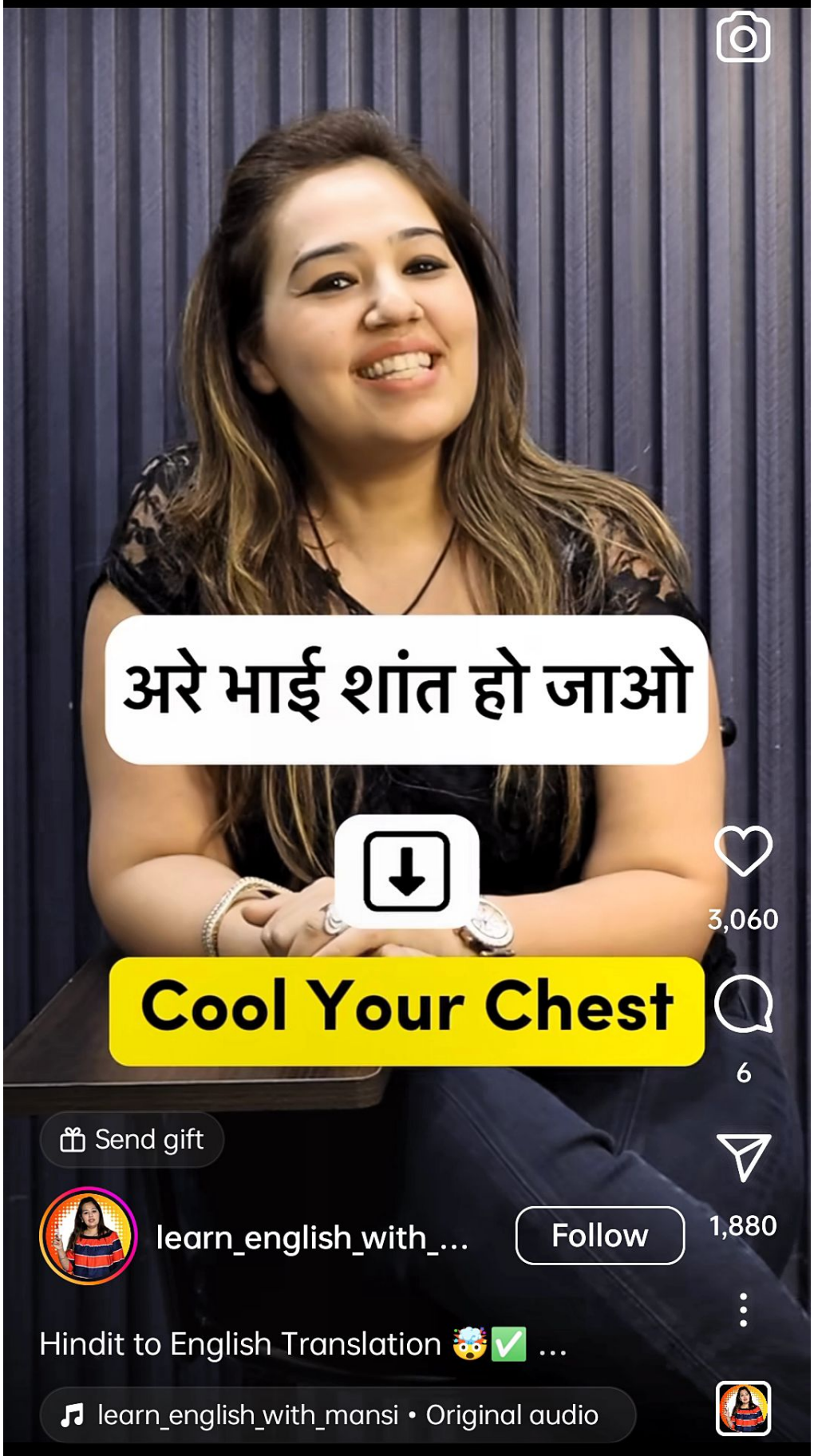

7:04
रिश्ते सुधारना
Patch Up
3,097
4
1,318
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

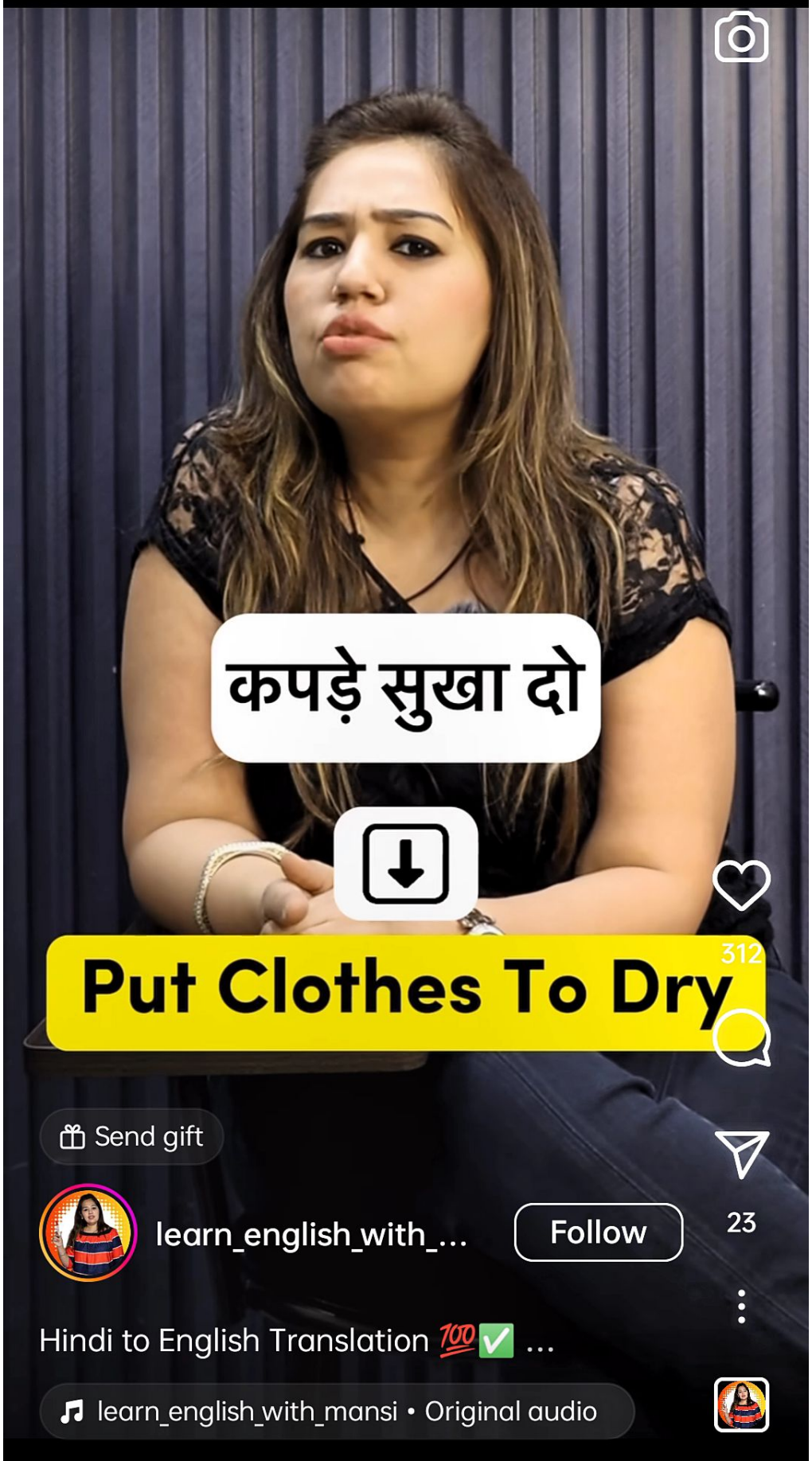

7:04
0.59 KB/S
50
किसी भी चीज़ को ढेर लगा देना
Pile Up
3,097
4
1,318
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


वो कितना मनहूस है
He is a Jinx
3,060
6
1,880
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindit to English Translation 🤯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

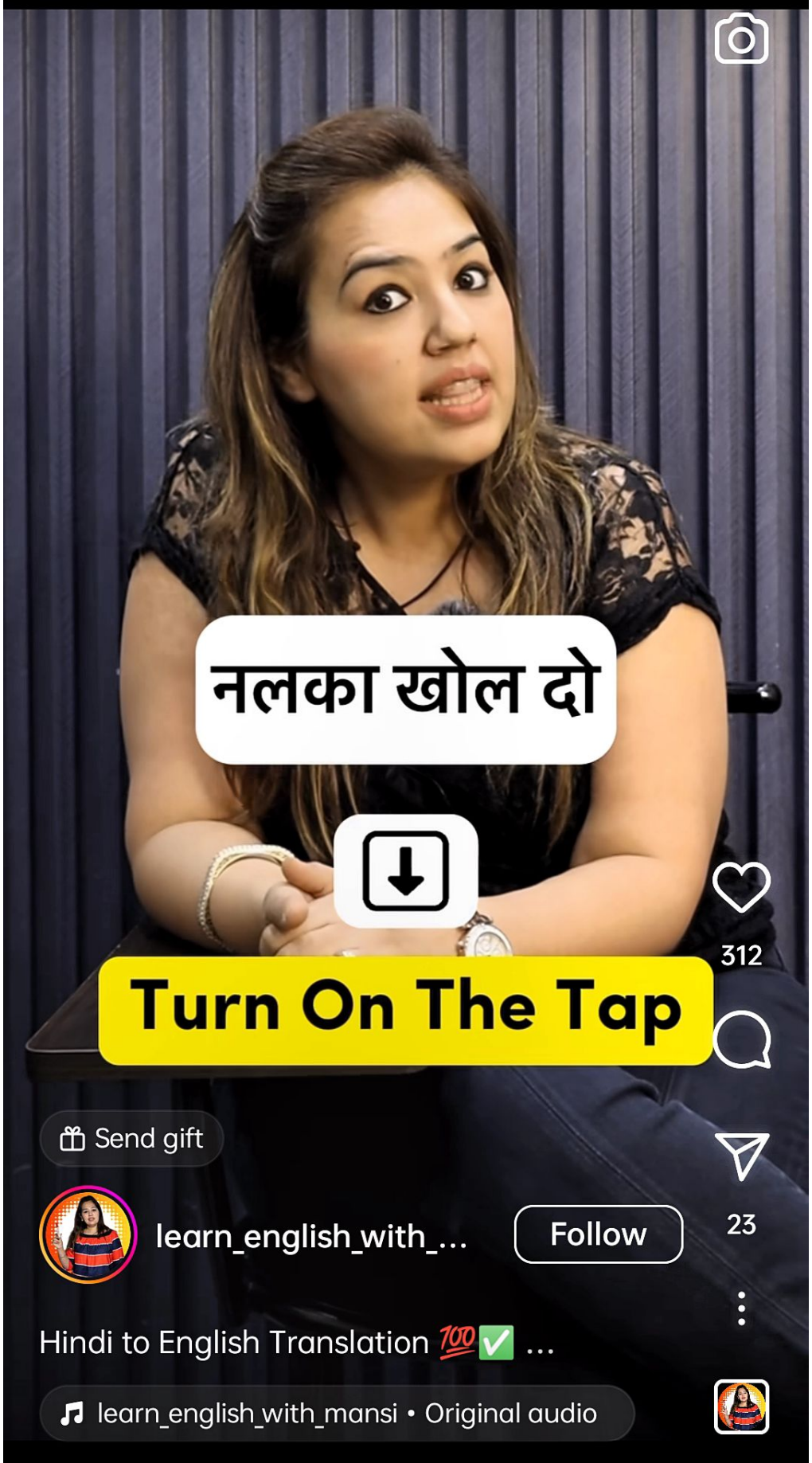

उपदेश देना ना बंद करो
Stop Preaching
3,060
6
1,880
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindit to English Translation 🤯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


ये हुई ना बात
That's The Spirit
3,060
6
1,880
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindit to English Translation 🤯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

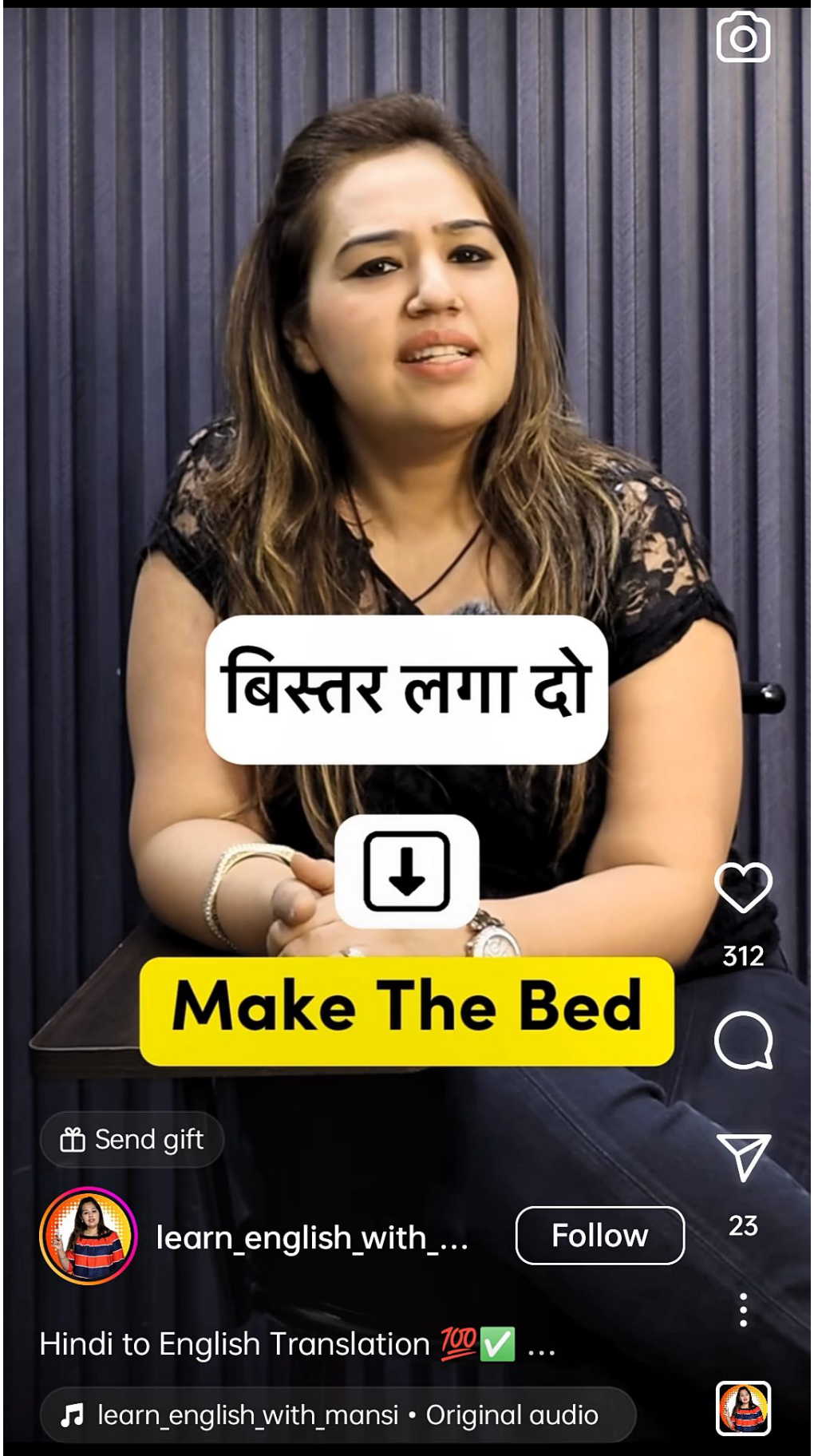

अरे भाई शांत हो जाओ
Cool Your Chest
3,060
6
1,880
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindit to English Translation 🤯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

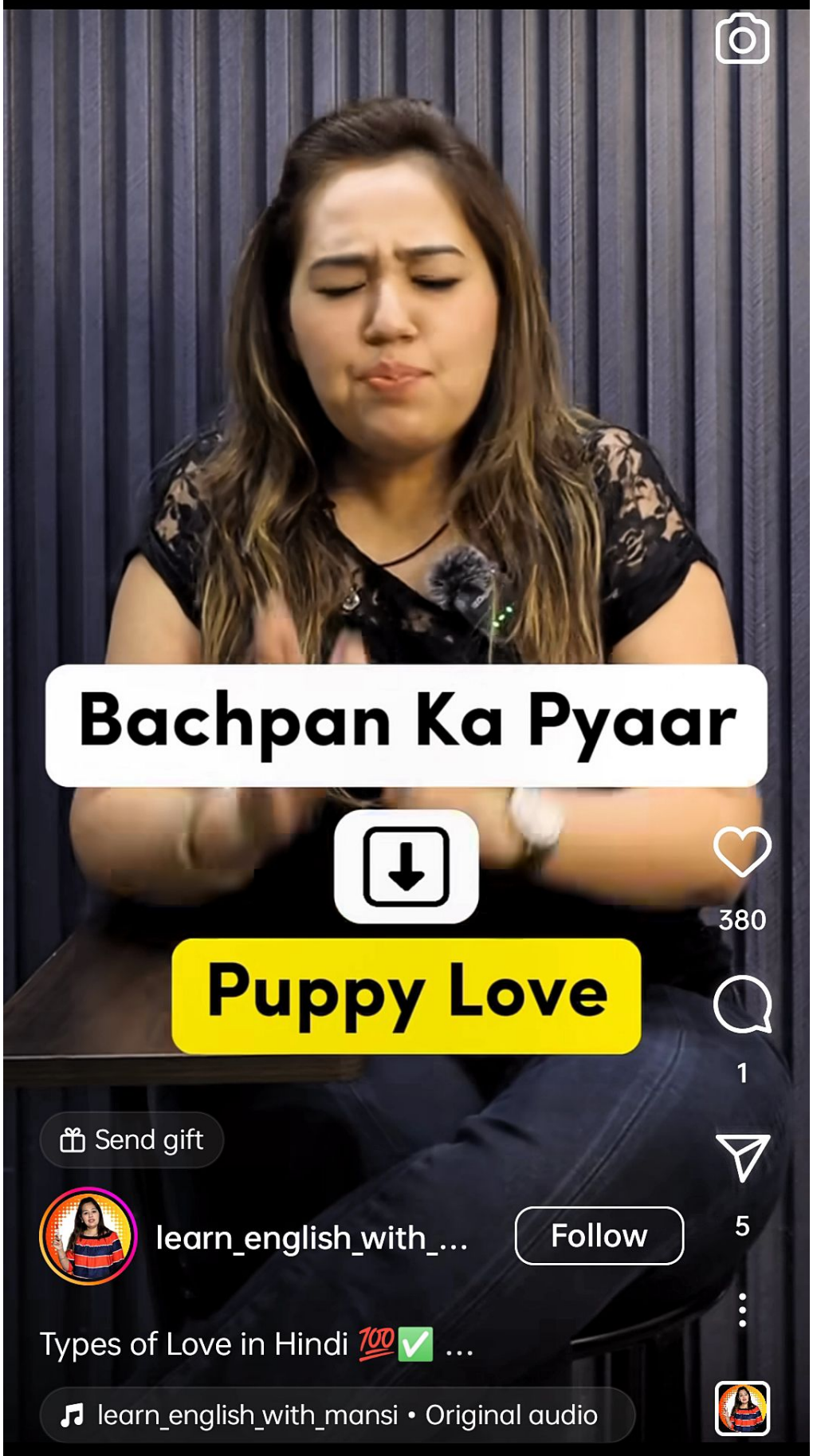

कपड़े सुखा दो
Put Clothes To Dry
312
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
23
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

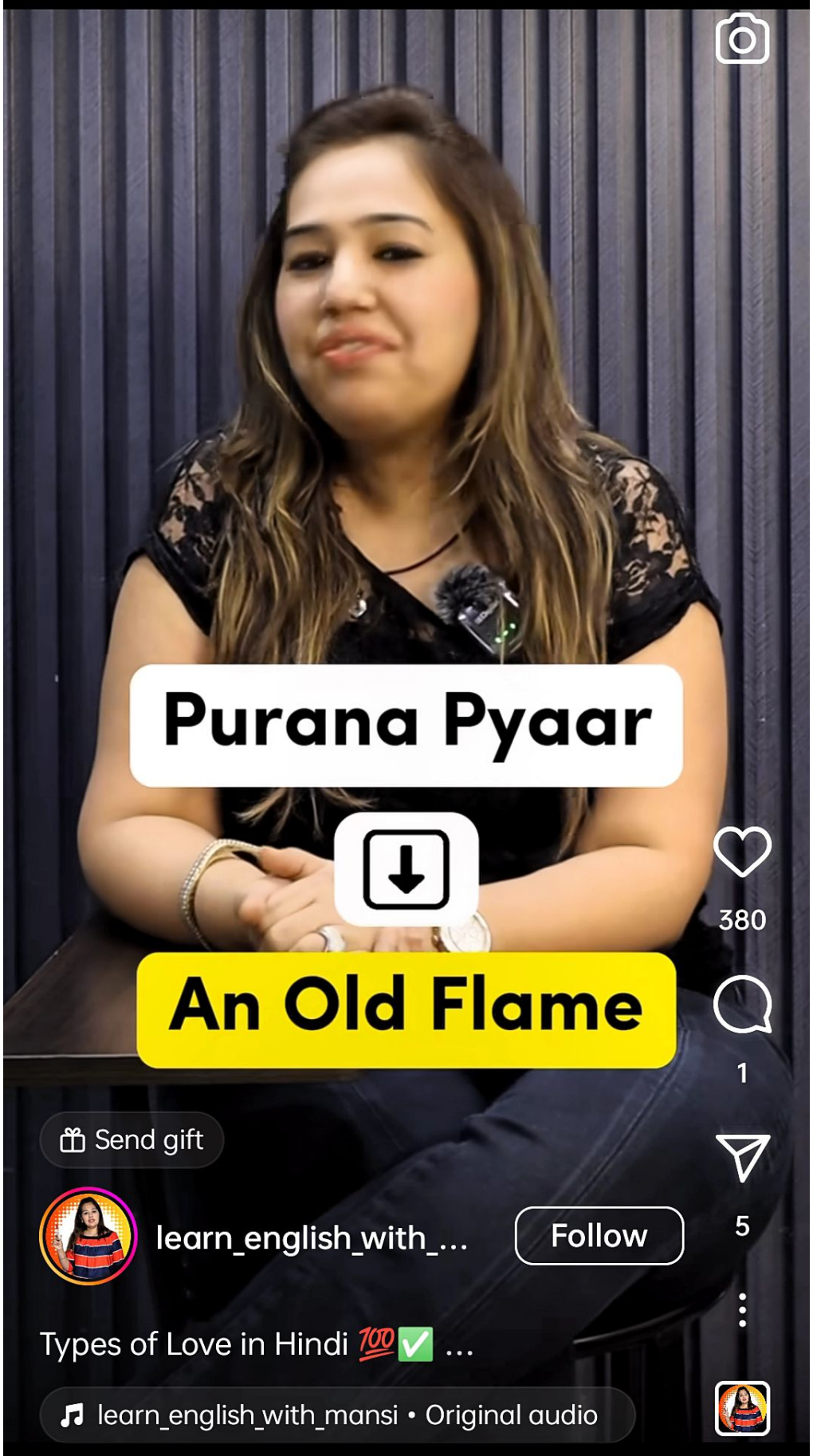

आलू छील दो
Peel The Potatoes
312
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
23
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

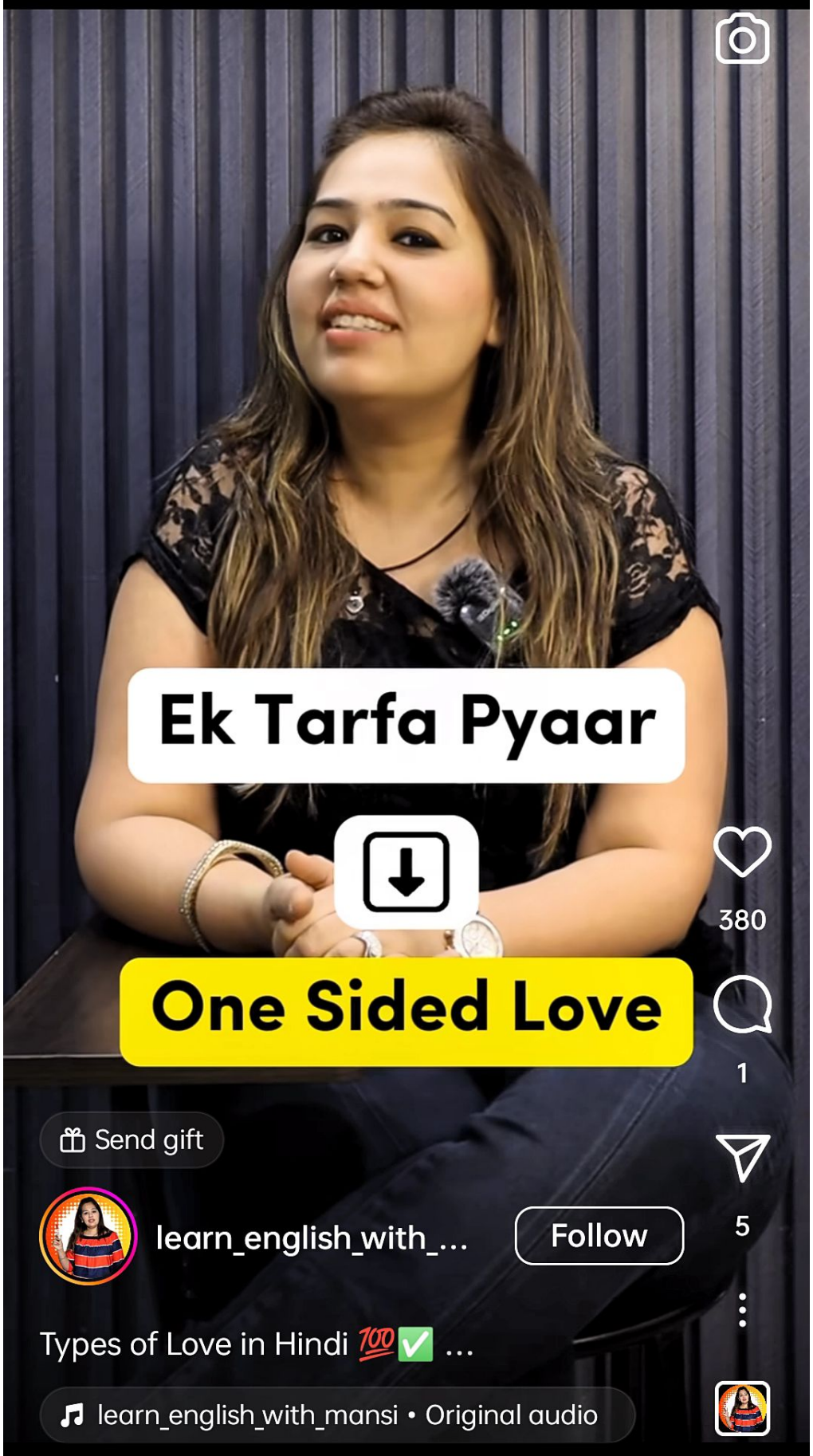

नलका खोल दो
Turn On The Tap
312
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
23
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

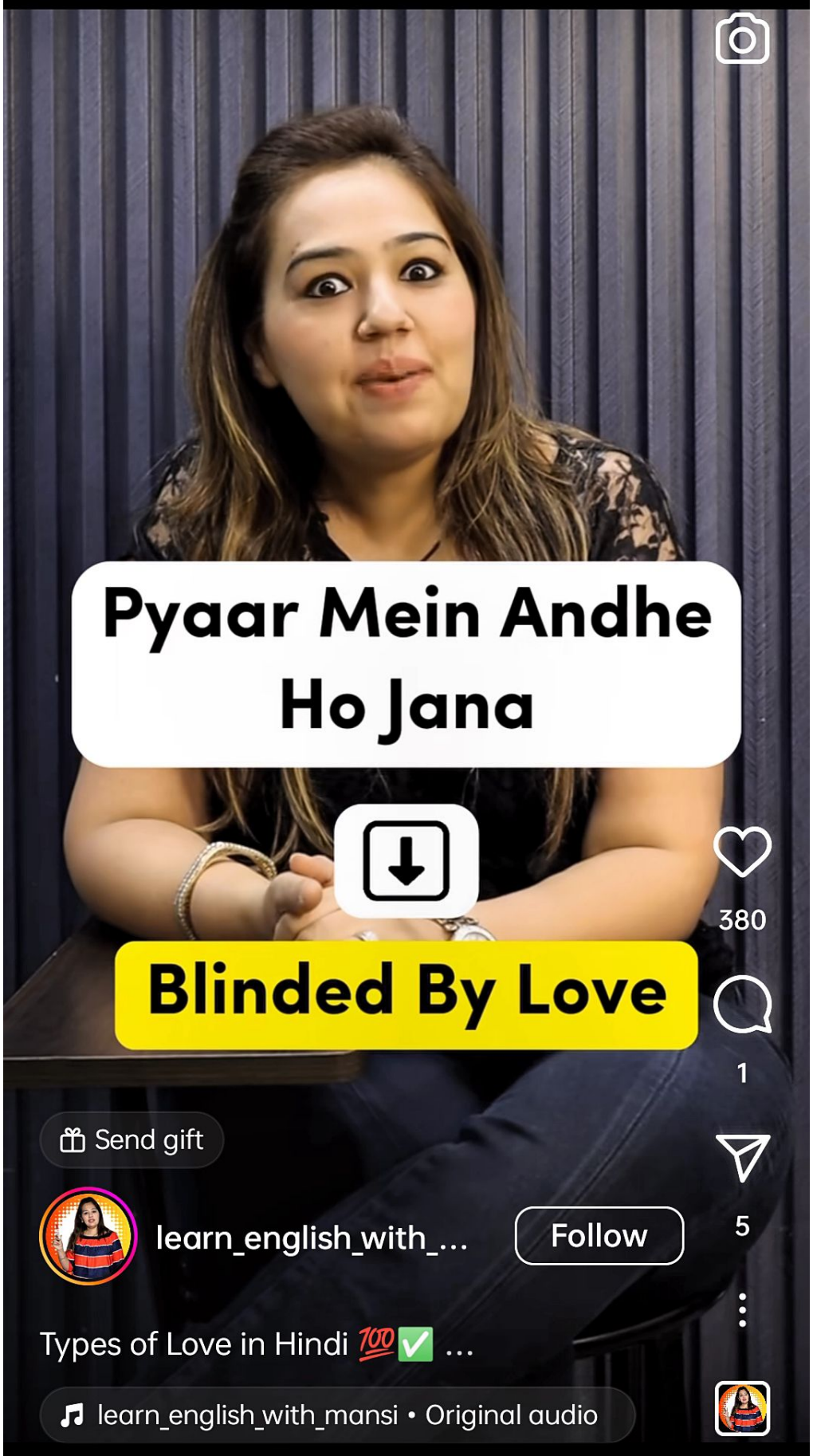

नलका बंद कर दो
Turn Off The Tap
312
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
23
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


बिस्तर लगा दो
Make The Bed
312
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
23
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Bachpan Ka Pyaar
Puppy Love
380
1
5
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Types of Love in Hindi 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Purana Pyaar
An Old Flame
380
1
5
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Types of Love in Hindi 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Ek Tarfa Pyaar
One Sided Love
380
1
5
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Types of Love in Hindi 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Pyaar Mein Andhe Ho Jana
Blinded By Love
380
1
5
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Types of Love in Hindi 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

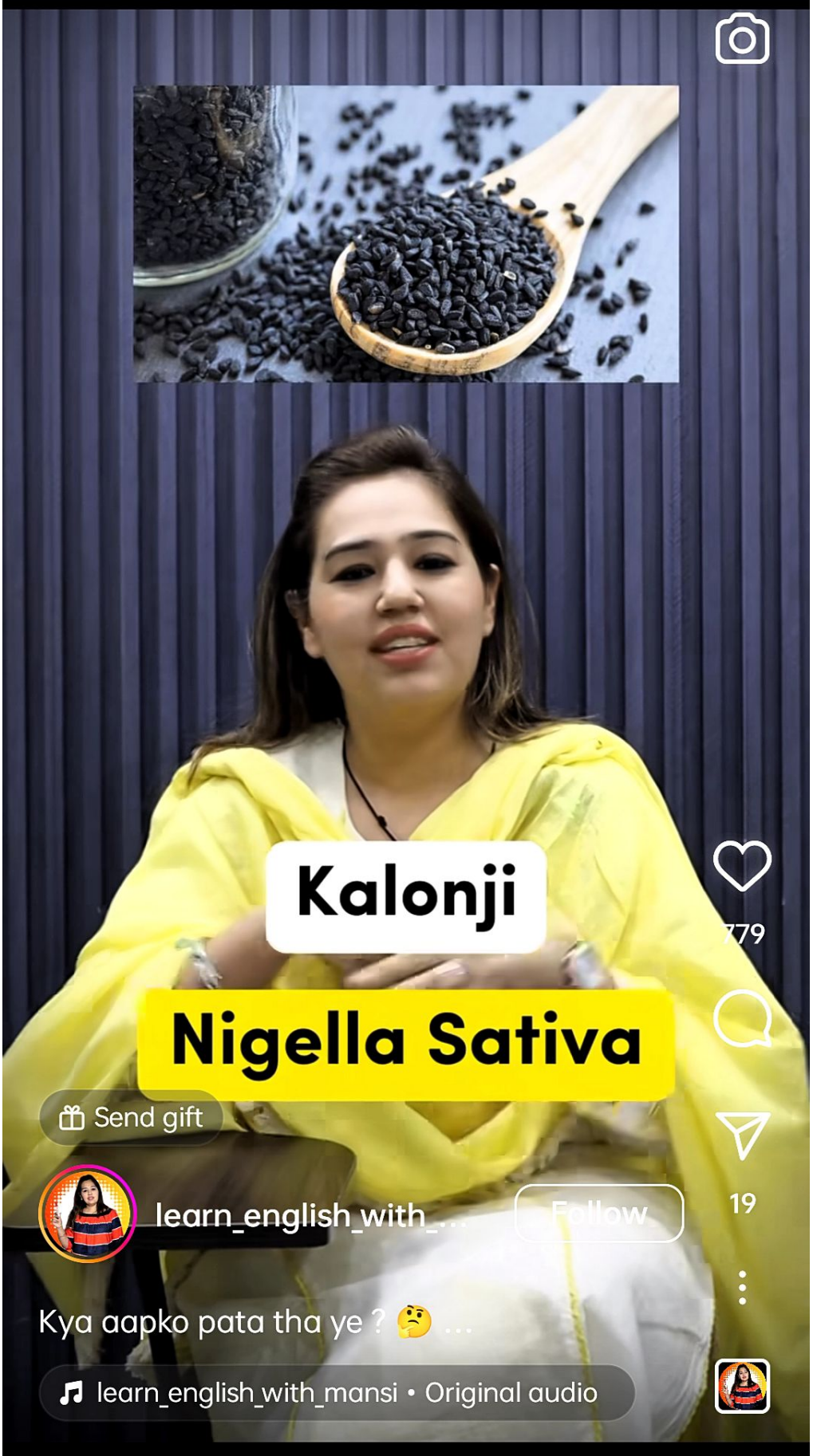

ग्रामीण शहर
Rural City
235
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
25
Types of City - Hindi to English Translatio ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


शहरी शहर
Urban City
235
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
25
Types of City - Hindi to English Translatio ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


विकसित शहर
Developed City
Send gift
235
25
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Types of City - Hindi to English Translatio ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


अल्प विकसित शहर
Undeveloped City
235
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
25
Types of City - Hindi to English Translatio ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


7:05
महानगर
Metropolitan City
235
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
25
Types of City - Hindi to English Translatio ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Kalonji
Nigella Sativa
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
779
19
Kya aapko pata tha ye ? 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

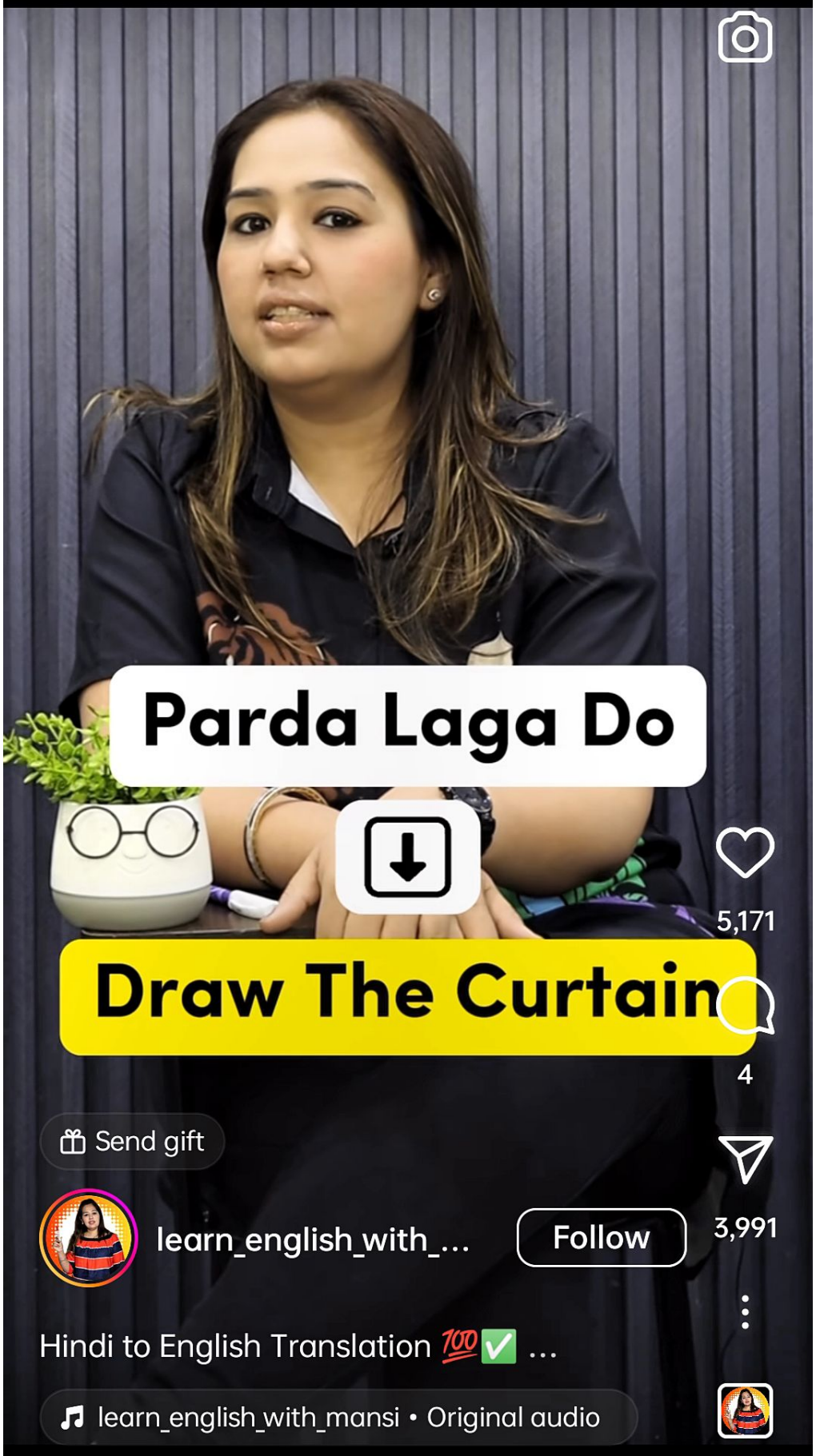

Saunph
Fennel Seeds
Send gift
779
19
learn_english_with_
Follow
Kya aapko pata tha ye ? 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

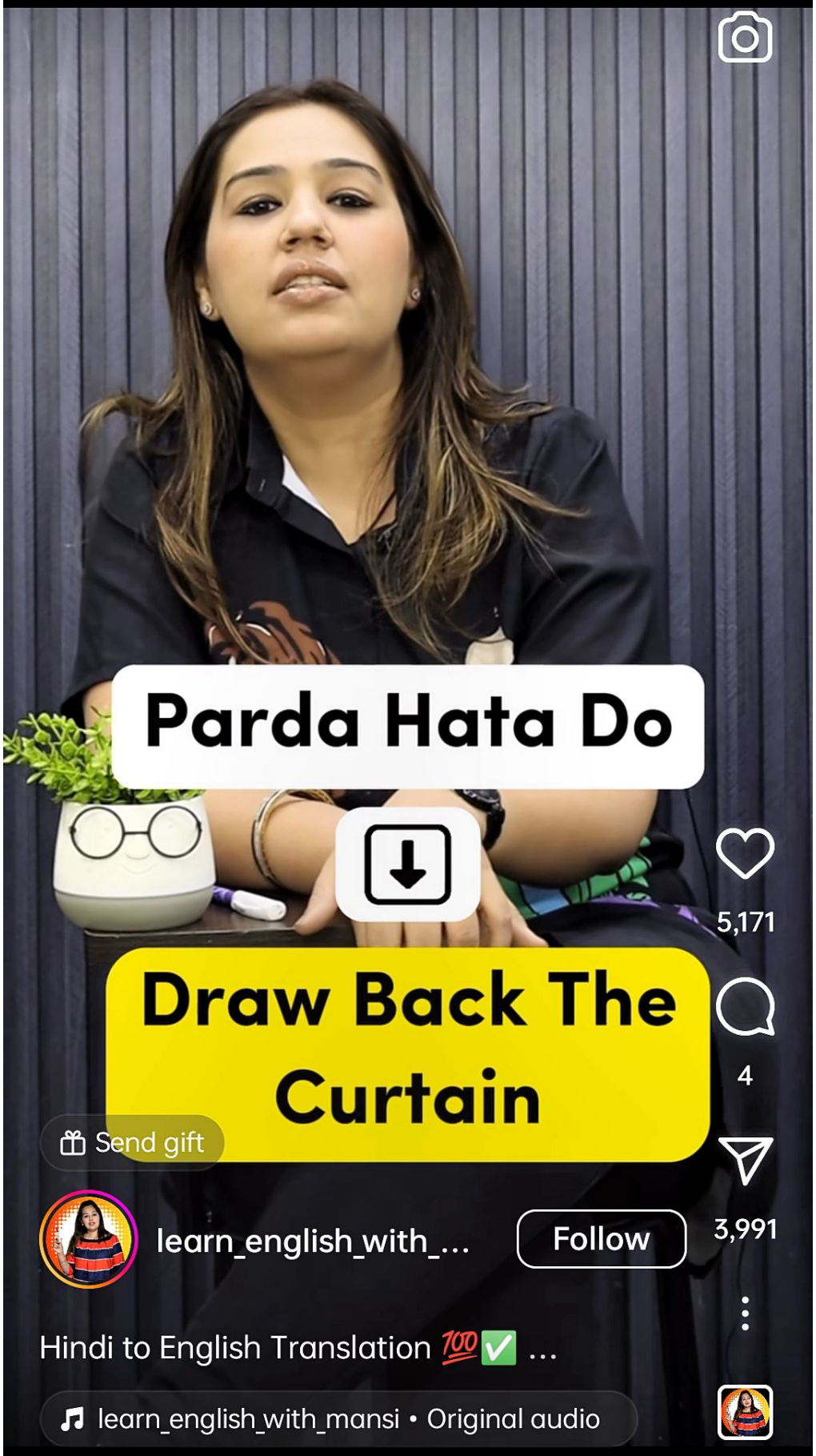

Jeera
Cumin Seeds
Send gift
779
19
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Kya aapko pata tha ye ? 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

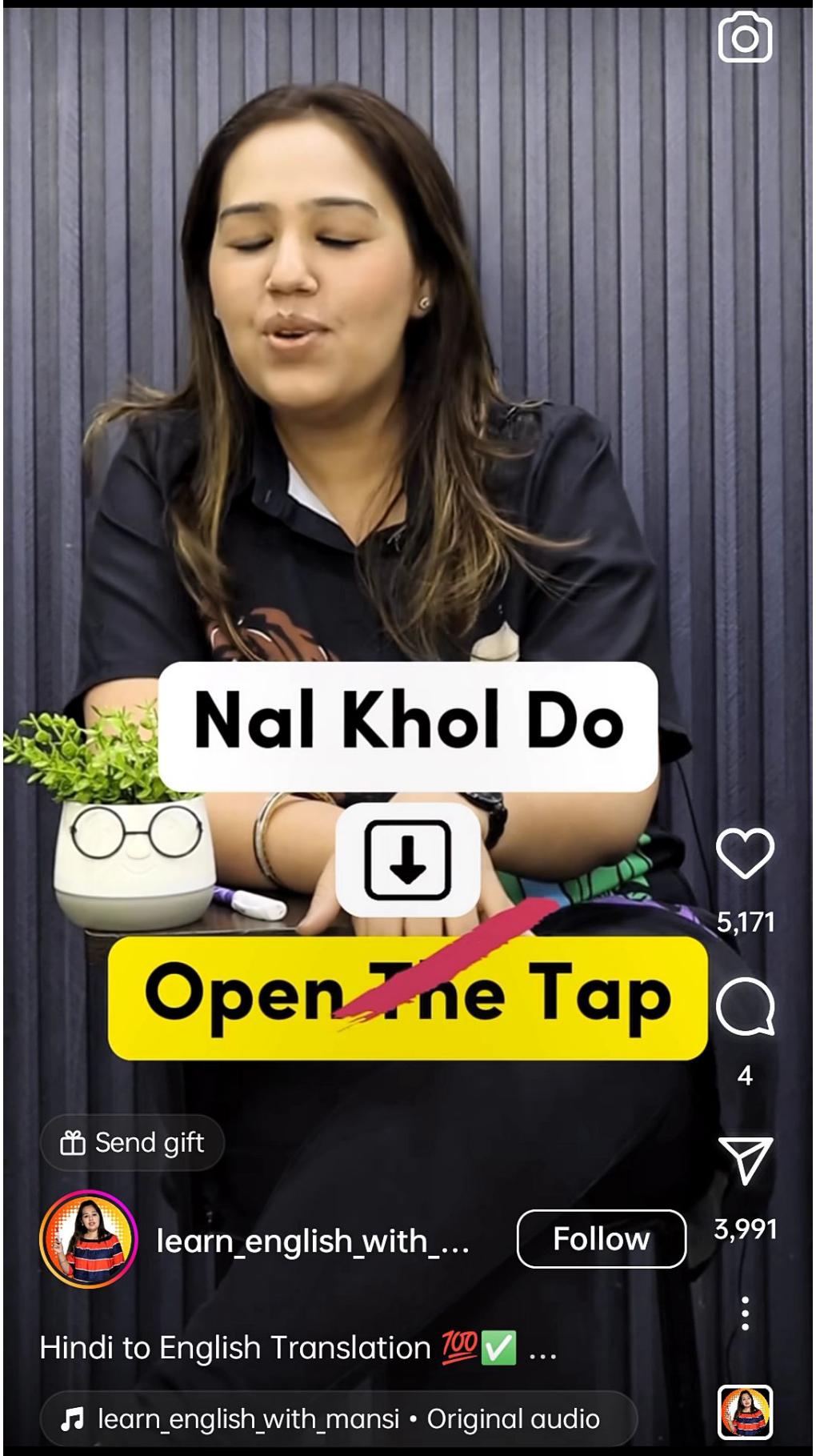

Ajwain
Carom Seeds
Send gift
779
19
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Kya aapko pata tha ye ? 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Badi Elaichi
Big Cardamom
779
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
19
Kya aapko pata tha ye ? 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Choti Elaichi
Green Cardamom
779
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
19
Kya aapko pata tha ye ? 🤔 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Parda Laga Do
Draw The Curtain
5,171
4
3,991
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Parda Hata Do
Draw Back The Curtain
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio
5,171
4
3,991


Nal Khol Do
Open The Tap
5,171
4
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
3,991
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Coat Ke Button Band Kar Do
Button Up Your Coat
5,171
4
3,991
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio



Samose

Rissole

410

1

19

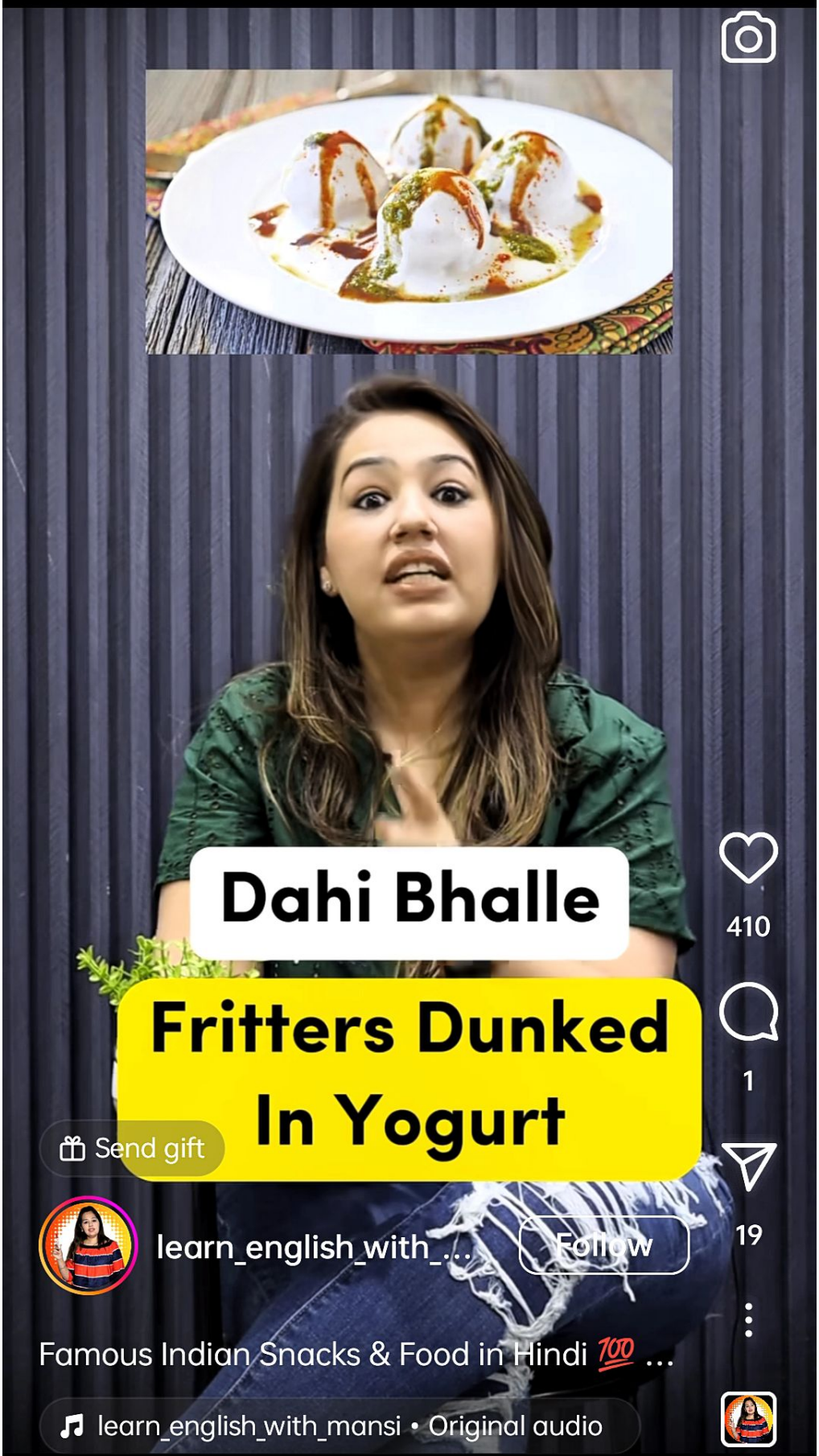
Send gift

learn_english_with_...

Follow

Famous Indian Snacks & Food in Hindi 💯 ...

learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Dahi Bhalle
Fritters Dunked In Yogurt
Send gift
410
1
19
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Famous Indian Snacks & Food in Hindi 💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Pakode
Fritters
Send gift
410
1
19
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Famous Indian Snacks & Food in Hindi 💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio



Ghee

Clarified Butter

410

1

19

Send gift

learn_english_with_... Follow

Famous Indian Snacks & Food in Hindi 💯 ...

learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

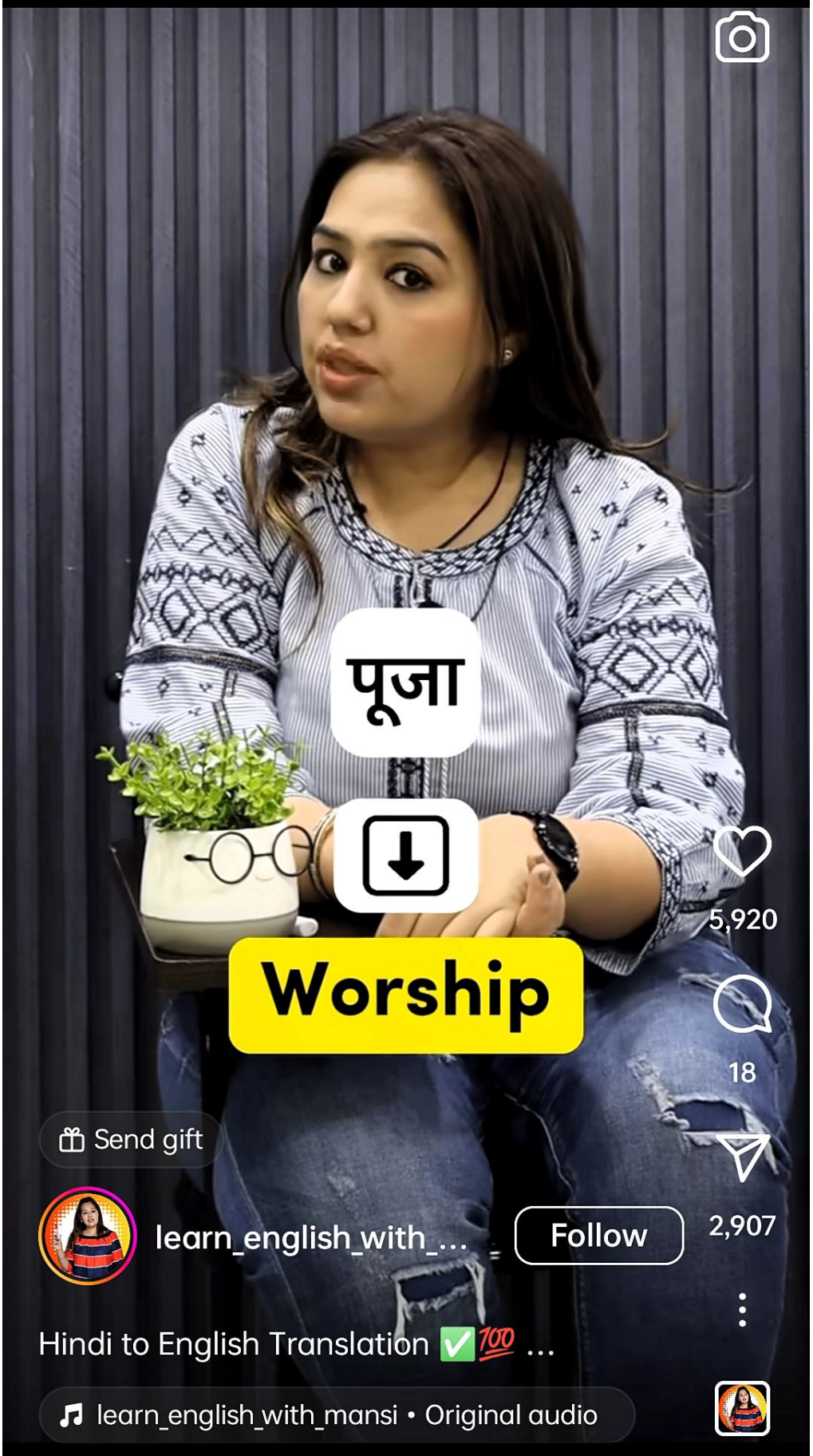

Chhaach
Butter milk
410
1
19
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Famous Indian Snacks & Food in Hindi 💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


सदमा
Trauma
266
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
13
Learn Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


बेढंगा
Clumpsy
266
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
13
Learn Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


7:06
117 KB/S
49
जोशीला
Ebullient
266
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
13
Learn Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


7:06
117 KB/S
49
सुधार
Amendment
266
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
13
Learn Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


पूजा
Worship
5,920
18
2,907
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation ✅💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


भक्त
Devotee
5,920
18
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
2,907
Hindi to English Translation ✅💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


मूर्ती की पूजा करना
Idol Worship
5,920
18
2,907
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation ✅💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


मान्यता
Myth
5,920
18
2,907
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation ✅💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


पुराना ज़माना
Primitive Age
5,920
18
2,907
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation ✅💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio



Laung

Clove

141

30

Send gift

learn_english_with_...

Follow

Spices Vocabulary: Hindi to English 💯✅ ...

learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio



Haldi

Turmeric

141

Send gift

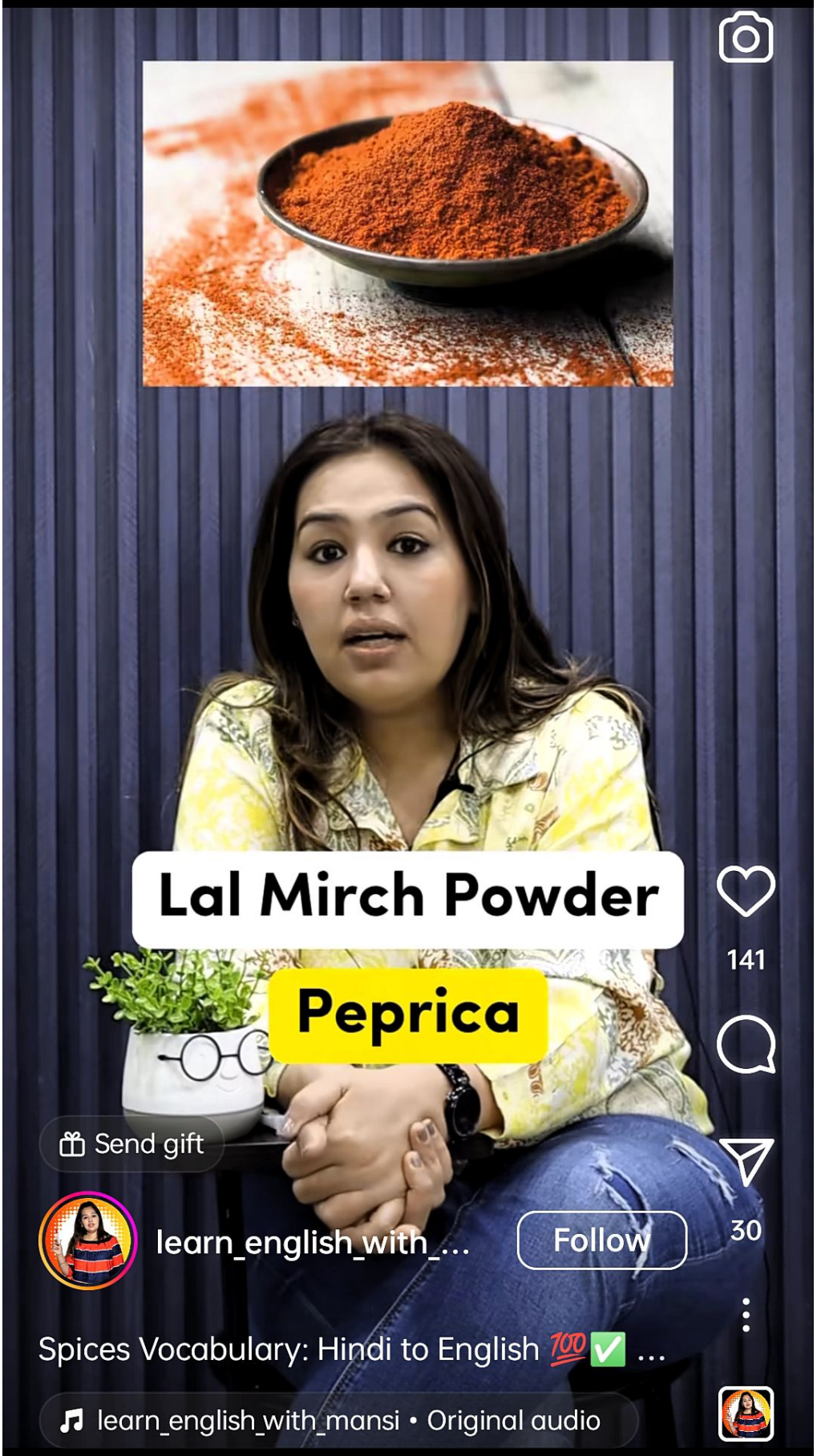
learn_english_with_...

Follow

30

Spices Vocabulary: Hindi to English 💯✅ ...

learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Lal Mirch Powder
Peprica
141
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
30
Spices Vocabulary: Hindi to English 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio



Jaifal

Nutmeg

141

Send gift

learn_english_with_...

Follow

30

Spices Vocabulary: Hindi to English 💯✅ ...

learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio



Dalchini

Cinnamon

141

Send gift

learn_english_with_...

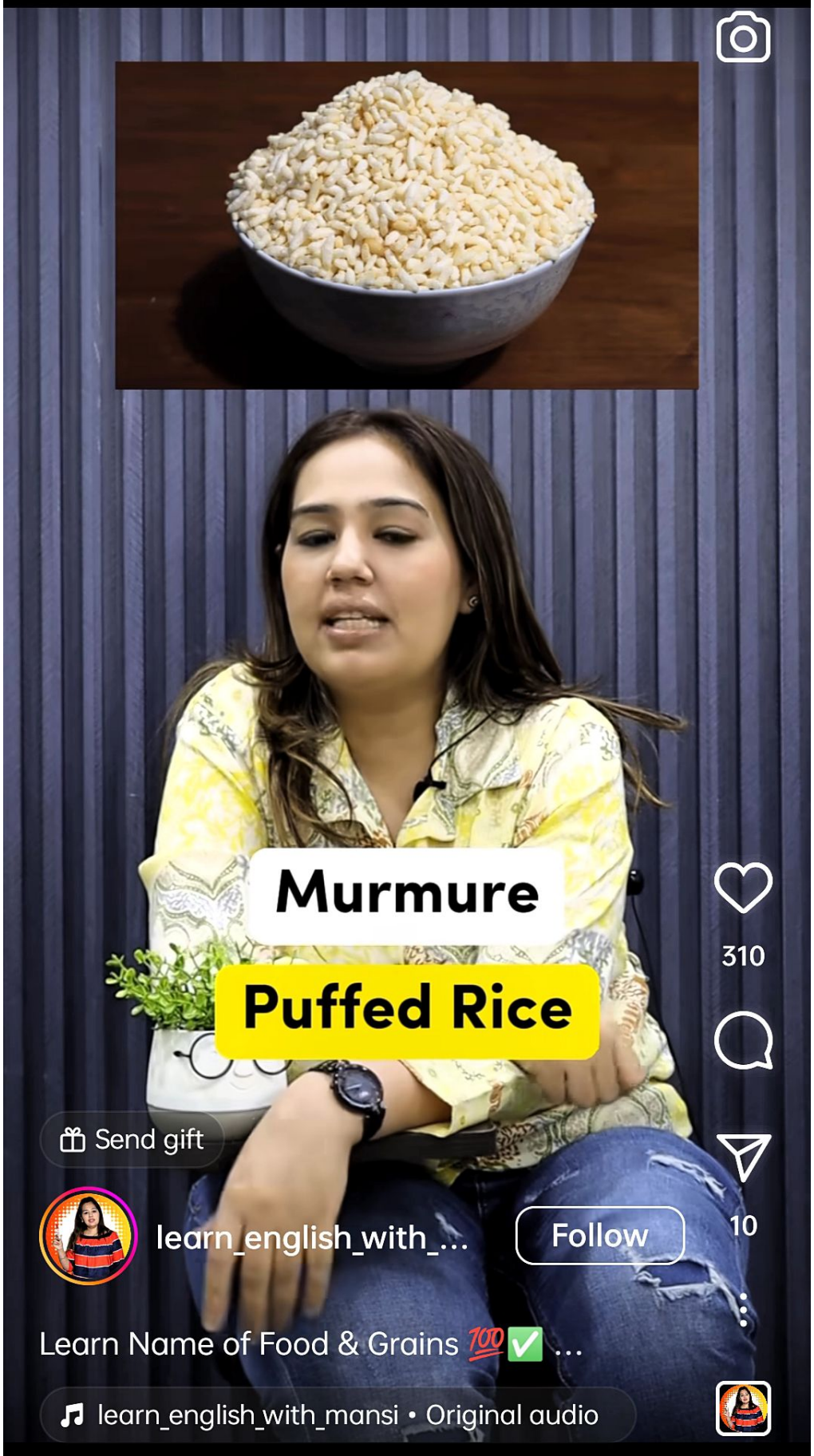
Follow

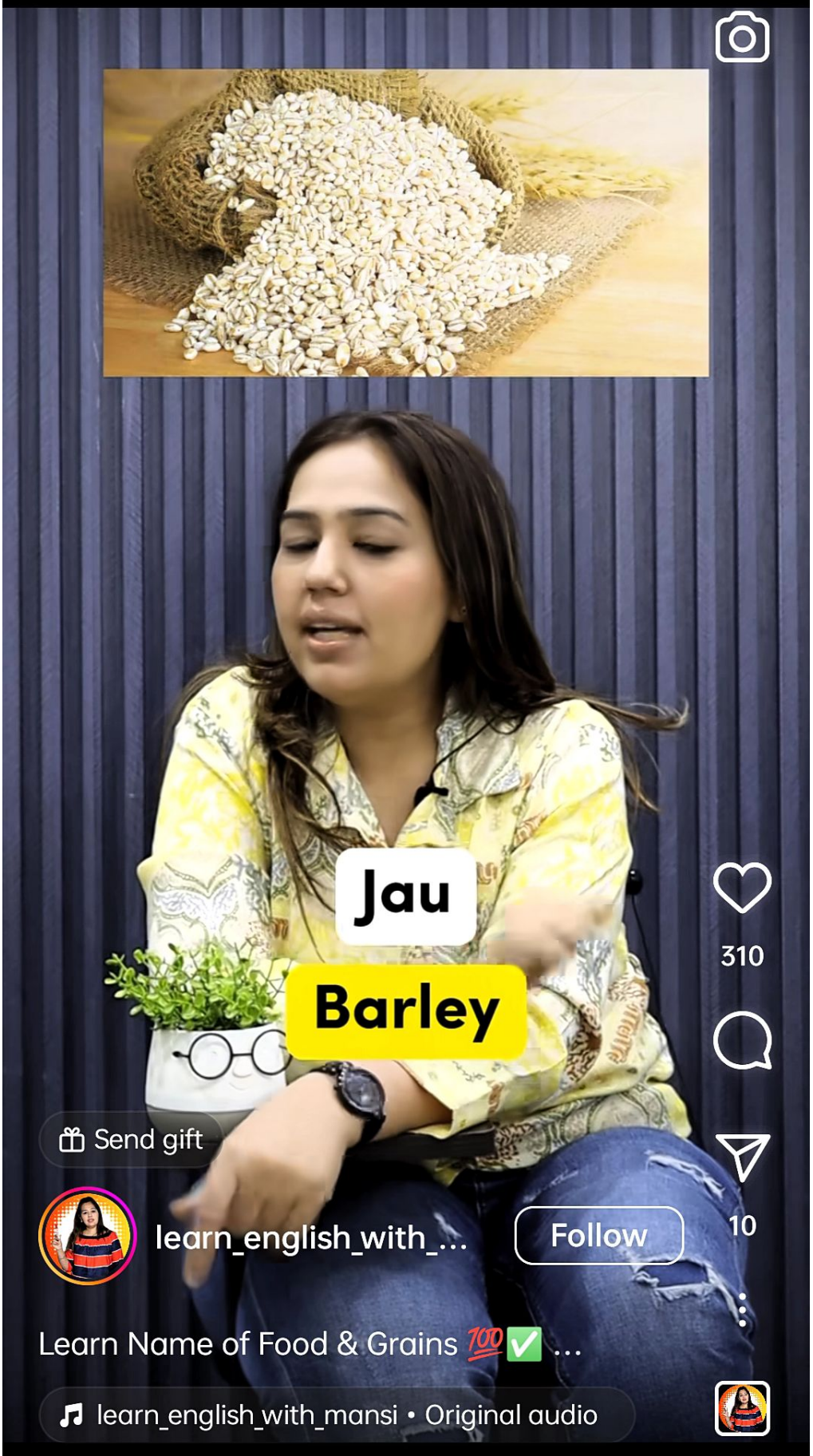
30

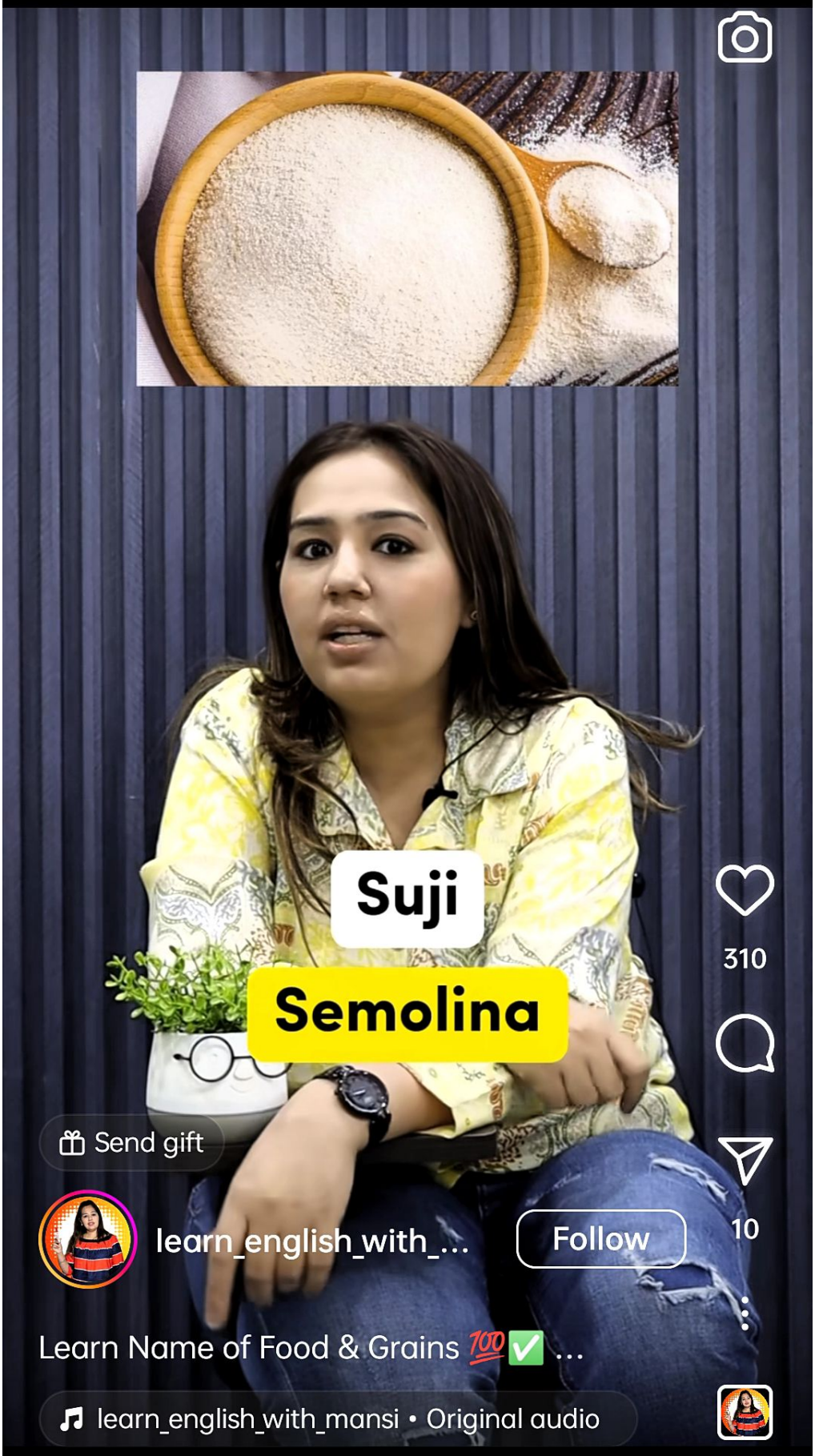
Spices Vocabulary: Hindi to English 💯✅ ...

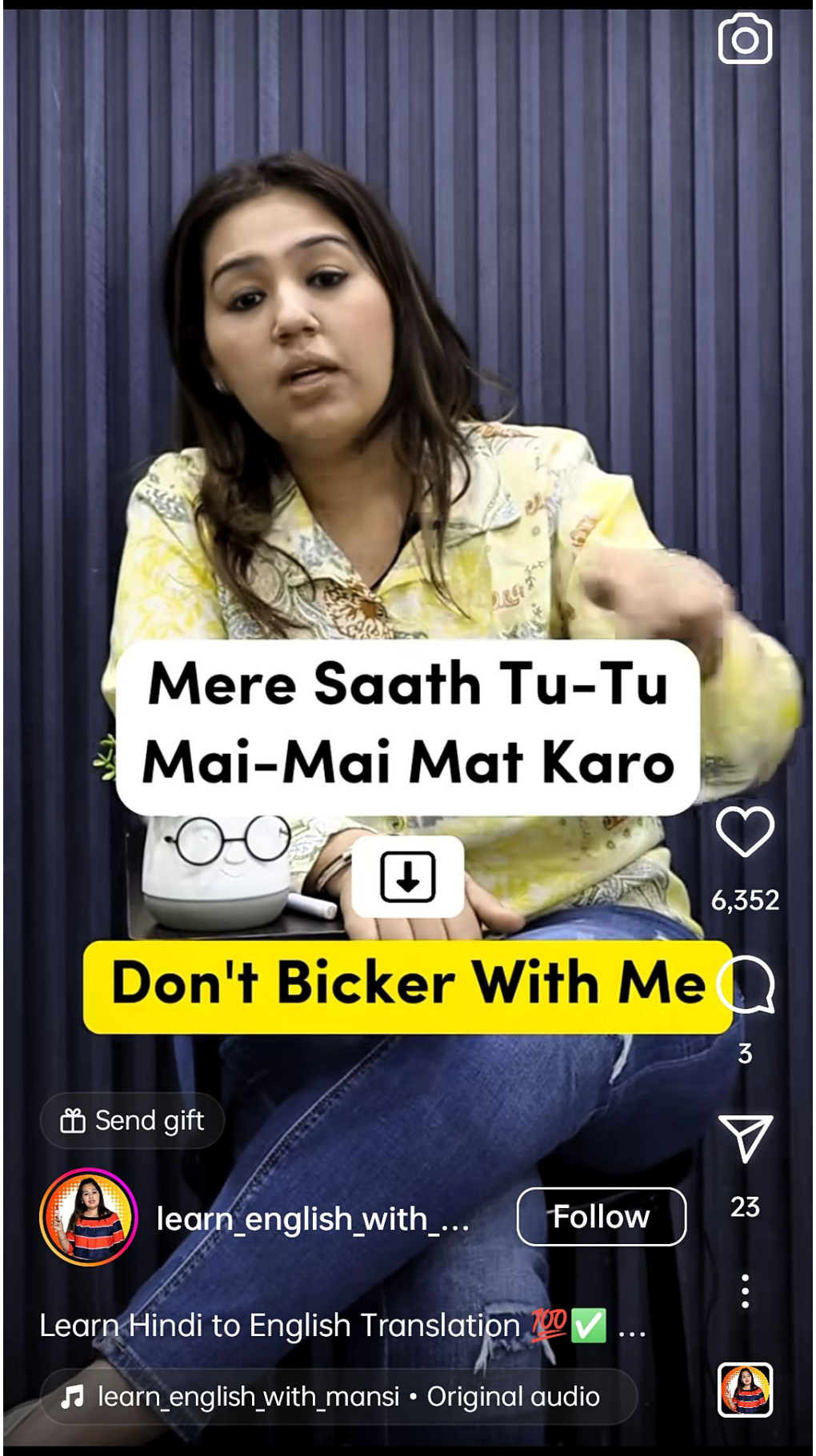
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

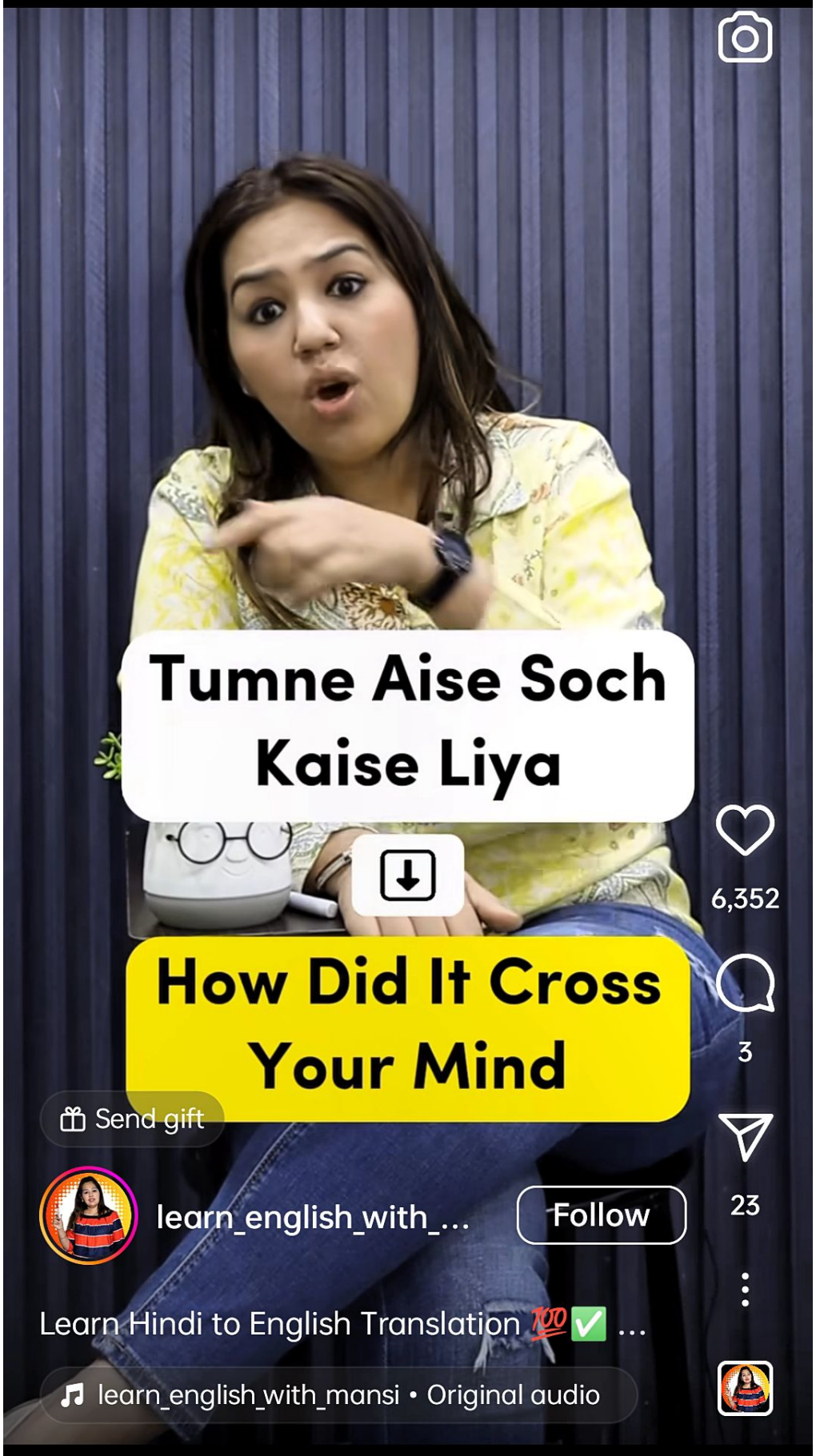

Poha
Beaten Rice
310
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
10
Learn Name of Food & Grains 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Murmure
Puffed Rice
310
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
10
Learn Name of Food & Grains 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Jau
Barley
310
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
10
Learn Name of Food & Grains 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Suji
Semolina
310
10
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Name of Food & Grains 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Mere Saath Tu-Tu
Mai-Mai Mat Karo
Don't Bicker With Me
6,352
3
23
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Tumne Aise Soch Kaise Liya
How Did It Cross Your Mind
6,352
3
23
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Yaar Mujhe Tang Karna Band Karo
Stop Bothering Me
6,352
3
23
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Mere Sabr Ka Intehaan Mat Lo
Don't Try My Patience
6,352
3
23
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Learn Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Bahut Bhookh Lagi Hai
I Am Starving
453
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
7
Common Hindi Sentences in English 🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Bahut Jyada Pyaas Lagi Hai
I Am Parched
453
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
7
Common Hindi Sentences in English 🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

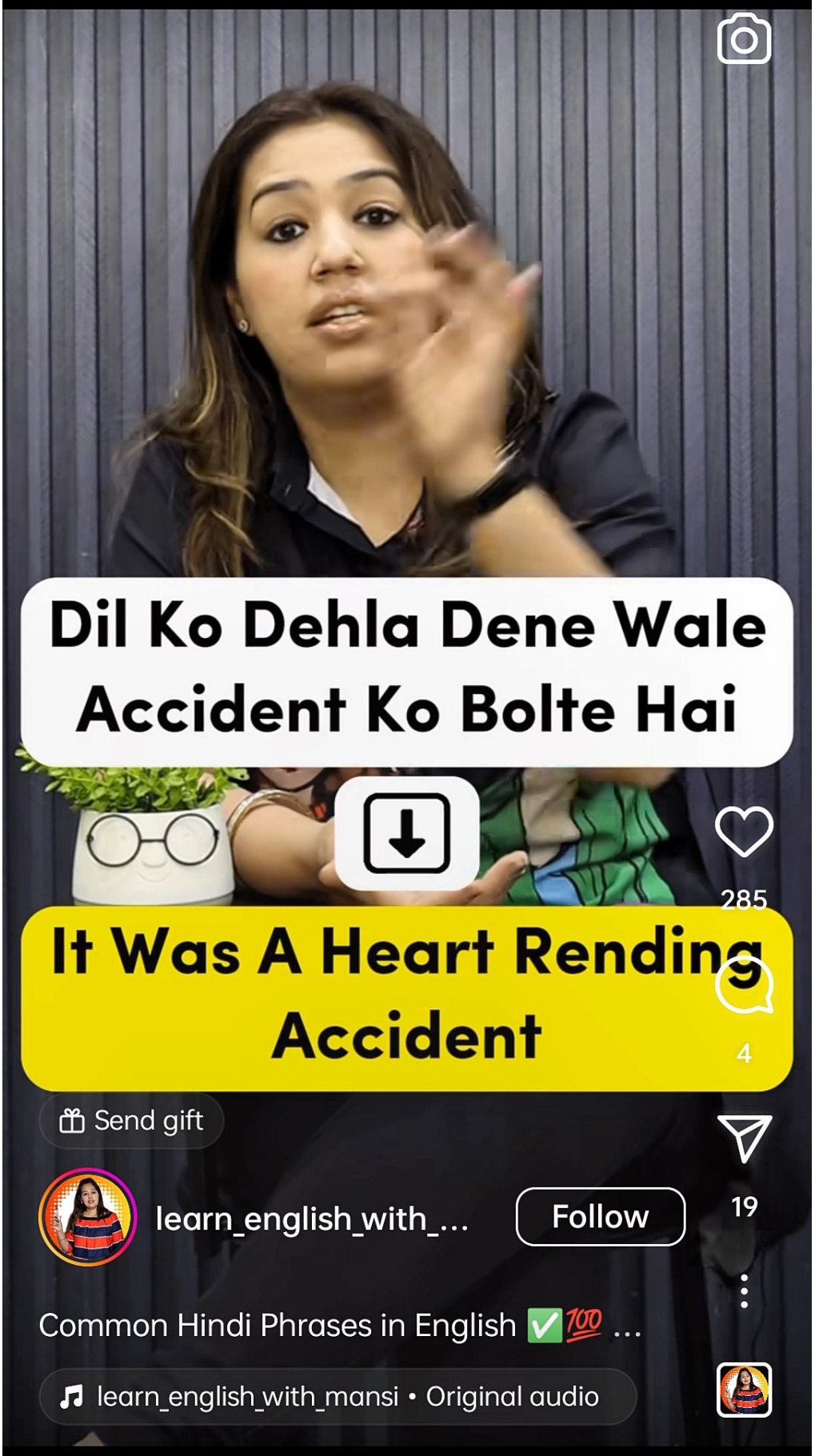

Koi Baat Nahi
Never Mind
453
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
7
Common Hindi Sentences in English 🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

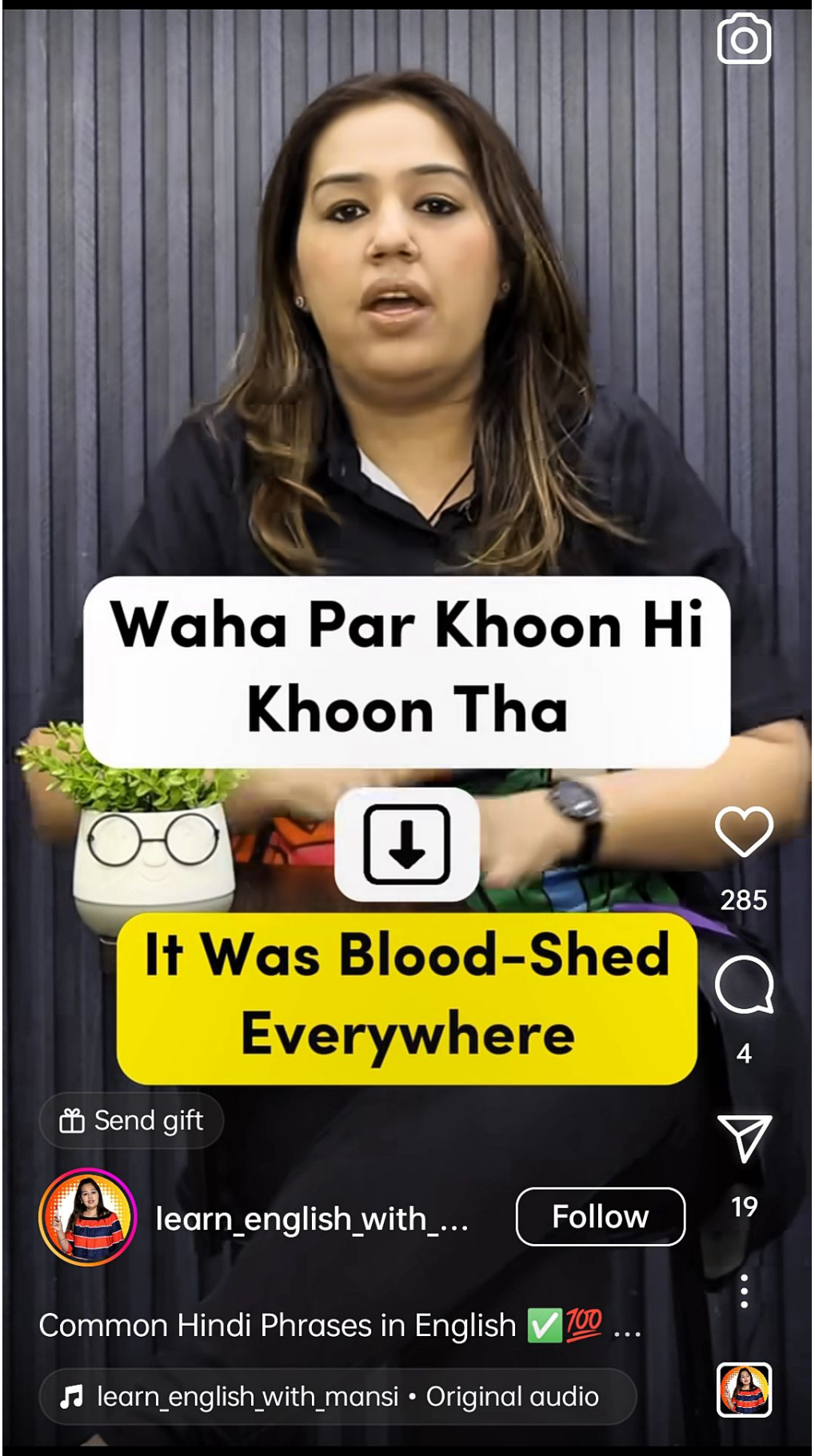

Jaldi Milenge
See You Soon
Send gift
453
learn_english_with_...
Follow
7
Common Hindi Sentences in English 🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

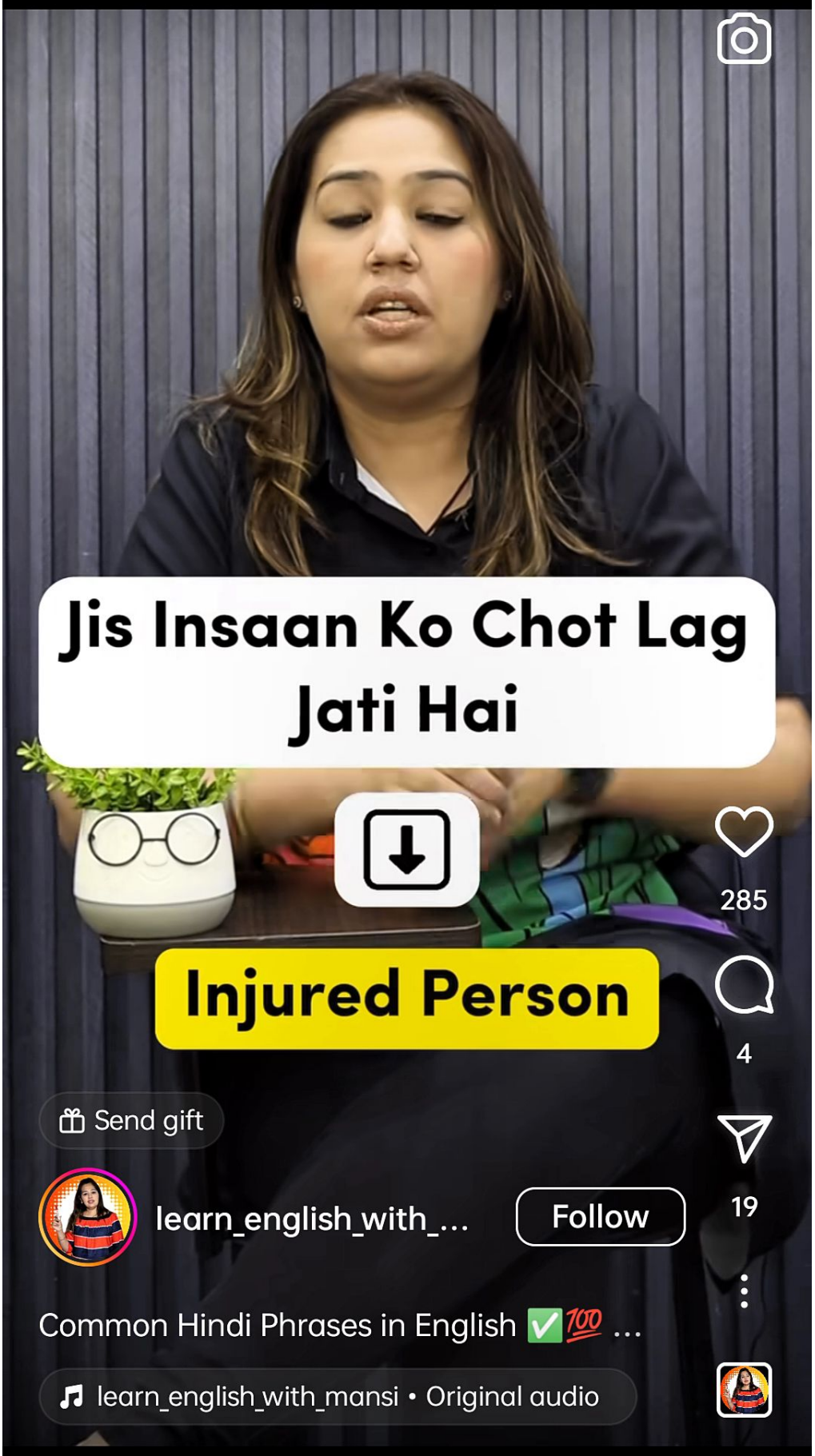

Fir Milenge
See You Again
453
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
7
Common Hindi Sentences in English 🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

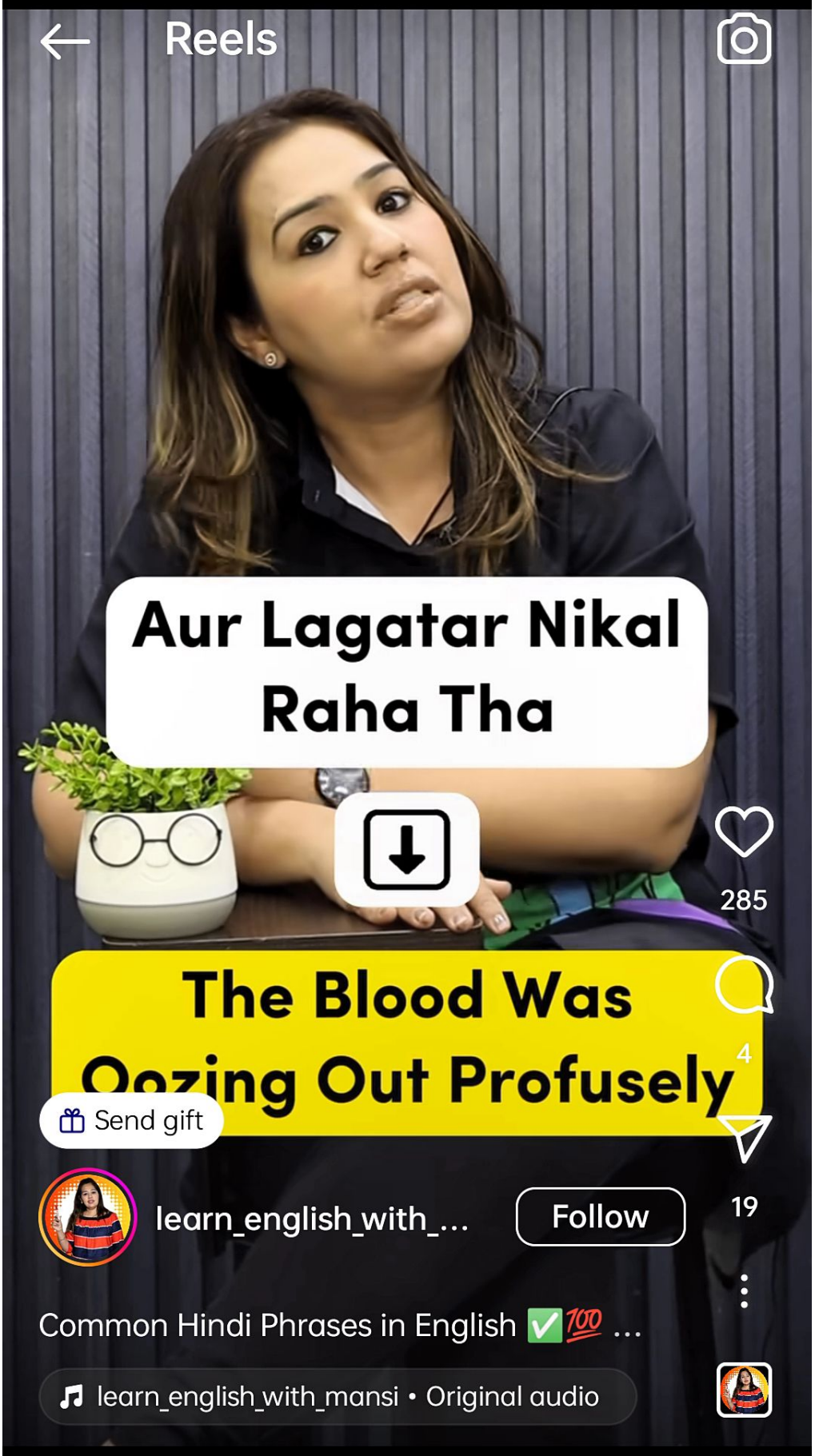

Ab Kya
What For
453
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
7
Common Hindi Sentences in English 🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

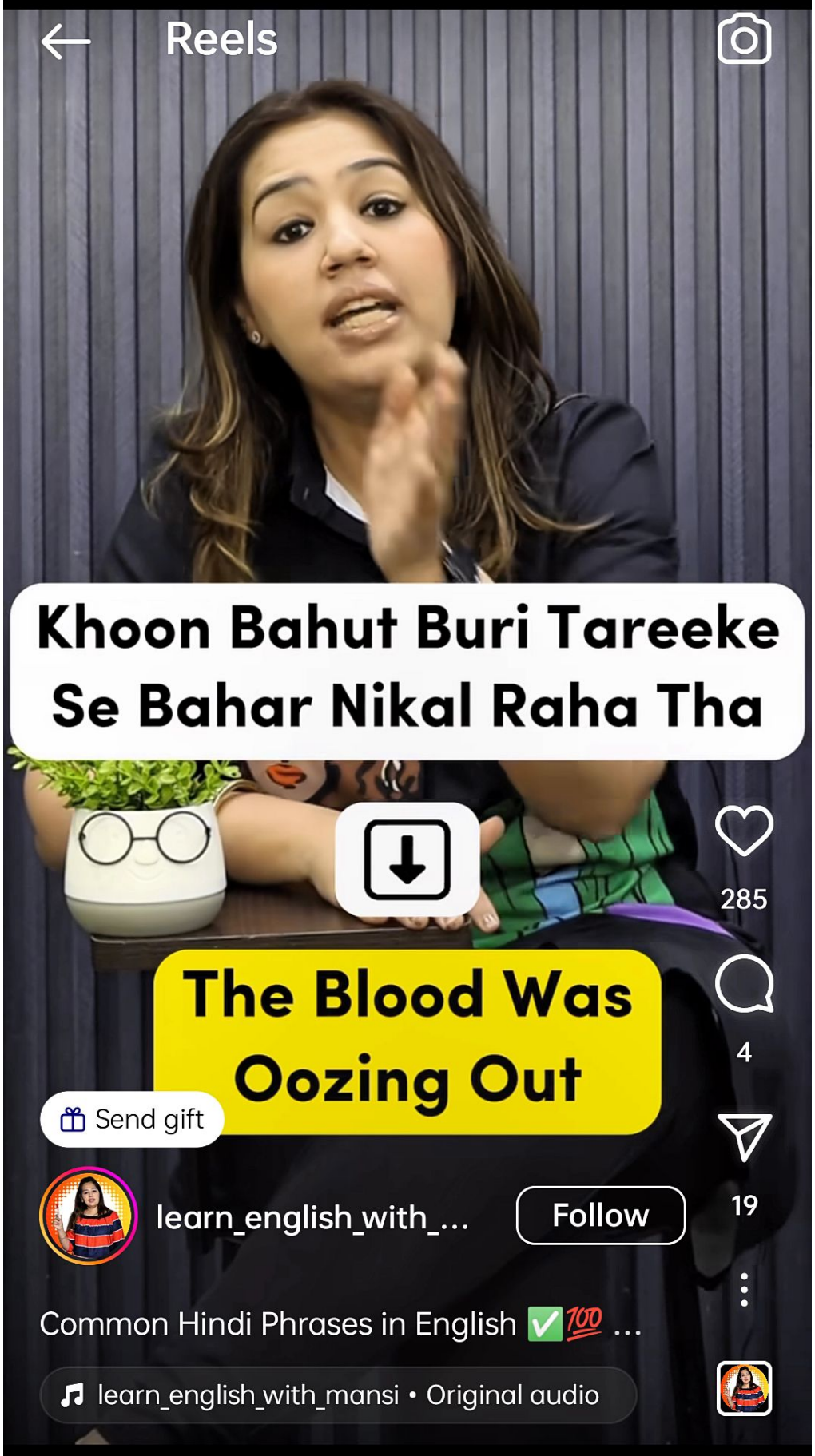

Abhi Kro
Do It Righ Now
453
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
7
Common Hindi Sentences in English 🤯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

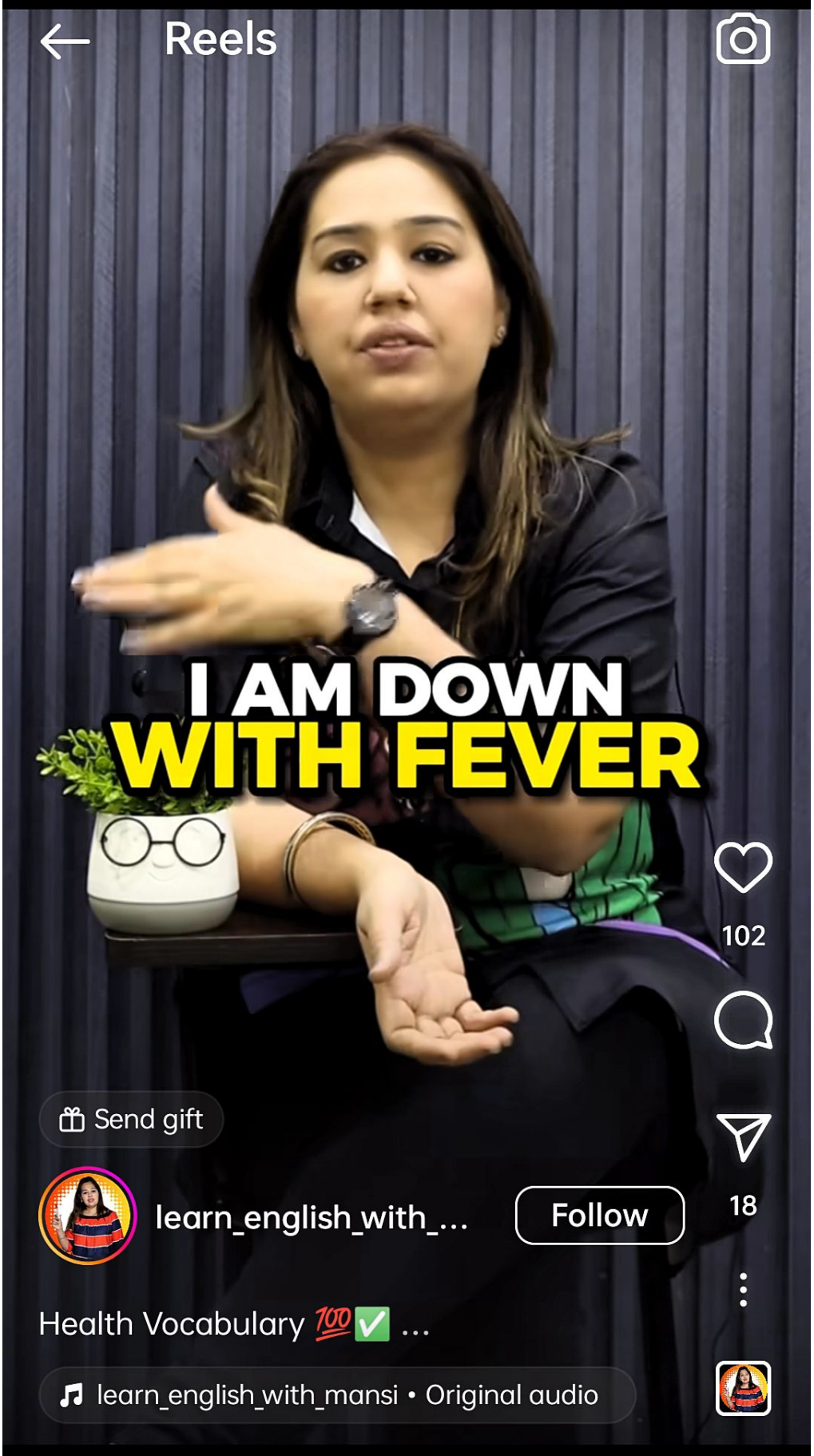

Dil Ko Dehla Dene Wale Accident Ko Bolte Hai
It Was A Heart Rending Accident
285
4
19
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Common Hindi Phrases in English ✅💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Waha Par Khoon Hi Khoon Tha
It Was Blood-Shed Everywhere
285
4
19
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Common Hindi Phrases in English ✅💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

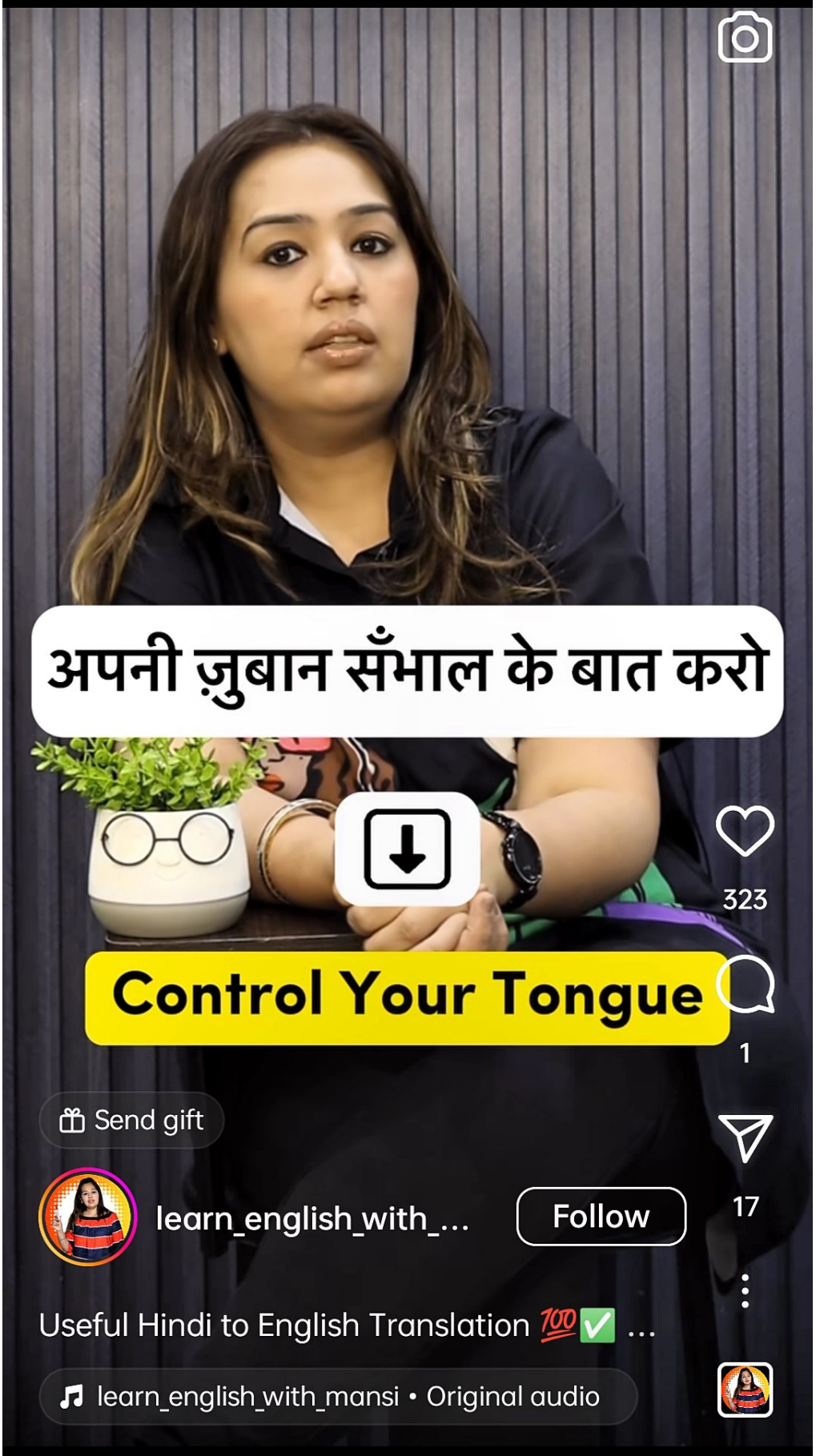

Jis Insaan Ko Chot Lag Jati Hai
Injured Person
285
4
19
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Common Hindi Phrases in English ✅💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Reels
Aur Lagatar Nikal Raha Tha
285
The Blood Was Oozing Out Profusely
4
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
19
Common Hindi Phrases in English ✅💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

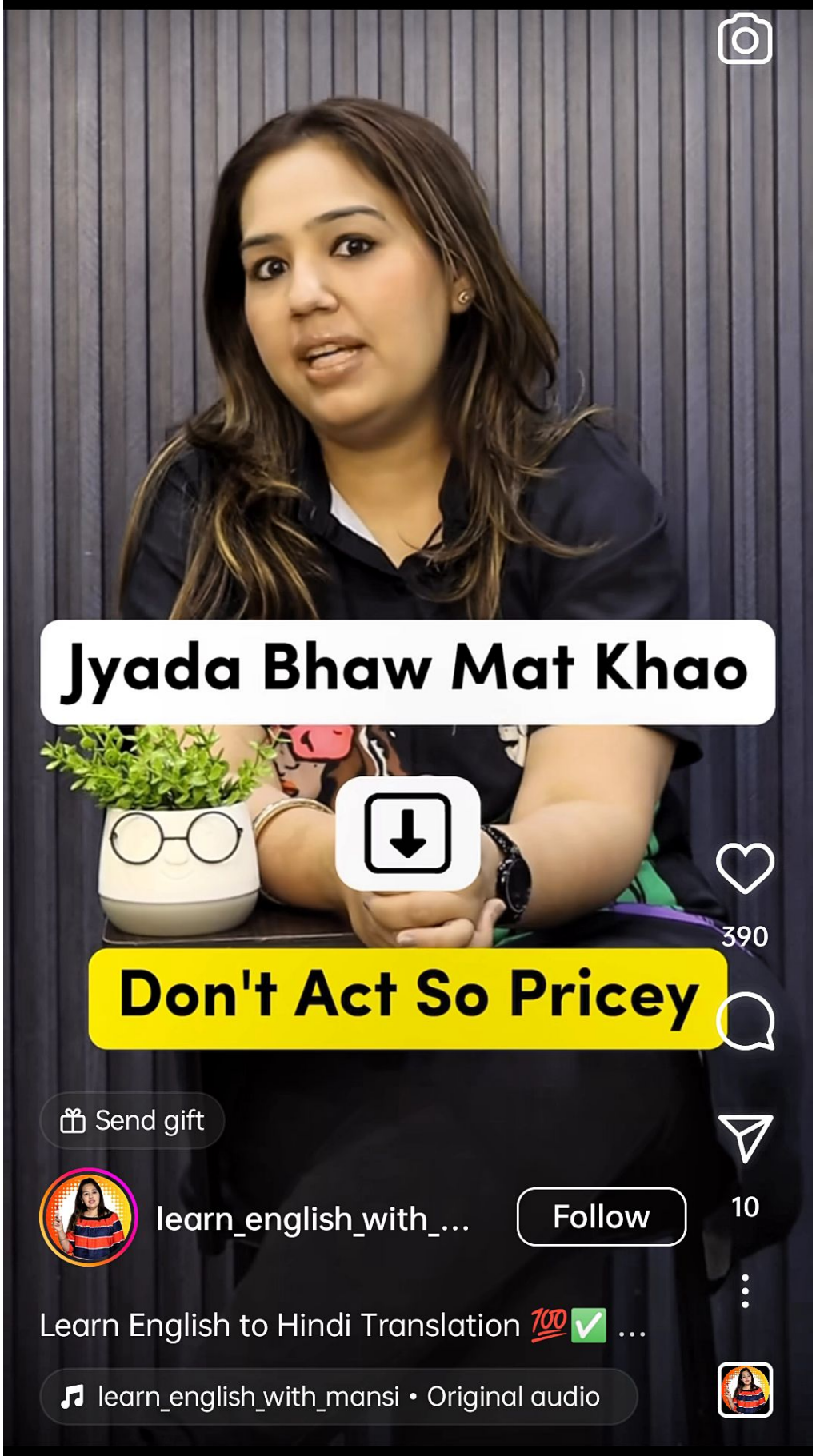

Reels
Khoon Bahut Buri Tareeke Se Bahar Nikal Raha Tha
The Blood Was Oozing Out
285
4
19
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Common Hindi Phrases in English ✅💯 ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


7:09
Reels
I AM DOWN
WITH FEVER
102
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
18
Health Vocabulary 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

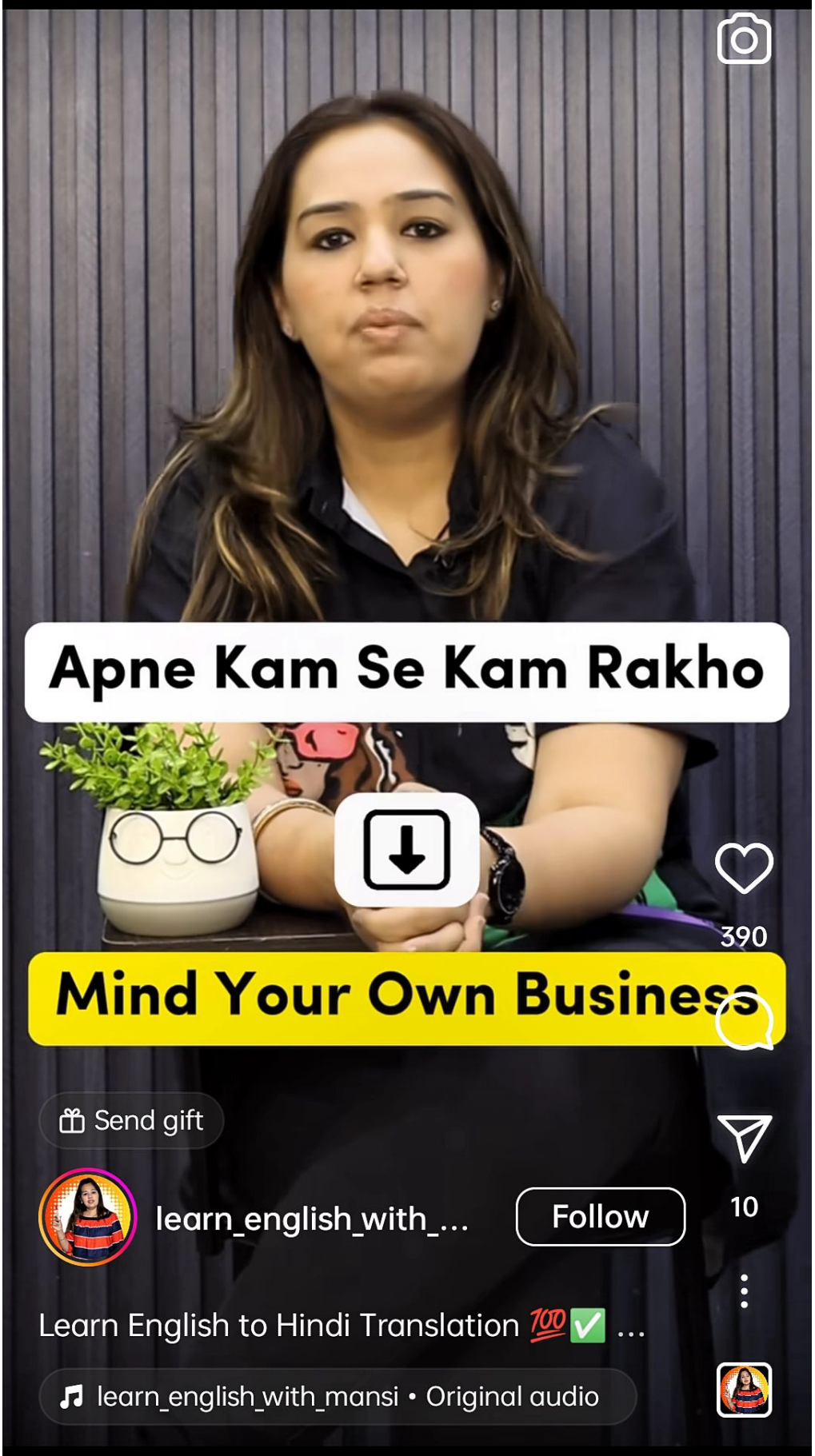

समय की नज़ाकत को समझो
Understand the Delicacy of Time
323
1
17
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Useful Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

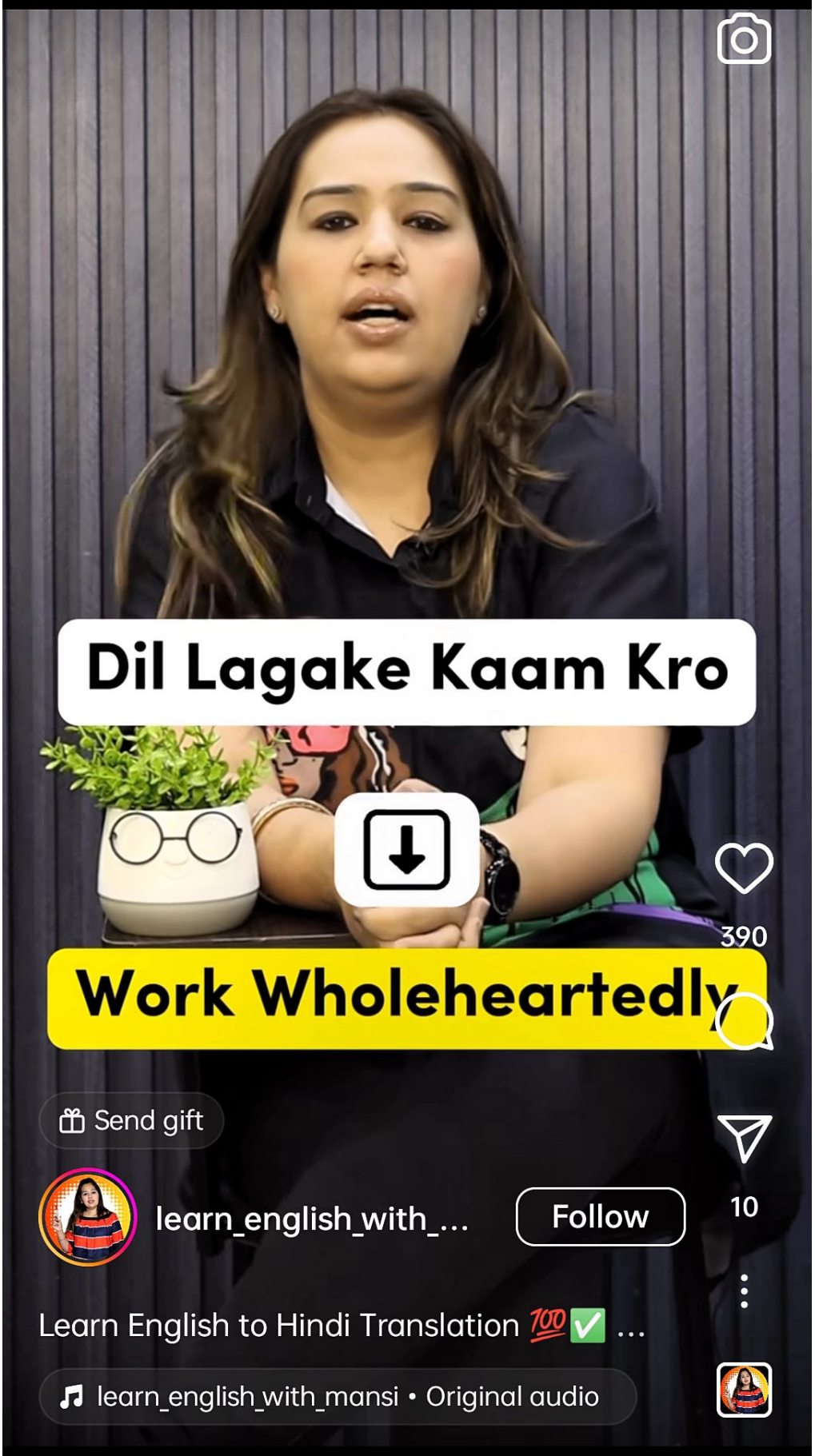

अपनी ज़ुबान सँभाल के बात करो
Control Your Tongue
323
1
17
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Useful Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


गैस चला दो
Ignite The Gas
323
1
17
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Useful Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Jyada Bhaw Mat Khao
Don't Act So Pricey
390
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
10
Learn English to Hindi Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


ये तुम्हारा भ्रम था
That Was Your Illusion
323
1
17
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Useful Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Apne Kam Se Kam Rakho
390
Mind Your Own Business
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
10
Learn English to Hindi Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Dil Lagake Kaam Kro
390
Work Wholeheartedly
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
10
Learn English to Hindi Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Tum Na Mujhe Meri Dadi Ki Yaad Dilati Ho
You Remind Me Of My Grand Mother
390
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
10
Learn English to Hindi Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Rosgulla
White Syrup Dumplings
14.6K
42
17K
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Sweet Vocabulary 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Gulab Janum
Rose Berry Balls
14.6K
42
17K
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Sweet Vocabulary 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

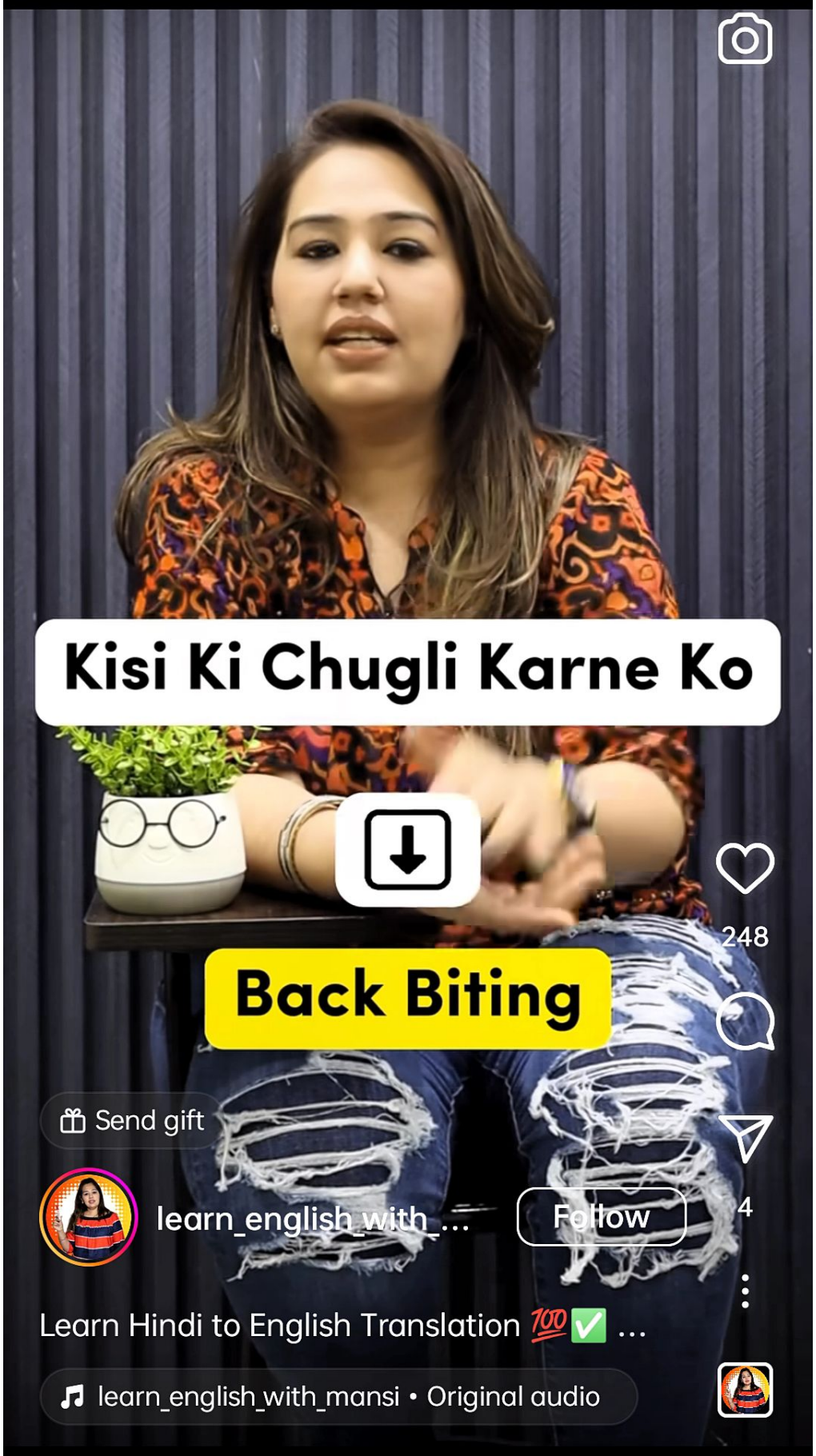

Jalebi
Funnel cake
14.6K
42
17K
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Sweet Vocabulary 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

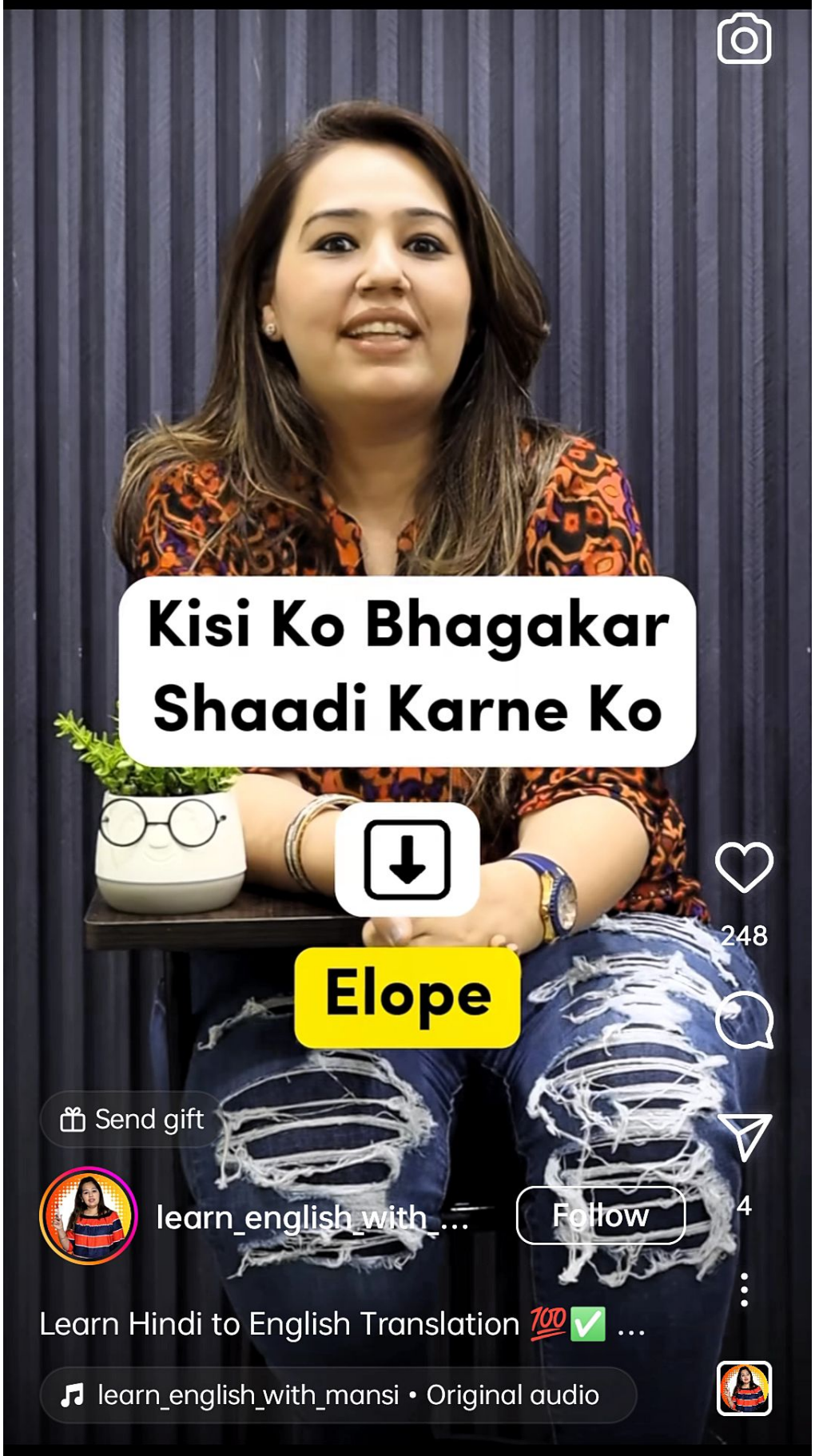

Kaju Katli
Cashew Fudge
14.6K
42
17K
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Sweet Vocabulary 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

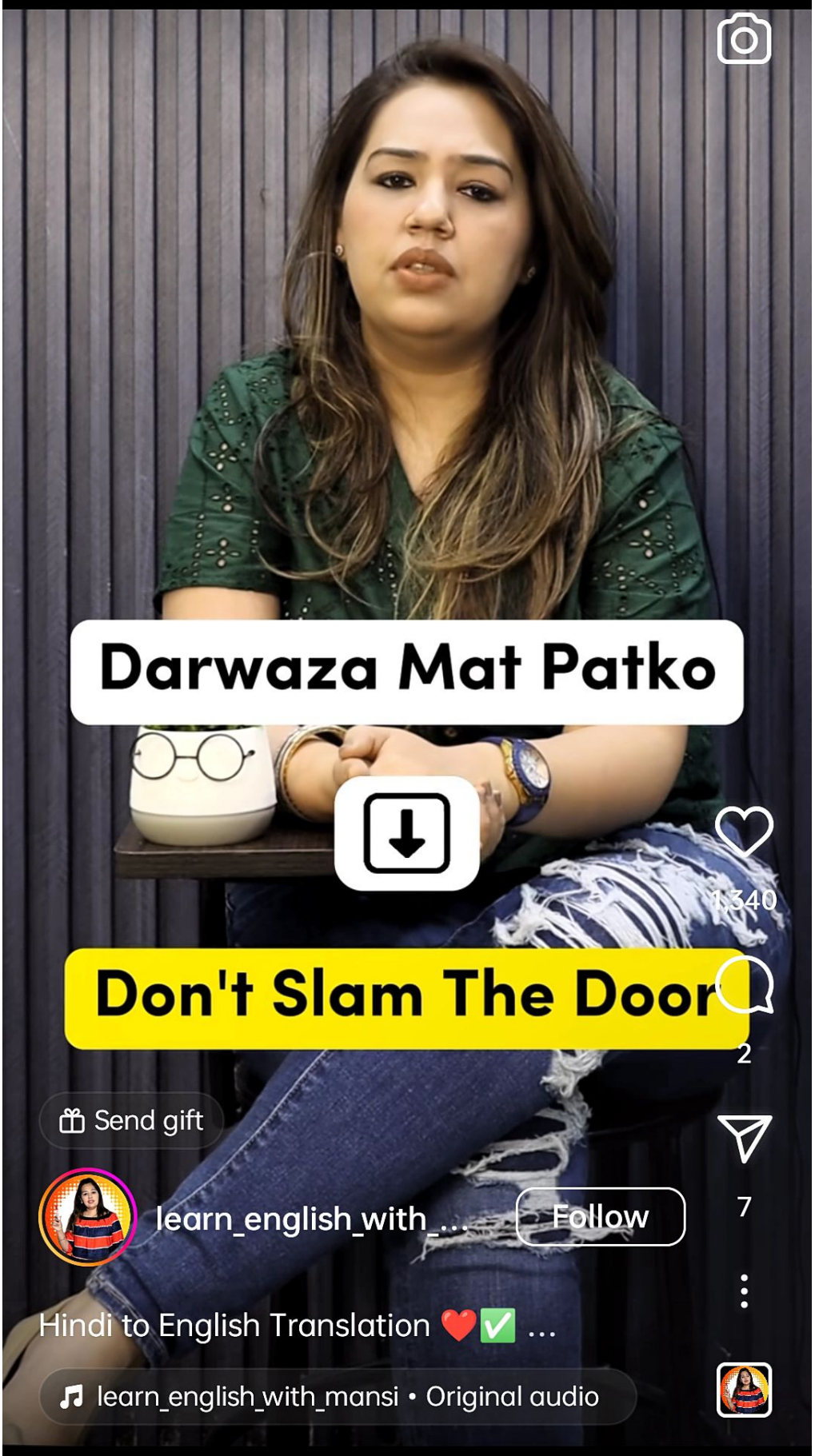

Falooda
Creamy Sweet Noodles
14.6K
42
17K
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Sweet Vocabulary 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Kisi Par Fida Hone Ko
Infatuate
248
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
4
Learn Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Kisi Ko Satane Ko
Persecute
248
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
4
Learn Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

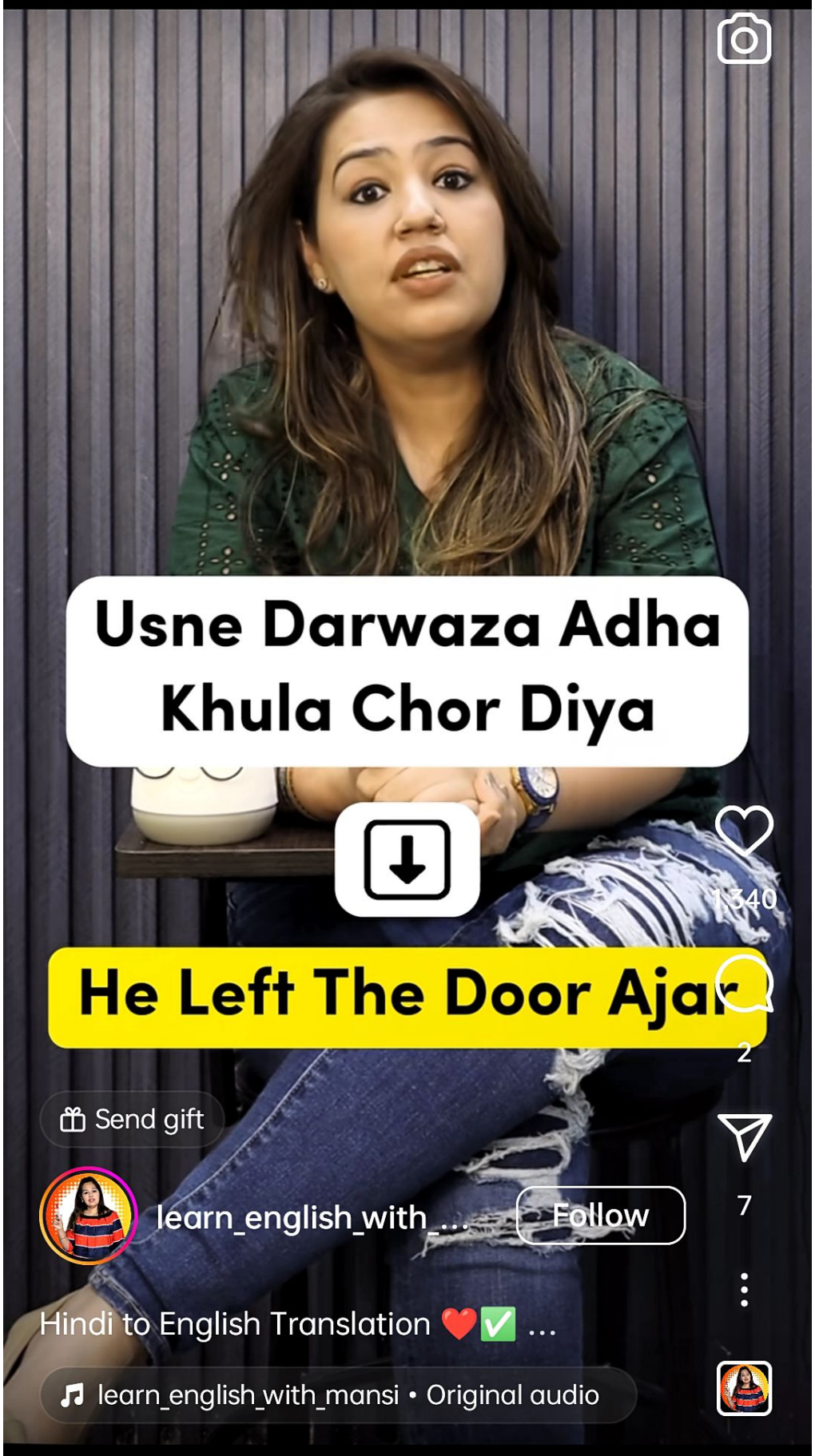

Kisi Ki Chugli Karne Ko
Back Biting
248
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
4
Learn Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Kisi Ko Bhagakar
Shaadi Karne Ko
Elope
248
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
4
Learn Hindi to English Translation 💯✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

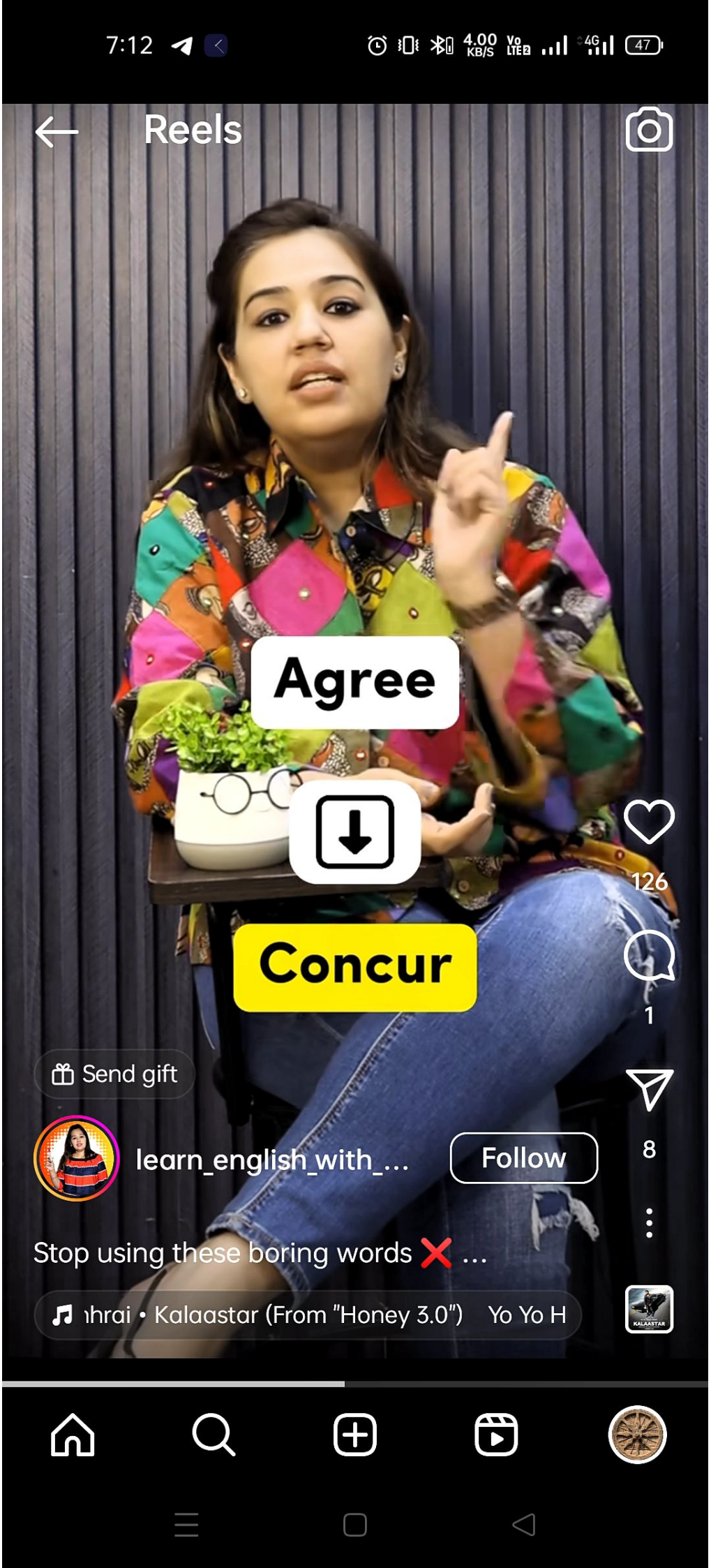

Darwaza Mat Patko
Don't Slam The Door
1,340
2
7
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation ❤️✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Darwaza Awaz Kar Raha Hai
The Door Is Creaking
1,340
2
7
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation ❤️✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Darwaze Ki Kundi Khol Do
Unlatch The Door
1,340
2
7
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation ❤️✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio


Usne Darwaza Adha Khula Chor Diya
He Left The Door Ajar
1340
2
7
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Hindi to English Translation ❤️✅ ...
learn_english_with_mansi • Original audio

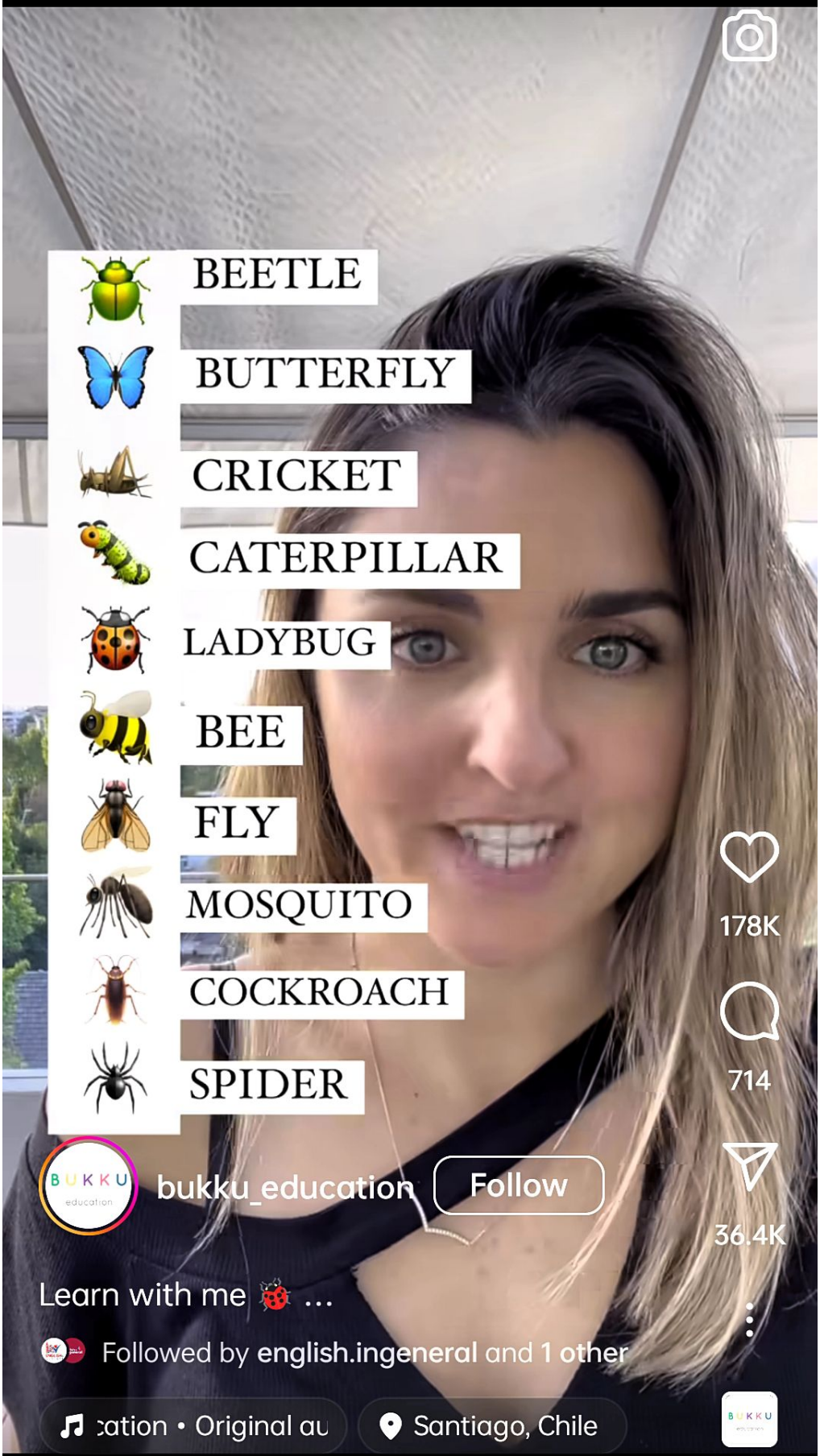

7:12
Reels
Many
Numerous
126
1
8
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Stop using these boring words ❌ ...
nali, Gill Machhrai • Kalaastar (From "Honey 3

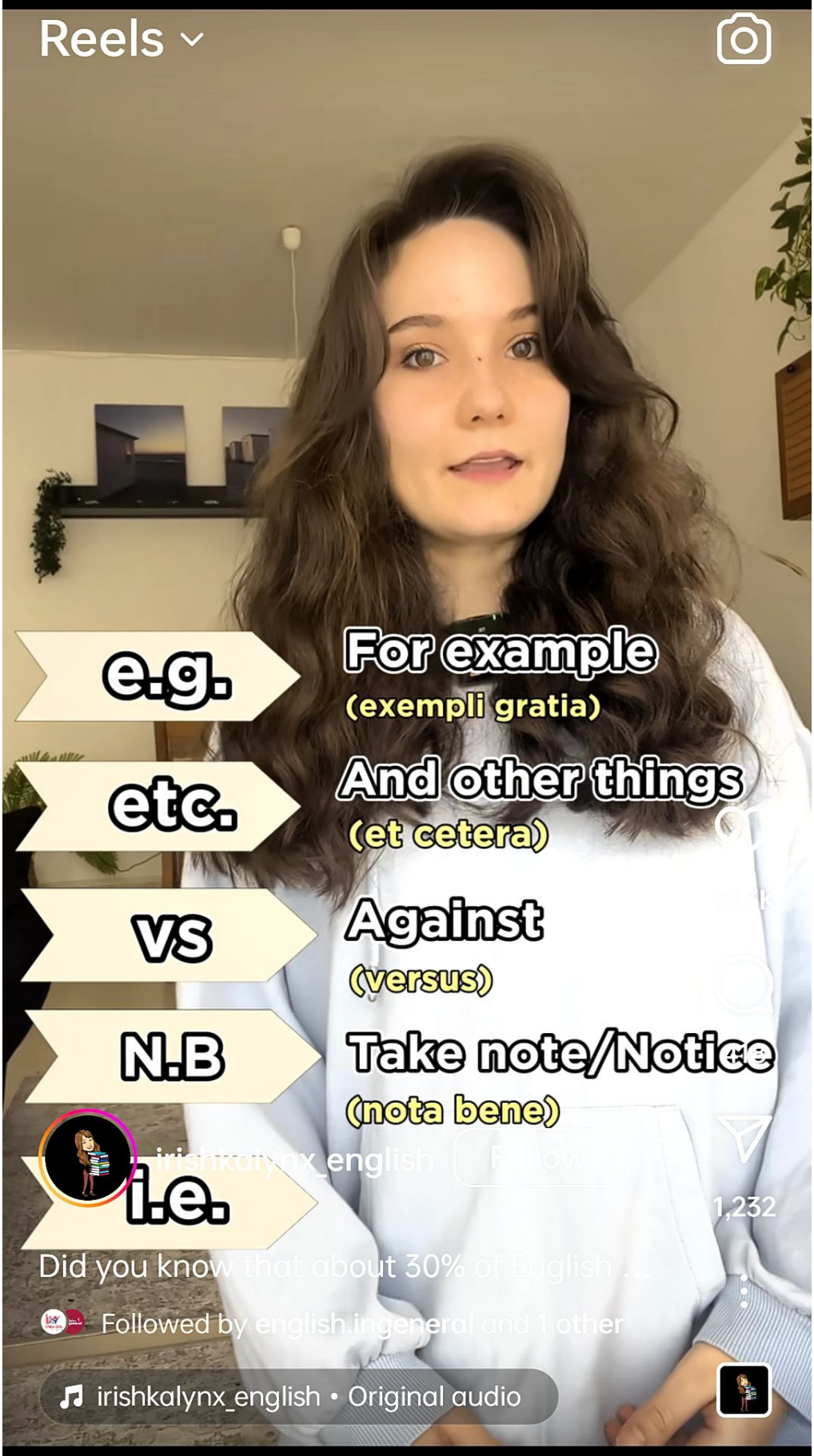

7:12
Reels
Agree
Concur
126
1
8
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Stop using these boring words ❌ ...
ıhrai • Kalaastar (From "Honey 3.0") Yo Yo H

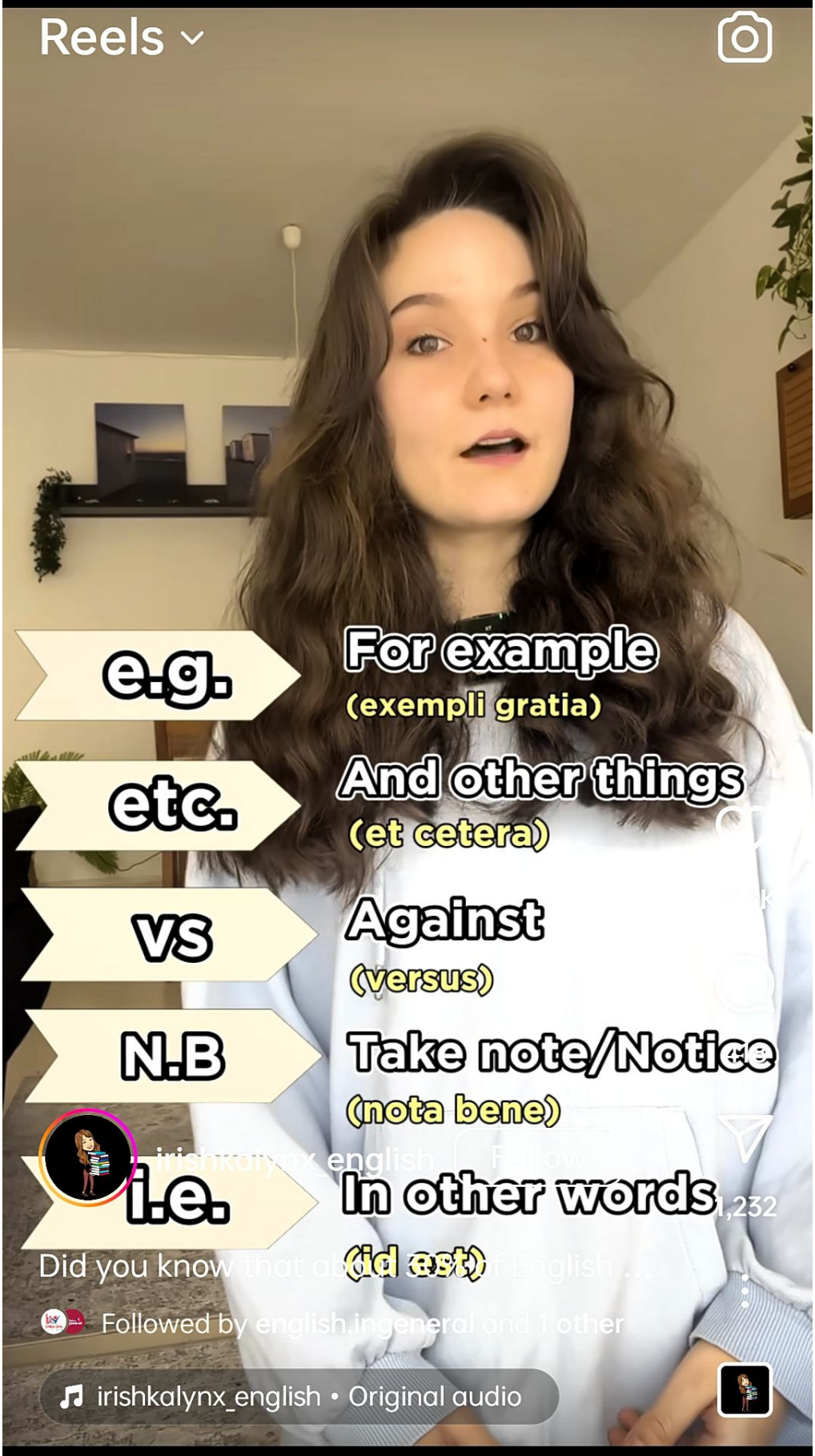

7:12
Reels
Prove
Justify
126
1
8
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Stop using these boring words ❌ ...
aastar (From "Honey 3.0") Yo Yo Honey Singh

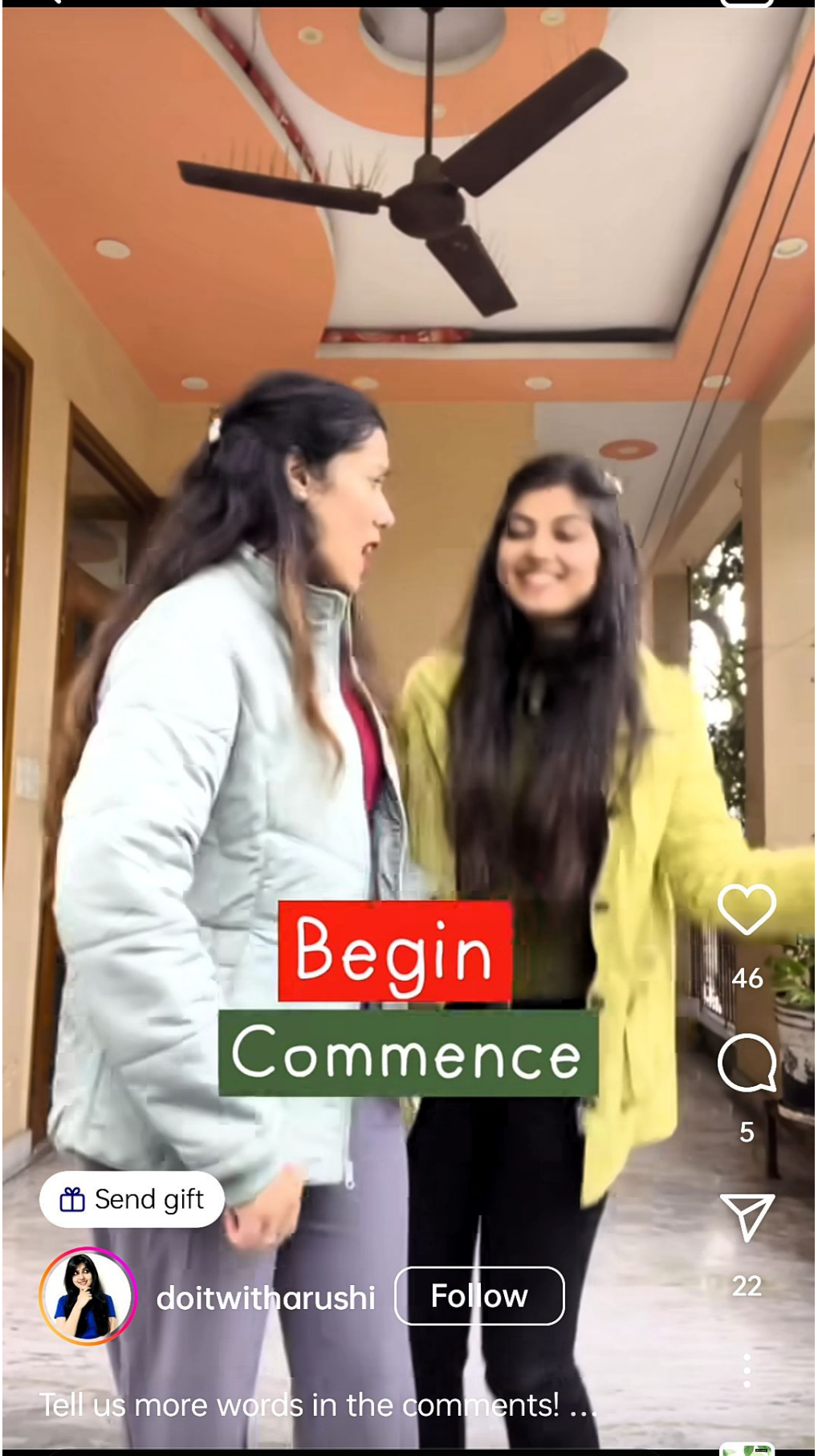

7:12
Reels
Empty
Vacant
126
1
8
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Stop using these boring words ❌ ...
m "Honey 3.0") Yo Yo Honey Singh, Rony Ajn


7:12
Reels
Careful
Cautious
126
1
8
Send gift
learn_english_with_...
Follow
Stop using these boring words ❌ ...
Yo Yo Honey Singh, Rony Ajnali, Gill Ma


BEETLE
BUTTERFLY
CRICKET
CATERPILLAR
LADYBUG
BEE
FLY
MOSQUITO
COCKROACH
SPIDER
178K
714
36.4K
bukku_education
Follow
Learn with me 🐞 ...
Followed by english.ingeneral and 1 other
cation • Original au
Santiago, Chile


Reels
e.g.
For example
(exempli gratia)
etc.
And other things
(et cetera)
vs
Against
(versus)
N.B
Take note/Notice
(nota bene)
i.e.
irishkalynx_english
Follow
1,232
Did you know that about 30% of English ...
Followed by english.ingeneral and 1 other
irishkalynx_english • Original audio


Reels
e.g.
For example
(exempli gratia)
etc.
And other things
(et cetera)
vs
Against
(versus)
N.B
Take note/Notice
(nota bene)
i.e.
In other words
(id est)
irishkalynx_english
Did you know that about 85% of English ...
Followed by english.ingeneral and 1 other
irishkalynx_english • Original audio


Begin
Commence
46
5
22
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Tell us more words in the comments! ...
Talent • New Beginnings (Instrumental) Bea


Understand
Comprehend
46
5
22
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Tell us more words in the comments! ...
t • New Beginnings (Instrumental) Beats by


Support
substantiate
46
5
22
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Tell us more words in the comments! ...
Beginnings (Instrumental)
Beats by Talent


8:02
Reels
Disclose
Reveal
46
5
22
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Tell us more words in the comments! ...
ings (Instrumental)
Beats by Talent • New B


End
Terminate
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Tell us more words in the comments! ...
46
5
22
rumental) Beats by Talent • New Beginning:


उसने अपनी dream vacation
पर जाने के लिए
महीनों से पैसे बचा रखे थे।
379
28
106
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Use of had been + V(ing) ...
rijit Singh, Swanand Kirkire, Ip Singh • Lutt Pu


8:03
Past perfect continuous tense
Had been + V(ing)
379
28
106
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Use of had been + V(ing) ...
ngh, Swanand Kirkire, Ip Singh • Lutt Putt Gay


8:03
Actions or events which started before a particular time in the past and were still in progress up to that time in the past.
379
28
106
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Use of had been + V(ing) ...
Kirkire, Ip Singh • Lutt Putt Gaya (From "Dun


8:03
Ex- He had been saving money for months to take his dream vacation.
379
28
106
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Use of had been + V(ing) ...
Pritam, Arijit Singh, Swan


अगर कल बारिश होगी
तो हम घर पर ही रहेंगे।
1,433
29
582
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Conditional sentences ...


8:03
If it will rain tomorrow,
We will stay indoors.
1,433
29
582
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Conditional sentences ...


If it rains tomorrow,
we will stay indoors.
1,433
29
582
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Conditional sentences ...


8:04
जब मैं वहाँ पहुची,
वह वहाँ से पहले ही जा चुका था।
701
25
422
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
The past perfect tense is formed using ...
an, Threeory Band • Ranvijay's Entry Medley (

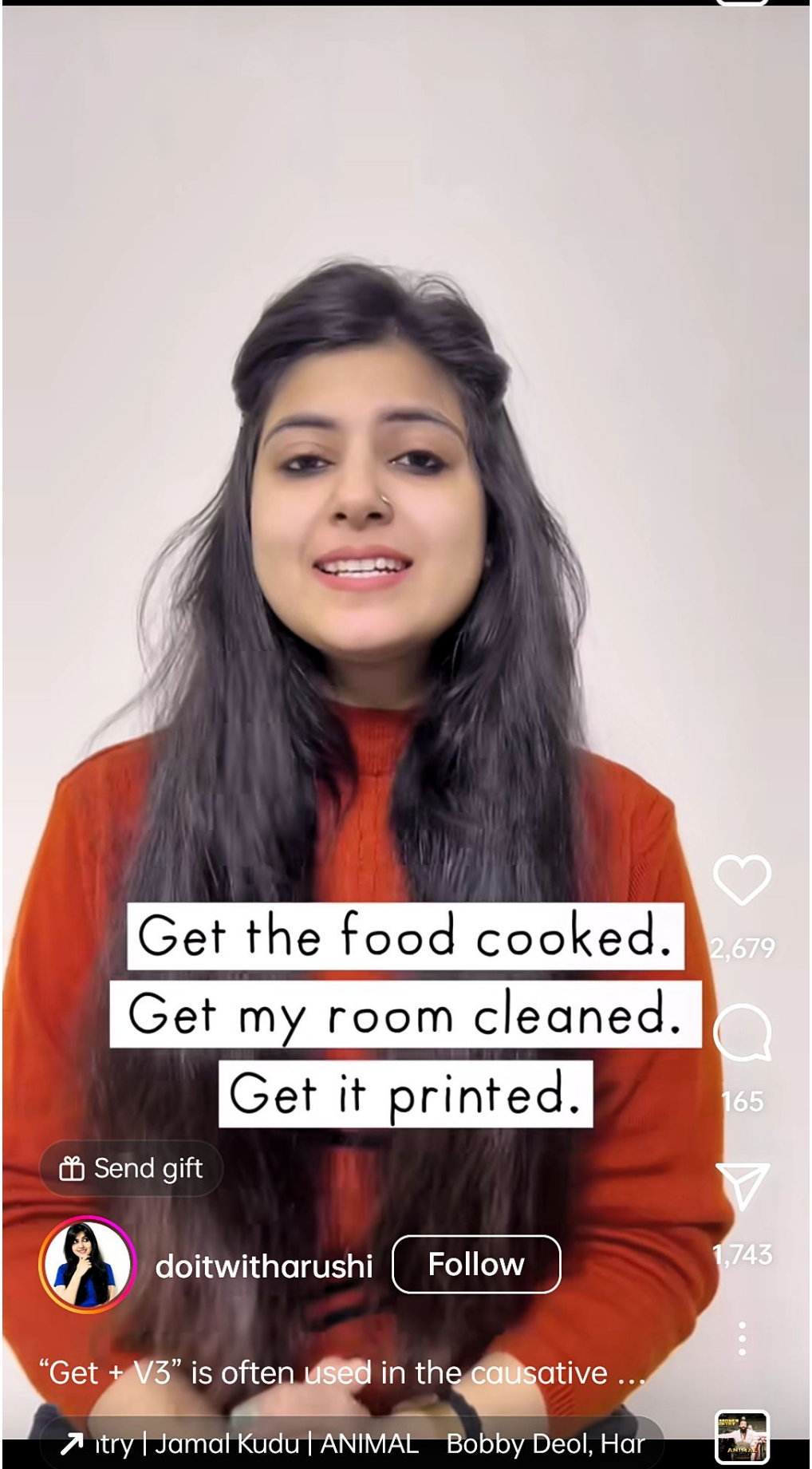

An action that was completed
before another action or
a specific point in the past.
Send gift
Follow
The past perfect tense is formed using ...
701
25
422


8:04
74.0 KB/S
Ex- By the time I arrived, he had already left.
701
25
422
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
The past perfect tense is formed using ...
hreeory Band • Ranvijay's Entry Medley (Fror


An action that was completed before another action or a specific point in the past.
701
25
422
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
The past perfect tense is formed using ...
R. Rahman, Threeory Band • Ranvijay's Entry


Ex- By the time I arrived, he had already left.
Ex- She had studied French before she moved/ going to Paris.
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
The past perfect tense is formed using ...
nd • Ranvijay's Entry Medley (From "ANIMAL")
701
422


खाना बनवा दो।
मेरा room साफ़ करवा दो।
इसका print out निकलवा दो।
2,679
165
1,743
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
“Get + V3” is often used in the causative ...
vardhan Rameshwar, Choir • Abrar’s Entry | J


8:05
Get the food cooked.
Get my room cleaned.
Get it printed.
2,679
165
1,743
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
“Get + V3” is often used in the causative ...
ıtry | Jamal Kudu | ANIMAL Bobby Deol, Har

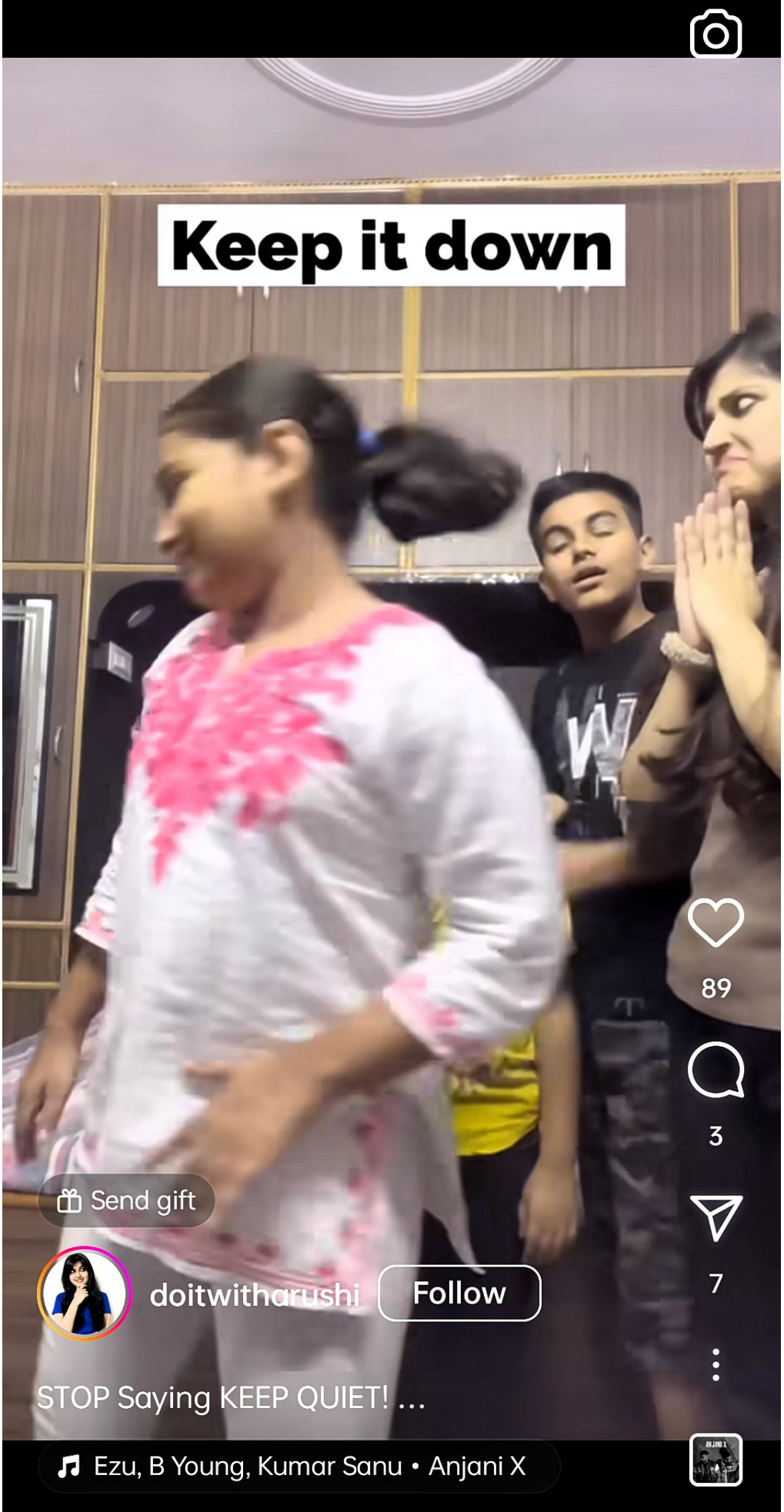

You are not
worth your salt.
तुम भरोसे के लायक़ नहीं हो।
8,357
38
6,892
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Daily sentences for daily use ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio

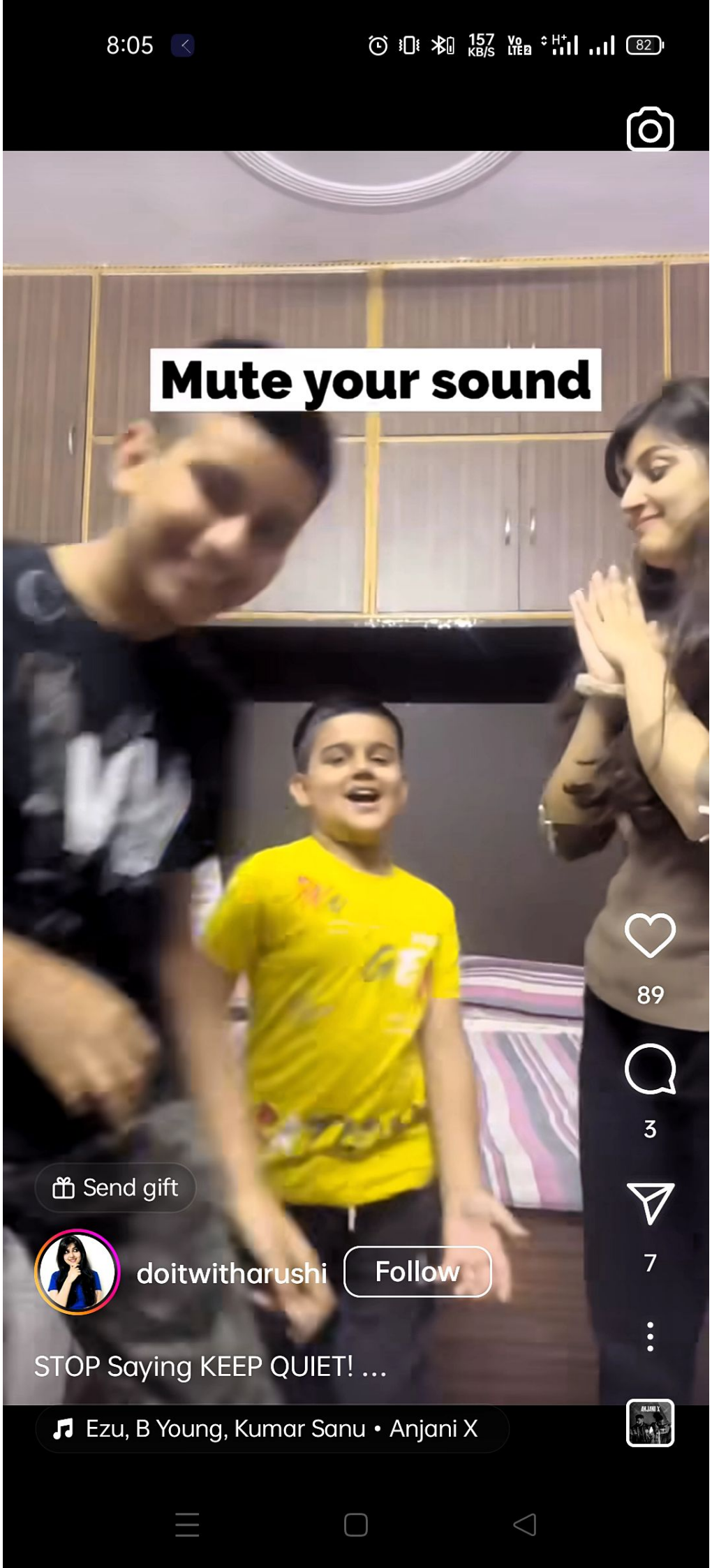

Don't eat my brain.
मेरी जान मत खाओ।
8,357
38
6,892
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Daily sentences for daily use ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


I was just
pulling your leg.
मैं तो बस मज़ाक़ कर रही थी।
8,357
38
6,892
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Daily sentences for daily use ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


Give me some breathing room.
मुझे छोड़ दो।
8,357
38
6,892
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Daily sentences for daily use ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


STOP
Saying
Keep Quiet
89
3
7
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
STOP Saying KEEP QUIET! ...
Ezu, B Young, Kumar Sanu • Anjani X


Keep it down
89
3
7
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
STOP Saying KEEP QUIET! ...
Ezu, B Young, Kumar Sanu • Anjani X


8:05
Mute your sound
89
3
7
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
STOP Saying KEEP QUIET! ...
Ezu, B Young, Kumar Sanu • Anjani X


Hush now!
89
3
7
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
STOP Saying KEEP QUIET! ...
Ezu, B Young, Kumar Sanu • Anjani X


Tempting
92
6
14
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
STOP Saying TASTY ...
Kidjaywest, Talwiinder, Ikath • Funk Song


scrumptious
Tempting
92
6
14
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
STOP Saying TASTY ...
Kidjaywest, Talwiinder, Ikath • Funk Song

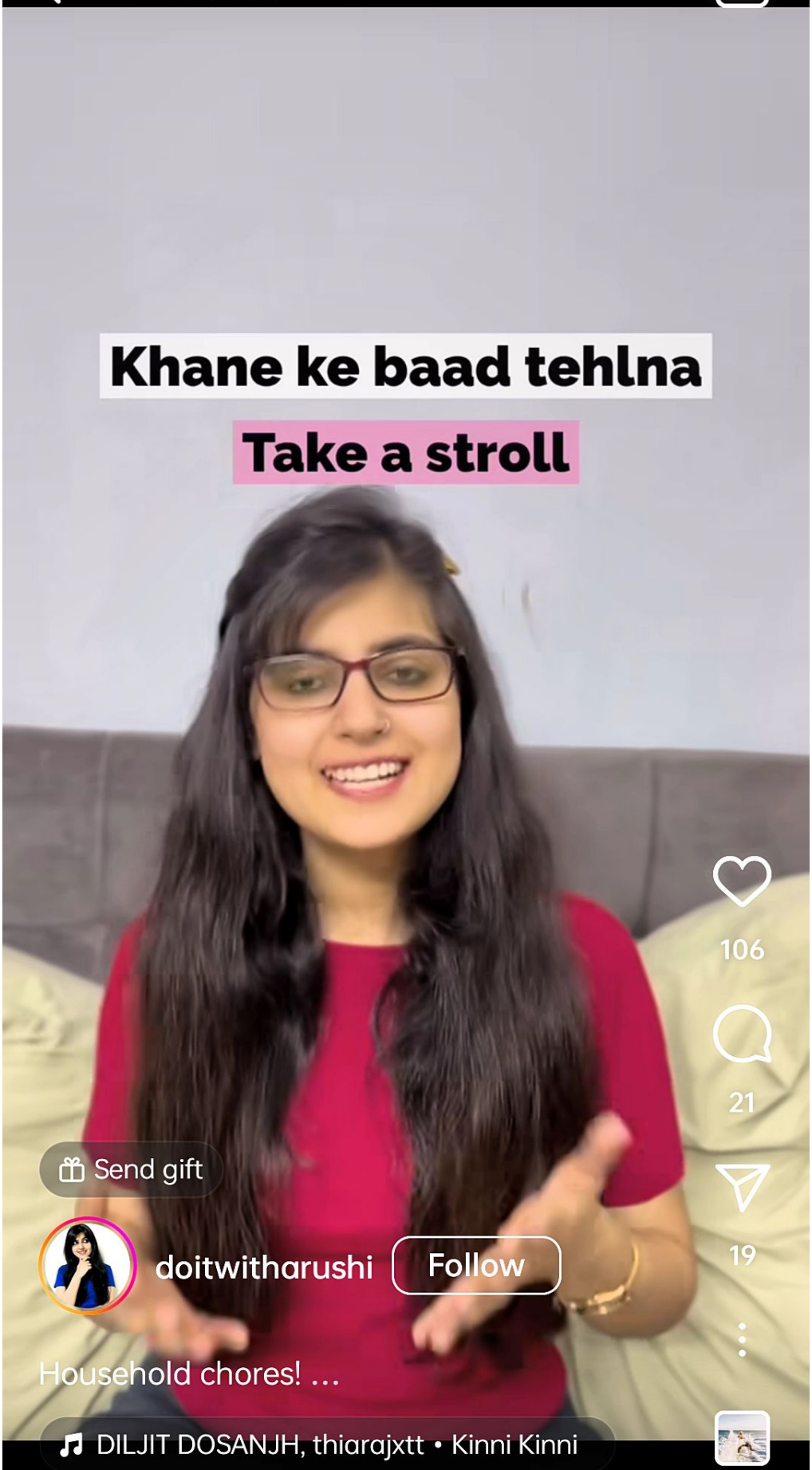

Mouthwatering
scrumptious
Satisfying Tempting
92
6
Send gift
14
doitwitharushi
Follow
STOP Saying TASTY ...
Kidjaywest, Talwiinder, Ikath • Funk Song

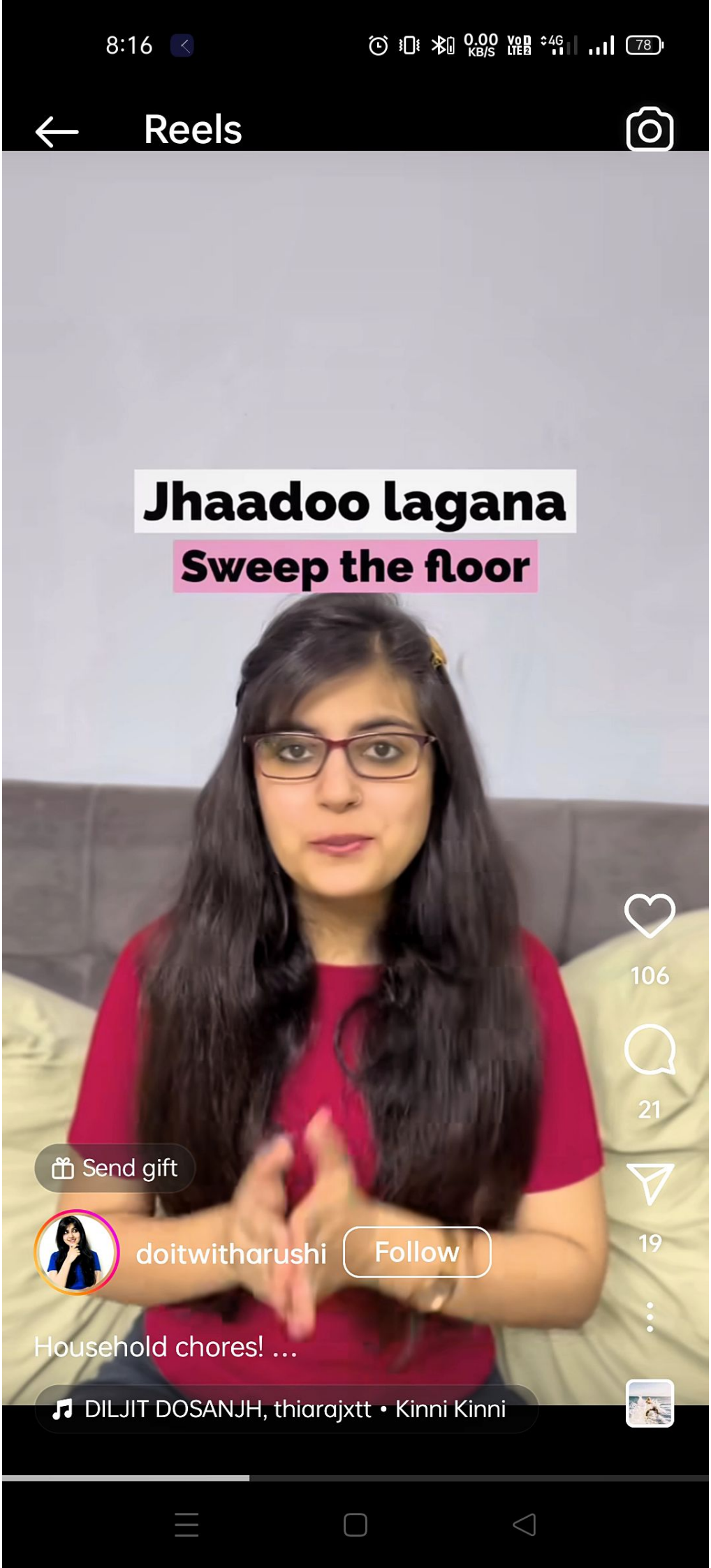

Mouthwatering
scrumptious
Tempting
92
6
14
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
STOP Saying TASTY ...
Kidjaywest, Talwiinder, Ikath • Funk Song


8:06
Delightful
Mouthwatering
scrumptious
Satisfying Tempting
92
6
Send gift
14
doitwitharushi
Follow
STOP Saying TASTY ...
Kidjaywest, Talwiinder, Ikath • Funk Song


Delightful Delicious
Mouthwatering
scrumptious
Satisfying Tempting
Read Caption
92
6
Send gift
14
doitwitharushi
Follow
STOP Saying TASTY ...
Kidjaywest, Talwiinder, Ikath • Funk Song


8:16
Reels
Bartan saaf karna
Do the dishes
106
21
19
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Household chores! ...
DILJIT DOSANJH, thiarajxtt • Kinni Kinni


8:16
Reels
Khane ke baad tehlna
Take a stroll
106
21
19
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Household chores! ...
DILJIT DOSANJH, thiarajxtt • Kinni Kinni

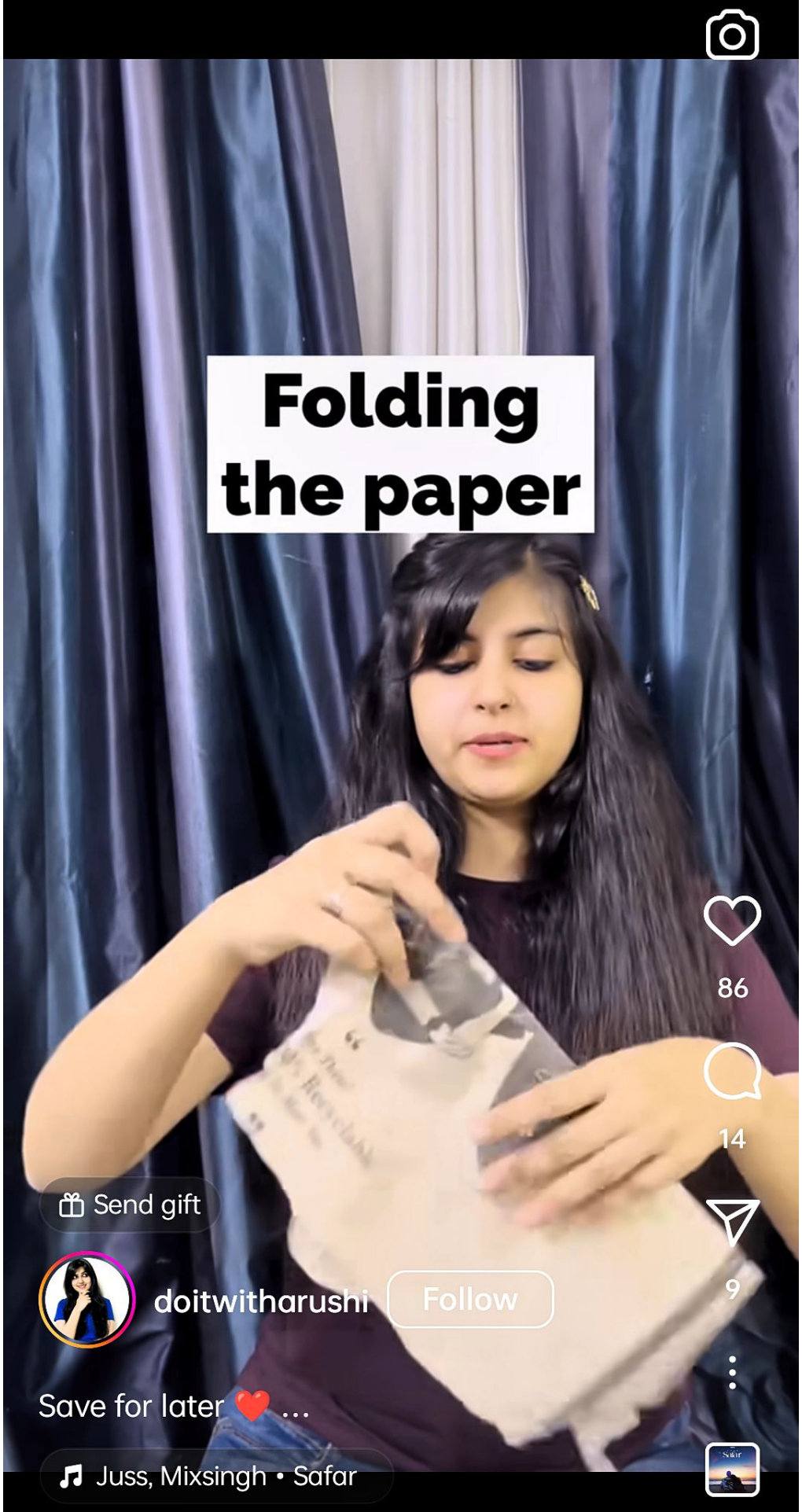

8:16
Reels
Jhaadoo lagana
Sweep the floor
106
21
19
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Household chores! ...
DILJIT DOSANJH, thiarajxtt • Kinni Kinni


8:16
Reels
Pocha lagana
Mop the floor
106
21
19
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Household chores! ...
DILJIT DOSANJH, thiarajxtt • Kinni Kinni


ये तो मेरे दायें हाथ का खेल है।
It's a piece of cake for me.
115
12
22
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later ☒ ...
Diljit Dosanjh, Sia, Greg Kurstin • Hass Hass


ये मेरे बस की बात नहीं।
It's not my cup of tea.
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later ☒ ...
Diljit Dosanjh, Sia, Greg Kurstin • Hass Hass
115
12
22


चलो बताओ वहाँ पे क्या हुआ?
Spill the tea.
115
12
22
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later ☒ ...
Diljit Dosanjh, Sia, Greg Kurstin • Hass Hass


Folding the paper
86
14
9
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later ❤️ ...
Juss, Mixsingh • Safar

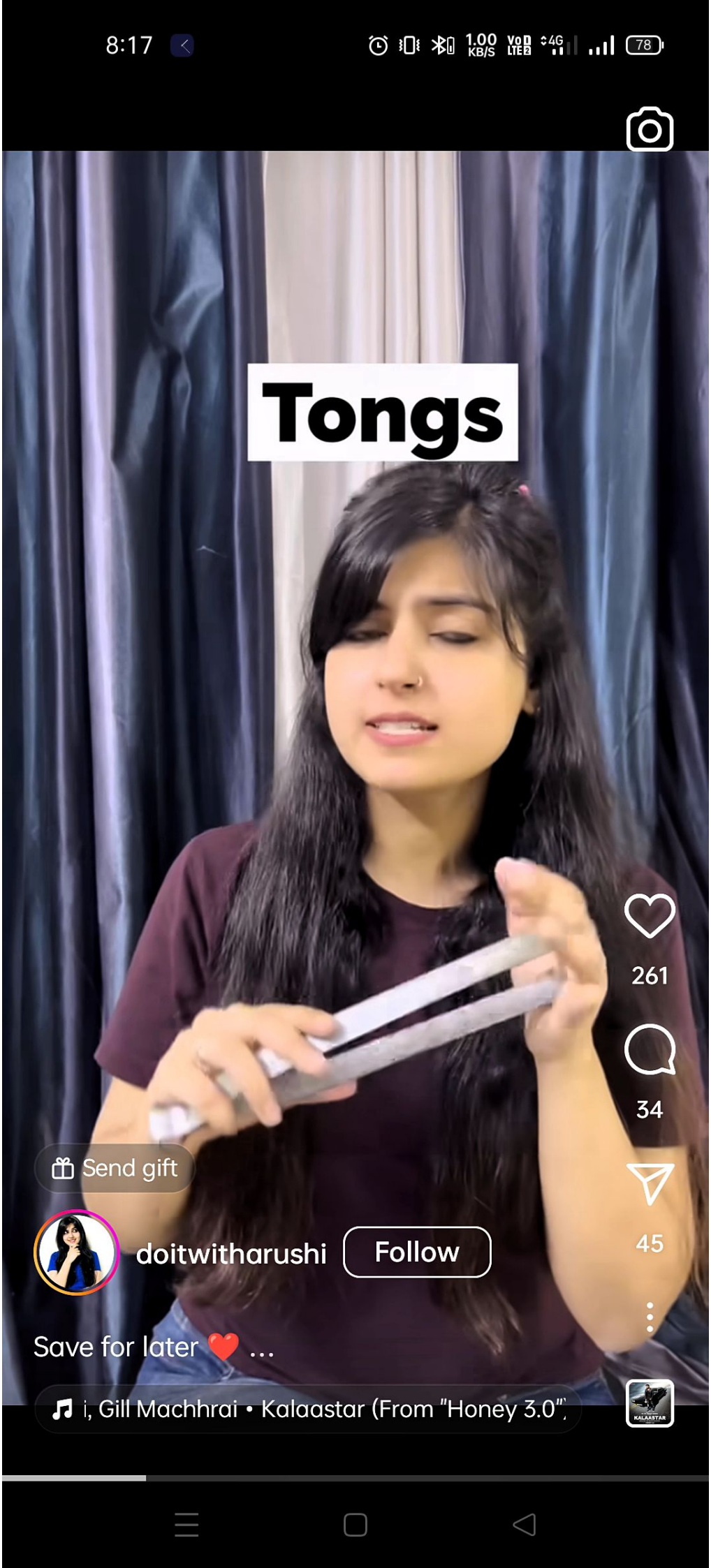

Creasing the paper
86
14
9
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later ❤️ ...
Juss, Mixsingh • Safar


8:17
Cutting the paper
86
14
9
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later ❤️ ...
Juss, Mixsingh • Safar


8:17
Rip off
the paper
86
14
9
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later ❤️ ...
Juss, Mixsingh • Safar

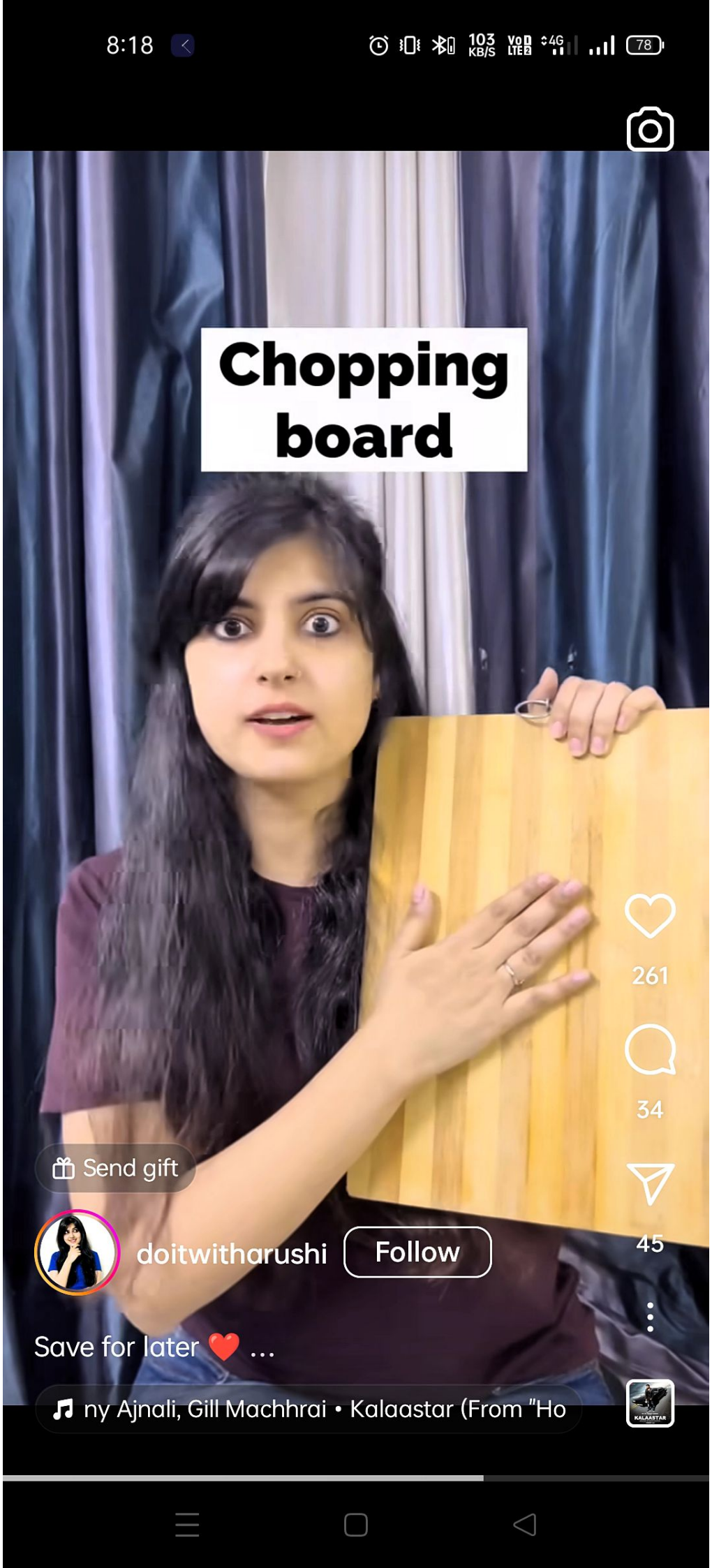

8:17
Crumple the paper
86
14
9
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later ❤️ ...
Juss, Mixsingh • Safar


8:17
105 KB/S
78
Bowl
261
34
45
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later ❤️ ...
Singh, Rony Ajnali, Gill Machhrai • Kalaastar


8:17
Tongs
261
34
45
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later ❤️ ...
i, Gill Machhrai • Kalaastar (From "Honey 3.0")

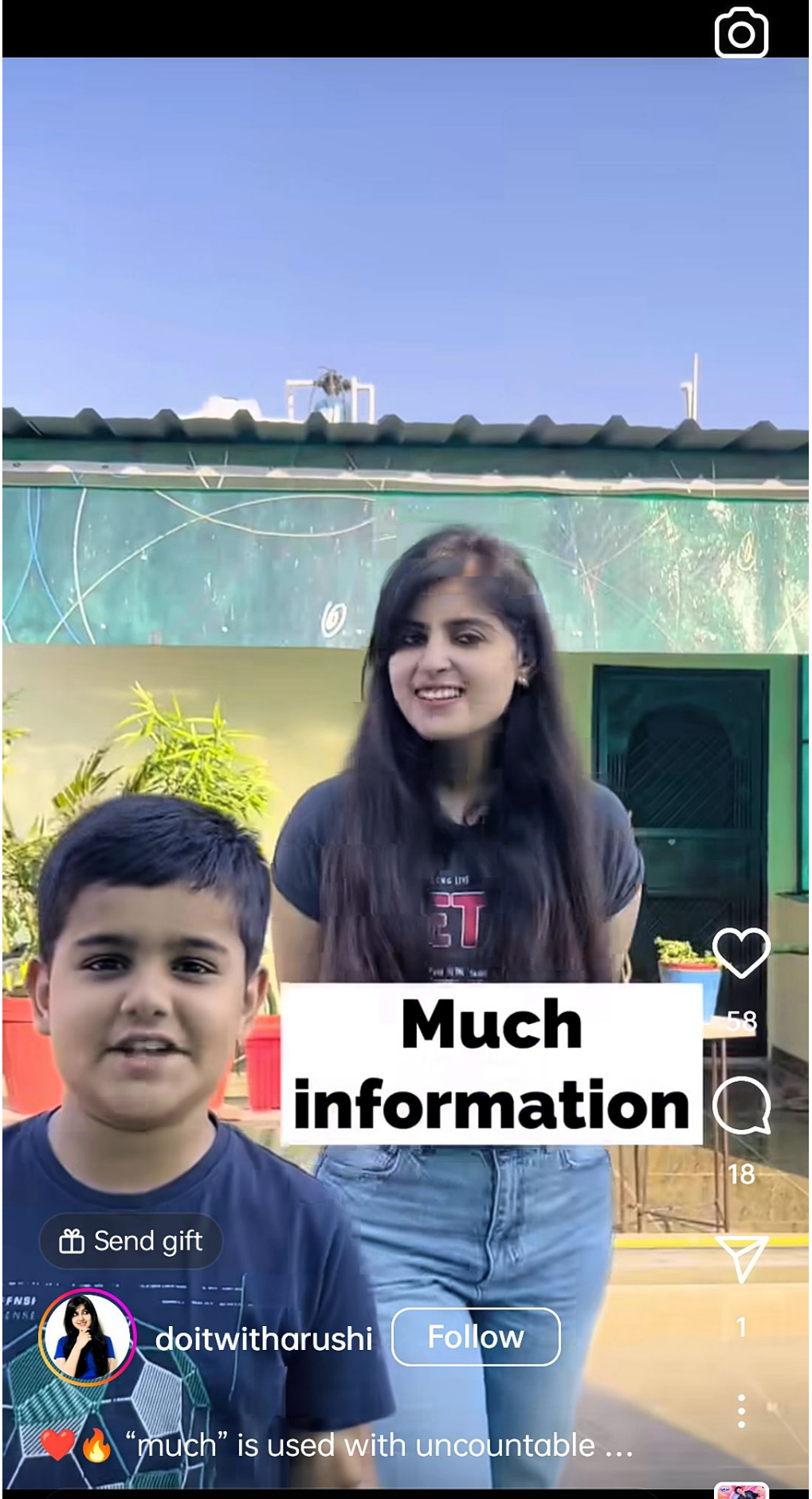

8:17
Ladle
261
34
45
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later ❤️ ...
i • Kalaastar (From "Honey 3.0") Yo Yo Hone

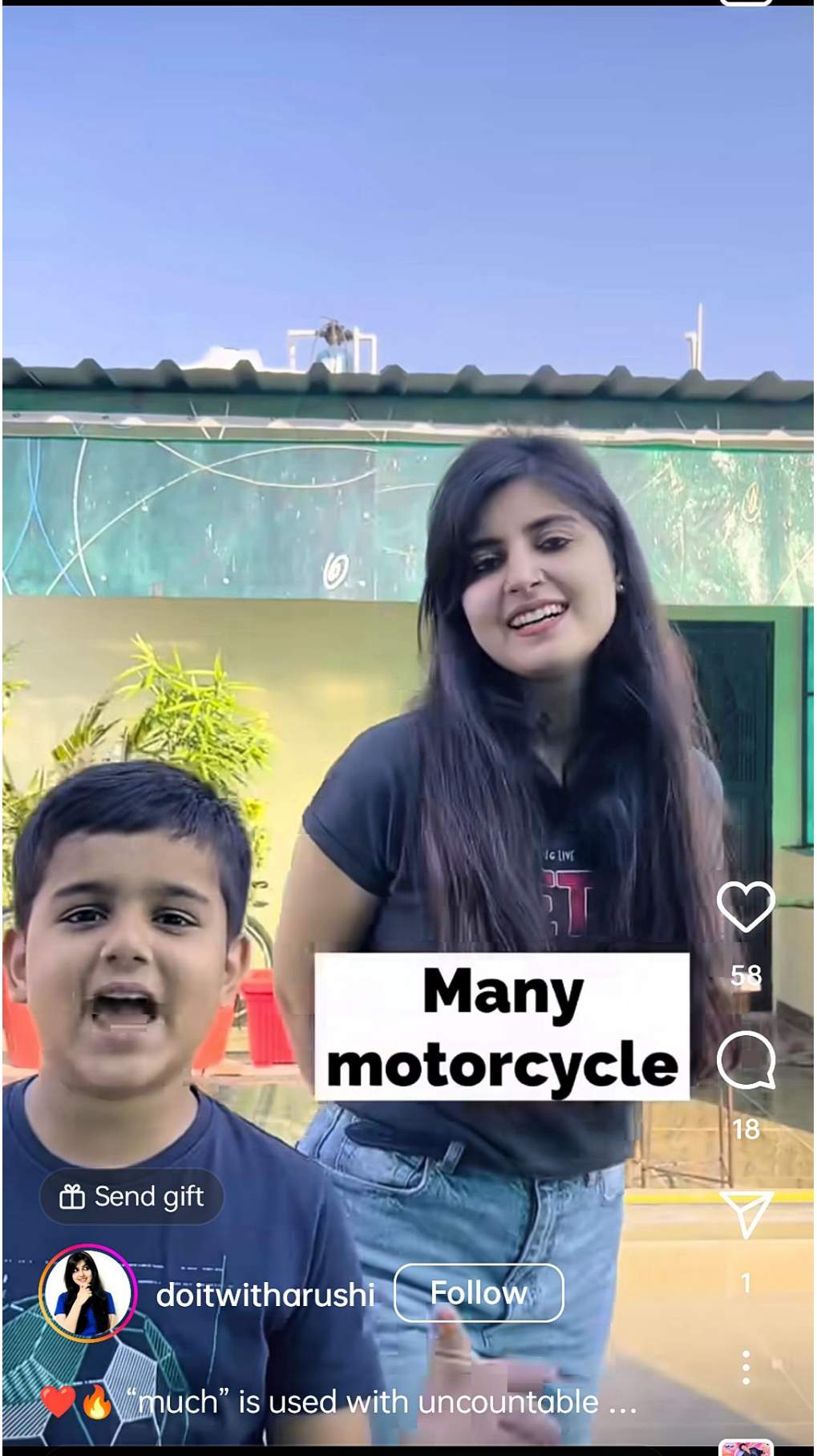

Chopsticks
261
34
45
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later ❤️ ...
oney 3.0") Yo Yo Honey Singh, Rony Ajnali, G


8:18
Chopping board
261
34
45
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later ❤️ ...
ny Ajnali, Gill Machhrai • Kalaastar (From "Ho


Many VS Much
58
18
1
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
❤️🔥 “much” is used with uncountable ...
dit Narayan, Neha Kakkar, Palak Muchhal, Raj

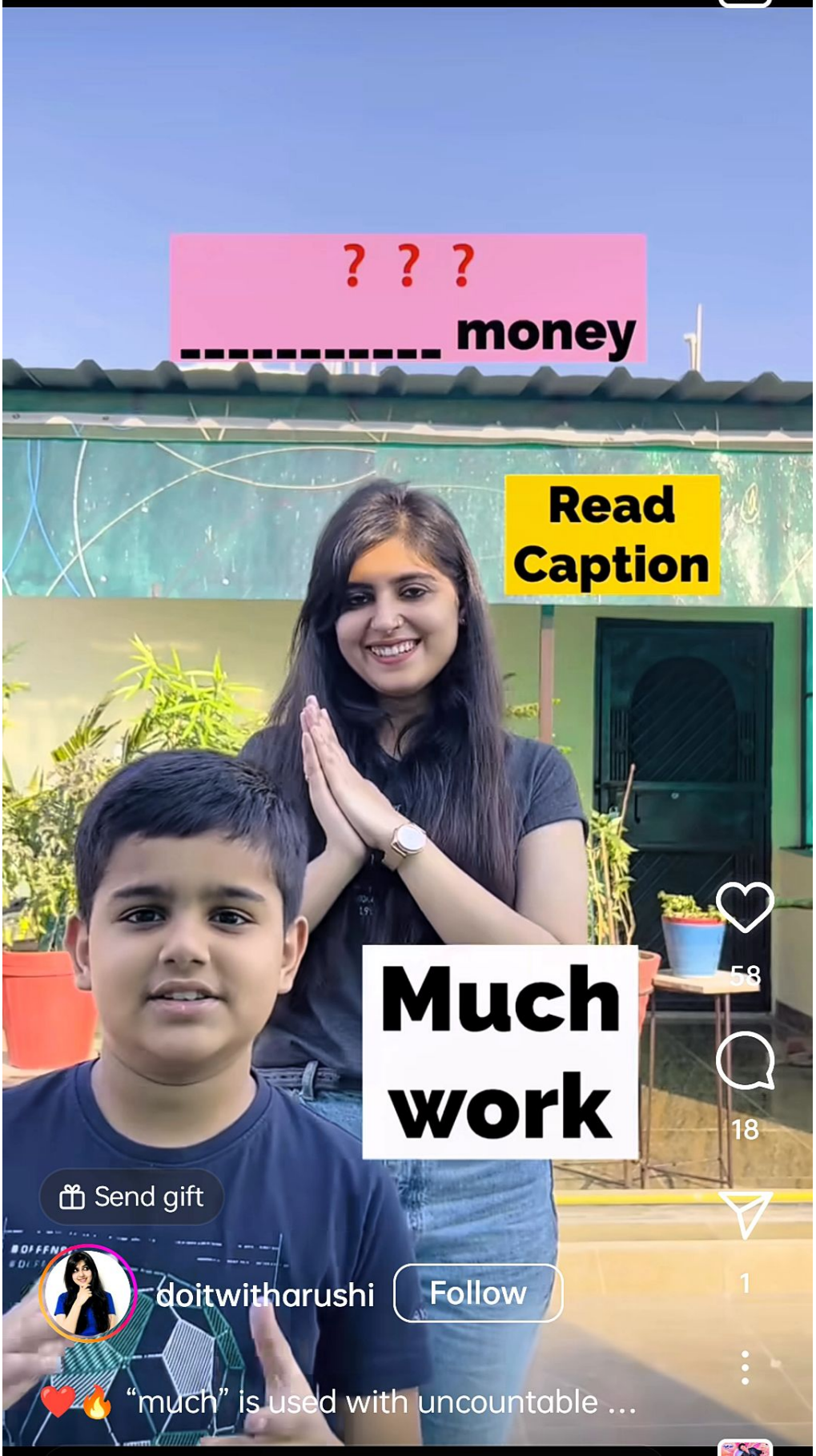

Many
books
58
18
1
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
❤️🔥 “much” is used with uncountable ...
ırayan, Neha Kakkar, Palak Muchhal, Raja Ha:


Much information
58
18
1
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
❤️🔥 “much” is used with uncountable ...
, Neha Kakkar, Palak Muchhal, Raja Hassan,


Many
motorcycle
58
18
1
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
❤️🔥 “much” is used with uncountable ...
Kakkar, Palak Muchhal, Raja Hassan, Tanishl

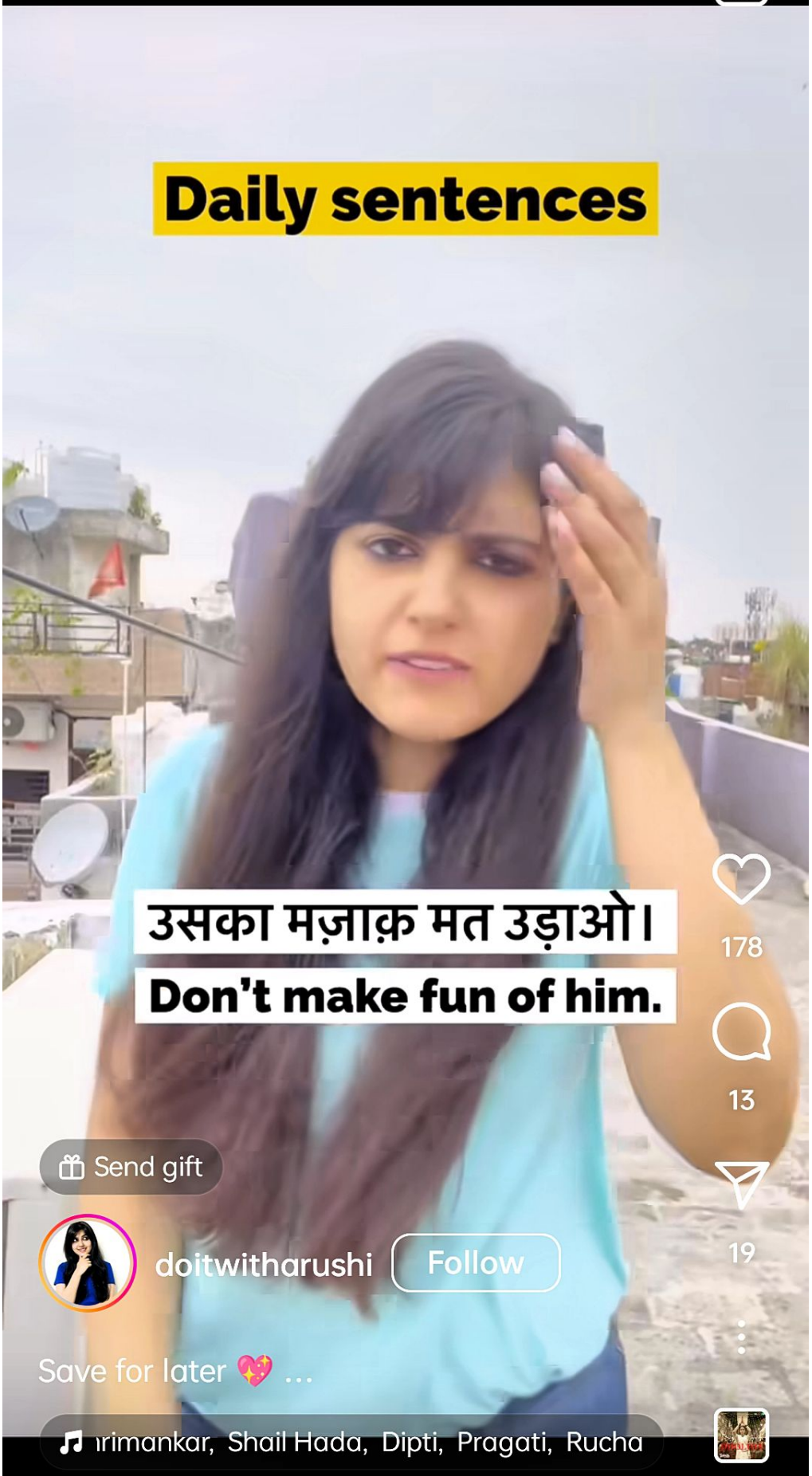

Much
rice
58
18
1
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
❤️🔥 “much” is used with uncountable ...
ır, Palak Muchhal, Raja Hassan, Tanishk Bagcl


Many plants
58
18
1
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
❤️🔥 “much” is used with uncountable ...
Muchhal, Raja Hassan, Tanishk Bagchi, Dj Sta


? ? ?
_____ money
Read Caption
Much work
58
18
1
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
❤️🔥 “much” is used with uncountable ...
hal, Raja Hassan, Tanishk Bagchi, Dj Star, Dj Is


8:18
0.15 KB/S
77
ख़ाना फीका है।
The food is insipid.
144
27
8
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later ❤️ ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:19
0.00 KB/S
77
ख़ाना कड़वा है।
The food is bitter.
144
27
8
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later ❤️ ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


Daily sentences
उसका मज़ाक़ मत उड़ाओ।
Don't make fun of him.
178
13
19
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later 💖 ...
rimankar, Shail Hada, Dipti, Pragati, Rucha


Daily sentences
मुझे कुछ नहीं पता।
I know nothing.
178
13
19
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later 💖 ...
Shail Hada, Dipti, Pragati, Rucha, Arohi, Ar


8:19
Reels
Daily sentences
मुझे कुछ नहीं पता।
I know nothing.
178
13
19
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later 💖 ...
Shail Hada, Dipti, Pragati, Rucha, Arohi, Arc

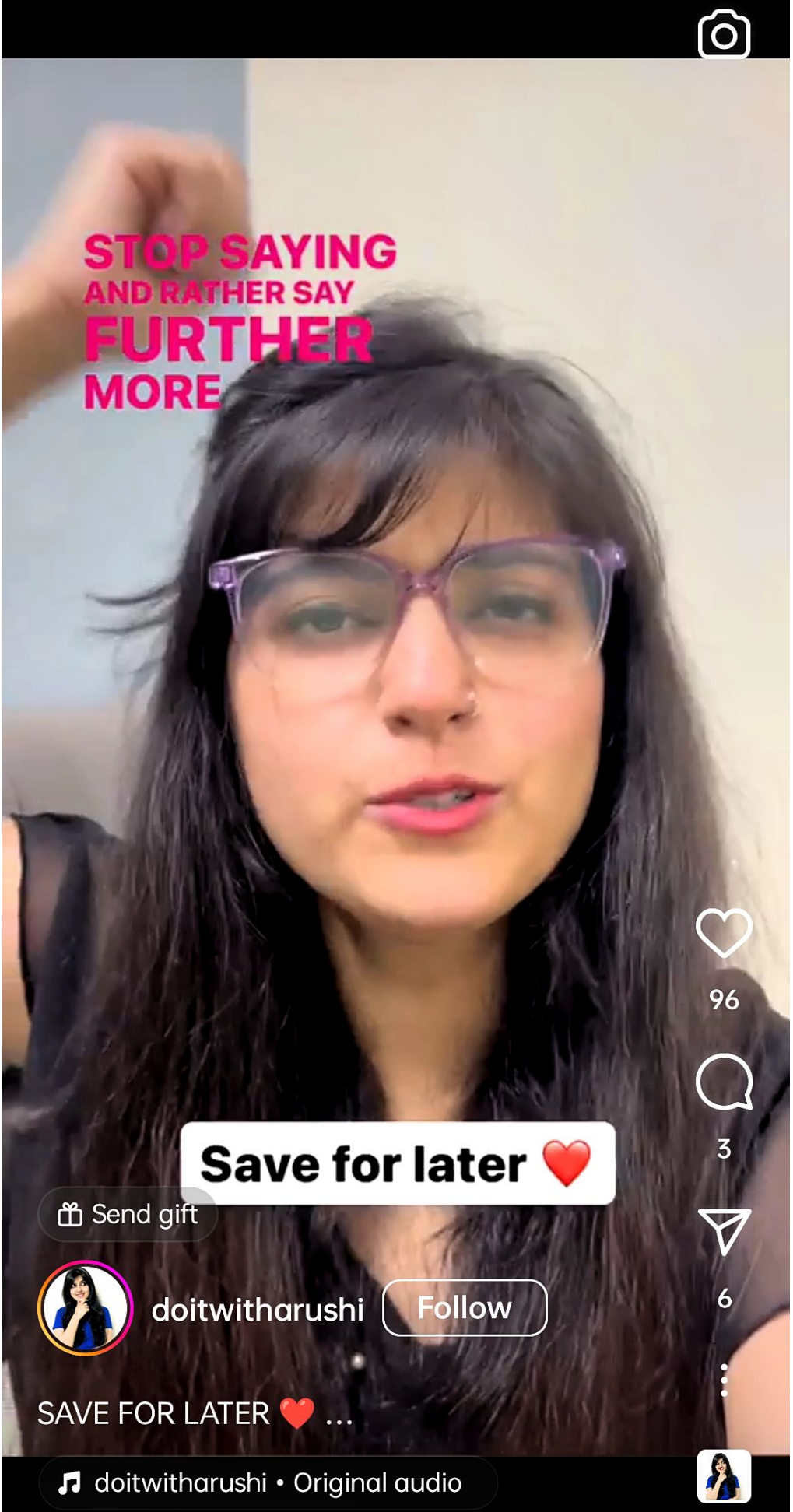

8:19
Reels
Daily sentences
मुझे नयी dress दिलवा दो।
Buy me a new dress.
178
13
19
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later 💖 ...
pti, Pragati, Rucha, Arohi, Archana, Sanjay


Reels
Daily sentences
नंगे पैर मत चलो।
Don't walk barefoot.
178
13
19
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later 💖 ...
Rucha, Arohi, Archana, Sanjay Leela Bhans

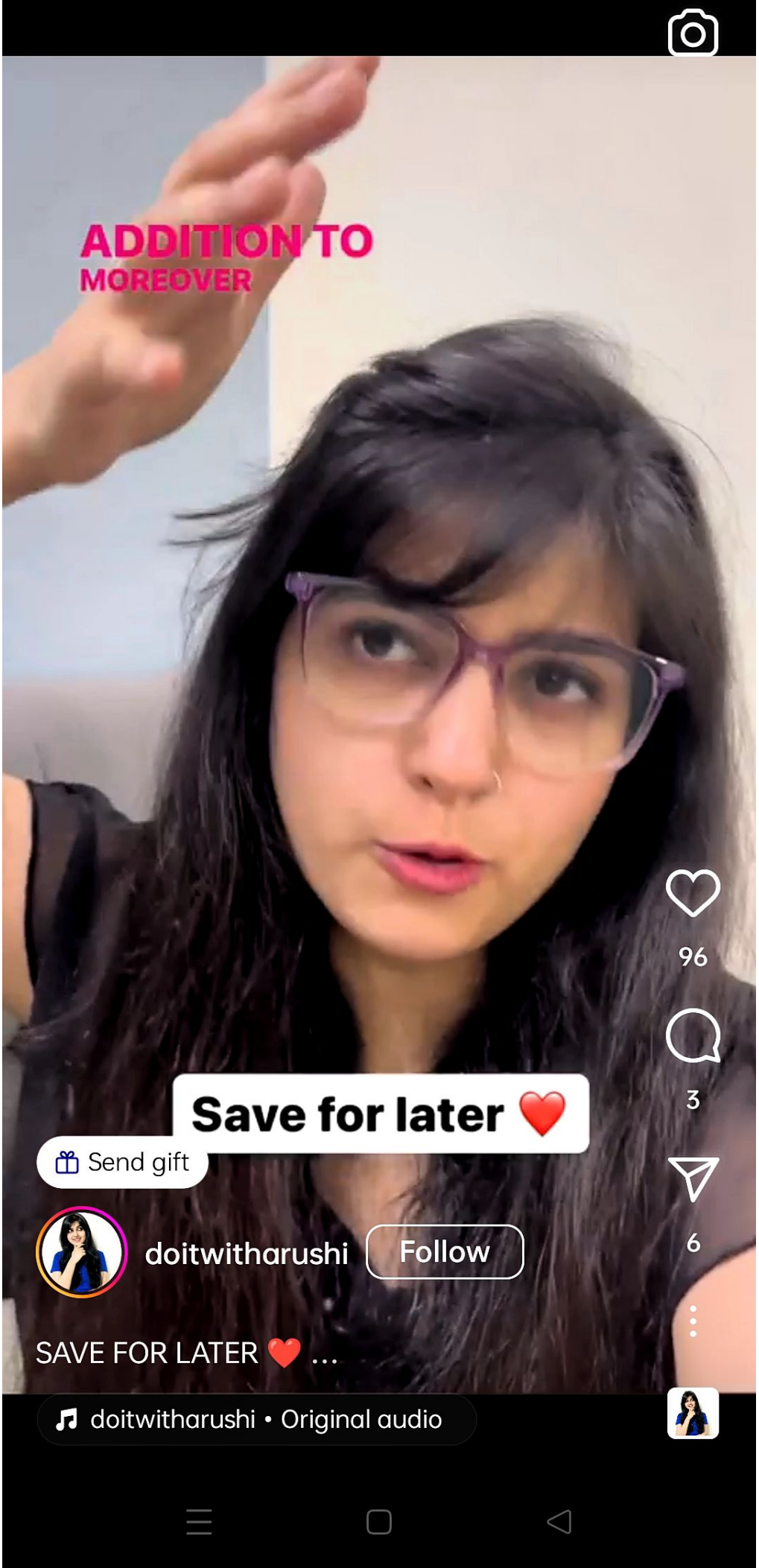

8:19
Reels
Daily sentences
मैं थक गई हूँ।
I'm exhausted.
178
13
19
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later 💖 ...
Archana, Sanjay Leela Bhansali • Dholida -

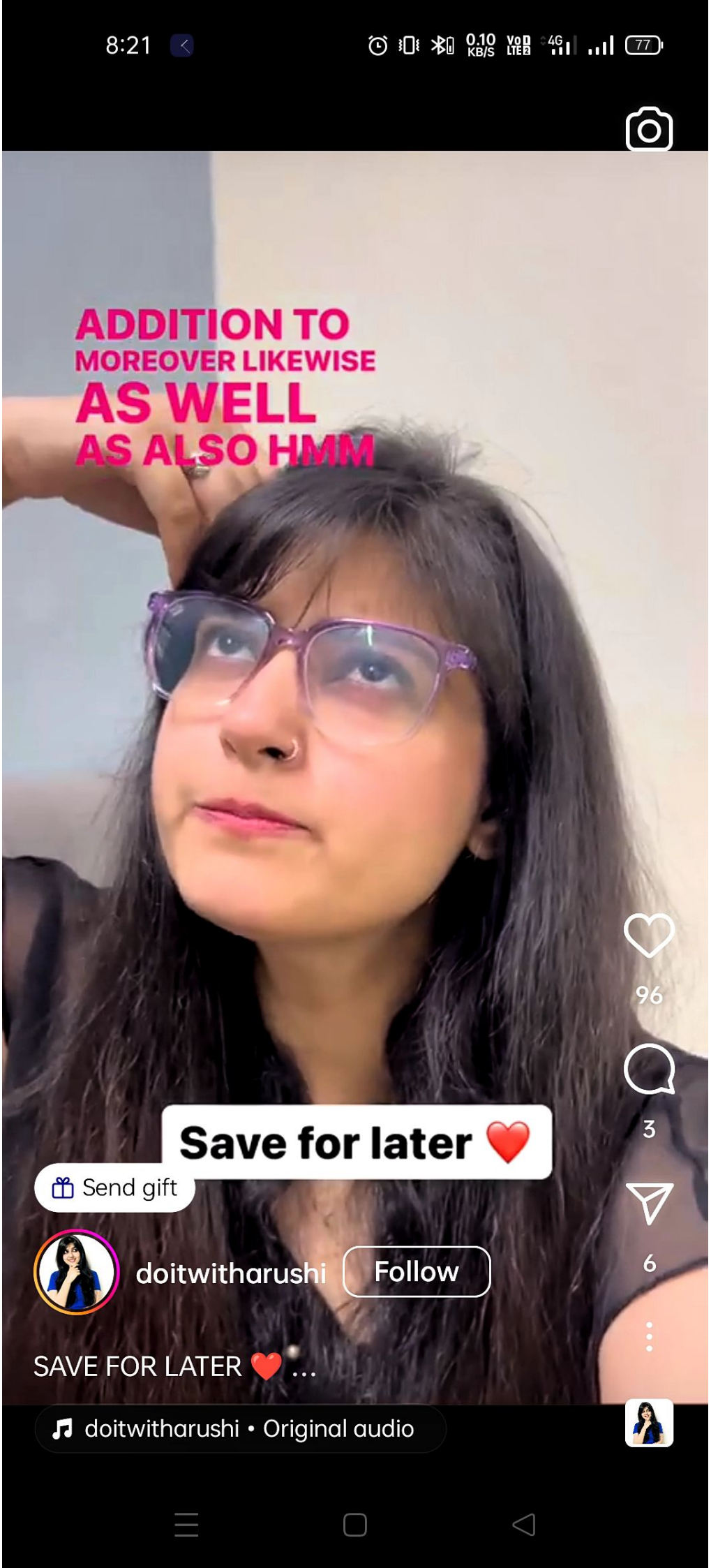

8:19
Reels
Daily sentences
चलो आराम करने दो।
Let me take some rest.
178
13
19
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later 💖 ...
Sanjay Leela Bhansali • Dholida - Gangubai K


8:20
144 KB/S
77
पानी झूठा है
In English
The water is sipped.
182
35
Send gift
5
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later ❤️ ...
Studio Bharat Aditya Gadhvi, Achint • Khal


STOP SAYING
AND RATHER SAY
FURTHER
MORE
Save for later ❤️
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
SAVE FOR LATER ❤️ ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio
96
3
6


8:21
STOP SAYING
AND RATHER SAY
FURTHER
MORE
ADDITIONALLY
96
3
6
Save for later ❤️
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
SAVE FOR LATER ❤️ ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio

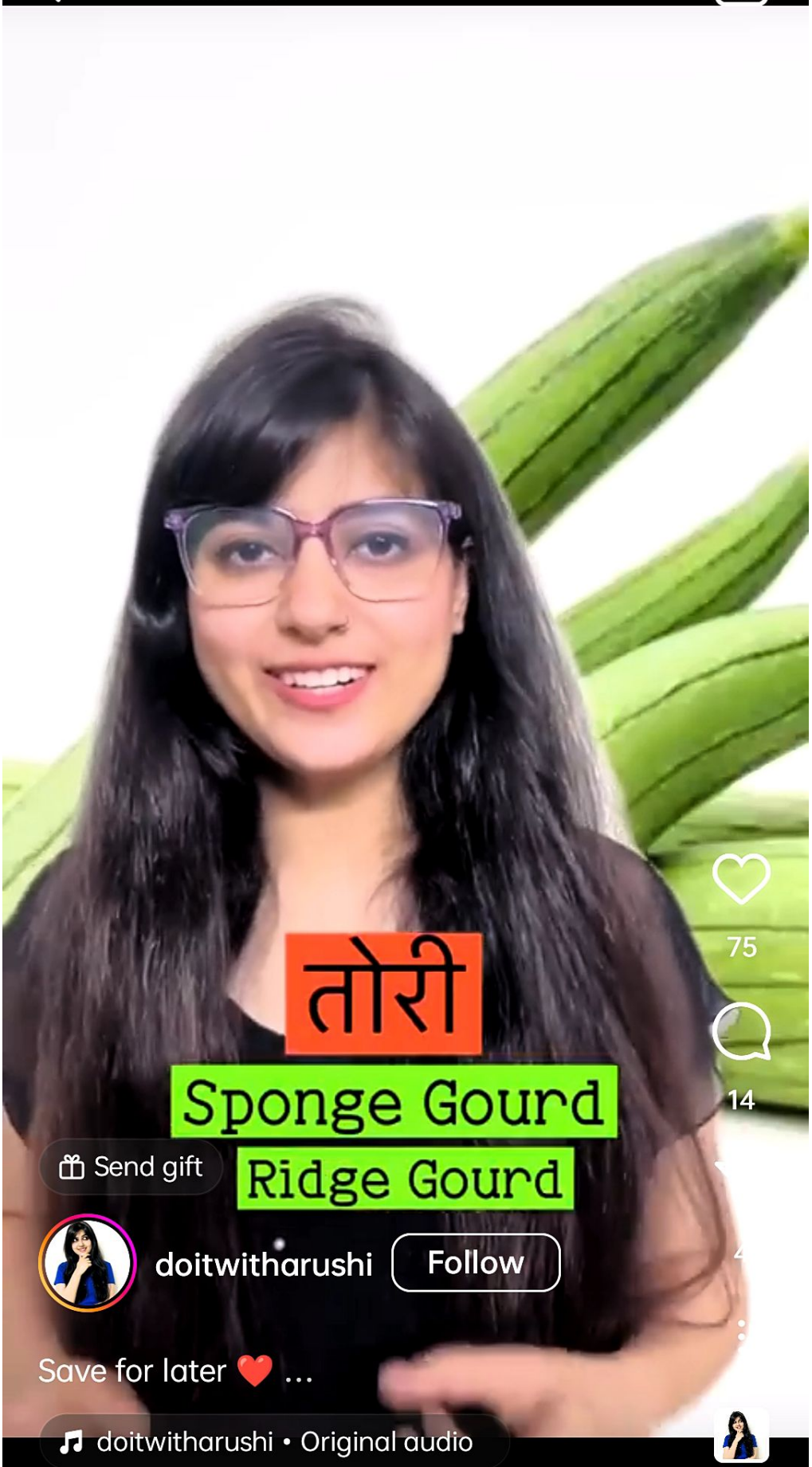

8:21
ADDITION TO
MOREOVER
96
3
6
Save for later ❤️
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
SAVE FOR LATER ❤️ ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio

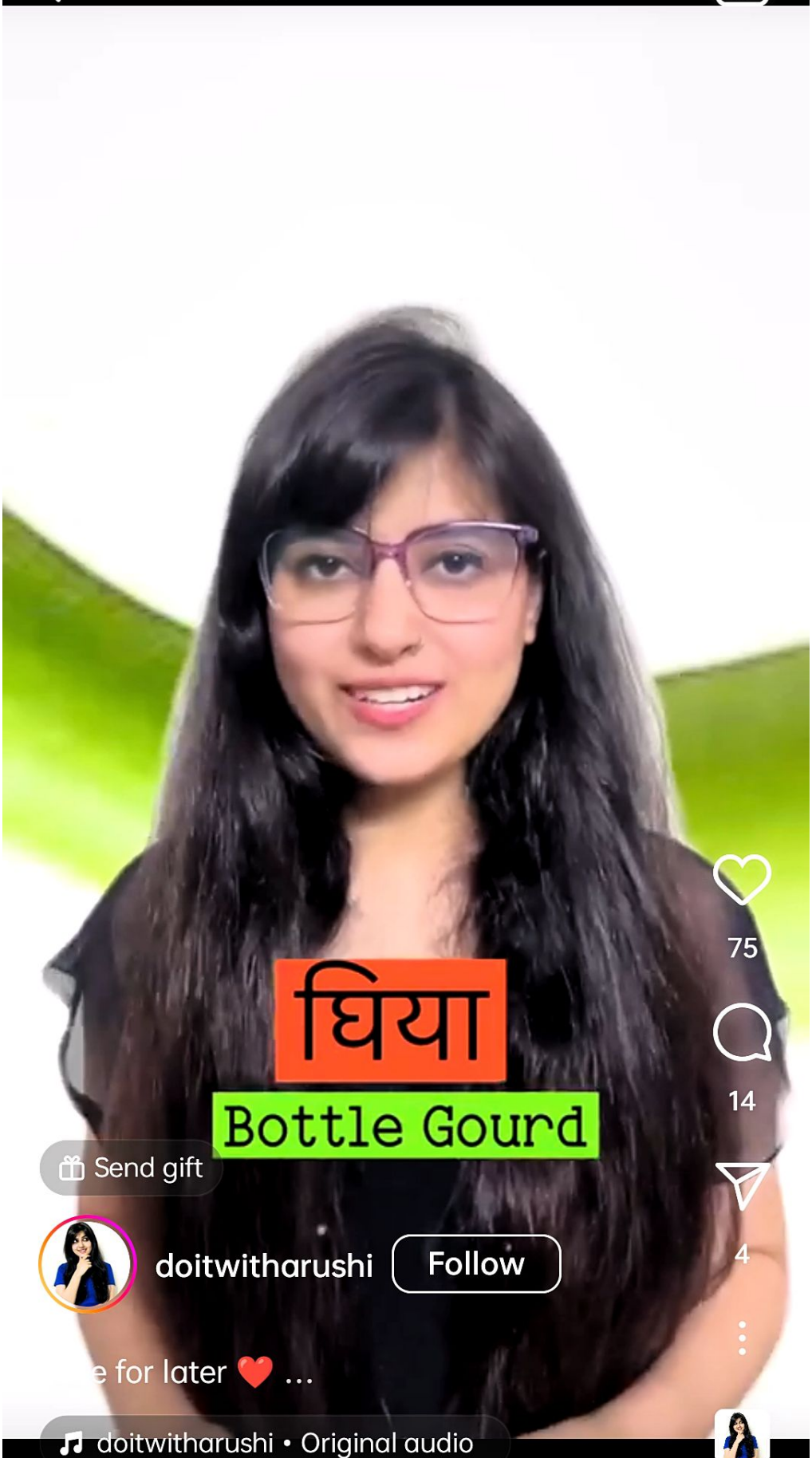

8:21
ADDITION TO
MOREOVER LIKEWISE
AS WELL
AS ALSO HMM
96
3
6
Save for later ❤️
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
SAVE FOR LATER ❤️ ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio

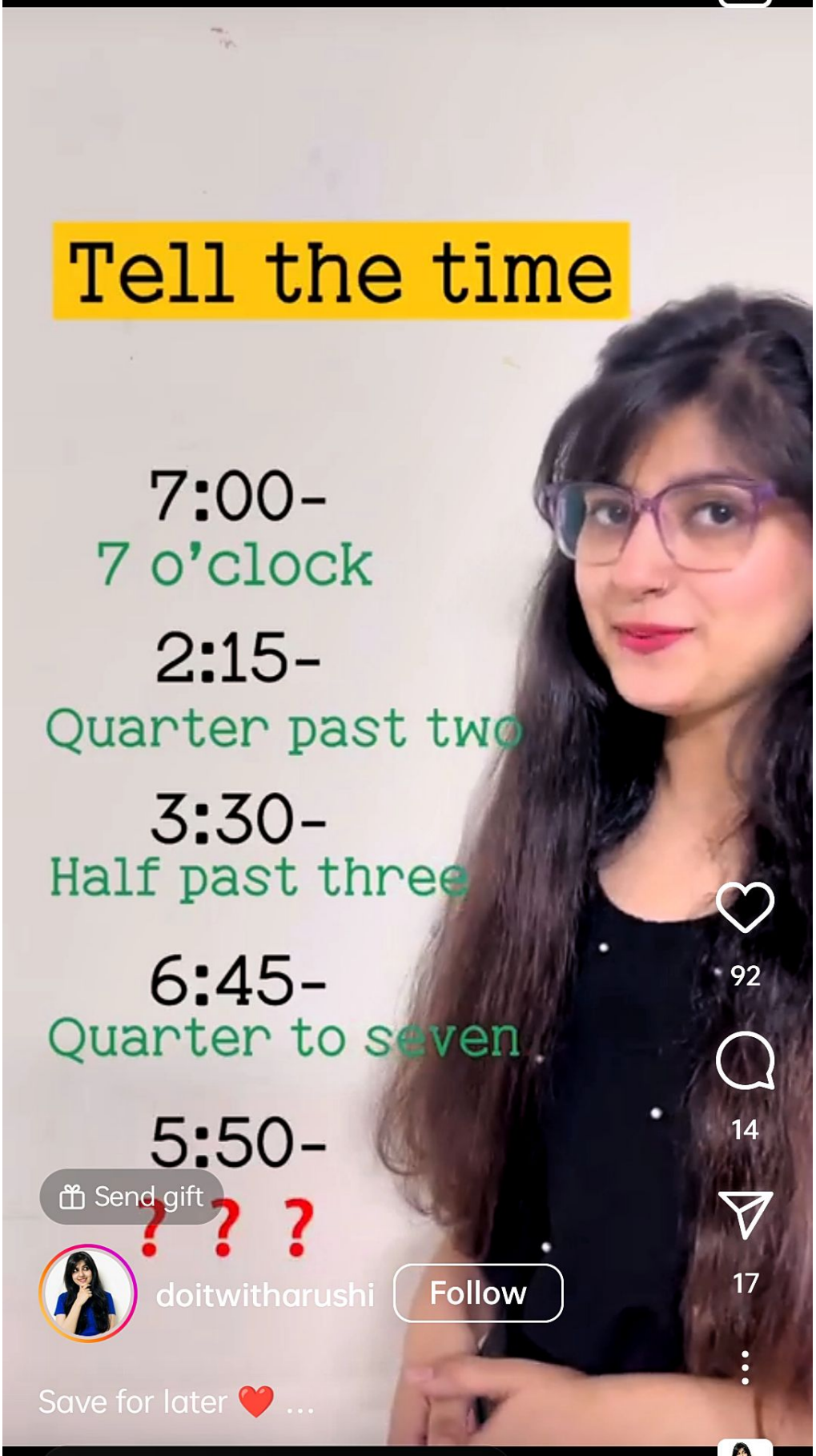

अरबी
Taro Root
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
ave for later ❤️ ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio
75
14
4


8:21
0.00 KB/S
VoD LTE2
4G
76
टिंडा
Round Gourd
75
14
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
later ❤️ ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:21
तोरी
Sponge Gourd
75
14
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later ❤️ ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:22
Reels
तोरी
Sponge Gourd
Ridge Gourd
75
14
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later ❤️ ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:22
Reels
घिया
Bottle Gourd
75
14
4
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
for later ❤️ ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


Tell the time
7:00-
7 o'clock
2:15-
Quarter past two
3:30-
Half past three
6:45-
Quarter to seven
5:50-
? ? ?
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later ❤️ ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio
92
14
17


8:22
Reels
Trousers-
Pants
88
12
2
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later❤️ ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio

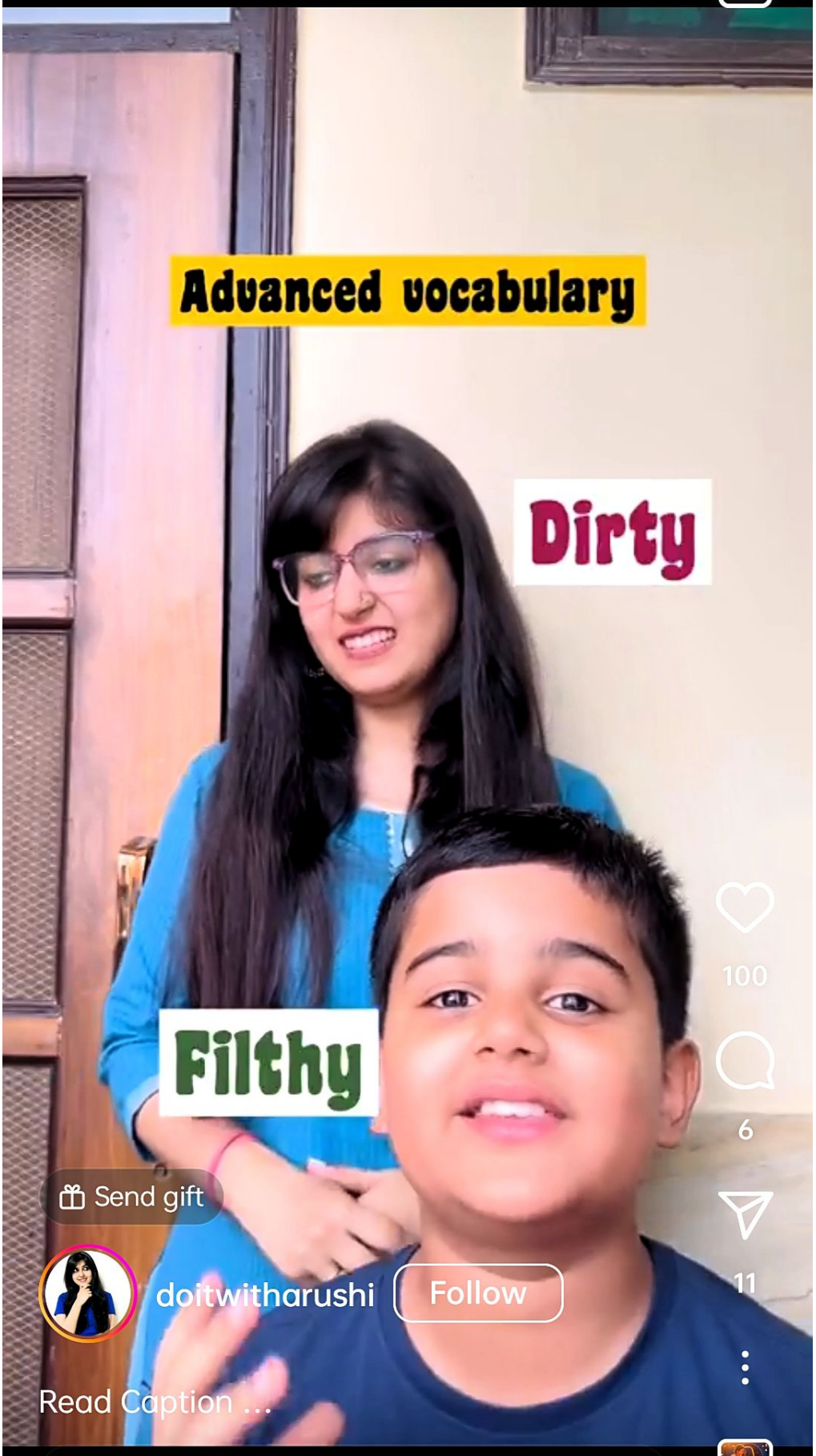

8:22
Tell a story
Tell the truth
Tell a lie
Tell the time
83
17
2
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later❤️ ...
ıal audio doitwitr
Phuket, Thailand

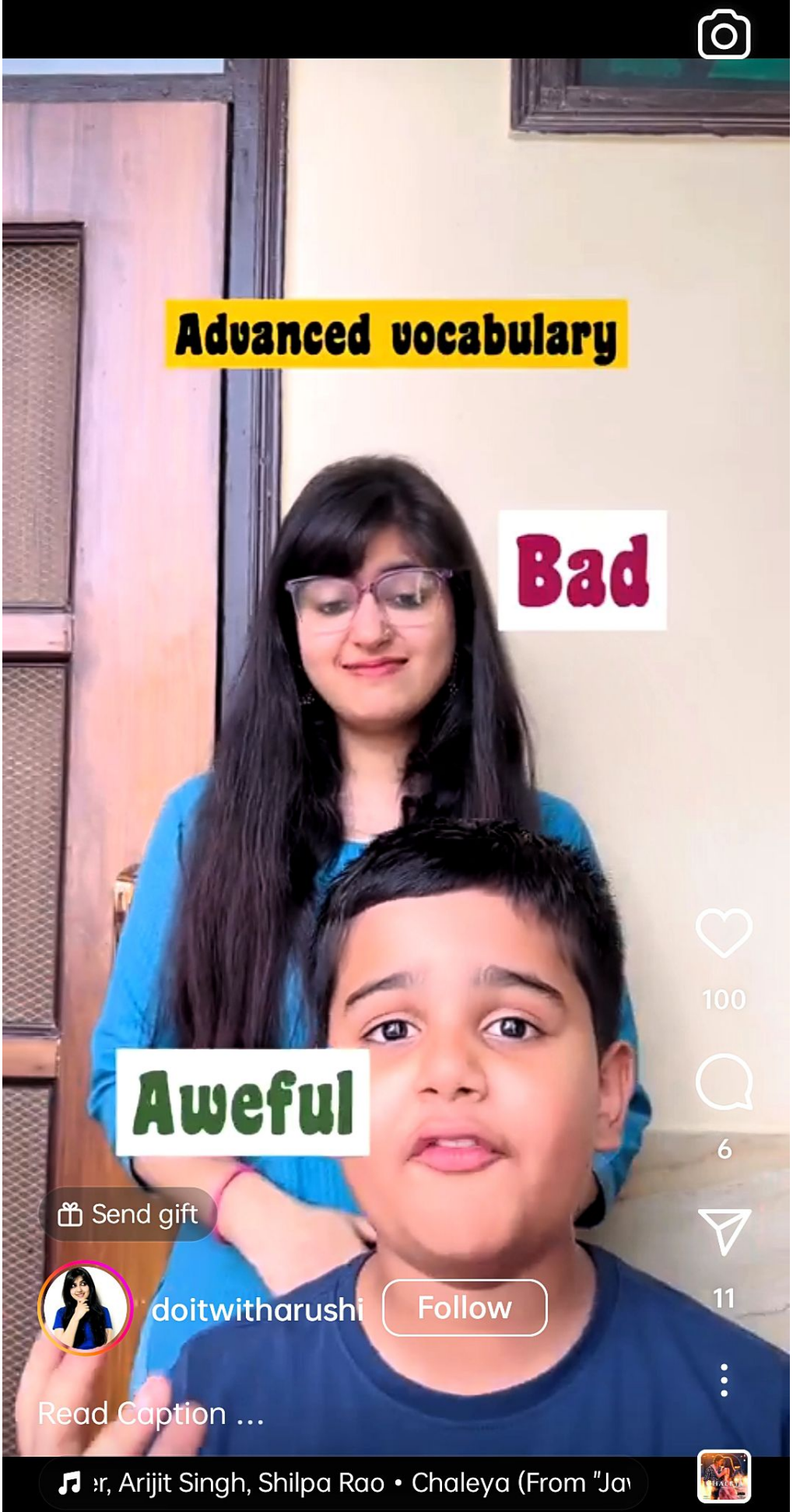

Give more examples
Tell the fortune
Tell a story
Tell the truth
Tell a lie
Tell the time
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later❤️ ...
dio doitwitharush
Phuket, Thailand
83
17
2


8:23
Reels
7days=
1 week
14 days=
1 fortnight
30/31days=
1 month
365days=
1 year
366days=
1 leap year
1 year=
Anniversary
104
23
15
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later ❤️ ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


10 years=
1 decade
25 years=
Silver Jubilee
50 years=
Golden Jubilee
60 years=
Diamond
75 years=
Jubilee
100 years=
104
23
15
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Save for later ❤️ ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:24
Advanced vocabulary
Old
Ancient
100
6
11
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Read Caption ...
h Ravichander, Arijit Singh, Shilpa Rao • Chal


Advanced vocabulary
Dirty
Filthy
100
6
11
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Read Caption ...
chander, Arijit Singh, Shilpa Rao • Chaleya (Fr


8:24
Advanced vocabulary
Bad
Aweful
100
6
11
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Read Caption ...
Arijit Singh, Shilpa Rao • Chaleya (From "Ja


Advanced vocabulary
Cold
Freezing
100
6
11
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Read Caption ...
Singh, Shilpa Rao • Chaleya (From "Jawan")

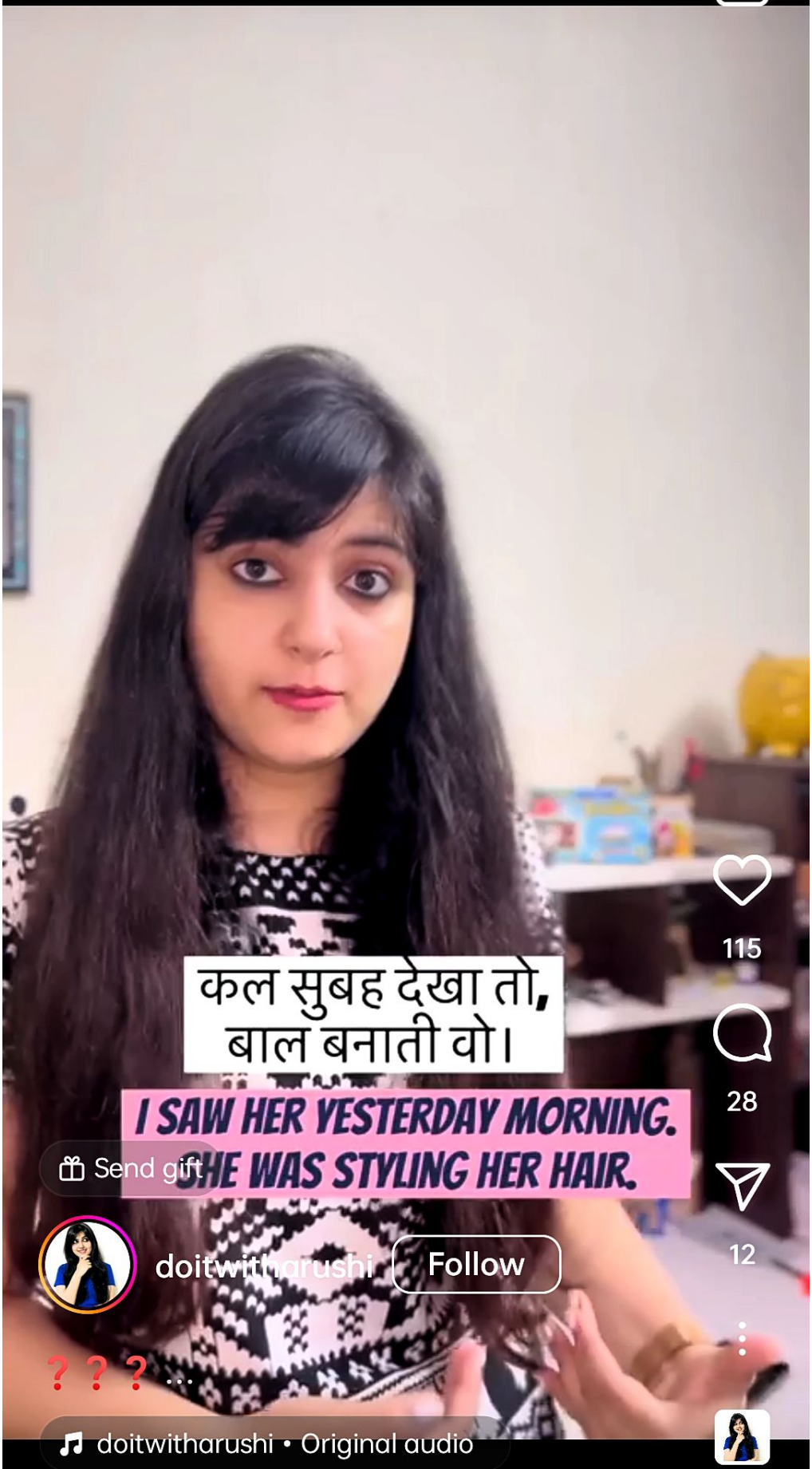

Reels
Doitwitharushi
काश की वो ISRO SCIENTIST
होता तो मुझे चाँद पर ले के जाता।
I WISH HE WERE AN ISRO SCIENTIST,
THEN HE WOULD HAVE TAKEN
ME TO THE MOON.
90
24
7
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Conditional sentences are like “if-then” ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:25
Reels
Doitwitharushi
अगर तुम ब्रश नहीं करोगे
तो तुम्हें हो जायेंगी।
IF YOU DON'T BRUSH YOUR TEETH,
YOU GET CAVITIES.
90
24
7
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Conditional sentences are like “if-then” ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


Doitwitharushi
अगर तुम आराम करोगे
तो बेहतर महसूस करोगे।
IF YOU REST,
YOU WILL FEEL BETTER.
90
24
7
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Conditional sentences are like “if-then” ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:25
घर से निकलते ही,
कुछ दूर चलते ही।
AS SOON AS I LEAVE THE HOUSE,
AFTER WALKING SOME DISTANCE.
115
28
12
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
? ? ? ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:25
रास्ते पे है उसका घर।
HER PLACE IS ON THE WAY.
115
28
12
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
? ? ? ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


कल सुबह देखा तो,
बाल बनाती वो।
I SAW HER YESTERDAY MORNING.
SHE WAS STYLING HER HAIR.
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
115
28
12
? ? ? ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:25
0.44 KB/S
75
कितना ऊँचा-
HOW HIGH
189
19
41
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
? ? ? ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio

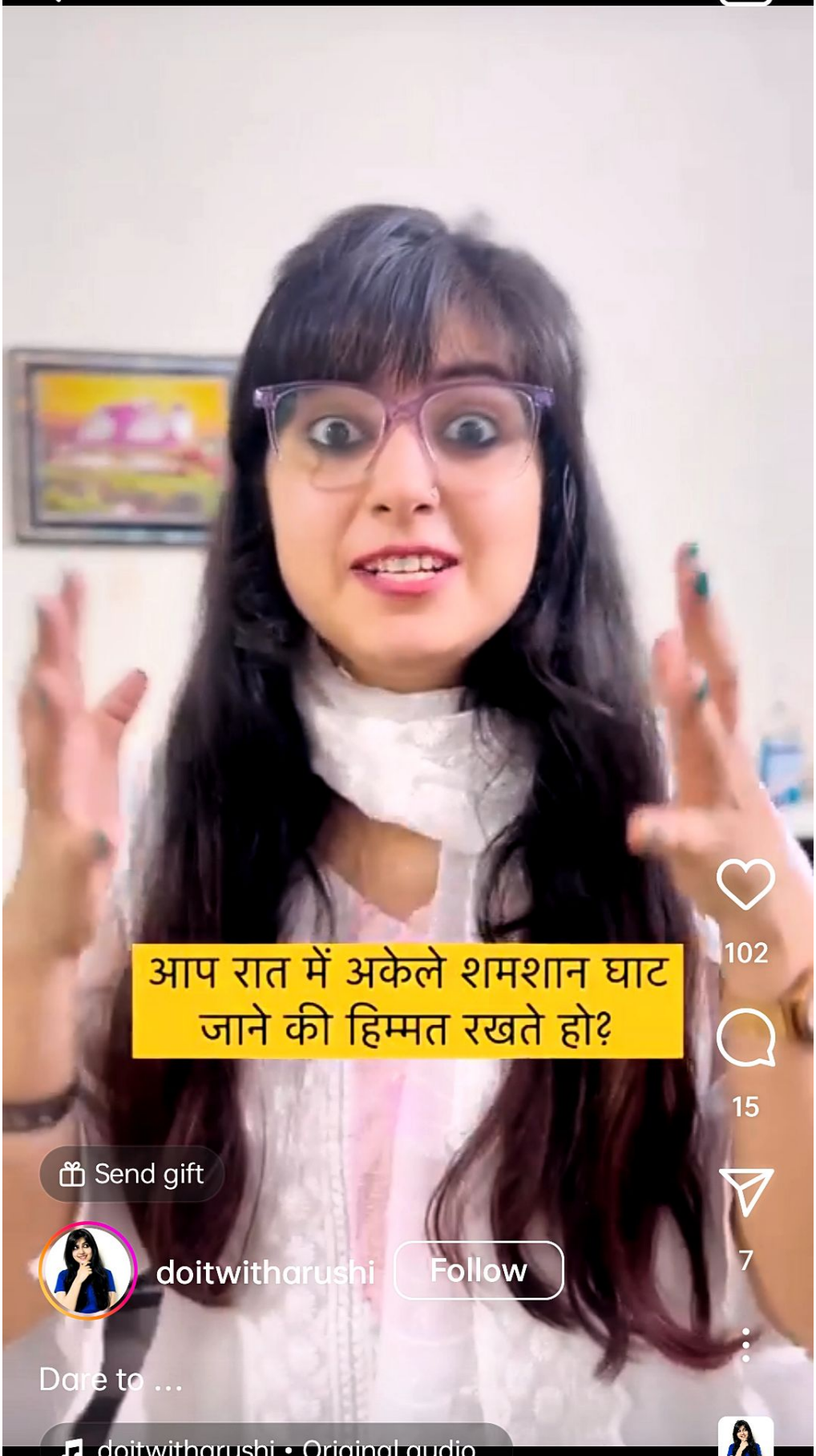

8:25
0.04 KB/S
75
कितनी बार-
HOW OFTEN
189
19
41
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
? ? ? ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:25
0.04 KB/S
75
TOKYO
कितना गहरा-
HOW DEEP
189
19
41
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
? ? ? ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio

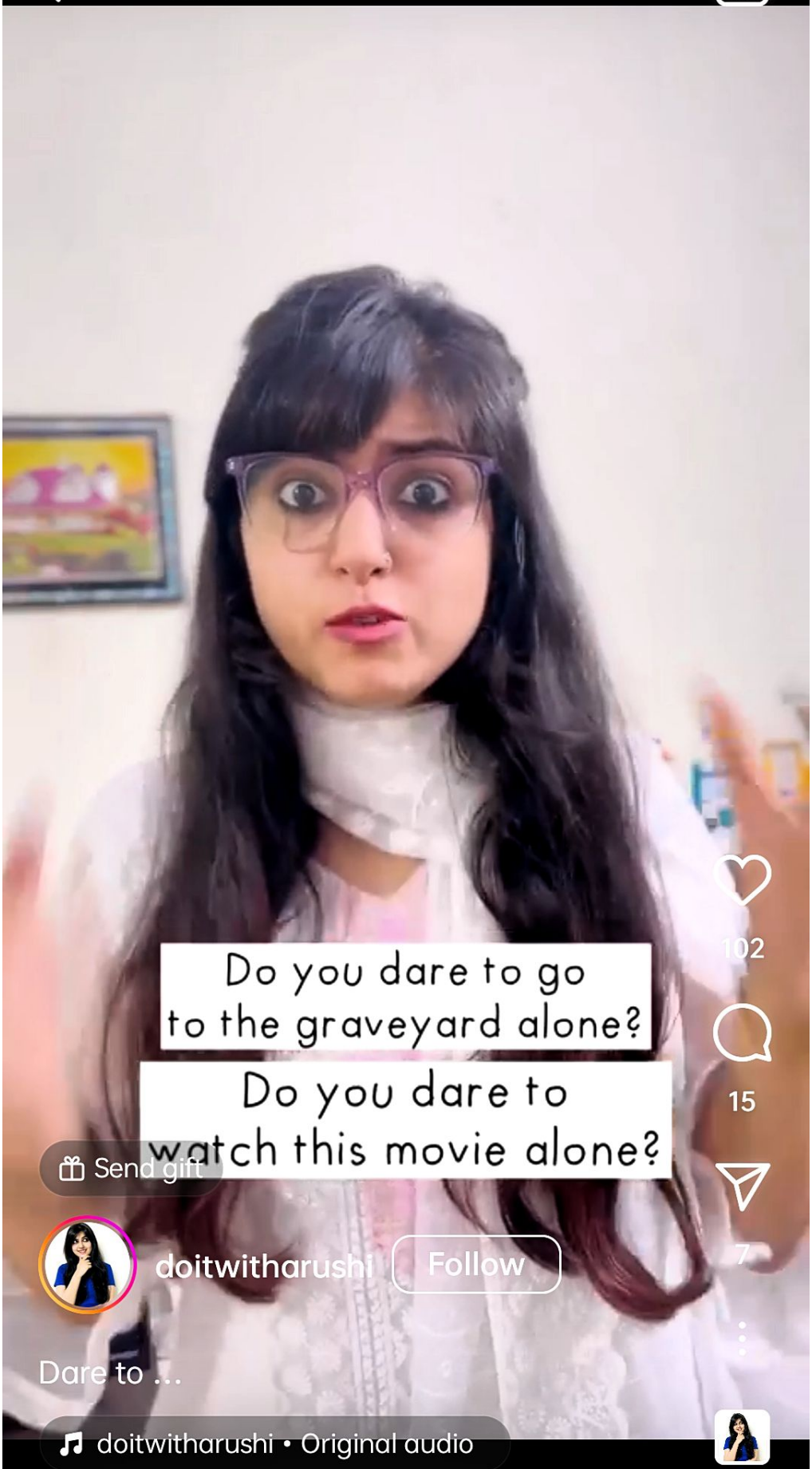

8:25
0.04 KB/S
75
कितना महँगा-
HOW EXPENSIVE
189
19
41
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
? ? ? ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


? ? ?
कितना दूर
Read Caption
कितना चौड़ा-
HOW WIDE
189
19
41
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
? ? ? ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


आपकी हिम्मत कैसे हुई मुझे
अभी तक follow न करने की?
102
15
7
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Dare to ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio

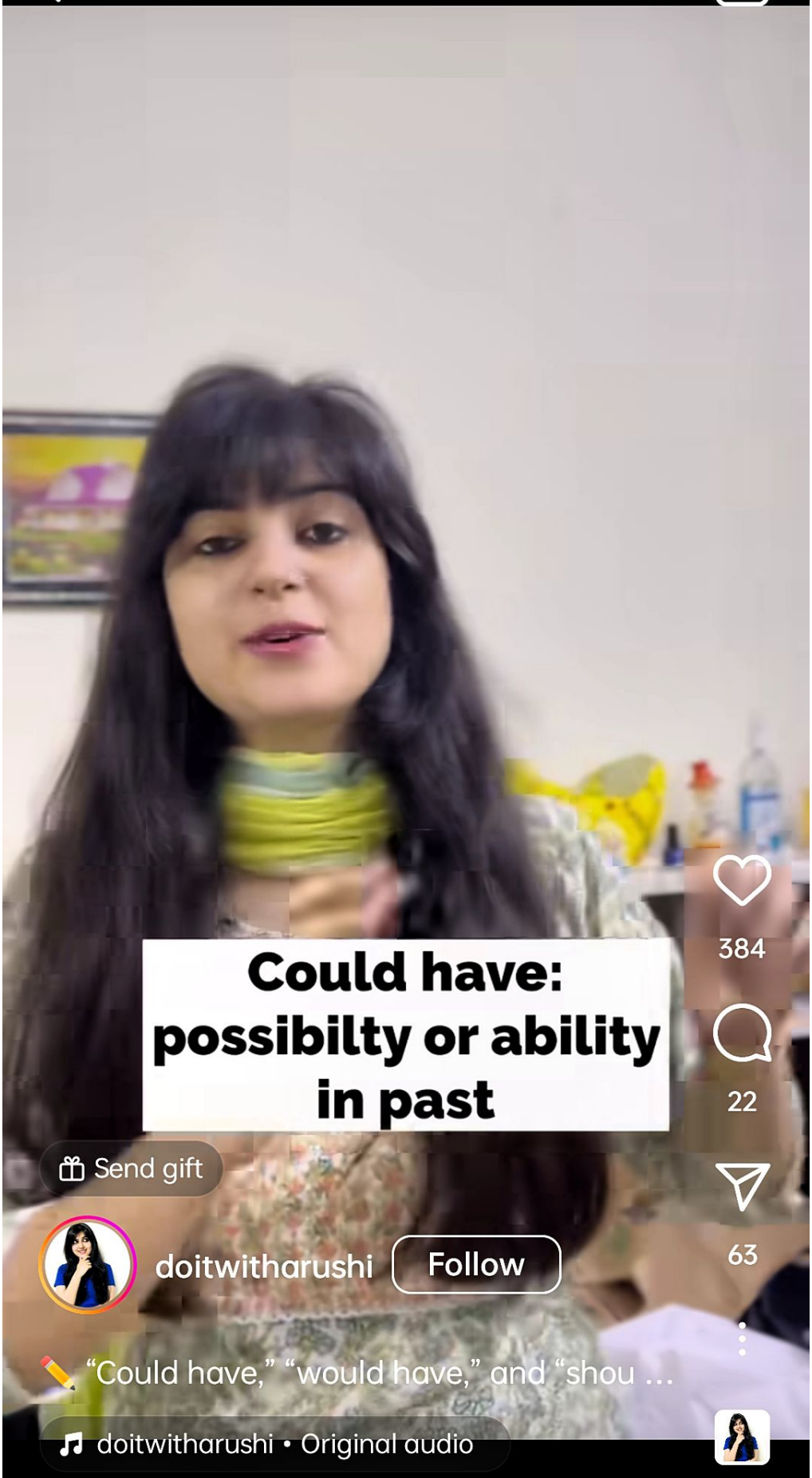

आप रात में अकेले शमशान घाट
जाने की हिम्मत रखते हो?
102
15
7
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Dare to ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio

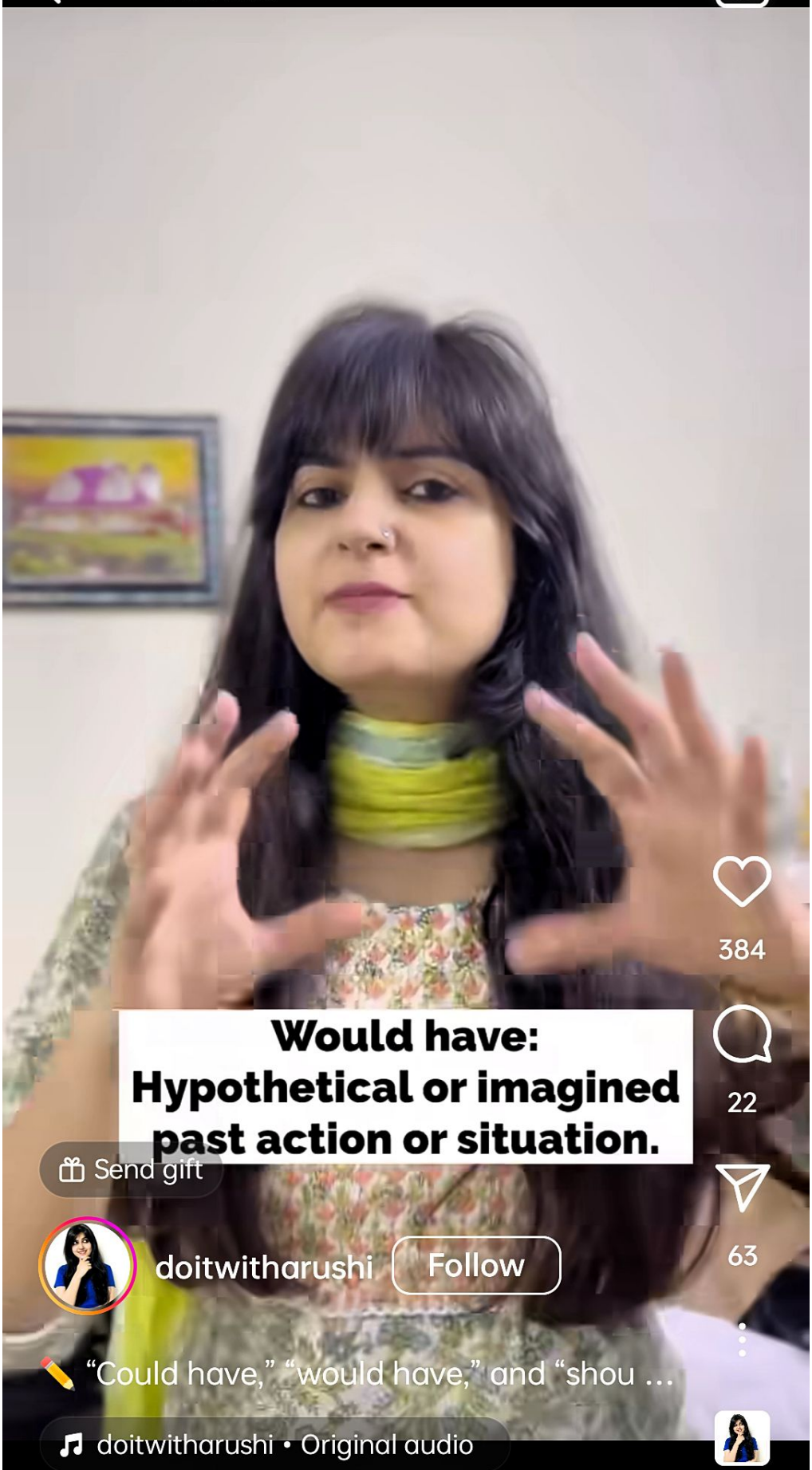

8:27
Reels
Do you dare to go
to the graveyard alone?
102
15
7
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Dare to ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio

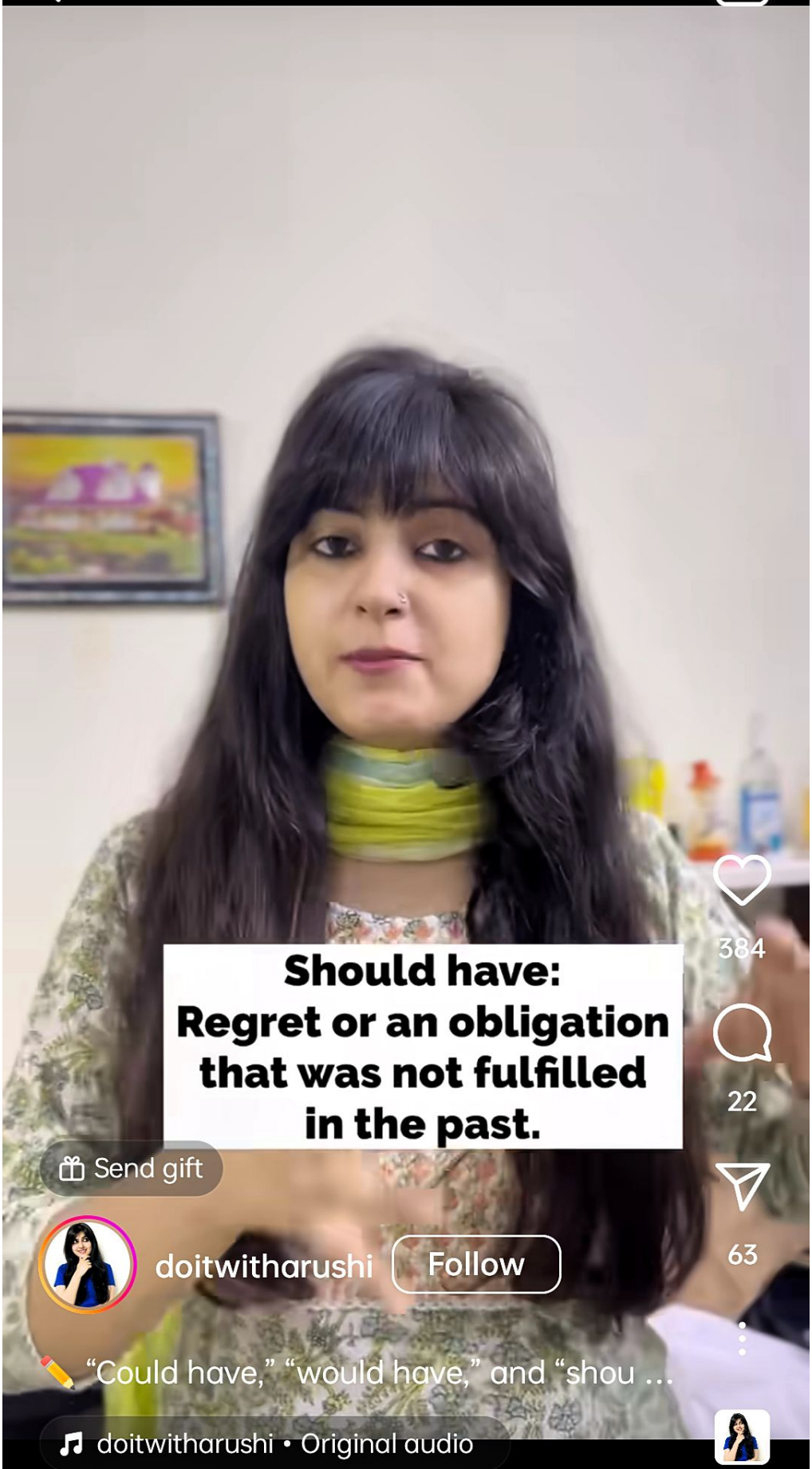

8:27
Reels
Do you dare to go
to the graveyard alone?
Do you dare to
watch this movie alone?
102
15
7
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Dare to ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


मैं उसके साथ जा सकती थी।
मैं उसके साथ चली जाती।
मुझे उसके साथ चले जाना चाहिए था।
384
22
63
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
✏️ “Could have,” “would have,” and “shou ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:30
Could have
Would have
Should have
384
22
63
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
✏️ “Could have,” “would have,” and “shou ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:30
Reels
Could have:
possibilty or ability
in past
384
22
63
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
"Could have," "would have," and "shou ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:30
Reels
Would have:
Hypothetical or imagined past action or situation.
384
22
63
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
"Could have," "would have," and "shou ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:30
Reels
Should have:
Regret or an obligation that was not fulfilled in the past.
384
22
63
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
"Could have," "would have," and "shou ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:30
Reels
I could have gone with him.
I would have gone with him.
I should have gone with him.
384
22
63
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
"Could have," "would have," and "shou ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:31
Reels
ध्यान से-
WATCH OUT!
@doitwitharushi
379
24
45
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Daily sentences! ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:31
Reels
TIME ख़त्म-
TIME IS UP!
@doitwitharushi
379
24
45
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Daily sentences! ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:32
Reels
चुप रहो-
KEEP MUM!
@doitwitharushi
379
24
45
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Daily sentences! ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:32
Reels
बकवास मत करो-
DON'T TALK NONSENSE!
@doitwitharushi
379
24
45
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Daily sentences! ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:32
148 KB/S
Reels
मैं ऊब गई हूँ-
I'M BORED TO DEATH.
@doitwitharushi
379
24
45
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Daily sentences! ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:32
Reels
कोई ख़ास बात नहीं है-
NOTHING SPECIAL
@doitwitharushi
379
24
45
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Daily sentences! ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:32
Reels
अभी तक नहीं-
NOT YET!
@doitwitharushi
379
24
45
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Daily sentences! ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:32
Reels
मिलते रहना-
KEEP IN TOUCH!
@doitwitharushi
379
24
45
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Daily sentences! ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


Either-or/ neither-nor
Rule
@doitwitharushi
If one subject is singular and
the other is plural,
the verb will agree
with the closest subject.
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Either-or and neither- nor RULE ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio
122
7
2


SQUINTING


Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
✅ Squint: Narrowing the eyes to focus ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio



Send gift

doitwitharushi Follow

✅ Squint: Narrowing the eyes to focus ...

doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:34
Reels
@doitwitharushi
पेटू -
GLUTTON
177
9
30
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
✅ Petu- glutton - The glutton at the buff ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


@doitwitharushi
कंजूस-
MISER/ STINGY
177
9
30
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
✅ Petu- glutton - The glutton at the buff ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio

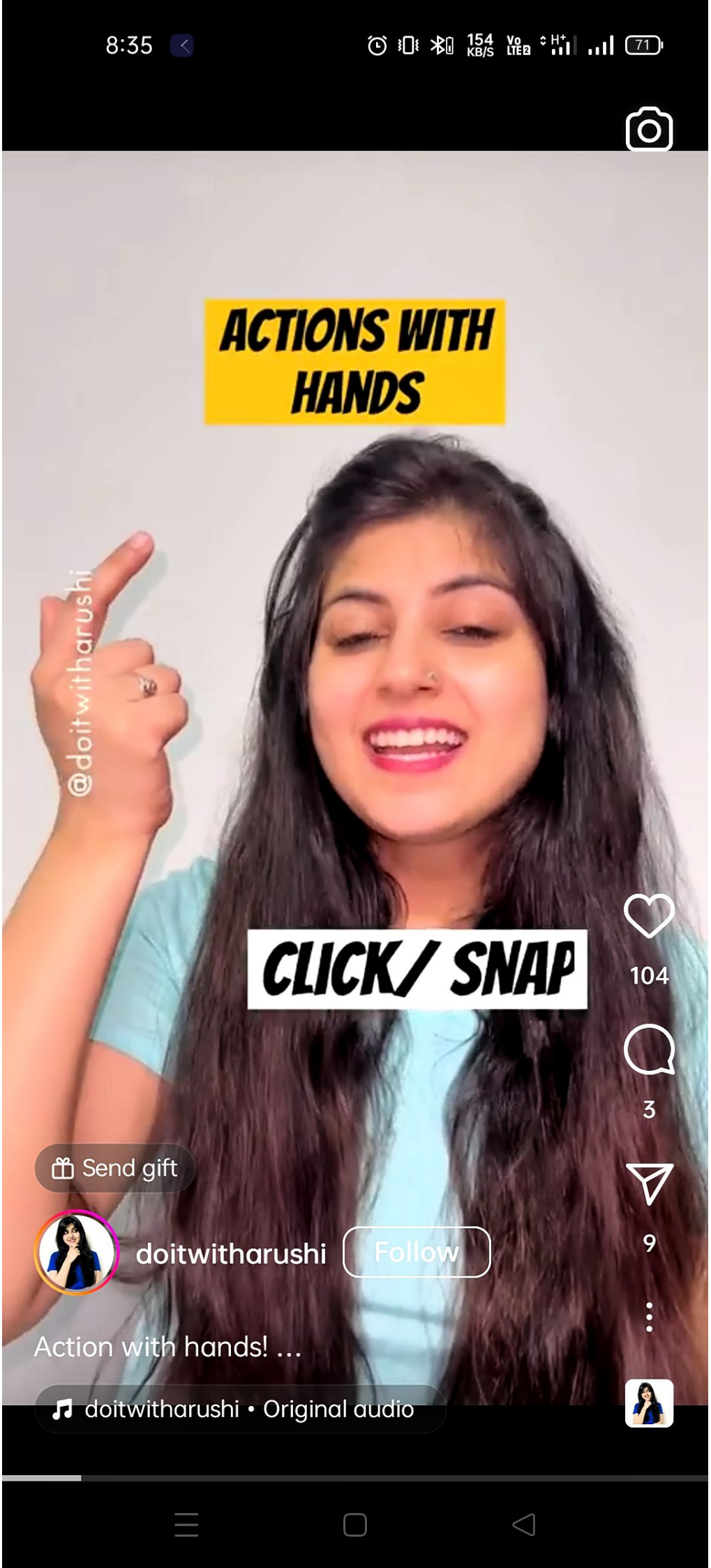

8:34
Reels
@doitwitharushi
वेला-
IDLE
177
9
30
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
✅ Petu- glutton - The glutton at the buff ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


@doitwitharushi
बदतमीज़-
ARROGANT/ INSOLENT/ RUDE
177
9
30
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
✅ Petu- glutton - The glutton at the buff ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:34
Reels
@doitwitharushi
नकचड़ा-
FINICKY
177
9
30
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
✅ Petu- glutton - The glutton at the buff ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:34
Reels
@doitwitharushi
सुक्कड़-
SLEEPYHEAD
177
9
30
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
✅ Petu- glutton - The glutton at the buff ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:34
Reels
@doitwitharushi
पढ़ाकू-
STUDIOUS/
BOOKWORM/
NERD
177
9
30
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
✅ Petu- glutton - The glutton at the buff ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:35
ACTIONS WITH HANDS
@doitwitharushi
CLICK/ SNAP
104
3
9
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Action with hands! ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:35
ACTIONS WITH HANDS
@doitwitharushi
FIDDLE
104
3
9
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Action with hands! ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:35
ACTIONS WITH HANDS
@doitwitharushi
GRAB
104
3
9
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Action with hands! ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio

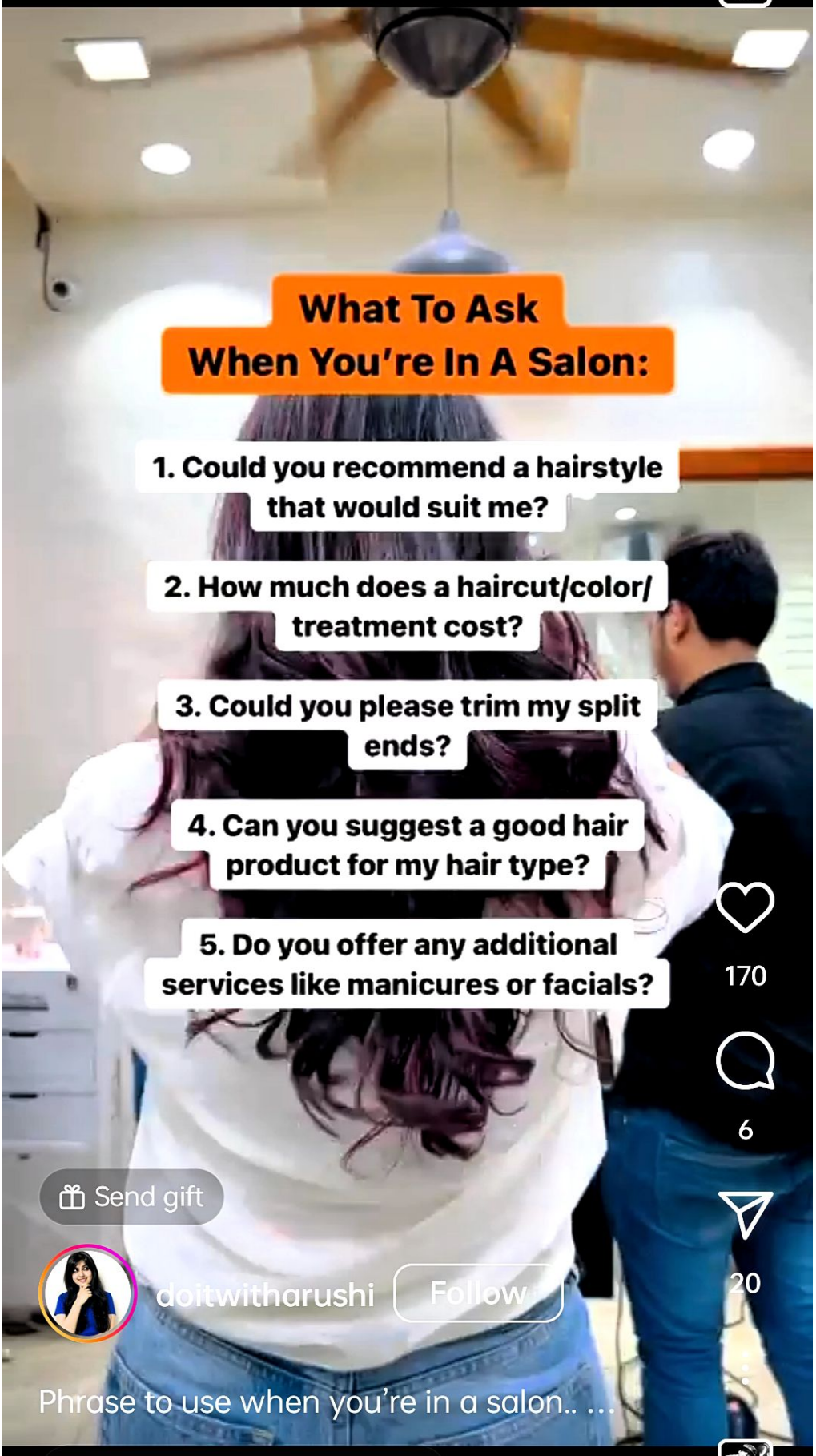

8:35
182 KB/S
71
ACTIONS WITH HANDS
@doitwitharushi
PAT
104
3
9
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Action with hands! ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:35
ACTIONS WITH HANDS
@doitwitharushi
STROKE/ PET
104
3
9
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Action with hands! ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio

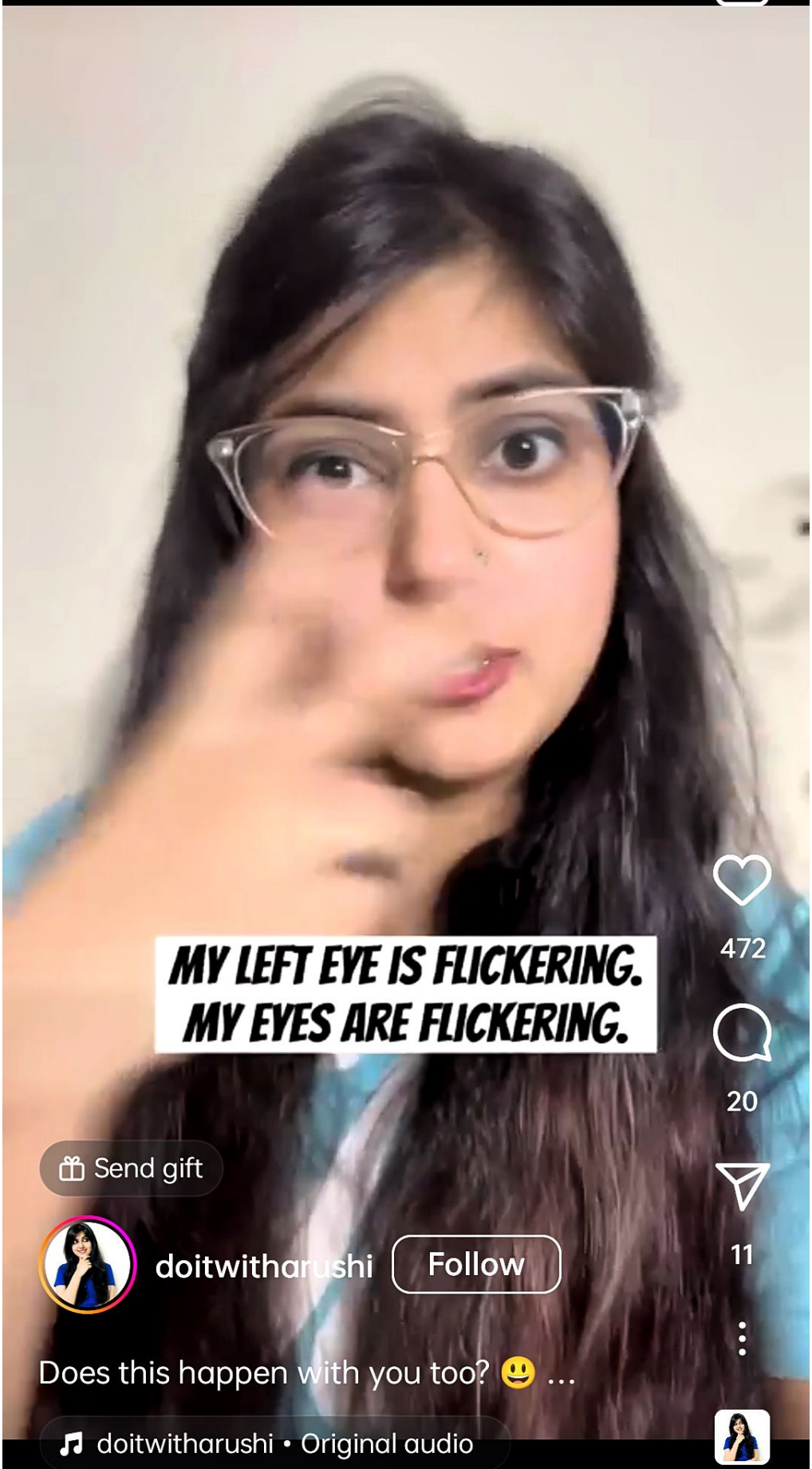

8:35
102 KB/S
71
@doitwitharushi
बस में चढ़ना
बस से उतरना
122
2
9
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Aap bus me last time kab chadhay the? ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:37
HOW MANY SANDWICHES CAN YOU EAT ON AN EMPTY STOMACH?
144
25
1
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Riddle Time! ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


8:35
120 KB/S
71
@doitwitharushi
बस में चढ़ना- get on
बस से उतरना- get off
122
2
9
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Aap bus me last time kab chadhay the? ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


What To Ask
When You're In A Salon:
1. Could you recommend a hairstyle that would suit me?
2. How much does a haircut/color/ treatment cost?
3. Could you please trim my split ends?
4. Can you suggest a good hair product for my hair type?
5. Do you offer any additional services like manicures or facials?
170
6
20
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Phrase to use when you're in a salon.. ...
Daddy Yankee • Gasolina


8:38
146 KB/S
70
TO CLENCH FIST
395
43
14
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
How many did you get correct? ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio


MY LEFT EYE IS FLICKERING.
MY EYES ARE FLICKERING.
Send gift
doitwitharushi
Follow
Does this happen with you too? 😃 ...
doitwitharushi • Original audio
472
20
11

28, november, 2016

NOUN

By-SHIVAM PAWAR(8057229446)

VERB

- Types of Verb

V^1 = eat → Plural

V^2 = eaten

V^3 = eaten

V^4 = eating ($V^1 + ing = V^4$)

V^5 = eats ($V^1 + s/es = V^5$) → Singular

V^2, V^3, V^4 → No sing, No Plural

Concept

Subject (sing) = Verb (sing)

Subject (Plural) = Verb (Plural)

...ular

...b

N + and + N

...lural)

...comes plural

by adding s/es

Plural → Verb → s, es

Verb becomes singular

ex goes

eats

$S^{-+} + V^{-+} + OW$

{ + Plural
- Singular }

example:

Noun: Ram, Boys → Verb: goes

Noun: Boys, Ram and shyam → Verb: go

⇒ V^1

- Plural
- Simple Present is use

S + V¹ + OW

S: Plural, V¹: Plural

To + V¹ ⇒ Agar V¹ k sath 'To' ho toh wo verb nahi noun ban jaega.

To + V¹ ⟶ Subject (noun) + Verb (singular)

example To walk is good for health

⇒ V^2
- No singular no plural
- S + V² + OW use in simple past.

⇒ V^3
- No singular no plural
- Use in perfect (finished action)
- V^3 is not possible without auxiliary verb

$V^3 + N$

Adjective

written (V^3) letter (N)

spoken (V^3) English (N)

V^3 + is/was + V^3

Subject | Verb | object

example: Done is done
हो गया सो हो गया

⇒ V^4
- Use in present
- S + is/am/are/was/were + V^4
- 'Subject' (sing + V (sing))

example:
* walking is good
* smoking is injurious

29 / November

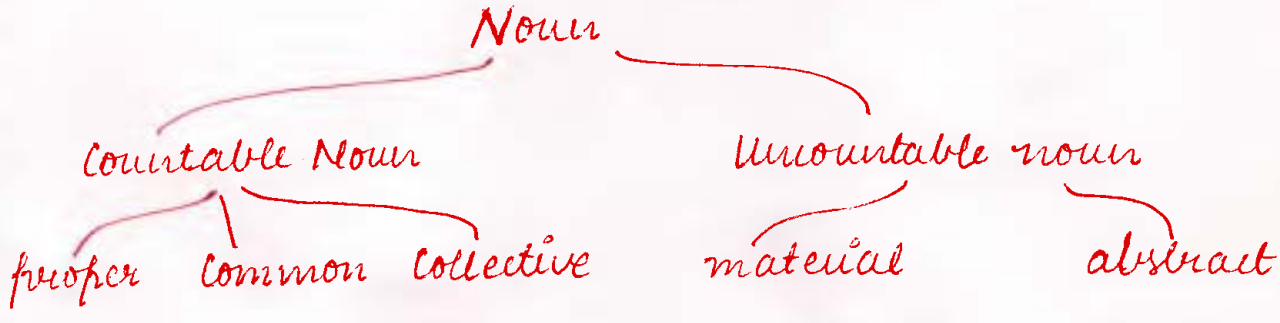
Types of noun

- Common noun
- Collective noun.
  - ex
    - A flock of goat
    - A bevy of girls
    - A galaxy of starts
- Proper noun
- material noun
- Abstract noun

Defination of noun

Noun → Any name is a noun

⇒ The word that stands for name is called noun



Proper noun:

proper noun is the name of some particular place, thing or anyone.

example - India, Ram, Mohan, Sohan

(1) A Ram is an honest boy ✗

(2) The Ram is an honest boy ✗

(3) Ram is an honest boy
Common noun
Proper noun + sing + v (sing)

(4) Ram is an honest boy

Ram
- pronunciation राम
- Verb as a verb राम means रक्षा करना
- common noun — here राम means sheep (male)

Common Error in the use of Proper noun

Rule 1: Normally (90%) no article is used before proper noun

Rule 2: Proper noun is used as singular and takes singular verb

Rule 3: Proper noun is always be written with capital letter

example.

(1) The India is the best ✗

(2) India is the best ✓

(3) The India is playing this match ✗

(4) The India are playing this match ✓

(5) India are playing this match ✗

explanation of ex(4)

Country

name
- → Sing + V (sing)
- → No article

play / game / sports / war / Battle
- → Plural + V (Plural
- → 'The' is used

ex - The India have won this match

Common Noun :

It shows the caste and class

example.

(1) The teacher is teaching ✓

(2) The students are reading ✗

(The ✗)

Students are reading

Common Error in the use of Common noun

Rule 1: Article is used before common noun

Rule 2: when common noun is used as singular it takes singular verb and article is used with it

Rule 3: when common noun is used as plural it takes plural verb and normally no article is used before it.

30 November, 2016

Collective Noun:

Collect - verb
if 'ion' is added it becomes 99% noun
and if 'ive' is added it becomes Adjective

⇒ The noun that shows collection is called collective noun

Common Errors in the use of collective noun

1) A group of boys is coming in the hall (X)
2) A group of boys are coming in the hall (X)
3) A group of boy is coming in the hall (X)
4) A group of boys is coming into the hall (✓)

explanation of in and into
'in' - in is used to talk about position
'into' - into is used to talk about direction & destination.

A + collective word + of + N (Plural) + V (singular)

note: Jiss sentence me of 'laga ho toh usme subject according to collective word aata hai.

List of collective word.

- A team of player
- A committee of members
- A herd of cattle
- A swarm of insects
- A bevy of girls
- A galaxy of stars
- A gang of bandits और etc.

Note: For more words check out DSh grammer book P. 180.

Collective noun

Generic
विभिन्न विभिन्न प्रकार के सदस्य
⇓
Sing + V (sing)
ex ⇒ scenary
sceneries (X)
Furniture (✓)

Group
एक ही प्रकार के
⇓
Plural + V (Plural)
ex ⇒ Police (s/es) - X
Police are coming
Cattle are grazing
- Article The is used before collective noun in which 'the' used

example.
- Jury
- Parliament
- Gang
- club
- Crowd.
- Board
- Society etc.

thought ek
⇓
Sing + V (sing)
example

thought different
⇓
Plural + V (Plural)

example.
1. The parliament was divided over the Kashmir issue (X)
2. The parliament were united over the Kashmir issue (✗)

'divided' thought is different so verb Plural i.e 'were' but here is 'was' so sentence is wrong and vice versa for 2nd sentence.

Material noun

A noun that can be measured or weight but can't be counted is called unmaterial noun

ex- milk, wood, fish, rice, sugar etc

Common errors in the use of material noun

Rule1: Normally 90% no article is used before material noun

Rule2: Material noun is always used as singular & takes singular verb

ex (1) A × gold is a precious metal (X)

(2) Gold is a precious metal (✓)

(3) The × fish cannot live without water (X)

(4) Fish can't live without water (✓)

(5) I am going to buy 4 golden fishes (✓)

(6) The ✓ golden fish is costly in these days (✓)

(5) material noun used as sing. but here it is golden fish and it is countable if there is no 'golden' written then 'fishes' becomes wrong. Because of golden the sentences become right)

example

(1) Dregs is lying aside the road (X)

(2) Dregs are lying aside the road (✓)

'Dregs' is the only word which is uncountable plural noun and takes plural verb

Abstract noun

A noun that can neither be seen not be touched but can be felt is called abstract noun

Note 60% abstract noun verb hota hai, iske liye 'day to day' book page no 62 dekhe.

example laughing childhood
smell history etc
beauty
honesty

Common error in the use of abstract noun

1. The history is a difficult subject (×)
2. History is a difficult subject (✓)
3. The history of S.K Pandey is good (×)
4. The history of S.K Pandey are good (✓)

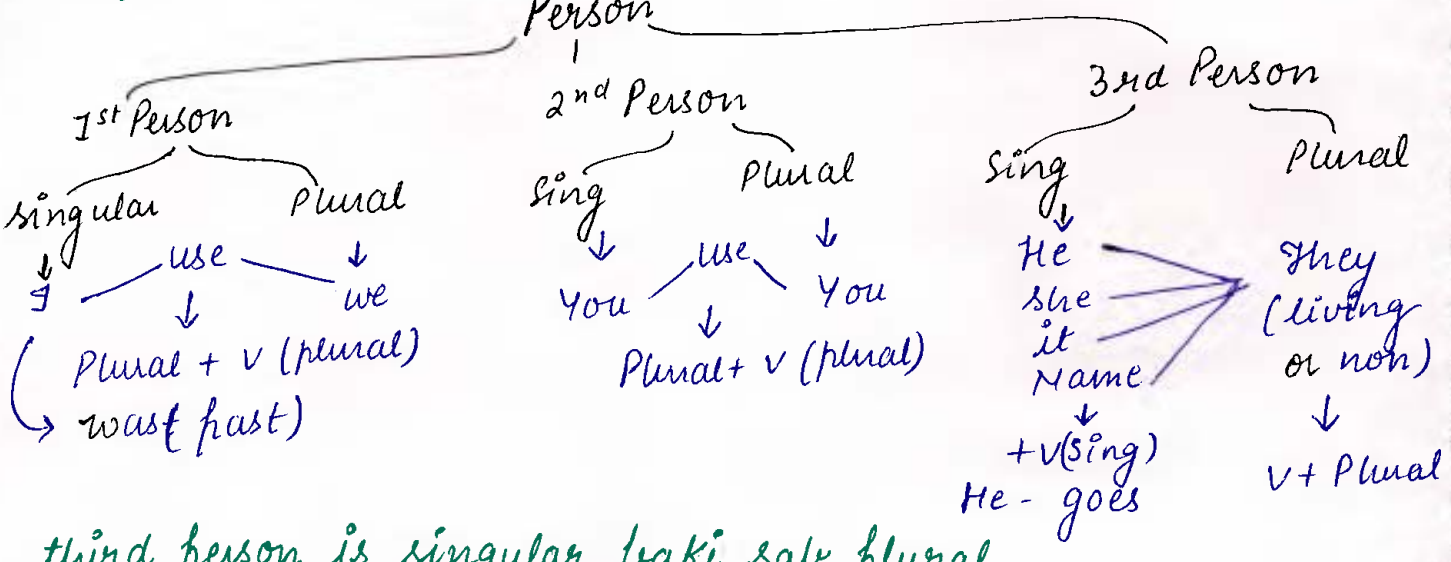
Rule 1. 90% abstract noun is used as singular and take singular verb.

Rule 2. Normally no article is used before abstract noun

Rule 3. जब किसी name of subject का नाम किसी person से जोड़ दिया जाए तो ये हो जाता है plural और अपने साथ plural verb लेता है और इसके साथ article 'the' भी लगता है।

Noun: noun is nothing but is the combination of person, gender, number and case

i) Person I, we, you, के अलावा सारे 3rd person



third person is singular baki sab plural

2, december, 2016.

ii. Gender : ⇒ Noun Gender

Death always knows ..... victim

(i) his (iii) their

(ii) her (iv) its

Noun gender

living | non-living (1% living)

Male animal / female animal | either male / female animal | neither male nor female.

⇒ Masculine Gender | Feminine Gender | Common Gender | Neuter Gender

(i) Masculine gender: A noun that represents male animal, its is called masculine gender
example: Boy, father etc.

(ii) Feminine gender: A noun that represents female animal is called feminine gender
example - Girl / Woman / Mother / sister etc

(iii) Common gender: A noun that represents either male or female animal, it is called common gender
example: Names of posts → PM / CM / DM

(iv) Neuter gender: A noun that represents neither male nor female, it is called Neuter gender,
example: Table, chair, Fan etc
can't be easily identified

Common Errors in the use of Common gender

Personification of noun

Masculine

⇒ Hard
⇒ Rough
⇒ Cruel
⇒ Power

example = Sun, Death

Feminine

⇒ Beauty
⇒ Kind
⇒ Soft
⇒ Calm

example Moon

Moon - (she, her) ✓ its - ✗
Sun - (He, his) ✓ its - ✗

example
1) The Moon is hiding its / her / his / their face behind the cloud.
2) The ship has lost many of her / its / his / crew

Rule: ⇒ 'ship' is treated as feminine gender
It takes 'she / her' not 'its'

ex ⇒ India has developed her / its / his economy

Note: Name of the country is treated as feminine gender. It takes 'her'

example 1) The Army knows her ✗ / its ✓ / his ✗ duty
2) The jury were divided in her ✗ / its ✗ / his ✗ / their ✓ opinions

Note: Collective noun यदि single body के रूप मे काम करते है, तो इसके साथ 'its' का use किया जाता है। और यदि ये Plural के समान काम करते है तो theirs का use करते है।

5, december, 2016

Noun number

Noun number

- Countable noun
  - One (1) → Singular Countable noun (SCN)
    - (i) Article is used
    - (ii) + V (sing)
    - ex The/A Boy
  - + more than one → plural countable noun (PCN)
    - (i) No Article use
    - (ii) + V (plural)
    - ex Boys are
- Uncountable noun
  - Sing + V (sing)
  - (i) No Article
  - ex water is

noun number

- SCN
- PCN

Rules (for making sing noun to plu noun)

- adding → S
  - 90% noun become plural by addings and 10% noun become plural by adding es
- es
  - Plural
- N+O+W+N

o Rules for changing singular noun into Plural noun

Rule 1: Most of the nouns form their plural by adding 's'

90%

Singular	Plural
Pen	Pens
Book	Books
Building	Buildings
cap	caps
doll	dolls
hat	hats
bag	bags
cow	cows
hen etc	hens

Rule 2. Some of the nouns which end in 's', 'ss', 'sh', 'ch' 'x' and 'z' form their plural by adding es

ch

if sound च = 'च' pronunciation = चिन्ह
example: Bench बेन्च
Benches

if sound क = 'क' मोनार्क
example Monarch — Monarchs
Stomach — Stomachs
शंख Conch. कोंक — Conchs

Singular	Plural
Bench	Benches
Branch	Branches
class	classes
Tax	Taxes
Topaz	Topazes

Rule 3. Some of the noun which end in 'o' form their plural by adding es.

'o'

Vowel letter + o
'+ s'
ex Radio – Radios

Singular	plural
Ratio	Ratios
portfolio	portfolios
Scenario	Scenarios
Cuckoo	Cuckoos
Curio	Curios
Video	Videos
Bamboo	Bamboos

Consonant letter + o
'+ es'
ex Mango – Mangoes

Singular	plural
Tomato	Tomatoes
Potato	Potatoes
Hero	Heroes
Volcano	Volcanoes
Mosquito	Mosquitoes

Note: Science and technology related words के साथ 's' लगाते हैं (jiske last me 'o' laga ho)
Radio, dynamo, piano, photo, kilo, studio, embryo, add 's' with it.

Rule 4. Last letter 'Y'

Vowel letter + Y
- + 's'

Monkey = Monkeys

Singular	Plural
Donkey	Donkeys
Boy	Boys
Toy	Toys
Day	Days
Rain	Rains
Bay	Bays
Key	Keys

Consonant letter + Y
+ 'es'

Lady = ladies

Singular	Plural
Baby	babies
fly	fly
Salary	Salaries
Lily	Lilyes
story	stories
मरे हुए मनुष्य का notice ← Obituary	Obituaries
रसोई स्थान ← Pantry	Pantries
city	cities
Army	Armies
Family	Families
Country	Countries
Spy	Spyies

6/December

Rule 5 Some of the letter last with F/es

Last letter F/es → 13 words

change + V + es

Singular	Plural
(1) Wife	wives
(2) Shelf	shelves
(3) life	leaves
(4) Knife	knives
(5) Self	Selves
(6) Wolf	wolves
(7) loaf	loaves
(8) Sheaf (अनाज को बाँधे)	sheaves
(9) Half	halves
(10) Kalf (बछड़ा)	Kalves

(11) elf (परी) - elves

(12) Theif - Theives

(13) leaf - leaves

(14) Scarf — Scarfs (more right) / Scarves

note: इसके अलावा f/fe से अंत होने वाले सारे noun में fes लगते हैं।

Singular	Plural
belief	believes
grief	
proof	
safe	
cheif	
roof	
hoof ← खुर	
gulf	
serf ← गुलाम	
clif	
ruf etc	

example: He belifs (Noun.) that they will help him (X)

He believes that they will help him ✓

He S(N) +V — believes (Verb)

Adj.
My
Our
your
his
her
their

Noun → Name equivalent
Gerund

My → Person / believe – V(X) / belief – N(V)

Rule 6. Some of the noun form their plural by changing the inside vowel.

Singular	plural
Man	Men
Woman	Women
Tooth	Teeth
Goose	Geese
foot	feet
Mouse (गिलहरी)	Mice
Dormouse	Dormice
Louse	Lice
Ox (बैल)	Oxen
child	children etc

small black insect found in long & dirty hairs.

Rule 7: (i) Many boys are present today (✓)
(ii) Many boy is present today (X)
(iii) Salman khan killed many dears (X)
(iv) Salman khan killed many dear (✓)

Many + noun (countable) Plural + V (Plural)
↓
Much + noun (uncountable) singular + V (singular)

Some of the nouns which have the same form in singular and plural.

Dear
Sheep
barracks (बारबीय)
Series
Species

aircraft
corps
Salmon
Swine etc

7/december.

example. The public are aware of the fact (✓)
The public is aware of the fact.

Rule 8: Some of the nouns which looks like singular but they are used as plural and takes plural verb

People (peoples) → एक से अधिक समुदाय के लोग, राष्ट्र
public, police, cavalry (घुड़सवार सैनिक), Peasantry (किसान), Gre[illegible]y (middle class)
Nobility (highen class), cattle, Vermin (बीमारी फैलाने वाला जानवर)
clergy पुजारी, mankind etc

ex = The police have caught the theif (X)
The mathematics is a difficult subject (X)
The mathematics are a difficult subject (X)
Mathematics is a difficult subject (✓)

Rule 9: Some of the noun look like plural but they are always used as singular and take singular verb.

note: "यदि Name of subject से किसी व्यक्ति का नाम (property /Merit / demerit) जुड़ जाए तो वह Name of subject Plural होता है, और आने वाला Verb भी Plural साथ में Article 'The' भी प्रयोग किया जाता है,"

example The mathematics of K.C Sinha are good

list: Mathematics, Economics ....
Linguistics, Innings, News, Athletics
Measles, Mumps, Diabetes, etc.

Rule 10: Some of the nouns form their plural in irregular way.

Singular (is)	Plural (es)
Basis	Bases
Synopsis	Synopses
Diagnosis	Diagnoses
Thesis	Theses
Oasis	Oases
Axis	Axes
Analysis	Analyses etc

Singular (um)	Plural (a / s)
Agendum	Agenda
Datum	Data
Quorum	Quorums
Curriculum	Curriculums / Curricula
Bacterium	Bacteria
Dictum	Dicta (कहावत)
Medium	Media / Mediums

Note: Agendum / Datum are not used these days
Data / media are used in singular & plural both

ex = Media are active
Media is active

8, december

Common Error in the use of noun

example.

(i) Most of the boy is honest (x)

(ii) Most of the boys are honest (✓)

(iii) Most of the milk is sold (✓)

(iv) Most of the milks are sold (x)

Most of
some of
all of
A lot of
lost of
} + uncountable (sing) + V (sing)
+ Countable (plural) + V (plural)

example

(i) One of the student is laborious (x)

(ii) One of the students are laborious (x)

(iii) One of the students is laborious (✓)

One of + Noun (Plural) + V (sing)

example.

(i) Neither of the officer is honest (x)

(ii) Neither of the officers are honest (x)

(iii) Neither of the officers is honest (✓)

each of the
either of the
neither of the
everyone of the
} + N (Plural) + V (singular)

example.

(i) where is my pant (X)

(ii) where is my pants (X)

(iii) where are my pants (✓)

Some of the nouns which are generally used in plural & takes plural verb

- Pants
- tongs
- Scissors
- Shorts
- Socks
- Binoculars
- trousers
- Spectacles
- Gaggles
- Riches (प्रचुर मात्रा में धन संपत्ति)
- Premises
- Goods
- Annals (वार्षिक विवरण)
- Arms
- Weapons

example

(i) There are many filths (uncountable कूड़ा कचड़ा) in our colony (X)

(ii) There is much filths in our colony (✓)

Some of the nouns which are generally used in singular it never takes a/an or s/es

(i) Magic
(ii) Land
(iii) Gold
(4) information
(5) Garbage
(6) Rubbish
(7) filths
(8) Furniture
(9) honesty
(10) Grass
(11) health
(12) Scenery
(13) Language
(14) luck
(15) Advise
(16) Dust
(17) food
(18) Jwellery
(19) wealth
(20) poverty
(21) bread
(22) Trafic
(23) Money etc

example.

(i) I ate a bread (X)

(ii) I ate two breads (X)

(iii) I ate two pieces of bread (✓)

(iv) I ate a piece of bread (✓)

(v) I gave you one advise (X)

(vi) I gave you an advise (X)

(vii) I gave you a kind of advise (✓)

Note: किसी भी uncountable noun से a piece of / a type of / a kind of / an article of / a bit of / an item of /.... etc लगा कर Singular Countable noun बनाया जाता है।

तथा peices of / types of / kinds of / article of / bits of / items of /.... etc लगा कर plural countable noun बनाया जाता है।

(1) The Americans have strange habbit (X)

(2) The Americans has strange habbit (X)

(3) The Americans have strange custom (✓)

(4) Mohan has strange habbit (✓)

Noun often Confused

(i) habbit - किसी व्यक्ति का व्यक्तिगत आदत

custom - किसी समाज देश का आदत एवम रीति रिवाज

(ii) Air - श्वांस लेने वाली हवा

Wind - चलने वाली हवा

(iii) house - पराया घर

home - अपना घर

(iv) Cost - लागत मुल्य (amount paid by shopkeeper)

Price - विक्रेय मुल्य (amount paid by customer)

(v) Customer - Purchaser / buyer of goods

Client - One who avail serves (जो सेवा का लाभ लेता है)

(vi) Ground - it is the outside part of the house

floor - inside part of the house.

9, december.

Some of the nouns which are used either in singular or in Plural according to the sense or meaning of the sentence.

Singular		Plural
Drug (दवा)	—	Drugs (नशीला पदार्थ)
Ground (धरती)	—	Grounds (आधार, कारण)
Quater (टुकडा)	—	quaters (आवास)
look (नजर)	—	looks (आकृति)
iron (लोहा)	—	irons (बेड़ीया)
Abuse (गाली)	—	Abuses (सामाजिक कुरीतिया)
Advise (सलाह)	—	Advises (सूचनाए)
Air (हवा)	—	Airs (अहंकार)

Amend (सुधार) – Amends (क्षतिपूर्ति)

Chain (गले का chain) – Chains (हथकड़ी, जंजीर)

Good (अच्छा) – Goods (समान)

humanity (मानव जाति) – humanities (मानवकी)
(The study of physcology & literature)

Particular (खास बात) – particulars (विवरण करना)

Regard (आदर सम्मान) – Regards (शुभकामनाएं)

Return (वापस) – Returns (profit, लाभ)

Sand (रेत) – Sands (रेगिस्तान)

Water (पानी) – Waters (समुद्र)

Way (रास्ता) – Ways (तरीका)

Wood (लकड़ी) – Woods (जंगल)

Powder (चूरन) – Powders (dose, खुराक)

fruit (फल) – fruits (result, परिणाम)

premise (प्रस्तावना) – premises (परिसर या घेरा)

Hot Tips

(i) Brother
- Brothers → Blood relation
- Brethren → members of community

(ii) paper
- paper → कागज़ - Sing + V(Sing)
- papers → documents कागजात {plural + V(plural)}

(iii) Care
- Care - देख भाल Sing + V(Sing)
- Cares - चिंताएं plural + V(plural)

(iv) word
- word - वचन
- word - शब्द
- words - एक से अधिक शब्द

(v) issue
- issue - लाल बच्चा (Lalu has 9 issue)
- issue - मुद्दा (corruption is a great issue)
- issues - मुद्दे

(vi) Genious
- Geniuses - एक से अधिक बुद्धिमान (more than 1 talented person)
- Genii - भूत पिशाच
- Genies

(vii) Wages — मजदूरी — plural + v (plural)

Wages — सजा या दंड — sing + v (sing)

⇒ The wages are very high in Delhi

⇒ The wages of sin is Death
(पाप)

(viii) Unmarried — bachelor - used for male

Unmarried — Maid - used for female

(ix) कविता — poetry - it is a uncountable sing noun it never takes a/an or s/es

कविता — poem - it is a countable sing noun it takes a/an or s/es

(x) दृश्य — Scenery - it is a uncountable sing noun it never takes a/an or s/es

दृश्य — Scene - it is a countable sing noun it takes a/an or s/es

(xi) मुद्रा — Money - it is uncountable sing noun, never takes a/an or s/es.

मुद्रा — Rupee - it is countable sing noun it takes a/an or s/es.

(xii) Cloth — Cloths - कपड़े — no of कपड़े

Cloth — Clothes - पोशाक

12, december

Some interesting facts

example:

(1) 5 Boys are coming (✓)

(2) 5 Boys is coming (✗)

(3) 10,000 students are in the class (✗)

(4) 1000 students are in the class (✗)

(5) 1000 student are in the class (✓)

(6) Five litre milk is needed for kitchen (✓)

(7) Five litre milks are needed for kitchen (✗)

Rule1: Numerical word + N (Plural) + V (sing).

Rule2 (1) Numerical word + unit → (sing) → Uncountable (N) sing + V (sing)

→ Countable (plural) + V (plural)

ex: (i) Ten hundred student are in the class

(ii) Five litre milk is needed for kitchen

Rule3: Unit + of + N → V (plural)

(plural) (plural)

ex हजारो रुपये बर्बाद हो गये

Thousand of Rupees are destroyed

Dozens of eggs were destroyed

Rule 4: Ten - Noun → V(sing) → always singular

↓

Sing / Plural

example: 80 Days is coming

10 km is long distance

	Old		New	
	Sing	Plural	Sing	Plural
(i)	M.L.A	M.L.A's	MLA	MLA's
(ii)	V.I.P	V.I.P's	VIP	VIP's
(iii)	M.P	M.P's	MP	MP's
(iv)	S.P	S.P's	SP	SP's
(v)	D.M	D.M's	DM	DM's

Some Common facts (a)

My
Own
Your
His
Her
Their
Ram's
Sita's

\+ always Noun

Verb में (s/es) लगाकर भी उसे noun बनाया ना सकता है।

Note: study is a wrong word in the case of noun it should be studies

example My studies is going well

Sign (x)	–	Signature (✓)
iuning (x)	–	iunings (✓)
troops का (x)	–	troops (✓)
Curd (x)	–	Curds (✓)
order (x)	–	orders (✓)
teaching (x)	–	teaching (✓)
doing (x)	–	doings (✓)
earning (x)	–	earnings (✓)
look (x)	–	looks (✓)
bedding (x)	–	beddings (✓)
family member (x)	–	The members of the family (✓)
half pent (x)	–	Shorts (✓)
Companionship (x)	–	Company (✓) साथी / ~~सहयोगी~~
sale (x)	–	sales (✓)
Menkind (x)	–	Mankind (✓)

13/december.

Free ship (X) - Free student ship (✓)

English teacher (X) - the teacher of english (✓)

Edible (X) - Edibles (✓)

Speak a truth (X) - speak the truth (✓)

tell the lie (X) - tell a lie (✓)

tiding (X) - tidings (✓) समाचार

errar (X) - errars (✓) उधार राशी

Copy (X) - copy book, note book, exercise book (✓)

Cent percent (X) - 100% percent (✓)

talking term (X) - speaking term

Some common facts (1)

Rule 1. The poor are happy (✓)

The poor is happy (X)

The poor people are happy (X)

The poor people is happy (X)

Poor people are happy (X)

The + Adj (जाति) = N (plural common N) + V (Plural)

The
- Poor = गरीब लोग
- Rich = अमीर लोग
- Black = काले लोग

The poor people (X)

गरीब लोग लोग (X)

ex He is my cousin brother (x)

He is my cousin (✓)

The word cousin doesn't follow brother or sister.

ex जगह खाली नहीं है।
जगह नहीं है।
सीट नहीं है।
} no place (x)
No room (✓)

ex o'clock is used with fixed time
for ex 4 o'clock, 5 o'clock etc
but with 4:30 we use a.m or p.m but not o'clock

ex suit - use for male
dress - use for female

Her suit is attractive (x)
Her dress is attractive (✓)

Compound noun

Rule 1 वैसे Compound noun जिनके बीच मे '-' आ सकते है उनके अंतिम शब्द का plural बनाया जाता है।

Singular	Plural
Boy friend	boy friends
note book	note books
cheif minister	cheif ministers etc

Rule 2. लेकिन यदि Compound noun के साथ कोई preposition का use हो तो preposition से Just पहले वाले शब्द का plural बनाया जाता है।

Singular	Plural
Father in law	Fathers in law
Commander in cheif	Commanders in cheif etc

Rule 3. यदि Compound noun में men तथा women शब्द लगा हो तो दोनो शब्दो का plural बनाया जाता है।

Singular	Plural
Man doctor	Men doctors
Woman teacher	Women teachers

चलते चलते

(1)

Ex (i) city after city were destroyed (✓)

(ii) cities after cities were destroyed (✗)

(iii) The people of India are poor (✓)

(iv) The culture of India is good (✓)

(i) Noun + preposition + Noun → V (sing)

Sing Sing

(ii) The + Noun + of + noun + verb

plural/sing plural/sing

(2)

ex please tell us in detail (✓)
please tell us in a detail (×)
please tell us in details (×)

- Some particular idoms and phrases are used as a noun

in detail, on time, in time, on demand, on duty, in doubt, in trouble etc.

ex He travels by the bus (×)
He travels by a bus (×)
He travels by bus (✓)

By + Noun
↓
no article in between.

14, december

Noun Case

Case is nothing, its the name of Relation

Relation

- किसका → Noun का pronoun
- किसके साथ → उसी वाक्य मे दूसरे शब्दो के साथ

ex I got Ram's umbrella

There are 4 types of Case

- Nominative / Subjective case
- Objective case
- Vocative case
- Possessive case

	S	V	O	
Pronoun	He	likes	me	Pronoun
	I	like	him	
Noun	Ram	likes	Sita	Noun
	Sita	likes	him	

ex

Subjective Case

When a noun or a pronoun is used as a subject in a sentence it is called subjective case.

Objective case

When a noun or a pronoun is used as an object in a sentence it is called objective case.

Vocative case

(Vocative - सम्बोधन)

when a noun or a pronoun is used to address to a person or groups of persons it is called vocative case

example (i) Mohan, come here

(ii) Ladies and gentlemen, I am going to discuss pollution

Possessive Case

Possess - V
+ion - N
+ve - Adj

When a noun or a pronoun is used to show possession or ownership in a sentence it is called possessive case.

The case of noun

Rule 1:

Noun

living

, = Comma
" = inverted comma
's = apostrophe - का, के, की
of

90% 's system

10% of system

ex Ram's Pen
The Pen of Ram

non-living

'of' system

The + Noun + of + Noun
UnImp N Imp N

Table का पैर टूट गया
Imp UnImp

ex The leg of Table
The roof of building

Rule 2:

Noun (living)

Singular — 's system
- Girl's hostel
- Boy's hostel
(लड़के का hostel)

Plural — ' system
- Boys' hostel
- girls' hostel
(लड़कों का hostel)

⇒ (अगर दोनों options में हो तो Boys' hostel right hoga)

⇒ (पर अगर Boy's pen or Boys' pen हो तो Boy's pen होगा)

Rule 3:

Non living

Last letter 'स' sound
S, sh, ss
's system use

for ex Ramesh (✓) Ramesh's (X)
class (✓) class's (X)
Ramesh' brother (✓)
class' teacher (✓)
Mahesh' sister (✓)

non 's' sound
's system

Men's
Women's

Rule 4:

(+ = and)

- A + B's ⟶ C = same family

⇒ Ram and shyam's mother (✓)

- A's + B's ⟶ C = other family

⇒ Ram and shyam's wife (X)
Ram's and shyam's wives (✓)
Ram's and shyam's mother (✓)

15, december.

Applied case

Rule1: 's is used with time showing words

ex Yesterday's news
Tomorrow's plan
Ten hours' meeting

Rule2: 's is used with the name of places & country

ex India's economic growth
Patna's power crises

Rule3: 's is used with particular idoms and phrases

ex At stone's throw distance
Love's labour's lost (जबरदस्त नफरत)
God's eyeview (पैनी निगाहो से देखना)
Hair's breath escape (बाल बाल बचना)
moment's rest
wit's end (अकल से बाहर)
Cat's paw (चूपके चूपके)

Note: For more words go through the magic book from page 1 onwards.

Rule4: 's' से समाप्त होने वाले कुछ ऐसे नाम है जिनके साथ 's स्वम ' कुछ भी लगाया जा सकता है।

(i) Yeats Poem
Yeats' Poem (✓) Yeat's Poem (✓)

(ii) Burns novel

Burns' novel (✓) Burns's novel (✓)

(iii) Dickness theory

Dickness' theory (✓) Dickness's theory (✓)

(iv) Keats poetry

Keats' poetry (✓) Keats's poetry (✓)

Rule 5. 's is used with the last word of the compound noun

ex Mother in laws

Your mother in laws behaviour is not good

Rule 6. Someone / Anyone / Somebody / Anybody / Noone / Nobody / Everyone / Everybody के साथ 's का use किया जाता है। लेकिन यदि इन शब्दों के साथ else नामक शब्द आ जाए तो 's इन शब्दों के साथ ना लग कर के else के साथ ~~चला~~ जाता है।

example

I like somebody's else suggestion (✗)

I like somebody's else's suggestion (✗)

I like somebody's suggestion (✓)

I like somebody else's suggestion (✓)

Rule 7. 's should not be used with something, nothing, anything, everything etc.

in this case "of system" is used.

example.

- Everything's beauty is perishable (✗)
- The beauty of everything is perishable (✓)

Rule 8. Public, village, city के साथ 's का use नहीं करते

ex public's place (x)
public place (✓)

Rule 9. The + Adjective के साथ 's का use नहीं किया जाता (चाहे तो of लगा सकते हैं)

ex The poor's life (x)
The poor life (✓)
The life of the poor (✓)

Rule 10 's is used with name of season
(ना मर्जी हो ना करो sentence सही होगा)

A winter holiday (✓)
A winter holiday (✓)

Note: Spring and autumn के साथ भूल कर भी 's का use ना करे।

Rule 11 वैसे तो non-living के साथ 'of' लगाया जाता है। लेकिन यदि non-living बहुत विशाल हो या फिर उसे बड़ा चढ़ा कर पेश किया गया हो, समय समय पर व्यक्ति जैसा काम करता हो तो ऐसी स्थिति मे इसके साथ 'of' ना लगा कर के 's का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

ex Sun's rays

The rays of sun etc.

19, december

ARTICLE

Article is itself a kind of adjective which is used before a noun to make it definite or indefinite

(1) Definite article - The
- द - Consonant sound
  ex - The (द) boy
- द्य - Vocal sound
  ex - The (द्य) apple

(2) Indefinite article - A
- a
  - ए - 1%
  - अ - 90%
- an
  - एन - 10%
  - अन - 90%

Theory

learn with ryme - No signal no train

⇒ No noun No article

Position of article

(i) Article + Noun

article a < boy, Pen, Fan

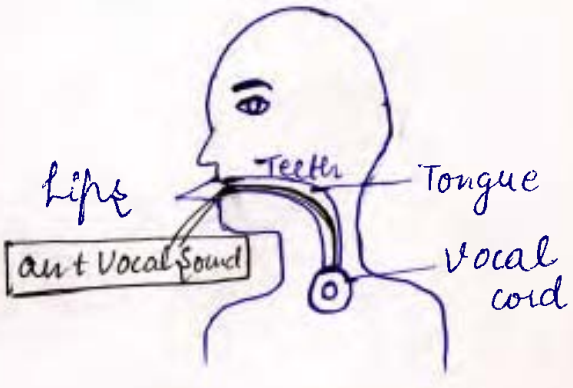
Sound

letter that comes from

Lips + teeth + tongue + body

a + Consonant sound

ex - a < Boy, Pen, Fan



E
- Elephant - Vocal sound - an elephant
- European - sound comes from lips - a european

U
- Umbrella - Vocal sound - an Umbrella
- University - sound comes from lips - a university

O
- Organe - vocal sound - an organ
- One eyed men - lips sound - a one eyed men

H
- hour - vocal sound - an hour
- horse - lips sound - a hourse

'w/y'

Note if a word starts with the help of w or y it takes the article only 'a'

a / an > year

'a/e'

Note. if a word starts with the help of a/e it takes the article only 'an'

ex

an < Ink pot / Apple

(1) For

Article + Adjective + Noun

example

(1) Lata is an honest (X)

(2) Lata is honest (X)

(3) Lata is an honest girl (✓)

Artic Adj Noun.

(2) For the noun

Article + Bound Adverb + Adjective + Noun

ex Lata is a very good girl.

20, december.

Noun

100% Article taking noun (ATN)

↓

Singular countable noun

SCN

for ex - a Boy

90% non article taking noun (non ATN)

↓

Plural countable noun

ex a boys (X)

⇒ material noun

ex a water (X)

⇒ Abstract noun

ex A air (X)

⇒ Proper noun

ex A Ram (X)

⇒ Uncountable noun

ex A Milk

90% they work & 10%.

Basic uses of a/an

Rule 1: Article 'a' is used before singular countable noun which has consonant sound.

ex

a → boy, Pen, Fan

Rule 2: Article 'an' is used before singular countable noun has vowel sound

An + SCN (having V.S)

an → Ash, Apple

Rule 3. Article 'a and an' is used before singular countable noun having consonant & vowel sound

A/an + SCN (having CS/VS)

Rule 4 Not a/an + PCN

a Boys (X)

Rule 5 Not a/an + Uncountable

a water (X)

Test Your Knowledge.

(1) I am not wealthy / so I can't afford / to buy ~~a~~ an / expensive car / no errors

(2) He had no illusion of / being either a distinguished

1. writter or ~~a~~ an editor / no errors.

(3) ~~A~~ X children / are / naughty / no error

(4) ~~A~~ X gold / is a / costly metal / no error

Rule 6. Article 'a/an' is used before the name of person if no nothing about the person.

Rule 7 Article 'a/an' is used before the name of profession

Profession

if work as subject — 99% 'The'

if work object — a / an

ex The teacher is teaching
He is a teacher

Rule 8.

ex. (i) I am in dilemma (X)

(ii) I am in a dilemma (✓)

Some Particular idoms and phrases

(i) In a hurry

(ii) In a dilemma

(iii) In a rage

(iv) In a mood

(v) In a temper

(vi) At a loss

Technique.

(i) Have + a/an + Noun
1 2 2

ex (i) Have a swim
have a drink
have a bath

(ii) Take + a/an + N

→ Take an exercise
→ Take a rest
→ Take a risk
→ Make a risk
→ Make a mistake etc.

Rule 9. Such / what / how + a/an + N

(i) Such a boy
(ii) What an idea
(iii) How an ugly scene

Imp.
Rule 10 • यदि किसी व्यक्ति का नाम किसी खास व्यक्ति के साथ comment के रूप मे जोडा जाए तो article a/an का use करते है।

• यदि किसी खास व्यक्ति का नाम खास व्यक्ति के साथ जोडा जाए तो article 'the' is used

ex He is a Gandhi
Kalidas is the Shakespear of India

21, december, 2016.

Uses of 'the'

Rule 1 ⇒ Article 'the' is used before singular Countable table noun

Example: The teacher is teaching

Rule 2 ⇒ Normally (90%) not 'The' + PCN – (Plural Countable noun)

example: (i) The teachers are teaching (X)

(ii) teachers are teaching (✓)

Note: Article 'The' may be used before Plural Countable noun when we have to refer to particularity.

(i) The dog barks at night (✓)

(ii) ~~The~~ dogs bark at night (X) → It is usual case not particular (90%) so 'The' will not use

(iii) The dogs don't bark at night (✓) → it is a particular case 10% dogs not brack at night

(iv) The dogs of Neelima are black (✓) particular case

(v) The boys are making a noise (✓) particular case

(vi) The children are naughty (X) all children are naughty so usual case

(vii) The children are playing on the bed (✓)
bed primary work is sleep not playing so this case show particularity of playing so use of 'The'

Rule 3 ⇒ Normally (90%) not 'The' + Uncountable noun

Note: Article 'The' may be used before an uncountable noun only in order to refer to particularity.

example. (i) The milk is white (X)
(milk is always white so it is usual case not particular)

(ii) The milk is hot don't drink it (✓)
(milk shows the particularity of being hot. so use 'The')

(iii) The beauty is thing a joy forever (X)
(beauty is thing a joy it is usual case no use of 'The')

(iv) The beauty of Kashmir is praise worthy (✓)
(beauty shows the particularity of Kashmir so use of 'The')

(v) The coal is needed for kitchen (X)
(coal is needed for kitchen for cooking so it is a usual case)

(vi) The coal of 'Tharsa' has its own importance (✓)
(coal shows particularity of 'Tharsa')

Rule 4 When a noun appears for the first time in a sentence Article 'a/an' is used. and the noun is going to be repeated article 'the' is used.

ex (i) There lived a king in the forest. The king was very old and wise

(ii) A boy comes to meet you. The boy is wearing a red jacket.

Rule 5: Article 'The' is used before the name of mountain

Mountain

Singular → No article

for ex Everest, K2, Nanda Devi
all are singular mountain

Plural → Article 'The'

for ex. The Himalayas
himalayas are many.

ex ~~The~~ Everest is the highest peak of the himalayas. (X)

Rule 6: Article 'The' is used before the name of island

Island

Singular → No article

ex Java, Sicily, cylone etc

Plural → Article 'The'

ex The Andaman & Nicobar
The west Indies

Rule 7: 'The' is used before the name of newspaper / rivers / forests / deserts / seas / Oceans / name of canals / name of directions - before superlative degree - name of Religious Book - Historical buildings / political parties / Empire / Dynasty / ships / Trains / Aeroplanes / Musical Instruments / Historical events / Museums / Libraries / hostels / Restaurants / Cinema Halls / Bay / Gulf / etc...

22/ December.

Rule 8: 'The' is used before armed forces / govt branches

ex The police, the army, the Navy, the Airforce, the executive, the Legislative, the Judiciary

⇒ यदि 1:2 मे तुलना करते हुए (Comparision + Selection) का भाव दिखाया जाए तो Comparitive foun से पहले 'the' लगाते है और than के बदले 'if' लगाते है।

ex 1) Ram is smarter than Mohan and Sohan (X)

2) Ram is the smarter than Mohan and Sohan (X)

3) Ram is the smarter of Mohan and Sohan (✓)

4) He is better of the two boys (X)

5) He is the better of the two boys (✓)

⇒ "जितना और उतना का भाव दिखाना हो तो"

Structure

The + Comp. + S + V + OW, The + Comp + S + V + OW

ex The higher you go, the cooler you feel.

Rule 9: 'The' is used before the name of parts of universe

ex: The earth moves round the Sun

Rule 10 'The' is used before the parts of body

ex The eyes, the nose

Rule II : 'The' is used before the name of invention

ex The Radio, the T.V, the watch

note T.V देखने के क्रम में 'the' नहीं लगाते।

ex (i) The TV is costly in these day (✓)

(ii) I am watching the T.V (X)

(iii) I am watching T.V (✓)

Omission of 'Article'

Ex: 1) Each boy was ready (✓)

2) Each a boy was ready (X)

⇒ Each / Every / No / either / neither / my / our / your / his / her / their / + (↓) + Nouns
No article

Ex: 1) He travelled ___ the bus

(a) in (b) on (c) with (d) by

2) He travelled by ___ bus

(a) the (b) a (c) an (d) No article

By + ↓ + Noun (Travel)
(No article)

Rule 12: Kind of / Type of / part of / variety of / Rank of / past of / title of / position of / A number of / A lot of / lots of / plenty of / + ↓ + Noun (No article)

Ex: I don't like this kind of a man (X)

I don't like this kind of a man (✓)

note: Kind of / Type of / part of के बाद 'an' का प्रयोग हो सकता है, यदि sentence interogative हो।

Ex: What type of singer is he ? (X)

What type of a singer is he ? (✓)

Rule 13:

Ex: Please tell us in detail (✓)

please tell us in a detail (X)

please tell us in details (X)

SOME PARTICULAR IDIOMS AND PHRASES

in details	on time	in danger, etc..
in fact	in demand	
in trouble	in waste	
in confusion	in crisis	
in time	in doubt	

Rule 14.

Ex: I am going to buy a soap (X)

I am going to buy soaps (X)

I am going to buy soap (✓)

Rule 15. Health, homework, work, paper, money, pity, news, pay, soap, weather, money, wealth, etc... are considered as uncountable so no article should be used.

23, december.

Rule 16. No article should be used before the name of Mohalla (मोहल्ला) village, town, city, state, country etc.

Note: if these words are written themselves in a sentence article 'the' is used.

Ex: The Nehru Vihar is dirty (X)

The Mohalla is dirty (✓)

The India is the best (X)

The Country is the best (✓)

Rule 17 No article should be used before the name of language

Ex: I can speak the Hindi (X)

I can speak the Hindi (✓)

Note: Article 'the' may be used before the name of language. when the word language is written itself in a sentence.

⇒ The + name of language + LANGUAGE

- The Hindi (X)
- The Hindi language (✓)

Rule 18. No article should be used before the name of festivals

Ex The Durga pooja (X)
The Onam (X)

but The + name of festival + FESTIVAL

Ex The holi festival
The Durga pooja festival

Rule 19. No Article should be used before the name of season

Ex The Summer
The Winter

The + name of season + SEASON

Rule 20. No article should be used before school, college, church, bed, prison (जेल), market, temple, hospital, court, mosque, university etc

when this places are visited for their primary purpose.

purpose

Primary — No article

Secondary — 'The'

{ primary in the sense means for example.
bed is for sleeping so primary function 'No Article'
bed for playing secondary function 'Use The' }

Ex: (i) we sleep in the bed (X)

(ii) we sleep in bed (✓)

(iii) The children are playing on bed (X)

(iv) The children are playing on the bed (✓)

(v) I am going to school. (✓)

(vi) I am going to the school (✓) ← purpose nahi pata secondary purpose kya hai

(vii) He is going to hospital to meet his friend (X)

(viii) He is going to the hospital to meet his friend (✓)

Rule 21 No Article should be used before father, mother, brother, uncle, sister etc, man, woman, life, death, science, nature, love, meal, dinner, breakfast, etc.
when these words are used in normal sense.

Note: When these words are used in particular sense article 'the' is used.

Ex • ~~The~~ death forgives none (×)
(सामान्य बात / normal sense so no use of article)

• ~~The~~ death keeps no calender (×)
(सामान्य बात no use of article)

• I can't tolerate the death of my love (✓)
(खास बात sentence show particularity of 'my love')

• ~~The~~ nature looks beautiful in the morning (×)
(nature is beautiful, it is a common sentence)

• The nature of Lanmi is very attractive (✓)
(खास बात, particularity shows to nature of Lanmi)

• The love is great (×)
(सामान्य बात)

• The love between Radha and Krishna is immortal (✓)
(खास बात particularity to Radha & Krishna)

• ~~The~~ father has told me that I should respect my teacher (×)
(सामान्य बात teacher should be respected)

• The father in him is yet alive (✓)
(खास बात)

- I have taken the dinner (X)
  (सामान्य बात, dinner रोज होता है।)

- The dinner was tasty (✓)
  (खास बात dinner tasty है।)

Rule 22: Article 'the' is used before the name of post/profession.

Post / profession

'Subject' → The

'object' → a/an

Ex: The CM / the P.M / the D.M

Ex(i) The teacher is teaching

(ii) The PM is coming

(iii) He is a teacher → object.

26, december.

PRONOUN

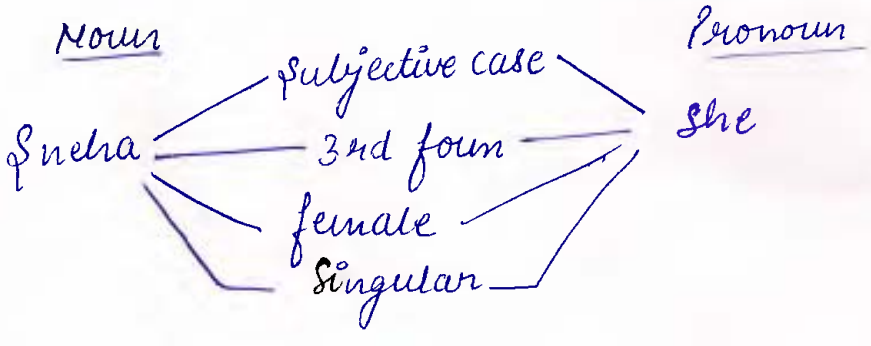
instead of Noun

Ex: Sneha is a beautiful girl (✓) Sneha has 2 brothers and 2 sisters. (✗) Sneha's father is a doctor (✗)

Her — she — Pronoun

note: The repeatition of a noun makes a language absurd and leads some serious errors.

⇒ **Pronoun** is a word which is used to check the repeatition of the noun



Types of Pronoun:

(i) Personal Pronoun
(ii) Demostrative Pronoun
(iii) Indefinite pronoun
(iv) Interrogative pronoun
(v) Possessive pronoun
(vi) Relative pronoun
(vii) Reciprocal pronoun
(viii) Distributive pronoun
(ix) Reflexive pronoun
(x) Emphatic pronoun

Personal Pronoun

Personal (✓)

personnel (X) ⇒ officer, अधिकारी

⇒ I, we, you, he, she, it and they are called personal pronoun.

Ex: (i) I, you and he are going to cinema (X)

(ii) I, you and he is going to cinema (X)

(iii) You, he and I are going to cinema (✓)

(iv) You, he and I am going to cinema (X)

Rule 1: If 3 singular pronouns of different persons are used together in a sentence the normal structure is 2nd person + 3rd person + 1st person

You he I

2nd + 3rd + 1st person

Sub plural + V (plural)

⇒ He + I
3rd 1st

⇒ You + he
2nd + 3rd

⇒ You + I
2nd + 1st

(✓)

⇒ he + You
3rd 2nd

⇒ I + You
1st 2nd

⇒ I + He
1st 3rd

(X)

+ V (Plural)

Rule 2: If 3 pronouns of different person are used together in a sentence but the sense of the sentence is confess a guilt, crime or flaw (दोष) the structure is 1st person + 2nd person + 3rd person.

1st + 2nd + 3rd persons → plural + V (plural)

1st + 2nd, 1st + 3rd, 2nd + 3rd } (✓)

3rd + 2nd, 3rd + 1st, 2nd + 1st } (X)

Ex: (i) I, you and he have done this work (X) → not crime it is a work only

(ii) You, he and I have done this work (✓)

(iii) I, you and he have done this crime (✓)

27, december, 2016.

Rule 3: In the case of plural or mixture of the subject.

The structure is 1st + 2nd + 3rd person

plural [we (1) + you (2) + they (3)] + V (plural)

Ex: we you and they are coming

we you and he are going to America

Rule 4.

Ex: You he and I have done ~~my~~ / our (✓) / ~~your~~ / ~~his~~ / ~~their~~ work

Agar 'I' kahi bhi group me ho to 'our'
'You' kahi bhi ho to 'your'
If no I and you then 'their'

Subject	possession
I	my
You	Your
he	his
she	her
They	their
we	Our
You, he & I	Our
You and he	Your
You & I	Our
He & She	their

+ Noun

It:

This → It (it is use in place of this as a pronoun)

noun | Pronoun | pronoun

Rule 5 'It' is use in place of 'this'

(i) यह एक गाय है, यह काली है

⇒ This is a cow, it is black

(ii) मेरे पास एक गाय है, वह काली है।

⇒ I have a cow it is black.

Rule 6 It + is / was + Subject + who/that + V + Os

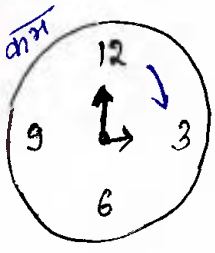
object ✗

which ✗

Ex: it is me who have done this work (✗)

it is I who have done this work (✓)

Rule 7: It is / was + time + hour / day / month / year / small insect / animals / accident / natural event / incident.



To - कम

ज्यादा past

अगर time 5 का multiple हो तो minute शब्द का use नहीं करेंगे

अगर time 5 का multiple ना हो तो minute शब्द लगेगा।

Ex 5:12 → 12 minute past 5
or it is 12 minute past 5

4:48 → it is 12 minute past to 5

Ex: पौने 6 हुआ है - it is quater to 6

सवा 6 हुआ है - it is quater past 6

साढ़े 6 हुआ है - it is half past 6

6 बजने वाला है - it is about to 6

6 के आस पास है। - it is around 6

6 बजकर 5 minute हुआ - it is 5 past 6

⇒ Ex: January का महीना था, मुसला धार बारिश हो रही थी सन 1980

it was the month of January, it was raining cats and dogs. it was the year of 1980

Demonstrative Pronoun

this / that / these / those are called demostrative pronoun

this / that / these / those
(नजदीक)

this / that → Sing + V(sing)

these / those → plural + V (plural)

this / that / these / those + N

Adjective

(demostrative is also a adjective)

Ex: This is a pen, This pen is costly

This → pronoun

pen → N → Adjective

(i) These are boys

(ii) Those boys are naughty.

28, december

INDEFINITE PRONOUN

One
body } Indefinite Pronoun
thing

(1) Someone / Somebody / No one / Nobody / Anybody / Anyone / Everyone / Everybody are called indefinite Pronoun

These words are used as singular and takes singular verb.

⇒ These words are used for person

(2) Something / nothing / Anything / Everything are called Indefinite pronoun

⇒ These words are used as singular and takes singular verb.

These are used for things

(3) Some, most, Any, all, few, one etc are called indefinite pronoun. These are used according to the sense and nature of the sentence.

Ex: (i) Someone are waiting for you (X)

(ii) Someone has told this story (✓)

(iii) Nothing are impossible in this world (X)

Some :

(100%) (20%)

⇒ 'Some' is used with positive and interrogative sentences

Any :

⇒ with (-ve) (100%) and interrogative sentence

Ex: (i) I have some money in the bank

(ii) I don't have any money in the bank

(iii) Have you some money in the bank ?

(a) any (b) some (c) none (d) No improvement

Some / All

Some / All → are (countable) plu. person

Some / All → is (uncountable) (thing)

Ex: कुछ अच्छा है

Some is good

All is well

सब कुछ अच्छा है।

कुछ लोग अच्छे हैं।

Some are good

All are used

सब लोग बढ़िया हैं।

Some / All + of + the + Uncountable (sing) + V (sing)

Countable (plural) + V (plural)

Ex : (i) Some of the milk is dispersed

(ii) Some of the boys are going to cinema

29, december

Interrogative Pronoun

When 'WH' word is used as a pronoun in a sentence it is called interrogative pronoun

if then → WH + AV + S + V + OW + ?
pro / s

if then → WH + N + AV + S + V + OW + ?
Adjective

Ex : where do you live in Delhi?
Pronoun

which car do you like?
Adjective

Possessive Pronoun

the case of pronoun: when a pronoun is used to show possession or ownership in a sentence it is called possesive case

Subjective Case	Possesive Case		Objective Case	Reflextive Pronoun
Personal pronoun	Possesive pro	Possesive Adj		
I	mine	my	me	myself
We	Ours	our	us	Ourself
You	Yours (X) +N	Your (✓) +N	you	yourselves yourself
He	His	his	him	himself
She	Hers	Her	her	herself
It	Its ×	its	it	itself
They	Theirs	Their	them	themselves

Ex: (i) This is your (X)

(ii) That is my (X)

The possessive Adjective is used with the noun. if we use without noun, the sentence becomes wrong

Ex: (i) this is your book (✓)

(ii) that is my book (✓)

Rule

Ex: That is hers house (X)

This is theirs school (X)

The possesive pronoun is used without noun. if we use with noun the sentence becomes wrong.

Ex: That house is hers (✓)

This school is theirs (✓)

Relative Pronoun

Who, which and that are called relative pronoun

S

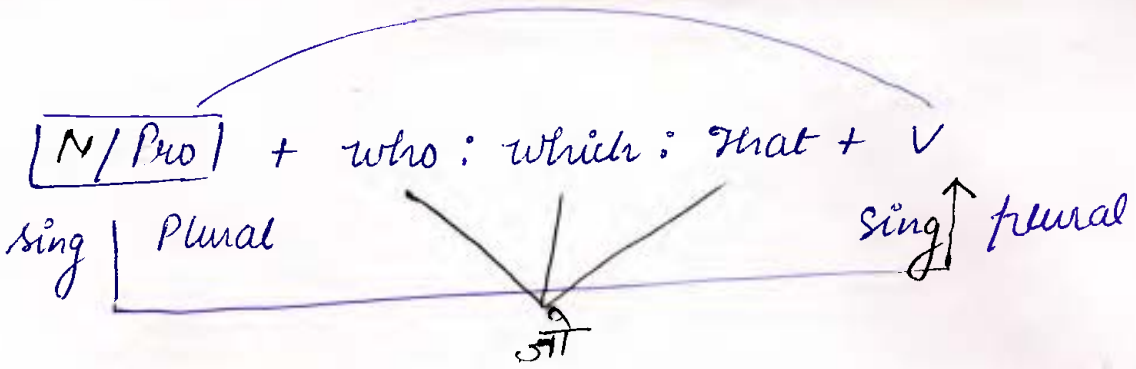
Real — +V (Real) — Ram is

False — +V (false)

who — is she / are you / am I

There — is a boy / are boys

Ex: You are the boy who — has (✓) / have (X) — won the match



Ex: (i) The books that I bought yesterday ~~was~~ were costly (X)

(ii) I am going to buy the car ..which.. was my dream

(a) which (b) who (c) that (d) what

non-living के लिए - which is used

living के लिए - who is used

non-living & living के लिए - that is used

(iii) This is the building ..which.. was build in a single month

(a) which (b) who (c) that (d) what

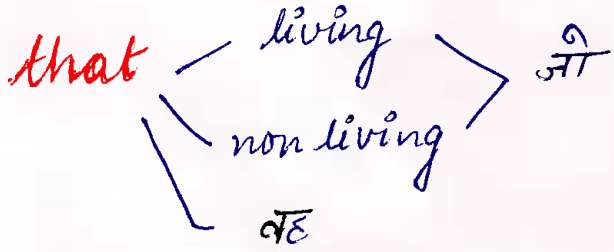
(iv) She is one of those doctors who ~~does~~ do not help the poor (X)

who : use for living
- Relative pronoun (जो)
- Subject (कौन)
- Subject की तलाश

whom : me किसको
- Object की तलाश

my whose : possession
- किसका
- जिसका

which : Relative pronoun non living - जो
- selection or choice - कौन सा
  - living + nonliving



Ex: whom do you like most
किसको तुम

The boys whose parents are abroad, are staying with us
(a) who (b) whom (c) whose (d) which

Reciprocal Pronoun:

Each other and one another are reciprocal pronoun

used for two
person place thing animal

more than two
person place thing animal

Ex: (1) We are made for each other
(2) The 5 sisters love one another

Distributive Pronoun:

Each; either; Neither are called distributive pronoun

but every is adjective only
Each: every: either: Neither + N
distributive Adjective

Each

Used for two

↓

group

प्रत्येक

↓

two

प्रति एक

↓

more than

Every प्रत्येक

More than two

↓

group

Either

↓

दो या दोनो

मे से कोई एक

Neither

↓

दोनो मे से कोई नही

Ex: (i) Each is happy (✓)

pronoun V(sing)

(ii) Each boys are happy (X)

(iii) Each boy is happy (✓)

(iv) Every is happy (X)

pure Adjective needs noun

(v) Every boys are happy (X)

(vi) Every boys is happy (✓)

Common Errors

Rule 1: Each / Every / Either / neither are always used as singular and take singular verb.

$$\Rightarrow \begin{matrix}\text{Each}\\ \text{Every}\\ \text{No}\end{matrix} + N + \text{and} + \begin{matrix}\text{Each}\\ \text{Every}\\ \text{No}\end{matrix} + N \longrightarrow V\,(\text{sing})$$

⇒ Each / Every / No + N + and + N ⟶ V (sing)

⇒ Each / Everyone / Either / neither + of + the + N (plural) + V (sing)

⇒ We / You / They } S + each / every + V (plural)

(i) Each boy and each girl is going to cinema (✓)

(ii) Each of the officers are honest. (X)

(iii) Each of the officer is honest (X)

(iv) Each of the officers is honest (✓)

(v) We each ..have.. advised him to give up smoking

(a) has (b) have (c) are (d) none of these

Reflexive / Emphatic > Self Pronoun

Myself ; Ourselves ; yourself ; yourselves ; himself ; herself ; themselves are called self pronoun

= S + V + self Pronoun (Reflexive)

= S + self pronoun + V (Emphatic)

Ex: She killed himself
S V

I hurt myself

He himself killed the tiger
Emphatic

3/Jan/2017

Common Errors –

Ex: I myself am Ankit (✓)
I myself is Ankit (×)
I myself are Ankit (×)
Myself Ankit (×)

Rule 1: self pronoun is never used as a subject in a sentence.

Ex: One should not waste his time (×)
One should not waste one's time (✓)

Rule 2: अगर subject one हो तो possessive one's होगा

Ex: Everyone is the master of one's fate (भाग्य) (×)
Everyone is the master of his fate (✓)

Rule 3: Someone, somebody, Noone, Nobody, anyone, anybody, everyone, everybody followed by a pronoun

His / her not one's

99% 1%

Ex: (i) There are five lazy students and one industrious student / one / ones / one's

(ii) there are five industrious students and two lazy one / ones / one's

Rule 4: Singular के Repeatition से बचने के लिए → One

plural → Repeat → ones

Ex: (i) There are five lazy students and one industrious one. (✓)

(ii) There are five industrious student and to lazy ones (✓)

(iii) I have a black pen besides these Red pens / ones (✓)

Ex: (i) ⇒ Mr. sharma prides on the result of his son (X)

Mr. sharma prides himself on the result of his son (✓)

Rule 5: Enjoy, pride, absent, present, introduce, busy, avail, address, phym

(prostrate, Resign, Acquit (रिहा करना), Assert (जोर देकर कहना) etc are followed by Reflexive pronoun.

इनके बाद self pronoun का use किया जाता है।

Ex: let Ram and I solve this problem (✗)

let Ram and me solve this problem (✓)

(sub/obj) (object)

Rule 6: Let अगर कोई वाक्य बनेगा तो उसके बाद कभी subject नहीं आयेगा, हमेशा objective case आयेगा।

structure: let + objective case

let + O + V + O

note: ~~किसी~~ का नाम subject/object में same होता है।

Rule 7: Preposition के बाद subject नहीं लगा सकते।

objective case is used

Ex: Sunita laughed at you and I/me (✗) (✓)

subject भी है और object भी but here object

There is a conflict between Ram and me.

preposition

Rule 8: But or except के बाद हमेशा objective case आयेगा।

Ex: Everyone attends the meeting except him (✓)

Ex: Mukesh is as fat as I/me (✓) (✗)

I run faster than he/him (✓) (✗)

Rule 9: As के बाद हमेशा positive degree आता है + as + subjective

⇒ as / then के बाद हमेशा subjective case का use

That:

Rule 1: (1) After superlative degree that is used

Ex: she is the wised girls ... that ... I know

(a) that (b) who (c) which (d) nobody

Rule (2) that is used after the word all/some, any, none, only, nothing, everything, anything

Ex: I have told you all that I know

Rule (3) It के बाद is / was + subjective case + who / that

Ex: it was priya who / that bought this book

4/Jan/2017

Adjective

pronounciation - Ajective

⇒ Adjective is a word which add something to the meaning of a noun or a pronoun

Use of Adjective

Attributive Adjective — Predicative Adjective

(i) Attributive Adjective

When an adjective is used before a noun in a sentence it is called attributive adjective

Ex: India has a big Army
attributive adj. noun

She was a laborious girl
attributive adj noun

(ii) Predicative Adjective

When an adjective is used after the noun it is called predicative adjective

Ex: He was industrious (मेहनती)
pronoun — predicative adj

Lata is intelligent
noun — predicative adj

Kinds of Adjective

- Adjective of quality / qualitative adjective
- Adjective of quantity / quantitative adjective
- Adjective of number / numeral adjective
- Demostrative Adjective
- possessive adjective
- Interrogative adjective
- Distributive adjective
- proper adjective

} Pronomial adjective

(1) Adjective of quality / quantity adjective

That adjective that deals with the quality of a noun or pronoun it is called adjective of quality.

Ex: Good, bad, red, black, blue, short, beautiful, ugly ... etc

(i) He is a foolish student
adjective of quality

(ii) Suman is a tall girl.
adjective of quality

(2) Quantitative Adjective

The adjective that expresses the quantity of a noun or pronoun.

Ex: some, any, much, a lot of, lots of, whole, all enough, sufficient, little, a little, the little

(i) there is a little water in the glass.

(3) Adjective of number / numeral

The adjective that shows the no of a noun or pronoun

ex: One, two, three, four..., next, last, first, second, third...., some, many, the few, few, a lot of, lots of, all, enough, sufficient, no, none, most, certain, a certain etc....

Ex: (i) Many criminals were killed

(ii) I have 3 rooms

(4) Demostrative adjective

When the word this, that, these and those are used before the noun it is called demostrative adjective.

Ex: (i) These boys are making a noise.

(ii) this doll is very attractive.

(5) Possessive Adjective

My, our, your, his, her, there are used before the noun it is called possesive adjective.

Ex: These are our chairs

That is your doll.

(6) Interrogative Adjective

When 'WH' word is used before the noun it is called interrogative adjective

Ex: Which car do you like

what book do you want to read.

(7) Distributive Adjective

When the word each, every, either, neither are used before the noun it is called distributive adjective

Ex: Each boy has a new car

Neither pen writes well

Note: ये सारे adjective (pronomial adjective) pronoun chapter से (dsl notes) मिलाकर के पढ़ा जाना चाहिए,

(8) Proper adjective

proper adjective is derived from proper noun.

Proper Noun	→	Proper adjective
India	→	Indian
America	→	American
Patna	→	Patnite
Delhi	→	Delhiite
Punjab	→	punjabi
Haryana	→	Haryanvi
Holland	→	Dutch
Britian	→	British
France	→	French
Bihar	→	Bihari

+ S → Plural Common Noun

5/Jan/2017

Degree

Degree is nothing its the level of comparision

Ex: Mukesh is as tall as Suresh (✓)

Mukesh is as taller as Suresh (X)

Mukesh is a tall boy (✓)

as + positive + as

Mukesh is taller than Suresh (✓)

Note: दुनिया के सारे adjective positive होते हैं। Comparitive और Superlative हम लोग अपनी सुविधा के लिए बनाते हैं।

⇒ There are 3 types of Degree

- positive Degree
- Comparitive Degree
- Superlative Degree

Positive Degree:

When no comparision is introduced positive degree is used

Ex wise, tall, lazy, sad, red, hot... etc

Comparitive Degree:

When comparision is introduced between two persons, places, animals or things Comparitive degree is used

positive + r/er + than = Comparative

Ram is — wiser than / taller than → Mohan

Superlative Degree or higher degree:

When comparision is introduced among 3 or more than 3 the superlative degree is used. it refer to highest degree

⇒ The + positive + st/est

Wise → the widest

Tall → the tallest.

Ex: Tripathi was the oldest man in the village.

Formation of Degree

Syllable (शब्दांश)

Book Concept

Monosyllable (एक)
किसी word मे एक vowel
ex = man

Di-syllable (दो)
किसी word मे दो vowel
ex: woman

Polly syllable (दो से ज्यादा)
किसी word मे दो से ज्यादा vowel
ex: Abdoman

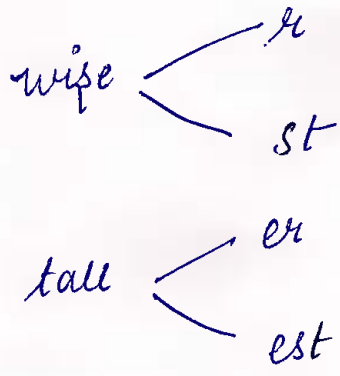
DSL Concept

किसी शब्द के prounciation के मुख द्वार पर जितनी बार बाधाओं का सामना करना पड़ता है, वह उतने ही letter का syllable कहा जाता है।

Monosyllable

r/er - Comparative

st/es - Superlative



Di - Syllable

More - Comparative

Most - Superlative



List 1:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Rich	Richer	Richest
tall	taller	tallest
small	smaller	smallest
sweet	sweeter	sweetest
Dark	Darker	Darkest
Poor	Poorer	poorest
clever	cleverer	cleverest
slow	slower	slowest
Bright	Brighter	brightest
Great	greater	greatest
Dear	Dearer	dearest
cheap	cheaper	cheapest
long	longer	longest

thick	thicker	thickest
White	whiter	whitest
Brave	Braver	Bravest
Wise	Wiser	Wisest
Wide	Wider	Widest
Able	abler	ablest

List 2°:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Beautiful	more Beautiful	most beautiful
Handsome	more beautiful	most beautiful
Difficult	more difficult	most difficult
intelligent	more intelligent	most intelligent
Useful	more useful	most useful
Interesting	more interesting	most interesting
Industrious	more industrious	most industrious
Innocent	more innocent	most innocent
Expensive	more Expensive	most Expensive
Courageous	more Courageous	most Courageous

Imp Rule: Some of the adjectives which end in consonant letter and preceded by vowel letter foun their comparative & Superlative after doubling the last consonant letter.

Ex: Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Red	Redder	Reddist
Big	bigger	biggest
Fat	fatter	fattish
Sad	Sadder	Saddest
Thin	Thinner	Thinnest
Top	Topper	toppest
glad	gladder	gladdest
hot	hotter	hottest
fit	fitter	fittest
dim	dimmer	dimmest
slim	slimmer	slimmest
wet	wetter	wettest

6/Jan/2017

last letter Y

Happy — Happier / Happiest

↓

change I — er Comparative / est Superlative

Ex:

happy	happier	happiest
Silly	Sillier	Silliest
Easy	Easier	Easiest
dry	dryer×	dryest×
Wealthy	wealthier	Wealthiest
healthy	healthier	healthiest
dirty	dirtier	dirtiest
Pretty	prettier	prettiest
naughty	naughtier	naughtiest
lazy	lazyier	lazyiest

Rule: Some of the adjectives foun their Comparative Superlative irregularly.

Positive	Comparitive	Superlative
Good	better	best

well	better	best
bad	worse	worst
ill	worse	worst
evil	worse	worst
much	more	most
many	more	most
little	less / lesser	least
late <	later	latest
	latter	last
old <	older	oldest
	elder	eldest
fore (सामने)	further	furthest
up	upper	uppermost / upmost
out <	outer	utmost / outermost / uttermost
	utter	
far	farther	farthest

कुछ ऐसे शब्द हैं जिसे Latin से लिया गया है।
इनके degree नहीं बनाए जाते, इनके शब्दो का अंत 'or'
से होता है। इसकी संख्या 12 है।

List 1: Interior, Exterior, ulterior (गुप्त), major, minor

note: These 5 are used in positive degree these are not used in Comparative and superlative

Ex: (i) The interior wall of this house is made of wood

(ii) it is a major operation

(iii) it is a minor operation

List 2:

Inferior
superior
prior
anterior (पहले वाला)

posterior
Senior
Junior
} + to

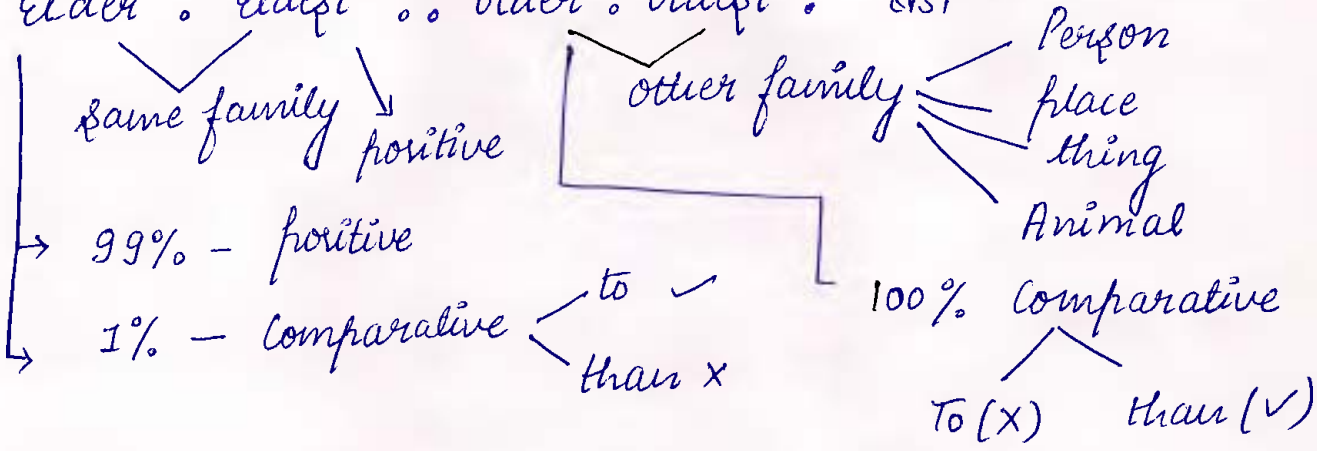
These 7 are used in comparative adjective these always take 'to' not 'them'

note: these are not used in positive & superlative

Ex: American goods are superior to Nepali's goods.

HOT TIPS

(1) Elder : Eldest :: older : oldest : वाला



Ex: (1) His elder brother went to America last year

(2) Her eldest son lives in America

(3) My brother Ram is elder to me

(4) Radha is older than Meena

(5) His building is older than that

(6) His is the oldest temple in the village.

Uncountable
Sing + v (Sing)

little a little The little

Countable
plural + v (plural)

Few a few the few

} सबसे / कम

⇒ **little** (ना के बराबर)

little is a negative word. It never takes no, not and never

Ex: (i) I am little sorry (ii) There is little water in the glass

9/January/2017

A little (positive word) थोड़ा

Ex: I am a little sorry

There is a little water in the jug

The little (थोड़ा में सब) group को दिखाता है।

Ex: I drank the little water there in the bottle

Few (नकारात्मक) negative word it never takes No not or never.

Ex: Few boys are absent today (✓)

Few boy is absent today (✗)

A Few (थोड़ा) A few is a positive word

Ex: I need a few pens

The few (जो थोड़ा सब)

Ex: The few boys who came today were going to their village

I have lost the few pens which bought yesterday.

Rule: later, latter, latest, last

later → (बाद में) late in time; comp. → than

latter → next (अगला); ↓ positive

latest → current (हाल - फिलहाल का); positive degree

last → final in position (अंतिम); positive

Ex: what is your latter program

what is the latest news

who came later than you

who came last

Rule: former (पहले) latter (बाद में / अगला)

Note: Former or latter का प्रयोग यदि एक साथ किया जाए तो दोनों के पहले Article 'the' जरूर लगाया जाता है।

Ex: Reena and Veena are good friends but the first is better than the last (✗)

Reena and Veena are good friends but the former is better than the latter (✓)

Rule:

further (अगला) → used in positive degree

farther (ज्यादा दूर / more distance) → used in Comparative degree

Ex: ① Further discussion will be held in the office

② Gaya is farther from Hazipur than patna

Rule: Nearest (सबसे नजदीक) Next (अगला)

Ex: (i) Who will be the next C.M of Delhi

(ii) Which is the nearest police station

Rule: Mutual (पारस्परिक) Common (जो बहुतो से संबंध रखता हो)

↓

एक दूसरे से संबंधित

Ex: (i) The mutual friendship between Sarika and Sarita is growing day-by-day

(ii) Suresh is my common friend

Rule: First, foremost can be used together

Ex: (i) Mahatma Gandhi was the first and foremost leader of his time

(ii) Our first and foremost duty is to serve our motherland

Rule: Oral (मौखिक) Verbal (शाब्दिक)

↓

By word of mouth

Ex: (i) His is an oral examination

(ii) His is an oral medicine

(iii) You have done some verbal mistake in your notebook

Rule: Cool (आरामदायक ठंडा) → pleasant

Cold (दुखदायी ठंड) → painfull

Ex: Air is cold in January

Rule: Warm (आरामदायक) hot (दुखदायी)

Ex: Heater is hot in June, July

Heater is warm in January

10/Jan/2017

Common Errors in the use of Adjectives

Ex: She studied the whole day (✓)

She studied whole day (×)

She studied whole the day (×)

Rule The + whole + of + N + ... proper N

(1) The whole of nation maurned the death of APJ Abdul Kalam

Rule Prefer and preferable are always followed by to not by than

(1) Priya prefer Limca than pepsi (×)

(2) Priya prefers Limca to pepsi (✓)

S + prefer + N + to + N

S + prefer + V4 + to + V4

Ex: I prefer reading to writing

Rule: Ordinal Adjective + Cardinal Adjective

Order — first, last

Count — One, two, three ....

Rule:

Than - Compare

Then - तब

Than is followed by a pronoun in the subjective case as well as objective case when comparision is introduced between 2 subject / 2 object

You are better than me (X)

You are better than I (✓)

You are better than — I (S) ✓ / me X

S

He likes you more than me ✓

S V O O

He likes you more than I do ✓

S O S

Rule: That of / those of

Ex: The climate of Patna is better than Delhi (X)

(2) The climate of Patna is better than the climate of Delhi (X)

(3) The climate of Patna is better than that of Delhi (✓)

(4) The people of India are more laborious than those of America (✓)

जब दो समान वस्तुओं कि तुलना हो तो singular noun के repeatition से बचने के लिए that of और plural noun से बचने के लिए those of use करते है,

Rule: Any other / all other

(1) Mumbai is busier than anyother city of India (✓)

(2) Mumbai is busier than anyother cities of India (X)

(3) Mumbai is busier than any city of India (X)

(4) Mumbai is busier than all other cities of India (✓)

Any + other + N (sing)

All + other + N (Plural)

Rule:

Ex: (1) Ram is wiser than strong (X)

(2) Ram is wiser than Shyam (✓)

(3) Ram is more wise than Shyam (X)

(4) Ram is more wise than strong (✓)

(person) P_1 Ram

(quality) Q_1 more wise than Q_2 strong

different quality of same person

how to compare

so use more wise than strong

Q_1 wise

Ram is wiser than Shyam

Comparative degree

⇒ when Comparision of 2 qualities of the same person . more is used instead of 'er'

Ex: Kolkata is older than populous (आबादी)

Kolkata is more old than populous (✓)

Rule Double Comparative and Superlative should not be used together

Ex: She is more wiser than her brother (X)

She is wiser than her brother (✓)

Rule when 2 adjectives refers to the same person both of them should be in the same degree

Ex: (i) She is old and beautiful girl in the class (✓)

(ii) She is older and beautiful girl in the class (X)

(iii) She is older and more beautiful girl in the class (✓)

Rule Gradually increasing/decreasing is followed by double Comparative.

Ex: My friend is getting fatter and fatter day by day

Rule The + Comparative + S + V + O/W, + the + Comparative + S + V + O/W

(in hindi) जितना ..... उतना

Ex: The higher you go the cooler you feel

Rule When two or more Comparative/Superlative are joined by 'and' they must be in the same degree.

Ex: (1) Denial was one of the wisest and learned man of the world (X)

(2) Denial was one of the wisest and most learned man of the world. (✓)

Rule Comparatively/relatively is followed by positive degree not comparative

Ex: The patient is comparatively good today (✓)

The patient is comparatively better today (X)

Rule Adjective of size > adjective of quality > age > shape > colour > origin > material.

Ex: She has black long hair (X) (ii) She has long black hair (✓)

size = long, small, short, big etc

quality = good, bad, well fine etc

age = young, old, modern, ancient etc

colour = black, red, blue etc

Origin = Indian, American etc

material = iron, gold, steel etc.

13/Jan/2017

VERB

⇒ Verb shows an action or style

⇒ A word that stands for doing or being something is called verb.

He reads a novel — Verb (doing)

He is a student — being (verb)

⇒

- Verb
  - main verb (M.V)
  - Auxiliary verb (24)
    - principal A.V (11): is / are / am / was / were / do / does / did / has / have / had
    - Modals (10): will / shall / would / should / can / could / may / might / must / ought to
    - Semi-modal (3): Need, Dare, used to

Main Verb

(A) (i) transitive
(ii) intransitive

(B) (i) Regular
(ii) Irregular

(C) (i) finite
(ii) infinite

There are 5 types of main verb

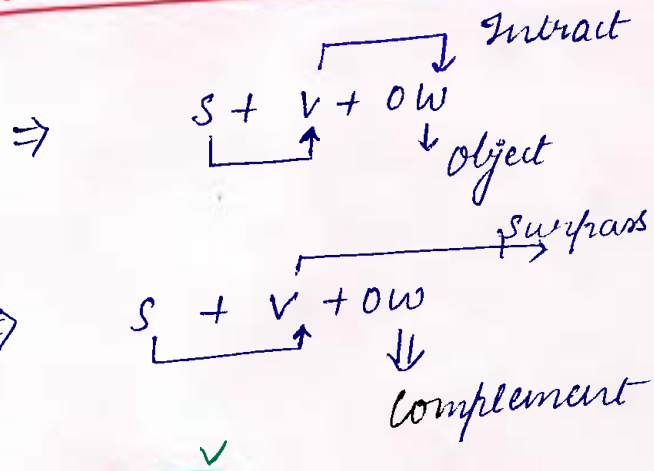
plural present (V^1) — past (V^2) — perfect (V^3) — Continuous (V^4) — Present (V^5)

Regular Verb ⇒ eat ate eaten eats

Irregular ⇒ Cut Cut Cut cutting cuts

list of irregular verb : Cut, put, hit, bid (बोली, लगाना), set (शर्त लगाना), let (किराये पर देना), set, wet (भीगाना), bet (शर्त लगाना), let (किराये पर देना), cast (ढांचा), lost, Read, spread (फैलाना), hurt, burst (फटना), etc

Transitive or intransitive Verb



Ex: He (eats) a mango
S V O

(2) She goes to Delhi
S V OW

(3) She laughs at night
S V OW

(4) She laughs at you
S V object

V

object taken Ex: eat
transitive verb का ही P.V बनाते है।

non object taken Ex: go
intransitive verb का P.V नही बनाते है।

16, Jan, 2017

Finite and infinite verb

⇒ ऐसा कोई भी verb जिस पर subject का शासन हो, तो finite verb कहलाता है।

⇒ ऐसा कोई भी verb जिस पर subject का शासन नहीं हो, तो वो infinite verb कहलाता है।

Rule 1: यदि किसी sentence के subject का number और person बदलने से verb के foun मे किसी भी प्रकार का परिवर्तन होता है, तो वह verb finite verb कहलाता है।

ऐसा करने से यदि verb के foun मे कोई परिवर्तन ना हो तो वह verb infinite verb कहलाता है।

Rule 2: यदि किसी sentence के tense को बदलने से verb के foun मे किसी भी प्रकार का परिवर्तन होता है, तो वह verb finite कहलाता है और ऐसा करने से यदि verb के foun मे कोई परिवर्तन ना हो तो वह verb infinite verb कहलाता है।

Ex: He goes (V) to market to buy (IFV) some books

I go to market to buy (IFV) some books

He went (FV) to market to buy (IFV) some books

Non-finite foun of the Verb

There are 3 members in the family of non finite foun of the verb.

- Infinitives = To + V'
- Gerund = V' + ing = V4
- Participle
  - Present participle = V' + ing = V4
  - Past participle = V3
  - Perfect participle = Having + V3

⇒ A structural survey of V + ing = V4

finite (V4) — infinite

He / S is writing / V a letter

Gerund (V4) — Present participle (V4)

when V' + ing is used as a noun (subject + object) it is called Gerund

S + V + Ow

(1) Writing / S is an art

(2) Walking is good for health

(3) Smoking is injurious to health

⇒ when V + ing is used as an adjective in a sentence. it is called present participle it shows an infinite action

I saw a ..... boy / N in the hall

finite

I saw a smoking boy / N in the hall

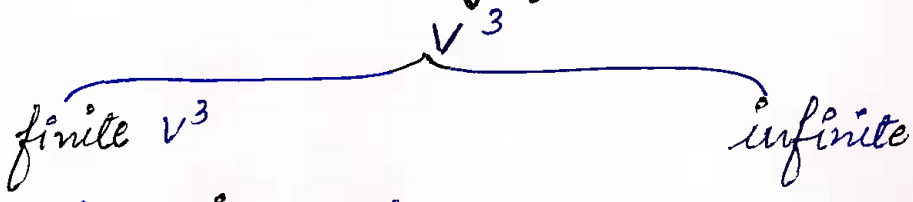
adjective

present participle

infinite

17, Jan 2017

⇒ A structural survey of V^3



Ram has written a letter
V 3

She gave a written statement before the judge
Adj V3 N

Uses of non-finite verb

(i) infinitives (to + v')

Rule 1 To + v' is used as a subject in a sentence. It is used as singular and takes singular verb.

To + v' = ST

Ex: To sleep is necessary to life
To steal is a crime.

Rule 2 It may be used as an object.

Ex: Everybody fears to die.

Rule 3 It may be used as an adjective/adverb

Ex: English is easy to learn
N Adj adverb

Ex: He has no money to buy
N Adj

Common Errors in the use of infinitives

Ex: I requested / to go him / at once / no error

I requested him to go at once.

(ii) She forbide her daughter / that she should / go out at night / no error.

She forbide her daughter to go out at night

Rule Subject + allow / advise / compel / show / urge / teach / warn / tell / request / persuade / permit / order / oblige / invite / instruct / force / forbid / expect / encourage + object + to + v' + ow

Ex: The situation compelled him to leave the city

Ex for next Rule: (i) I glad to meet you (x)

I am glad to meet you

(ii) I happy to see you here (x)

I am happy to see you here.

(iii) I glad meet you (x)

Structure: S + is / am / are / was / were + glad / unable / able / surprised / lucky / right / wrong / stupid / delighted / disappointed / anxious / happy / pleased / shocked / likely / fit / angry etc + to + v'

Ex: He is unable to do anything for you

You are surprised to see me here.

Rule: **Structure:** Subject + try / refuse / proceed / pretend / prepare / prefer / plan / afford / neglect / mean / regret / seem / manage / learn / intend / hesitate / begin / beg / choose / forget + to + v' + ow

(i) I planned to visit the Taj Mahal
(ii) He hesitates to speak English
(iii) He forget to learn the lesson.

Remember. You should to go there (X)
I will to read English (X)

Rule: After modal 'to' is not used
(i) You should go there
(ii) I will read English

Rule: Had better / had sooner / had rather / would rather / would sooner के बाद 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता

Ex: (i) You had better to come now (X)
You had better come now
(ii) He would sooner / rather die than tell a lie (✓)

Ex for next Rule
(i) let me to go (X)
(ii) let me go (✓)

Structure: let + object + V1 + ow

Rule: Make का use यदि Active voice में हो तो 'to' का use नहीं होता और यदि passive voice में हो तो 'to' लगाना पड़ता है।

Ex: They made me cry
She was made to cry

GERUND (v'+ing)

Rule Gerund is used as a subject in a sentence it is used as singular and takes singular verb

Ex: Swimming is good for health
gerund

Rule: It may be used as an object

Ex: She likes dancing gerund
He enjoyed drinking gerund

Common Error

Rule:
Ex: (i) He doesn't mind to wait here (X)

(ii) He doesn't mind to waiting here (X)

(iii) He doesn't mind waiting here (✓)

⇒ Gerund may be used after these words :-
avoid, enjoy, mind, hate, worth etc
we should avoid smoking

Rule: Structure : S + is/am/are/was/were + used to
+ { accustomed to / addicted to / habituated to } + v4 + ow

(i) Mr Sharma is used to working at night
(ii) Are you addicted to gambling

Rule: S + is/am/was/were + confident of / desirous of / hopeful of / tired of } + V4 + ow

Ex: We are hopeful of winning the match

Rule: Gerund may be used after preposition

Ex: (1) Mohan is fond of eating

(2) He saved his brother from drowning

Rule: Gerund may be used after possessive:

My / our / your / his / her / their / Lata's / Mohan's } + V4

Ex: (i) You should not mind his coming late

(ii) He postponed his wife's going to Delhi

Present Participle (V'+ing)

When V'+ing is used as an adjective in a sentence. it is called present participle → it shows an unfinished action

Structure: S + see / find / catch / leave / hear / feel / smell / listen / notice / watch + O + V'+ing + ow

Ex: I saw a running horse in the forest

I saw a horse running in the forest

I caught him stealing my books

Ex for next Rule:

(i) She is busy to prepare for the UPSC examination (X)

(ii) She is busy preparing for the UPSC examination (✓)

Structure:

S + is/am/are/was/were + busy + v¹ + ing

Rule: when और while के बाद present participle का use किया जाता है,

Ex: Komal saw a deer while walking in the zoo

Be careful when crossing the road

Past Participle (v^3)

When v^3 is used as an adjective in a sentence it is called past participle

Ex: He was carrying a loaded gun

(ii) I made a ..... girl

(a) disappoint (c) disappointed (✓)

(b) disappointing

Perfect Participle (Having + v^3)

वह अपना खाना खा कर ऑफिस गया

Having $\begin{cases} \text{taken} \\ \text{had} \\ \text{eaten} \end{cases}$ his meal, He went to office

Ex: having finished my work, I went to house

Having + v^3 + ow, S + v^2 + ow

Auxiliary Verb

Principle auxiliary verb:

	V^1 - Plural Present	V^2 - past	V^3 - present	V^4 - continu	V^5 - Present sing
होना - Verb to be	am/are	was/were	been	being	is
करना - Verb to do	do	did	done	doing	does
रखना - Verb to have	have	had	had	having	has
जरूरत - Verb to Need	need	needed	needed	needing	needs
साहस - Verb to dare	dare	dared	dared	daring	dares
इच्छा - Verb to will	will	willed	willed	willing	wills

Ex: My Mother has a beautiful Umbrella

Note: सारे auxiliary verb का प्रयोग auxiliary verb के साथ साथ main verb के जैसा भी प्रयोग किया जाता है।

- यदि auxiliary verb के बाद main verb का प्रयोग किया जाए तो वह auxiliary verb helping verb कहलाता है।

V^3 / V^4

S + AV + MV + OW

HV

He gone → He has gone

- यदि auxiliary verb के बाद main verb का प्रयोग ना किया जाए बल्कि कोई noun या O.W का प्रयोग किया जाए तो वह वह auxiliary verb main verb कहलाता है।

S + A.V + N/ow

↓

M.V

V1 V3 V2

M.V

↑

I have a car

had a car

I have gone/eaten

H.V

have a car

M.V

note: H.V के साथ 'not' का use किया जाता है,
जबकि M.V के साथ 'not' का use नहीं किया जाता है।

Neg ex. I do not My mother doesn't have a beautiful umbrella.

Modals

Can, could, may, might, will, would, shall, should, must and ought to these are the modals

Common Errors:

The modals are used in different ways. if the sense of the sentence is ability, posibility, duty and suggestion

Ex: I can this work (X)

You should there (X)

Modals are always used with the help of main verb

Structure:

⇒ S + modals + V' + ow

(1) S + modals + V' + ow - active voice

S + modals + be + V3 + ow - passive voice] present

(2) S + modals + have + v3 + ow — A.V

S + modals + have + been + v3 + by + o — P.V] past tense

Ex: • She should write a letter

⇒ A letter should be written by her

• She should have written a letter

⇒ A letter should have been written by her

Modals are used with conditional sentences.

Rule 1:

(1) S + will / shall / can / Must + v1 + ow ↑ conj + s + v1/5 + ow

(2) S + would / could / might + v1 + ow ↑ conj + s + v2 + ow

(3) S + would / could / might + have + v3 + ow, ↑ conj + s + had + v3 + ow

Ex: (i) If you come to me I will help you

(ii) If you came to me I would help you

(iii) If you had come to me I would have helped you.

Rule 2: Ex: (i) I will to go there (X)

(ii) You should to read English (X)

⇒ After Modals 'to' is not used

Rule 3: Ex: (i) You should must go there (X)

(ii) You should and must go there (✓)

⇒ Double modals should not be used together

note: यदि and से जुड़ा हो तो एक साथ हो सकता है।

Uses of Modals

(1) **Can** - **Rule 1:** Can is used with the sense of ability, power and capacity.

S + can + v' + ow < S + has/have + < power to / ability to / capacity to + v' + ow

S + is/am/are + able to + v' + ow

Ex: I can beat you

Rule 2: Can is used with the sense of possibility

S + can + be + N/ow — 60%

Ex: She can be a nurse

You can be a teacher

Rule 3: Can is used to express habit / nature

Ex: A deceitful person can deceive us.

(धोखेबाज आदमी धोखा दे सकता है।)

Rule 4: Can is used with the sense of rough permission

Permision
- Formal → May + S + V' + OW + ?
- Informal / Rough → Can + S + V' + OW + ?
- Polite →
  - Could + S + V' + OW + please + ?
  - would + S + please + V' + OW + ?

Ex:

Formal
- May I come in sir?

informal
- Can I come in?
- Can I talk with you?
- Can I come in sir? (X) sir is formal so no use of 'can'

Polite
- would you please help me?

Could : **Rule 1:** could is used with the sense of polite request / permission

Ex: Could you help me?
Could you lend me 5000 rupees please?

Rule 2: Could is used with the sense of past power, ability and capacity

when + S + was / were + N/OW, S + could + V' + OW

Ex: When I was young, I could run 2 miles at a stretch.

Rule 3: Could is used with past tense of Can in indirect speech.

Ex: He said that he could beat me in the race.

Rule 4: Could is used with the sense of unreal situation in possibility

If + S + V1 + OW, S + could + V1 + OW unreal

S + could + be + M/OW – possibility - 1%

Ex: If I had money I could start some business

It could be a bomb.

Rule 5:

Could

सका / नहीं सका — कर सकता था, पर किया नहीं

S + could + V1 + OW

S + couldn't + V1 + OW

S + could + have + V3 + OW

Ex: I could have beaten him

I could have spoken English

(3) May

Rule 1: May is used with the sense of formal permission (give & take)

May + S + V1 + OW + ?

Ex: May I come in Sir?

May I use your pen?

Rule 2: May is used with the sense of possibility (but not sure) 50%

S + May + V1 + OW – 50%

Ex: It may rain today

She may come today

Rule3: May is used with the sense of bless/curse/wish/pray.

May + S + V' + OW + .

आशीर्वाद कोसे

Ex: May you be an IAS officer

May you have a happy and long life.

Rule4: May is used with the sense of purpose

S + V1/5 + OW (conj) S + May + V' + OW

(that, so that, in order that)

purpose

Ex: We obey our parents so that we may prosper in our life.

Might: Rule1: might is used with the sense of less possibility

S + might + V' + OW } present → 10-15%

S + might + be + N/Adj } संभावना (possibility)

S + might + have + V3 + OW – past sense

संभावना थी - 10-15%

Ex: It might rain today

Jacky might love Sofiya

She might have left her job

She might be there

Rule2: Might is used with the past of may in indirect speech

Ex: She said that she might go

Rule3: Might is used with conditional sentences

If + S + V2 + OW, S + might + V1 + OW.

I wish (काश), S + might + have + V3 + OW.

If + S + had + V3 + OW, S + might + have + V3 + OW

Ex: • I wish you might have meet obama

• If he had left his notebook there, somebody might have stolen that

• If he worked hard, he might succeed.

Would: Rule1: Would is used with the past of will in indirect speech.

Ex: She said that she would go there

Rule2: Would is used with the sense of polite request

Ex: (1) Would you lend me 5000 rupee?

(2) would you please help me?

Rule3: Would is used with the sense of would like to (चाहूँगा)

S + would like to + V1 + OW

Ex: I would like to love you from dus to dawl (साथ सवेरे)

I would like to meet you tomorrow

Rule4: Would is used with the sense of choice and preference after adding 'rather'

would + rather + V1 + than

Ex: He would rather die than beg भीख मांगना

She would rather go than stay

Rule 5: Would is used to express wish

[Would that, S + were + N/Adj]

↓

I wish

Ex: would that I were a bird

Rule 6: Would is used with conditional sentences

If + S + V² + OW, S + would + V¹ + OW

If + S + had + V³ + OW, S + would + have + V³ + OW

Had + S + V³ + OW, S + would + have + V³ + OW

If + S + were + N/OW, S + would + V¹ + OW

Ex: (o) If you come to me, I would give you a lot of money

(o) If she had come here I would have helped her

(o) If I were a bird, I would fly in the sky

(o) Had the police come a little before, the criminals would not have ran away

Rule 7: Would is used with the sense of past habit

past habit किया करता था

Used to

S + used to + V¹ + OW

would

Sometime

often S + would + V¹ + OW

Usually

seldom

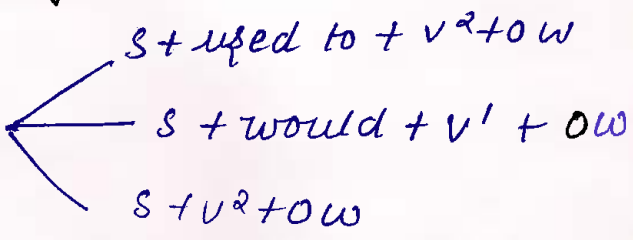
daily ┐ last में use

everyday ┘

rarely

never

Ex: I would go to temple daily

when + S + was/were + N/ow + 

Ex: When I was in Delhi, I used to watch movie
When I was in Delhi, I would sometimes watch movie
When I was in Delhi, I watched movie.

Should : Rule 1: should is used with the past of shall in indirect speech

Ex: He asked me, if should help him.

Rule 2: should is used with the sense of give and take advice.

S + should + V1 + ow → present (चाहिए)

S + should + be + N/ Adj → चाहिए ~~fronibility~~

S + should + have + V3 + ow ← चाहिए था / पछतावा

Ex: You should not laugh at his mistake
You should have gone his home
I should have joined the english class

Rule 3: should is used with the sense of duty / moral obligation (नैतिक ~~दायित्व~~)

Ex: One should love one's country

Rule 4: should is used with the sense of formal infouration / notice

Ex: Candidates should answer all the questions

Rule 5: Should is used with the sense of less possibility

If + S + should + V1 + OW . . .

If + should + S + V1 + OW .

Ex: If he should come, ask him to wait for one

(उसके आने की संभावना कम है यदि फिर भी वह आता है तो उससे कहना मेरा इंतजार करे।)

Rule 6: Should is used with the word lest

left - should - कहीं ऐसा ना हो कि

- sentence start ✗
- negative word ↳ not / No (✗)

S + V + OW, lest + S + should + V1 + OW

Ex: (1) He works hard, lest he should fail

(2) Hurry up lest it should be evening.

23/Jan/2017

Ought to: ought to is used with the sense of moral duty / moral advice.

ought to = should

:- S + ought to + V1 + OW ⇒ neg S + ought + not to + ...

↳ present

:- S + ought to + have + V3 + OW — past.

Must : Rule1: Must is used with the sense of compulsion /necessity/ certainty and strong determination

- S + must + v1 + ow – present
- S + must + be + N/ow – fouibility 80%
- S + must + have + v3 + ow – fouibility

अवश्य / अवश्य चाहिए

Ex: (1) Soldiers must obey their commander (✓)

(2) Soldiers should obey their commander (X)

(Compulsion के लिए should नहीं)

(3) She must have left her job (✓)

(4) You must be there (✓)

(5) You must have studied english (✓)

Shall : Rule1: Shall is used with I st person to explain any future event.

- S + shall + v1 + ow

Ex: (1) I shall buy a car next month.

Rule2: Shall is used with 2nd and 3rd person if the sense of the sentence is promise, threat and strong determination. (passive voice)

- S + shall + be + v3 + ow

Ex: (1) You shall be dismissed

(2) She shall be appointed

Will : **Rule 1:** will is used with II nd and III rd person to explain any future event.

- S + will + V' + Ow

Ex : (1) She will marry Mohan next month

(2) You will go to Delhi tomorrow

Rule 2: will is used with I st person if the sense of the sentence is promise, threat, and strong determination

- S + will + V' + Ow

ex : I will kill you if you do it again

If you come to me I will give you a lot of money

Rule 3: will is used with I st, II nd and III rd person if the sentence refer to assertion (जोर देकर कहना)

Ex: (1) I will meet you tomorrow

Semi - Modals (defective verb)

Need / Dare

as an Auxiliary Verb

(X) To

Negative

I needn't go to America ⟷ Neg.

dono ki hindi same

Need I go to America? ⟷ Int.

dono ki hindi same

Interogative

as an Main verb

To (✓)

I need / dare to go to America

I don't need / dare to go to America

Do I need / dare to go to America ?

Note: need और dare में यदि not लगा है तो not नहीं लगाते & vice versa

24/Jan/2017.

Adverb

- Adverb is a word which is used to modify a verb, an adjective, another adverb, a preposition, a conjuction and a sentence

⇒ To modify a verb:

She writes well
S V Adverb

(i) My brother speaks fluently.

⇒ To modify an adjective

My friend is ... very tall
N Adj. Adj Adverb

(i) Priya is absolutly wrong

⇒ To modify an adverb

she writes .. very clearly
S V Adverb.
Adj Adverb.

⇒ To modify a preposition

She threw a stone perfectly on the beggar.
S V² O Adverb prep.

⇒ To modify a Conjuction

Adverb Conj.
I had reached the cinema hall a little before the show
S V3 OW Conj S
started.
V2

⇒ To modify a sentence.

Unwillingly, he welcomed the new president

Kinds of Adverb

- Adverb of time
- Adverb of number / frequency
- Adverb of manner / quality / state
- Adverb of quantity / degree / range / extent
- Adverb of place
- Adverb of reason

Adverb of time ⇒ The word that shows the time

Ex :- today, tomorrow, yesterday, last night, last day last year ....., next night, next day ..... the day after tomorrow, the day after yesterday .... recently, immediately, instantly.

I will meet you tomorrow

Adverb of number ⇒ The word that shows the no. or frequency of an action.

Ex : Once, twice, thrice, always, often, seldom, neighbour, again, hardly, scarcly, rarely, regularly, first (firstly) ×, secondly, thirdly ....

× Firstly I should obey my teacher secondly my seniors

First

Adverb of manner ⇒ The word that shows the style of an action

Ex: slowly, quickly, clearly, bravely, loudly, beautifully, fast (fastly)×, hard (hardly)×, bravely, foolishly, wisely, carefully, well, doubtfully etc

- He works hard
- The train runs fastly / fast ✓

Adverb of quantity ⇒ The word that shows the quantity

Ex: Too, verb, very, much, quite, enough, rather, farily, almost, fully, wholly

- He was too careless

Adverb of place ⇒ The word that shows the place

Ex: Here, there, everywhere, somewhere, nowhere, anywhere, up, down, inside, outside, endorse, outclorse, far, near etc

- He was sitting here

Adverb of reason ⇒ The word that shows reason

Ex: hence, therefore, consquently

Ex: Consquently she was sent to America

Formation of Adverb

word

Adj + ly = Adverb
Kind + ly = kindly

N + ly = Adjective
Father + ly = fatherly

List: Adjective + ly = Adverb

clever + ly = cleverly
beautiful + ly = beautifully
kind + ly = kindly
wise + ly = wisely
foolish + ly = foolishly
quick + ly = quickly
carefull + ly = carefully
careless + ly = carelessly
sad + ly = sadly
honest + ly = honestly
happy + ly = happily
Obivous + ly = obivously
poor + ly = poorly

List: Noun + ly = Adjective

father + ly = fatherly
Mother + ly = motherly
Sister + ly = sisterly
Brother + ly = brotherly

कुछ सब के पहले 'a' लगाने से Adverb का निर्माण होता है।

new ⇒ a new
fresh ⇒ a Fresh
foot ⇒ a foot

Ex she went on foot ✓
she went a foot ×
she went afoot ✓
Adverb

Some important adverbial phrases

- Once and again बार बार
- to and fro इधर उधर

- through and through (Completely - पूरी तरह से)
- Over and over (बार बार) frequently
- Out and out (पूर्णतः)
- Again and again (बार बार)
- by and by (तुरंत)
- first and foremost (प्रथम एवम महत्वपूर्ण)
- now and then (समय समय पर)
- bad blood (पुर्वभावन)
- well off (सब प्रकार से सुखी एवम सम्पन)
- marry in haste (repent at leisure - जल्दी की शादी जीवन भर पचतावा)
- well to do (खुशहाल)
- Here after (अब से)
- there after (तब से)
- Here in (इसमे)
- there in (उसमे)
- here about (यहा पास मे)
- there about (वहा पास मे)
- here with (इसके साथ)
- there with (उसके साथ)
- hereby (इसके द्वारा)
- thereby (उसके द्वारा)

25/Jan/2017

Removal of 'Too'

Ex: (1) You are too beautiful (X)

(2) He is too happy (X)

Too : more than required

⇒ too good, too pleasant, too wise (X)

⇒ too bad, too stupid, too ugly (✓)

Structure:

Remove

S + AV + Too + (-ve adjective) + to + v' + ow

S + AV + so + (-ve adjective) + ~~that~~ + S + (can't + v' + ow — Present; couldn't + v' + ow — Past)

Examples:

(1) My grandfather is too weak to walk

⇒ My grandfather is so weak that he can't walk.

(2) It is too hot to go out

⇒ It is so hot that one/we can't go out

(3) She is so busy that she can't look after her children

⇒ She is too busy to look after her children

(4) He was so late that he didn't catch the train

⇒ He was too late to catch the train

Structure:

S + A.V + Too + (-ve adjective) + for + a/an + N

↓

S + AV + so + (-ve Adjective) + that + S + can't + be + a/an + N / couldn't + be + a/an + N

Example:

(1) I am too slow for a runner

⇒ I am so slow that I can't be a runner

(2) He is too dull for a sportsman

⇒ He is so dull that he can't be a sportsman

(3) She is too proude for an ideal citizen

⇒ She is so proud that she can't be an ideal citizen.

Structure:

S + AV + too + (-ve adjective) + for + O

↓

S + AV + so + (-ve adjective) + that + S + can't + sense

Example:

(1) The water is too cold for us.

⇒ The water is so cold that we can't bear it.

(2) She is too strong for me

⇒ She is so strong that I can't face her

Rule:

- The tea is too hot ×

⇒ The tea is hotter than — It should be (जितना होना चाहिए) / It is proper

- Mr. Sharma talks too much

⇒ Mr. Sharma talks more than it should be.

- The weather is too cold
  The weather is colder than it should be.

Too – ग्रt – sentence last
↓ change
also – sentence middle.

Ex: (1) Cotton is grown in India too
Cotton is also grown in India

Some important Adverb

Very → positive degree
much → Comparative degree
very much → Comparative degree

Ex:
very → good, beautiful, wise
much → better, more beautiful, wiser
very much → better, more beautiful, wiser

Rule 1:
Ex: She is much more beautiful than her sister
He is very much better than you

Very or much is used before superlative. it is use according to particular structure

Rule 2:

the + very + superlative
much + the + superlative

Ex: He was the very best player
He was much the best player

Rule 3: Very much is used to qualify a verb

Ex: thank you very much

I like it very much

Altogether : (पूरी तरह से)

All together : (एक साथ)

Ex: He is altogether tired

We shall go from here all together

Late : विलम्ब से / देर से

Lately : आजकल - आजकल

Ex: The train is running late

I have finished the work lately

Hard : पूरी शक्ति से

Hardly : बड़ी मुश्किल से

Ex: Hard work brings success

He can arrange hardly thousand rupees

Yet : अभी तक

it is used in present perfect tense (normally negative sentence)

Ex: He hasn't come yet

Barely: बहुत कम

Ex: I could barely understand some points

Ex: ten boys are absent

Just now: अभी अभी (एक दो घंटे के अंदर)

Ex: I have seen this matter just now

Right now: (ठीक अभी) एक-दो मिनट के अंदर

Ex: I have come here right now

Recently: (हाल-ही में) (एक-दो महीने के अंदर)

Ex: I have come here recently

Even: (भी) उम्मीद के विपरीत काम हो तब 'भी' का use करेंगे।

Ex: Even Kejriwal can't control crime
Kejriwal cannot control even crime

only too / none too: इन दोनों का use positive or negative adjective के साथ किया जाता है।

(सिर्फ बहुत) (बहुत ज्यादा नहीं)

Example: (1) I am only too glad to meet you
मैं उससे मिलकर सिर्फ बहुत खुश हुआ

(2) His style is only too bad
उसका style बुरा है, (ज्यादा बुरा नहीं है)

(3) This novel is none too good
यह novel उतना भी अच्छा नहीं है।

(4) This novel is none too bad
उतना भी बुरा नहीं है।

Fairly / Rather : (सामान्य मात्रा में ना ज्यादा ना कम)

- Fairly is used with positive adjective
- Rather is used with negative adjective

Ex: She is a fairly tall girl
He is a rather stupid boy
It is a rather difficult question.

Presently / shortly / directly are used with the sense of soon. in a short time without delay in future action

Ex: He will be here shortly / presently / directly

Soon ↓ in a short time without delay

Early ↓ before the expected time (उम्मीद से पहले)

Quickly ↓ (तेजी से जल्दी)

Ex: Do it quickly
I go to bed early today.
Come soon

Some time — थोड़ी देर

Sometime — भूतपूर्व

Sometimes — (कभी कभार)

Ex: I will stay here for sometime
Manmohan Singh is sometime p.m of India
Sometimes I think you

Slowly: धीरे से (quickly का opposite)

Lowly: धीमे - धीमे (loudly का opposite)

Ex: Suresh is reading a book slowly
Suresh is reading a book lowly

30/Jan/2017

Common Error in the use of Adverb

Rule 1:

Ex: (1) The building is large enough for the guest house. (✓)

(2) The building is enough large for the guest house. (X)

enough का use उस शब्द के बाद करते हैं जिसको यह qualify करता है। enough से पहले हमेशा +ve Adj के बाद होता है।

Adj + enough
positive

enough + N
↓
Adj

(3) There is enough salt in the dish

Rule 2:

Ex: (i) Lata has only one car (✓)

(ii) Only Lata has a car (✓)

(iii) Lata has a car only (X)

(iv) She can read only (X)

(b) only she can read (✓)

Only का use उस शब्द के पहले किया जाता है जिसको यह qualify करता है।

Rule 3: Ex : (1) She seldom comes late (✓)

(2) She comes late seldom. (X)

⇒ Subject + always / sometimes / seldom / rarely / occasionally / often / never / generally + O.W

⇒ Subject + auxiliary verb + always / sometimes / seldom / rarely / occasionally / often / never / generally + O.W

इन शब्दों का use subject के बाद या auxiliary verb के बाद करते है।

Ex : I am always at home on Sunday

Rule 4: Ex: (1) She sang in the college hall perfectly last night. (X)

(2) She sang perfectly in the college hall last night. (✓)

⇒ When two or more adverbs are used in a sentence the normal order is adverb of manner + adverb of place + adverb of time it is known as MPT rule.

Rule 5:

Ex : (1) It is nothing else than a joke (X)

(2) It is nothing else but a joke (✓)

⇒ The adverb 'else' is always followed by but not by than

Rule 6:

(1) I want to live peacefully (✓)

(2) I want to live in peacefully (×)

⇒ Preposition is not used with adverb of manner.

CONJUNCTION

Con - connection

junction → more than one.

⇒ Conjunction is a word which is used to join 2 words, phrases, clauses and sentences.

Ex: He was guilty so he was punished

↓

Conjunction

⇒ There are 3 types of conjunction:

- Co-ordinating conjunction
- Co-relative conjunction
- Sub-ordinating conjunction

(1) Co-ordinating conjunction

The conjunction which is used to join two words, two phrase, two clause of equal rank.

example:

And, but, or, nor, for, so, as well as

Ex: He is poor ..... honest

he is poor but honest

(2) Priya writes carefully and clearly
+ Conj

(2) Co-relative Conjunction

The conjunction which is used in pair

⇒ Either के बाद or आता है nor नहीं
⇒ Neither ——— nor ———
⇒ both के बाद and आता है as well as नहीं
⇒ hardly के बाद when या V4 आता है then या that नहीं
⇒ Scarcely के बाद when या V4 आता है then या that नहीं।
⇒ No sooner के बाद than आता है then नहीं
⇒ Hardly के बाद any आता है other नहीं
⇒ Any के बाद other आता है but नहीं
⇒ No के बाद or आता है nor नहीं
⇒ Not के बाद or आता है nor नहीं
⇒ Never के बाद और आता है nor नहीं
⇒ Seldom के बाद never आता है ever नहीं
⇒ nothing else के बाद but आता है yet नहीं
⇒ whether के or आता है nor नहीं
⇒ Rather के बाद than आता है then नहीं
⇒ other के बाद than आता है then नहीं
⇒ nothing के बाद but आता है yet नहीं
⇒ Such के बाद that आता है then नहीं
⇒ Not only के बाद but also आता है but too नहीं

(3) not only ..... but also

S + V + not only + N / Pro / Adj / Verb + but also + N / Pro / Adj / Verb + V + ponerition

Ex: (1) Not only Neha but also Mamta and Zoya are doing their work.

(2) Marry is not only good but also wise

(4) Both ..... and ... दोनो .. साथ ही साथ

S + V + Both + Noun / Adj / Verb + and + Noun / Adj / Verb + ...

Ex: (1) He speaks both Hindi and English

(2) John is both tall and handsome

(5) Although ..... yet = यद्यपि .... तथापि
हलांकि ... फिर भी

Although / though + S + V + OW , yet S + V + OW

note: yet के बदले मे , से काम चलाया जा सकता है।

Ex: Although he was not guilty , yet he was punished

Though he is poor , he is happy

(6) Negative words { Hardly / Scarcely } + had + S + V^3 + OW when / before .....

No / not / never ✗

than / that ✗

Ex: Hardly had he completed his work before
Scarcly had he left the house when it happened.

(7) (Negative word)
No sooner + { did + S + V¹ + OW / had + S + V³ + OW } than ..... (when / than) ✗
(जैसे ही) (का को)

Ex: No sooner did she finish cooking than some guests arrived.

(8)
If
When
Whenever
जब तक नहीं { Until / Unless }
जब तक { Till / as long as }
चाहे - even if
Before
} + S + V¹/⁵ + OW, ↓ (Then) ✗ S + will / shall / can / may + V¹ + OW

Ex: (1) If you go to Agra you may see the Taj Mahal.
(2) He will go to him even if he abuses him.
वह उसके पास जाएगा चाहे वह गाली ही दे।
(3) Untill you go she will be staying there.
जब तक तुम नहीं जाओगे वह वहीं खड़ी रहेगी।
(4) As long as he comes I will wait.
जब तक वह आयेगा हम इंतजार करेंगे।

(9) Lest ..... should .. कहीं ऐसा न हो को
↳ Negative word
↳ Sentence start (✗)

S + V + O w, lest + S + should + V² + O w

Ex: (1) He works hard lest he should fail.

(2) Run fast lest you should miss the train.

(10) or else ..... will कहीं ऐसा न हो कि

↳ sentence start (x)

↳ Negative word

S + V + O w, or else + S + will + V¹ + O w

Ex: ~~Rdun~~ Run fast or else he will miss the train

(11) whether ..... or कि ..... या

note: हमेशा use positive and negative sentence as according to sense or tense

Ex: I don't know whether he will except your proposal or not.

(12) as ..... as/so ..... as जितना उतना

positive ✓
neg sent ✓

neg sent ✓
positive ✗

Ex: Ram is as smart as shyam

Lata's elder sister is not so beautiful as you say

(13) such that / such ..... that

Ex: (1) His behaviour was such that everybody disliked him.

(2) Such was his behaviour that everybody disliked him.

(14) seldom or never : - कभी कभार नहीं

seldom if ever : कभी interrogative sent.

Ex: I have seldom or never visited the Taj Mahal

Have you seldom if ever visited the Taj Mahal

(15) since : चूंकि it is use in the begning of the sentence

Ex: since he is sick he can't attend the class

since : Conjunction of time (जब से)

use simple past में करते हैं और आने वाला clause present perfect में होता है।

Ex: since he left Delhi. I haven't meet him

since : present of time (से)

Ex: he has been studing English since Monday

(16) so : इसलिए : used in the middle of the sentence

Ex: He is sick so he can't attend the class

(17) believe, hope, suppose, think के साथ that का use करो या मर्जी हो या करो।

Ex: I think you are brave

I think that you are brave.

SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT (syntax)

Ex: One must manage ~~his~~ one's time (X)

Everyone is the master of ~~one's~~ his fate (X)

⇒ Syntax is that branch of English language in which we study the art of using correct verbs

Rule 1

Sub (Singular) ⟶ V (Singular)
the boy → is coming

Sub (plural) ⟶ V (plural)
Boys → are coming

Rule 2 N + and + N ⟶ V (plural)

Ex: The boy and the girl are going to cinema

Rule 3 N + and + N ⟶ V (sing)

part & parcel
भाग और भाग

Ex: Rice and curry is my favourite dish.

List: Bread and butter, horse and carriage, hammer and sickle, crown and glory, truth and honesty, age and experience, slow and steedy etc.

Rule 4. ⇒ Each / every / No + N + and + Each / every / No + N + V (singular)

⇒ Each / every / No + N + and + N ⟶ V (singular)

⇒ We / You / They + Each / Every + V (plural)

Ex: Nobody and no girl is going to win the race.
We each are very honest in our work.

Rule 5.

Article + Adj + and + Adj + N + V (sing)
Article + Adj + and + Art + Adj + N + V (plural)

Art + N + and + N ⟶ V (sing)
Art + N + and + Art + N ⟶ V (plural)

Ex: A red and black cow is in the field
A red and A black cow are in the feild
the fast and phylosopher has come to meet ~~you~~ me.
the fast and the phylospher have come to meet.

Rule 6

indefinite no + of the + { Uncountable N (sing) + V (sing) 100% ; 1% + N (countable) sing + V (sing) ; Countable (plural) + V (plural) 100% }

Ex: Half of the mango is rotten
Half of the mangoes are rotten

List plenty of, most of, some of, all of, rest of, a lot of, lot's of, 2/3 rd of, 3/4 th of, percent of etc.

Ex (1) none of the counterfeit, money has been found.
(2) none of the ten students have finished the examinatio
(3) most of the students are laborious in my class.

Rule 7: A number (अनगिनत) + N (plural) + V (plural)

The number of (निश्चित) + N (plural) + V (sing)

Ex: the number of students are studing here (x)

A number of boys are going to cinema (✓)

Rule 8: more than one + sing countable N + V (sing)

more + plural countable N + than one + V (plural)

Ex: more than one student was present in the class

more students than one were present in the class.

Rule 9: parent (माता या पिता) + sing + V (sing)

parents + plural + V (plural)

(माता पिता दोनों)

Ex: His parent is coming today

His parents are coming today

Rule 10: quotation, pro verb, clause, phrase यदि यह sub का काम करते हैं तो आने वाला verb sing होता है।

Ex: Cats and dogs is a famous phrase

Preposition

Ex: Lalita should wait ___on___ her ill husband

option - on / in / with / for

wait on - सेवा करना

wait for - इंतजार करना

position

Eng → Pre

Hindi → past

Ex: on table

Ex: टेबल पर

Preposition

Common (40-50)

Complex preposition

Deal - in - व्यापार

Deal - with - व्यवहार

Agree - to

Agree - with

⇒ preposition is a word which is used to establish a relation between two nouns

Some Common mistake for using preposition :-

(1) After preposition objective case is used

Ex: She has complained against Ram and I (X)

She has complained against Ram and me (✓)

(2) After preposition gerund is used

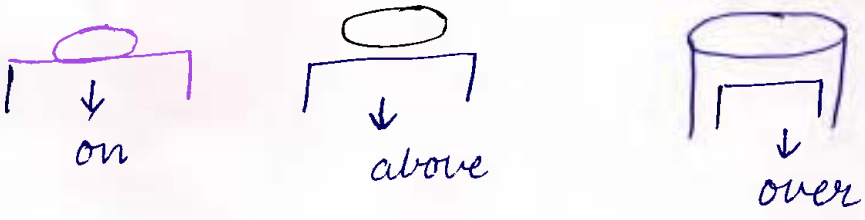
Ex: I abstain from smoke (X)

I abstain from smoking (✓)

Basic uses of preposition :-

1

on : above : over पर / उपर



Ex: (1) There is a cap on his head

(2) The coolie was carrying a bag on his head

(3) The fan is above us

(4) There is a roof over your head

(5) The Aeroplane is flying above the cloud

(6) The Aeroplane is flying over the head.

On : On is used with particular phrases

List ⇒ on a journey, on a trip, on a voyage, on a trip, on demand, on duty, on holiday, on the wall, on leave, on the phone, on the radio etc.

Above : above का use 'से ऊपर' तथा संख्या मे ज्यादा या अधिक दिखाने के लिए करते है।

Ex : His income is above 10,000 ₹ a month.

There are above 100 students in the class.

Over : over का use age, temperature का measurement, किसी place के आस पास, किसी वस्तु को ढकने के लिए, के ऊपर समुचा (पुरा) तथा period of time के अर्थ मे करते है।

Ex : (1) He is over 30.

(2) The temperature is over 20°c

(3) It is cold over here

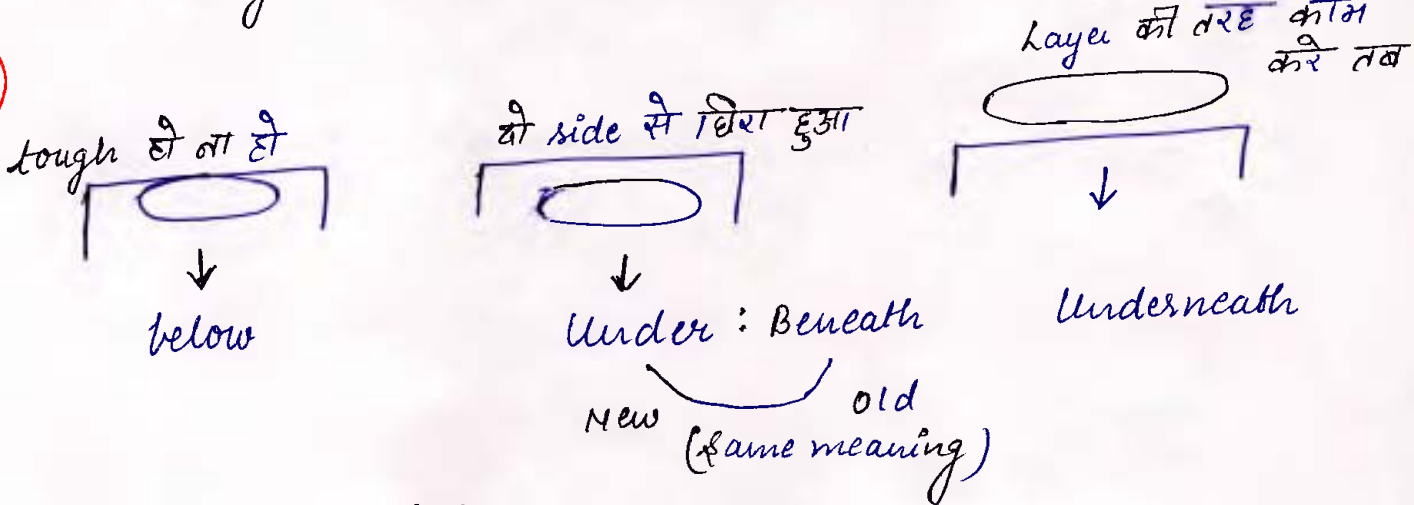
(4) The class is over at 5 P.m

(5) Please spread the cloth over the table

⇒ Over is used with the sense of more than required.

over eating, over wise, over smart, over busy etc

(2)



Ex : (1) They are below the poverty line

(2) We are below the fan

(3) The cat is sleeping under the table

(4) He is wearing a shirt underneath his coat

(5) You can see his real face hidden underneath his behaviour

Phrase: Under Age - नाबालिग

Under consideration - विचाराधीन

Under the nose of - आखों के सामने

(3) **Round** : **Around** : **Along** = किनारे किनारे

↓ motion के साथ किसी वस्तु का चक्कर लगाना

↓ (motion less)

↓ motion + motion less

Ex: (1) Sita was walking along the road

(2) There are trees along the road

(3) There are trees around the ground/garden

(4) We are sitting around the ground

(5) He is running round the ground

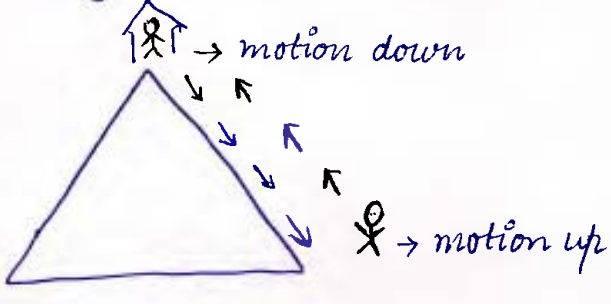
Ex: The earth moves round the sun (✓✓)

The earth moves around the sun (✓)

(4) **Up : Upon : down : upon : downs**

↓

(जब कोई वस्तु नीचे से थोड़ा ऊपर उठकर गति के साथ दुसरी वस्तु पर रखा जाता है तो upon)



↑↓ उतार चढ़ाव

ups and downs

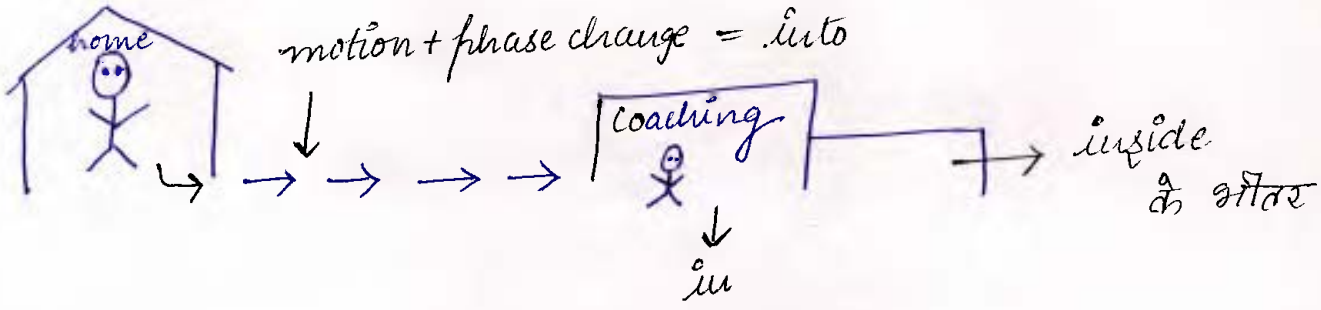
Ex: (1) The dog jumped upon the table

(2) He failed down the roof

(3) He went up the hill

(4) There are many ups and downs in our life.

(5) In : Into : Inside = में / अंदर / भीतर



Ex: (1) He came into my room

(2) The students are in the class

(3) The frog fall into the well

(4) Ram Lal is inside the hall

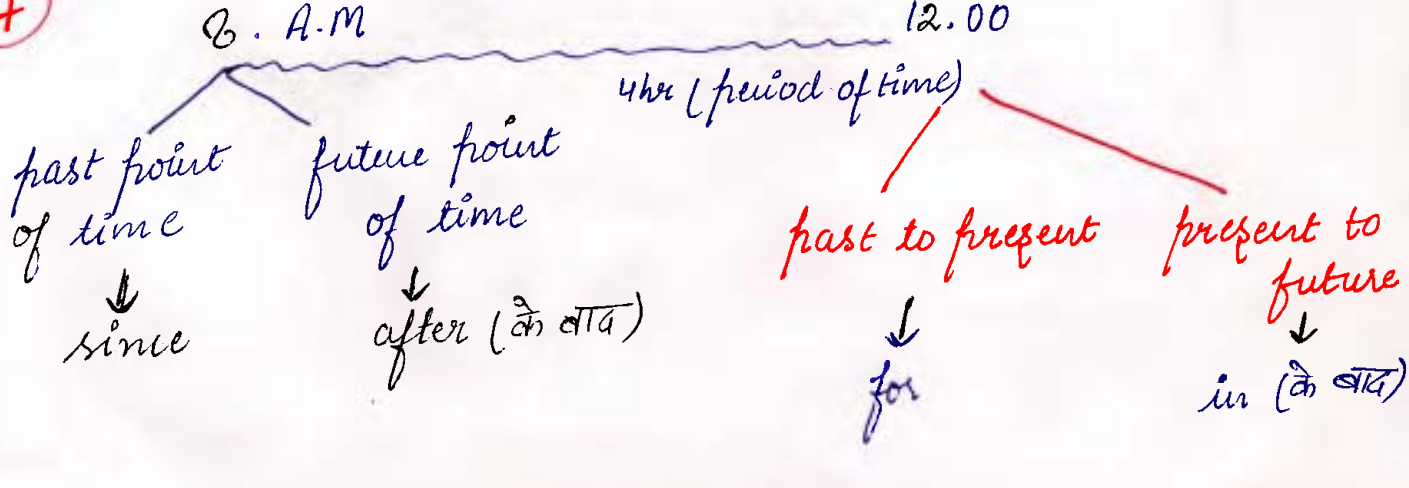
(6) In : After - in the context of time reference

After → के बाद

in → place - ~~में~~, ~~अंदर~~, भीतर

time - के बाद

(7)



Ex: (1) She will come in a month (✓)

(2) She came in a month (X) → past में 'in' का use नहीं किया जाता।

(3) She came after a month (✓)

(4) She will come after monday (✓)

(5) She will come after 9 P.m (✓)

(6) She will come ~~after~~ in a month (X)

note: After का use past में किया जाता है future में नहीं किया जाता। future में सिर्फ एक वाक्य के लिए future point of time के बाद के अर्थ में आता है।

(8) Since : For

⇒ Since + Am / Pm / morning / evening / night / midnight / birth / marry / days / name of days / months / years / sessions / name of festivals.

⇒ Since + last morning / last day / last year .....

⇒ For: For + numeral words (1, 2, 3, 4 infinitive) seconds / minutes / hours / days / months / years ....

⇒ For + the last / past + numeral words (1, 2, 3 ...) + seconds / minutes / hours / days / months / years ....

Ex: He has been absent since monday

He has been absent for 2 years

(9) To : Towards : onto : upto

To : (लक्ष्य तक)

Ex: I am going to the DSL
I am going to the station

To : (पास / नजदीक)

Ex: Come to me
go to him

To : (से) Ex: I said to Ram

To : (तक) Ex: From here to there

Towards : (लक्ष्य तक नहीं लक्ष्य की ओर)

Ex: I am coming towards you
I am going towards the station

Onto : (छलांग मार जाना / रखना motion के साथ)

Ex: The mouse jumped onto the table (✓)
↳ (आगे निकल गया)
The mouse jumped on the table (✓)
↓ (वहीं पर है)

Upto : (तक) ('0' से high level)

Ex: you will have to fine upto Rs 10,000

(10) About : लगभग / वाला - वाली / मे या के बारे मे

Ex: It is about 9 'o' clock

He is about to go

I have doubt about it

(11) After : के बाद / के पीछे

Ex: He came after 2 days

He is mad after wealth

(12) In, within : in the context of time Reference

↓ के बाद ↓ के अंदर

Ex: She will come in a weak

She will come with in a weak

(13) Ex: The principal entered into the office (X)

The principal entered the office (✓)

normally into is not used with the word enter

note: into may be used with the word enter if the sentence refer to treaty / alliance & agreement

Ex: India entered into an alliance with America

(14) Beside : Besides

↓ बगल मे / समीप / किनारे ↓ के अलावा / के अतिरिक्त

Ex: (1) My house is located beside the college

(2) He had no one besides his brother

(3) Nobody writes to me besides you.
पत्र लिखना

(11) At : On

At : It is used with particular time and hour

On : On is used with particular day and date

Ex: (1) He will come at 4 o' clock

(2) He came at noon

(3) She will come on 2nd of october

(4) I am free on Sunday

(12) Between : Among : Amongst

⇒ Between is used for two persons, places, things or animals

⇒ Where is among is used for more than 2 persons, places, things or animals

⇒ Amongst + vowel letter (us, our, etc)

Ex: (1) Radha is sitting between Seeta and Geeta

(2) The P.M is standing among the crowd

(3) The property was distributed between my two sons

(4) Distribute these books among these 15 poor students

(5) Divide the cake amongst our friend.

note: Between : (1) between may be used for more than two if the sentence refers to treaty, alliance & agreement.

Ex: (1) There is an alliance between the four company

(2) There is a treaty between three states on the Kaubery water dispute.

(2) Difference के बाद between का प्रयोग होता है न कि among का

Ex: what are the main differences between Cats dogs and cows

(3) Between के बाद आने वाले दो noun 'and' से जुड़ते है जबकि 'from' के बाद आने वाले two noun 'to' से जुड़ते है।

Ex: meet me between 6P.m to 8P.m (X)

meet me between 5P.m and 8P.m (✓)

meet me from 5P.m to 8P.m (✓)

13 At : (1) At is used with point of time

Ex: at 4'o' clock at night

(2) At is used before the name of festivals

Ex: I will go home at holy

(3) At is used before the name of village, Mohalla, block, district and small places.

Ex: I live at Sonipath

I live at Mukherjee Nagar

(14) **In:** (1) In is used before the word Mohalla, village, block, district

Ex: I live in Mohalla

I live in this district

(2) In is used before, big town, large area, state, capital, cities ....

Ex: I live in Delhi

note: जब दो places साथ हो तो तुलनात्मक रूप से छोटे के साथ at और बड़े के साथ in लगाते हैं।

Ex: I live at Delhi in India

(15) **with : By**

⇒ non living → doer

⇒ non doer → living

⇒ sense organ → तक - future time action

⇒ device → द्वारा - माध्यम

↓ instrument

↓ By bus / train / car ....

Ex: (1) we see with our eyes

(2) we should write a letter with a pen

(3) He killed a tiger with a gun

(4) Mohan is beaten by his father

(5) A man travels by bus

(6) I will come back by 5 P.m

(16) **Across :** के पार / के आस पास / एक छोर से दूसरे छोर तक

Ex: (1) I live Across the road

(2) let us swim across the river

(17) **Against :** के विरुद्ध / के विपरीत / से सटकर खड़ा होना / के सहारे खड़ा होना

Ex: (1) You should not go against law

(2) Don't lean against the door

(18) **Behind :** के पीछे / निश्चित समय से देर करके

Ex: (1) The Rajdhani Express is running behind its time

(2) The PNB Bank is behind the DSL

(19) **Beyond:** के बाहर

Ex: (1) He goes beyond limits

(2) That is beyond my reach

(3) Don't go beyonds your limits.

(20) **Through :** भर / सूराख (पूरा)

Ex: Although the life (जीवन भर)

All through the year (साल भर)

I couldn't sleeps through the night.

Ex: The bullet went through the body

The bus is passing through the tunnel.

Common errors in the use of Preposition

Rule 1: next, last, today, tomorrow, yesterday से पहले at, in, on का use नहीं होता,

Ex: I saw him on last monday (✓)

Seeta will go on tomorrow (✓)

Rule 2: Ex: China attacked at India (X)

China attacked on India (X)

China attacked upon India (X)

China attacked India (X)

Attack + [on / at / upon] X

Rule 3: Describe / discuss + (about) X

Ex: I discussed about this question with friend (✓)

Rule 4: Explain + [of / about] X

Ex: She explained about her problems to me (✓)

X

Rule 5: Order + [to / for] X

Ex: I ordered [to] my servant to clean the car (✓)

Rule 6: Reach / approach + [to] (x) + a place

Ex: She has reached ~~to~~ the station (✓)

Rule 7: Ridicule + [at / on / about] x

↓
मजाक बनाना

Ex: Some girls ridicule about him (✓)

Rule 8: Resemble + [to / with] / x

↓
के जैसा

Ex: She [resembles] [with] her mother (✓)

Rule 9: propose / Report / say / suggest + to

Ex: I said to Ram

She propose to us that we should go to the cinema

Rule 10: Advise / ask / encourage / invite / tell / bring / give / sell / send / show + to x

Ex: I gave ~~to~~ her a beautifull pen

I advised ~~to~~ him to give up smoking (✓)

Rule 11: Marry + to / with (x)

S + is / am / are / was / were + married + to + N

Ex: Ram married with Sita (x)

He is married to a girl (✓)

Rule 12: जब कोई व्यक्ति बीमारी से मरता है तो die के साथ 'of' लगाते है,

अगर बीमारी से न मरे तो 'from' लगाते है,

Ex: Raju died from over eating

He died ~~from~~ Maleria (x)

of (✓)

2nd September 2016

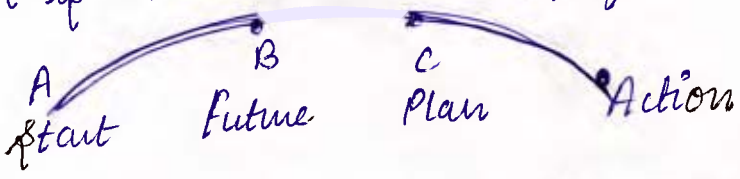
TENSE

Present tense
- Simple Present
- Present Continuous
- Present perfect
- Present perfect Continuous

Past tense
- Simple past
- Past Continuous
- Past perfect
- Past perfect Continuous

Future tense
- Simple future
- future Continuous
- Future perfect
- Future perfect Continuous

A work is to be done in this four.



Simple present
Fix 90%.

Not fix 50%.
Simple future

- V1 present (Plural)
- V2 Past
- V3 perfect
- V4 Continuous
- V5: Present (singular)

Simple Present Tense

Basic

It shows present habitual action daily routine action, universal truth and future plan action.

{S + plural / - Singular} structure. 1. $S^{(-)} + V^{5}_{(-)} + ow$

2. $S^{(+)} + V^{1}_{(+)} + ow$

$S + V^{1/s} + ow$

S + know/knows + how to + V' + ow

S + want/wants + V' + ow

$S + V^{1/s} + ow \Rightarrow$ S + go/goes to + V' + ow

examples :

Translate in English.

(1.) मेरी पत्नी चाँय बनाना जानती है।

⇒ My wife knows how to make / prepare tea

(2.) उसे तैरना आता है।

⇒ He knows how to swim.

(3) मैं तुमसे प्रतिदिन मिलना चाहता हूँ।

⇒ I want to meet you everday

(4.) मैं रोज English पढ़ने जाता हूँ।

⇒ I go to read English daily

(5) मैं रोज 5 बजे जागता हूँ।

⇒ I get up at 5 o'clock daily

here it can't be wake up because get up - जागना, wake up - उठाना

(6.) वह तुम्हें पीटना चाहता है।

⇒ He wants to beat you.

S + V 1/5 + ow

Negative - S + do/does + not + V' + ow

Interogative - do/does + S + V' + ow?

Interogative + Negative -

Do/does + S + not + V' + ow + ?

doesn't/don't + S + V' + ow + ?

Interrogative with "WH" family

What
When
Why
How
Where

+ do/does + S + V + OW + ?

Interrogative with 'WH' family + negative

What
When
Why
How
Where

+ don't / doesn't + S + V + OW + ?

+ don't / doesn't + S + { Know + how to + V' + OW ?
                        { want to + V' + OW ?

V' + OW

5th september.

Examples are :

(1) तूम उसे क्यों मिलना चाहते हो
Why do you want to meet him

(2) सरकार ग़रीबो की मदद क्यों नहीं करती है
Why doesn't the govt help the poor / why does the govt not help the poor

(3) तूम उसे कैसे जानते हो
How do you know him.

(4) तूम्हे तैरना क्यो नहीं आता है,
Why don't you know how to swim.

example - My mother has a beautiful umbrella

✗ my mother hasn't a beautiful umbrella

✓ my mother doesnot have a beautiful umbrella

Rule 2

$S + V^{1/s} + OW +$ what / when / with $+$ Past
- $S + V^2 + OW$
- $S +$ was/were $+ V^4 + OW$
- $S +$ had $+ V^3 + OW$
- $S +$ had $+$ been $+ V^4 + OW$

if first clause is Present

it can be in any form of tense

1) I know where she lived in Delhi ✓
2) I know where did she live in Delhi ✗

Rule 3

$S + V^{1/s} + OW +$ what / when / ! $+$ Future
- $S +$ will / shall $+ V^1 + OW$
- $S +$ will / shall $+$ be $+ V^4 + OW$
- $S +$ will / shall $+$ have $+ V^3 + OW$

1) I have no idea where she will live in Delhi.

9 | September

(1) who does live here ✗

(2) who doesnot live here ✓

(3) who don't live here ✓

(4) who did this ✓

(5) who did come yesterday. ✗

(6) who Comes here. ✓

(8) who Come here. ✓

who ← Pro - जो - Conjuction

living ← sing - कौन, कौन, - कौन

who + do/does/did + v¹ + ow (X)

who + v^1/2/5 + ow? (✓)

Negative: who + don't / doesn't + v¹ + ow + ? ✓

Rule 4:

(1) He is going to school always (X)

(2) He always goes to school (✓)

(3) He goes to school always (X)

(4) He is going to market everyday (X)

(5) He everyday goes to market (X)

(6) He goes to market everyday (✓)

→ (1) Always / never / occasionally / sometimes / often / usually / generally / seldom etc are used in simple Present Tense these words are used after the subject and before the main verb.

→ (2) Everyday / everynight / everymonth / daily these words are used last of the sentence in Simple present Tense

Simple Present tense is used with Conditional Sentence.

whatever
whenever
If,
Until
Unless
as soon as
as long as
Till
Even if
as if
Before
After

+ would / should / will / shall / can / may } X

+ S + V$^{1/5}$ + OW , S + will / shall / can / may + V' + OW

it meaning comes in future (in hindi)

'As if' - मानो की

* The sentence can never ~~start~~ with 'as if'
* It works as a conjuction

S + V$^{1/5}$ + OW + 'as if' — S + were + N/Adj/OW (here 'was' cannot be used because these are imaginary sentence.)

S + would + V' + OW.

S + V^{2} + OW + 'as if' — S + had + V^{3} + OW (rare condition)

example:

1) It seems to me as if you were mad. (are cannot use)
2) He walks as if he were a lion
3) ~~He~~ It seems as if it would rain.
4) She spoke as if she had returned from London.

Until / Unless = जबतक नहीं

- It is a negative word
- We can't use 'no' / not / never with it.
- Until shows time condition and unless shows Condition.

(1) Until + S + V 1/5 + OW, S + will/shall + V' + OW

S + will/shall + OW, until + S + V 1/5 + OW

both conditions are giving sense of future.

but if

(2) S + V 1/5 + OW, until + S + V 1/5 + OW

here sense is present

example:

(1) Until the doctor comes I will sit here. (future sense)

(2) You stay here until I call you. (present sense)

Unless + S + V 1/5 + OW, S + will/shall + V' + OW

S + will/shall + V' + OW, unless + S + V 1/5 + OW

example:

(1) Unless the government accepts our proposal, we will continue our strike.

(2) Unless he works hard he will not pass

9, September 2016

If / when / before / as soon as ---- S + V$^{1/5}$ + OW

S + will + V' + OW'
shall
may
can

S + will / shall + V' + OW if --- + S + V$^{1/5}$ + OW

1) We shall wait, till she ~~come~~ comes
2) I shall finish my work before he ~~comes~~ comes
3) I can start my work as soon as he comes
4) I shall go to the market if it ~~will~~ ~~rain~~ rains
5) Unless you ~~don't~~ come to me. I will not help you
6) Unless he works hard, ~~he don't success~~ he will not succeed.
7) what ~~is~~ does he knows about you
8) I don't know what he know about you.
9) He goes to market usually → He usually goes to market
10) The train ~~will~~ starts at 10 o'clock
11) जब मैं तुमसे मिलने आऊँगा मैं तुम्हारी मदद करूँगा।
When I come to meet you, I will help you
12) जैसे ही वह आएगा मैं अपना काम शुरू कर दूँगा,
As soon as he comes, I will start my work.

Rule 1 Current events, current news, newspaper headlines are used in simple present tense.

example (1) Coffee, Tata, Starbucks comes to Delhi opens to outlets at the airport

(2) The P.M leaves for China next week

(3) Mig-29 crashes.

Rule 2 An introduction of quotations, proverb, maximes etc are used in simple present tense

example: (1) A bad Carpenter quarels with his tools

Rule 3. The fact of histoy and events if said in the relevant of present then simple present is used.

example: Akbar marries a Rajputana Princess and sets a example of secularism

Rule 4. It is used to indicate a present habitual action/daily routine action.

example: He gets up 4 '0' clock everyday

Rule 5. It is used to indicate a universal truth/external truth

example: 1) The sun rises in the east

2) Water boils at 100°C

Rule 6. It is used to indicate a fixed future plan action

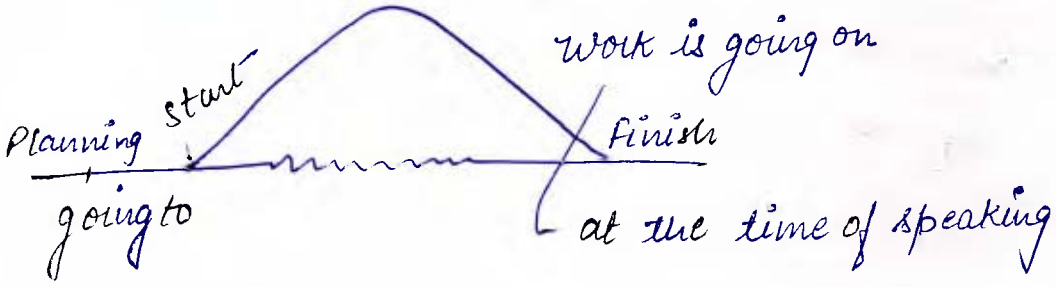
example: The match starts at 2 '0' clock

Rule 7. Broadcast commentry is used in simple present tense

example. Ashwin throws the ball, the batsman hits hard, Dhoni catches the ball

12/ september /2016

Present Continuous Tense



The work or action starts sometimes before and it must get an end after sometime. but the work is going on at the time of speaking.

S + is/am/are + v⁴ + ow → S + is/am/are + making + o + v¹
↳ getting + o + v³

⇒ S + is/am/are + going to + v¹ + ow → S + is/am/are + going to +
↳ make + o + v¹
↳ get + o + v³

(1) मैं तुम्हें देख रहा हूँ।
I see you seeing ← देखना / ing मिलना

(2) मैं उसे जान रहा हूँ।
I know him

(3) Pakistan आतंकवादियों से India पर आक्रमण करवा रहा है।
Pakistan is making terrorist assault in India

(4) वह सोया हुआ है।
He is sleeping

(5) मैं अपने पापा से घड़ी खरीदवाने जा रहा हूँ।
I am going to make my father buy a watch

(6) मैं उसे पिटवाने जा रहा हूँ।
I am going to get him beaten

Structure S + is/am/are + V4 + ow

Negative : S + is/am/are + not + V4 + ow

Interogative : is/am/are + S + V4 + ow + ?

Int + negative : isn't/aren't + S + V4 + ow + ?

Am I not = Aren't I ✓

Ain't I ✓

Amn't I ×

WH family : WH + is/am/are + S + V4 + ow + ?

WH + Negative : WH + isn't/Aren't + S + V4 + ow + ?

(1) क्या धनी लोग गरीब लोग से काम करवा रहे हैं।

Are the rich making the poor do work.

(2) तुम अगले हफ्ते कश्मीर क्यों जा रहे हो।

Why are you going kashmir next week

(3) वह मुझे इस काम के लिए क्यों दौड़ा रहा है।

Why is he making me run for the work. ~~dait~~

(4) तुम अपने बाल आजकल कहाँ कटवा रहे हो।

Where are you getting your haircut these days.

(5) क्या आप अपने जूते Polish करवा रहे हैं।

Are you getting your shoes Polish.

13/ september/2016

Common Errors in the use of Present Continuous Tense.

Hear — सुनना

ing — hearing सुनवाई करना

Think — सोचना

ing = विचार → Noun

{ meaning gets change in continuous tense }

Rule 1. Some of the verbs which are not used in continuous tense in original meaning.

It is used in simple present tense and gives two sense

(i) Simple present.

(ii) Present Continuous

example: ① I hear your voice.

मैं तुम्हारी आवज सुनता हूँ।

मैं तुम्हारी आवज सुन रहा हूँ।

② The judge is hearing this case today.

Judge इस case की सुनवाई कर रहा है।

③ I am seeing you tonight.

मैं आज की रात तुमसे मिल रहा हूँ।

The Words are

① Admire - प्रसन्सा करना

② Adore - पूजा करना

③ Agree - सहमत होना

④ Amuse - मनोरनजन करना

⑤ Astonish - चकीत कर देना

⑥ Attract - आकर्शीत

⑦ Believe - विश्वाश करना

⑧ Concern - चिंता करना

(9) Contain - के अन्दर होना
(10) Desire - चाहना
(11) Despise - तुच्छ समझना
(12) Detest - नफरत करना
(13) Doubt - शक करना
(14) Envy - जलन करना
(15) Fear - डरना
(16) Forget - भुलना
(17) Forgive - माफ
(18) Guess - अनुमान
(19) Hear - सुनना
(20) Imagine - कल्पना
(21) Impress - प्रभावित करना
(22) Know - जानना
(23) Love - प्यार करना
(24) Please - खुश करना
(25) Realise - महसुस
(26) Recognise - पहचानना
(27) Require - जरुरत
(28) Remember - याद
(29) Resemble - मिलता जुलता
(30) Satisfy - संतुष्ट
(31) See - देखना
(32) Seem - लगना
(33) Sound - आवाज
(34) Smell - सुंघना
(35) Suppose - मान लेना
(36) Stop - रोकना

(37) Suprise - चकित

(38) Suspect - शक करना

(39) Understand - समझना

(40) Hate - नफरत

(41) etc.

Rule 2 वर्तमान की किसी चीज़ मे gradual increasing or decreasing का भाव दिखाया जाए तो Present Continuous का use करते है

शर्त - (i) double comparative if use

(ii) Get, grow, become जैसे शब्दो का use

example: (i) My grandfather is getting older & older day by day

double comparative.

(ii) She is becoming more & more ambitious day by day.

D.C

Rule 3 example:

(i) She watches T.V at this moment (X)

(ii) She is watching T.V at this moment (✓)

(iii) She is watching the TV at this moment (X)

at this moment is used in Present Continuous.

Now, at the moment, at this moment, at this time present time - this morning this evening etc are used in present continuous tense.

Rule 4 S + is/am/are + on — चल रहा है

examples.

(i) Here classes are on (without V4)

(ii) I am on duty

(iii) The fan is on

S + must + be + v4 + ow — अवश्य रहा रही

example:
(i) She must be coming tomorrow

Rule 5:

My
Our
His
Her
their
your
Ram's
Sita's

+ Noun
v1/2/3/5 — (X)
v4 — (V)

the verb becomes noun after putting v4

example:
(i) Please excuse my ..coming late
(a) come (b) came
(c) comes (d) coming

(ii) I appreciate Ram's .... singing

Rule 6

(1) He aims at solving problem
(a) solve (b) solving
(c) solved (d)

After the preposition को v4 form is used always.

S + keep + on + ...v4...
kept
keeps
go
goes
went

14/september/2016

Present Perfect Tense

S + has/have + v3

Present Perfect
Impact sustain as Present
⇓
time lapses words are not used

S + v2 + ow

Simple Past
Impact withdraw on present
⇓
time lapses words are used
⇓
{before + time / yesterday / Ago / last}

example :- I did my graduation last year.
⇒ I completed my graduation last year

⇒ This shows that an action or verb has finished in the past but impact sustain on present time.

Structure

S + has(−) / have(+) + v3 + ow

S + has/have + made + o + v1
S + has/have + get + o + v3

Negative → S + hasn't / haven't + v3 + ow

Interrogative → has/have + s + v3 + ow + ?

not can be written after subject.

Interrogative + Neg :- hasn't / haven't + s + v3 + ow + ?

WH family - WH + has/have + s + v3 + ow + ?

WH + Negative - WH + hasn't / haven't + s + v3 + ow + ?

Common Errors in the use of Present Perfect Tense.

examples:

(1) मैंने अभी अभी अपना काम समाप्त किया है।
I have just finished my work

(2) वे लोग Match पहले ही जीत चुके हैं।
They have already won the match

Just / ever / never / already after all they v3 use

(3) वह कई बार मुझे रुला चुका है।
He had made me cry many times.

(4) Shah Jaha ने Taj Mahal क्यों बनवाया है।
why has Shah Jaha got the Taj Mahal build

(5) क्या तुम कभी Delhi गए हो।
Have you ever gone to Delhi

(6) तूमने अपनी Motorcycle को मरमत क्यों नहीं करवाई,
why haven't got your Motorcycle repaired.

Rule 1 : After the words like "Just / ever / never / already" always use v3.

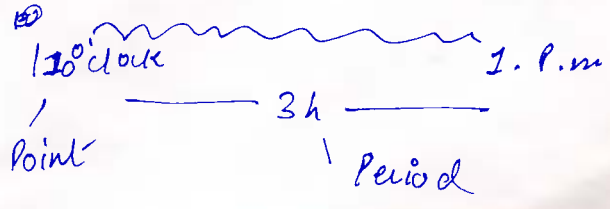
Just / ever / never / already + v3

Rule 2 : वह अभी तक नहीं आया।
He hasn't come yet

'Yet' it is used in Present Perfect Tense (negative or interrogative sentence

Rule 3: Since / For is used in Present Perfect Tense

Since – Point of time
For – Period of time



Since - o'clock, am, p.m, morning, evening, night, midnight, sunset, sunrise, name of days / months / years / seasons / festivals / events, childhood, yesterday, birth, marry .....

Since + last ⇒ last day, last month, last year .....

For + numeral words (1, 2, 3, 4 ..... ∞)

For + seconds, minutes, hours, days, months, years

Since January,
For 2 months.

For + The last / Past + 2 days. (numerial words)

example: (i) I have known you for the last 10 days (✓) meaning of se often
(ii) I have been knowning you for the last 10 days (✗) knowing is not a word. If it is then it change the
(iii) I have lived in Delhi since January (✓)
(iv) I have been living in Delhi since January (✓)

Note:
* Since and For is used in 4 tense
(i) Present Perfect (iii) Past Perfect
(ii) Present Perfect Continuous (iv) Past Perfect continuous

Since — Past Point of time
— Conjuction क्योंकि (start from since)
— Conjuction of time जबसे

* If Since is used in the foum of Conjuction and time then Since is used in Simple Past and the corning clause will be used in Present Perfect tense

Since + S + V² + Ow , S+ has / have + V³ + Ow

S+ has / have + V³ + Ow , Since + S + V² + O w

if since is used with V^2 then simple Past

if since is not used with V^2 then Simple Present Prefect

examples :-

(1) Three months have passed since I met her.

(2) Since He joined the IAS, he hasn't taken any leave.

15, September.

Rule 4 : 'this time' is used in Present perfect tense whereas 'that time' is used in simple past tense.

example ⇒ I have understood tense this time

Rule 5 : First time / second time / third time ... are used in Present Perfect tense.

example ⇒ I have seen you here fist time.

Structure

It / this + is / was + the + best / worst / only + prefect tense

example- this is the best picture I have ever seen.

Rule 6 : Frequency of time (two time / three times ...) etc are used in present perfect tense

example: ⇒ I have been doing it for five times (x)

⇒ I have done it for five times (✓)

Present Perfect Continuous Tense

- This is a very special case that is the combination of 2 tense.
  (i) Present Perfect
  (ii) Present Continuous

It means the work or action starts in the past and still continuous in the present.

Structure: S + has/have + been + V3 + V4 + ow + since/for + time

Negative: S + hasn't / haven't + been + V4 + ow + since/for + time

Int : Has/have + S + been + V4 + ow + since/for + time?

Int + Neg: Hasn't / haven't + S + been + V4 + ow + since/for + time?

WH : WH + has/have + S + been + V4 + ow + since/for + time?

WH + Neg: WH + hasn't / haven't + S + been + V4 + ow + since/for + time?

example:

(1) Mr. Sinha has been teaching in the college for more than five years.

(2) He has been living in Delhi since 1980

(i) क्या लता इस घर में 2010 से नहीं रह रही है?

-> Hasn't Lata been living in this house since 2010.

(ii) तुम यहा चार घंटे से क्या कर रहे हो।

=> what have been you doing here for 4 hours.

(iii) क्या वह 3 घंटे से अंग्रेजी पढ़ रही है।

=> Has she been reading English since 3 hours.

(iv) मैं इस coaching में पिछले 2 घंटे से अध्ययन कर रहा हूँ।

=> I have been studying in this coaching for the last two hours.

Extra:

S + has/have + been + ow + since/for + time

Examples:

(1) मैं जनवरी से व्यस्त हूँ।

⇒ I have been busy since January

(2) वह चार दिन से अनुपस्थित है।

⇒ He has been absent for 4 days

Note: The sentence of Present perfect Continuous can be written in Present perfect tense

Note: It is better to use the structure

(S + has/have + been + v4 + ow + since/for + time)

example (i) I have been living in Delhi for 10 years (w)

(ii) I have lived in Delhi for 10 years (✓)

Note: It is better to use the structure

(S + hasn't/haven't + v3 + owt + since/for + time)

In the case of negative

ex (i) I haven't lived in Delhi for 10 years (✓)

(ii) I haven't been living in Delhi for 10 years (✓)

Note: Present Continuous tense वाले sentence पर यदि और डाला जाये तो उसे Present Perfect Continuous Tense बनाया जाता है

example तुम खा ही रहे हो,

⇒ You have been eating

16, September

Simple Past Tense

example ⇒ मैं खा चुका था ।

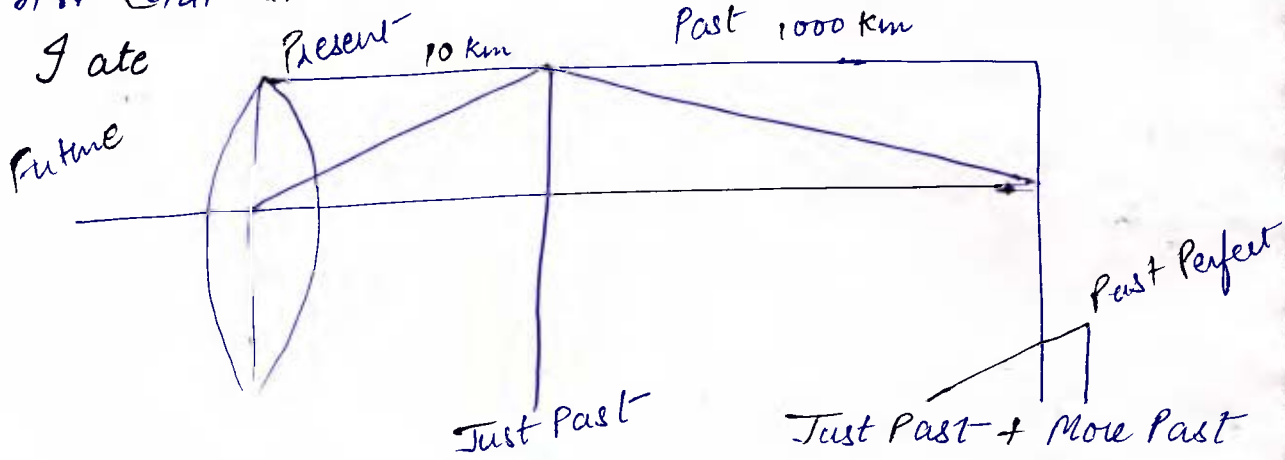
⇒ I ate

(ii) मैंने खाया ।

⇒ I ate

(iii) मैंने खाया था

⇒ I ate



Past Perfect

S + V2 + ow S + had + V3

⇒ more past → Past perfect + had + v3

⇒ Just past → Simple Past + s + v2 + ow

- दुनिया का कोई भी past का single clause sentence सिर्फ simple past tense में होता है ।
- had + v3, past perfect tense का प्रयोग 99% अगले single clause में नहीं होता है, इसके साथ कोन्न ना कोई clause या शब्द जुड़ा होना चाहिये ।

* Simple past → In this case the work or action finishes in the past and infact also withdraw on present

* पहचान ⇒ चुका था, चुकी थी, चुके थे . . . .

2) था था, थी थी, थी दो थी, ती थी, पी थी, की थी . .

3) था, थी, थी, ती, पी की . . .

4) ता था, ती ती, ते थे . . . .

Structure

$S + V^2 + OW \Rightarrow S +$ { made + O + V3 + OW / got + O + V3 + OW }

Neg : S + didn't + V1 + OW

Int : Did + S + V1 + OW + ?

Int + Neg : Didn't + S + V1 + OW + ?

WH : WH + did + S + V1 + OW + ?

WH + Neg : WH + didn't + S + V1 + OW + ?

Extra

S + wanted to + { make + O + V1 / get + O + V3 }

$\Rightarrow$ S + know + how to + V1 + OW

ex. मैंने कोशिश की।

$\Rightarrow$ I tried

ii) तुमने मुझे धोका दिया।

$\Rightarrow$ You cheated me

iii) मैं हमेशा उसकी तारीफ करता था।

$\Rightarrow$ I always admired him

iv) मैं उससे मिलना चाहता था।

$\Rightarrow$ I wanted to meet him

v) उसे गाड़ी चलाना नहीं आता था।

$\Rightarrow$ He didn't know how to drive car

vi) तुम कल पढ़ने क्यो नहीं आए।

$\Rightarrow$ Why didn't you come yesterday

vii) जीन्ना ने भारत को विभाजीत क्यो करवाया।

$\Rightarrow$ Why did jinna get India divided

viii) मैं उसे पीटवाना नहीं चाहता था।

$\Rightarrow$ I didn't want to get him beaten.

Common Errors in the use of Simple Past Tense

Rule 1: Simple past tense is used for story writing / accident / incident / report writing or any event that occured in the past

⇒ There lived a king in maangadh. The king was very honest and wise....

Rule 2: Ago / yesterday / the day before yesterday / yesterday morning / last night / last week / last month / last year etc are used in simple past tense.

Rule 3: Monday last / the other day / In 2008 / In April 2010 etc are used in simple past tense

i. She will come there the other day. (✗)
ii. She has come here the other day. (✗)
iii. She come here the other day. (✓)
iv. He has completed his work last night (✗)
v. He completed his work last night (✓)

Rule 4.

It is time
It is high time
It is right time
It is about time

} + S + V2 + O ✓
} + to + V1 ✓

यहाँ समय है
समय हो चुका है।

ex. i. It is high time she has opened the shop. (✗)
ii. It is high time she opened the shop. (✓)
iii. It is time to go home. (✓)

19/september/2016

Rule 5 Simple past tense is used with habitual action.

Habit

Used to
(किया करता था)

S + used to + V' + OW

example:
(i) He used to drink
(ii) He used to watch movie.

would
(कभी कभी किया करता था)

S + would + V' + OW

(i) sometimes, often, seldom, never, generally, (daily, everday), usually, always

example:
(i) He would sometimes go to temple
(ii) I would go to temple daily

(Questions will come in double clause)

when + S + was/were + N/OW / S + used to + V' + OW (Regular)
S + would + V' + OW (irregular)
S + V2 + OW (Normal)

1) when I was in America I used to take tea with breakfast.

2) when I was in America I would sometimes take tea with breakfast

3) when I was in America I took tea with breakfast.

Rule 6 S + is/am/are/was/were + used to + V4 + OW.

→ Addicted to + V4 + OW
→ Accustomed to + V4 + OW
→ Hesitated to + V4 + OW

(i) I am accustomed to taking tea
" " addicted to - -
" " Hesitated to - -
" " used to - -

Rule.7 Simple past tense is used with conditional sentences.

If + S + V^2 + O W , S + would + V' + O W

S + would + V' + O W , if + S + V^2 + O W

i). If you went to Agra, you would see the Taj Mahal
ii) If you came to me I would give you lots of money

Rule 8 Simple past tense is used with unreal conditions

If + S + were (V^2) + N/O W, S + would + V' + O W

i) If I were the PM of India, I would eradicate the poverty of India.
ii) If I were a bird I would fly in the sky

Rule.9 'This' is used in present perfect tense whereas 'that' is used in simple past tense

i). I came late that time. (✓)
ii) I have come late that time (✗)

Rule 10 Always, Generally, seldom, never, often, everday, everynight etc are used in simple present tense as well as simple past tense

i) He always helps me. (✓)
ii) He always helped me. (✓)

Rule 11 Today, this morning/evening/month/year etc are used in Present perfect tense as well as simple past tense

i) I have seen him today (✓)
ii) I saw him today (✓)

Extra

(1) S + had+to + v' + ow — पड़ना था / ना था — Compulsion.

S + was/were + to + v' + ow — ना था / वाला, वाली थी — Planning

S + was/were + about to + v' + ow (ही वाला था) — Immediate Plan

(i) मुझे अंग्रेजी पढ़ना पड़ता था।
I had to read English

(ii) मुझे वहाँ जाना था।
I had/was to go there

(iii) मैं उसे मिलने वाला था।
I was to meet him.

(iv) वह मरने ही वाला था।
He was about to die.

S + v² + ow

S + did + v' + ow — तो था — emphatic

S + did + nothing + but + v' + ow

There + was/were + nothing + but + N + ow

i) वह हँसती तो थी।
She did laugh

ii) वह हँसती ही तो थी।
She did nothing but laugh

iii) वहाँ पानी ही पानी था।
There was nothing but water there

20/september/2016

Past Continuous Tense.

It shows that an action was continuous in the past. One more thing is very important to note here and that is :-

i. It is essential to put a context to make the sentence logically correct.

ii. In the absence of any context the sense of the sentence if not clear.

Note • The context will in Simple ~~Present~~ Past tense (95%)

S + was/were + v4 + ow ↑ (conjuction) + S + v2 + ow

Neg : S + wasn't/weren't + v4 + ...

Int : was/were + S + v4 + ow + ... ?

Int + Neg : wasn't/weren't + S + v4 + ow + ... ?

WH : WH + was/were + S + v4 + ow + ... ?

WH + Neg WH + wasn't/weren't + S + v4 + ow . . . . ?

Common Errors in the use of Past Continuous Tense

Rule1

* when two works having at same time ⇒ when is used
* " " " " " alternate time ⇒ while is used

Meaning when - जब / जबकि

while → जबकि / जब

(1) S + was/were + v4 + ow ↑ (when) + S + v2 + ow

when + S + v2 + ow, S + was/were + v4 + ow

(2) S + was/were + v4 + ow ↓ (while) + S + was/were + v4 + ow

while + S + was/were + v4 + ow, S + was/were + v4 + ow

(3) while + S + was/were + V4 + ow, S + V^2 + ow

(1) जब मैं कल सुबह तुमसे मिलने आया था तो तुम अपने study room मे पढ़ रहे थे। when I came to meet you Yesterday morning, you were studing in your study room

(2) रानी गाना गा रही थी जबकि उसकी छोटी बहन नाच रही थी।
younger
Rani was singing a song while her sister was dancing.

(3) जब मैं Park मे टहल रहा था तभी एक पेड़ गिरा।
while I was walking in the park a tree fell down.

(4) वह सो रहा था जबकि मैं TV देख रहा था।
He was sleeping while I was watching T.V

Rule 2 Past के किसी चीज़ मे gradual increasing ya decreasing बताने के लिए Past Continuous का use करते हैं, इसके साथ Double Comparative का use किया जाता है।

(i) She was getting fatter and fatter day by day.

21/september/2016

Past Perfect Tense

पुलिस के आने से पहले चोर भाग चुका था

बाद में ⇓ — पहले ↑

Subsequently action ↓ — earlier action ↓

S + v² + ow — S + had + v³ + ow

Befor ✓ after (x)

S + had + v³ + ow, + S + v² + ow

⇒ The theif had run away before the police came.

Neg : S + hadn't + v³ + ow . . . . .

Int : Had + s + v³ + ow - . . . . ?

Int + Neg : Hadn't + s + v³ + ow . . . . . ?

WH : WH + had + s + v³ + ow . . . . . ?

WH + Neg : WH + hadn't + s + v³ + ow + ... ?

Common Errors in the use of Past perfect Tense

Before: Before का use simple past से पहले और past perfect के बाद करते है।

S + had + v³ + ow ↓ + S + v² + ow

Before

Before + S + v² + ow, S + had + v³ + ow

After: After का use past perfect से पहले और simple past के बाद करते है।

S + v² + ow ↓ + S + had + v³ + ow

After

After + S + had + v³ + ow, S + v² + ow

1) Train जाने के बाद मैं station पहुँचा।
I reached the station after the train had left/gone/departed.

2) Doctor के जाने के बाद रोगी मर गया था।
(1) After the doctor had gone the patient died.
(2) The patient died after the doctor had gone

3) मेरे जाने से पहले Train जा चुकी थी।
The train had left before I reached

4) Doctor के आने से पहले रोगी मर चुका था।
The patient had died before the doctor came.

Past perfect Tense is used with conditional sentence.

If + S + had + v^3 + ow, S + would / could / might + have + v^3 + ow
यदि

Had + S + v^3 + ow, S + would / could / might + have + v^3 + ow
काश / यदि

1) Had the police come a little before the criminals would not have gone away.

2) If the students had studied honestly they would have succeeded.

Rule 22/September/2016
Past के किसी भी sentence को बनाने के लिए Simple past तैयार होता है लेकिन यदि कोई घटना Past की और उससे time का पता ही ना चलता हो तो Simple fast के साथ साथ Past perfect का प्रयोग किया जाए सकता है।

ex (i) I intended to marry you (✓)

(ii) I had intended to marry you (✓)

Rule Past के unreal situation बताने के लिए 'I wish' के साथ past perfect sentence का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

(i) I wish India had become free in 1921.

Past Perfect Continuous Tense

⇒ It is a very special case that is the combination of two tenses. – i) Past Perfect and ii) Past continuous

S + had + been (V3) + V4 + ow + since/for + time

Neg: S + hadn't + been + V4 + ow . . . . .

Int: Had + S + been + V4 + ow . . . . . ?

Int + Neg: Hadn't + S + been + V4 + ow . . . . ?

WH: WH + had + S + been + V4 + ow . . . . ?

WH + Neg: WH + hadn't + S + been + V4 + ow . . . . ?

} or, can add + Conj + S + V2 + ow

1) Mr Sinha इस college में पिछले 10 वर्षों से पढ़ा रहे थे जब मैं यहा join करने आया था। Mr Sinha had been teaching in this college for last 10 years when I came to join here

2) मैं Patna में पिछले January से रह रहा था जब तुम्हारा छोटा भाई मुझसे मिलने आया था।
I had been living in Patna since last January when your younger brother came here to meet me

Extra

* ~~Present~~ Past perfect Continuous tense वाले sentence को Past perfect tense में भी बनाया जा सकता है।

* It is better to use the structure

S + had~~t~~ been + V4 + OW + since/for + time

(in the case of positive)

(i) I had been living in Delhi for 10 years (✓) better to use structure

(ii) I had lived in Delhi for 10 years (✓)

* It is better to use the structure

S + hadn't + V3 + OW + since/for + time (in case of negative)

(i) I hadn't lived in Delhi for 10 years (✓)

(ii) I hadn't been living in Delhi for 10 years. (✓)

Simple Future Tense

Future Plan action
- fix - simple present (90%)
- Not fix - simple future (50%)

* It shows that an action or verb will take place in the future here it is essential to put a binding upon the future because future no end.

S + will/shall + V1 + OW

Neg:- S + won't/shan't + V1 + OW

Int: Will/shall + S + V1 + OW + ?

Int+Neg: won't/shan't + S + V1 + OW + ?

WH: WH + will/shall + S + V1 + OW + ?

WH+Neg: WH + won't/shan't + S + V1 + OW + ?

} conj + S + V1/5 + OW

Rule 1

will → 2nd person + 3rd person

shall → 1st Person

Rule 2 If sentence is of

Promise / threat / determination

- 1st Person = will
- [S + shall + be + V^3 + ow]
- 2nd + 3rd Person = shall

(In Passive) 90%.

(i) उसे मार दिया जाएगा

He shall be killed

(ii) I will kill you if you ~~do~~ it again

Rule 3 will is used with I st / II nd / III rd person if the sentence refer to assertion :- (जोर देना)

(i) I will meet you tomorrow

(ii) she will meet me tomorrow.

Examples :

(i) तुम मुझे कब हसाओगे ,

When will you make me laugh.

(ii) मैं बच्चो को नहीं रुलाऊंगा

I won't make children cry.

(iii) मैं उनसे बात करुंगा यदि वो मुझसे मिलेंगे

I shall talk to him if he meets me.

(iv) यदि तुम Agra जाओगे तो Taj Mahal देखोगे

If you ~~will~~ go to Agra you will see the Taj Mahal

(v) जब तक तुम नहीं आओगे मैं तुम्हे नहीं पढ़ाऊंगा ,

Unless you come I won't teach you.

Future Continuous Tense.

This shows that an action is going on in the future. This is a conditional tense. i.e, when we use this tense there should be a context to make the sentence logically correct.

Note: The context will be in simple present tense.

Affg: S + will/shall + be + V4+ow ↑ Conj + S + V1/5 + ow

Neg: S + won't/shan't + be + V4 + - - - - - -

Int: Will/shall + S + be + V4 + ow - - - - - ?

Int + Neg: Won't/shan't + S + be + V4 + ow - - - - ?

WH: WH + will/shall + S + be + V4 + ow - - - - ?

WH + Neg: WH + won't/shan't + S + be + V4 + ow - - - ?

(i) मैं इस feild मे Cricket खेलता रहूँगा जब कल सुबह तुम मूझसे मिलने आओगे।
I shall be playing cricket in this feild when you come to meet me tomorrow mourig

(ii) वह अपने study room पड़ता रहेगा जब तुम उससे मिलने जाओगे।
He will be studing in his study room when you go to meet him

(iii) वह वहाँ रुकी रहेगी जब तक तूम नहीं जाओगे।
She will be staying there until you go.

(iv) जब वह घर पहूचेगा उसकी बेटीयाँ अंग्रेजी पड़ती रहेगी
When he reaches home his daughters will be reading English.

Future Perfect Tense

It shows that an action or verb finish in the future. here also a context is required to make the sentence logically correct.

Note The context will be in simple present tense

S + will/shall + have + V^3 + ow $\overset{Conj}{\uparrow}$ S + $V^{1/s}$ + ow

Neg: S + won't/shan't + have + V^3 + ow + ...

Int: will/shall + S + have + V^3 + ow - - - - ?

Int + Neg: Won't/shan't + S + have + V^3 + ow - - - - ?

WH: WH + will/shall + S + have + V^3 + ow - - - ?

WH + Neg: WH + won't/shan't + S + have + V^3 + ow - - - ?

(i) तुम्हारे station मे पहुँचने से पहले train जा चुकी होगी।
The train will have departed from the station before you reach

(ii) वह अपना काम समाप्त कर चुका होगा जब तुम वहाँ पहुचोगे
He will have finished his work when you reach there

(iii) मेरे पिताजी तुम्हारे आने से पहले ही घर पहुँच जाएगे,
My father will have reached home before you come.

Future Perfect Continuous Tense

S + will/shall + have + been + V^4 + ow + { from / for } + time

(i) मैं आपका इंतजार 2 साल तक करता रहूँगा।
I will have been waiting for 2 for 2 years.

Note:
i. Future ~~Cont~~ Perfect Continuous Tense का Use आजकल Modern English में नहीं किया जा रहा है।

ii. इसके Sentence को future Continuous में बनाया जा सकता है।

(i) I will be waiting for you for a year.

(ii) Since का Use ~~सिर्फ~~ Past point of time में किया जाता है। Future time में कभी नहीं किया जाता है।

xxx

26/september.

Voice

Subject

- living = 10% → doer = 90% → active
- non-living → V^3 - Passive.
  - ↓ nondoer = 90%

living = active.

non-living = Passive with V^3

(i) doer. राम पढ़ता है - active

(ii) राम को पढ़ा जाता है - Passive

↳ non-doer. so passive.

(iii) मैं थक गया हूँ - passive

I am tired → v3 so passive.

Voice → when we don't have any subject or don't want to talk about the subject then we use passive voice.

∴ Subject means doer

Voice can be studied under two groups:

(i) active voice

(ii) passive voice.

S + AV + MV + V2/3/4/5 + OW — active voice

if he

change in V^3

S + AV + be V^3 + by + O — then make him → passive voice

Rules for changing Active into passive

(1) ⇒ Subject takes the place of object
(2) ⇒ Object takes the place of subject
(3) ⇒ Appropriate auxiliary verb is used.
(4) ⇒ Any form of the verb should be changed into V^3.
(5) ⇒ After V^3 'by' is used.
(6) ⇒ Personal pronoun is also changed

nondoer — doer ← S ⟷ O – Receiver

doer or nondoer ← I ⟷ me
You " You
We " us
He " him
She " her
It " It
They " them

मैं उसे पीटता हूँ, — I — doer
मुझे पीटा गया, — I — nondoer

Simple Present Tense

S + $V^{1/5}$ + O — active voice.

S + is/am/are + V^3 + by + O – passive voice.

(1) She always helps me — active voice.
⇒ I am always helped by her → passive voice

S + $V^{1/5}$ + O

S + is/am/are + V^3 + by + O

Neg
Int

1) Do you play cricket?

Cricket is played by you

Is cricket played by you? Passive Voice.

(1) When does he take an exercise.

When is an exercise taken by him?

(2) Boys loves animals.

Animals are loved by boys.

(3) Do children like sweets.

Are sweets liked by children

(4) why does he buy cigarette

why is cigarette bought by him.

(5) where do you read English.

where is English read by you.

S + is/am/are + V3 + OW → direct Passive Voice
→ spoken / written exam.

S + is/am/are + V4 ← AV Present Continuous

V3 → PV Simple Present

N/Adj → Normal Sentence No Passive

Correct these sentences.

(1) You are a student (✓)

(2) He is a doctor (✓)

(3) A letter is ~~writing~~ written – letter is noun does so s+is/am/are + v3 (X)

(4) She is writing (✓)

(5) A letter is written (✓)

(6) A letter is wrote (X)

(7) A letter is writes (X)

(8) ~~सब्जीयाँ~~ बेची जाती है Vegetables are sold.

(9) ~~तुम्हे~~ English पढ़ाई जाती है You are taught English.

(10) ~~उसे~~ क्यो ~~पीटा~~ जाता है।
Why is he beaten.

27, september

Simple Past

S + v2 + O — A.V

S + was/were + v3 + by + O — PV.

1) She stole my book
My book was stolen by her

2) Ajay didn't speak the truth
The truth was not spoken by Ajay

3) Why didn't the police catch the theif.
Why wasn't the theif caught by the police.

4) Why did they buy this.
Why was this bought by them

5) Why did he break the glass.
Why was the glass broken by him.

Possibility.

S + was/were + v4 — AV — Past continuous
S + was/were + v3 — Passive voice — simple past
S + was/were + N/Adj — Nomial sentence ↓ No passive.

S + was/were + v3 + ow
- direct passive without 'by'
- spoken/written
- 50% ques in exam.

Test

(1) A ball was catching (X)

(2) A ball was catched (X) 'catched' is not a word.

(3) A ball was caught (✓) catch — v3 — caught

(4) He was catching a ball (✓) active voice.

(5) बहुत लोग मारे गए। (Passive)
Many people were killed.

(6) आपसे क्या पूछा गया था।
What were you asked.

(7) उन लोगो को पुरस्कृत क्यो नही किया गया।
Why weren't they rewarded.

Present Continuous

S + is/am/are + V4 + O —— A.V ✓ 6

S + is/am/are + being + V3 + by + O - Passive ✓ 6.

(i) they are not plucking the flowers.

(ii) why is Annu singing a song.

(iii) I am drawing a picture

(iv) why isn't Raju answering the question.

(i) the flowers aren't being plucked by them

(ii) why is a song being sang by Annu.

(iii) A picture is being drawn by me.

(iv) why isn't the question being answered by Raju.

S + is/am/are + being + V3 + ow —— spoken & written
in exams
direct passive

(i) She is being written a letter. (×)

(ii) She is being writing a letter (×)

(iii) A letter is being written (✓)

(iv) उन लोगों को हतोत्साहित किया जा रहा है।
They are being discouraged.

(v) मुझे तंग क्यों किया जा रहा है।
Why am I being vexed.

(vi)

Past Continuous

S + was/were + V4 + O —— A.V

S + was/were + being + V3 + by + O — P.V

S + was/were + being + V3 + O/W — spoken & written, exam, direct narrative

i) She was not writting a letter to her husband.
A letter wasn't being written by her to her husband

ii) Why were the children making a noice.
Why was the voice being maked by children.

iii) The farmer was sowing the seeds
The seeds were being sown by farmers.

iv) जब हम लोग hall में प्रवेश किये तब हम लोगों कि तस्वीरे ली जा रही थी (1) We were being photographed
(2) Our photo being captured when we entered the hall.

v) जब मैं कल शाम वहाँ पहुँचा तो रोड की मरमत की जा रही थी The road was being repaired when I reached there yesterday evening.

28, september

Present Perfect Tense

V^3 / been + V^3

S + has/have + V^3 + O — active voice

S + has/have + been + V^3 + by + O — Passive Voice

1) I haven't told a lie
⇒ A lie hasn't been told by me

2) Why has he washed the plates
⇒ Why has the plates been washed by him

3) Have you not eaten Apples.
⇒ Have Apples not been eaten by you.

4) I have kept my promise
⇒ My promise has been kept by me.

5) Tendulkar has thrown the ball
⇒ The ball has been thrown by Tendulkar

Possibility

S + has/have + been + V^4 < AV — Present Perfect Continuous

V^3 — PV — Present Perfect

S + has/have + been + V^3 + OW — direct Passive — spoken/written exams.

(i) A ball has been catching (✗)

(ii) He has been catching (✓)

(iii) A ball has been caught (✓)

(iv) क्या आपको चेतावनी नहीं दी गई
Haven't you been warned

(v) चोरों को कहा गिरफ्तार किया गया है,
where have ~~been~~ the theif been arrested.

Past Perfect Tense

S + had + v^3 + O — active voice

S + had + been + v^3 + by + O — Passive Voice.

1) The children had eaten all the cakes before the party began.
⇒ All the cake had been eaten by the children before the party began.

2) She had written a letter.
⇒ A letter had been written by her.

3) The players had won the match before Sachin came.
⇒ The match had been won by the players before Sachin came.

Note: Present perfect Continuous, past perfect continuous, future Continuous, future perfect Continuous को passive voice नहीं बनाते,

Present perfect Continuous (to check its passive)

S + has/have + been + v^4 + O — A.V

S + has/been + been + being + v^3 + by + O — P.V

× they cannot be together.

1) She has been writing a letter
A letter has been being written by her (×)

Simple Future

S + will/shall + v1 + ow — AV.

S + will/shall + be + v3 + by to - PV

1) why will he teach me?
   why I shall be ~~taught~~ by him.

2) The postman willnot deliver the letter.
   The letter will not be delivered by postman

3) She will write a letter.
   A letter will be written by her.

positivity

S + will/shall + be + { v4 — AV — future continuous ; v3 — PV — simple future }

S + will/shall + be + v3 + ow — spoken & written, exams, direct passive.

(i) She will be written (X)

(ii) I letter will be writing (X)

(iii) She will be writing (✓)

(iv) A letter will be written (✓)

(i) आज अंग्रेजी नहीं पढ़ाई जाएगी

(ii) हम लोगों को मिठाईयाँ क्यों नहीं दी जाएगी।

⇒ English will not be taught today

⇒ ~~Sweets will not be disturbuted~~
   why will not we be given sweets

Future Perfect

S + will / shall + have + v^3 + ow — A.V

S + will / shall + have + been + v^3 + by + O — P.V

1) He will have written a letter
A letter will have been written by him.

2) The Police will have caught the terroist
The terroist will have been caught by the police.

3) अगले हफ्ते तक इस मामले की छान-बिन कि जा चूकी होगी.
The case will have been investigated by next week.

Special Rule

Modals - will, shall, would, should, can, could, may, might, must and ought to

Modals are used in different ways if the sentence is of promise, possibility, duty, suggestion (power), and necessity.

Modals + v^1 → A.V
Modals + be + v^3 → P.V

(1) S + modals + v^1 + ov — A.V
S + modals + be + v^3 + by + O → P.V } Present sense

(2) S + modals + have + v^3 + O → A.V
S + modals + have + been + v^3 + by + O — P.V } Past sense

1) My father can foretell the future.
The future can be foretell by my father.

2) Her company may give Riya a new office
Riya may be given a new office by her company.

3) The students should have learned the words.
The words should have been learnt by the students.

4) The children couldn't have broken the window
The window couldn't have been broken by the children

5) उसके हत्यारो को अवश्य दंडीत किया जाना था (must)
His murderes must have been punished.

6) उसका घर शायद गिरा दिया गया होगा (might)
His house might have been demolished

7) उसे ठगा जा सकता है। (May)
He may be cheated.

To + v' → (active voice)

To + be + v3 - (passive voice)

going to + v'

going to + be + v3

(1) S+ is / am / are / was / were + to + v' + O

S+ is / am / are / was / were + to + be + v3 + by + O

(2) S+ has / have / had / will have + to + v' + O - (A V)

S+ has / have / had / will have to + be + v3 / by + O - (P V)

(3) There + is + N + to + V' - (A V)

There + is + N + to + be + v3 - (P V)

(1) My wife was to buy a necklace

A necklace was to be bought by my wife.

(2) I have to do it

It has to be done by me

(3) I am to do it

It is to be done by me

(4) Ram had to play cricket

Cricket have to be played by Ram

(5) I am to write a letter

A letter is to be written by me

(6) There was a lot of work to do.

There was a lot of work to be done

(7) There is nothing to say
There is nothing to be said.

(8) उसका घर बेचने वाला था।
His house was to be sold.

(9) देश को
The country will have to be saved from disintegration.

Double Object

(1) He gave me a book (take the living object as sulject)
S O1 O2

⇒ I was given a book by him (≠)

⇒ A book was given to me by him (✓)

example i) He told me a story

2) The principal has given me a prize

3) The teacher taught her English

1) — I was told a story by him
— A story told me by him

2 — I was given a prize by the principal

3 She was taught English by the teacher.

Imperative Sentence

⇒ Order, Command

V¹ + O — (A.V)

let + O + be + V³ — (P.V)

ex- 1) Open the door
Let the door be open

2) Post this letter
Let this letter be posted

Advice, more advice.

V'+O — A.V

S + should + be + V3 — P.V

1) Respect your teacher
Your teacher should be respected

2) Love your country
Your country should be could

3) Help the poor
The poor should be helped.

Imperative Negative

Don't + V'+O — (A.V)

Let + O + not + be + V3 — (P.V)

S + shouldn't + be + V3 — (P.V)

example:
(1) Don't insult the poor
Let the poor not be insulted / The poor shouldn't be insulted

(2) Don't pluck the flowers
The flowers should not be plucked /
Let the flowers not be plucked

* V'+ O — (A.V) → order / request / suggestion

You + are + V3 + to + V'+ O → (P.V)

example:

(1) Please help me.

You are requested to help me

(2) Kindly send me 10,000 rupees

You are requested to send me 10,000 ₹

(3) Come here.

You are ordered to come here.

(4) Stand up

You are ordered to stand up.

(5) Work hard

You are suggested to work hard.

30 September

'Let'

Let + O + V1 + O → A.V

↳ Let do not take subject.

Let + O + be + V3 + by + O - P.V

(1) Let her sing a song.

Let + a song be sung by her

(2) Let him complete the work

Let the work be completed by him

(3) Let me do this work

Let this work be done by me.

Let + us + v¹ + ow — A.V

It is suggested that + we + should + v¹ + ow

(1) Let us play together.
It is suggested that we should play together

Let us dance together.
(2) It is suggested that we should dance together

'WHO'

who + v¹/s/2 + o? — A.V

⇒ By whom + is/am/are/was/were + s + v³? — P.V
OR
who + is/am/are - - - - - - + by + ? — P.V

(1) who teaches Annu?
⇒ By whom is Annu taught?
⇒ who is Annu taught by?

(2) ⇒ who + is/am/are/was/were + v⁴ + o — P.V
By whom + is/am/are was/were + s+ being + v³ ? — PV
OR.
who , , , , , , + by ? PV.

(1) who was teaching him
⇒ By whom was he being taught?
⇒ Who was he being taught by?

⇒ who + has/have/had + v³ + ow — AV
By whom + has/have/had + s + being + v³ + ? — PV
OR
who - - - - - - - - by + ? — PV

(1) who has stolen her book?

⇒ By whom has her book been stolen?

⇒ Who has her book been stolen by ?

(2) The judge enquired into the case?

Phrasal Verb.

~~Do~~ The case was enquired into by the judge

(don't ~~use~~ do anything with phrasal verb)

If active voice is used with phrasal verb (verb + preposition), the passive voice will be used as general rule

(3) Her father is looking after her

She is being looked after by her father

List of Phrasal Verb

1) Ask for (माँगना)
2) break down (खराब होना)
3) break out (फैलाना)
4) break up (समाप्त होना)
5) bring up (पालन पोसन)
6) come across (संयोग मिलना)
7) fit into (नष्ट करना)
8) Give up (छोड़ना)
9) look after (देख भाल)
10) look into (जांच करना)
11) look for (ढूंढना / खोजना)
12) Laugh at (दूसरे पे हसना)
13) Arrive at (निष्कर्ष पे पहुँचना)

(1) His behaviour shocked me.

I was shocked at his behaviour

(Here at used in place of by)

Following is the list of verbs which don't take 'by'

1) Know
2) invited (party) invited to party
3) listen
4) prefered
5) Addicted

} use 'to'

1) Please
2) Quarrelled
3) Satisfied
4) displeased
5) dissatisfied
6) disgusted

} use 'with'

1) Amazed
2) Annoyed
3) Knocked
4) A Wonder
5) Shocked
6) Surprised

} use 'at'

1) Interested
2) disinterested

} used 'in'

Note - इससे आगे और words जानने के लिए Magic book + Amazing English book देखें :D

(1) I know you
You are known to me.

3/October

(2) We know that the C.M is corrupt.

Note यदि किसी sentence का subject "People, we, they, everyone, everybody, someone, somebody, no one, no body, anyone, everybody", अर्थात कोई अनिश्चित हो और उसका verb "say, know, think, hope, believe, expect" हो तो उसका passive

It is / was + v^3 + that .....

O + is / was + v^3 + to + be + N / adj

⇒ It is known that the CM is corrupt.

OR

⇒ The CM is known to be corrupt.

(2) People say that the earth is round.
It is said that the earth is round
The earth is said to be round

examples related to this Rule:

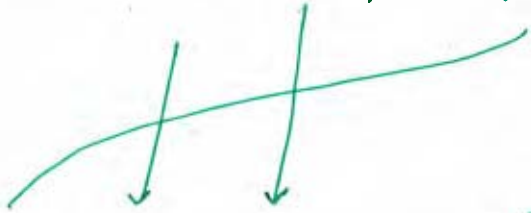
1. Someone catches a fish.
2. One should not hate the poor

⇒ A fish is caught

⇒ The poor should not be hated.

Rule.

Someone - none
Somebody - All
Nobody , one + 'Av' + v 1/2/3/4/5 +O — A.V
Anyone
Anybody
Everyone
Everybody



S + AV + V3 — P.V (appropriate according to sentence)

by someone ✓ by+O ✗

(1) Noone can predict future.
Future cannot be predicted

(2) Somebody has stolen my purse.
My purse has been stolen

(3) All should help the poor.
The poor should be helped.

Some Important points at last.

(1) I want to ~~ss~~ eat a mango

S + want / wants + to + V' + O → A.V

S + want / wants + S + to + be + V3 P.V

I want a mango to be eaten

(2) She wants to write a letter.

=> She wants a letter to be written

Rule 2

(1) It is time to teach you.

It is time + to + V1 + O — A.V

It is time + for + O + to + be + V3 — P.V

=> It is time for you to be taught

=> Some words which are use more in Passive instead of Active, though they look active but are passive.

1) Drawn
2) Defeat
3) Frighten
4) Disappointed
5) Surprised
6) Tired
7) Delighted
8) वह युद्ध में मारा गया

He was killed in the battle. (P.V)

4 October.

Narration

Narration - statement — speech

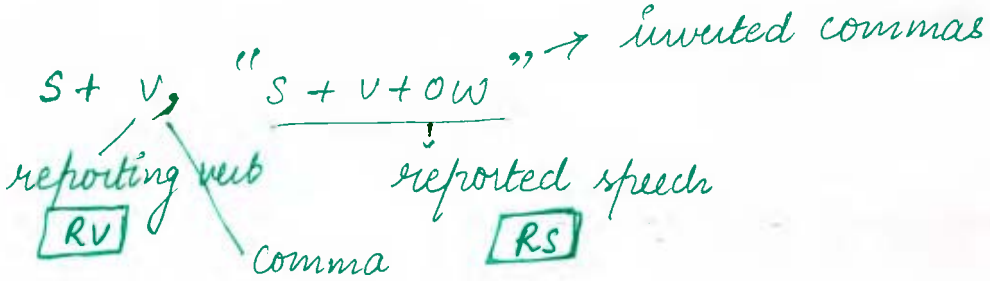
direct indirect

⇒ Narration is a topic that deals with the study of expressing the idea of the speaker.

⇒ the narration can be studied under two groups.

(i) Direct speech, and
(ii) Indirect speech

- Direct speech - In this case we take the exact words of the speaker.
- Indirect speech - In this case we don't express the exact words of the speaker but we take the sense of the statement of the speaker, and we express that statement in our own words.



There are 3 types of Rules for changing direct into indirect

1) Master Rule

S + V, " S + V + OW " → removing all commas is master Rule

(i) assertive — that
(ii) Interrogative — begins with AV → if / whether
(iii) Imperative — to
(iv) Optative — that
(v) Exclamatory — that
Interrogative — begins with 'WH' → same 'WH' if used

2) Generic Rule

There are 3 types of generic rule.

(i) change of person

(ii) change of tense

(iii) change of other word.

change of person

Rule1. "S + V, "S + V + OW"

change.

person 1st → Subject, 2nd → Object, 3rd → NO change (RV) – RS

(i) He says, "I am honest"

He.

He says that he . . . .

(ii) Ramesh says, "I am happy"

Ramesh says that Ramesh . . . . (Repetition of noun makes error)

Ramesh says that he . . . . .

Note: RS का 1st person RV के subject अनुसार change हो जाता है।

Note: RS का II nd person RV के Object के अनुसार change हो जाता है।

Rule2. S + V + O, "S + V + OW"

say / says / said + to

Tell / tells / told + to

(1) Ram says to me, "You are my friend"

Ram tells me that I am his friend

S + V + O, "S + V + OW"

You

S + V, "S + V + OW" (if there is no object)

than image for all person that

B + V me – I, Him – he, you – you "S + V + OW"

if me, him, you

then change → I, he, you into.

note: RS का III person RV से प्रभावित नहीं अथ होता इसलिए No change

He says, "Ram is honest"
He says that Ram is honest.

5/October/2016.

(ii) Change of tense

Rule 1

S + V, "S+V+OW"

present / future — No change of tense. — Present / Past / future

if the first clause is in present or future then there will be no change in coming clause.

example.

1. He says, "I was in the Army"
He says that he was in the Army

2. Dinesh says to Suresh, "I shall help you if you help me"
Dinesh tells Suresh that he will help him if he helps him

3. Ram and Raju will say, "we shall have been playing cricket."
Ram and Raju will say that they will help have been playing cricket.

4. Ram says to Bharat, "I had been living in forest for 14 years."
Ram tells Bharat that he had been living in forest for 14 years.

5. Sangeeta says to Sachin, "You were playing well."
Sangeeta tells Sachin that he was playing well.

6. Radha will say, "I shall have passed the exam"
Radha will say that she will have passed the exam.

Rule 2

S + V, " S + V + ow "

if in past — present / future — (i)

Corresponding past

if in
V¹ S — V²
(i) simple present — simple past
(ii) is/am/are — was/were
Present Cont — Past Cont
(iii) has/have — had
Present Perfect — Past Perfect
has/have + been — had + been
(iv) Present Perfect Cont — Past perfect Cont

(v) will — would
(vi) shall — should

Examples:

1- He said, "I am listening to the radio"
He said that he was listening to the radio.

2- He said to Neha, "I am doing my work"
He told Neha that he was doing his work.

3- He said to me, "They have never helped me."
He told me that they had never helped him.

4- The girl said to her mother, "I have been reading since morning" The girl told her mother that she had been reading since morning.

5- She said to me, "Suresh has to go"
she told me that Suresh had to go

6- He said, "I take care of my student."
He said that he took care of his student.

7. He said to me, "I will be writing a letter"
He told me that he would be writing a letter.

6/October

Rule 3

S + V, " S + V + ow "
past past

(i) simple Past (V^2) → past perfect (had + V^3)

(ii) past Continuous → past perfect Cont
was/were + V^4 had + been + V^4

(iii) past perfect
(iv) Past perfect cont
] No change

(iii) Change of other words

	Direct		Indirect
(i)	This	-	That
(ii)	These	-	Those
(iii)	Now	-	then
(iv)	Here	-	there
(v)	Yesterday	-	the previous day / the day before
(vi)	Today	-	That day
(vii)	Tonight	-	that night
(viii)	Tomorrow	-	the next day / the following day
(ix)	The day after tomorrow	-	Two days later
(x)	The day before yesterday	-	Two days before
(xi)	Last night/day....	-	The previous night/day....
(xii)	Next day / month / night...	-	The following day/night....
(xiii)	Is / am / are	-	was / were
(xiv)	was / were	-	had been
(xv)	May ~~+ Night~~	-	Might

(xvi) Can - Could

(xvij) shall - should

(xviii) will - would

(xix) should / could / would / might — no change

Note:

(1) This / here / now यदि subject के जैसा काम कर रहा है तो इसे change नही किया जाता है।

(2) इससे आगे के words General English में है। Page 20.

examples

(1) Rohan said, "this is my book"
Rohan said that this was my his book.

(2) He said, "I finished my work yesterday"
He said that he had finished his work the previous day.

(3) He said, "I am glad to be here this evening."
He said that he was glad to be there that evening.

(4) Rupesh said to Dinesh, "I was going to you"
Rupesh ~~said~~ told Dinesh that he had been going to him.

(5) She said to me, "I had to do it last night"
She told me that she had had to do it the previous night.

Special Rule

S + V , " S + V + OW "

Past → No change.

↳ universal truth
Eternal truth
law / Rule / magzine
Proverb / maxim / quotation

No change of tense at all.

(1) Newton said, "For every action there is equal and opposite reaction".
Newton said that for every action there is equal and opposite reaction.

(2) The teacher said, "The earth moves around the Sun"

The teacher said that the earth moves around the Sun.

(3) The Guru said, "The work is worship"

The Guru said that the work is worship

(4) Ramesh said, "A bad carpenter quarrels with his tools"

Ramesh said that a bad carpenter quarrels with his tools.

7/October/2016

Rule

S + V, "S + must + V' + O W"

Need - had

Moral duty / Responsibility

Normal

has to / have to (Present)

had to (if RV past)

Examples.

(1) He said, "we must love our country"

He said that we must love our country

(2) They said, "Students must respect their teachers"

They said that students must respect their teachers

(3) My wife says to me, "I must buy a car"

My wife tells me that she has to buy a car.

Interrogative

90% if / whether 10%

S + V → "A V + S + V³ + O w + ?"

S + V → "WH + AV + S + V³ + O w + ?"

asked Enquired.

Ex. 1. Kanika reads (assertive)

Does Kanika read ?

When does Kanika read?

(2) The teacher said to me, "where do you live"?

The teacher asked me where I lived (✓)

(3) The man said to his son, "Do you want to go?"

The man asked his son if he wanted to go?

(4) I said to my wife, "what are you doing today?"

I asked to my wife if what she was doing that day?

(5) Soniya said to me, "can you meet me tomorrow at Patna junction"?

Soniya asked me if I could meet her at Patna junction the next day?

(6) He said to me, "Are you a student"?

He asked me if / whether I was a student.

(7) He asked me, "what is your name?"

He

He asked me what my name was?

(8) Sophia said to Harry, "Do you love me?"

Sophia asked Hary if he loved her?

Imperative

S + V + O OR V' + OW"

↓ ↙ O + (to) + V' + OW.

change

Rule 1: R.V के verb को RS के ~~के~~ Tense के आधार पर Order / command / request / ask / tell / beg / Warn / Advise / suggest / Implore / Threaten / Urge / Persuade etc में बदल दे।

Rule 2: Please, kindly, Sir, Madam इनको हटा दे। RV में object का प्रयोग हो या ना हो Indirect बनाते समय object लगाना चाहिए,

example: 1. The student said to the teacher, "Please solve this problem"

The student requested the teacher to solve this problem.

2. The mother said, "close the door"

The mother ordered me to close the door

3. Dr. Pinka said to me, "Take your medicine in time"

Dr. Pinka suggested my wife to take her medicine on time.

4. He said to me, "Please help me".

He requested me to help him.

12 | October | 2016.

Negative Imperative.

S + V, " Don't + V¹ + OW "

(i) change + O + not to + V¹ + OW

(ii) Forbade + O + to + V¹ + OW
मना कर देना

(iii) prohibited / prevented + O + from + V⁴ + OW
रोकना / मना करना
(in place of Conjuction; in place of V¹)

(1) My father said to me, " Don't go outside at night ".

(1) My father ordered me ~~Hatt~~ not to go outside at night

(2) My father forbade me to go outside at night.

(3) My father prohibited / prevented me from going outside at night.

(2) The teacher said to the ~~th~~children, " Don't make a noise in the classe."

(1) The teacher ordered the children not to ~~go~~ make a noise in the class.

Optative Sentence

S + V , " May + S + V' + OW "

↓ change.

Blessed / Cursed / wished / prayed + that + S + might + V' + OW.

1. Mother said to me, " May you live long "
   Mother blessed me that I might live long.
2. They said to him, " May you died "
   They cursed him that he might die.
3. He said to me, " You be happy ".
   He wished me that I might be happy
4. My grandfather said to me, " You live in peace "
   My grandfather prayed me that ~~you~~ I might live in peace

Exclamatory Sentence.

S + V , " S + V + OW "

Rule! (1) R.V को R.S के sense के आधार पर exclaimed with joy / sorrow / surprised / anger / contempt / applause / ~~great~~ / regret / etc में बदल दे

(2) Conjuction - 'that' is used.

(3) Oh! / aah! / Oouch! ... इन शब्दो को हटा दे।

(4) ! → change .

(1) The captain said, " Hip! hip! Hurrah! ,, I have won the match."
The captain exclaimed with joy that he had won the match.

* S + V , " what / such / how + a/an + N ! "
change ↓ that + It/Subject + is/was + a/an + Adj + N

• if already there is adj in question with noun then structure = ... + a/an + Adverb + Adj + N

(2) He said, " Aah! My dog is died"
He extlaimed with sorry that his dog was dead.

(3) Ajeet said, " what a beautiful sight"
Ajeet exclaimed, with surprise that It was a very beautiful sight

(3) He said, " how beautiful she is"
He exclaimed with surprise that she was very beautiful

(4) He said, " Oh my God! I have done a mistake".
He exclaimed with regret that he had done a mistake.

13/october

Extra

(1) यदि RS के अंदर a term of address हो तो उस term of address को RV का object बनाकर direct से indirect बनाया जाता है।

(i) The teacher said, "Sonia I am pleased with you".
The teacher told Sonia that He was pleased with her.

(2) यदि Rs के अंदर Ohh!, well!, OK!, I see etc प्रकार के sambodhan वाले शब्द प्रयोग किये जाए तो सबसे आसान तरीका यह है कि उसे हटा दे।

(i) The teacher said, "Well Mohan I will punish you"
The teacher told Mohan that he would punish him.

(3) यदि RS मे एक से ज्यादा Assertive Sentence का use हो तो indirect speech बनाते समय उसे and से या further added से जोड़ कर लिखा जाना चाहिए,

(i) The King said," My wife is beautiful and laborious I will give her a beautiful gift."

The King said that his wife was beautiful and laborious, and he would give her a beautiful gift.

Rule कभी कभी RS के अंदर अलग अलग प्रकार के दो या दो से अधिक Sentence रहते हैं ऐसे मे जो जिस Sentence मे उसी का नियम लगा दे।

आवश्यकता पड़ने पर further added, asked, and etc का प्रयोग कर सकते हैं,

(ii) The principal said to him," Why are you disturbing the whole class? I can't tolerate it. Get out at once.

⇒ The principal asked him why ~~are you~~ he was disturbing the whole class. He told him that he could not tolerate it and ordered him to get out at once.

• LET

- S + V, " let + us + V' + OW "

  change: proposed that → me / they + should + V' + OW.

- S + V, " Let + O + V' + OW "

  change: To + let + O + V' + OW

  That + S + should + V' + OW

(i) Lata said, "Let us visit the zoo today"

Lata proposed that they should visit the zoo that day. Let + us = Lets

(ii) He said, "Let's go home"

He proposed that we should go home.

(iii) The boy said to his father, "Let me choose the career of my choice"

I The boy requested his father to let him choose the career of his choice.

II The boy requested his father that he should choose the career of his choice.

Rule 2 यदि किसी sentence में Yes या No का use हो तो Yes के लिए in the affirmative और No के लिए in the negative का use करते हैं और said की जगह replied का use करते हैं,

(1) He said, "Yes I can do it"

He replied in the affirmative & told that he could do it.

(2) They said, "No we can't do this"

They replied in the negative and told that they could not do that.

Rule 3: यदि Rs में Goodmorning, Goodnight का use हो तो goodmorning (meeting) के लिए wished का use करते हैं और goodnight (parting) के लिए bade का use करते हैं,

(1) He said to me, "Good morning"
He wished me goodmorning

(2) I said to her, "Goodnight"
I ~~ste~~ bade her goodnight.

(3) My friend said to me, "Goodmorning you have finished your homework"
My friend wished me goodmorning and said that I had finished my homework.

PHRASE

with respect to

A. *in connection with something*

B. *admiration for*

C. *politely*

with respect to

MEANING

in connection with something

EXAMPLE





PHRASE

might as well

A. *used to show that something is possible*

B. *used to say something is likely to happen*

C. *used to suggest doing something*

might as well

MEANING

used to suggest doing something, often when there is nothing better to do

EXAMPLE

*As long as we're here, we **might as well** get a drink.*

*They're going to be late, so we **may as well** start eating.*

PHRASE

in a row

A. *one after another without a break*

B. *making a boat move through water*

C. *to argue consecutively, especially loudly*

in a row

MEANING

one after another without a break

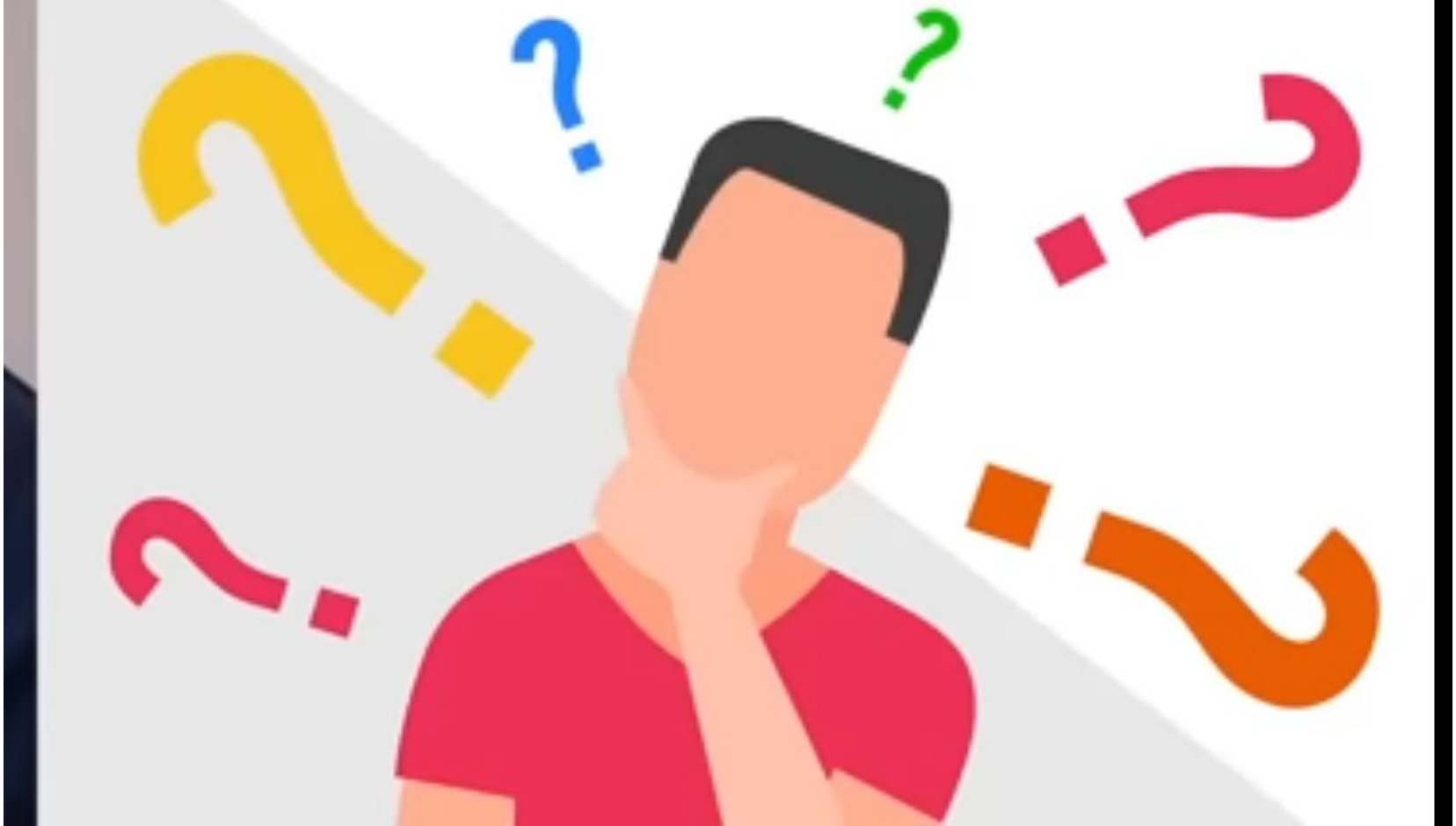
EXAMPLE

He's called in sick four days ***in a row****.*

The team has won the championship three years ***in a row****.*



take (something)
into _____



take (something) into account

MEANING

to consider or remember something when judging a situation

EXAMPLE

*I hope my boss **takes into account** the fact that I worked an extra weekend when I ask for some time off next month.*



on _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _...

on _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _



on the one hand... on the other hand

MEANING

used when you are comparing two different facts or two opposite ways of thinking about a situation

EXAMPLE

***On the one hand**, I'd like to stay up and relax with a movie, but **on the other hand** Emi is going to wake me up early in the morning.*



behind bars

MEANING

in prison

EXAMPLE

AP News

Bannon gets 4 months behind bars for defying 1/6 subpoena

WASHINGTON (AP) — Steve Bannon, a longtime ally of former President Donald Trump, was sentenced Friday to serve four months behind bars...



The Daily Hodl

Man Faces 25 Years Behind Bars for Illegally Converting Bitcoin (BTC) to US Dollars in Money Laundering Scheme

A man from New York is facing 25 years in prison after being convicted of running an unlicensed money transmitting business as part of a...



_ _ _ _ _k _ _ _ _ _

_ _ _ _t



break (someone's) heart

MEANING

to make someone who loves you very sad, usually by telling that person you have stopped loving them

EXAMPLE



4:04

English

The next part of this quiz which I think is going to be more challenging.

Hindi

इस प्रश्नोत्तरी का अगला भाग जो मुझे लगता है कि अधिक चुनौतीपूर्ण होने वाला है।

is prashnottari ka agala bhag jo mujhe lagata hai ki adhik chunautipurn hone vala hai .

Offline translation

New translation

MEANING

to make the situation even more unpleasant or difficult

make matters worse

MEANING

to make the situation even more unpleasant or difficult

EXAMPLE

*The wedding caterer cancelled on us, and to **make matters worse**, the best man suddenly got sick and is in the hospital.*



MEANING

used to show that you think or feel the opposite of what has just been stated

on the contrary

MEANING

used to show that you think or feel the opposite of what has just been stated

EXAMPLE

A: *Not many people like these English lessons.*

B: ***On the contrary****, people hit the LIKE button all the time.*



MEANING

approximately; almost

MEANING

approximately; almost

HINT

_ _ _ _ or _ _ _ _

more or less

MEANING

approximately; almost

EXAMPLE

*She **more or less** started the business on her own.*

*We're the same height, **more or less**.*



MEANING

for a long, medium, or short period of time in the future

MEANING

for a long, medium, or short period of time in the future

HINT

__ __ __ __ __ __ __ term

in the long / medium / short term

MEANING

for a long, medium, or short period of time in the future

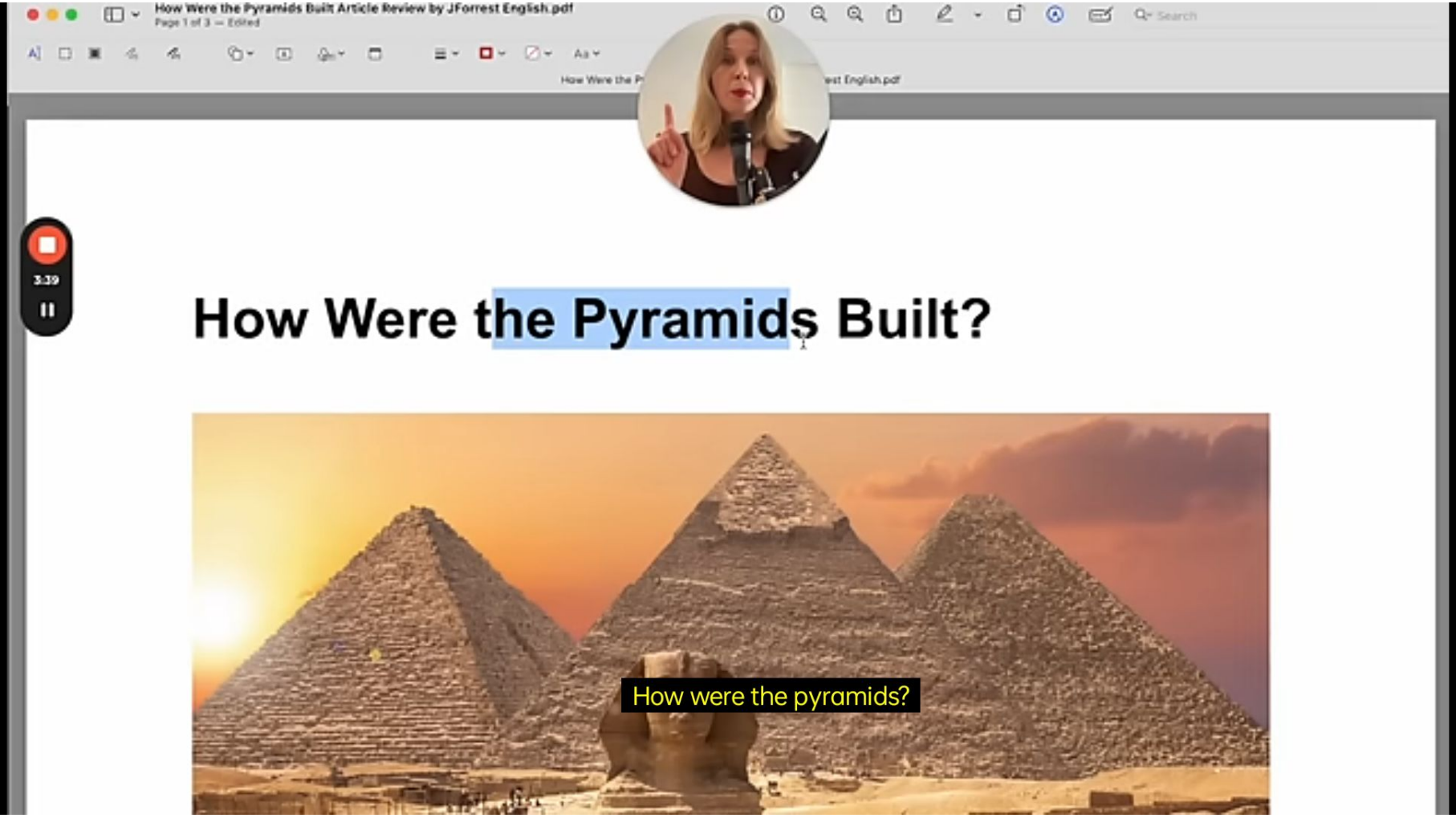
EXAMPLE

The stock market may be volatile ***in the short term****. but the market will certainly rebound* ***in the long term****.*

REVIEW

B2 Phrases to Build Your Vocabulary

- in that case
- with respect to
- might as well
- in a row
- take (something) into account
- behind bars
- break (someone's) heart
- make matters worse
- on the contrary
- more or less
- in the short / medium / long term
- on the one hand... on the other hand...


How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 1 of 3 — Edited
3:39
How Were the Pyramids Built?
How were the pyramids?

How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 1 of 3 — Edited



Have you ever wondered how the pyramids were built?

5:00

How Were the Pyramids Built?

I wonder how the pyramids were built.



How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 1 of 3 — Edited



Have you ever wondered how the pyramids were built?

Yes I have.
No, I haven't.

5:27

How Were the Pyramids Built?

I wonder how the pyramids were built.



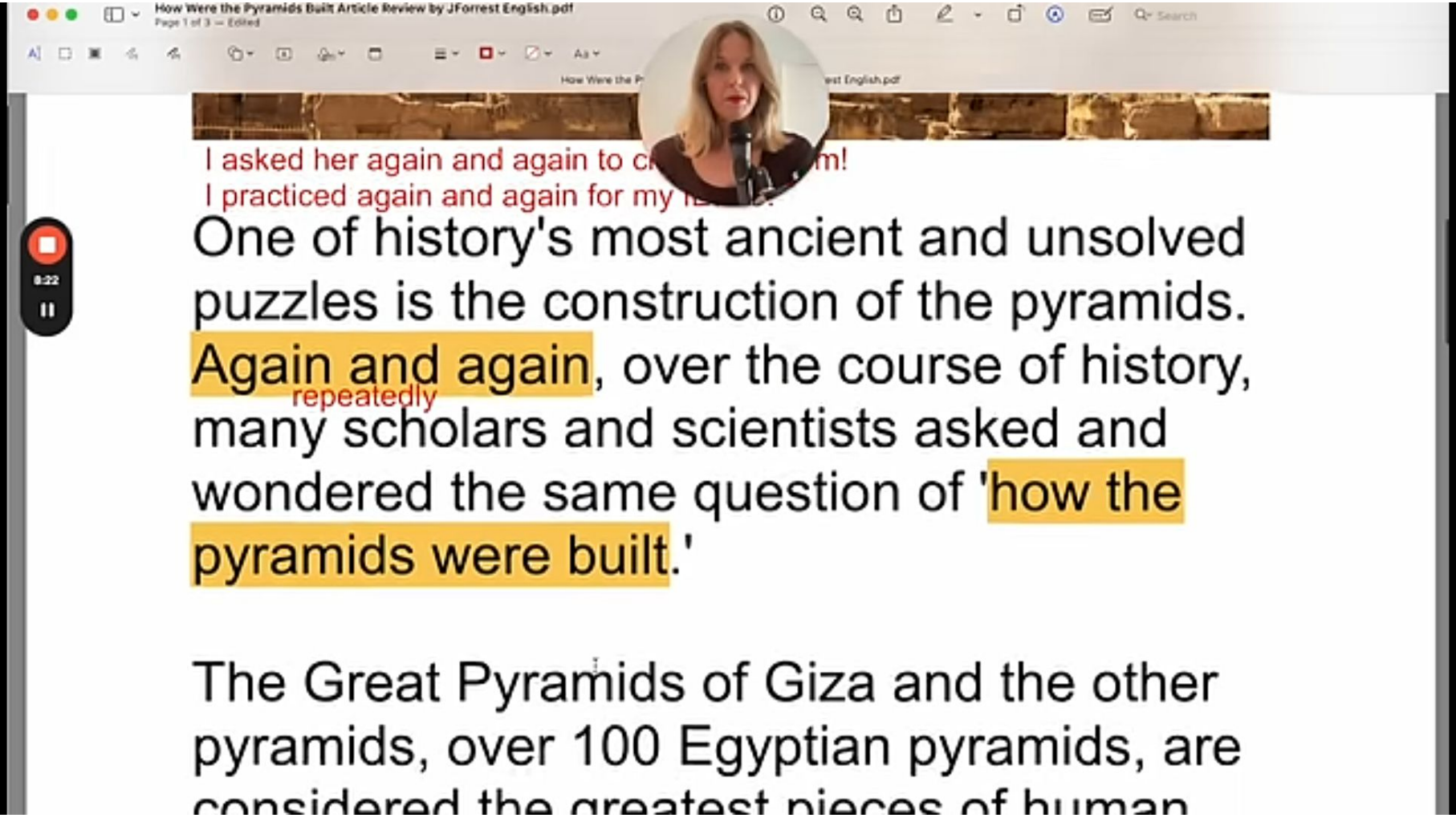
How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 1 of 3 — Edited



I asked her again and again to clean her room!
I practiced again and again for my IELTS.

One of history's most ancient and unsolved puzzles is the construction of the pyramids. Again and again, over the course of history, repeatedly many scholars and scientists asked and wondered the same question of 'how the pyramids were built.'

The Great Pyramids of Giza and the other


How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 1 of 3 — Edited
I asked her again and again to
m!
I practiced again and again for my
8:22
One of history's most ancient and unsolved puzzles is the construction of the pyramids. Again and again, over the course of history, repeatedly many scholars and scientists asked and wondered the same question of 'how the pyramids were built.'
The Great Pyramids of Giza and the other pyramids, over 100 Egyptian pyramids, are

How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 2 of 3 — Edited

considered the gre eces of human



JForrest English Training

www.jforrestenglish.com ©

Join Pace AI Today!
Click Here To Start Your Free 7-Day Trial

9:05

I'm an architect. I studied architecture.

engineering and architecture. These monuments are still standing after over 4,500 years and are still a mystery unsolved to this day. Some scriptures found

How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 1 of 3 — Edited



wondered the same question of 'how the pyramids were built.

The Great Pyramids of Giza and the other pyramids, over 100 Egyptian pyramids, are considered the greatest pieces of human

regarded as

JForrest English Training

www.jforrestenglish.com ©

Join Pace AI Today!
Click Here To Start Your Free 7-Day Trial

How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 2 of 3 — Edited



I'm an architect. I studied architecture.

engineering and architecture. These monuments are still standing after over 4,500 years and are still a mystery unsolved to this day. Some scriptures found from Ancient Egyptians can help us to understand a bit better how the construction of such monuments has come about.

until now

To this day, I don't know why she quit. She had an amazing job!

These huge structures of limestone or

How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 2 of 3 — Edited



monuments are st ng after over
4,500 years and ar mystery
unsolved to this day. Some scriptures found
from Ancient Egyptians can help us to
understand a bit better how the construction
of such monuments has come about.

until now

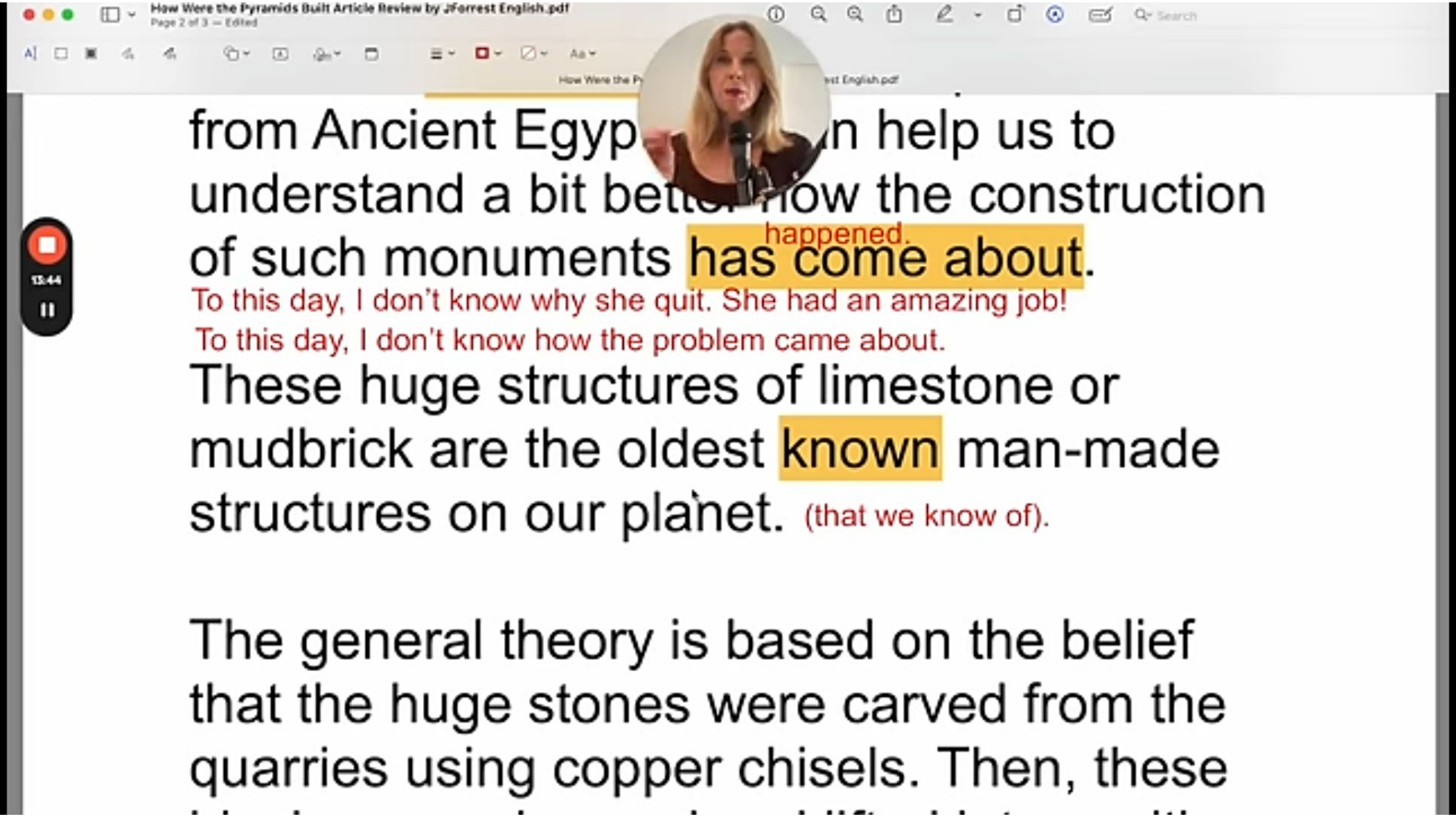
happened.

To this day, I don't know why she quit. She had an amazing job!

To this day, I don't know how the problem came about.

These huge structures of limestone or
mudbrick are the oldest known man-made
structures on our planet.

The general theory is based on the belief


How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 2 of 3 — Edited
from Ancient Egyp n help us to
understand a bit bett ow the construction
of such monuments has come about.
happened.
To this day, I don't know why she quit. She had an amazing job!
To this day, I don't know how the problem came about.
These huge structures of limestone or
mudbrick are the oldest known man-made
structures on our planet. (that we know of).
The general theory is based on the belief
that the huge stones were carved from the
quarries using copper chisels. Then, these
13:44

How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 2 of 3 — Edited



of such monument[illegible]ome about.

To this day, I don't know why she[illegible]d an amazing job!

To this day, I don't know how the p[illegible]me about.

14:57

These huge structures of limestone or mudbrick are the oldest known man-made structures on our planet. (that we know of).

The general theory is based on the belief that the huge stones were carved from the quarries using copper chisels. Then, these blocks were dragged and lifted into position.

to move something by pulling it, rather than lifting it.

Don't drag your school bag! It'll get dirty!

However, the method regarding the

How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 2 of 3 — Edited



structures on our p hat we know of).

The general theory is based on the belief that the huge stones were carved from the quarries using copper chisels. Then, these blocks were dragged and lifted into position.

to move something by pulling it, rather than lifting it.

Don't drag your school bag! It'll get dirty!

However, the method regarding the movement and placement of these stones is under great dispute.

transition word used to introduce a contrasting point.

How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 2 of 3 — Edited



structures on our p hat we know of).

The general theory is based on the belief that the huge stones were carved from the quarries using copper chisels. Then, these blocks were dragged and lifted into position.

to move something by pulling it, rather than lifting it.

Don't drag your school bag! It'll get dirty!

However, the method regarding the movement and placement of these stones is under great dispute.

transition word used to introduce a contrasting point.

To be under dispute - there isn't agreement

How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 3 of 3 — Edited



17:43

The fact that she quit her job baffles me!
= I don't understand why she quit her job.

The techniques that were used in the process of constructing the Egyptian pyramids have baffled many historians and scientists for countless years. Many controversial hypotheses were introduced regarding the construction of the pyramids.

to baffle - to not understand, to be confused

The form of the workforce is also under

How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 3 of 3 — Edited



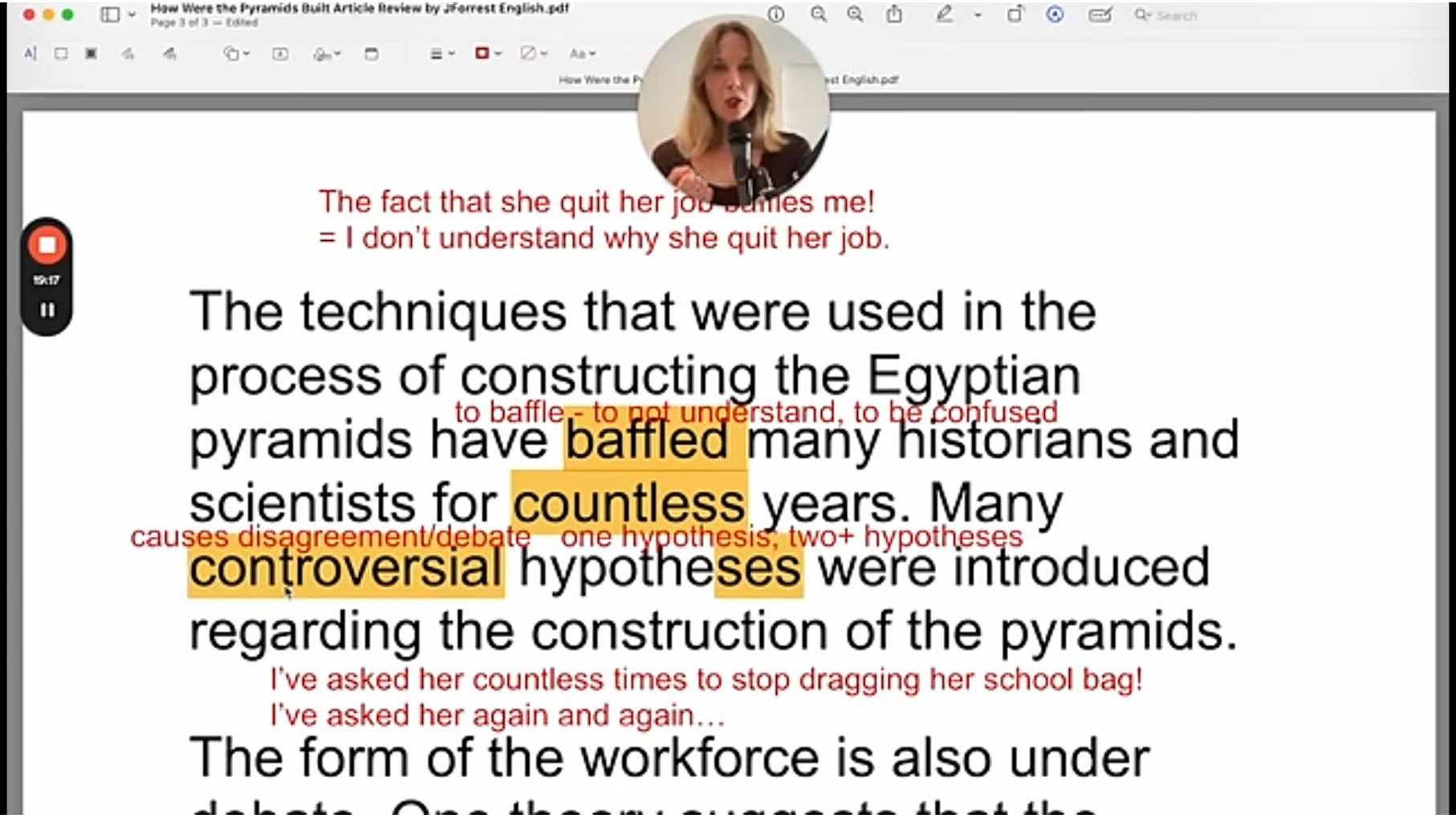
The fact that she quit her job baffles me!
= I don't understand why she quit her job.

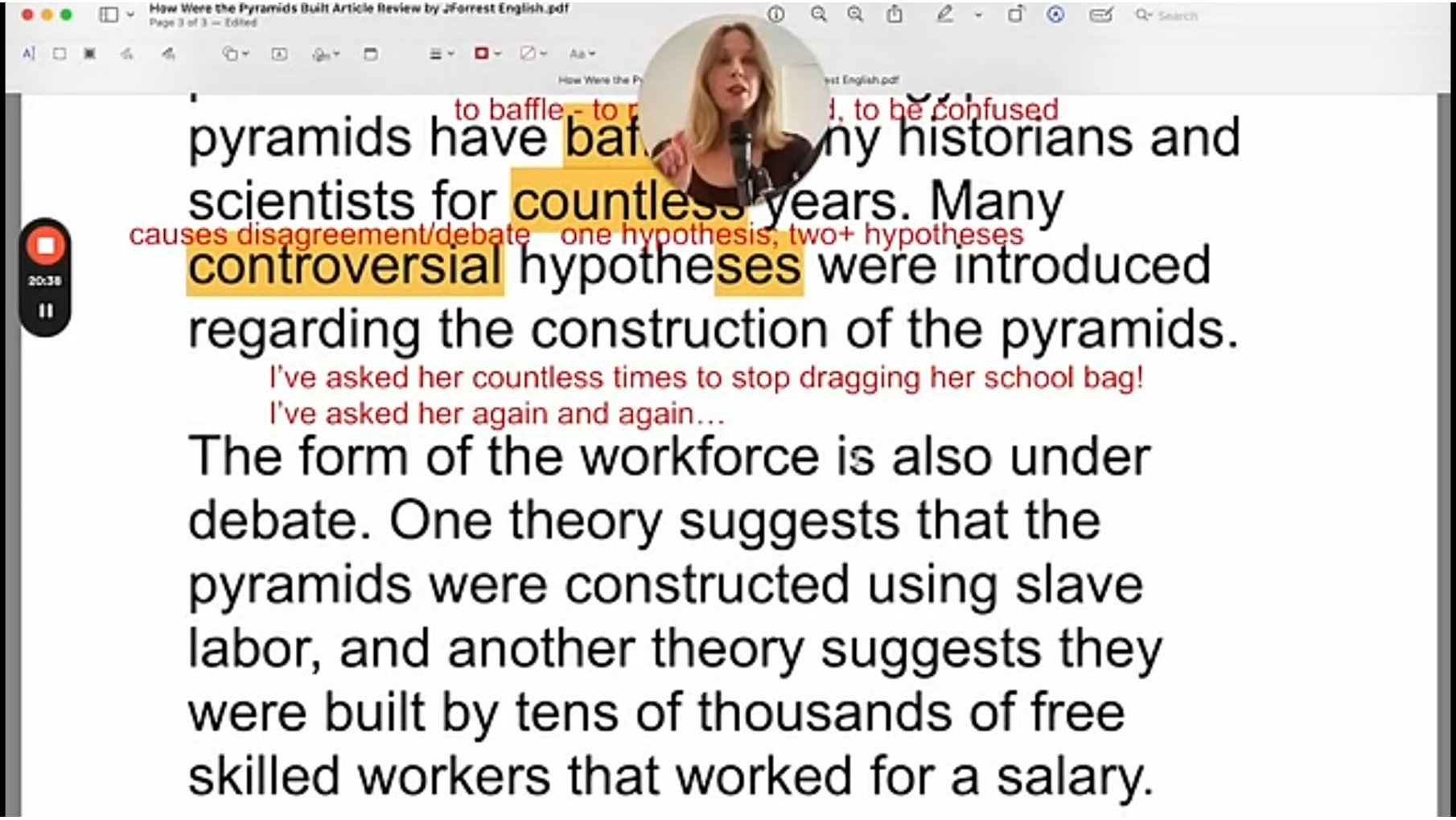
The techniques that were used in the process of constructing the Egyptian pyramids have baffled many historians and scientists for countless years. Many controversial hypotheses were introduced regarding the construction of the pyramids.

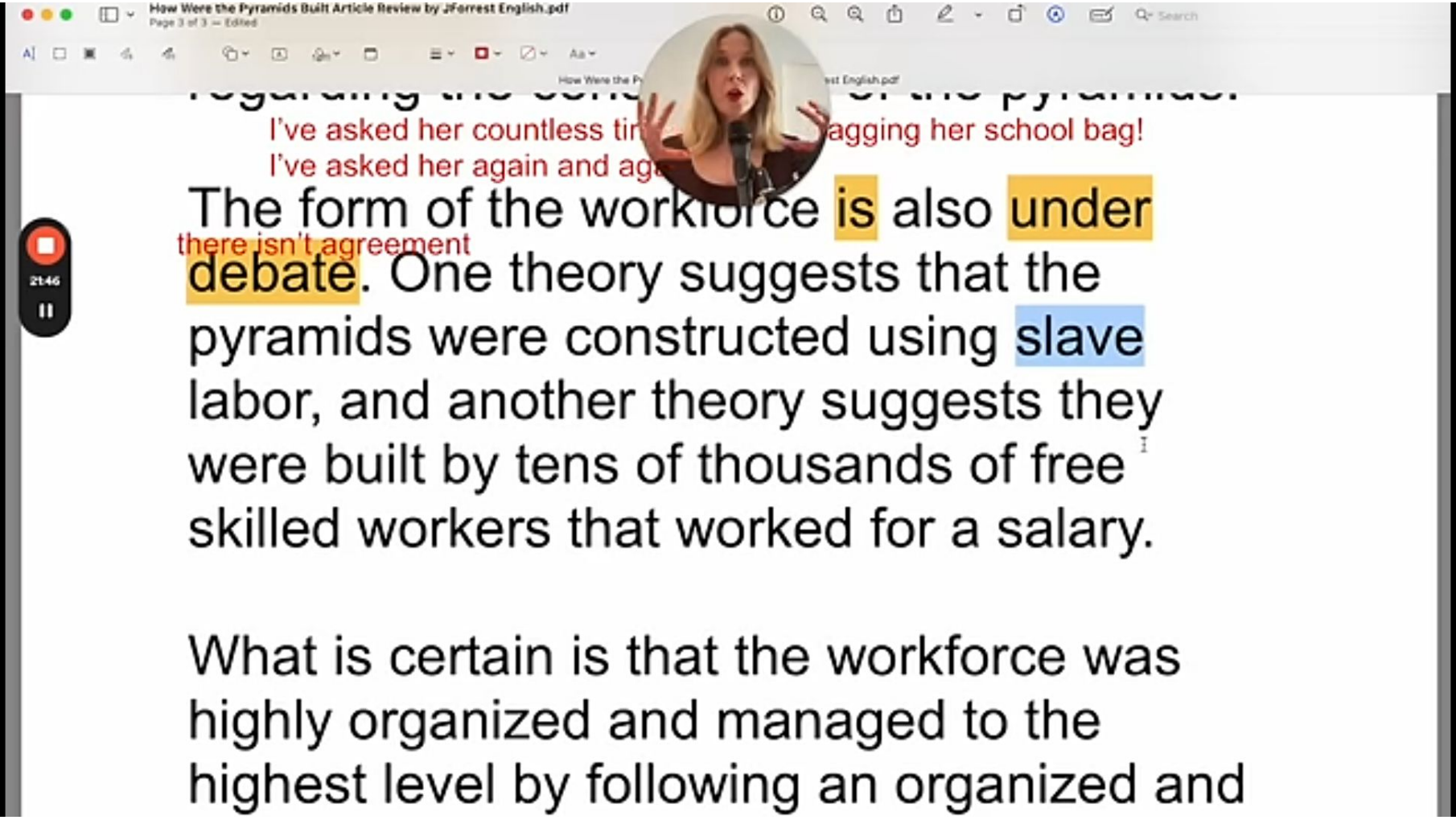
to baffle - to not understand, to be confused

I've asked her countless times to stop dragging her school bag!
I've asked her again and again…

The form of the workforce is also under


How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 3 of 3 — Edited
The fact that she quit her job baffles me!
= I don't understand why she quit her job.
15:17
The techniques that were used in the process of constructing the Egyptian pyramids have baffled many historians and scientists for countless years. Many controversial hypotheses were introduced regarding the construction of the pyramids.
to baffle - to not understand, to be confused
causes disagreement/debate
one hypothesis, two+ hypotheses
I've asked her countless times to stop dragging her school bag!
I've asked her again and again…
The form of the workforce is also under


How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 3 of 3 — Edited
to baffle - to
, to be confused
pyramids have baf
ny historians and
scientists for countless years. Many
causes disagreement/debate
one hypothesis; two+ hypotheses
controversial hypotheses were introduced
regarding the construction of the pyramids.
I've asked her countless times to stop dragging her school bag!
I've asked her again and again…
The form of the workforce is also under
debate. One theory suggests that the
pyramids were constructed using slave
labor, and another theory suggests they
were built by tens of thousands of free
skilled workers that worked for a salary.
20:38


How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 3 of 3 — Edited
I've asked her countless ti agging her school bag!
I've asked her again and ag
there isn't agreement
The form of the workforce is also under debate. One theory suggests that the pyramids were constructed using slave labor, and another theory suggests they were built by tens of thousands of free skilled workers that worked for a salary.
What is certain is that the workforce was highly organized and managed to the highest level by following an organized and
21:46

How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 3 of 3 — Edited



pyramids were cor d using slave labor, and another theory suggests they were built by tens of thousands of free skilled workers that worked for a salary.

were paid/compensated.

What is certain is that the workforce was highly organized and managed to the highest level by following an organized and planned process that consisted of three phases.

How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 3 of 3 — Edited



labor, and another [illegible] suggests they were built by tens of thousands of free skilled workers that worked for a salary.

were paid/compensated.

What is certain is that the workforce was highly organized and managed to the highest level by following an organized and planned process that consisted of three phases.

What is certain is that I'm not going to buy her a new school bag!

I'm certainly not going to buy her a new school bag!

How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 3 of 3 — Edited



labor, and another [illegible] suggests they were built by tens of thousands of free skilled workers that worked for a salary.

were paid/compensated.

group of people who work in a country, company

What is certain is that the workforce was highly organized and managed to the highest level by following an organized and planned process that consisted of three phases.

What is certain is that I'm not going to buy her a new school bag!

I'm certainly not going to buy her a new school bag!

How Were the Pyramids Built Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 3 of 3 — Edited



labor, and another [illegible] suggests they were built by tens of thousands of free skilled workers that worked for a salary.

were paid/compensated.

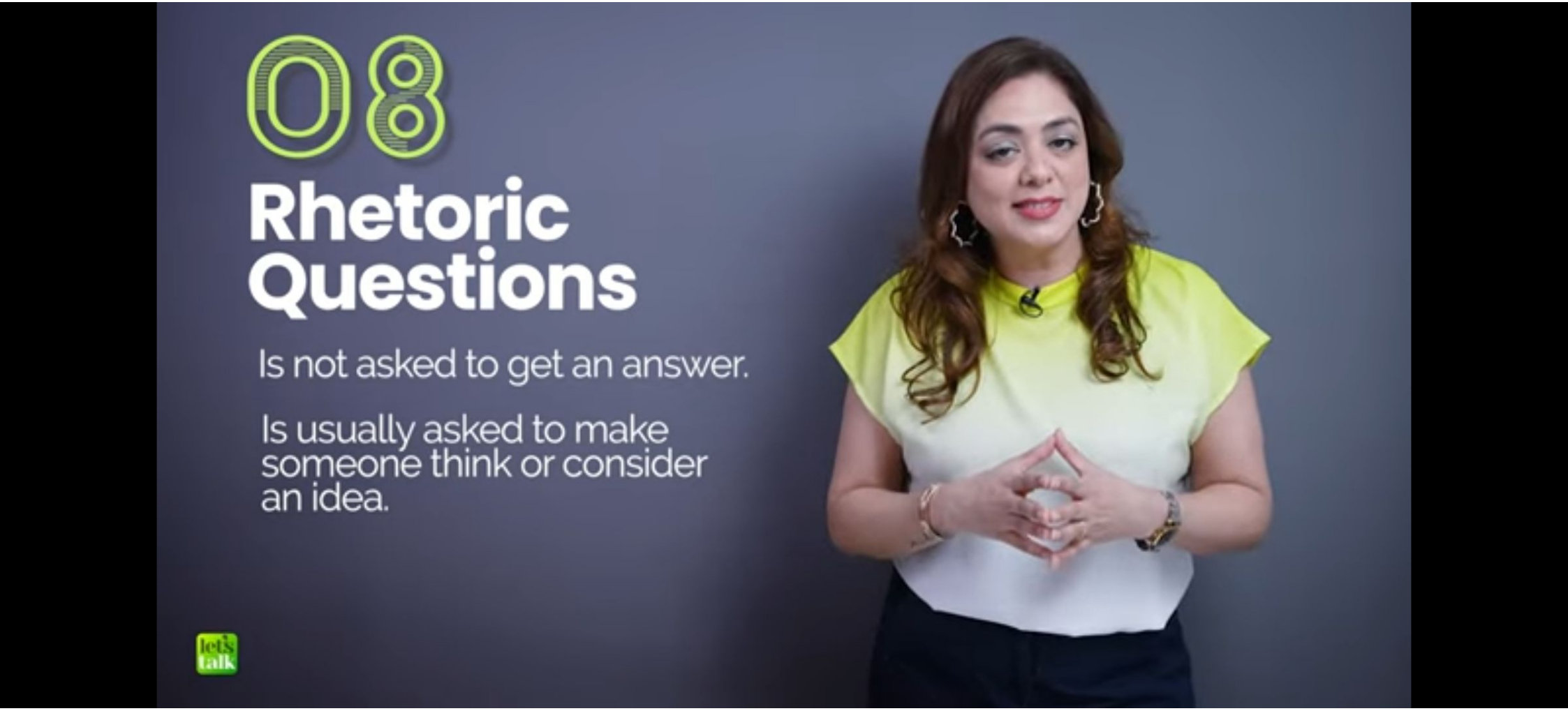
group of people who work in a country, company

What is certain is that the workforce was highly organized and managed to the highest level by following an organized and planned process that consisted of three phases.

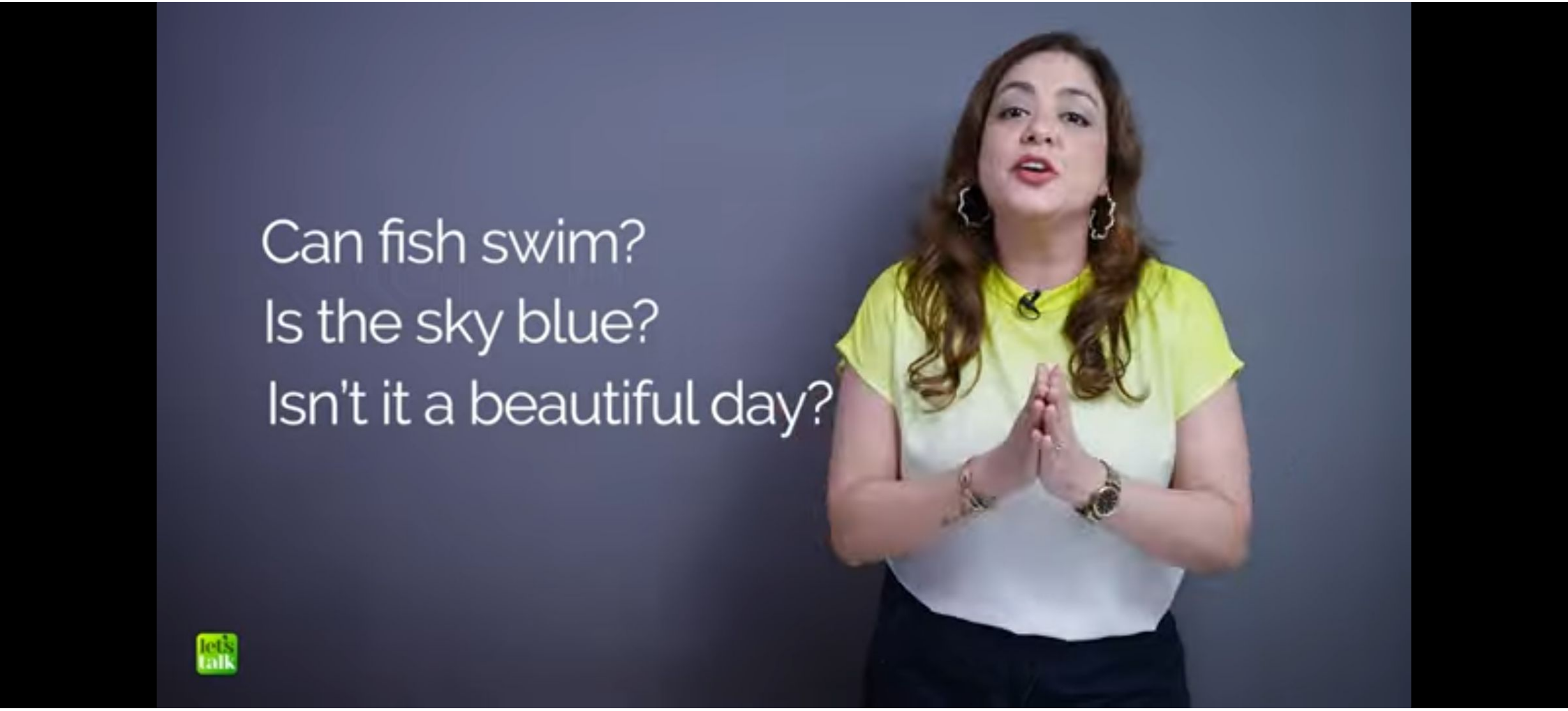
very, extremely

What is certain is that I'm not going to buy her a new school bag!

I'm certainly not going to buy her a new school bag!

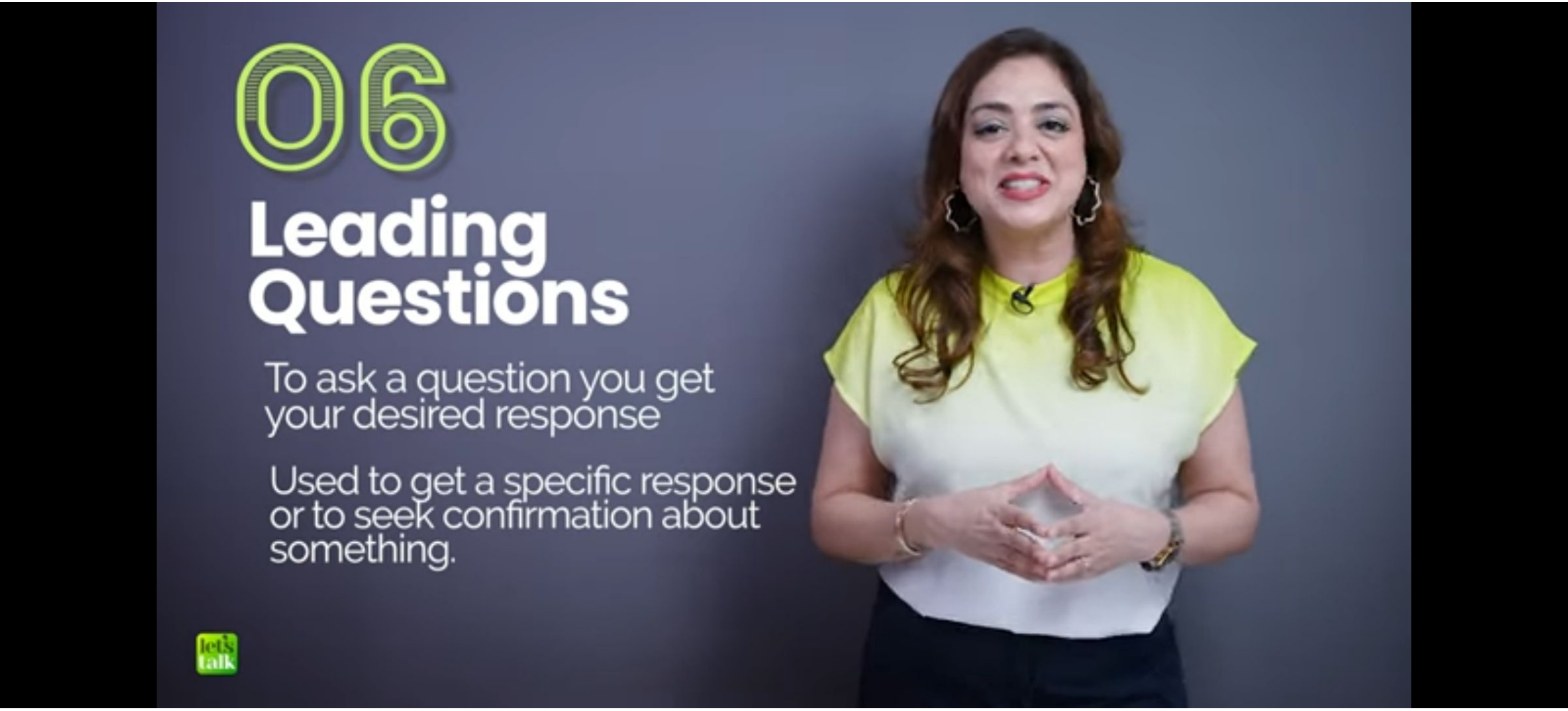

08
Rhetoric Questions
Is not asked to get an answer.
Is usually asked to make someone think or consider an idea.
let's talk


Do we live in
a free country?
let's talk


Can fish swim?
Is the sky blue?
Isn't it a beautiful day?
let's talk

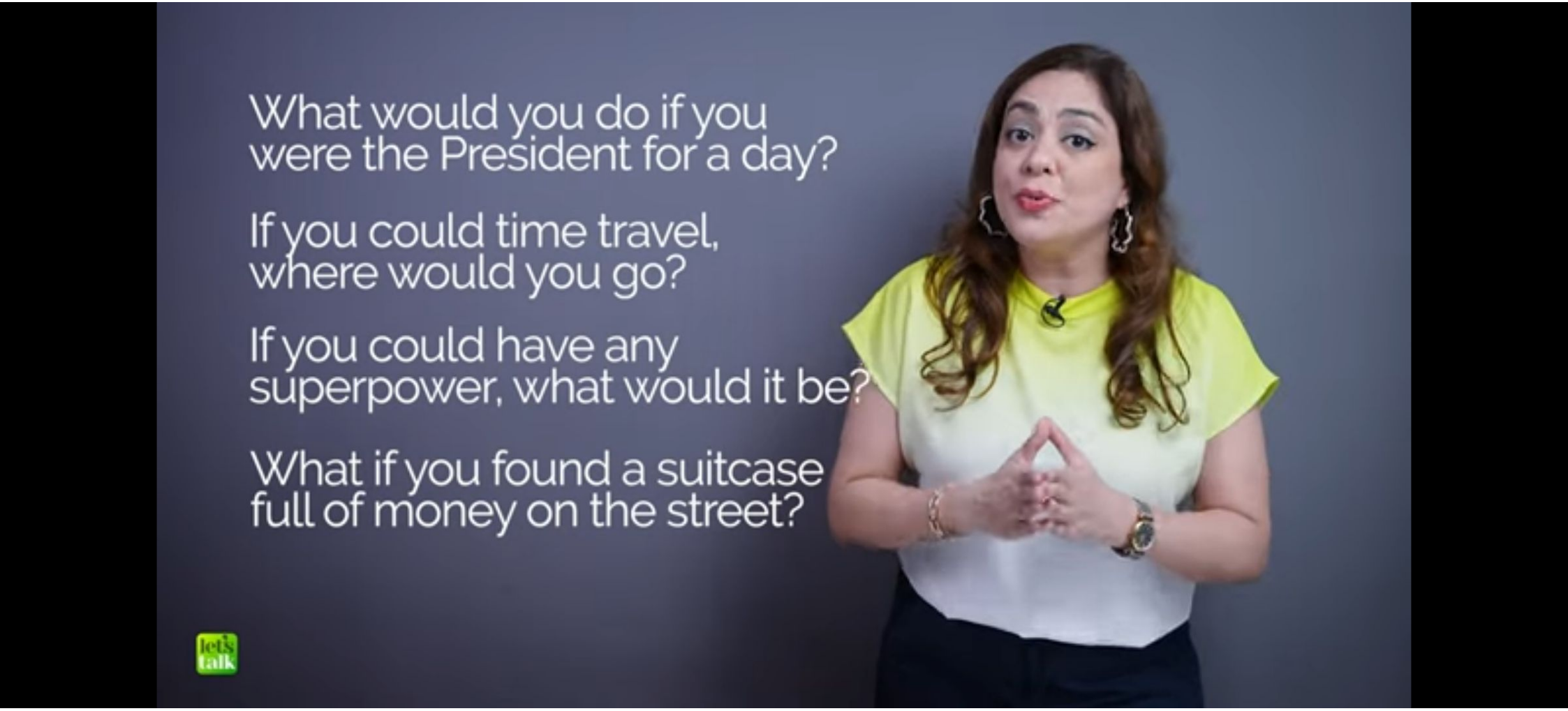

07
Intimidating Questions
They are inquiry-based questions.
They are mostly used to build pressure on someone.
let's talk


Do you really think you are qualified for this?
Do you always fail to meet deadlines?
Is that the best you can do?
Why should anyone listen to you?
Do you think this is some kind of joke?
let's talk

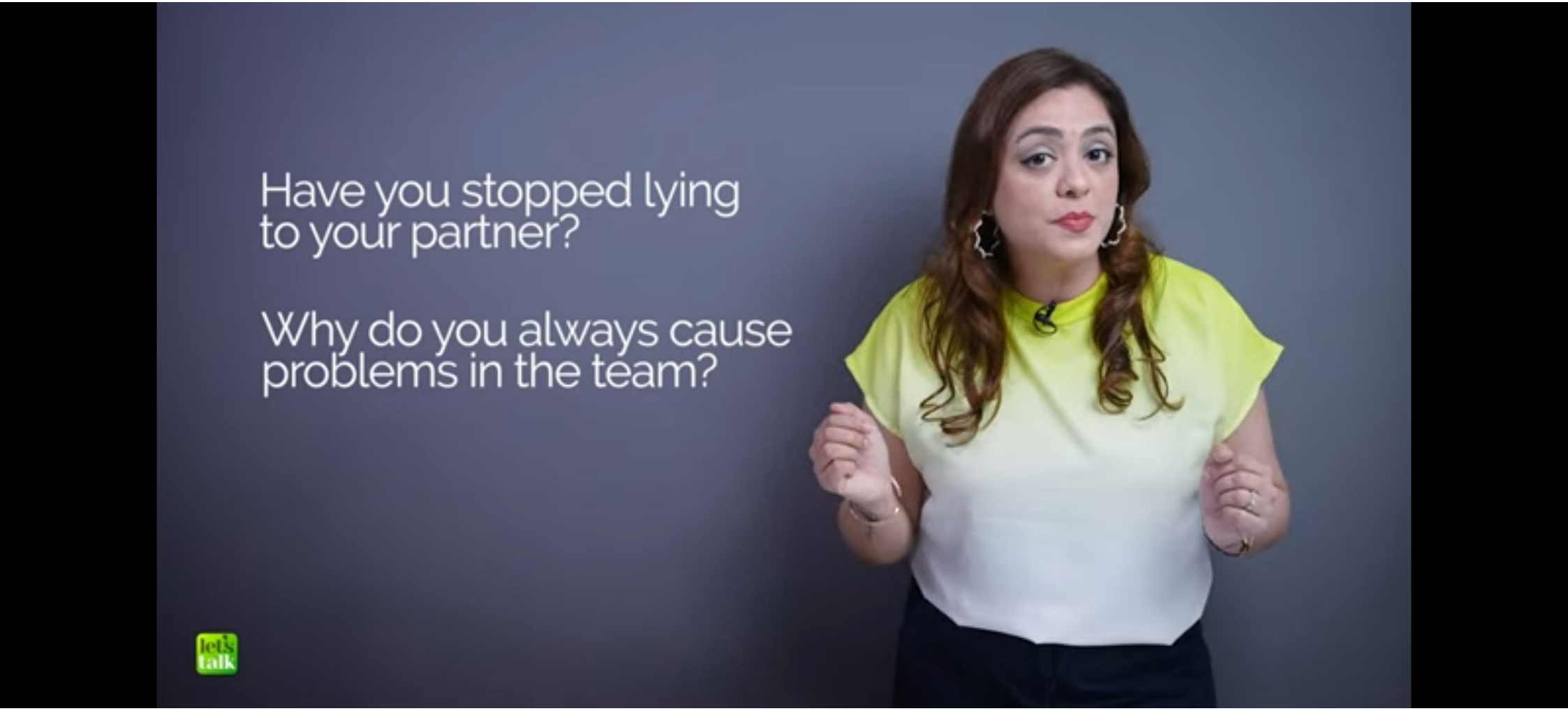

06
Leading Questions
To ask a question you get your desired response
Used to get a specific response or to seek confirmation about something.
let's talk

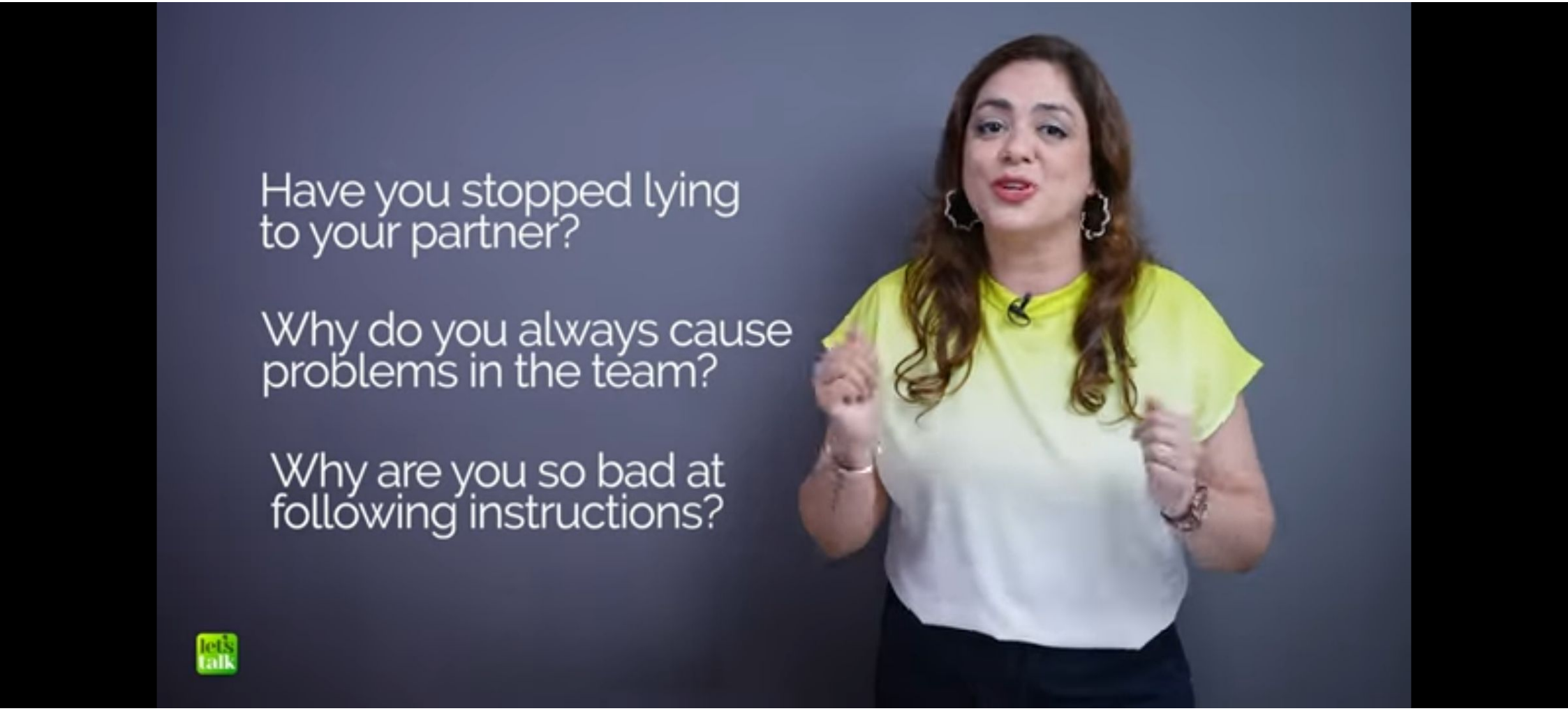

Don't you think our team is the best?
You agree that this policy is effective, right?
Wouldn't you say that was a poor decision?
Isn't it obvious that he is lying?
let's talk


05
Hypothetical questions
Inquiry-based questions to provoke someone's imagination
Also called 'ifs and buts' questions
Used to evaluate critical thinking, opinions or to explore feelings.
let's talk


What would you do if you were the President for a day?
If you could time travel, where would you go?
If you could have any superpower, what would it be?
What if you found a suitcase full of money on the street?
let's talk


04
Loaded questions
They puts the person in a difficult position to answer.
Used to make someone admit to their wrong doings.
let's talk


Have you stopped lying
to your partner?
Why do you always cause
problems in the team?
let's talk


Have you stopped lying to your partner?
Why do you always cause problems in the team?
Why are you so bad at following instructions?
let's talk


03
Convergent questions
Simple questions and have a single correct answer.
The answer to these questions is based on true facts.
let's talk

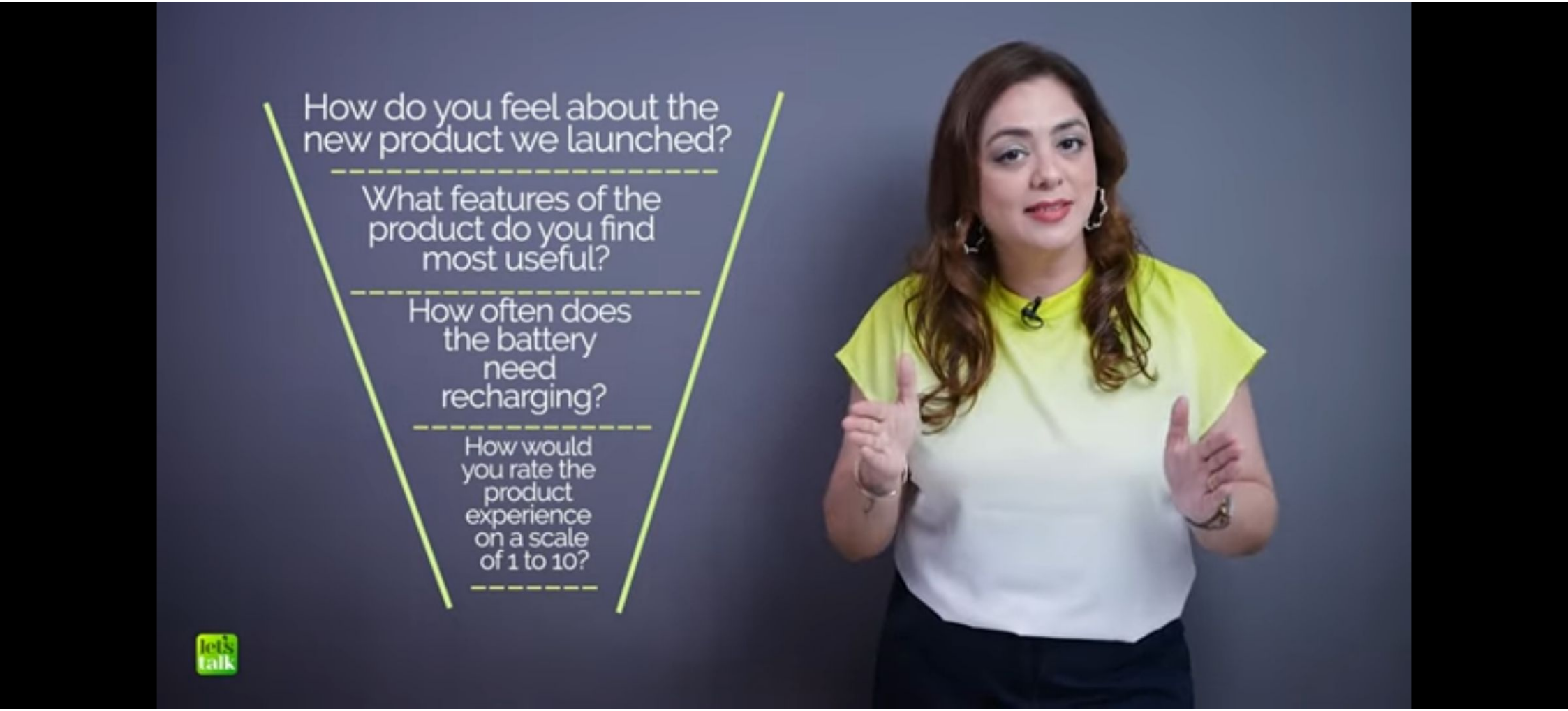

What is the chemical formula of water?
In which year did World War II end?
What is the capital of India?
let's talk


02
Divergent questions
These questions invite creative and thoughtful responses.
Mostly used in discussions and product meetings to address different viewpoints.
let's talk


How might we improve public transportation in our city?
In what ways can AI impact jobs in the next decade?
What are the different ways to resolve conflicts in a team?
let's talk


01
Funnel questions
Broad Questions
Narrow Questions
let's talk


01
Funnel questions
They are used in a job Interview.
let's talk


How do you feel about the new product we launched?
What features of the product do you find most useful?
How often does the battery need recharging?
How would you rate the product experience on a scale of 1 to 10?
let's talk

Daily Use English Sentences

कभी तो समय पे आ जाया करो।

Daily Use English Sentences

कभी तो समय पे आ जाया करो।

Do ever come on time.

Daily Use English Sentences

तुम हमेशा अपनी बात से मुकर जाते हो।

Daily Use English Sentences

तुम हमेशा अपनी बात से मुकर जाते हो।

You always go behind your word.

Daily Use English Sentences

वह फोन चलाने में मग्न है।

Daily Use English Sentences

वह फोन चलाने में मग्न है।

He is engrossed in using phone.

Daily Use English Sentences

पहले खाना खाओ, फिर फोन इस्तेमाल करो।

Daily Use English Sentences

पहले खाना खाओ, फिर फोन इस्तेमाल करो।

Eat food first, then use the phone.

Daily Use English Sentences

मुझे ठंड लग रहि है, पंखा बंद कर दो।

Daily Use English Sentences

मुझे ठंड लग रहि है, पंखा बंद कर दो।

I am feeling cold, turn off the fan.

Daily Use English Sentences

वह हर बात में मनमानी करता है।

Daily Use English Sentences

वह हर बात में मनमानी करता है।

He has his own way in everything.

Daily Use English Sentences

यही समय है नई शुरुवात का।

Daily Use English Sentences

यही समय है नई शुरुवात का।

It's time to make a new beginning.

Daily Use English Sentences

यह काम मेरे लायक नही है।

Daily Use English Sentences

यह काम मेरे लायक नही है।

This work is not suitable for me.

Daily Use English Sentences

अगर दम है तो जा कर दिखाओ।

Daily Use English Sentences

अगर दम है तो जा कर दिखाओ।

Show by going, if you have power.

Daily Use English Sentences

कभी तो मुझे बोलने दिया करो।

Daily Use English Sentences

कभी तो मुझे बोलने दिया करो।

Do ever let me speak.

Daily Use English Sentences

कृपया मेरी बातों से नाराज न होना।

Please don't get offended by what I said.

Daily Use English Sentences

मैने तुम्हारी मां से वादा किया था।

Daily Use English Sentences

मैने तुम्हारी मां से वादा किया था।

I made a promise to your mom.

Daily Use English Sentences

बिना सोचे समझे मैंने बहोत बड़ी गलती की।

Daily Use English Sentences

बिना सोचे समझे मैंने बहोत बड़ी गलती की।

I made a big mistake in the heat of the moment.

Daily Use English Sentences

मुझे शनिवार से पहले किताब वापिस देनी है।

Daily Use English Sentences

मुझे शनिवार से पहले किताब वापिस देनी है।

I have to give back the book before Saturday.

Daily Use English Sentences

तुम्हारे पैर सूज गए है क्योंकि तुम्हारे जूते बहुत छोटे है।

Daily Use English Sentences

तुम्हारे पैर सूज गए है क्योंकि तुम्हारे जूते बहुत छोटे है।

Your feet are swollen because your shoes are too small.

Daily Use English Sentences

आमतौर पर मैं घर पर खाना खाता हूं।

Daily Use English Sentences

आमतौर पर मैं घर पर खाना खाता हूं।

Usually I eat food at home.

Daily Use English Sentences

तुम्हारे साथ और कौन आया था।

Daily Use English Sentences

तुम्हारे साथ और कौन आया था।

Who else come with you.

Daily Use English Sentences

मैं उसे शक्ल से जानती हूं नाम से नही।

Daily Use English Sentences

मैं उसे शक्ल से जानती हूं नाम से नही।

I know him by face and not by name.

Daily Use English Sentences

पानी भर लो नहीं तो लाइट चली जायेगी।

Daily Use English Sentences

पानी भर लो नहीं तो लाइट चली जायेगी।

Fill the water, otherwise the light will go off.

Daily Use English Sentences

उसने कई दिनों से नहीं नहाया है।

Daily Use English Sentences

उसने कई दिनों से नहीं नहाया है।

He hasn't taken a bath for days.

Daily Use English Sentences

कभी कभी मैं जल्दी फैसला नही ले पाता।

Daily Use English Sentences

कभी कभी मैं जल्दी फैसला नही ले पाता।

Sometimes I am unable to take quick decision.

Daily Use English Sentences

मुझे लगता है कि मैंने आपको कहीं देखा है।

Daily Use English Sentences

मुझे लगता है कि मैंने आपको कहीं देखा है।

I think I have seen you somewhere.

Daily Use English Sentences

केवल चाय पीने से काम नहीं चलेगा।

Daily Use English Sentences

केवल चाय पीने से काम नहीं चलेगा।

Just having tea will not work.

Daily Use English Sentences

जब तक वह नहीं आएगा, हम नहीं जायेंगे।

Daily Use English Sentences

जब तक वह नहीं आएगा, हम नहीं जायेंगे।

Till he does not come, we will not go.

Daily Use English Sentences

यही तो मैं आपको पूछना चाहता था।

Daily Use English Sentences

यही तो मैं आपको पूछना चाहता था।

This is what I wanted to ask you.

Daily Use English Sentences

मेरे हाथ सुन्न हो गए थे।

Daily Use English Sentences

मेरे हाथ सुन्न हो गए थे।

My hands went numb.

Daily Use English Sentences

मानो या न मानो वह बहुत मेहनत करती है।

Daily Use English Sentences

मानो या न मानो वह बहुत मेहनत करती है।

Believe it or not, she works hard a lot.

Daily Use English Sentences

सरकार को इन नियमों को खत्म करना चाहीए।

Daily Use English Sentences

सरकार को इन नियमों को खत्म करना चाहीए।

The government should do away with these regulations.

Daily Use English Sentences

उसने मुझे उन गुंडों से बचाने में अपनी जान खतरे में डाल दी।

Daily Use English Sentences

उसने मुझे उन गुंडों से बचाने में अपनी जान खतरे में डाल दी।

He risked his life to help me get rid of those hooligans.

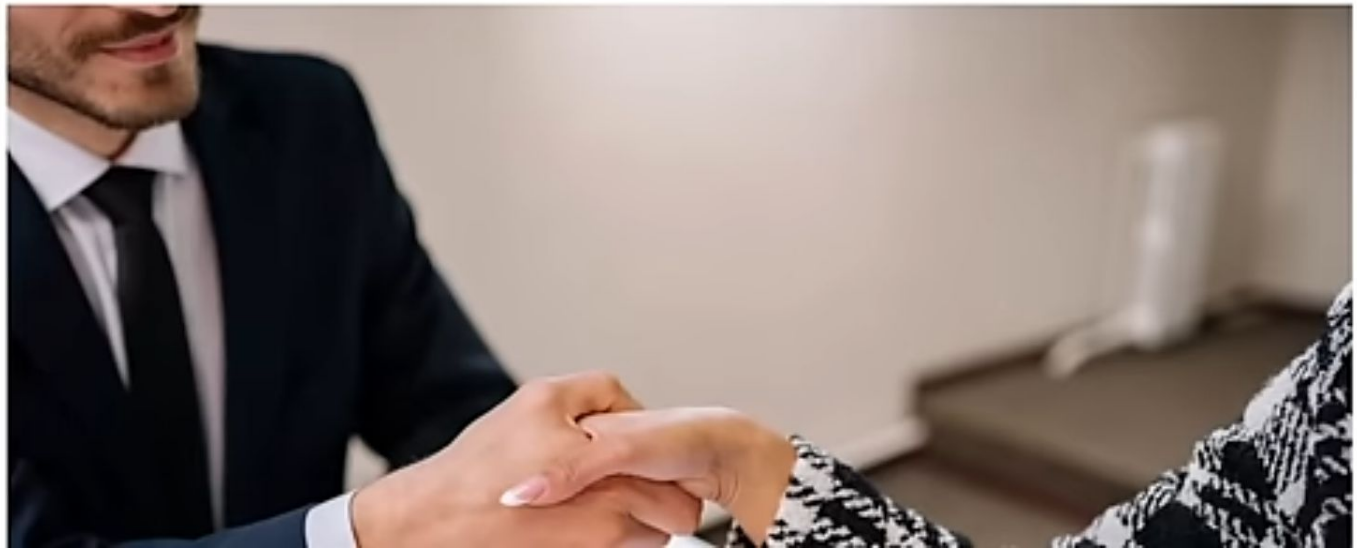
Negotiate a Job Offer Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 1 of 3 — Edited



Do you have a job offer?
Have you got a job offer?

4:04

Got a job offer? Now it's time to negotiate.

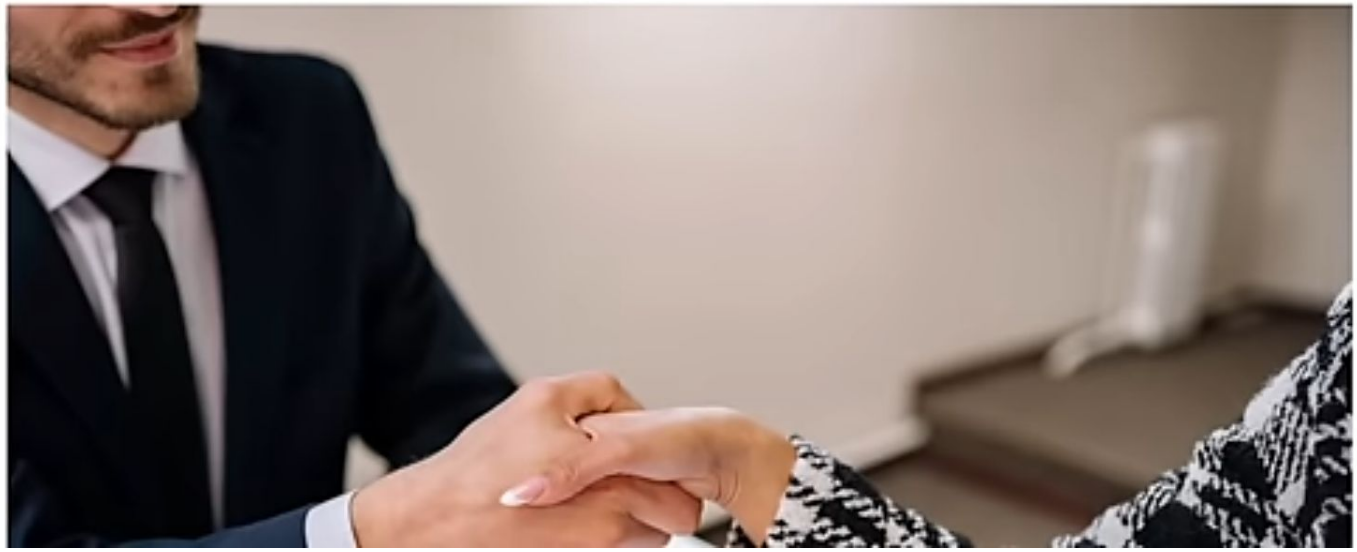


Negotiate a Job Offer Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 1 of 3



3:38

Got a job offer? Now it's time to negotiate.



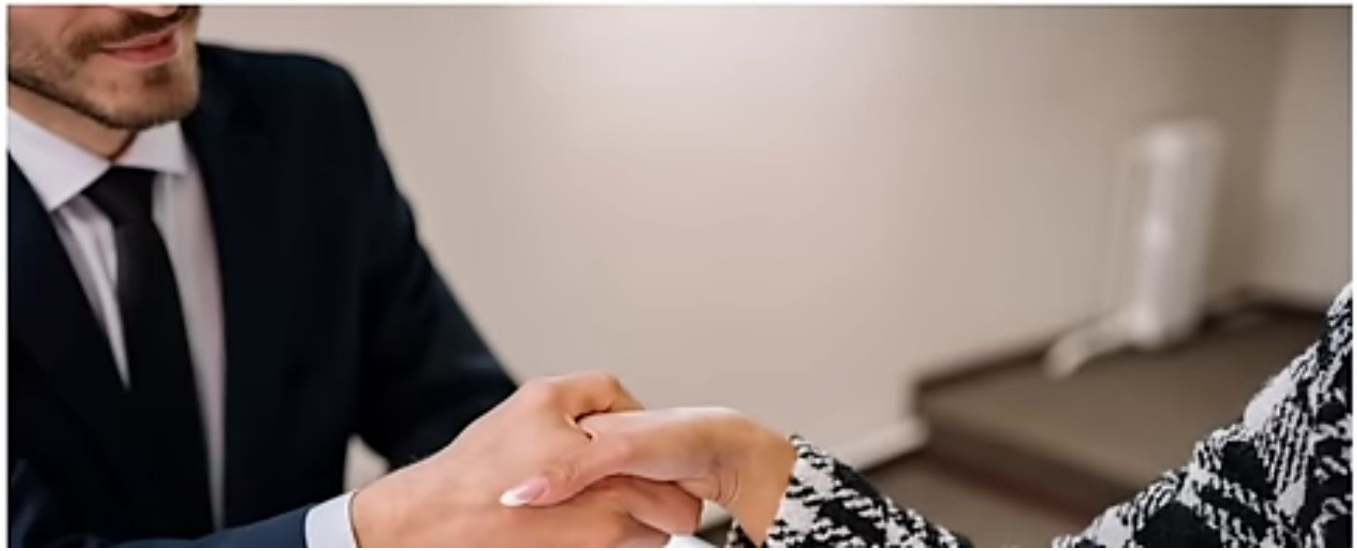
Negotiate a Job Offer Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 1 of 3 — Edited



Do you have a job offer?
Have you got a job offer?

3:56

Got a job offer? Now it's time to negotiate.



Negotiate a Job Offer Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 1 of 3 — Edited



Do you have a job offer?
Have you got a job offer?

Got a job offer? Now it's time to negotiate.

Got a sec?



Negotiate a Job Offer Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 1 of 3 — Edited



Do you have a job offer?
Have you got a job offer?

Got a job offer? Now it's time to negotiate.

Got a sec? Do you have a second (some time)?



Negotiate a Job Offer Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 1 of 3 — Edited



7:24

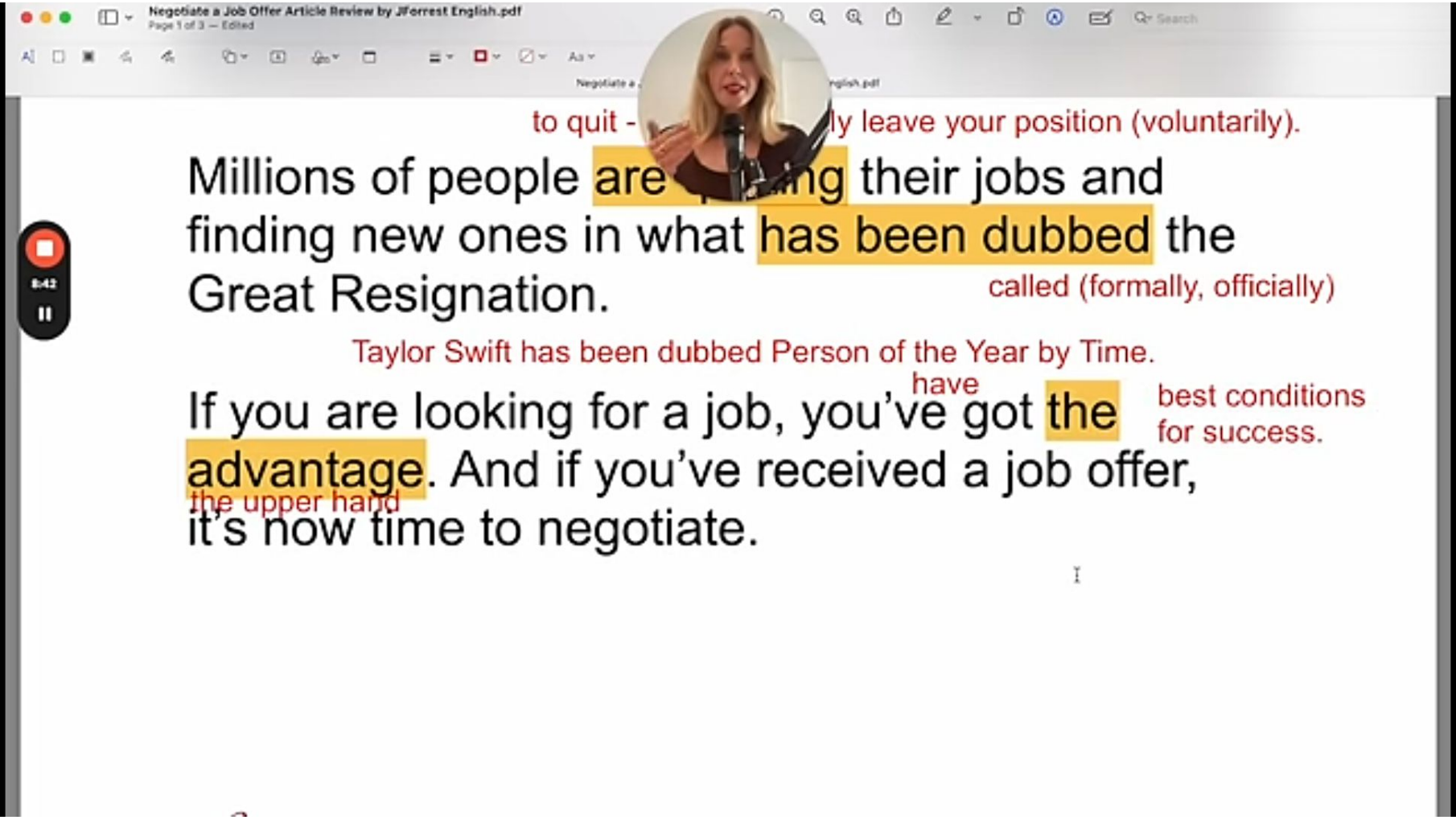
to quit - to permanently leave your position (voluntarily).

Millions of people are quitting their jobs and finding new ones in what has been dubbed the Great Resignation.

called (formally, officially)

Taylor Swift has been dubbed Person of the Year by Time.

If you are looking for a job, you've got the advantage. And if you've received a job offer, it's now time to negotiate.


Negotiate a Job Offer Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 1 of 3 — Edited
to quit - ly leave your position (voluntarily).
Millions of people are ing their jobs and finding new ones in what has been dubbed the Great Resignation.
called (formally, officially)
Taylor Swift has been dubbed Person of the Year by Time.
have
If you are looking for a job, you've got the advantage. And if you've received a job offer, it's now time to negotiate.
best conditions for success.
the upper hand
8:42

Negotiate a Job Offer Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 1 of 3 — Edited



to quit - ly leave your position (voluntarily).

Millions of people are ing their jobs and finding new ones in what has been dubbed the Great Resignation.

called (formally, officially)

Taylor Swift has been dubbed Person of the Year by Time.

have

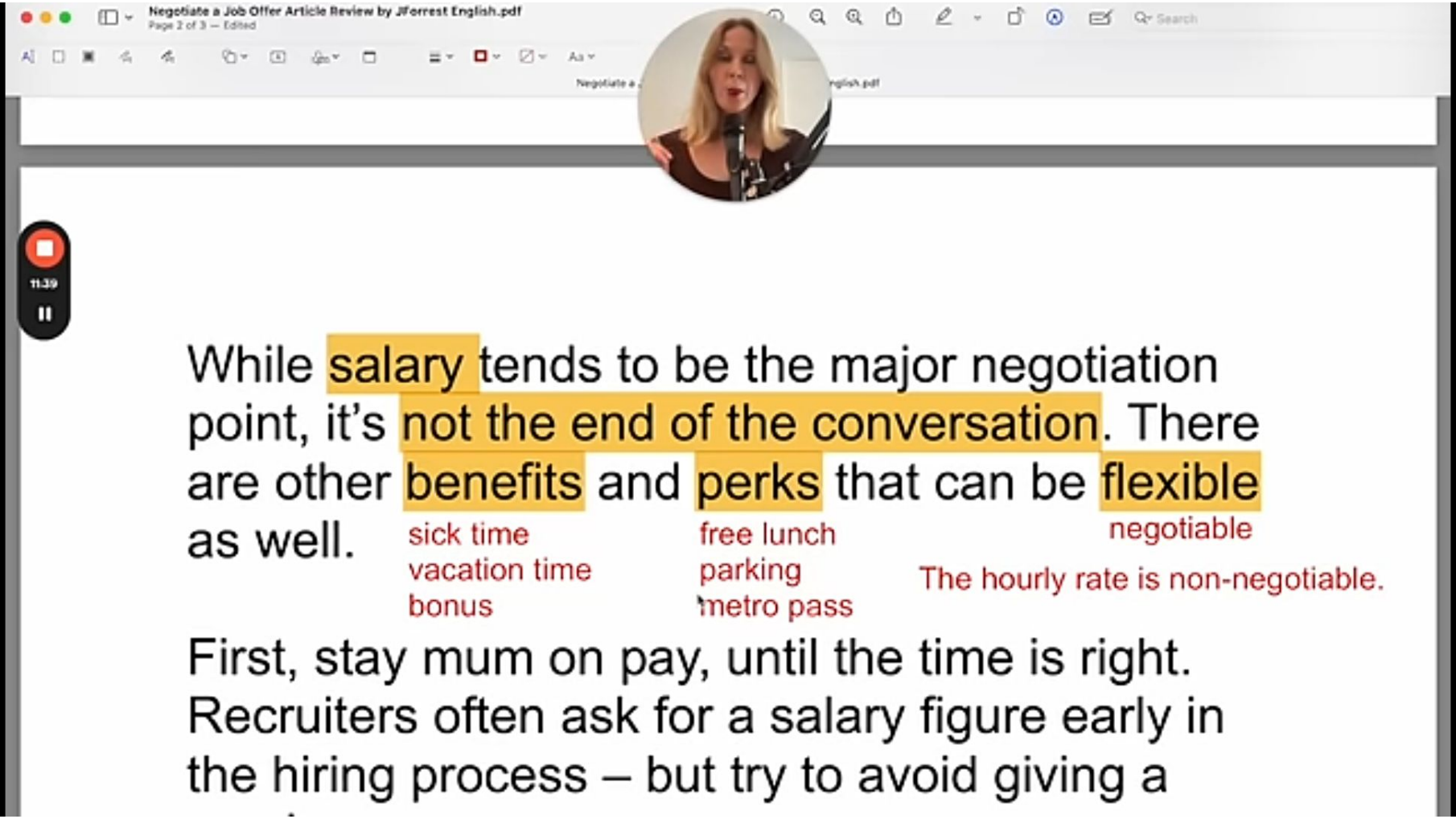
If you are looking for a job, you've got the advantage. And if you've received a job offer, it's now time to negotiate.

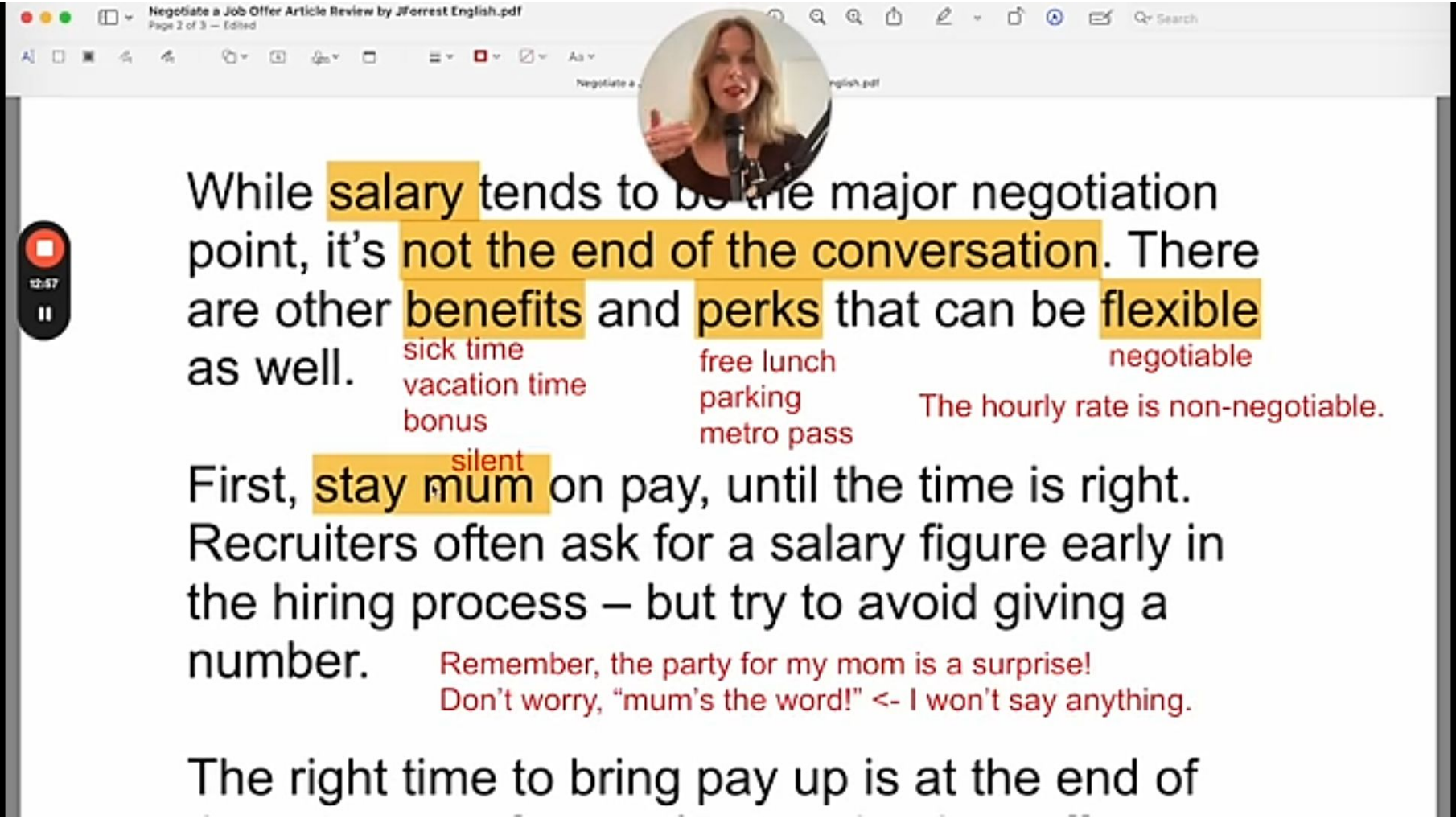
best conditions for success.

the upper hand

culturally specific

In North America, it's expected you'd negotiate a salary position ($80,000/year), but not always an hourly position ($25/hour).


Negotiate a Job Offer Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 2 of 3 — Edited
11:39
While salary tends to be the major negotiation point, it's not the end of the conversation. There are other benefits and perks that can be flexible as well.
sick time
vacation time
bonus
free lunch
parking
metro pass
negotiable
The hourly rate is non-negotiable.
First, stay mum on pay, until the time is right. Recruiters often ask for a salary figure early in the hiring process – but try to avoid giving a


Negotiate a Job Offer Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 2 of 3 — Edited
While salary tends to be the major negotiation point, it's not the end of the conversation. There are other benefits and perks that can be flexible as well.
sick time
vacation time
bonus
free lunch
parking
metro pass
negotiable
The hourly rate is non-negotiable.
First, stay mum on pay, until the time is right. Recruiters often ask for a salary figure early in the hiring process – but try to avoid giving a number.
silent
Remember, the party for my mom is a surprise!
Don't worry, "mum's the word!" <- I won't say anything.
The right time to bring pay up is at the end of

Negotiate a Job Offer Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 2 of 3 — Edited



While salary tends to be the major negotiation point, it's not the end of the conversation. There are other benefits and perks that can be flexible as well.

sick time
vacation time
bonus

free lunch
parking
metro pass

negotiable
The hourly rate is non-negotiable.

What are your salary expectations?

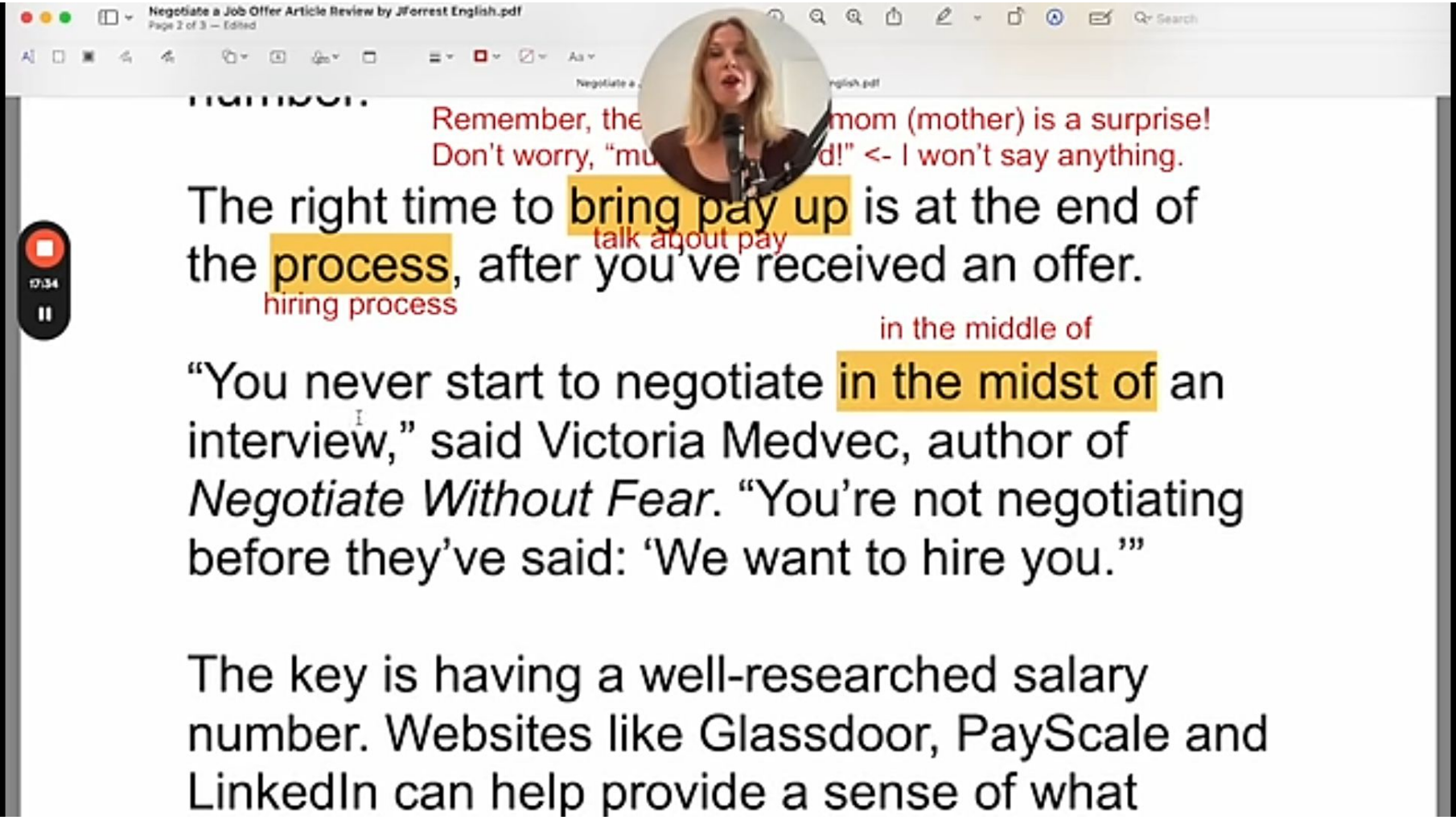
silent

First, stay mum on pay, until the time is right. Recruiters often ask for a salary figure early in the hiring process – but try to avoid giving a number.

between $50-$60K a year

Remember, the party for my mom (mother) is a surprise!
Don't worry, "mum's the word!" <- I won't say anything.

The right time to bring pay up is at the end of


Negotiate a Job Offer Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 2 of 3 — Edited
Remember, the mom (mother) is a surprise!
Don't worry, "mu d!" <- I won't say anything.
The right time to bring pay up is at the end of
talk about pay
the process, after you've received an offer.
hiring process
in the middle of
"You never start to negotiate in the midst of an
interview," said Victoria Medvec, author of
Negotiate Without Fear. "You're not negotiating
before they've said: 'We want to hire you.'"
The key is having a well-researched salary
number. Websites like Glassdoor, PayScale and
LinkedIn can help provide a sense of what

Negotiate a Job Offer Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 2 of 3 — Edited



Negotiate Without Fe u're not negotiating before they've said: 'We want to hire you.'"

to success/successfully negotiating

The key is having a well-researched salary number. Websites like Glassdoor, PayScale and LinkedIn can help provide a sense of what people in similar roles, experience levels and markets are making.

The key is having a great teacher!

JForrest English Training

www.jforrestenglish.com

Join Pace AI Today!
Click Here To Start Your Free 7-Day Trial

Negotiate a Job Offer Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 3 of 3 — Edited



general ag[illegible]ent

20:54

Once you have a consensus of what is a reasonable amount, come up with three different numbers: your wish, want and walk.

determine/establish

Wish is a high specific number you open with; *want* is the actual target, that is a little lower; and *walk* is the point in which the deal is no longer good for you – you have to set that in advance.

Negotiate a Job Offer Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 3 of 3 — Edited



Once you have a co[illegible]s of what is a reasonable amount, come up with three different numbers: your wish, want and walk.

determine/establish

not a range ($50-60K)

$58,500/year

Wish is a high specific number you open with; *want* is the actual target, that is a little lower; and *walk* is the point in which the deal is no longer good for you – you have to set that in advance.

If an annual bonus is part of your compensation package, make sure to look at the percentage

Negotiate a Job Offer Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 3 of 3 — Edited



Once you have a co[illegible] of what is a reasonable amount, come up with three different numbers: your wish, want and walk.

determine/establish

not a range ($50-60K)

$58,500/year

Wish is a high specific number you open with; *want* is the actual target, that is a little lower; and *walk* is the point in which the deal is no longer good for you – you have to set that in advance.

$56,000

The interview went well, but they only offered me $52,000, so I walked (away).

They offered me $52,000. Should I accept it? | No way, you should walk (away)!

If an annual bonus is part of your compensation package, make sure to look at the percentage

Negotiate a Job Offer Article Review by JForrest English.pdf
Page 3 of 3 — Edited



and *walk* is the point[illegible] the deal is no longer good for you – [illegible]ave to set that in advance.

The interview went well, but they only offered me $52,000, so I walked (away).

They offered me $52,000. Should I accept it? | No way, you should walk (away)!

26:49

If an annual bonus is part of your compensation package, make sure to look at the percentage and whether it's prorated based on the time you joined the company. And if a bonus isn't included in the offer, you can try to negotiate one.

calculated according to specific time allocations

$12,000/year, prorated.
Feb - $11K
July - $6K

Daily use Sentences

मुझे लगा तुम सो गई।

मुझे लगा आज तुम काम पर नहीं गए।

मुझे लगा आज तुम्हारा जन्मदिन था।

मुझे लगा आप लक्षद्वीप गए हैं?

Daily use Sentences

I thought

Daily use Sentences

I thought

मुझे लगा।

I thought – मुझे लगा।

मुझे लगा तुम सो गई।

मुझे लगा आज तुम काम पर नहीं गए।

मुझे लगा आज तुम्हारा जन्मदिन था।

मुझे लगा आप लक्षद्वीप गए हैं?

I thought – मुझे लगा।

मुझे लगा तुम सो गई।

I thought you fell asleep.

I thought – मुझे लगा।

मुझे लगा आज तुम काम पर नहीं गए।

I thought you didn't go to work today.

I thought – मुझे लगा।

मुझे लगा आज तुम्हारा जन्मदिन था।

I thought today was your birthday.

I thought – मुझे लगा।

मुझे लगा आप लक्षद्वीप गए हैं?

I thought you have been to Lakshadweep

Daily Use English Sentences

मुझे उम्मीद नहीं थी की मेरे मोबाईल की बैटरी खत्म हो जाएगी।

Daily Use English Sentences

मुझे उम्मीद नहीं थी की मेरे मोबाईल की बैटरी खत्म हो जाएगी।

I didn't anticipate that my mobile's battery would die.

Daily Use English Sentences

मेरी उससे पुरानी दुश्मनी है।

Daily Use English Sentences

मेरी उससे पुरानी दुश्मनी है।

I have bad blood with him.

Daily Use English Sentences

मैं तुमसे अकेले में बात करना चाहता हूं।

Daily Use English Sentences

मैं तुमसे अकेले में बात करना चाहता हूं।

I want to talk to you alone.

Daily Use English Sentences

क्या तुम सही में बहरे हो?

Daily Use English Sentences

क्या तुम सही में बहरे हो?

Are you really hard of hearing?

Daily Use English Sentences

आपने अपनी गरिमा खो दी है।

Daily Use English Sentences

आपने अपनी गरिमा खो दी है।

You have lost your dignity.

Daily Use English Sentences

आप उससे इस बारे में पूछ लो।

Daily Use English Sentences

आप उससे इस बारे में पूछ लो।

You ask him about this.

Daily Use English Sentences

जल्दी से कमरा खाली करो।

Daily Use English Sentences

जल्दी से कमरा खाली करो।

Vacate the room quickly.

Daily Use English Sentences

मेरा ध्यान मत भटकाओ।

Daily Use English Sentences

मेरा ध्यान मत भटकाओ।

Don't divert my attention.

Daily Use English Sentences

यह मूवी खूब चलेगी।

Daily Use English Sentences

यह मूवी खूब चलेगी।

This movie will last long.

Daily Use English Sentences

Take whichever you want.

तुम्हे जो अच्छा लगे वो ले लो।

Daily Use English Sentences

तुम्हे जो अच्छा लगे वो ले लो।

Take whichever you want.

Daily Use English Sentences

घबराने की कोई बात नहीं है।

Daily Use English Sentences

घबराने की कोई बात नहीं है।

There is nothing to worry about.

Daily Use English Sentences

आपको गरीबों की मदद करनी चाहीए।

Daily Use English Sentences

आपको गरीबों की मदद करनी चाहीए।

You must help the poor.

Daily Use English Sentences

आपसे मिलकर बहुत खुशी हुई।

Daily Use English Sentences

आपसे मिलकर बहुत खुशी हुई।

Pleased to meet you.

Daily Use English Sentences

मैं कुछ नहीं कर रहा हूं।

Daily Use English Sentences

मैं कुछ नहीं कर रहा हूं।

I am doing nothing.

Daily Use English Sentences

मुझे बहुत डर लग रहा है।

Daily Use English Sentences

मुझे बहुत डर लग रहा है।

I am getting very scared.

Daily Use English Sentences

यह गाना खूब चलेगा।

Daily Use English Sentences

यह गाना खूब चलेगा।

This song will last long.

Daily Use English Sentences

मैं बहाने दे दे कर थक गया हूं।

Daily Use English Sentences

मैं बहाने दे दे कर थक गया हूं।

I am tired of giving excuses.

Daily Use English Sentences

उससे कहो की मुझसे बात ना करे।

Daily Use English Sentences

उससे कहो की मुझसे बात ना करे।

Ask him not to talk to me.

Daily Use English Sentences

मुझे मीठा बिलकुल पसंद नहीं है।

Daily Use English Sentences

मुझे मीठा बिलकुल पसंद नहीं है।

I can't stand the sweet flavour.

Daily Use English Sentences

मेरा मज़ाक उल्टा पड़ गया।

Daily Use English Sentences

मेरा मज़ाक उल्टा पड़ गया।

My prank went wrong.

Daily Use English Sentences

मैं अपने डर पर काबू पा लूंगा।

Daily Use English Sentences

मैं अपने डर पर काबू पा लूंगा।

I will overcome my fear.

Daily Use English Sentences

मेरी सारी मेहनत पानी में चली गई।

Daily Use English Sentences

मेरी सारी मेहनत पानी में चली गई।

My all efforts went into vain.

Daily Use English Sentences

मैं तुम्हारे बारे में नहीं बोल रहा था।

Daily Use English Sentences

मैं तुम्हारे बारे में नहीं बोल रहा था।

I was not talking about you.

Daily Use English Sentences

जिसे खाना है, खाए।

Daily Use English Sentences

जिसे खाना है, खाए।

One who wants to eat, can eat.

Daily Use English Sentences

क्या सोच कर उसने ऐसा बोला?

Daily Use English Sentences

क्या सोच कर उसने ऐसा बोला?

What did he think and say?

Daily Use English Sentences

यह तो कुछ और ही लग रहा है।

Daily Use English Sentences

यह तो कुछ और ही लग रहा है।

It seems something else.

Daily Use English Sentences

चाहे जो हों मैं तुम्हारा साथ दूंगा।

Daily Use English Sentences

चाहे जो हों मैं तुम्हारा साथ दूंगा।

Come what may I'll stand by you.

Daily Use English Sentences

मुझे इस आदमी से जान पहचान है।

Daily Use English Sentences

मुझे इस आदमी से जान पहचान है।

I am acquainted with this man.

Daily Use English Sentences

मैंने तुम्हें कल ही पैसे दिए थे।

Daily Use English Sentences

मैंने तुम्हें कल ही पैसे दिए थे।

I gave you money only yesterday.

Daily Use English Sentences

कर सको तो कर लो।

Daily Use English Sentences

कर सको तो कर लो।

If you can do it then do it.

Daily Use English Sentences

बेकार के बहाने बनाना बंद करो।

Daily Use English Sentences

बेकार के बहाने बनाना बंद करो।

Stop giving lame excuses.

Daily Use English Sentences

मेरे सब्र का इम्तेहान मत लो।

Daily Use English Sentences

मेरे सब्र का इम्तेहान मत लो।

Don't test my patience.

Daily Use English Sentences

मुझे उस पर बहुत गुस्सा आता है।

Daily Use English Sentences

मुझे उस पर बहुत गुस्सा आता है।

I get very angry on her/him.

Daily Use English Sentences

मुझे ये घर बहुत अच्छा लगा।

Daily Use English Sentences

मुझे ये घर बहुत अच्छा लगा।

I found this house very good.

Daily Use English Sentences

तुम्हारे पापा का गुस्सा जायज है।

Daily Use English Sentences

तुम्हारे पापा का गुस्सा जायज है।

Your dad's anger is justified.

Daily Use English Sentences

मैं तुम्हें पहले ही बता दूंगी।

Daily Use English Sentences

मैं तुम्हें पहले ही बता दूंगी।

I will let you know beforehand.

Daily Use English Sentences

असल में उसे सब पता था।

Daily Use English Sentences

असल में उसे सब पता था।

Actually he knows everything.

Daily Use English Sentences

मुझे तुम्हारी सलाह चाहीए।

Daily Use English Sentences

मुझे तुम्हारी सलाह चाहीए।

I need your advice.

Daily Use English Sentences

कृपया मेरी स्थिति को समझने की कोशिश करे।

Daily Use English Sentences

कृपया मेरी स्थिति को समझने की कोशिश करे।

Please try to understand my situation.

Daily Use English Sentences

तुम्हारे पास ये करने का पूरा अविष्कार है।

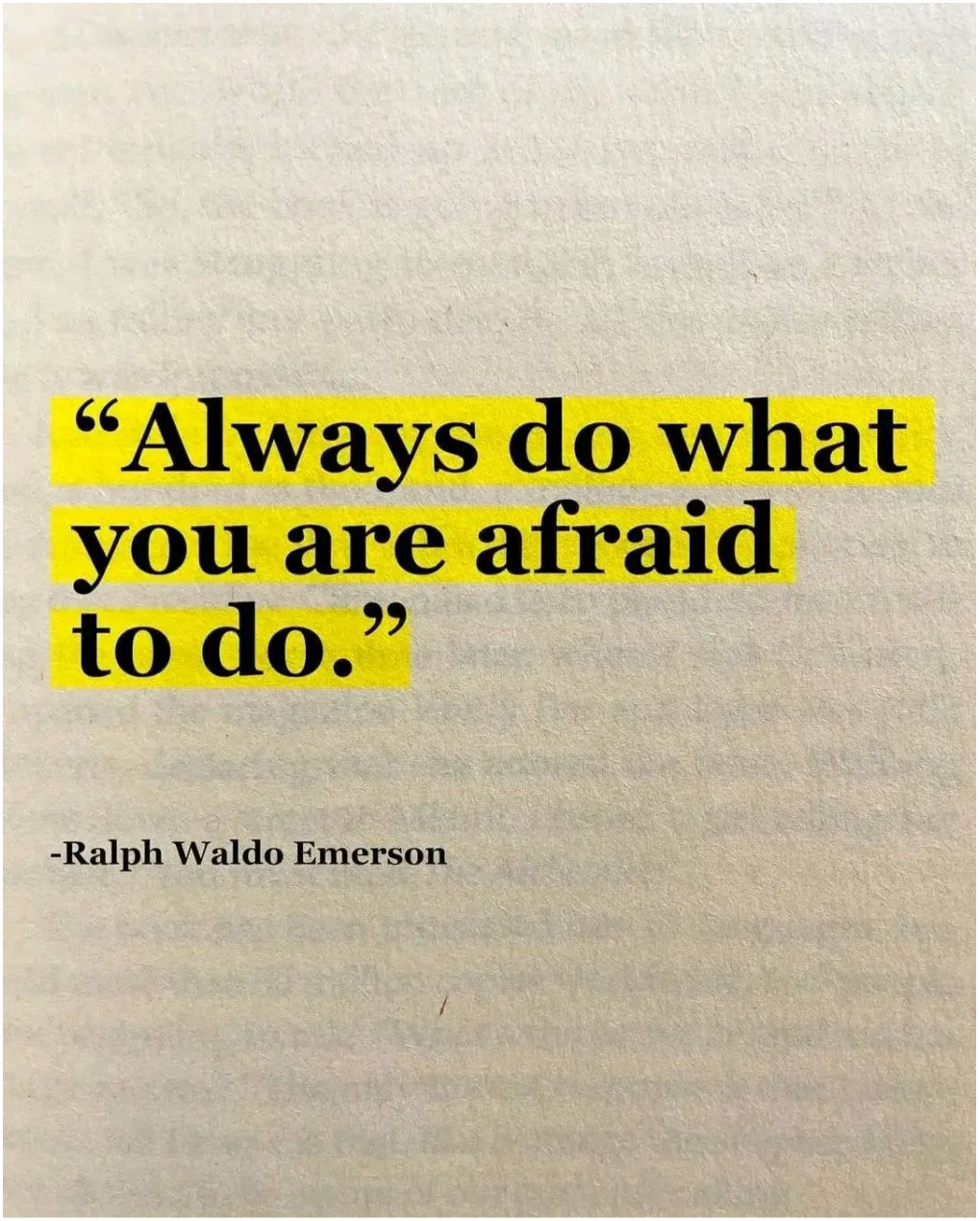
You have every right to do it.

10:35

m.facebook.com

other side of fear."

Follow **Ritradio Live** for more insightful content and amazing book reviews.



8.9K

8k 67 1k

Anjali Arora · Follow
2d ·

10:28

YouTube

All | News | Vocabulary | Debates

Latest videos

#dailyusesentences ...Read more



57 2

View all posts

Shorts

Home Shorts Subscriptions You

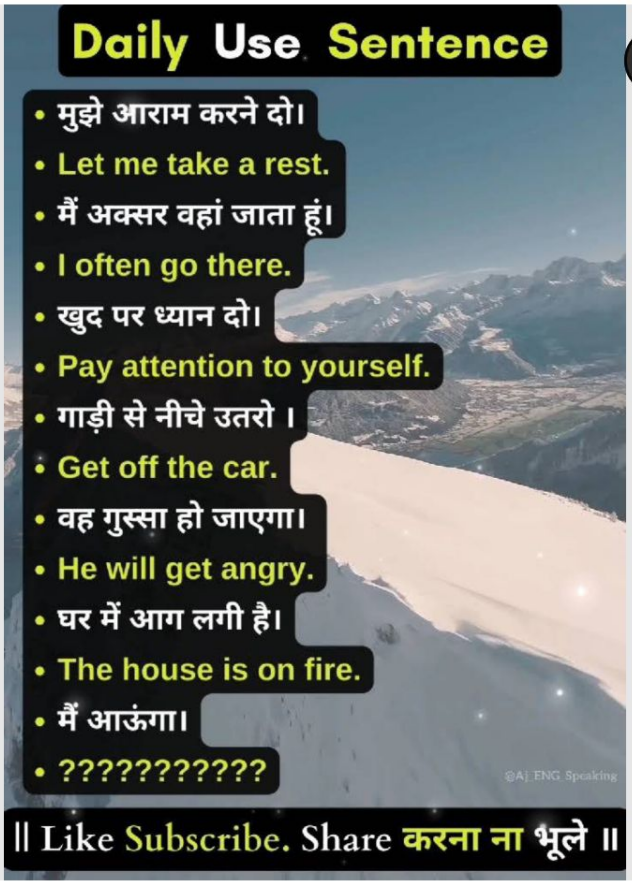
10:28

YouTube

All | News | Vocabulary | Debates

Latest videos

#dailyusesentences ...Read more



57 2

View all posts

Shorts

Home Shorts Subscriptions You

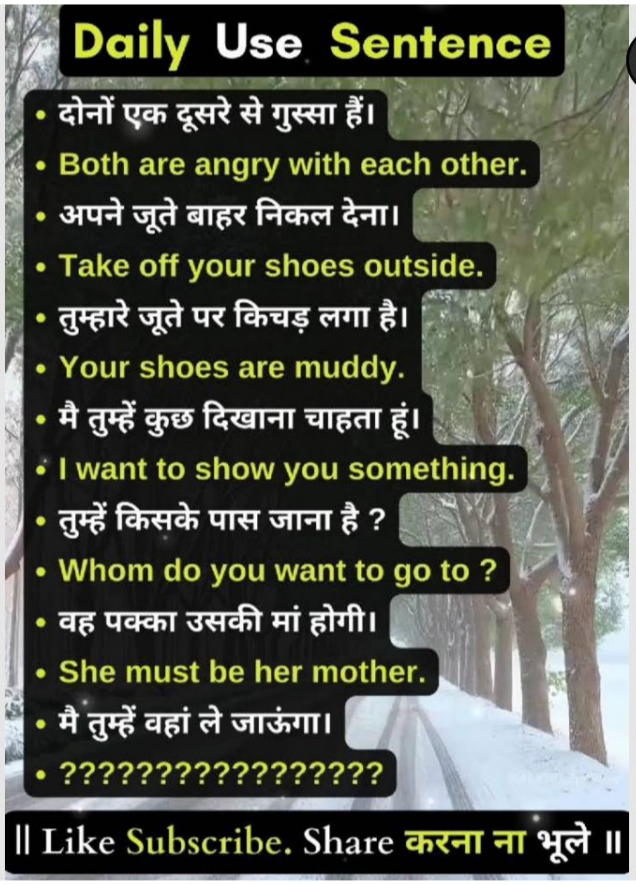
10:28

YouTube

All | News | Vocabulary | Debates

Latest videos

#dailyusesentences ...Read more



57 2

View all posts

Shorts

Home Shorts Subscriptions You

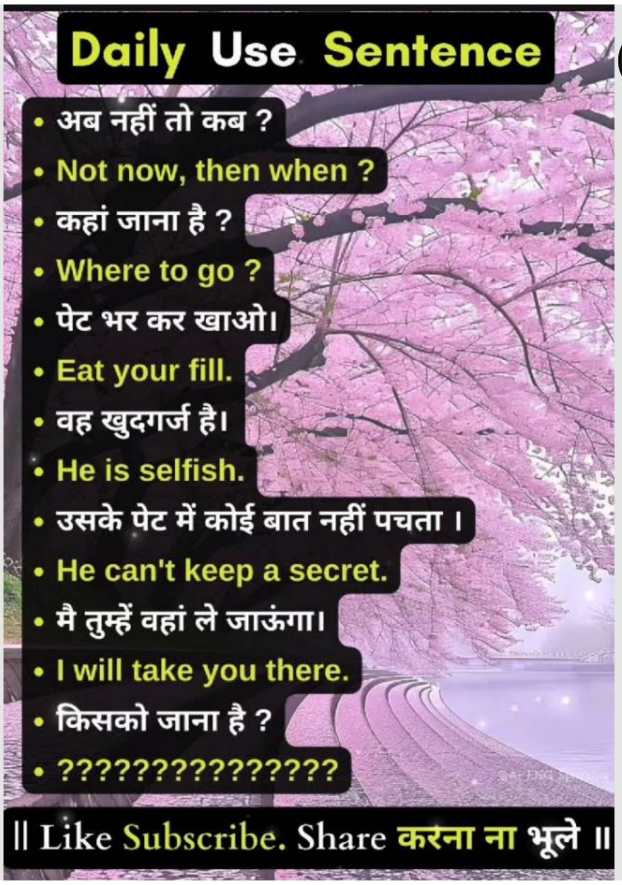
10:28

YouTube

All | News | Vocabulary | Debates

Latest videos

#dailyusesentences ...Read more



57 2

View all posts

Shorts

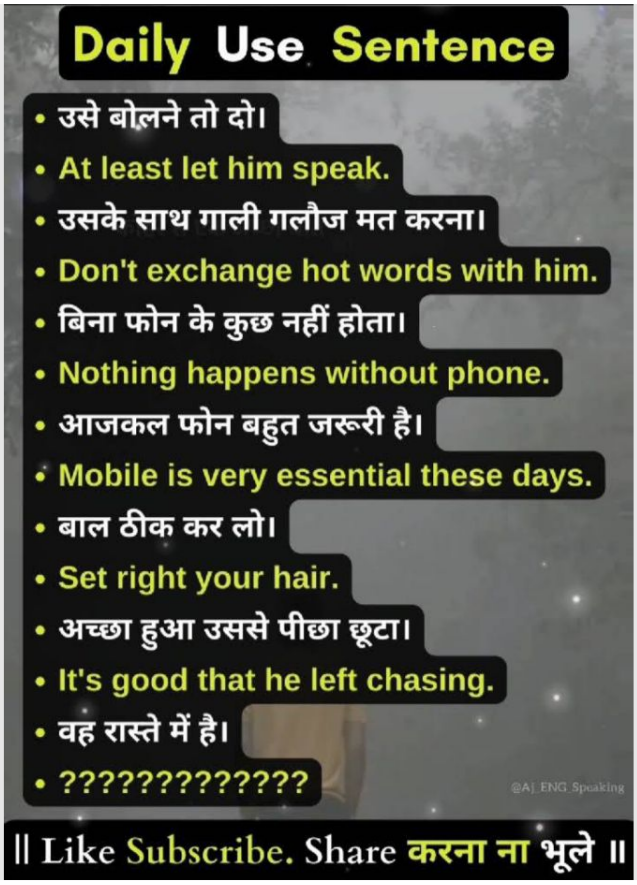
Home | Shorts | Subscriptions | You

8:55 454 KB/S 33

{AJ} ENG Speaking
1 day ago

Subscribe

रोज़ बोलेजाने वाले अंग्रेज़ी वाक्य |
#dailyusesentences ...Read more



42 5

View all posts



Home Shorts Subscriptions You

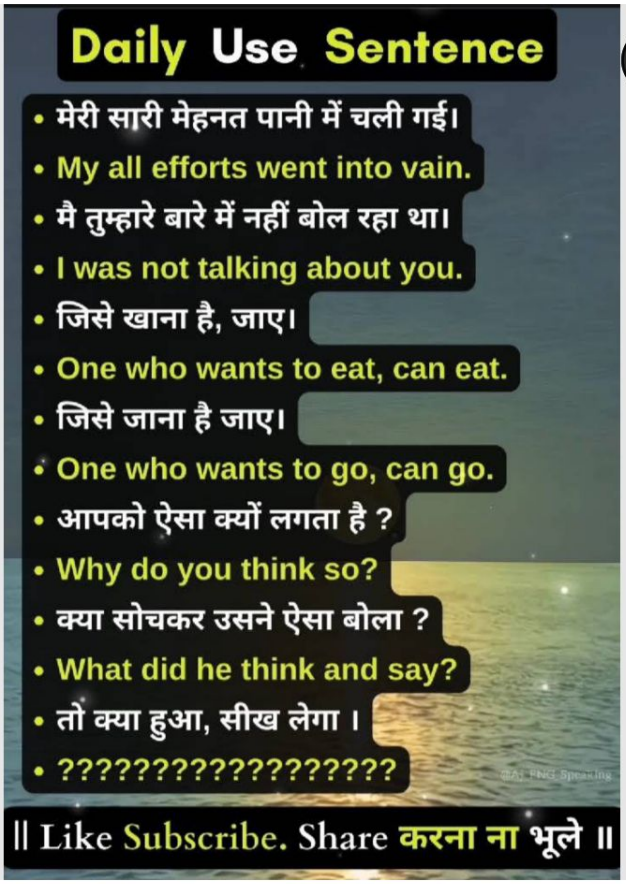
8:55 454 KB/S 33

Kamkam Bhiwal · 1.6K views · 22 hours ago

{AJ} ENG Speaking
1 day ago

Subscribe

रोज़ बोलेजाने वाले अंग्रेज़ी वाक्य |
#dailyusesentences ...Read more



42 5

View all posts



Home Shorts Subscriptions You

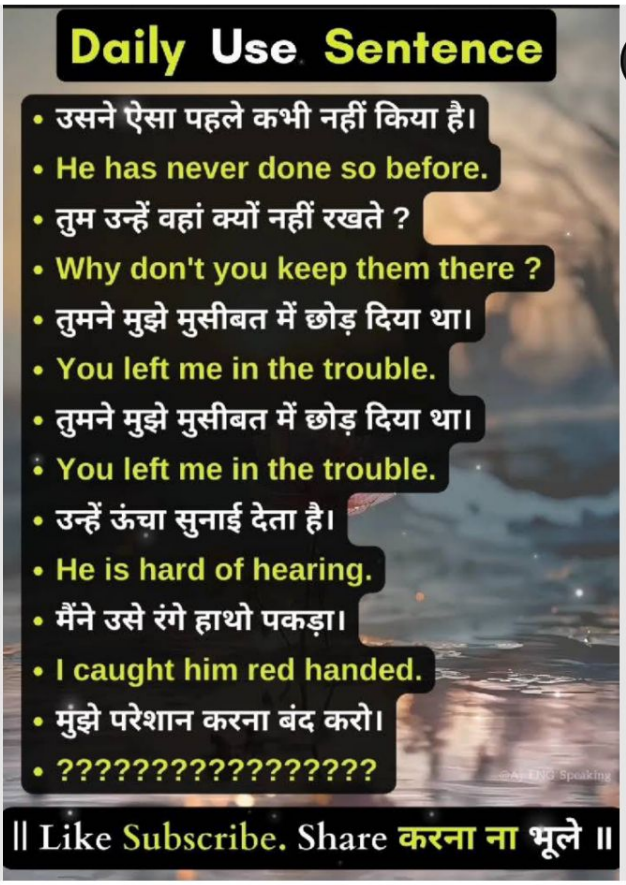
10:28

YouTube

All | News | Vocabulary | Debates

Latest videos

रोज़ बोलेजाने वाले अंग्रेज़ी वाक्य |
#dailyusesentences ...Read more





57 2

View all posts

Home Shorts Subscriptions You

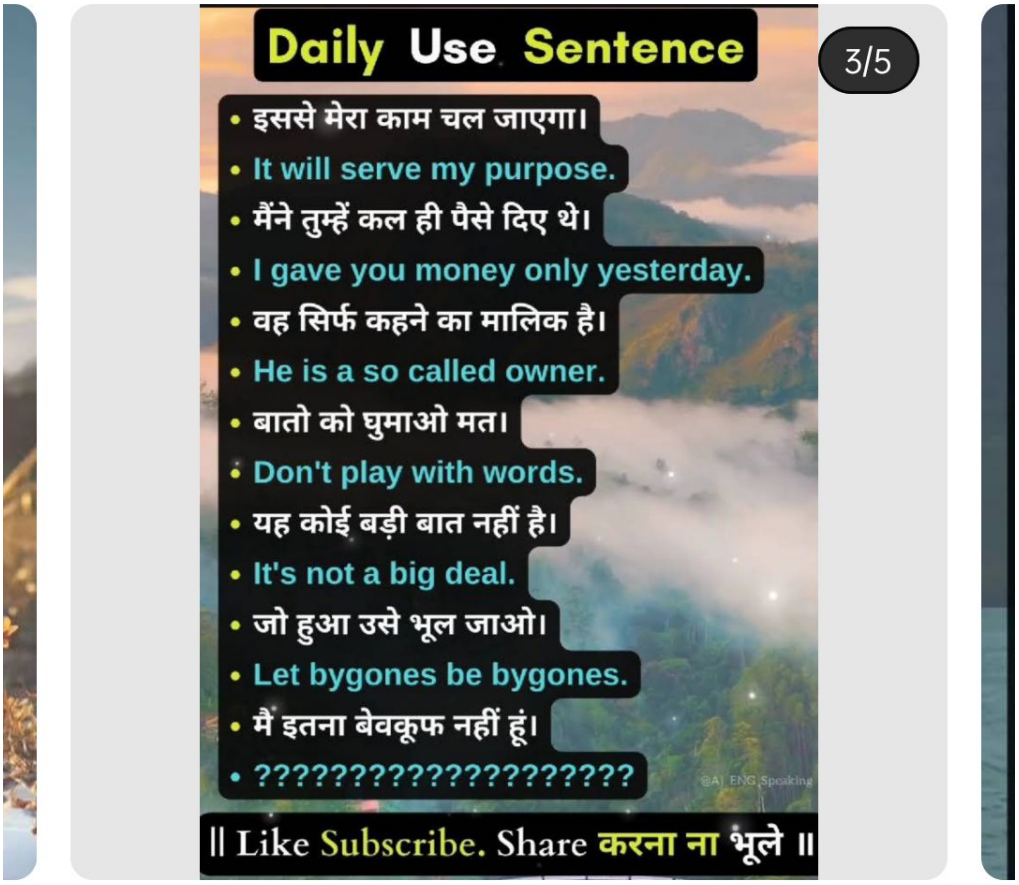
8:55 641 KB/S 33

Kamikam Bhawal · 1.6K views · 22 hours ago

{AJ} ENG Speaking
1 day ago

Subscribe

रोज़ बोलेजाने वाले अंग्रेज़ी वाक्य |
#dailyusesentences ...Read more



42 5

View all posts

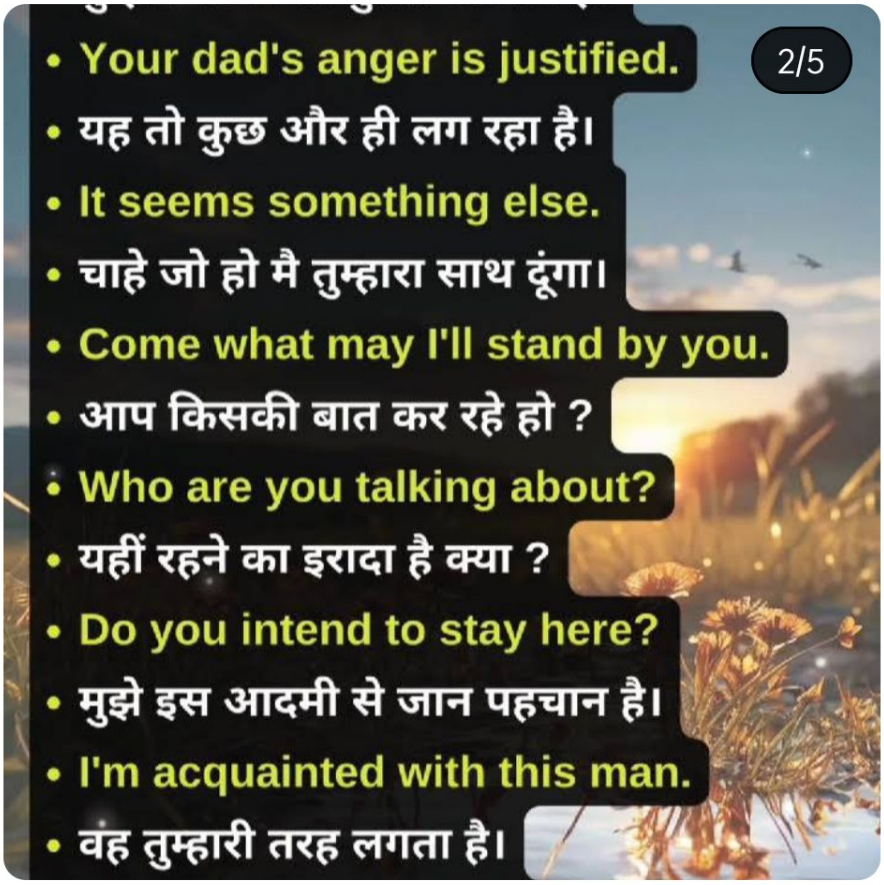


8:55 558 KB/S 33

{AJ} ENG Speaking
1 day ago

Subscribe

रोज़ बोलेजाने वाले अंग्रेज़ी वाक्य |
#dailyusesentences ...Read more



42 5

View all posts



Home Shorts Subscriptions You

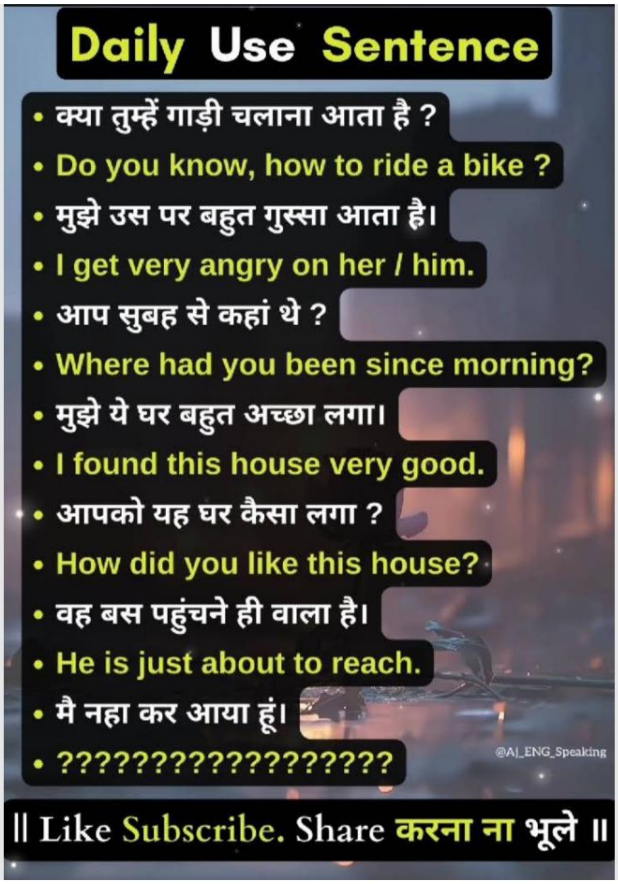
8:55 592 KB/S 33

Kamkam Bhiwal · 1.6K views · 22 hours ago

{AJ} ENG Speaking
1 day ago

Subscribe

रोज़ बोलेजाने वाले अंग्रेज़ी वाक्य |
#dailyusesentences ...Read more





42 5

View all posts



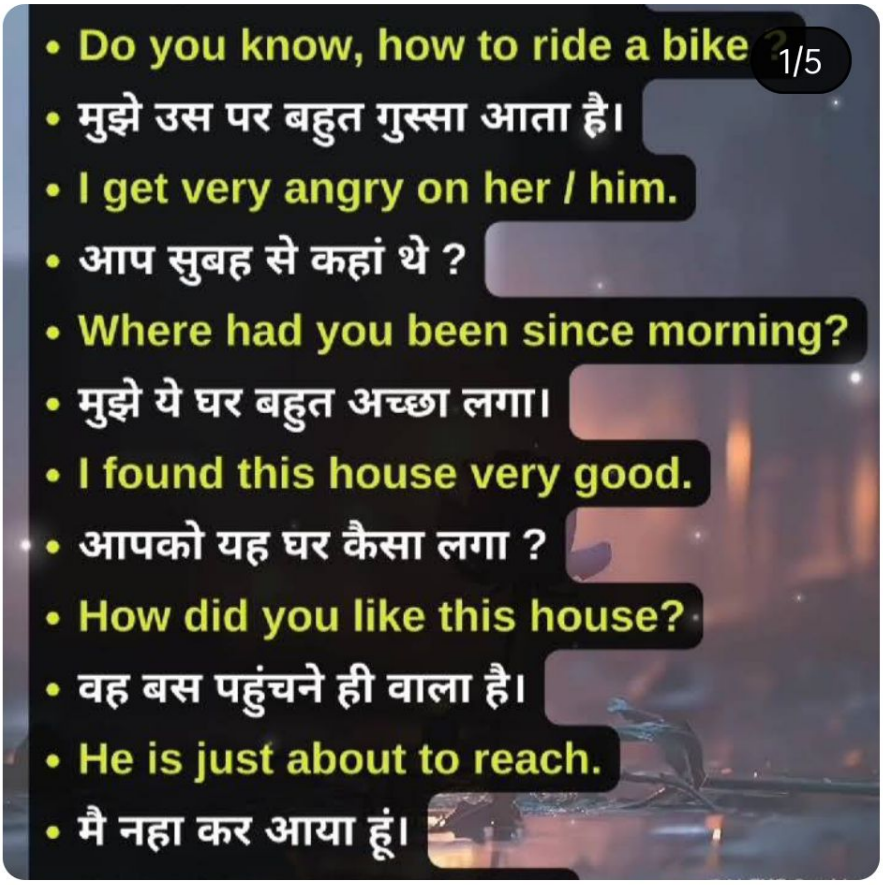
8:55 287 KB/S 33

Kamikam Bhiwal · 1.6K views · 22 hours ago

{AJ} ENG Speaking
1 day ago

Subscribe

रोज़ बोलेजाने वाले अंग्रेज़ी वाक्य |
#dailyusesentences ...Read more

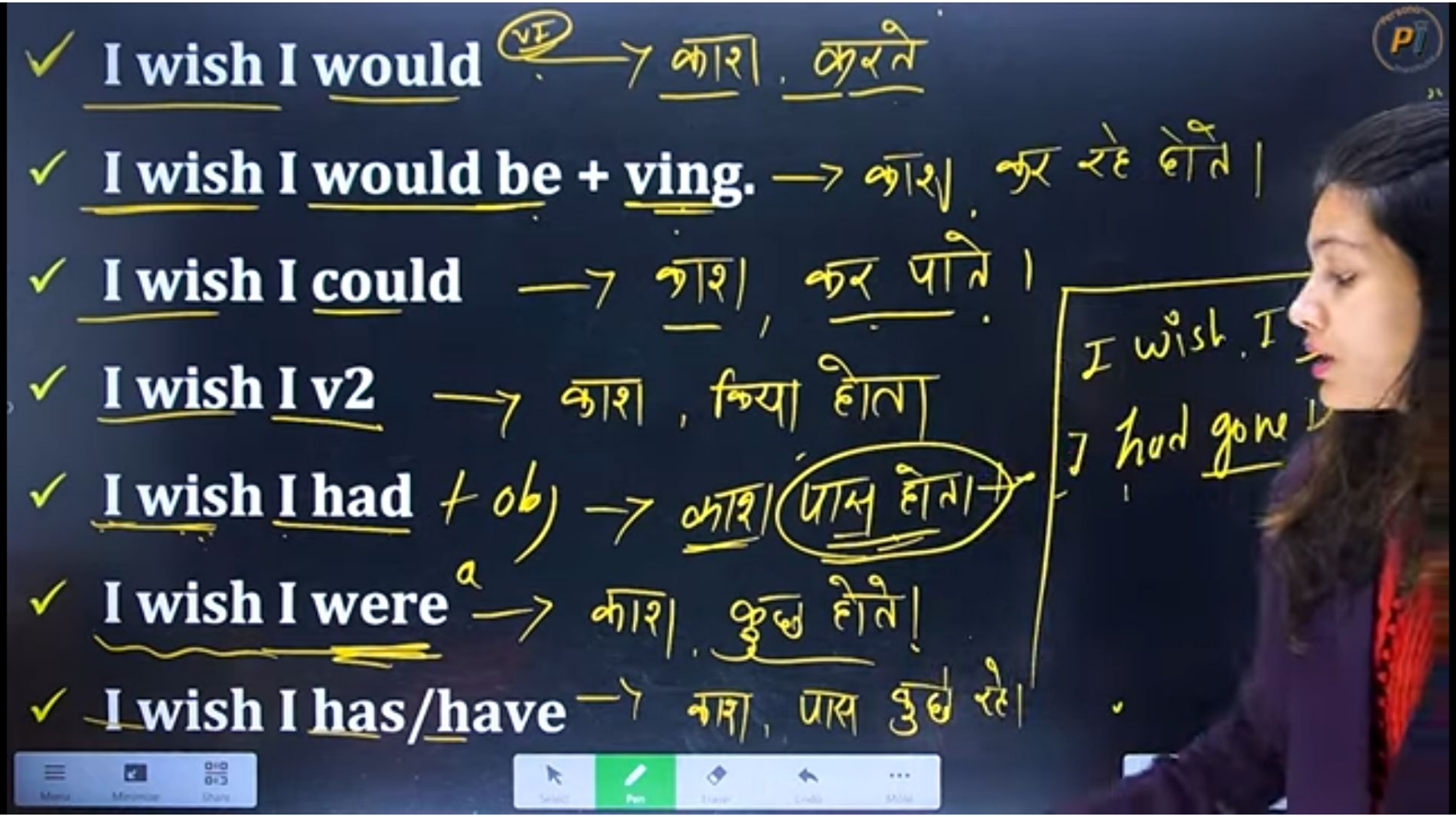




42 5

View all posts




I wish I would → काश। करते
I wish I would be + ving. → काश। कर रहे होते।
I wish I could → काश। कर पाते।
I wish I v2 → काश, किया होता
I wish I had + obj → काश। पास होता
I wish I were → काश। कुछ होते।
I wish I has/have → काश। पास कुछ रहे।
I wish I
I had gone

Daily Use English Sentences

तुम फोन में क्या देख रही हो?

What are you looking at on your phone?

Daily Use English Sentences

सोने का वक्त हो गया है।

It's time to sleep.

Daily Use English Sentences

मैं तुमसे जरुर मिलूंगा।

I will surely meet you.

Daily Use English Sentences

वह किराने की दुकान चलाता है।

He runs a grocery shop.

Daily Use English Sentences

मैं खाना खा कर आया हूं।

I have eaten the food and came.

Daily Use English Sentences

उसने बात को दबा दिया।

He hushed up the matter.

Daily Use English Sentences

सब आराम से हो गया।

Everything went smoothly.

Daily Use English Sentences

क्या तुम मेरी जासूसी कर रहि थी?

Were you spying on me?

Daily Use English Sentences

प्यार और जंग में सब जायज है।

Everything is fair in love and war.

Daily Use English Sentences

अब तुम काम से नही भाग सकते।

Now you can't shirk the work.

Daily Use English Sentences

तुम्हारी बातों में दम नही था।

Your words didn't have weight.

Daily Use English Sentences

मैं बाल कटवाने सैलून जा रहा हूं।

I am going to saloon to get my hair cut.

Daily Use English Sentences

शर्म से उसका चेहरा लाल हो रहा है।

She is blushing.

Daily Use English Sentences

मेरी नजरों से दूर हो जाओ।

Get lost of my sight.

Daily Use English Sentences

तुम्हारे पास जरा सा भी दिमाग नही है।

You don't have a bit of sense.

Daily Use English Sentences

तुम्हारे मुंह लगना ही बेकार है।

It's useless to argue with you.

Daily Use English Sentences

दोनों एक दूसरे से गुस्सा है।

Both are angry with each other.

Daily Use English Sentences

अपने जूते बाहर निकाल देना।

Take off your shoes outside.

Daily Use English Sentences

तुम्हारे जूते पर कीचड़ लगा है।

Your shoes are muddy.

Daily Use English Sentences

मैं तुम्हें कुछ दिखाना चाहता हूं।

I want to show you something.

Daily Use English Sentences

वह पक्का उसकी मां होगी।

She must be her mother.

Daily Use English Sentences

दम है तो बोल कर दिखा।

Show by speaking, if you have power.

Daily Use English Sentences

उधार मांगना बंद करो।

Stop asking for loans.

Daily Use English Sentences

कोई भी किसी के बारे में नही पूछता।

No one asks about anyone.

Daily Use English Sentences

दम है तो मार कर दिखा।

Show by beating, if you have power.

Daily Use English Sentences

मुझे उसके साथ ही रहना है अब।

I have to stay with him now.

Daily Use English Sentences

उसके साथ विश्वासघात हुआ है।

He has been betrayed.

Daily Use English Sentences

उसे किसी से मतलब नहीं है।

She has nothing to do with anyone.

Daily Use English Sentences

उसे केवल अपनी पड़ी रहती है।

She only thinks of herself.

Daily Use English Sentences

मैं अकेले बात नहीं करना चाहता।

I don't want to talk alone.

Daily Use English Sentences

मैं एक बार अपने आप को समझा लूंगा।

I will explain myself once.

Daily Use English Sentences

दम है तो छू कर दिखा।

Show by touching, if you have power.

Daily Use English Sentences

मैने किसी का क्या बिगाड़ा है?

What wrong have I done to anyone?

Daily Use English Sentences

आज कोहली पूरे जोश में है।

Kohli is on fire today.

Daily Use English Sentences

पानी गट गट के मत पियो।

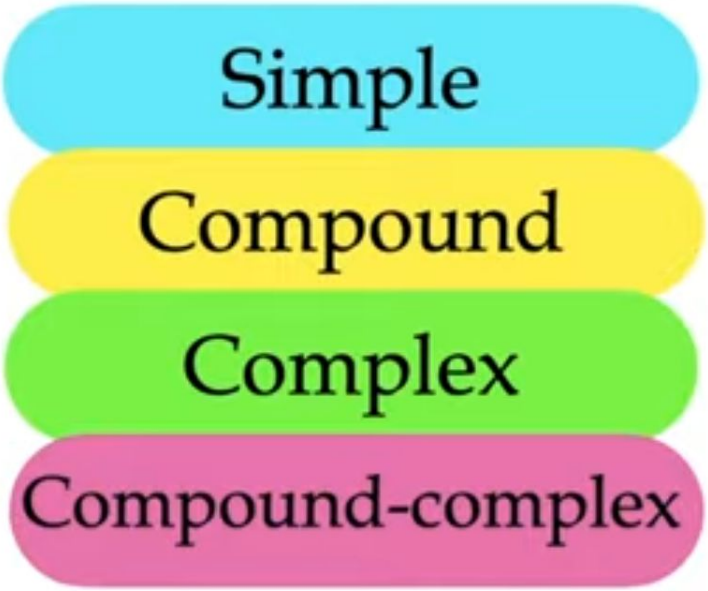
Don't drink water by chugging.

Daily Use English Sentences

उसकी जबान कैची की तरह चलती है।

She has a bitter tongue.

4 Sentence Structures



Key terminology

A clause is a group of words that functions as one part of speech and that includes a subject and a verb.

Independent clause:

A sentence that contains a **subject** and a **verb** - it can stand alone.

Example:

You will succeed.

Dependent clause:

Contains a **subject** and a **verb,** but it cannot stand alone.

Example:

If you work hard

Subordinating conjunction

Conjunctions used to **link** dependent clauses to independent clauses.

Example:

If you work hard, you will succeed.

Simple sentence

A simple sentence contains at least one complete verb. The verb must agree with the subject and show the tense of the sentence.

Sally kicks the ball.

Subject Verb

Present tense

Simple sentences

- Ben forgot his homework.
- Tom kicked the ball.
- I ate lunch.
- Emma waited for the train.

Compound sentence

A compound sentence consists of two independent clauses joined together by a coordinating conjunction (linking word).

He was hungry. **He cooked dinner.**





He was hungry, so he cooked dinner.

Compound sentence

A compound sentence consists of two independent clauses joined together by a coordinating conjunction (linking word).

He was hungry. **He cooked dinner.**



He was hungry, so he cooked dinner.

For, And, Nor, But, Or, Yet, So

Compound Sentences

- I want to lose weight, so I must eat healthy.
- She is rich, yet she is very humble.
- I'm hungry, but I don't know what to eat.

Complex sentence

A complex sentence contains an independent clause and a dependent clause.



Although the girl studied hard



she failed the exam

Complex sentence





Although the girl studied hard,
she failed the exam.

Complex sentences

- Although my friends begged me, I chose not to go to the party.
- Whenever prices are reduced, people buy more products.



Complex sentences

- Although my friends begged me, I chose not to go to the party.
- Whenever prices are reduced, people buy more products.
- Many people enjoyed the movie; however, Tim did not.



Compound-complex sentence

Contains at least two independent clauses and at least one dependent clause.

Because I worked hard, I got an A* on the test and I was so happy.

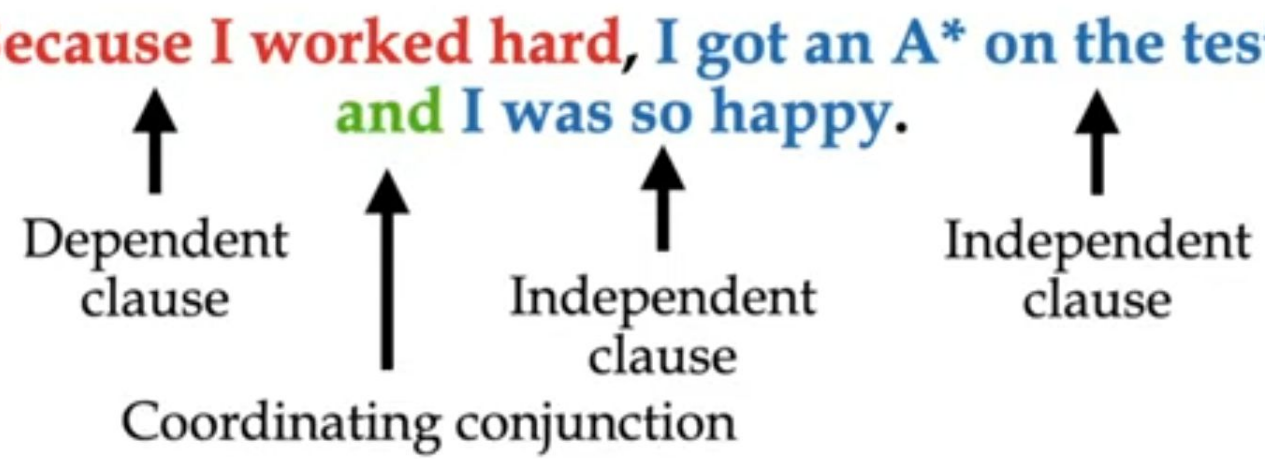
Dependent clause

Independent clause

Independent clause

Compound-complex sentence

Contains at least two independent clauses and at least one dependent clause.



Compound-complex sentences

- Though my sister doesn't agree, I am tall, and she is short.
- When I got to school, my teacher asked me to get my homework out, but I had forgotten it.
- The woman needed a new car, and she couldn't go to work until she got one.

Summary

Simple sentence: contains at least one complete verb. The verb must agree with the subject and show the tense of the sentence.

Compound sentence: consists of two independent clauses joined together by a coordinating conjunction (linking word).

Complex sentence: contains an independent clause and a dependent clause.

Compound-complex sentence: contains at least two independent clauses and at least one dependent clause.

Preposition

Ex: Lalita should wait ___on___ her ill husband

option - on / in / with / for

wait on - सेवा करना

wait for - इंतजार करना

position

Eng → Pre

Hindi → past

Ex: on table

Ex: टेबल पर

Preposition

Common (40-50)

Complex preposition

Deal - in - व्यापार

Deal - with - व्यवहार

Agree - to

Agree - with

⇒ preposition is a word which is used to establish a relation between two nouns

Some Common mistake for using preposition :-

(1) After preposition objective case is used

Ex: She has complained against Ram and I (X)

She has complained against Ram and me (✓)

(2) After preposition gerund is used

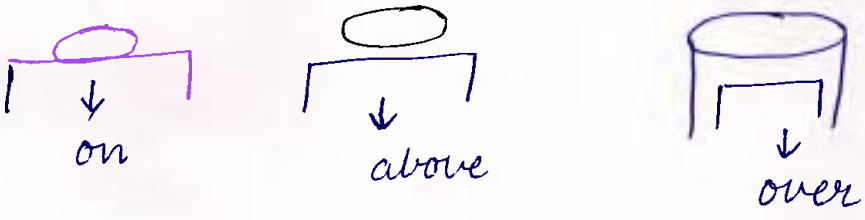
Ex: I abstain from smoke (X)

I abstain from smoking (✓)

Basic uses of preposition :-

1

on : above : over पर / उपर



Ex: (1) There is a cap on his head

(2) The coolie was carrying a bag on his head

(3) The fan is above us

(4) There is a roof over your head

(5) The Aeroplane is flying above the cloud

(6) The Aeroplane is flying over the head.

On : On is used with particular phrases

List ⇒ on a journey, on a trip, on a voyage, on a trip, on demand, on duty, on holiday, on the wall, on leave, on the phone, on the radio etc.

Above : above का use 'से ऊपर' तथा संख्या मे ज्यादा या अधिक दिखाने के लिए करते है।

Ex : His income is above 10,000 ₹ a month.

There are above 100 students in the class.

Over : over का use age, temperature का measurement, किसी place के आस पास, किसी वस्तु को ढकने के लिए, के ऊपर समुचा (पुरा) तथा period of time के अर्थ मे करते है।

Ex : (1) He is over 30.

(2) The temperature is over 20°c

(3) It is cold over here

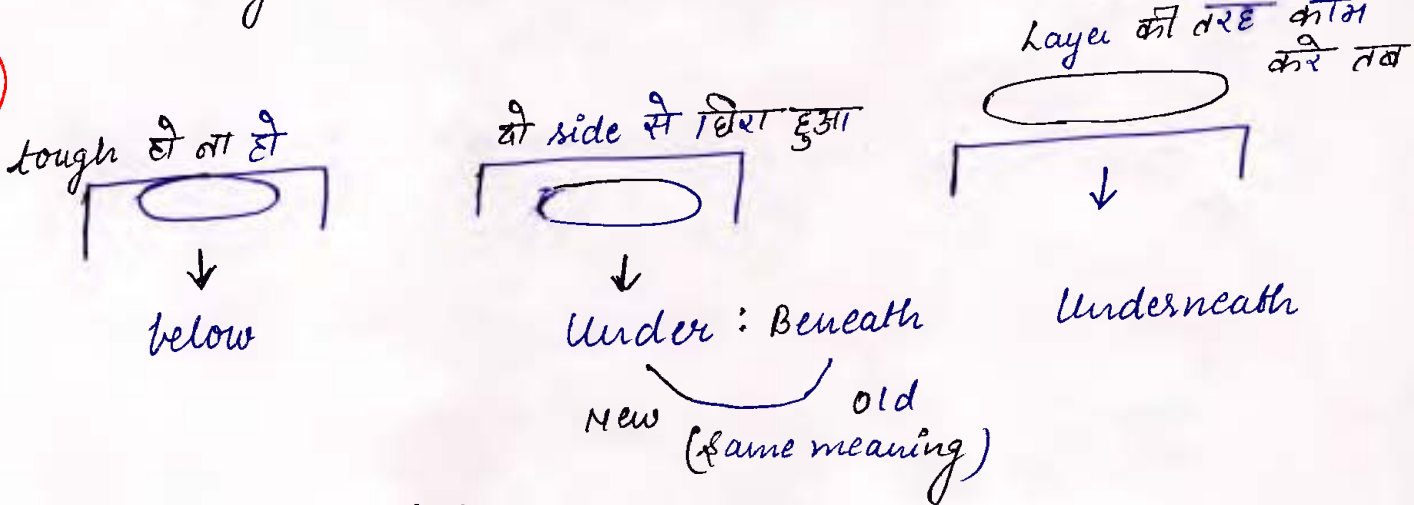
(4) The class is over at 5 P.m

(5) Please spread the cloth over the table

⇒ Over is used with the sense of more than required.

over eating, over wise, over smart, over busy etc

(2)



Ex : (1) They are below the poverty line

(2) We are below the fan

(3) The cat is sleeping under the table

(4) He is wearing a shirt underneath his coat

(5) You can see his real face hidden underneath his behaviour

Phrase: Under Age - नाबालिग

Under consideration - विचाराधीन

Under the nose of - आखों के सामने

(3) **Round** : **Around** : **Along** = किनारे किनारे

↓ motion के साथ किसी वस्तु का चक्कर लगाना

↓ (motion less)

↓ motion + motion less

Ex: (1) Sita was walking along the road

(2) There are trees along the road

(3) There are trees around the ground/garden

(4) We are sitting around the ground

(5) He is running round the ground

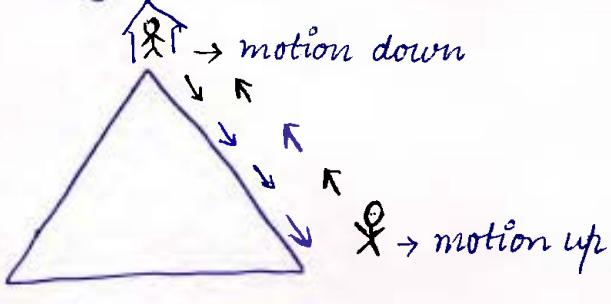
Ex: The earth moves round the sun (✓✓)

The earth moves around the sun (✓)

(4) **Up : Upon : down : up : down**

↓

(जब कोई वस्तु नीचे से थोड़ा ऊपर उठकर गति के साथ दुसरी वस्तु पर रखा जाता है तो upon)





उतार चढ़ाव

up and down

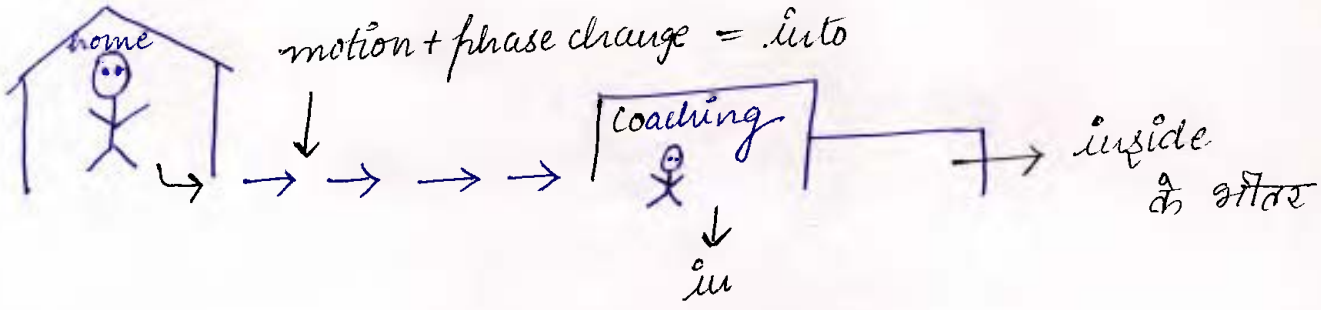
Ex: (1) The dog jumped upon the table

(2) He failed down the roof

(3) He went up the hill

(4) There are many ups and downs in our life.

(5) In : Into : Inside = में / अंदर / भीतर



Ex: (1) He came into my room

(2) The students are in the class

(3) The frog fall into the well

(4) Ram Lal is inside the hall

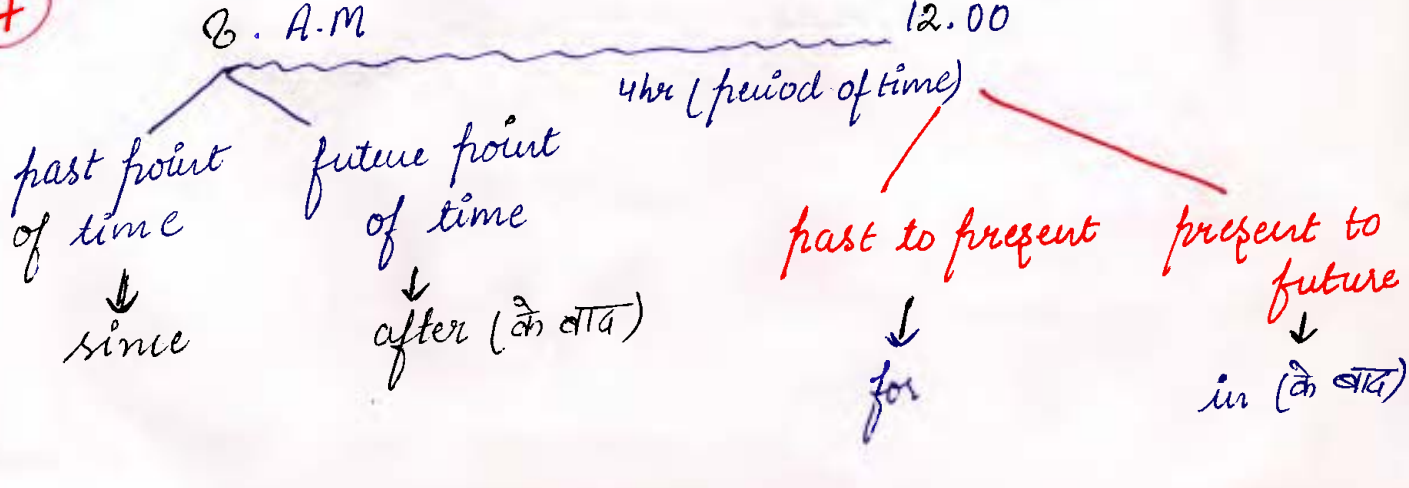
(6) In : After - in the context of time reference

After → के बाद

in → place - ~~में~~, ~~अंदर~~, भीतर

time - के बाद

(7)



Ex: (1) She will come in a month (✓)

(2) She came in a month (X) → past में 'in' का use नहीं किया जाता।

(3) She came after a month (✓)

(4) She will come after monday (✓)

(5) She will come after 9 P.m (✓)

(6) She will come ~~after~~ in a month (X)

note: After का use past में किया जाता है future में नहीं किया जाता। future में सिर्फ एक वाक्य के लिए future point of time के बाद के अर्थ में आता है।

(8) Since : For

⇒ Since + Am / Pm / morning / evening / night / midnight / birth / marry / days / name of days / months / years / sessions / name of festivals.

⇒ Since + last morning / last day / last year .....

⇒ For: For + numeral words (1, 2, 3, 4 infinitive) seconds / minutes / hours / days / months / years ....

⇒ For + the last / past + numeral words (1, 2, 3 ...) + seconds / minutes / hours / days / months / years ....

Ex: He has been absent since monday

He has been absent for 2 years

(9) To : Towards : onto : upto

To : (लक्ष्य तक)

Ex: I am going to the DSL
I am going to the station

To : (पास / नजदीक)

Ex: Come to me
go to him

To : (से) Ex: I said to Ram

To : (तक) Ex: From here to there

Towards : (लक्ष्य तक नहीं लक्ष्य की ओर)

Ex: I am coming towards you
I am going towards the station

Onto : (छलांग मार जाना / रखना motion के साथ)

Ex: The mouse jumped onto the table (✓)
↳ (आगे निकल गया)
The mouse jumped on the table (✓)
↓ (वहीं पर है)

Upto : (तक) ('0' से high level)

Ex: you will have to fine upto Rs 10,000

(10) About : लगभग / वाला - वाली / मे या के बारे मे

Ex: It is about 9 'o' clock

He is about to go

I have doubt about it

(11) After : के बाद / के पीछे

Ex: He came after 2 days

He is mad after wealth

(12) In, within : in the context of time Reference

↓ के बाद ↓ के अंदर

Ex: She will come in a weak

She will come with in a weak

(13) Ex: The principal entered into the office (X)

The principal entered the office (✓)

normally into is not used with the word enter

note: into may be used with the word enter if the sentence refer to treaty / alliance & agreement

Ex: India entered into an alliance with America

(14) Beside : Besides

↓ बगल मे / समीप / किनारे ↓ के अलावा / के अतिरिक्त

Ex: (1) My house is located beside the college

(2) He had no one besides his brother

(3) Nobody writes to me besides you.
पत्र लिखना

(11) At : On

At : It is used with particular time and hour

On : On is used with particular day and date

Ex: (1) He will come at 4 o' clock

(2) He came at noon

(3) She will come on 2nd of october

(4) I am free on Sunday

(12) Between : Among : Amongst

⇒ Between is used for two persons, places, things or animals

⇒ Where is among is used for more than 2 persons, places, things or animals

⇒ Amongst + vowel letter (us, our, etc)

Ex: (1) Radha is sitting between Seeta and Geeta

(2) The P.M is standing among the crowd

(3) The property was distributed between my two sons

(4) Distribute these books among these 15 poor students

(5) Divide the cake amongst our friend.

note: Between : (1) between may be used for more than two if the sentence refers to treaty, alliance & agreement.

Ex: (1) There is an alliance between the four company

(2) There is a treaty between three states on the Kaubery water dispute.

(2) Difference के बाद between का प्रयोग होता है न कि among का

Ex: what are the main differences between Cats dogs and cows

(3) Between के बाद आने वाले दो noun 'and' से जुड़ते है जबकि 'from' के बाद आने वाले two noun 'to' से जुड़ते है।

Ex: meet me between 6P.m to 8P.m (X)

meet me between 5P.m and 8P.m (✓)

meet me from 5P.m to 8P.m (✓)

13 At : (1) At is used with point of time

Ex: at 4'o' clock at night

(2) At is used before the name of festivals

Ex: I will go home at holy

(3) At is used before the name of village, Mohalla, block, district and small places.

Ex: I live at Sonipath

I live at Mukherjee Nagar

(14) **In:** (1) In is used before the word Mohalla, village, block, district

Ex: I live in Mohalla

I live in this district

(2) In is used before, big town, large area, state, capital, cities ....

Ex: I live in Delhi

note: जब दो places साथ हो तो तुलनात्मक रूप से छोटे के साथ at और बड़े के साथ in लगाते हैं।

Ex: I live at Delhi in India

(15) **with : By**

⇒ non living → doer

⇒ non doer → living

⇒ sense organ → तक - future time action

⇒ device → द्वारा - माध्यम

↓ instrument

↓ By bus / train / car ....

Ex: (1) we see with our eyes

(2) we should write a letter with a pen

(3) He killed a tiger with a gun

(4) Mohan is beaten by his father

(5) A man travels by bus

(6) I will come back by 5 P.m

(16) **Across :** के पार / के आस पास / एक छोर से दूसरे छोर तक

Ex: (1) I live Across the road

(2) let us swim across the river

(17) **Against :** के विरुद्ध / के विपरीत / से सटकर खड़ा होना / के सहारे खड़ा होना

Ex: (1) You should not go against law

(2) Don't lean against the door

(18) **Behind :** के पीछे / निश्चित समय से देर करके

Ex: (1) The Rajdhani Express is running behind its time

(2) The PNB Bank is behind the DSL

(19) **Beyond:** के बाहर

Ex: (1) He goes beyond limits

(2) That is beyond my reach

(3) Don't go beyonds your limits.

(20) **Through :** भर / सूराख (पूरा)

Ex: Although the life (जीवन भर)

All through the year (साल भर)

I couldn't sleeps through the night.

Ex: The bullet went through the body

The bus is passing through the tunnel.

Common errors in the use of Preposition

Rule 1: next, last, today, tomorrow, yesterday से पहले at, in, on का use नहीं होता,

Ex: I saw him on last monday (✓)

Seeta will go on tomorrow (✓)

Rule 2: Ex: China attacked at India (X)

China attacked on India (X)

China attacked upon India (X)

China attacked India (X)

Attack + [on / at / upon] X

Rule 3: Describe / discuss + (about) X

Ex: I discussed about this question with friend (✓)

Rule 4: Explain + [of / about] X

Ex: She explained about her problems to me (✓)

X

Rule 5: Order + [to / for] X

Ex: I ordered [to] my servant to clean the car (✓)

Rule 6: Reach / approach + [to] (x) + a place

Ex: She has reached ~~to~~ the station (✓)

Rule 7: Ridicule + [at / on / about] x

↓
मजाक बनाना

Ex: Some girls ridicule about him (✓)

Rule 8: Resemble + [to / with] / x

↓
के जैसा

Ex: She [resembles] [with] her mother (✓)

Rule 9: propose / Report / say / suggest + to

Ex: I said to Ram

She propose to us that we should go to the cinema

Rule 10: Advise / ask / encourage / invite / tell / bring / give / sell / send / show + to x

Ex: I gave ~~to~~ her a beautifull pen

I advised ~~to~~ him to give up smoking (✓)

Rule 11: Marry + to / with (x)

S + is / am / are / was / were + married + to + N

Ex: Ram married with Sita (x)

He is married to a girl (✓)

Rule 12: जब कोई व्यक्ति बीमारी से मरता है तो die के साथ 'of' लगाते है,

अगर बीमारी से न मरे तो 'from' लगाते है,

Ex: Raju died from over eating

He died ~~from~~ Maleria (x)

of (✓)

UTS:

HELPS

HIGHER EDUCATION LANGUAGE AND PRESENTATION SUPPORT

Grammar 1: Subject–verb agreement

Workshop objectives

This workshop will assist you in becoming familiar with the use of:

- **Countable vs. uncountable nouns**
- **Subject-verb agreement**
- **Singular vs. plural nouns**
- **Indefinite pronouns**

Countable + Uncountable

- A countable noun is one that can be expressed in plural form (e.g. essay/essays).

- An uncountable noun is one that usually cannot be expressed in a plural form (e.g. coffee).

Countable + Uncountable

Some nouns belong to both classes.

Countable: concrete and specific meaning

- I've had some *difficulties* finding relevant materials for the essay.
- The *talks* will take place in Building 1.

Uncountable: abstract and general meaning

but

- She succeeded at university with little *difficulty*.
- I dislike idle *talk*.

Countable + Uncountable

Classification:
Sometimes a usually uncountable noun (often food) can be understood as one item separate and distinct from other kinds of items from the same category.

There are several Australian *wines* to choose from
I prefer Sumatran *coffees* to Colombian.
Gardner has a theory of multiple *intelligences*.
ie. *varieties of wine, varieties of coffee, types of intelligence*

Subject-verb agreement

The way the verb is matched to the subject in terms of number (singular or plural).

There is/are…

In sentences beginning with *There is* or *There are*, the verb agrees with the noun phrase that follows it.

There *are* **many questions**.
There *is* **a question**.
There *is* **much questioning.**

Collective nouns

Collective nouns take a singular verb if they refer to a group/unit as a whole.

Collective nouns take a plural verb when the noun is referring to individuals in the group.

The committee *want* a review of the procedures. **They** *are* dissatisfied with the current ones.

Other nouns like this include **family, class, team, staff** and **company.**

Nouns ending in ‘s’

Some nouns that always end in s are uncountable and take a singular verb.

The news *is a source of information*.
Physics *was* my hardest subject.
Measles *is* highly contagious.

Some nouns that always end in s are plural (usually because they come in pairs) and take a plural verb.

These scissors *do not align*.
The trousers *are* made of wool.
My clothes are made of recycled material.

Indefinite pronouns

The words *each, each one, either, neither, everyone, everybody, anybody, anyone, nobody, somebody, someone,* and *no-one* are **singular** and require a singular verb.

Nobody *has* claimed responsibility.
Everybody *has* to pay their taxes.

but… **Any of the recommended books** *are* worth reading.

Verb+ing as subject

If the subject of a clause is a gerund (verb+ing), a singular verb is required.

Studying at university *is* a challenge for many.

And: Compound Subjects

When the subject of a sentence is composed of two or more nouns (making them joint operators of the action) connected by ***and***, use a **plural verb**.

John and I *work* on our assignments together.
Paraphrasing and summarising *are* important academic writing skills.

but…Bacon and eggs *is* a high protein breakfast. However, **it** is a dish which should be eaten in moderation.

Or: Singular or plural

When a subject contains two or more nouns joined by *or* or *nor*, the verb should agree with the part of the subject that is nearer the verb.

The book *or* the pen *is* in the drawer.

Either the doctor *or the nurses* *attend* every day.

Neither the nurses *nor* the doctor *attends* every day.

Agreement

The verb agrees with the subject (head noun).

Do not be misled by a phrase that comes between the subject and the verb.

One of the boxes *is* open.

The team captain, as well as his players, *is* anxious

The book, including all the chapters in the first section, *is* boring.

The woman with those engineers leads the conference.

Complex subjects

A noun phrase can contain two or more nouns.
The verb that follows will agree with the head noun.

A book of answers *comes* with the study guide**.**

Quantity

An amount, quantity or number thought of as a whole takes a singular verb.

Six years *is* a long time.
Three dollars *is* not much.
The number of students on the course *is* less than last year.

A plural verb highlights the individuals in the group.

A number of **students** *do* not understand the assignment question.

Proportions

With fractions, percentages and indefinite quantifiers (*all, few, many, much, some*, half, none etc.), the verb agrees with the preceding noun.

Two-thirds of the **task** *is* completed.
Two-thirds of his **articles** *are* peer-reviewed.
Fifty percent of **what he writes** *is* undocumented.
Fifty percent of the **computers** *are* iMacs.
All the **information** *is* correct.
All the **studies** *are* current.
Much of the **book** *seems* relevant to this assignment.
Many **researchers** *depend* on grants from industry.

UTS: HELPS
HIGHER EDUCATION LANGUAGE AND PRESENTATION SUPPORT

UTS:HELPS

U:Learn U:PASS U:Connect



Discover these!

- Online self-help learning resources
- Drop-in & 1:1 consultations
- Writing support sessions
- Conversations@UTS
- Intensive academic English programmes
- Daily workshops
- Volunteer programmes

www.helps.uts.edu.au

UTS: HELPS
HIGHER EDUCATION LANGUAGE AND PRESENTATION SUPPORT

UTS:HELPS

U:Learn U:PASS U:Connect



CB01.05.25

9514 9733

helps@uts.edu.au

www.helps.uts.edu.au

20 Rules of Subject Verb Agreement



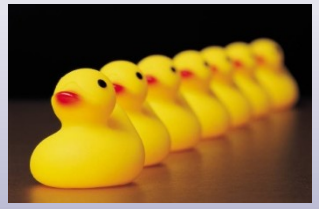
Can't we all just get along?

Suman Singh

1. Subjects and verbs must agree in number.

- Singular subject = singular verb
- Plural subject = plural verb
- Cow= singular, eats= singular
- Ducks= plural, quack= plural
- *Hint*= SVS- singular verbs have an S
- Singular yes?- the verb has an “S”!
- Singular no? The “S” has to go!





2. Don’t get confused by the words that come between the subject and verb.

The detective *who was called to the case* **is** usually very good.



3. Prepositional phrases between the subject and verb usually do not affect the agreement.



The biker *in this race* **is** very competitive.

The bikers *in this race* **are** very competitive.



4. If a sentence starts with “there” or “ here”, the subject will always be placed after the verb.



There is a ***meeting*** today.



Here are the **results** from this past month.

5. Subjects can come after the verb in questions.

- **Does** Betty always **play** with dolls?



- How **are** the Bosco sticks today?



6. If two subjects are joined by "*and*", they typically require a plural verb.

- The puppy and the lady **are** friends.



7. If two subjects are separated by "*and*" refer to the same thing, the verb is singular.

- Spaghetti and meatballs **is** my favorite pasta dish.



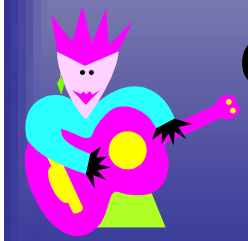
Suman Singh

8. If both subjects are singular and connected by *or*, *nor*, *neither/nor*, *either/or* and *not only/but also*, the verb is singular.



- Sally *or* Bubba **<u>has</u>** stolen the scarecrow.

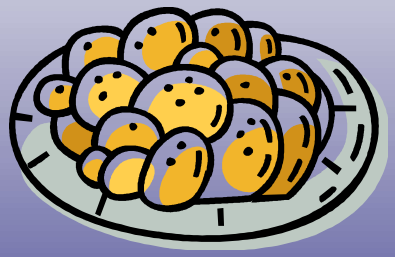
- *Not only* the guitar player *but also* the drummer **<u>was</u>** soaked with sweat.





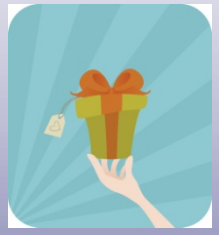
9. If both subjects are plural and connected by the words *or, nor, neither/nor, either/or,* and *not only/but also*, the verb is plural.

- Cookies or brownies **<u>are</u>** nice treats for your teacher.

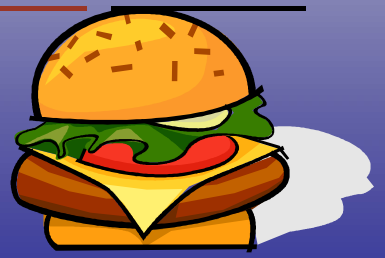


10. If one subject is singular and one plural and are connected by the words *or, nor, neither/nor, either/or,* and *not only/but also*, use the subject that is nearest the verb.

- Either my sisters or my *mom* **has** sent me a present.



- Not only Bob but also *the Smiths* **want** some hamburgers for supper.



11. Units of measurement usually use a singular verb.

- Six gallons of paint **was** used on the house.



- Five dollars **is** too much for a cup of coffee.





12. Collective nouns usually take a singular verb.

- The herd **is** stampeding.

The class **was** ready for the test.



13. Titles of books, movies, novels, etc. are treated as singular.

- *Holes* **was** one of my favorite books.I want to see the movie.

14. Two infinitives separated by *and* take a plural verb.

- To run and to read **are** my two favorite "Free-time" activities.





15. Gerunds alone take a singular verb. Gerunds linked by *and* take a plural verb.

- Dancing **is** not something everyone can do as well as I can!

16. If the words *each*, *every* or *no* come before the subject, the verb is singular.

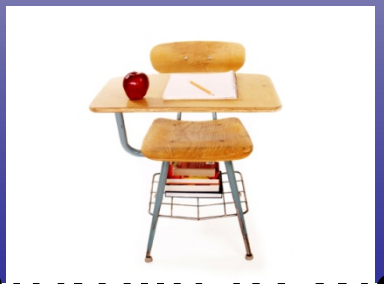


- Each boy and girl **has** to take the test.
- Every frog and toad **turns** into a prince.



- No paper and pen **is** required.

(But an apple would be nice!:)



- Dancing and singing **come** na

17. Most indefinite pronouns take singular verbs.

one	body	thing
someone	**somebody**	**something**
anyone	**anybody**	**anything**
No one	**nobody**	**nothing**
everyone	**everybody**	**everything**



Little **One**

Another **Neither**

Much **Either**

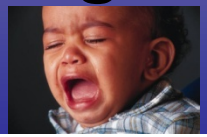
Each

*** Everybody is happy.**

*** No one has a dime.**



*** Nothing was going to help.**



18. ***Both, few, many, others,*** **and *several*** take a plural verb.

- Several **need** to finish the race.



- A few **have** the right answer.



19. When the subject is ***all, any, more, most, none, or some***, this is the ONLY time you must look at the object of the prepositional phrase to determine whether it is singular or plural.

- **All** *of the chickens* **have** laid eggs.

- **Some** *of the milk* **has** spilled.

20. Final rule- Remember, only the SUBJECT affects the verb!



KD LIVE

FIXED PREPOSITION



Download Now!

KD LIVE App

Email: online@kdcampus.org | Contact : 8586903756 /8586903746

Fixed Preposition Level–I

1. **Resort (रास्ता अपनाना) — to**

   Eg. (1) He resorted to crime.

   (2) The police resorted to unfair means.

2. **Wait (इंतजार करना) — for**

   Eg. (1) I waited for you.

   (2) She is waiting for her result.

3. **Approve (सहमति देना) — of**

   Eg. (1) He approved of my project.

   (2) I don't approve of such pressurizing tactics of police.

4. **Deal (व्यापार करना) — in**

   Eg. (1) He dealt in garments.

   (2) We deal in food grains.

Campus

5. Deal (निपटना) — with

Eg. (1) He dealt with problems.

(2) We cannot deal with naughty boys.

6. Differ (से अलग होना) — from

Eg. (1) Amphibians differ from reptiles.

(2) This project differs from that one.

7. Different (से असमान) — from

Eg. (1) Amphibians are different from reptiles.

(2) This proposal is different from that one.

8. Differ (से अलग मत रखना) — with

Eg. (1) I differ with you on this matter.

(2) India differs with the UN on the matter of POK.

9. Depend (पर निर्भर करना) — on

Eg. (1) I depend on you.

(2) The government depends on the executive.

10. On Monday — सभी दिनों के साथ

Eg. (1) I came at 7 O'clock on Monday.

(2) She reached Delhi at quarter past 8 on Tuesday.

11. In 2015 — सभी साल के साथ

Eg. (1) I came in 2010.

(2) India became independent in 1947.

12. In May — सभी महीनों के साथ

Eg. (1) I came in May.

(2) I completed the course in August.

13. On the 7th of November — सभी तारीख के साथ

Eg. (1) I came on the 7th of November.

(2) Teachers' day is celebrated on September 5.

14. At 7 O'clock — समय के साथ

Eg. (1) She came at quarter to seven.

(2) The meeting started at 10 minutes past.

15. In summer — सभी मौसम के साथ

Eg. (1) It blooms in summer.

(2) It is foggy in winter.

16. At sunrise —• *I go to temple at sunrise.*

At sunset —• *Cattle return to their shelter at sunset.*

At noon —• *I will come live on facebook at noon.*

At midnight —• *We heard his cries at midnight.*

At bed time —• *My son listens to fairy tales at bed time.*

At night —• *She checks the locks at night before going to bed.*

17. In the morning —• *I go to temple in the morning.*
In the evening —• *I return home in the evening.*
In the afternoon —• *I come here in the afternoon.*

18. On Tuesday afternoon —• *She returned home on Monday afternoon.*
On Wednesday evening —• *We will finalize the deal on Friday evening.*
On a holiday —• *We met our friends on a holiday.*
On weekdays —• *I work for ten hours on weekdays.*
On weekends —• *I sleep for twelve hours on weekends.*
Eg. We will organize a party on Sunday evening.

19. Injurious (हानिकारक) — to
Eg. (1) Smoking is injurious to health.
(2) Drinking is injurious to your liver.

20. Part (किसी व्यक्ति से अलग होना) — from
Eg. (1) I cannot part from my friend.
(2) She cannot part from her mother.

21. Part (किसी चीज़ से अलग होना) — with

Eg. (1) He cannot part with his book.

(2) I cannot part with my belongings.

22. Cope (से निपटना) — with

Eg. (1) I cannot cope with hot weather.

(2) She could not cope with the modern technology.

23. Filled (से भरा) — with

Eg. (1) The bucket was filled with water.

(2) I filled the mug with coffee.

24. Full (भरा) — of

Eg. (1) The bucket was full of water.

(2) Life is full of responsibilities.

Cope with
Syn.→ Deal with
Tackle
Handle

25. Deprive (से वंचित) — of

Eg. (1) *He deprived me of my rights.*

(2) *The police deprived the family of performing the girl's last rites.*

26. Bereft (से वंचित) — of

Eg. (1) *He was bereft of his rights.*

(2) *They are bereft of basic human rights.*

27. Superior (से बेहतर) — to

Eg. (1) *He is superior to you.*

(2) *I am superior to most of my classmates in the matter of technology.*

28. Inferior (से बदतर) — to

Eg. (1) *This is inferior to that brand.*

(2) *This brand of cement is inferior to our brand.*

29. Senior (वरिष्ठ) — to

Eg. (1) *She is senior to me.*

(2) *He is senior to most of us.*

30. Junior (कनिष्ठ) — to

Eg. (1) *He is junior to her.*

(2) *Rohan is junior to my brother.*

31. Prior (से पहले) — to

Eg. (1) *The train arrived prior to time.*

(2) *They constructed the flyover prior to the deadline.*

32. Talk (V- से बात करना) — to

Eg. (1) *I will talk to you.*

(2) *We will talk to the manager regarding this issue.*

33. Talk (N- वार्तालाप) — with

Eg. (1) *The talk with Pakistan failed.*

(2) *The PM had a talk with the CM of UP.*

34. Listen (सुनना) — to

Eg. *(1) Please listen to me.*

(2) I listen to old songs.

35. Suggest (सलाह देना) — to

Eg. *(1) I suggested to him.*

(2) My teacher suggested to me to read books.

36. Agree (किसी व्यक्ति से सहमत) — with

Eg. *(1) I agree with you.*

(2) She agreed with her mother.

37. Agree (किसी बात से सहमत) — to

Eg. *(1) I agree to your proposal.*

(2) She agreed to the idea of destination wedding.

KD Campus

38. Avail (लाभ उठाना) — of

Eg. (1) I availed myself of the opportunity.

(2) Please avail yourself of this golden chance.

39. Annoyed (किसी से चिढ़ना) — with

Eg. (1) I am annoyed with you.

(2) People are annoyed with such opportunists.

40. Annoyed (किसी बात से चिढ़ना) — at

Eg. (1) I am annoyed at your idiocy.

(2) We are annoyed at the cacophony.

41. Angry (किसी व्यक्ति से गुस्सा) — with

Eg. (1) I am angry with you.

(2) She was angry with her children.

Cacaphony
↓
शोरगुल

42. Angry (किसी बात से गुस्सा) — at

Eg. (1) I am angry at the mismanagement.

(2) We are angry at the late delivery.

43. Adapt (ढ़ालना) — to

Eg. (1) We adapt ourselves to the environment.

(2) She could not adapt herself to a different culture.

44. Adjacent (के बगल) — to

Eg. (1) Your house is adjacent to mine.

(2) China is adjacent to Ladakh.

45. Surprised (आश्चर्य) — at

Eg. (1) I am surprised at the result.

(2) She was surprised at your behaviour.

46. Amazed (आश्चर्य) — at

Eg. (1) She is amazed at his audacity.

(2) I am amazed at his aggressive behaviour.

Audacity
↓
Boldness

Aggressive
↓
आक्रामक

47. Astonished (आश्चर्य) — at

Eg. (1) He was astonished at her misdemeanour.

(2) We are astonished at China's Brazenness.

48. Abide (अनुपालन करना) — by

Eg. (1) I abide by the traffic rules.

(2) We have to abide by the law of the land.

49. Comply (अनुपालन करना) — with

Eg. (1) I comply with the law of the land.

(2) Please comply with all the rules.

50. Marry$_{(A.V.)}$ (शादी करना) — No preposition

Eg. (1) She married him.

(2) She married an army officer.

51. Married$_{(P.V)}$ (शादी होना) — to

Eg. (1) He was married to Rohini.

(2) She was married to an IAS Officer.

Misdemeanour
↓
a wrong act.

Brazenness
↓
Undue bravery (घृष्टता)

52. Favourable (अनुकूल) — to

Eg. (1) CET seems favourable to the students.

(2) Black soil is favourable to the growth of cotton.

53. Conducive (अनुकूल) — to

Eg. (1) This climate is not conducive to my health.

(2) This attitude is not conducive to the development of the country.

54. Prefer (से ज्यादा पसंद करना) — to

Eg. (1) I prefer tea to coffee.

(2) I prefer death to slavery.

Slavery
↓
दासता

55. Obliged (कृतज्ञ/ एहसानमंद) — to

Eg. (1) I am obliged to you.

(2) People are obliged to the government for free electricity.

KD Campus

56. **Deficient (कमी होना)** — **in**

Eg. *(1)* *This soil is deficient in Nitrogen.*

(2) *It is deficient in vitamins.*

57. **Lack (वंचित)** — **No preposition**

Eg. *(1)* *You lack common sense.*

(2) *We lack basic amenities.*

Amenities
↓
सुविधाएं

58. **Devoid (से वंचित)** — **of**

Eg. *(1)* *Women are devoid of basic human rights in certain countries.*

(2) *The prisoners are devoid of healthy food in jails.*

59. **Ashamed (शर्मिंदा)** — **of**

Eg. *(1)* *He was ashamed of his conduct.*

(2) *Are you not ashamed of yourself?*

60. Aim$_{(V)}$ (मकसद होना) — at

Eg. (1) He aimed the pistol at her.

(2) I aimed my effort at my goal.

61. Suffer (से ग्रस्त) — from

Eg. (1) He is suffering from Cancer.

(2) She is suffering from severe headache.

Note: She suffered heavy loss.

62. Succeed (कामयाब होना) — in

Eg. (1) I succeeded in my first attempt.

(2) She succeeded in her motive.

Note: Jahangir succeeded Akbar.

63. Tired (थक जाना/ त्रस्त हो जाना) — of

Eg. (1) I am tired of this lockdown.

(2) She is tired of the problems.

64. **Prevent (रोकना) — from**

Eg. (1) They prevented me from entering the hall.

(2) I prevented him from boarding a running train.

65. **Fond (पसंद) — of**

Eg. (1) I am fond of sweets.

(2) I am fond of classical songs.

66. **Sick (से परेशान) — of**

Eg. (1) I am sick of his tantrums.

(2) I am sick of this lockdown now.

Tantrums
↓
नखरे

67. **Laugh (पर हँसना/ मजाक उड़ाना) — at**

Eg. (1) Don't laugh at the monkeys.

(2) He laughed at me.

68. Consist (से भरा) — of

Eg. (1) This compartment consists of ten rooms.

(2) The book consists of fifteen chapters.

69. Good (अच्छा) — at

Eg. (1) I am good at writing essay.

(2) She is good at singing.

70. Confident (विश्वास होना) — of

Eg. (1) I am confident of my performance.

(2) I am confident of your result.

71. Equal (Adj) (बराबर) — to

Eg. (1) 12 to the power 2 is equal to 144.

(2) His value is equal to yours.

72. **Equal (V) (बराबर)** — **No preposition**

Eg. *(1)* *Nothing can equal mother's love.*

(2) *You can't equal your parents' generosity.*

73. **Proud (गौरवान्वित)** — **of**

Eg. *(1)* *I am proud of you.*

(2) *We are proud of Sachin's achievements.*

74. **Essential —** **for**

Eg. *(1)* *Calcium is essential for strong bones.*

(2) *Your presence is essential for our happiness.*

75. **Belong (का होना)** — **to**

Eg. *(1)* *This luggage belongs to me.*

(2) *It belongs to the common people.*

76. **Negligent (लापरवाह होना)** — **of**

Eg. *(1)* *He is negligent of his duty.*

(2) *The police officers were negligent of their duties.*

Generosity
↓
उदारता

77. In spite (के बावजूद) — of

Eg. (1) He passed in spite of his illness.

(2) Inspite of working hard, he failed.

78. Despite (के बावजूद) — No preposition

Eg. (1) Despite working hard, he failed.

(2) Despite running late, the train arrived on time.

79. Fortunate (भाग्यशाली) — of

Eg. (1) I am fortunate of having such loving students.

(2) I am fortunate of being an educated girl.

80. Desirous (इच्छुक) — of

Eg. (1) He is desirous of a good post.

(2) We are desirous of knowing the truth.

81. Accompanied (से साथ होना) — by

Eg. (1) He was accompanied by his friend.

(2) The PM was accompanied by the Home Minister

82. Accuse (आरोप लगाना) — of

Eg. (1) They accused him of robbery.

(2) The police was accused of malpractices.

83. Afraid (डरा) — of

Eg. (1) I am afraid of darkness.

(2) We are not afraid of you.

84. Aware (से अवगत) — of

Eg. (1) We are aware of our rights.

(2) She was aware of the danger.

85. Beware (से सावधान) — of

Eg. (1) Beware of dogs.

(2) Delhi is a good place but beware of pollution.

Malpractices
↓
कुकृत्य, गलत काम

86. Busy (व्यस्त) — with

Eg. (1) She is busy with his work.

(2) The government was busy with the Lok Sabha election.

87. Capable (सक्षम) — of

Eg. (1) I am capable of doing anything

(2) I am capable of lifting this box.

88. Close (के नजदीक) — to

Eg. (1) We are close to our destination.

(2) You are close to fulfilling your dreams.

89. Compare (समान चीज से तुलना) — with

Eg. (1) Don't compare me with him.

(2) Compare Jio with Airtel.

KD Campus

90. Compare (असमान चीज से तुलना) — to

Eg. (1) Life is compared to journey.

(2) Life is compared to a stage.

91. Conscious (से अवगत) — of

Eg. (1) I am conscious of my drawbacks.

(2) She is conscious of her duties.

92. Contrary (से विपरीत) — to

Eg. (1) He spoke contrary to the norms.

(2) Don't behave contrary to the law of the land.

93. Convicted (दोषी होना) — of

Eg. (1) He was convicted of murder.

(2) The four accused were convicted of raping and murdering Nirbhaya.

94. Dear (बहुत प्यारा) — to

Eg. (1) Life is dear to everyone.

(2) Self respect is dear to all.

95. Desire (इच्छा) — for

Eg. (1) He has no desire for wealth.

(2) I have a great desire for knowledge.

96. Desirous (इच्छुक) — of

Eg. (1) He is not desirous of wealth.

(2) She is desirous of a government job.

97. Dream (सपना देखना) — of

Eg. (1) I dream of a big house.

(2) She dreams of marrying a prince.

KD Campus

98. Due (के कारण) — to

Eg. (1) He failed due to his laziness.

(2) The accident was due to your negligence.

99. Escape (से बचना) — from

Eg. (1) He escaped from the jail.

(2) She escaped from getting punished.

100. Envious (से ईष्यालु) — of

Eg. (1) She is envious of your beauty.

(2) I am envious of his success.

101. Grateful (कृतज्ञ) — to

Eg. (1) I am grateful to god.

(2) We must be grateful to our parents.

Negligence
↓
लापरवाही

KD Campus

102. Thankful (कृतज्ञ / आभारी) — to

Eg. (1) I am thankful to you.

(2) She is thankful to him for his advice.

103. Obedient (आज्ञाकारी) — to

Eg. (1) She is obedient to her parents.

(2) Be obedient to your teachers.

104. Object (के विरूद्ध होना) — to

Eg. (1) I objected to his proposal.

(2) I objected to his advancements.

105. Responsible (जिम्मेदार) — for

Eg. (1) He is responsible for the bank robbery.

(2) You are responsible for all your actions.

KD Campus

106. Stare (घूरना) — at

Eg. (1) He is staring at me.

(2) The terrorist stared at us.

107. Satisfied (संतुष्ट) — with

Eg. (1) I am satisfied with your performance.

(2) She is satisfied with the result.

108. Think (सोचना) — of

Eg. (1) He thought of a plan.

(2) Think of a new idea.

109. Worthy (के लायक) — of

Eg. (1) She is worthy of a reward.

(2) You are worthy of a comfortable life.

KD Campus

Some Phrase Preposition

- According to (के अनुसार) → as stated by

E.g:- According to the terms and conditions, he will have to finish it in two days.

- By dint of (के बल पर) → by force of, because of

E.g:- I passed the exam by dint of hard work.

- In case of (अगर) → in the event of

E.g:- In case of emergency, call 100.

- By virtue of (के बल पर) → by the authority of

E.g:- The judge can pass the order by virtue of his powers.

Some Phrase Preposition

(5) Owing to (के कारण) → due to

'Owing to' means 'due to' but there are a few differences.

'Owing to' एवं 'due to' अर्थ में एक ही है। दोनों के बीच मुख्यतः दो अंतर है-

(1) वाक्य की शुरूआत 'Owing to' से करें 'due to' से नहीं

(a) A sentence should start with 'owing to' and not 'due to'.

E.g:- Due to heavy rains, I could not come. (×)

Owing to heavy rains, I could not come.(✓)

(Note: SSC accepts that a sentence can start with 'due to')

(नोट : SSC 'due to' से वाक्य की शुरूआत को सही मानती है।)

This rule is not important as far as modern English is concerned.

Note: 'Due to' comes after different forms of 'be'

(नोट : 'Be' के किसी भी form के बाद 'due to' का प्रयोग होता है।

The accident was owing to heavy rains.(×)

Form of be

The accident was due to heavy rains.(✓)

Form of be

- With reference to → in context of

E.g:- With reference to (के सन्दर्भ में) → your letter, dated 27th July 2020, I hereby submit my reply.

- In order to (ताकि) → for the purpose of

E.g:- We vacated the premises in order to avoid litigation.

- In course of (के दौरान) → during

E.g:- In course of time, I faced many problems.

- On behalf of (के स्थान पर) → as a representative of

E.g:- He came to receive the award on behalf of his brother.

- Agreeably to (के अनुसरण में) → willing

E.g:- Agreeably to the terms of the agreement, we will pay you Rs. 1 lakh.

- By means of (के सहायता से) → through the use of

E.g:- He amassed a lot of money by means of sharp practices.

- For the sake of (के वास्ते) → indicates purpose

E.g:- Save plants atleast for the sake of your children.

- In favour of (के पक्ष में) → to the benefit of

E.g:- He voted in favour of his friend.

- In lieu of (के बदले में) → in the place of

E.g:- He got fifty thousand rupees in lieu of his claim.

- On account of (के कारण) → by reason of

E.g:- On account of his negligence, the company has suffered heavy loss.

- In relation to (के संबंध में) → in connection with

E.g:- There are some rules in relation to the organization of the match.

See the difference

1. I acted according to your order.
   I acted in accordance with your order.
2. Mother Teresa had affection for all.
   Mother Teresa was affectionate to all.
3. He has ambition for fame.
   He is ambitious of fame.
4. I am capable of doing hard work.
   I have capacity for doing hard work.
5. I have confidence in myself.
   I am confident of his performance.
6. He has desire for money and fame.
   He is desirous of money and fame.

Fixed Preposition

'To' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Abhorrent *to*	causing or deserving strong dislike	घिनौना
Access *to*	reach	पहुँच
Accountable *to*	obliged to accept responsibility	उत्तरदायी
Accustomed *to*	usual or regular	आदी होना
Addicted *to*	unable to stop using, habitual	लत लगना
Adhere *to*	to cause to stick fast	पालन करना, जुड़े रहना
Adjacent *to*	sharing a border	सटा हुआ
Affectionate *to*	feeling or showing love and affection	स्नेही
Agreeable *to*	ready or willing to agree	सहमत
Allegiance *to*	loyalty to a person, country, group, etc.	निष्ठा
Alternative *to*	substitute	विकल्प

Fixed Preposition

'To' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Affectionate *to*	feeling or showing love and affection	स्नेही
Agreeable *to*	ready or willing to agree	सहमत
Allegiance *to*	loyalty to a person, country, group, etc.	निष्ठा
Alternative *to*	substitute	विकल्प
Answerable *to*	required to explain actions or decisions to someone	जवाबदेह
Antidote *to*	a substance that stops the harmful effects of a poison	विष-नाशक
Attention *to*	notice, interest, or awareness	ध्यान
Attune *to*	to bring into harmony	लय में करना
Averse *to*	having a feeling of dislike	प्रतिकूल
Beneficial *to*	producing good or helpful results or effects	फायेमंद

Fixed Preposition

'To' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Blind *to*	unable to see (fault etc)	(के प्रति अंधा)
Comparable *to*	being similar or about the same	तुलनीय
Complement *to*	to complete something else or make it better	पूरक
Conform *to*	to obey or agree to something	अनुरूप
Detrimental *to*	causing damage or injury	हानिकारक
Devoted *to*	completely loyal	भक्त
Disgrace *to*	to cause to lose respect or be humiliated	अपमान
Due *to*	because	के कारण
Enmity *to*	a very deep unfriendly feeling	शत्रुता
Equal *to*	same	बराबरी
Equivalent *to*	almost same	लगभग बराबर

Fixed Preposition

'To' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Essential *to*	extremely important and necessary	आवश्यक
Exception *to*	a case where a rule does not apply	अपवाद
Favourable *to*	showing approval	अनुकूल
Given *to*	habitual	आदी होना
Harmful *to*	causing or capable of causing damage or harm	नुकसान पहुंचने वाला
Heir *to*	a person who has the legal right to receive the property of someone who dies	वारिस
Immune *to*	not capable of being affected by a disease	प्रतिरक्षा
Important *to*	having serious meaning or worth	जरूरी
Incidental *to*	happening as a minor part or result of something else	आकस्मिक
Indebted *to*	owing something (such as money or thanks) to someone or something	ऋणी

Fixed Preposition

'To' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Indifferent *to*	not interested in or concerned about something	उदासीन
Indigenous *to*	produced, living, or existing naturally in a particular region or environment	स्वदेशी
Injurious *to*	causing injury	हानिकारक
Key *to*	to make something correspond to something else	मौलिक
Look forward *to*	anticipated with satisfaction	संतुष्टि के साथ आशा करना
Loyal *to*	having or showing complete and constant support for someone or something	निष्ठावान
Obstruction *to*	something that blocks	बाधा
Opposite *to*	not agree	के विरूद्ध
Postscript *to*	a note or series of notes added at the end of a letter, article, or book	परिशिष्ट भाग

Fixed Preposition

'To' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Preface *to*	an introduction to a book or speech	प्रस्तावना
Prefer *to*	to like (someone or something) better than someone or something else	के तुलना में ज्यादा पसंद करना
Preferable *to*	better or more desirable	बेहतर
Profitable *to*	producing good results or effects	लाभदायक
Prone *to*	likely to do, have, or suffer from something	से ग्रस्त होने की संभावना
Reduced *to*	to make (something) smaller in size, amount, number, etc.	को कम करना
Relevant *to*	relating to a subject in an appropriate way	प्रासंगिक
Repugnance *to*	a strong feeling of dislike or disgust	घृणा
Resign oneself *to*	to accept something reluctantly because you cannot change it	बेमन से ही पर स्वीकार

Fixed Preposition

'To' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Sensitive *to*	likely to cause people to become upset	संवेदनशील
Sequel *to*	a book, movie, etc., that continues a story begun in another book, movie, etc.	का अगला भाग
Similar *to*	almost the same	समान
Stick *to*	to hold to	लगे रहना
Submission *to*	something that is submitted	प्रस्तुत
Submit *to*	yield or accept to a superior force	के आगे झुकना
Subscribe *to*	to pay money to get a publication or service regularly	सदस्यता लेने के लिए
Succumb *to*	to stop trying to resist something	मर जाना/हार मान जाना
Supplement *to*	to add something to (something) in order to make it complete	पूरक बनना

Fixed Preposition

'To' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Surrender *to*	to give the control or use of (something) to someone else	समर्पण करना
Susceptible *to*	easily affected, influenced, or harmed by something	ग्रहणक्षम
Swing *to*	to move with a smooth, curving motion	झूलना
Taken *to*	to begin to like something	पसंद करना शुरू करना
Tantamount *to*	equal to something in value, meaning, or effect	समान
Temptation *to*	a strong urge or desire to have or do something	प्रलोभन
True *to*	faithful	वफादार होना

Fixed Preposition

'OF' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Abhorrence *of*	strong hatred	ग्रहण
Accused *of*	one charged with an offence	अभियुक्त
Afraid *of*	filled with fear	डरा हुआ
Ambitious *of*	having a desire of	महत्वाकांक्षी
Anxious *of*	causing or showing fear or nervousness	चिंतित
Ashamed *of*	feeling shame, guilt, or disgrace	शर्मिंदा
Assurance *of*	the state of being sure or certain about something	आश्वासन
Aware *of*	knowing that something (such as a situation, condition, or problem) exists	अवगत
Bereft *of*	no longer having it, deprived	वंचित

Fixed Preposition

'OF' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Beware *of*	to be careful	सावधन रहना
Boast *of*	a reason to be proud	डींग मारना
Capable *of*	able to do something	सक्षम
Cautious *of*	careful about avoiding danger or risk	सर्तक
Certain *of*	not having any doubt about something	पक्का होना
Charge *of*	to make a person responsible for something	के प्रभारी
Composed *of*	calm and in control of your emotions	शांत
Consist *of*	to be made up of (something)	से बना हुआ
Confident *of*	showing that you have confidence	आश्वस्त होना
Conscious *of*	aware	जागरूक

Fixed Preposition

'OF' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Convicted *of*	to prove or find guilty	अपराधी ठहराया हुआ
Convinced *of*	to cause (someone) to believe that something is true	यकीन करना
Deprived *of*	not having the things that are needed for a good or healthy life	वंचित
Devoid *of*	lacking	वंचित
Diffident *of*	lacking confidence	आत्मविश्वासहीन
Disapprove *of*	to officially refuse to approve or accept (something)	अस्वीकार करना
Dispose *of*	to get rid of something	छुटकारा पाना
Embarrassed *of*	ashamed	शर्मिंदा
Envious *of*	feeling or showing a desire to have what someone else has	ईष्यालु

Fixed Preposition

'OF' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Formed *of*	organized in a way characteristic of living matter	के शौकीन
Frightened *of*	to cause to become afraid	का गठन
Get rid *of*	to become free from something	छुटकारा पाना
Guilty *of*	responsible for committing a crime or doing something bad or wrong	अपराधी
Lack *(N)*	deficient	की कमी
Need *(N)*	to require	जरूरत
Proof *of*	something which shows that something else is true or correct	प्रमाण होना
Scared *of*	to be frightened or worried	डरा हुआ
Shortage *of*	a condition in which there is not enough of something needed	कमी होना

Fixed Preposition

'OF' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Sure *of*	ascertain	निश्चित होना
Void *(N)*	null or containing nothing	रिक्त
Want *of*	to need (something)	की इच्छा होना
Wary *of*	marked by being cautious	सावधन
Worthy *of*	deserving respect, attention	के योग्य

Campus

Fixed Preposition

'For' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Affection *for*	a feeling of liking for someone or something	के लिए स्नेह
Affection *for*	feeling or showing love and affection	स्नेही
Ambition *for*	a particular goal or aim	महत्वाकांक्षा
Anxiety *for*	fear or nervousness about what might happen	चिंता
Appetite *for*	a physical desire for food	भूख
Aptitude *for*	a natural ability to do something or to learn something	योग्यता
Atone *for*	to make amends or reparation	हरजाना देना
Capacity *for*	the ability to hold or contain	क्षमता
Compassion *for*	a feeling of wanting to help someone who is sick, hungry, in trouble, etc.	सहानुभूति
Compensation *for*	something that is done or given to make up for damage, trouble, etc.	मुआवजा, हर्जाना

Fixed Preposition

'For' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Contempt *for*	a feeling that someone or something is not worthy of any respect or approval	अवमानना
Canvass *for*	to ask (the people in an area) what they think about a candidate, project, idea, etc.	मत माँगना
Craving *for*	a very strong desire for something	तृष्णा
Desire *for*	to want or wish for (something)	इच्छा
Hope *for*	expect	आशा
Liking *for*	a feeling of regard or fondness	पसंद करना
Yearn *for*	to desire very much	के लिए लालसा करना

Fixed Preposition

'Form' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Abstain *from*	to choose not to do or have something	परहेज करना
Abstinence *from*	the practice of not doing or having something that is wanted	परहेज करना
Debar *from*	to officially prevent (someone) from having or doing something	निषेध करना
Derive *from*	to take or get (something) from (something else)	से निकालना या हासिल करना
Descent *from*	an act of coming or going down in location or condition	से नीचे जाना
Desist *from*	to stop doing something	करना बंद कर देना
Deviate *from*	tent or to be different from what is usual or expected	(रास्ते सेद्ध हटना)
Emerge *from*	to become known or come from	उभरना
Escape *from*	to get away from a dangerous place or situation	सुरक्षित निकल जाना
Exemption *from*	permission not to pay or do something	छूट

Fixed Preposition

'Form' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Prevent *from*	to stop (something) from happening or existing	रोकना
Prohibit *from*	to order (someone) not to use or do something	निषेध
Protect *from*	to keep (someone or something) from being harmed	बचाना
Recover *from*	to become healthy after an illness or injury	स्वस्थ होना
Refrain *from*	to stop yourself from doing something	परहेज करना
Resign *from*	to give up (a job or position) in a formal manner	त्यागपत्र देना
Respite *from*	relief	राहत

Fixed Preposition

'ON' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Comment	to make a statement about someone or something	टिप्पणी करना
Deliberate *on*	to think about or discuss something very carefully in order to make a decision	विचार करना
Depend *on*	to be subject to determination by the situation	पर निर्भर
Dwell *on*	to live in a particular place	में रहना
Embark *on*	to begin a journey	यात्रा शुरू करना
Encroach *on*	to gradually move or go into an area that is beyond the usual or desired limits	अतिक्रमण करना
Impose *on*	to cause (something, such as tax) to affect someone or something by using your authority	कर लगाना
Insist *on*	to demand that something happen or that someone do something	आग्रह करना
Intrude *on*	to come or go into a place where you are not wanted or welcome	पर अतिक्रमण करना

Fixed Preposition

'ON' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Trample *on*	to cause damage or pain by walking or stepping heavily on something or someone	पैर तले कुचलना
Acquaintance *with*	so	
Absorbed *in*	having one's attention wholly engaged or occupied	अवशोषित
Accomplished *in*	very skillful, having or showing the skill of an expert	निपुण
Assiduous *in*	very hard working	परिश्रमी
Bigoted *in*	blindly devoted to some creed, opinion, or practice	धर्मांध, कट्टर व्यक्ति
Dabble *in*	to take part in an activity in a way that is not serious	शौकिया तौर पर कुछ करना
Deficient *in*	not good enough, lacking	अपूर्ण, कमी
Diligent *in*	showing steady and earnest care and hard work	मेहनती
Excel *in*	to be better than others	श्रेष्ठ होना

Fixed Preposition

'ON' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Experienced *in*	having knowledge or skill in a particular field	अनुभवी
Indulge *in*	to allow (yourself) to have or do something as a special pleasure	लिप्त होना
Interested *in*	wanting to learn more about something or to become involved in something	रूची
Involved *in*	connected with something	शामिल होना
Persist *in*	to continue to occur or exist beyond the usual, expected, or normal time	लगे रहना
Presevere *in*	to continue doing something though it is difficult	लगे रहना
Proficient *in*	good at doing something	कुशल
Remiss *in*	not showing enough care and attention	बेपरवाह
Versed *in*	skilled in something	निपुण

Fixed Preposition

'With' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Acquaintance *with*	someone who is known	जान-पहचान
Afflicted *with*	caused pain or suffering	पीड़ित
Alliance *with*	a union or association	संधि
Associate *with*	to combine or unite with another for mutual benefit	सहयोगी
Bear *with*	to suffer	सहना
Beset *with*	to cause problems or difficulties for (someone or something)	(किसी के लिए) परेशानी उत्पन्न करना
Busy *with*	full of activity or work	व्यस्त रहना
Clash *with*	a short fight	टकराव
Coincide *with*	to happen at the same time as something else	एक समय पर होना
Compatible *with*	capable of existing together in harmony	अनुकूल
Compliant *with*	inclined to agree with others	आज्ञाकारी

Fixed Preposition

'With' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Conformity *with*	the fact or state of agreeing with or obeying something	अनुपालन
Contrasted *with*	to be different especially in a way that is very obvious	विषम
Conversant *with*	to be familiar with	परिचित
Cope *with*	to endure something unpleasant	सामना करना
Correspond *with*	to be similar or equal to something	अनुरूप
Disgusted *with*	a feeling of revulsion or profound disapproval	घृणा
Drenched *with*	to make (someone or something) completely wet	भीगना
Endowed *with*	to give a large amount of money to a school, hospital, etc.	संपन्न
Gifted *with*	having great ability	प्रतिभाशाली
Intimacy *with*	a state marked by emotional closeness	आत्मीयता
Intimate *with*	to say or suggest (something) in an indirect way	सूचित करना

Fixed Preposition

'With' comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Quarrel *with*	to fight	लड़ाई करना
Remonstrate *with*	to disagree and argue or complain about something	प्रतिवाद करना
Replete *with*	having much or plenty of something	परिपूर्ण
Satiated *with*	to satisfy (a need, desire, etc.) fully	तृप्त
Satisfied *with*	to cause (someone) to be happy or pleased	संतुष्ट
Sympathize *with*	to feel sorry for someone who is in a bad condition	के साथ सहानुभूति रखना

KD LIVE

PREPOSITION
(EXERCISE)



Download Now!

KD LIVE App

Email: online@kdcampus.org | Contact : 8586903756 /8586903746

Exercise-1

Please go through the chapter Preposition given in Volume – 1 and then attempt the questions given below.

1. Cheese is made ____ milk.
2. The table is made ____ wood.
3. He deals ____ garments.
4. I cannot deal ____ you.
5. Amphibians differ ____ reptiles.
6. I differ ____the authority on this point.
7. You can depend ____ me.
8. You cannot depend solely ____ this book.
9. My coming depends ____ whether I get a ticket to Calcutta or not.
10. He is the best student ____ my class.

Answers

1. from
2. of
3. in
4. with
5. from
6. with
7. on
8. On
9. upon
10. of

Exercise-1

11. Delhi is the best city _____ India.
12. The exam will start _____ Monday.
13. Smoking is injurious _____ health.
14. Open your book _____ page 40.
15. He died _____ cancer.
16. He died _____ hunger.
17. He died _____ harness.
18. He was killed _____ an accident.
19. He could not succeed despite _____ working hard.
20. In spite _____ working hard, he failed.
21. We are waiting _____ the result.
22. The result is being awaited _____ .

Answers

11. in
12. on
13. to
14. at
15. of
16. of
17. in
18. in
19. No preposition required
20. of
21. for
22. No preposition required

Exercise-1

23. I cannot part ____ my parents.
24. The miserly merchant could not part ____ his money.
25. He sat ____ me as the seat next to mine was vacant.
26. ____ being a coward, he is fickle-minded too.
27. I can cope ____ with any problem.
28. There is no co-operation ____ the students of our class.
29. Bi-lateral talks will surely improve the relation ____ India and Pakistan.
30. The boy fell ____ the well.
31. We were sitting ___ the classroom when the boys came the room.
32. All the students stood ___ respectfully when the principal entered the classroom.

Answers

23. from
24. with
25. beside
26. Besides
27. No preposition required
28. among
29. between
30. into
31. in, into
32. up, no preposition required

Exercise-1

33. The architect entered _____ an agreement with the contractor.
34. The bill was passed _____ pandemonium.
35. The lion jumped _____ the deer.

Answers

33. into
34. into
35. upon

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
1.	Made from	When the form changes.	जब रूप बदल जाए	Ex. Bread is made from flour.
2.	Made of	When the form does not change.	किसी चीज का बना होना/जब रूप न बदले	Ex. Shoes are made of leather.
3.	Deal in	To buy and sell particular	व्यापार करना	Ex. He deals in books.
4.	Deal with	To manage with someone	किसी व्यक्ति या वस्तु से निपटना	Ex. The court will deal with the culprit.
5.	Differ from	To be different from	भिन्न होना	Ex. His brother differs from her in habits.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
6.	Differ with	to disagree with someone.	किसी (व्यक्ति सेद्ध) अलग मत होना	Ex. He differed with his employees regarding the consequences of GST.
7.	Depend on	Put trust in some person with confidence.	किसी व्यक्ति पर निर्भर करना	Ex. His parents depend on him.
8.	Depend on	Put trust in a thing with confidence	किसी वस्तु पर निर्भर होना	Ex. I depend on this book for English.
9.	Depend upon	When an action depends on some condition.	जब कोई कार्य दूसरी स्थिति पर निर्भर करें	Ex. I can go to the movie but it depends upon whether my parents will let me go or not.

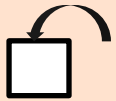
S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
12.	On Monday/Tuesday etc.	we use 'on' with days.	'Days' के 'on' साथ का प्रयोग होता है।	Ex. He reached Mumbai on Saturday.
13.	Injurious to	to have bad effect.	के लिए हानिकारक	Ex. Drinking is injurious to health.
14.	Died of	When a disease is the cause.	किसी बिमारी से मरना जो प्रत्यक्ष कारण है।	Ex. He died of brain tumour.
15.	Died from	when some reason is the	किसी कारण से मृत्यु होना	Ex. He died from thirst.
16.	Die in harness	A phrase that means 'to die while in service'.	कार्यकाल के दौरान मृत्यु	Ex. Indira Gandhi died in harness.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
17.	Die in harness	A phrase that means 'to die while in service'.	कार्यकाल के दौरान मृत्यु	Ex. Indira Gandhi died in harness.
18.	Killed in an accident	Note: In an accident, a person is killed. 'Died' is a wrong word here	नोटः Accident में 'Killed' शब्द का प्रयोग होता है ना कि 'died' होगा।	Ex. Ramesh was killed in a plane crash.
19.	Despite does not take 'of'.	'Inspite of' means 'despite'. Since both mean the same, we sometimes wrongly use of' with 'despite'. Synonyms: Nevertheless, Notwithstanding	'Inspite of' एवं despite का अर्थ है 'के बावजूद'। कई बार हम 'Despite के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग कर लेते है जो गलत है।	Ex. Despite being late, he was allowed to take the exam.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
21.	Wait for	Wait for someone	की प्रतीक्षा करना	Ex. He is waiting for his reply.
22.	Waited for = awaited	'Awaited' does not take for because Waited for = awaited	'Awaited' के बाद 'for' का प्रयोग नही होता।	Ex. The latest news is being awaited.
23.	Part from	to go away from someone.	किसी व्यक्ति से अलग होना	Ex. You should not part from him in anger.
24.	Part with	to seperate from something	किसी वस्तु से अलग होना	Ex. I don't want to part with any of my books.
25.	Beside	By the side of	के बगल में	Ex. He sat beside me.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
26.	Besides	Apart from	के अलावा	Ex. Besides being intelligent, he is laborious too.
27.	Cope with	To handle Note: 'Cope up with' is wrong.	निपटना	Ex. She can cope with the present situation.
28.	Among	Refers to the association or in company of more than two.	दो से अधिक के बीच में	Ex. He distributed the sweets among the students of the school.
29.	Between	Refers to the association of two	दो के बीच में	Ex. There is no love lost between Rahul and Ramesh.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
30.	Fall into	'into' shows motion 	'into' किसी वस्तु/पानी इत्यादि के अंदर जाता हुआ दर्शाता है।	Ex. He fell into the pit.
31.	Sit **in** the Came **into**	in  into 		Ex. Rajni was sitting in the room
32.	Enter does not take preposition 'into' if it means to 'come into'.	To go or come in	अंदर जाना	Ex. The goons entered the bedroom and shot the politician dead.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
33.	**Enter into**	to make oneself a party to an agreement.	किसी समझौते का हिस्सा होना	Ex. He refused to enter into an agreement with his tenant.
34	'Amid' can come with both countable and uncountable nouns.	Amid means 'during in case of uncountable noun and 'among' in case of countable noun.	के बीच के/दौरान	Ex. 1) His is cry for help drowned amid the noise. 2) My wallet fell amid the fighting.
35.	upon 	When something/someone strikes the surface of the other while in motion.	के ऊपर (गिरना/कूदना)	Ex. The robber jumped upon the running train.

Exercise-2

36. Put all the books _____ the table.
37. I told the truth _____ his face.
38. I was filled _____ wonder.
39. You should learn it word _____ word.
40. It is half past eight _____ my watch.
41. The king deprived the merchant _____ his belongings.
42. China is _____ the north of India.
43. I sat _____ the tree _____ a cemented platform.
44. I sat _____ the shade of the tree.
45. My watch is superior _____ yours.
46. His dress is different _____ mine.
47. The matter will be looked _____ by the committee.

Answers

36. on
37. to
38. with
39. for
40. by
41. of
42. to
43. under, on
44. in
45. to
46. from
47. into

Exercise-2

48. I will talk _____ you later.
49. We had a talk _____ them.
50. Please listen _____ me.
51. I provided money _____ him.
52. I provided him _____ money.
53. I suggested _____ him to take the exam.
54. My teacher told _____ me to solve the easy questions first.
55. He proposed _____ me to take my children for a walk.
56. He said _____ me to be upfront in my attitude.
57. We reached _____ Delhi last night at 9 p.m.
58. Both the parties reached _____ an agreement.
59. We go _____ home at 8 p.m.
60. I left _____ college at 10 a.m.

Answers

48. to
49. with
50. to
51. to
52. with
53. to
54. no preposition required
55. to 56. to
57. no preposition required
58. at
59. no preposition required
60. for

Exercise-2

61. I agree _____ you.
62. I agree _____ your opinion
63. I am annoyed _____ him.
64. I am annoyed _____ the mismanagement.
65. We must avail ourselves _____ the opportunity.
66. She was angry _____ her children.
67. She was angry _____ his callousness.
68. Fishes are adapted _____ life in water.
69. His bungalow is adjacent _____ mine.
70. This serum is an antidote _____ snake's poison.
71. I apologize _____ you _____ my mistake.
72. I have no appetite _____ sweets.
73. We were not apprised _____ his demise.
74. We were astonished his audacity.
75. I am averse _____ smoking.

Answers

61. with
62. to
63. with
64. at
65. of
66. with
67. at
68. to
69. to
70. to
71. to, for
72. for
73. of
74. at
75. to

Exercise-2

76. The management did not accede _____ the workers' demand.
77. I am acquainted _____ all the places of Delhi.
78. We must abide _____ the rules of the college.
79. We must comply _____ the rules of the college.
80. We are answerable _____ God _____ all our deeds.
81. He was bereft _____ all possession.
82. The queen bestowed the title of Knighthood _____ him.
83. The queen bestowed him _____ the title of Knighthood.
84. Hearing the news, he became red _____ anger.
85. It is ten minutes five _____ my _____ watch. I will reach there 5 p.m.
86. I will stand _____ you _____ thick and thin.
87. The cliff hangs _____ the sea.
88. This bus plies _____ Delhi and Noida.
89. The money lender charges interest _____ 9 percent per annum.
90. Cloth is sold _____ yard.

Answers

76. to
77. with
78. by
79. with
80. to, for
81. of
82. upon
83. with
84. with
85. to, by
86. by, through
87. over
88. between
89. at
90. by

Exercise-2

91. The man injured in the accident succumbed _____ his injuries.
92. We must immediately dispense _____ the service of the dishonest clerk.
93. Ram married _____ Sita.
94. Ram was married _____ Sita.
95. This climate is conducive _____ health.
96. He is entitled _____ a suitable reward.
97. I prefer tea _____ coffee.
98. There is no exception _____ this rule.
99. I will be obliged you _____ your help.
100. I inquired _____ him about the progress.

Answers

91. to
92. with
93. no preposition required
94. to
95. to
96. to
97. to
98. to
99. to, for
100. of

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
36.	on 	Touching the surface of	'पर'	Eg. He sat on the bench.
37.	To someone's	directly/openly	सीधे-सीधे मुंह पर	Eg. He told the truth to his face.
38.	Fill with (something)	When filled with something.	भरना (किसी वस्तु से)	Eg. He is filled with grief.
39.	Word for word	Exact repetition of the same words/verbatim	शब्दशः	Ex. He translated the whole matter word for word.
40.	Deprived takes fixed preposition 'of'		'Deprived' (से वंचित होना) के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग होता है।	Eg. He was deprived of even the basic necessities of life.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
41.	In my watch/on my watch is wrong.	Note: 'by' one's watch/clock is correct.		Eg. It is half past five by my watch.
42.	'to' the north/south etc (to show direction).			Eg. Sri Lanka is to the south of India.
43.	Under the tree  On the cemented plat from 			Eg. After getting tired, he sat under the tree on the ground.
44.	In the shade Note: 'Under the shade' is wrong.			Eg. He sat in the shade of the tree.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
45.	Adjectives ending in 'ior' take preposition 'to'.		जो Adjectives 'ior' में खत्म होते है, उनके बाद 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।	Eg. Superior, inferior, prior, senior, junior etc. take 'to'.
46.	Different from	Be unlike	भिन्न होना	Eg. His nature is different from that of his brother.
47.	Look into (a matter)	To investigate	जाँच होना	Eg. The police will look into the matter.
48.	Talk (Verb) to (a person)	Having a conversation	बात करना	Eg. I talked to him.
49.	Talk (Noun) with (someone)	Having a conversation	बातचीत का होना	Eg. I had a talk with him on this issue.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
50.	Listen	Give someone's attention to a sound.	सुनना (ध्यान से)	Eg. He is listening to the sermon of the priest.
51.	Provide money (Direct obj.) to him (Indirect obj.)			Eg. She has always provided help to her children.
52.	Provide him (Indirect obj.) to with money (Direct obj.)			Eg. We cannot provide you with any information.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
53.	Provide and suggest take	Other verbs that 'to' after them when an object follows are- say, suggest, propose, speak, reply, explain, complain, talk, listen, write report, pray and describe.		Eg. I suggested to him to take medicine on time.
54.	'Told' does not take 'to' if followed by an object	Verb that do not take 'to' when followed by an object are- Advise, tell, ask, beg, command, encourage, request, inform, thank, welcome, warm, forbid, order, compliment, congratulate, remind.		Eg. 1 warned him to stay alert.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
57.	'Reach' does not take any preposition if followed by the name of the destination.			Eg. 1) reached Delhi. 2) I reached home late.
58.	Reach at an agreement Reach at a conclusion.		किसी समझोते/निष्कर्ष पर पहुँचना	Eg. The committee reached at a conclusion.
59.	'Go'/'come' 'arrive'/'reach' does r. take any preposition if followed by 'home'			Eg. I come home at 7 p.m.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
60.	'Leave for' some destination	To depart for	के लिए रवाना होना	Eg. He left for Delhi at 9 p.m.
61.	Agree with (someone)	To have the same Opinion (with a person)	सहमत होना (किसी व्यक्ति से)	Eg. I come home at 7 p.m.
62.	Agree to (a matter)	To have the same opinion.	सहमत होना (किसी मुद्दे पर)	Eg. He agreed to my suggestion.
63.	Annoyed with (a person)	To disturb or irritate someone	नाराज होना	Eg. We were annoyed with him.
64.	Annoyed at (something)	To get angry	नाराज होना	Eg. I was annoyed at his behaviour.
65.	Avail (verb) of	To be of use or advantage	लाभ उठाना	Eg. I availed myself to the facilities provided for the students.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
66.	Angry with (someone)		क्रोधित होना (किसी वस्तु से)	Eg. Are you angry with me?
67.	Angry at (someone)		क्रोधित होना (किसी वस्तु पर)	Eg. She you angry with me?
68.	Adapted to (circumstances)	To make suitable to or fit for a specific use.	परिस्थिति के अनुकूल होना	Eg. They adapted themselves to the changes quickly.
69.	Adjacent to	Lying near, close	समीप	Eg. The temple is adjacent to my house.
70.	Antidote to (some poison)	To lessen the effect of poison.	विषनाशक	Eg. There is no antidote to my house.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
71.	Apologize to (someone) Apologize for (something)	To regret for doing wrong. To regret for doing wrong.	क्षमा मांगना (यक्ति से) क्षमा मांगना (कोई कार्य के लिए)	Eg. He apologized to me. Eg. He apologized to me.
72.	Appetite for (something)	A strong wish or urge	इच्छा/भूख	Eg. I have no appetite for food.
73.	Apprised of	To inform about something	सूचित करना	Eg. The reporter was apprised of the new developments.
74.	Astonish at (one's misconduct)	To fill with wonder	अचंभित होना	Eg. We were astonished at his behaviour.
75.	Averse to	Having a feeling of opposition or dislike	प्रतिकूल होना	Eg. Javed is averse to drinking.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
77.	Accede to	Agree to a demand or request	को स्वीकार करना/मान जाना	Eg. He graciously acceded to our request.
78.	Acquainted	To make familiar	से वाकिफ होना	Eg. Please acquaint us with your plan.
79.	Abide by	To follow a rule	पालन करना	Eg. They promised to abide by the rules of the contest.
80.	Comply with	To act in accordance with rule, wishes etc	के अनुसार चलना/का अनुसरण करना	Eg. You are obliged to comply with the order of the court.
81.	Answerable to (somebody) Answerable for	To explain one's actions To be responsible for something	को जवाबदेह होना	Eg. The Delhi Police is department answerable to the Central Govt. Eg. Customers are answerable for the damage they cause.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
81.	Bereft of	Deprived of something	से वंचित होना	Eg. They are bereft of their life with dignity.
82.	Bestow (something) upon (a person)	to present as a gift	प्रदान करना /नवाशना	Eg. The trophy was bestowed upon the winner.
83.	Bestow (someone) with (some thing)			Eg. He was bestowed with the trophy.
84.	Red with anger	A feeling of great annoyance.	बहुत गुस्से में होना/गुस्से से लाल होना	Eg. He became red with anger at her attitude.
85.	Ten minutes **to** five – 4:55 Ten minutes **past** five -05:05	'At' is used to express exact time.		Eg. It is 5pm **by** watch. Eg. I will reach **at** 5 pm.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
86.	Stand by	Support or remain loyal to someone.	समर्थन करना	Eg. Her relatives always stand by her.
87.	Over  Higher in position but not in touch			Eg. The helicopter hovered over my house.
88.	Ply between	To go or travel regularly	नियमित यात्रा करना	Eg. This train plies between Delhi and Panipat.
90.	Sold by yard/dozen etc.			Eg. Oranges are sold by dozen.
91.	Succumb to	To give up	झुक जाना/दम तोड देना	Eg.He succumbed to his injuries.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
92.	Dispense with	To get rid of	से छुटकारा पाना	Eg. Let's dispense with the formalities.
95.	Married (Passive voice) is followed by 'to'			Eg. He married her. Eg. He was married to her.
96.	Conductive to	Making a certain	लाभकारी होना	Eg. A positive attitude is conducive to good health.
97.	Entitled to	To give (a person) a title, right or claim to something	का अधिकार प्राप्त होना/के लायक होना	Eg. He is entitled to a suitable reward.
98.	Prefer to	Like one thing more than other.	से श्रेयस्कर	Eg. I prefer diamond to gold.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
99.	Exception to	A case where a rule does not apply	से छूट प्राप्त होना	Eg. I take strong exception to your assessment of his singing ability.
100.	'Inquired' is followed' by of			Eg. I inquired of the clerk about the departure time of the train.

Exercise-3

101. He insisted _____ going abroad.
102. He was born _____ a poor family.
103. He was born _____ poor parents.
104. Great men are indifferent _____ pleasure or pain.
105. I am suspicious _____ some illegal activities.
106. Junk food is deficient _____ vitamins and minerals.
107. He is not ashamed _____ his misconduct.
108. I could not assent _____ his proposal.
109. We must aim _____ excellence in whatever we do.
110. Wrongdoings beset our path _____ difficulties.
111. Tea is preferable _____ coffee.
112. He invited me _____ tea.

Answers

101. on
102. in
103. to
104. to
105. of
106. in
107. of
108. to
109. at
110. with
111. to
112. to

Exercise-3

113. He is addicted _____ drinking.
114. A well balanced diet is beneficial _____ health.
115. The example given by you is not relevant _____ the topic of discussion.
116. He is endowed _____ great humour.
117. Working in a carpet factory is detrimental _____ health.
118. You are not eligible _____ this post.
119. He scoffed _____ the idea of indefinite strike.
120. They jeered _____ him and his idea.
121. Your agreement is tantamount _____ your confession to the conspiracy.
122. I cannot confide _____ you.
123. The atmosphere comprises _____ many gases.
124. Ignorance _____ law is no excuse.

Answers

113. to
114. to
115. to
116. with
117. to
118. for
119. at
120. at
121. to
122. in
123. No preposition
124. of

Exercise-3

125. This place is infested _____ pests.
126. I am sick _____ the whole matter.
127. Akbar became an heir ___ the throne at a very early age.
128. I am indebted _____ you _____ your generous act.
129. I have no liking _____ such novels.
130. He succeeded _____ the throne.
131. He succeeded _____ his motive.
132. Do you have a pen to write _____ ?
133. They have no chair to sit _____ .
134. He passed the exam with flying colours by ___ hard work.
135. Where had you been _____ ?
136. We must desist _____ doing anything wrong.
136. We must desist _____ doing anything wrong.
137. I am tired _____ waiting .

Answers

125. with needed
126. of
127. to
128. to, for
129. for
130. to
131. in
132. with
133. on
134. The dint of
135. to
136. from
137. of

Exercise-3

138. I intend _____ visit my uncle's house.
139. I prevented him _____ choosing difficult subjects.
140. If you persist _____ disobeying my orders, you will be punished.
141. He is fond _____ rice.
142. She excels _____ painting.
143. He has a knack _____ painting.
144. I admitted him _____ a reputed school.
145. He cannot distinguish good ___ evil as he is very innocent.
146. Death does not distinguish _____ the rich and the poor.
147. He is blind _____ one eye.
148. The train arrived _____ the station.
149. We arrived _____ India after our summer vacation.
150. Only the results will tell us who is going to succeed ____ the current Prime Minister.

Answers

138. to
139. from
140. in
141. of
142. in
143. for
144. to
145. from
146. between
148. at
149. in
150. No Prep. needed

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
101.	Insist on	to say something in a way that is very forceful	पर जोर देना	Eg. I don't know why you insist on talking about it.
102.	Born in (a family place)	-	पैदा होना	Eg. (1) He was born in India.
103.	Born to (parents)	brought into life by birth	पैदा होना	Eg. He was born to noble parents.
104.	Indifferent to	not interested in or concerned about something	उदासीन होना	Eg. He was indifferent to my problems.
105.	Suspicious of	causing a feeling that something is wrong	का संदेही होना	Eg. People are often suspicious of strangers.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
106.	Deficient in	not enough	अपूर्ण/कमी होना	Eg. A diet deficient in calcium can lead to weak bones.
107.	Ashamed of	feeling of shame or guilt	के लिए लज्जित होना	Eg. You should be ashamed of yourself.
108.	Assent to	to agree to or approve of something	की स्वीकृति देना	Eg. He assented to the proposal.
109.	Aim' is followed by 'at'	to target some goal etc.	के लिए प्रत्यन करना	Eg. You must aim at giving your best performance.
109.	Beset with	to cause problems or difficulties for someone	से ग्रस्त होना	Eg. Her marital life was beset with difficulties.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
110.	Beset with	to cause problems or difficulties for someone	से ग्रस्त होना	Eg. Her marital life was beset with difficulties.
112.	Invited to	to ask someone to go somewhere	आमंत्रित करना	Eg. Employees are invited to apply for the new position.
113.	Addicted to	devoted to something obsessively	की लत होना	Eg. He is addicted to gambling.
114.	Beneficial to	producing good or helpful results	के लिए लाभकारी होना	Eg. The new drug will be beneficial to many people.
115.	Relevant to	relating to some subject in	के लिए प्रासंगिक	Eg. This topic is relevant to my subject.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
116.	Endowed with	to freely provide someone with something.	संपन्न होना/लैस होना	Eg. Some people are endowed with both brain and beauty.
117.	Detrimental to	causing damage or injury.	हानिकारक होना	Eg. Hot and humid weather is detrimental to health.
118.	Eligible for (appointment/election etc)	able to be chosen for something.	के योग्य होना	Eg. She is not eligible for this competition.
119.	Scoffed at	an expression of scorn, derision or contempt.	ताना मारना/उपहास या	Eg. The critics scoffed at his painting.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
120.	Jeered at	to laugh at or criticize someone.	उपहास या मजाक उड़ाना/ताना मारना	Eg. The people at the back of the hall jeered at the speaker.
121.	Tantamount to	equal to something in value, meaning or effect.	के समान होना	Eg. His angry speech was tantamount to a declaration of revolt.
122.	Confide in (a person)	to tell something to someone you trust.	को राज बताना	Eg. I only confide in my closest friends.
123.	'Comprise' is not followed by any preposition in Active voice but by 'of' in Passive voice	to be made up of	से बना होना	Eg. This chapter comprises many questions.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
124.	Ignorance of	lack of knowledge	अनभिज्ञता होना	Eg. My ignorance of their native language caused problems in our communication.
125.	Infested with	to be in or over some-thing in large number	से ग्रस्त (काफी संख्या में)	Eg. The house is infested with cockroaches.
126.	Sick of	having a strong dislike	से ग्रस्त होना	Eg. His soul is sick of solitude.
127.	Heir to (throne/property etc.)	One who inherits	का उत्तराधिकारी होना	Eg. He is the only heir to his father's property.
128.	Indebted to	owing gratitude to another	के प्रति कृतज्ञ	Eg. He was indebted to him for his kindness.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
129.	Liking for	Fondess	के पसंद का	Eg. He has no liking for chocolates.
130.	Succeeded	to come after (something) in a series	के अनुक्रम में होना	Eg. Akbar succeeded Humayun.
131.	Succeeded in	to achieve the desired result	कामयाब होना	Eg. He succeeded in his endeavour.
132.	A pen to write with	when a noun (for eg.-pen) is followed by (an infinitive (to+ v1), a suitable preposition follows	_	Eg. The poor have no bed to sleep in.
133.	Chair to sit on	Same as above	_	_

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
134.	By dint of	By force of	_	Eg. Sandeep passed the exam by the dint of hard work.
136.	Desist from	To stop doing something	परहेज करना	Eg. He advised me to desist from trusting flatterers.
137.	Tired of	_	से थक जाना	Eg. I am tired of his allegations.
138.	Intend to	to plan or want to do something	इरादा करना	Eg. Harshit is intending to visit Paris.
139.	Prevented from	to stop something from happening	रोक लगाना	Eg. The vaccine prevented the disease from spreading.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
140.	Persist in	to continue to do something even though when other people want to stop.	कायम रहना	Eg. Praveen persisted in continuing his studies.
142.	Fond of	To be better than order	श्रेष्ठ होना	Eg. Mansi is fond of playing Chess.
143.	Knack for	an ability, talent needed to do something	दक्षता	Eg. He has a knack for playing football.
144.	Admitted to	to allow entry	दाखिल होना	After getting injured, he was admitted to hospital.
145.	Distinguish x from y	to differentiate one from another	फर्क बताना	Eg. I could not distinguish pure silk from mixed silk.

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
146.	Distinguish between x any y	to make someone different in some way	फर्क बताना	Eg. Rama does not distinguish between the good and bad.
147.	Blind in (an eye)	unable to see	आँख से अंध होना	Eg. He is blind in one eye.
148.	Arrived at	to reach a place	पहुँचना (जगह पर)	Eg. Passengers arrived at the station on time.
149.	Arrived in	to reach a country after travelling	किसी देश में पहुँचना	Eg. Suresh had already arrived in London by that time.
150.	Succeed (to come after/as an heir) is not followed by any preposition	_	जब 'Succeed' का अर्थ उत्तराधिकारी के रूप में विराजमान होना हो, तो कोई 'preposition' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।	Eg. He succeeded his father and inherited fortune worth millions.

Exercise-4

151. Can you please___ my website before I publish it?
(A) find out (B) go through
(C) set out (D) look up

152. His service has been dispensed ___.
(A) with (B) of
(C) for (D) in

153. Jane is annoyed ___ me.
(A) with (B) on
(C) against (D) over

154. I am not angry ___ you, Paul.
(A) with (B) on
(C) at (D) over

155. The youth should believe ___ God.
(A) upon (B) in
(C) on (D) of

Answers

151. (B) go through
152. (A) with
153. (A) with
154. (A) with
155. (B) in
156. (B) in

Exercise-4

156. He was born _____ India.
(A) of (B) in
(C) of (D) through

157. The convict tried his level best to justify himself but the judge looked _____ him and found him guilty.
(A) around (B) at
(C) through (D) to

158. There is nobody _____ home.
(A) at (B) in
(C) on (D) inside

159. I do not agree _____ you.
(A) for (B) with
(C) against (D) in

160. He switched the lights _____ and we could see much better.
(A) off (B) on
(C) out (D) above

Answers

156. (B) in
157. (C) through
158. (A) at
159. (B) with
160. (B) on

Exercise-4

161. Though she is very much interested ___ singing, she is not good ___ it.
(A) in, at (B) about, in
(C) on, in (D) of, about

162. We have decided ___ moving to London.
(A) to (B) against
(C) towards (D) from

163. My father lives ___ Kondapur, a small village ___ Andhra Pradesh.
(A) in, in (B) at, in
(C) at, at (D) in, at

164. The mother was anxious ___ the safety of her son.
(A) on (B) about
(C) at (D) upon

165. Have you ever dressed ___ black ?
(A) up (B) in
(C) on (D) with

Answers

161. (A) in, at
162. (B) against
163. (B) at, in
164. (B) about
165. (B) in

166. Our ancestors had immense difficulty ___ procuring books.
(A) for (B) of
(C) in (D) on

167. Why do we always have to submit ___ his authority?
(A) under (B) with
(C) for (D) to

168. The master assured her ___ success in the examination.
(A) of (B) in
(C) for (D) with

169. There is still a need ___ further discussion.
(A) of (B) in
(C) for (D) with

170. I was surprised ___ his result and it came as a pleasant surprise for the whole family.
(A) by (B) at
(C) for (D) with

Answers

166. (C) in
167. (D) to
168. (A) of
169. (C) for
170. (A) by

Explanation

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
151.	Go through	to examine methodically	सिलसिलेवार तरीके से जाँच करना	E.g: Please go through this book.
152.	Dispensed with	to go rid of	से छुटकारा पाना	E.g: Let us dispense with the formalities.
153.	Annoyed with someone Annoyed at something		किसी व्यक्ति से चिढ़ जाना किसी बात/घटना से चिढ़ जाना	E.g: I am annoyed with him. E.g: I am annoyed mismanagement.
154.	Angry with someone Angry at something		किसी व्यक्ति से गुस्सा होना, किसी बात पर गुस्सा होना	E.g: I am angry with my cousin. E.g: I am angry at the unpleasant development.
157.	Look through	to examine	जाँच करना	E.g: He looked through my notes and appreciated my efforts.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
159.	Agree with someone Agree to something		किसी से सहमत होना किसी बात से सहमत होना	Eg. I agree with my cousin. E.g: I agree to the new proposal.
161.	Interested in something Good at something		में दिलचस्पी होना में अच्छा होना	E.g: I am interested in music. E.g: He is good at singing.
162.	Decide to move to some place Decide against moving to some place		कहीं Shift करने का निर्णय लेना कहीं Shift ना करने का निर्णय लेना	E.g: I decided to move to Mumbai as the climate of Delhi didn't suit me. E.g: I decided against moving to Mumbai as it is a congested city.

Exercise-4

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
163.	When two places are mentioned, 'at' is used with relatively small place and 'in' with relatively big place.		अगर दो स्थानों का उल्लेख हो तो सापेक्ष रूप से छोटे स्थान के साथ 'at' का प्रयोग होगा और सापेक्ष रूप से बड़े स्थान के साथ 'in' का प्रयोग होगा।	E.g: I live at Mukherjee Nagar in Delhi.
169.	Need of Need for	Lacking Requirement of more	की कमी होना कुछ ज्यादा की जरूरत होना	E.g : He is in need of some warm clothes. E.g: There is a need for further explanations.
170.	Surprised by someone/something Surprised at someone/something (when opposite was expected)			E.g: I am surprised by your result. E.g.: I am surprised at his brazenness.

Exercise-5 (DETECTING ERROR)

1. (A) The teacher /(B)said the class to open/(C) their books at page 40./(D) no error.
2. (A) Mother Teresa asked a building/(B) where she and her workers /(C)could care for the poor people./(D)no error.
3. (A) "Can you cope up/(B)with all this work?"/(C)he asked./(D)no error.
4. (A) Shelley is/ (B) superior than Byron/(C) in his vision of Democracy./(D) no error.

Explanations

1. (B); Add 'to' after' 'said' or change 'said' into 'asked'. 'Say' is followed by 'to' if an object (me, him etc) follows.
2. (A); Change 'asked' (पूछना बताना) into 'asked for' [माँग करना (to demand)].
3. (A); Change 'Cope up with' into 'cope with'. 'Cope with' means 'to handle'.
4. (B); Change 'than' into to. Adjectives that end in 'ior' take 'to' and not 'than'.

Exercise-5 (DETECTING ERROR)

5. (A) Several prominent figures/(B)involved in the scandal are required to /(C)appear to the investigation committee./(D) no error.

6. (A) Due to heavy work /(B)in the office,/(C) I was unable to catch the five-thirty train./(D) no error.

7. (A) (A)The board will /(B)appoint her as/(C) additional directior./(D)no error.

8. (A) The child /(B)was run over/(C) with a private bus./(D)no error.

Explanations

5. (C); Change 'to' into 'before'. Also change ' investigation' into 'investigating'. We need an adjective to qualify noun 'Committee'.

6. (A); Change 'Due to heavy work' into 'Owing to heavy workload'. A sentence starts with 'Owing to' and not 'due to' though in modern English 'due to' is also acceptable. SSC too has given several sentences starting with 'due to' and then marked the option D i.e. answer was 'noerror'.

7. (B); Remove 'as'. 'Appoint' is not followed by 'as'.

8. (C); Change 'with' into 'by'.

Exercise-5 (DETECTING ERROR)

9. (A) The heavy rains/(B)prevented us/(C) against going out./(D)no error.

10. (A) I/(B)met Jane /(C) in the way./(D) no error.

11. (A) The children were quarrelling between themselves /(B)when all of a sudden it occured to them that their teacher/(C)was watching them./(D)no error.

12. (A) The teacher told to/(B)the students that/(C)they must attend school regularly./(D) no error.

Explanations

9. (C); Change 'against' into 'from'.
10. (C); Change 'in' into 'on'.
11. (A); Change 'between' into 'among'. For 'more than two' 'among' is used.
12. (A); Remove 'to'. 'Tell' is not followed by 'to'.

Exercise-5 (DETECTING ERROR)

13. (A) I am extremely surprised /(B)and pleased with/(C)his result./(D)no error.
14. (A) By whom/(B)is he /(C)known?/(D)no error.
15. (A) These tribesmen live within/(B)the customs of /(C)their tribe./(D)no error.

Explanations

13. (A); Add 'by' after 'surprised'. When two prepositions are needed with two different words, both prepositions must be used.
14. (A); Change 'by' into 'to'. 'Known' takes preposition 'to' in passive voice.
15. (A); Change 'within' into 'by'. 'Live by something' means 'to behave according to a particular set of beliefs or principles'.

Preposition (Practice Set)

1. I thought I'd die _____ the pressure.
2. He died _____ exhaustion.
3. A nine-years-old child died _____ rabid bat bites in the hospital.
4. Soldiers die _____ their motherland, some of us die _____over-eating.
5. He died ____ harness.
6. Paul Walker was killed _____ a road accident.
7. I differ _____ you _____ this issue.
8. The two theories differ _____ each other in many ways.
9. Go _____ my books.
10. I saw _____ your tricks.

Answer Key

1. from
2. from
3. of
4. for, from
5. in
6. in
7. with, on
8. from
9. through
10. through

Preposition (Practice Set)

11. The train passed ____ the tunnel.
12. Don't compare boys _____ girls. They are different physically and emotionally.
13. Compare the contents of this grammar book _____ those of that one.
14. Life is compared _____ a journey.
15. Do only one work_____ a time.
16. The exam started ____ time but the light went off _____ the nick of time. This happened ___ times but I managed to solve all the questions ____ the allotted hours.
17. I will pay_____ cash and not _____ cheque.
18. I do have a taste_____ music but am not a musician so I don't have a great taste _____ music.

Answer Key

11. through
12. to
13. with
14. to
15. at
16. on,in,at,within
17. in, by
18. for, in

Preposition (Practice Set)

19. They go _____ school _____ shank's mare and not_____ bike or _____ car.
20. He was awarded _____ Param Vir Chakra Posthumously.
21. He will marry his daughter _____ a government servant.
22. He married _____ her.
23. He was married ___her.
24. (i) I cannot explain you this. (Improve the Sentence)
    (ii) She gave the dog biscuits. (Improve the Sentence)
25. I will approach _____ him in this matter.

Answer Key

19. to, on,on,by
20. with
21. to
22. ×
23. to
24. (i) I cannot explain this to you.
    24. (ii) She gave biscuits to the dog.
25. ×

Preposition (Practice Set)

26. My approach _____ life is optimistic.
27. China is _____ the North-east of India.
28. Shahdara is _____ the East of Delhi.
29. Africa is _____ the south of Europe.
30. Everything started falling _____ line _____ a few years.
31. _____ I joined the Army, I haven't taken any leave.
32. Promises were long _____ forgotten.
33. They have not talked ever _____ they fought.
34. We have been friends _____ childhood.
35. Civilization flourished _____ the Ganga.

Answer Key

26. towards
27. to
28. in
29. to
30. in,in/within
31. since
32. since
33. since
34. since
35. along

Preposition (Practice Set)

36. There is no love lost _____ you _____ her.
37. Nothing went amiss _____ between.
38. Madhya Pradesh is _____ Gujarat, Rajasthan, Uttar Pradesh and Chattisgarh.
39. This agreement will strengthen the relation _____ India, America and The United Kingdom.
40. There is a little difference _____ love, infatuation and attraction.
41. He _____ a lot of work on that article.

    (i) Put in (ii) Put on

    (iii) Put over (iv) Put out

42. I was mad _____ him because of his idiocy.

Answer Key

36. between, and
37. in
38. in between
39. between
40. between
41. Put in
42. at

Preposition (Practice Set)

43. He was madly ____love ___ her.
44. I thought _____ write an autobiography. (Note: my autobiography is superfluous)
45. I gave _____ Sana the keys
46. I gave keys _____ Sana.
47. You soon get tired _____ those monotonous activities.
48. I am sick _____ his careless attitude.
49. Shoes are lying _____ the floor.
50. He threw the jar _____ the sneaking shadow.
51. The Sun is exactly _____ us _____ noon.
52. The cheque was signed ___him____a gold pen ____ black ink.
53. The thief jumped _____ the wall.
54. There was a restlessness all _____ the country.
55. The dog was run _____ by a car.

Answer Key

43. in,with
44. to
45. ×
46. to
47. of
48. of
49. on
50. at
51. over,at
52. by,with,in
53. over/across
54. over
55. over

Preposition (Practice Set)

56. Put a cloth _____ the table.

57. _____ ten thousand Yazidis were killed in Iraq.

58. You can find them home alone _____ night.

59. I came across a cruel robber_____ the night.

60. He stood _____ the table.

61. He was jumping _____ the table.

62. The roads were closed _____ account of heavy rain.

63. It is _____ 200 kms from Delhi.

64. It is _____ finish.

65. I know _____ him.

Answer Key

56. over
57. over/about/around
58. at
59. in
60. on
61. upon / from
62. on
63. about, around, over
64. about to
65. about or No prep

Preposition (Practice Set)

66. I am _____ evil practices.
67. Put the ladder _____ the wall.
68. He was born_____ a rich family.
69. With a strength born _____ desperation, he forcefully opened the door.
70. Misery is born _____ poverty.
71. He has knack_____ painting.
72. I admit_____ my mistake.
73. I was admitted _____ a good school.
74. _____ the time of inauguration, I gave him some discount.
75. _____ dusk, cattle return from pasteur.

Answer Key

66. against
67. against
68. in
69. of
70. of
71. for
72. ×
73. to
74. at
75. at

Preposition (Practice Set)

76. _____ all his wealth he is a miser.

77. I am all _____ selling my old SUV and buying a new sedan.

78. The police are _____ our safety.

79. I bought four oranges _____ Rs 20.

80. I trust you_____ I know you well.

81. We reached _____ a conclusion.

82. We reached _____ Delhi _____ 4pm.

83. I met _____ him.

84. He met _____ an accident.

85. She attended _____ the class

Answer Key

76. for
77. for
78. for
79. for
80. for
81. at
82. ×, at
83. ×
84. with
85. ×

Preposition (Practice Set)

86. The nurse attended_____ the patient.

87. Delhi is situated _____ the bank of river Yamuna.

88. She was cured _____ cancer.

89. There is no cure _____ AIDS.

90. Please count _____ the eggs.

91. You can count _____ me at the time of need.

92. I got this mug free _____ cost.

93. We are not free _____ vices.

94. This place is infested _____ pests.

95. Lack _____ experience ruined her career.

Answer Key

86. to
87. on
88. of
89. for
90. ×
91. on
92. of
93. from
94. with
95. of

Preposition (Practice Set)

96. She lacks ____ experience.
97. The village is devoid _____ basic faculties.
98. The Iraqis are bereft ____ their fundamental rights and even deprived ___ Right to Life.
99. This fruit is deficient _____ vitamin C.
100. I was taken_____ when I saw his brazenness.
101. The charge _____ robbery is too serious.
102. He was charged _____ robbery.
103. India takes _____ Pakistan _____ Mohali ____tonight.
104. I am not concerned _____ such useless day to day activities.
105. He is concerned _____ his health.

Answer Key

96. in
97. of
98 of, of
99. in
100. aback
101. of
102. with
103. on, at, ×
104. with
105. about

Preposition (Practice Set)

106. My manager congratulated/ complimented my sister _____ her success.

107. I congratulated/complimented him _____ his new house.

108. He was filled _____ despair.

109. He was full _____ sorrow.

110 Ten jars are contained _____ this box.

111. This box comprises _____ ten jars.

112. Light consists _____ seven colours.

113. Morality consists _____ your character.

114. The streets were thronged _____ revolutionaries.

115. The monument was engulfed _____ thick cloud of smoke.

Answer Key

106.	at
107.	for
108.	with
109.	of
110	in
111.	×
112.	of
113.	in
114.	with
115.	in

Preposition (Practice Set)

116. The suitcase was crammed _____ clothes.

117. The court summoned _____ him prior _____ the fixed date.

118. Moderate climate is conducive/favourable/salubrious/beneficial _____ health.

119. Moderate climate is good _____ health.

120. I am good _____ English.

121. I am confident _____ success.

122. I have confidence _____ you.

123. He is lame _____ one leg.

124. Fate smiled _____ him.

125. He laughed _____ me.

Answer Key

116. with
117. ×, to
118. to
119. for
120. at
121. of
122. in
123. of
124. on
125. at

Preposition (Practice Set)

126. Laugh _____ your pain.
127. He flew _____ a rage.
128. Please get _____ work now. You have had enough of fun.
129. I inquired _____ him _____ his health.
130. I availed myself _____ the golden chance.
131. We adapt ourselves _____ the changing climate.
132. I acceded _____ his proposal.
133. We caved _____ to their demand.
134. I yielded _____ his demands.
135. He succumbed _____ the injuries.

Answer Key

126. away
127. into
128. down to
129. of, about
130. of
131. to
132. to
133. in
134. to
135. to

Preposition (Practice Set)

136. He asked _____ a decent pay package.
137. He demanded _____ his dues.
138. He has qualified _____ tier-II which will be held on 22nd Jan.
139. He has qualified ____ tier-II and will prepare _____ tier-III now.
140. He didn't emphasize/stress _____ the matter.
141. He laid great emphasis/stress _____ grammar.
142. I thank _____ God _____ his kindness.
143. We wrote _____ a letter every day.
144. He wrote _____ me every day.
145. He is busy and engrossed in her work. (Correct the sentence)

Answer Key

136.	for
137.	×
138.	for
139.	×, for
140.	×
141.	on
142.	×, for
143.	×
144.	to
145.	add 'with' after busy

Preposition (Practice Set)

146. I find this problem hard to deal _____ .

147. He finds sugar quite profitable to deal _____.

148. He dealt ____ the pamphlets advertising great offers.

149. He has a beautiful house live _____ .

150. The poor have no bed to sleep _____ .

151. They have no place to go _____ .

152. He presented a beautiful watch _____ me.

153. He presented _____ me _____ a beautiful watch.

154. His parents are sorry and ashamed of his conduct.
(Correct the sentence)

155. God has provided/bestowed/entrusted/endowed you _____ great power as well as duties.

Answer Key

146. with
147. in 'busy'
148. out
149. to, in
150. in
151. ×
152. to
153. ×, with
154. add 'for' after 'sorry'
155. with

Preposition (Practice Set)

156. They explained the matter _____ me.

157. This book is good except ____ some typographical mistakes.

158. _____ the end truth wins.

159. _____ the end of the class, I summarize the points.

160. _____ the end of the year, we take the final exam.

161. _____ the beginning all girls are sweet but ____ the end you see their true colours.

162. _____ the beginning of every session, we have an orientation programme.

163. He remained an atheist throughout his whole life. (Correct the sentence)

164. Your cannot go near _____ the sun.

165. Birds live _____ nests.

Answer Key

156.	to
157.	for
158.	In
159.	At
160.	At
161.	In, in
162.	At
163.	Remove 'whole'.
164.	×
165.	in

Preposition (Practice Set)

166. Birds live_____ fruits.
167. We live _____ customs and traditions.
168. I am suffering _____ fever.
169. They suffered _____ their mistake.
170. He suffered_____ a great loss.
171. He was ill _____ fever.
172. I am sick _____ my native village. I love my village.
173. He divided the money _____ four parts.
174. He divided his property _____ his four sons.
175. She divided the sweets _____ his son and daughter.

Answer Key

166. on
167. by
168. from
169. for
170. ×
171. with
172. for
173. into
174. among
175. between

Preposition (Practice Set)

176. She will divided her legacy _____ his sons and daughters.
177. I don't agree _____ you.
178. I don't agree _____ your opinion.
179. I don't agree_____ this point.
180. I lived _____ Ooty for two years.
181. He stayed ____ the hotel for two days.
182. I am angry _____ you.
183. I am disgusted _____ my neighbour.
184. I am annoyed _____ my children.
185. I am vexed _____ my arrogant colleagues.

Answer Key

176. among
177. with
178. to
179. on
180. in
181. at
182. with
183. with
184. with
185. with

Preposition (Practice Set)

186. She is exasperated _____ her mother-in-law.

187. I am angry _____ the mismanagement.

188. I am annoyed _____ the misuse of electricity.

189. I am vexed _____ the useless talks.

190. I am obliged/thankful/grateful /indebted _____ you _____ your kindness.

191. I complained _____ the police ____ the wrongdoer ____ the misconduct.

192. A complaint _____ him was lodged _____ the police.

193. You are accountable/answerable _____ god _____ your conduct.

194. He supplied/provided _____ the raw material _____ us.

195. He supplied/provided _____ us _____ the raw material.

Answer Key

186. with
187. at
188. at
189. at
190. to, for
191. to, against , for
192. against, with
193. to, for
194. ×, to
195. ×, with

Preposition (Practice Set)

196. He entrusted _____ me the responsibility.

197. He entrusted _____ the child _____ me.

198. Unhappiness is the result _____ envy.

199. Envy results _____ unhappiness.

200. Nothing equals _____ mother's milk.

201. Nothing is equal _____ mother's love.

202. He is proud _____ my victory.

203. He prides _____ my position.

204. He takes pride _____ my victory.

205. She is in love _____ and addicted _____ sweets.

Answer Key

196. ×, with
197. ×, to
198. of
199. in
200. ×
201. to
202. of
203. on/upon
204. in
205. with, to

Preposition (Practice Set)

206. He copied the essay word _____word .

207. She arrived _____ the party _____ time.

208. We arrived _____ a conclusion.

209. They arrived _____ India for the celebration.

210. The train will arrive_____ platform number 10.

211. The matter will come _____ this court.

212. Please solve the questions one _____ one and proceed step _____ step.

213. Better solve your issues one _____ one basis. Don't involve anyone.

214. His conduct is not _____ suspicion.

215. May I take leave _____ you?

Answer Key

206. for
207. at, on/in
208. at
209. in
210. at
211. before
212. by,by
213. on
214. above
215. of

Preposition (Practice Set)

216. May I take leave _____ the office?

217. Amphibians can live on land and water. (Correct the sentence)

218. Decline ____ air pressure causes bleeding through nose.

219. The decline _____ the British empire started in the early nineteenth century.

220. I am familiar _____ him.

221. I am familiar _____ his habits.

222. He jumped _____ the 4th floor.

223. He jumped _____ the lucrative offer.

224. He jumped _____ conclusion.

225. He acted _____ my advice.

Answer Key

216. from
217. add 'in' before 'water'.
218. in
219. of
220. to
221. with
222. off/from
223. at
224. to
225. upon

Preposition (Practice Set)

226. I believe _____ god.

227. I trust/believe _____ you.

228. I have complete trust/belief _____ you.

229. An opinion opposite_____ his was unacceptable.

230. My house is opposite _____ yours.

231. A well balanced diet is essential_____ health.

232. Inside ____ the box were kept all the bottles.

233. They belong _____ cattle class.

234. He comes ____ a middle class family.

235. I want to talk ____ you.

Answer Key

226.	in
227.	×
228.	in
229.	to
230.	×
231.	to
232.	×
233.	to
234.	from
235.	to

Preposition (Practice Set)

236. I had a talk ____him.

237. This case is _____ the jurisdiction of the District Court.

238. He didn't approve _____ my opinion.

239. They are head _____ heels in love.

240. Anushka played the lead role opposite _____ Shahrukh in her first movie.

241. A change _____ climate affects our health.

242. A change _____ place may improve your health.

243. We can change this AC_____ a better one.

244. He was let _____ by the court though everyone was convinced _____ his misconduct.

245. Take the next turn but not the one _____ your left.

Answer Key

236.	with
237.	beyond
238.	of
239.	over
240.	×
241.	in
242.	of
243.	for
244.	off, of
245.	on

Preposition (Practice Set)

246. He jumped _____ hoops and served mankind throughout his life.

247. Heat changes ice _____ water.

248. I am anxious _____ his health.

249. I am anxious _____ the results.

250. She is a victim _____ dowry system.

251. He fell victim _____ Dengue.

252. The title of Rai bahadur was conferred _____ certain sycophants.

253. He was restrained/refrained/debarred ____ taking the test.

254. I prefer milk _____ tea.

255. I prefer riding _____ walking.

Answer Key

246. through
247. into
248. about
249. for
250. of
251. to
252. on
253. from
254. to
255. to

Preposition (Practice Set)

256. She prefers to ride _____ to walk.

257. Please listen _____ me.

258. This music is worth listening.

259. We can take jaggery as a substitute _____ sugar.

260. We can substitute sugar _____ jaggery.

261. There is no substitute _____ hard work.

262. He is negligent _____ his duty.

263. He is neglectful _____ his responsibilities.

264. He didn't pay heed _____ my warnings.

265. He drove recklessly heedless _____ the danger.

Answer Key

256. rather than
257. to
258. ×
259. for
260. with
261. for
262. in
263. of
264. to
265. of

KD Campus

Preposition (Practice Set)

266. He is a capable boy of doing anything. (Correct the sentence)

267. He is an honest businessman in his dealings.(Correct the sentence)

268. They heard _____ a loud thud.

269. Have you heard _____ any such miraculous child?

270. Inspite _____ being ill, he attended the class.

271. Despite _____ being exhausted, he sat from beginning _____ end.

272. Heat changes ice ____ water.

273. Milk has turned _____ sour.

274. My servant has run _____ with my money.

275. This book deals _____ the author's love for India.

Answer Key

266. He is a boy capable of doing anything.

267. He is a businessman honest in his dealings.

268. ×

269. of

270. of

271. ×, to

272. into

273. ×

274. off/away, with

275. with

Preposition (Practice Set)

276. Car industry has come _____ ages.
277. Please write _____ me _____ this address.
278. Please send the letter _____ my address.
279. I am disappointed _____ the exams.
280. You are fortunate _____ having an obedient son.
281. You are fortunate_____ have obedient son.
282. I take pleasure _____ welcoming you.
283. They are required to appear _____ the investigating committee.
284. I had a test _____ mathematics this morning.
285. I wrote a book _____ grammar.

Answer Key

276. through
277. to, at
278. to
279. with
280. in
281. to
282. in
283. before
284. of
285. on

Preposition (Practice Set)

286. Do not write him _____ . I feel he still has the fire smoldering in him.

287. Please go _____ my book.

288. He wrote a book and added another feather ____ his cap.

289. I saw _____ his tricks.

290. He posted some defamatory materials _____ facebook.

291. You can bank _____ us. I will stand _____ you _____ thick and thin.

292. I make both ends meet. I have no one to fall _____ .

293. They broke _____ her house and made _____ with all her jewellery.

294. Do not cut _____ when I speak.

295. The Marathas ultimately gave and the Mughals became the supreme power.

Answer Key

286. off
287. through
288. to
289. through
290. on
291. on,by, through
292. back upon
293. into, away
294. in
295. in/up

Preposition (Practice Set)

296. They were later ousted _____ the power by the British.
297. He couldn't live _____ his parent's expectations.
298. I look _____ my mother as she is strong.
299. I look forward to meet you. (Correct to Sentence)
300. The government hushed _____ to scam.
301. I laid _____ some money for the education of my child.
302. Several employees were laid _____ during recession.
303. Lay your books _____ and lie _____ to rest.
304. The issue of triple talaq came _____ for discussion.
305. He usually picks _____ fights _____ his neighbours.

Answer Key

296. from
297. upto
298. upto
299. change 'meet' into 'meeting'
300. up
301. aside/in
302. off
303. aside, down
304. up
305. ×, with

Preposition (Practice Set)

306. The meeting was called _____ and it was raining heavily.

307. I called _____ you but you were absent.

308. I called _____ your office but you were in a meeting.

309. You must carry _____ my orders.

310. You must carry_____ with the good work.

311. We will have to do away_____ such evil practices.

312. Cases drag _____ for decades in India.

313. Corruption is eating_____ the system.

314. Call _____ a doctor. He is bleeding.

315. I will call you _____ later.

Answer Key

306. off
307. on
308. at
309. out
310. on
311. with
312. on
313. into
314. in
315. up

Preposition (Practice Set)

316. Such rumours usually die _____ . Don't worry.
317. I consult him off and _____ .
318. He went on and _____ and we were pissed _____ .
319. He is out and _____ a rogue.
320. He will understand your value by and _____
321. It was _____ and large a successful event.
322. Let bygones be _____ .
323. Move _____ Don't cry _____ spilt milk.
324. Look _____ you leap. Don't jump _____ conclusion without giving a second thought.
325. Please put _____ some make up.

Answer Key

316. down
317. on
318. on,off
319. out
320. by
321. by
322. bygones
323. on,over
324. before,to
325. on

Campus

Preposition (Practice Set)

326. Her arrogance puts me _____ .

327. Take _____ your shoes before entering the temple.

328. I cannot put _____ the arrogant man anymore.

329. Desirous result didn't come _____ despite my best efforts.

330. The meeting was put _____ .

331. The fire was put_____ .

332. The bomb went _____ suddenly.

333. He laughed ____ me.

334. He laughed _____ his problems.

335. Hard work pays _____ .

Answer Key

326.	off/out
327.	off
328.	up with
329.	off
330.	off
331.	out
332.	off
333	at
334.	away
335.	off

Preposition (Practice Set)

336. The government backed _____ at the eleventh hour.

337. I wonder what has become _____ certain film stars of 1970s.

338. The judge has cleared _____ his name and he is no more in problem.

339. He passed _____ last night and his wife is inconsolable.

340. He passed _____ due to excessive heat and remained unconscious for an hour.

341. He passed himself _____ as a journalist and reached the sensitive area.

342. The polish has worn _____ .

343. We ran short _____ money and we had to borrow to keep the wolf _____ the door.

344. The plane took _____ .

345. We ran _____ petrol and there was no petrol pump nearby.

Answer Key

336.	out
337.	of
338.	of
339.	away
340.	out
341.	off
342.	off
343.	of, from
344.	off
345.	out of

Preposition (Practice Set)

346. This machine has worn _____ .
347. He is unconscious. Send _____ a doctor.
348. We must stand _____ the right cause.
349. The bomb exploded and the building fell _____ .
350. We cannot do _____ water.
351. Drive the cattle _____ of the field.
352. You must cut _____ the intake of salt.
353. I am cut _____ for the profession of teaching.
354. You look run _____. What happened?
355. Never run _____ your friends in public.
356. I ran ____ my friend in the market yesterday after a long time.

Answer Key

346. out
347. for
348. for/by
349. apart
350. without
351. out
352. down
353. out
354. down
355. down
356. into
357. by

Preposition In Idioms & Phrases

1. _____ a stone's throw.
2. Add another feather _____ one's cap.
3. To die _____ harness.
4. _____ sea.
5. _____ home.
6. To take _____ heels.
7. Beat _____ the bush.
8. Give _____ the ghost.
9. _____ lieu _____ .
10. Drink life _____ the lees.
11. _____ fits and starts.
12. _____ cold blood.

Answer Key

1. within
2. to
3. in
4. At
5. At
6. to
7. about
8. up
9. in, of
10. to
11. By
12. In

Preposition In Idioms & Phrases

13. To talk _____ one's hat.
14. To keep _____ one's appearance.
15. To turn _____ a new leaf.
16. _____ and_____ .
17. Pass oneself_____ as.
18. _____ pillar_____ post.
19. Put the cart _____ the horse.
20. Trumped _____ .
21. Gift _____ the gab.
22. _____the brink of.
23. Foam _____one's mouth.
24. Bring_____ light.

Answer Key

13. through
14. up
15. over
16. off, on
17. off
18. From, to
19. before
20. up
21. of
22. On
23. at
24. to

Preposition In Idioms & Phrases

25. To burn candle _____ both ends.
26. Run _____ someone.
27. _____ the spur of the moment.
28. To look_____ one's nose.
29. (i) Take ___ heart. (ii) Take ___ heart.
30. To put up_____ .
31. _____ the nick of time.
32. _____ the cuff.
33. _____ hook or _____ crook.
34. Sit_____ on the fence.
35. _____ sixes and sevens.
36. Egg_____ .

Answer Key

25. at
26. into
27. On
28. down
29. (i)to (ii)×
30. with
31. In
32. Off,
33. By, by
34. on
35. At
36. on

Preposition In Idioms & Phrases

37. Haul _____ the coals.
38. To eke _____ .
39. A bird ___ hand is worth two in the bush.
40. _____ hand.
41. Pick ____ fight.

Answer Key

37. over
38. out
39. in
40. off
41. ×

Meanings

1. very near.
2. another achievement.
3. to die while in service.
4. confused.
5. comfortable.
6. run away.
7. not to come to the main topic.
8. to die.
9. in place of.
10. to lead a life of adventure.
11. irregularly, sporadic.
12. bitterly, in anger.
13. to talk nonsense.
14. to have an outward show of prosperity.
15. to change for better.
16. occasionally.
17. in the guise of.
18. to make a lot of effort.
19. doing things in a wrong way.
20. to cook up
21. oratory, articulation.
22. on the verge of
23. very angry.
24. reveal.

Meanings

25. to squander, to work hard.
26. to meet suddenly, to come across.
27. with delay.
28. to hold in contempt.
29. (i) to feel moved or affected by
    (ii) to receive courage.
30. to tolerate.
31. exactly at the right time.
32. without preparation.
33. by any means.
34. to be impartial
35. in disorder
36. to encourage / to instigate.
37. to scold.
38. to supplement.
39. Better to have a lesser but certain advantage than the possibility of a greater one that may come to nothing.
40. Without preparation.
41. To start a quarrel.

Naming Nouns

Prepared by:
Group III,BSEd 3-B

What is a Noun?

- A ***noun*** is a part of speech that denotes a person, animal, place, thing, or idea.
  The English word noun has its roots in the Latin word *nomen*, which means "names".

PERSON

- He is a **person** to see.
- **John** started to run.
- **Plato** was an influential Greek philosopher.
- **Sharon** admires her **grandmother**.
- My **mother** looks a lot like my **grandmother**, and I look very much like **them**.

ANIMAL

- The **dog** barked at the **cat**.
- **Elephants** are huge mammals.
- **Sophie** is my favourite **horse**.

PLACE

- The **restaurant** is open.
- Let's go to the **beach**.
- **Harvard** and **Yale** are two famous **universities**.
- Look! There's the **Eiffel Tower**.

THING:

- Throw the **ball**.
- Please close the **door** when you leave.
- Use **words** properly to understand.
- The **lamp** sits on a **table** next to the **sofa**.
- **Money** doesn't grow on **trees**.

IDEA

- Follow the **rules**.
- The **theory of existence** is a very important **concept**.
- **Love** is a wonderful **emotion**.

TWO BASIC TYPES OF NOUNS

Remember that all nouns are words naming people, animals, places, things, and ideas. Every noun can be further classified as either common or proper noun.

Proper Nouns

Proper nouns have two distinct functions: they name specific one-of-a-kind items and they begin with capital letters, no matter where they occur within a sentence.

For example:

Bicol University

Anne Curtis

Common Nouns

Common nouns are words used to name general items rather than specific ones.

For example:

tower

city

university

artist

Other Kinds of Noun

Countable and Uncountable Nouns

Countable nouns can be singular or plural (e.g. animal/animals, cat/cats, man/men, child/children) or simply anything that can be counted whether singular – a dog, a house, a friend, etc. or plural – a few books, lots of orange, etc.

For example:

These are at least twenty Filipino restaurants country.

Other Kinds of Noun

Anything that cannot be counted is called ***uncountable noun***. Even though uncountable nouns are not individual objects, they are always singular and one must always use singular verbs, in conjunction with uncountable nouns.

For example:

Let's get rid of the garbage.

Other Kinds of Noun

Concrete noun can be defined as " the name of an object which may be perceived by one or more of the five senses."

For example:

He loves playing **drums**.

Other Kinds of Noun

Abstract nouns are words that name things that are not concrete. Your five physical senses cannot detect an abstract noun – you can't see it, smell it, taste it, hear it, or touch it. In essence, an abstract noun is a quality, a concept, an idea, or maybe even an event.

For example:

The Filipinos cried for **Liberty**.

Other Kinds of Noun

Mass nouns are uncountable by a number. Mass nouns are quantified by a word that signifies amount.

A few examples:

- **Materials, food, metals, and natural qualities:** bread, cotton, wood, lightness, adolescence
- **Names of liquids, gases, and substances made of many small particles:** cappuccino, oil, smoke, oxygen, rice, sugar, salt, cement, gravel
- **Names of languages:** English, Spanish, French, Latin, Sanskrit, Chinese

Remember

- a number cannot be used to quantify a mass noun. Incorrect: four woods, one rice, three courages.

Other Kinds of Noun

Count nouns are nouns that can be quantified or counted with a number.

For example:

Names of persons, animals, plants, insects, and their parts: a boy, a kitten, a rose, an ear

Objects with a definite shape: a building, a balloon, an octopus, four buildings, four houses, two octopi

Units of measurement and words of classification: a gram, a pound, a piece, an item.

Other Kinds of Noun

Collective nouns are names for a collection or a number of people or things. Words like group, herd, and array are collective noun examples.

Examples:

- Our **class** took a field trip to the natural history museum.
- We waited anxiously for the **jury** to come to a verdict.

Other Kinds of Noun

List of Common Collective Nouns

- **Herd** – A group of herbivore animals
- **Pack** – A group of canine animals such as wolves or dogs; also used to describe playing cards and packages containing multiple objects
- **Flock** – A group of birds; also used to discuss small hooved animals such as sheep or goats
- **Swarm** – A group of insects
- **School** – A group of fish

Other Kinds of Noun

Compound nouns are words for people, animals, places, things, or ideas, made up of two or more words. Most compound nouns are made with nouns that have been modified by adjectives or other nouns.

Compound nouns can either be separated, hyphenated, or combined.

Genders of Nouns

Gender tells us about the sex of the noun. Noun has three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter.

- **Masculine gender**

  refers to a male character or member of a species.

- **Feminine gender**

  refers to a female member of a species.

- **Neuter gender**

  refers to a member of a species which is neither a male nor a female(lifeless objects)

Genders of Nouns

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Masculine:

- A boy is playing in the play-ground.
- Hero of the movie is not a native of this country.

Feminine:

- A girl is playing in the play-ground.
- Heroine of the movie is not a native of this country.

Neuter:

- Computer has brought about drastic changes in our lives.
- Books are our best friends.

Cases of Nouns

The CASE of a noun tells us about the position of that noun in a sentence. In English there are three CASES.

They are:

- Nominative case
- Objective case (or Accusative case)
- Possessive case (or Genitive case)

Cases of Nouns

Nominative case

A noun is said to be in the Nominative case if it is the subject of a verb. (SUBJECT is the person or the thing who or which carries out the action of the verb in the sentence)

Example:

I am buying vegetables for my family.

"I" is a pronoun in Nominative case.

Cases of Nouns

Objective case

Nouns or pronouns are said to be in Objective cases if they are the direct objects of verbs or if they are the objects of preposition. (Direct object is the person or the thing upon whom or upon which the action of the verb is carried out).

Examples:

- The book is on the table.

  "Table" is in objective case.

Cases of Nouns

Possessive case

A noun is said to be in possessive case, if it denotes possession or ownership. A noun or pronoun in the possessive case is governed by the noun that follows it.

Example:

- John’s sister has been hospitalized.

  “John’s" is in possessive case.

Understanding Pronouns

Understanding Pronouns

What is a Pronoun?

A **Pronoun** is a word that replaces a noun. It identifies persons, places, things, and ideas without restating them. In narrow sense, pronouns are used to avoid repeatedly using a noun.

Understanding Pronouns

For example:

Daniel is one of the promising actors of his generation. ***He*** is well-known for ***his*** charismatic appeal.

(In this sentence, we use the pronouns ***he*** and ***his*** to substitute for the noun Daniel. Hence, it avoids redundantly using the noun.)

Understanding Pronouns

Along with the pronoun is the ***ANTECEDENT***. An antecedent is a word for which a pronoun stands.

For example:

Aldrin brought ***his*** book to school.

(In this sentence, ***Aldrin*** is the antecedent of ***HIS***)

KINDS OF PRONOUNS

Personal Pronouns

refer to the speaker (First person), the person spoken to (second person), and the person spoken about (third person).

First person

(I, me, us, my, mine, our, ours)

Second person

(you, your, yours)

Third person

(he, she, it, they, him, her, them, his, hers, its, their, theirs)

CASES OF PERSONAL PRONOUN

	Nominative Case	Objective case	Possessive case
SINGULAR			
First person	i	me	my, mine
Second person	you	you	your, yours
Third person	he,she,it	him,her,it	his, her, hers, its
PLURAL			
First person	we	us	our, ours
Second person	you	you	your, yours
Third person	they	them	their, theirs

Cases of Pronouns

The nominative Case

A pronoun is in **nominative case** when it acts as the ***subject*** of the verb.

Example:

She has the most enticing appeal.

(In this sentence, the pronoun ***she*** is in nominative case for it functions as the subject in the sentence)

Cases of Pronouns

A pronoun is in nominative case when it is used as a PREDICATE NOMINATIVE (also known as *Subject Complement*) after any form of the verb (is, am, are, was, were, been) and other linking verbs.

Cases of Pronouns

Example:

The architect of the mansion is ***She.***

In this example, the pronoun ***she*** complements the subject **'The architect'.**

Cases of Pronouns

The Objective Case

A. The Objective case is used as Direct object of a verb.

Example:

Joey summoned her.

(In this example, the pronoun ***me*** is used as a direct object of a verb)

Cases of Pronouns

B. The objective case is used as object of a preposition.

Example:

The teacher complained that he never reported to him.

(In this sentence, the pronoun ***him*** serves as the object of the preposition ***to***)

Other Types of Pronouns.

Interrogative Pronouns

are used to ask questions.
(who, whom, whose, which,what)

For example:

Who is that girl standing beside Jeffrey?

Cases of Pronouns

The Possessive Case

The possessive case is used obviously to show POSSESSION. ***(Possessive pronouns followed by nouns are also called Possessive Adjective)***

Examples:

Their car is in the repair shop.

This book is *hers*.

Other Types of Pronouns.

Take note:

The Interrogative and relative pronouns who, whose, and whom are used to refer to persons, which to animals or things, whose to animals or persons.

Example:

For whom are those lovely red roses?

Other Types of Pronouns.

Demonstrative Pronouns

point out the person or thing referred to *(this that those these)*. When these words modify a substantive, they function as Adjectives.

For example:

This is my responsibility

Other Types of Pronouns.

Take note:

this (singular), these (plural)

that (singular), those (plural)

Other Types of Pronouns.

Indefinite pronouns

(each, either, neither, one, none, some, other, another, few, all, many, several, and both) refer to persons, places, or things.

For example:

Each should do his work.

Other Types of Pronouns.

Compound nouns

are formed by adding **-SELF** or **-SELVES** to some of the simple personal pronouns: *myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, themselves.*

Other Types of Pronouns.

1. A compound personal pronoun is used correctly as a reflexive to refer back to the subject of the sentence.

For example;

Anica finished her work by **herself**.

Other Types of Pronouns.

2. It is also used as an **INTENSIVE** for emphasis.

For example;

He **HIMSELF** is wrong.

Other Types of Pronouns.

Relative Pronoun

is not only a pronoun but also a connecting word. Because a relative pronoun connects the subordinate clause to the main cause, it is also called *conjunctive pronoun (who, whom whose, which, that)*

For example:

The contestant whose shirt is red is my favorite of them all.

Finding out Prepositions

What is preposition?

Preposition can be defined as “A word governing, and usually preceding, a noun or pronoun and expressing a relation to another word or element in the clause, as in ‘the man on the platform’, ‘she arrived after dinner’, ‘what did you do it for?

List of prepositions

about, till, out, above, against, below, beneath, beside, besides, between, through, up, upon, within, during, except, for, from, in, off, on, onto, opposite, near, of, behind, inside, into, outside, around, before, among, to, along, at, toward, under, underneath, across, like, until, with, beyond, by, down, since, without, after, etc.

For Example:

- My class teacher laughed.

  (this is a correct sentence, however does not provide much detail about the situation without a preposition word)

- My class teacher laughed at the joke.

  (in this sentence, preposition word is used properly which gives us much detail about the situation)

TYPES OF PREPOSITION

There are various types of prepositions described below with proper definition and examples:

- Simple Preposition
- Compound Preposition
- Phrase Preposition
- Participle Preposition
- Double Preposition
- Other Preposition (preposition of place, preposition of time, preposition of direction)

Simple preposition

Simple prepositions are used in the simple sentences. Some of the simple prepositions are in, on, at, to, from, with, by, about, over, under, off, of, for, etc.

For example:

I am not going with you.

She is waiting in the park.

Dad is going to the market.

Compound preposition

Compound prepositions are used to join two nouns, pronouns or phrases. Some of the compound prepositions are about, across, among, beside, before, above, along, inside, between, around, behind, below, beneath, etc.

For example:

My city is located between two mountains.

I will finish the lunch before 12 o'clock.

I want to know about my former teacher more.

Phrase preposition

Prepositional phrases are groups of words having prepositions indicating relationships among various elements in the sentence. Some of the phrase prepositions are according to, an account of, in spite of, in front of, for the sake of, in order to, by means of, with reference to, in addition to, due to, etc.

For example:

I work hard in order to maintain my position in the class.

Participle preposition

A participle preposition is a participle (like an, ed, or ing verb) which acts as a preposition such as assuming, considering, barring, given, concerning, notwithstanding, pending, during, regarding, respected, provided, etc.

For example:

I get sick during summer season.

I would like to speech regarding healthy food.

My project work is still pending.

I think I can pass the exam easily considering my hard work.

Double preposition

Double prepositions are words having two prepositions (joined together to make a whole new one) such as into, onto, outside of, out of, within, from behind, because of, etc.

For example:

We need to solve three questions out of five.

We won the game just because of Ronnie.

I need to complete my project within four days.

Preposition of place

Prepositions of place are used to show the place where something is located such as at, in, on, while, during, near, over, under, between, behind, etc.

For example:

Dog is on the floor.

My home is near to the office.

My home is behind the metro station.

Mom is in the room.

Preposition of time

Prepositions of time are used to indicate time of an action or time relationship between nouns in the sentence. Such as at, to, in, etc.

For example:

I go to school daily at nine o'clock.

My result gets declared in March.

Preposition of direction

Prepositions of direction are used to indicate direction of someone or something in the sentence such as over, under, to, on, into, in, onto, right, left, etc.

For example:

It's time to go to school.

The train is going into the tunnel.

We are going over the bridge.

Object of prepositions

- The object of a preposition is the noun or pronoun governed by a preposition.
- The object of a preposition is usually but not always the noun or pronoun immediately to the right of the preposition.
- Prepositions often begin prepositional phrases. To complete the phrase, the preposition usually teams up with a noun, pronoun, or gerund, or the *object* of the preposition.
- In English grammar, the *object of a preposition* is a noun, noun phrase, or pronoun that follows a preposition and completes its meaning. The object of a preposition is in the objective case.

Here are some examples of objects of prepositions

- This is one small step for a man, one giant leap for mankind. (Neil Armstrong)

(The word a before man is a modifier. The object of a preposition is often accompanied by modifiers that precede it or follow it.)

- The ants get in your ears when you are sleeping.

(The word your is a modifier.)

- Inside every cynical person, there is a disappointed idealist. (George Carlin)

(The words every and cynical are modifiers.)

List of prepositions

While there are only about 150 prepositions in the English language, these 5 words are among the most important. Without them, the sentences we speak, read, and write would be difficult to understand. The following list of prepositions is not a complete one, however it is among the most comprehensive lists of prepositions available anywhere.

ON

Used to express a surface of something:

- I put an egg on the kitchen table.

Used to specify days and dates:

- The garbage truck comes on Wednesdays.
- I was born on the 14th day of June in 1988.

Used to indicate a device or machine, such as a phone or computer:

- He is on the phone right now.
- She has been on the computer since this morning.
- My favorite movie will be on TV tonight.

AT

Used to point out specific time:

- The bus will stop here at 5:45 p.m.

Used to indicate an email address:

- Please email me at abc@defg.com.

Used to indicate a place:

- There is a party at the club house.
- We saw a baseball game at the stadium.

Used to indicate an activity:

- He laughed at my acting.

IN

Used for unspecific times during a day, month, season, year:

- The new semester will start in March.

Used to indicate a location or place:

- She looked me directly in the eyes.

Used to indicate a shape, color, or size:

- This painting is mostly in blue.
- The students stood in a circle.

Used to indicate a belief, opinion, interest, or feeling:

- I believe in the next life.

TO

Used to indicate Place/direction

- Who is going to market?
- They are going to America in May.

Used before a verb

- He wants to go there.
- To take exercise is good for health.

Used to indicate Time

- He works from 9am to 7pm.
- They lived in our house from April 1996 to June 1999.

  It is ten minutes to five.

FROM

Used to indicate Place

- They have just come from Mumbai.
- Withdraw money from the bank.

For Person

- You can borrow money from your friend.
- I have taken this book from Raja.

Indicate Time

- He works from morning till evening.
- We shall start this work from Monday.

For Source

- The light comes from the sun.
- She has taken the story from this book.

Understanding Conjunction

What is a Conjunction?

- A conjunction is a part of speech that is used to connect words, phrases, clauses or sentences. Conjunctions are considered to be invariable grammar particle, and they may or may not stand between items they conjoin.

Conjunction Rules

There are few important rules for using conjunctions. Remember them and you will find that your writing flows better:

- Conjunctions are for connecting thoughts, actions, and ideas as well as nouns, clauses, and other parts of speech.
- For example: Mary went to the supermarket **and** bought oranges
- Conjunctions are useful for making lists.
- For example: We made pancakes, eggs **and** coffee for the breakfast.
- When using conjunctions make sure that all parts of your sentences agree.
- For example: "I work busily **yet** am careful" does not agree. " I work busily **yet** carefully" shows agreement.

Conjunctions List

- There are only a few common conjunctions yet these words perform many functions: they present explanations, ideas, exceptions, consequences and contrasts. Here is a list of conjunctions commonly used in American English.

- And
- As
- Because
- But
- For
- Just as
- Or
- Neither
- Nor
- Not only
- So
- Whether
- Yet

Examples of Conjunctions

In the following examples, the conjunctions are in bold for easy recognition:

- I tried to hit the nail **but** hit my thumb instead.
- I have two goldfish **and** a cat.
- I'd like a bike **for** commuting to work.
- You can have peach ice cream **or** a brownie sundae.
- Neither the black dress **nor** the gray one looks right on me.
- My dad always worked hard **so** we could afford the things we wanted.
- I tried very hard in school **yet** I am not receiving good grades.

Coordinating Conjunction

Coordinating conjunctions coordinate or join two or more sentences, main clauses, words, or other parts of speech which are of the same syntactic importance. Also known as coordinators, coordinating conjunctions are used to give equal emphasis to a pair of main clauses.

Coordinating Conjunction Rules

As there are only seven of these words there are just a few rules for using coordinating conjunction correctly.

1. It's a good idea to use the mnemonic "FANBOYS" to memorize coordinating conjunctions so you'll never forget them. They are:

- F = for
- A = and
- N = nor
- B = but
- O = or
- Y = yet
- S = so

2. Coordinating conjunctions always connect phrases, words and clauses. For example: this batch of the mushroom stew is a savory and delicious.

3. Some instructors warn that starting a sentence with a coordinating conjunctions is incorrect. Mostly this is because they are attempting to help prevent you from writing fragments rather than complete sentences; sometimes though, it's just a personal preference. The fact is, you can begin sentences with coordinating conjunctions as long as you follow these three rules for doing so:

- Ensure that the coordinating conjunction is immediately followed by a main clause.
- Don't use coordinating conjunctions to begin of all your sentences. Do so only when it makes your writing more effective.
- Although commas typically follow coordinating conjunctions used in areas other the beginning of the sentence, they should not be used after coordinating conjunction used to open sentences unless an interrupter immediately follows.

Examples of Coordinating Conjunctions

- In the following examples, the coordinating conjunctions have been italicized for easy identification.

1. You can eat your cake with a spoon *or* fork.
2. My dog enjoys being bathed *but* hates getting his nails trimmed.
3. Bill refuses to eat peas *nor* will he touch carrots.
4. I hate to waste a drop of gas, *for* it is very expensive these days.

Subordinating conjunctions

- Subordinating conjunctions are parts of speech that join dependent clauses to independent clauses. Sometimes referred to as subordinators or subordinate conjunctions, these important words and phrases may also introduce **adverb clauses**.

- Subordinating **conjunctions** are essential parts of complex sentences with include at least two clauses, with one of the clauses being main (independent) and the other being subordinate (dependent).
- **There is only one rule to remember about using subordinate conjunctions:**
  - A subordinate conjunction performs two functions within a sentence. First, it illustrates the importance of the independent clause. Second, it provides a transition between two ideas in the same sentence.
  - The transition always indicates a *place*, *time*, or *cause and effect* relationship. For example: We looked in the metal canister, *where* Ginger often hides her candy.

Examples of Subordinating Conjunctions

- In the following examples, the subordinating conjunctions are in bold for easy identification:

1. ***As*** Sherri blew out the candles atop her birthday cake, she caught her hair on fire.
2. Sara begins to sneeze ***whenever*** she opens the window to get a breath of fresh air.
3. ***When*** the doorbell rang, my dog Skeeter barked loudly.

After

As

Because

By the time

Even though

If

Now that

Why

So

Unless

Until

Although

As soon as

Before

even if

Every time

in case

Once

Correlative Conjunctions

What is a correlative conjunction?

- As suggested by their name, correlative **conjunctions** correlate, working in pairs to join phrases or words that carry equal importance within a sentence. Like many of the most interesting parts of speech, correlative conjunctions are fun to use. At the same time, there are some important rules to remember for using them correct

- When using correlative conjunctions, ensure **verbs** agree so your sentences make sense. For example: *Every night, **either** loud music **or** fighting neighbors wake John from his sleep.*
- When you use a correlative conjunction, you must be sure that **pronouns** agree. For example: ***Neither** Debra **nor** Sally expressed her annoyance when the cat broke the antique lamp.*
- When using correlative conjunctions, be sure to keep parallel structure intact. Equal grammatical units need to be incorporated into the entire sentence. For example: ***Not only** did Mary grill burgers for Michael, **but** she **also** fixed a steak for her dog, Vinny.*

Examples of Correlative Conjunctions

In the following examples, the correlative conjunctions have been italicized for easy identification.

1. She is *both* intelligent *and* beautiful.
2. I will *either* go for a hike *or* stay home and watch TV.
3. Jerry is *neither* rich *nor* famous.
4. He is *not only* intelligent, *but also* very funny.
5. Would you *rather* go shopping *or* spend the day at the beach?


Nouns

Nouns - are simply the names we give to everything around us, whether it be a person, an event, a place or an object, etc. Every particular name used to define something is a noun. E.g. : Amsterdam, Anita, Blackberry, Honesty, Waiter, etc.


Types
of
Nouns

PROPER NOUNS

These nouns are the names of specific people and places. These nouns also refer to the names of the days of weeks and months, and also the various names for religions, organizations, institutions, etc. Proper nouns basically refer to the names that are specific to that particular noun. These nouns are always capitalized as they need to be distinct from other nouns.

Examples:

- William Shakespeare was a playwright.

- Proper noun that is the name of a specific person.

- I will be visiting New York next month.

- Proper noun that is the name of a specific place.



Examples:

- Everyone dislikes Monday mornings.
  - The names of days are proper nouns.

- The holy book of Islam is the Koran.
  - Name of a religion and religious text.



COMMON NOUNS

These are the nouns that are used to denote a general category of people, places or things. They are capitalized only when they are at the beginning of a sentence. Common Nouns don't refer to something specific rather they are a general term used for every noun of a particular kind or type.

Examples:

- The boys went to play cricket.

(Both boys and cricket are common nouns as they can refer to any boy or any cricket match. There is nothing specified by these nouns.)



Examples:

- This neighborhood is one of the best in the area.

(Here neighborhood is the common noun as there are innumerable neighborhoods all over the world.)



Examples:

- She was trying to answer her phone while buying coffee.

(Here we see phone and coffee that both are general indicators of the object and the drink.)



ABSTRACT NOUNS

These nouns are the names of things that we cannot perceive through our five senses of touching, smelling, seeing, hearing and tasting. These nouns can also refer to medical conditions related to the mind and are also used to express thoughts.

Examples:

- She screamed with great delight.

(Delight is an abstract noun as it tells about the state of a person's mind and any actual physical thing.)



Examples:

- His bravery in the war won him a medal.

(The abstract noun bravery is used to name the motivation behind certain actions made by people.)



Examples:

- One should learn to be as <u>independent</u> as possible.

(Here, independent describes a state or a way of being, hence it is an abstract noun.)



COUNTABLE NOUNS

The nouns that fall under this category are the ones that have both singular and plural forms. They can be counted either relatively or completely, and form plurals to associate with plural verbs in a sentence. They can also be expressed in numerical terms.

Examples:

- I need to buy four new suitcases for my trip.

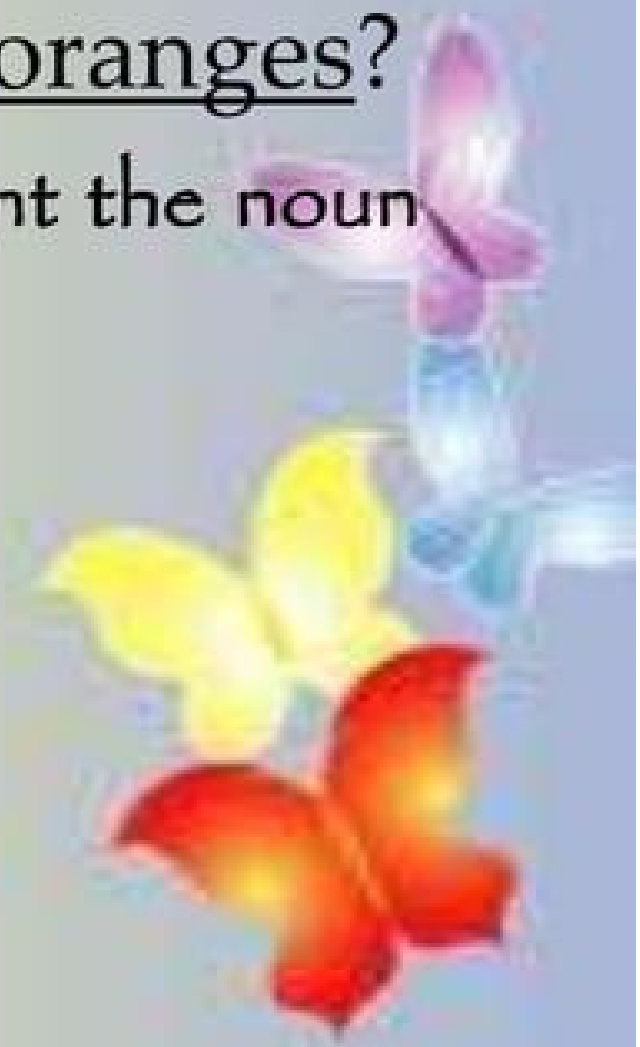
(Suitcase (s) is a countable noun as adding 's' to it makes it plural.)



Examples:

- Does anyone want some oranges?

(Here, some is being used to count the noun orange(s).)



Examples:

- She had a pet dog.

(Dog is also a countable noun as its plural is dogs.)



UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

These nouns are the exact opposite of Countable Nouns. These nouns are the names of things that cannot be counted and have only a singular form. These nouns use singular verbs in a sentence.

Examples:

- The furniture was damaged in moving out.

(Furniture is an uncountable noun and therefore, we use the singular 'was' in referring to it.)



Examples:

- Is 250 grams of sugar enough?

(Here, sugar is an uncountable noun as sugar itself cannot be counted. It can only be weighed.)



Examples:

- He always answers questions with honesty.

(Honesty is an uncountable noun as it has no plural and cannot be counted in physical terms either.)



COLLECTIVE NOUNS

Collective noun is the name we give to a group of nouns to refer to them as one entity. The most common method of doing this is by using words like group or bunch that can be applicable to most of the nouns in the language today. But there are some specific names given for certain groups of nouns to make things more interesting and funny.

These collective nouns are commonly used under the category of people.

A class of students.	A bunch of crooks.
An army of soldiers.	A gang of thieves.
A choir of singers.	A group of dancers.
A crew of sailors.	A team of players.
A band of musicians.	A pack of thieves.

These collective nouns are commonly used under the category of people.

A crowd of people/spectators.
A troupe of artists/dancers.
An audience of listeners.
A staff of employees.
A regiment of soldiers.

These collective nouns are commonly used under the category of people.

A tribe of natives.
An audience of listeners.
A panel of experts.
A gang of laborers.
A flock of tourists.
A board of directors.

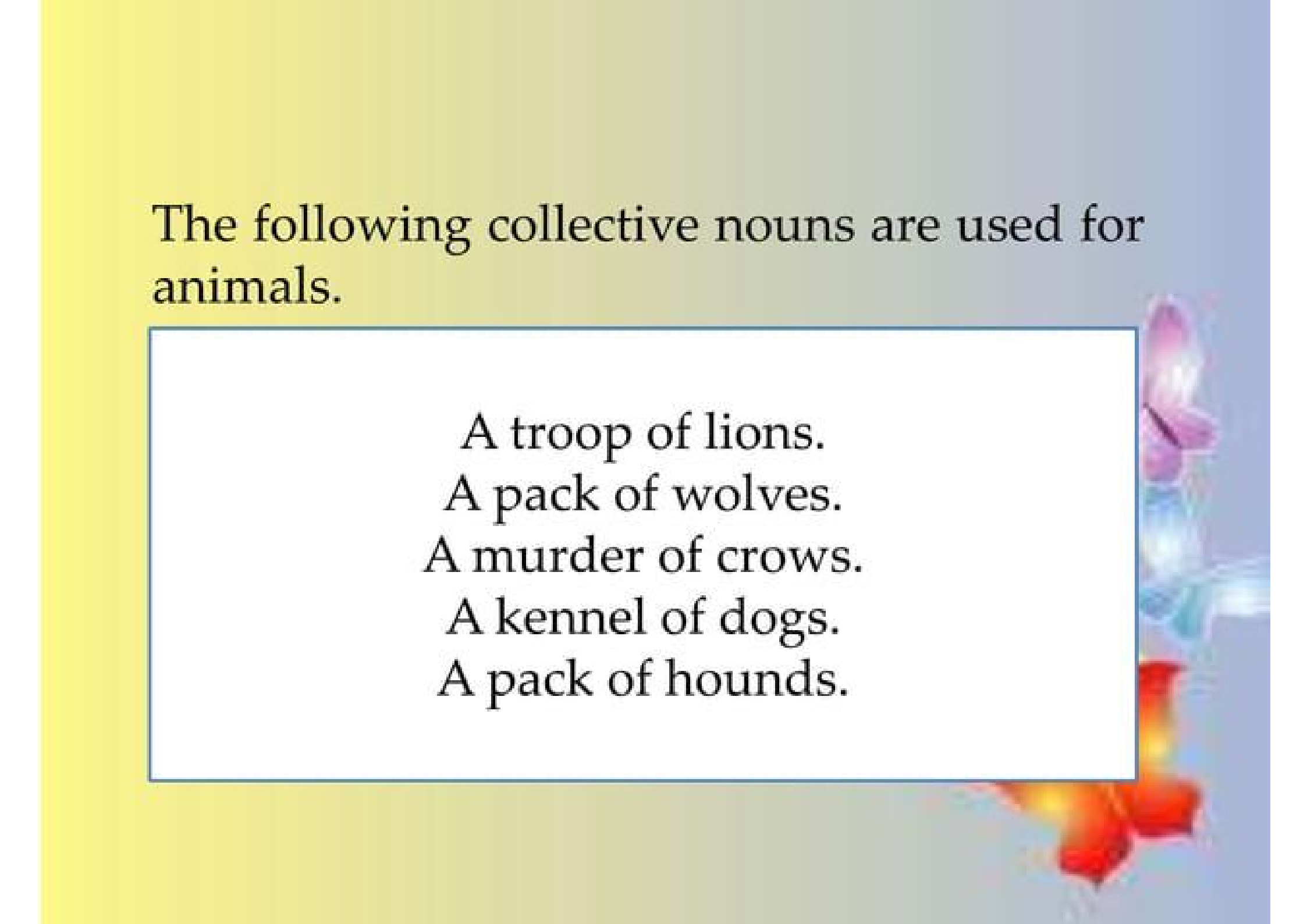
The following collective nouns are used for animals.

A catch of fish.
An army of ants.
A flight of birds.
A flock of birds.
A school of fish.

A hive of bees.
A litter of cubs.
A host of sparrows.
A team of horses.
A flock of sheep.

The following collective nouns are used for animals.

A troop of lions.
A pack of wolves.
A murder of crows.
A kennel of dogs.
A pack of hounds.



The following collective nouns are used for animals.

A herd of
deer/cattle/elephants/goats/buffaloes.

The following collective nouns are used for animals.

A zoo of wild animals.
A litter of puppies/kittens.
A swarm of bees/ants/rats/flies.
A team of horses/ducks/oxen.

The following collective nouns are used for things.

A group of islands.
A galaxy of stars.
A wad of notes.
A forest of trees.
A stack of wood.

A hedge of bushes.
A library of books.
A basket of fruit.
A bowl of rice.
A pack of cards.

The following collective nouns are used for things.

A pair of shoes.
A bunch of keys.
A chest of drawers.
A pack of lies.
A cloud of dust.

The following collective nouns are used for things.

An album of
stamps/autographs/photographs.

The following collective nouns are used for things.

A fleet of ships.
A string of pearls.
A bouquet of flowers.
A range of mountains.

COLLECTIVE NOUNS

Collective nouns are endless and these are just a list of those used more often. As you continue to work on improving your English, you will stumble across many more. Be sure to add them to your list and use them as frequently as you can.

POSSESSIVE NOUNS

Possessive nouns are those nouns that show possession. Possessive Nouns are used to show ownership.

POSSESSIVE NOUNS

A noun is possessive only when a phrase can be modified to say that an idea or commodity belongs to something or someone. Possessive nouns are an integral part of learning English, use them as often as you can to gain confidence.

Here are some rules to help you use possessive nouns

Rule 1: In singular nouns (person, place, thing or idea), we add apostrophe and 's' after the noun.

Here are some rules to help you use possessive nouns

For example:

Ron's car is in the garage. (Car belonging to Ron is in the garage)

Here are some rules to help you use possessive nouns

Rule 2: In singular nouns ending with ‘s’, we add an apostrophe and ‘s’ to the noun.

Here are some rules to help you use possessive nouns

Note that the possessive noun always comes before what the person or a thing owns or has. In this case, the car belongs to Ron and hence the singular noun 'Ron' is placed before 'car' that he owns.

Here are some rules to help you use possessive nouns

For example:

1.) Tejas's notebook is lying on the table. (Notebook of Tejas is lying on the table)

2.) Suhas's wife is a doctor. (Wife of Suhas is a doctor)

Here are some rules to help you use possessive nouns

Rule 3: In singular nouns ending with ‘s’ followed by a word starting with 's', we just add an apostrophe to the noun. This is to avoid a hissing sound.

Here are some rules to help you use possessive nouns

For example:

1.) Tejas' school is in Malviya Nagar.

2.) Suhas' sister is a teacher.

Here are some rules to help you use possessive nouns

Rule 4: In plural nouns (ending with 's'), we add apostrophe after 's'.

Here are some rules to help you use possessive nouns

For example:

1.) Students' report cards are ready.

2.) Girls' dance classes have been postponed.

Here are some rules to help you use possessive nouns

In the first one, the plural of 'student' is 'students'. To show that the report cards belonging to the students are ready, we simply add apostrophe after 's'.

Here are some rules to help you use possessive nouns

Similarly, in the second sentence, the plural of 'girl' is 'girls'. To show that the dance classes which the girls attend have been postponed, we add apostrophe after 's'.

Here are some rules to help you use possessive nouns

Rule 5: In irregular plural nouns (men, children) we add apostrophe and 's' to show possession.

Here are some rules to help you use possessive nouns

For example:

1.) Children's clothes are expensive. (Clothes of children are expensive)

2.) People's mindset needs to be changed. (Mindset of people needs to be changed)

Here are some rules to help you use possessive nouns

In the first example, plural of 'child' is 'children'. To show that the clothes belonging to the children are expensive, we add apostrophe and 's' after children. The same rule applies to the second example as well.

Here are some more examples to show you other possible cases.

Alex and Philip's shop. (Two nouns are used closely and showing joint possession; Here, the apostrophe will be used with the second noun)

Here are some more examples to show you other possible cases.

Shakespeare's and Wordsworth's works. (Two nouns are used together yet separate possession is implied thus the apostrophe is used with both nouns)

Exercises 1.1

Direction: Determine what type of Noun are the following.

1.) herd

2.) boys

3.) love

4.) The Bible

5.) marble

6.) Ms. Pathupats

7.) squadron

8.) happiness

9.) teacher

10.) sand

Exercises 1.2

Direction: Show the possessive form of the following Nouns.

1.) child clothing

2.) men wear

3.) student desk

4.) Jesus cloth

5.) Anne and Miguel table

Exercises 1.3

Direction: Identify the following.

_____ 4.) is the name we give to a group of nouns to refer to them as one entity.

_____ 5.) These nouns are the exact opposite of Countable Nouns.

End ☺

Exercises 1.3

Direction: Identify the following.

_____ 1.) are simply the names we give to everything around us, whether it be a person, an event, a place or an object, etc.

_____ 2.) are the names of specific people and places.

_____ 3.) These nouns are the names of things that we cannot perceive through our five senses .

NOUNS

0701.1.1 Identify the correct use of nouns (i.e., common/proper, singular/plural, possessives, direct/indirect objects, predicate).

Noun Activator

- Watch School House Rocks-
  A Noun is a Person, Place, or Thing

Nouns

- A **noun** is a word or word group that is used to name a person, place, a thing, or an idea.
  - Examples:
    - Persons: teacher, Paris Hilton, mother
    - Places: school, Johnson City, mall
    - Things: lamp, book, desk
    - Ideas: love, courage, freedom

Types of Nouns

1. <u>Proper nouns</u> name a particular person, place, thing, or idea and begin with a capital letter.
   - Examples:
     - Person: George Washington
     - Place: United States of America
     - Thing: *Shrek 3*
     - Ideas: Christianity
     - _____ (your example)

5. A collective noun is a word that names a group.
   - Examples:
     - alumni
     - faculty
     - committee
     - team
     - _____ (your example)

2. <u>Common nouns</u> name any one of a group of persons, places, things, ideas and is generally not capitalized.

- Examples:
  - Person: president
  - Place: country
  - Thing: movie
  - Ideas: religion
  - _____ (your example)

4. <u>Abstract nouns</u> name an idea, a feeling, a quality, or a characteristic.
   - Examples:
     - love
     - fun
     - wisdom
     - Hinduism
     - _____ (your example)

3. <u>Concrete nouns</u> name a person, place, or thing that can be perceived by one or more of the senses.
   - Examples:
     - photographs
     - music
     - sand
     - Washington Monument
     - _____ (your example)

6. Compound nouns are formed by joining two simple nouns together.
   - Examples:
     - boy + friend= boyfriend
     - ice + land= Iceland
     - brother + in + law= brother-in-law
     - grass + hopper= grasshopper
     - _____ (your example)

Let's Practice!

- Underline each noun in the sentence. Double-underline the noun if it is a proper noun.

Underline ALL nouns in the sentences

Let's Practice!

1. When a volcano erupted in the Sunda Strait of Indonesia, the whole world felt the effects.
2. The noise from the eruption of Krakatoa could be heard at great distances.
3. The force of the blast could be felt as far away as Hawaii.
4. A cloud of ash circled the globe and created spectacular sunsets.

Singular and Plural Nouns

- When a noun means one only, it is **singular.**

  Examples: boy, girl, book, church, box

Rule #1: The plural of nouns is usually formed by adding *s* to a singular noun.

Examples: lamp, lamps; cat, cats; fork, forks; flower, flowers; pen, pens

Singular and Plural Nouns

Rule #2:

Nouns ending in *s, z, x, sh,* and *ch* form the plural by adding *es*.

Examples: moss, mosses; dish, dishes;
church, churches; box, boxes

Singular and Plural Nouns

- Tell if the following nouns are singular (s) or plural (p)

box	owner	trees
chair	chairs	tables
lamps	wagons	star
ax	houses	bush
sketch	pencils	days

Singular and Plural Nouns

Rule #3:

Nouns ending in *y* preceded by a consonant are formed into a plural by changing *y* to *ies*.

Examples: lady, ladies; city, cities; army, armies

Singular and Plural Nouns

- Write the plural of the following words:

baby	story	berry
lady	duty	theory
city	cherry	pony

Singular and Plural Nouns

Rule #4

Nouns ending in *y* preceded by a vowel form their plurals by adding *s*.

Examples: boy, boys; day, days

Singular and Plural Nouns

- Write the plural of the following words:

day	essay	turkey
toy	valley	chimney

Singular and Plural Nouns

Rule #5:

Most nouns ending in *o* preceded by a consonant are formed into a plural by adding *es*.

Examples: hero, heroes; grotto, grottoes

Although some may add *s* or *es*.

Examples: halo, tornado

and some add *s* only:

Examples: solo, piano, albino, lasso

Singular and Plural Nouns

Rule #6

Some nouns ending in *f* or *fe* are made plural by changing *f* or *fe* to *ves*.

Examples: leaf, leaves; wife, wives; half, halves; life, lives

Singular and Plural Nouns

Rule #6, Cont'd.

Exceptions: Some nouns ending in *f* or *fe* form their plurals by adding *s*.

Examples: chief, chiefs; roof, roofs; safe, safes

Singular and Plural Nouns

- Special Note:
- There are some irregular plurals such as:

man, men

woman, women

ox, oxen

mouse, mice

goose, geese

Your Example:

Singular and Plural Nouns

Special Note:

Some nouns have no singular, such as:

scissors
measles
tongs
tweezers
trousers

Your Example:

Singular and Plural Nouns

- Special Note:

  Some nouns are always singular. Some of these nouns may also be used in the plural.

Examples: gold, silver, wheat, gallows, news

Singular and Plural Nouns

- Special Note: If compound nouns are plural, form the plural with the first word.

Examples:

Singular	**Plural**
son-in-law	sons-in-law
daughter-in-law	daughters-in-law
maid of honor	maids of honor
secretary of state	secretaries of state

Nouns Summarizer

- Watch BrainPop!
  - –Nouns
  - –Take BrainPop! quiz at the end

Assignment

Trackers Out!

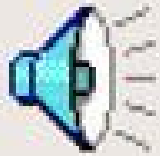
- GUM Workbook Pages:
  - –26 ALL
  - –27 ALL
  - –28 ALL

Noun Song

- We will listen to the noun song on the next slide
  - Follow along using your notesheet.

Noun Song

A person, place, or thing is a noun.
My name is a noun.
Fame is a noun.
Everything I can be is a noun.
Everything I see is a noun.



Nouns can be **ideas**
like freedom and kindness,
justice, equality, sympathy and
greatness.

A person, place, or thing is a noun.
My town is a noun
Clown is a noun.
Everything I can be is a noun.
Everything I see is a noun.

Nouns are sometimes **proper**
like Lincoln and Texas,
Honda, Lake Michigan, Jennifer and
Rome.

A person, place, or thing is a noun.
Rain is a noun.
Plane is a noun.
Everything I can be is a noun.
Everything I see is a noun.

Nouns are sometimes **common**
like city or country,
country, community, continent or tree.

A person, place, or thing is a noun.
Mom is a noun.
Tom is a noun.
Everything I can be is a noun.
Everything I see is a noun.

What is noun?

Noun **is a word use to name a person, animal, place, thing and abstract idea. Nouns are usually the first word which small children learn.**



UNIVERSITY OF OTTAWA


NOUNS

What is noun?

Noun **is a word use to name a person, animal, place, thing and abstract idea. Nouns are usually the first word which small children learn.**



UNIVERSITY OF OTTAWA

NOUNS



A person: *baby*



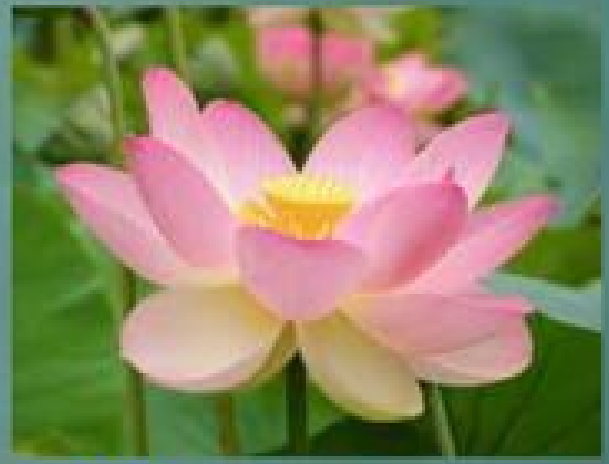
An idea: *freedom*



A place: *city*



An animal: *puppy*



A thing: *flower*

Nouns

Singular and plural nouns:

Singular nouns: Refer to one thing.

a baby,



a puppy,



a flower



Plural nouns: Refer to two or more things.

babies,



puppies,



flowers



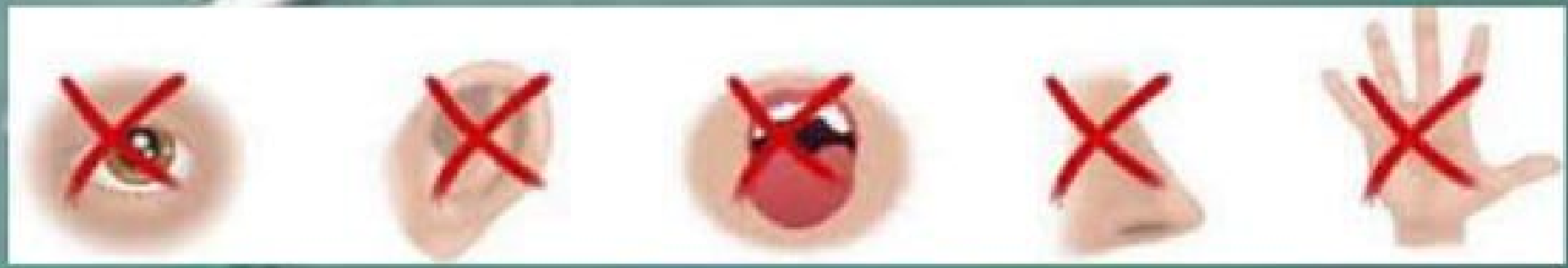
Nouns

- Concrete and Abstract nouns

Concrete nouns: **Something you can perceive with your five senses (taste, feel, hear, smell and see)**



Abstract nouns: **Something you cannot perceive any of your five senses**



Nouns

- Collective nouns

Name a group of people or things. This class of nouns denotes a group of people, animals or objects or concepts or ideas as a single entity



Army, troops

Nouns

- Compound nouns

Made up of two or more words acting as a single unit.

Types:



Separate words: **coffee table**

Hyphenated words: **editor-in-chief**





Combined words: **battlefield**

Nouns

Common Nouns and Proper nouns

A Common noun names anything of the nouns (person, animal, place, thing, idea)

A Proper noun names a specific person, animal, place, thing, idea.



person - *Angela*
animal (dog) - *Doggie*
place - *Cebu*
thing (pencil)- *Mongol*

Nouns

Count nouns and Non count nouns

Count nouns **are nouns that we can count:**

(one pencil, two pencils, three pencils)

They can be singular or plural:

Ex. *a book, two books*

Non count nouns **are nouns that we cannot count. They have no plural form.**

Ex. Bread, cheese, ice-cream, yogurt.

Put a or an before singular nouns.

Do not use article a or an with non countable nouns.

Nouns

- Possessive noun

Noun that show ownership or possession.

- **Rule #1: *Making singular nouns possessive***

Add an apostrophe + s to most singular nouns and to plural nouns that do not end in s.

Examples:
Singular nouns: kitten's toy, Joe's car, MLB's ruling
Plurals not ending in s: women's dresses,
sheep's pasture, children's toys



Nouns

(Possessive noun)

❖ **Rule** #2: ***Making plural nouns possessive***

Add an apostrophe only to plural nouns that already end in s.

Examples:



Companies′ workers
Horses′ stalls
Countries′ armies

Nouns
(Possessive noun)

❖ **Rule** #3: ***Making hyphenated nouns and compound nouns plural***

Compound and hyphenated words can be tricky. Add the apostrophe + s to the end of the compound words or the last word in a hyphenated noun.

Examples:



My mother-in-law's recipe for meatloaf is my husband's favourite.

Nouns
(Possessive noun)

- **Rule #4:** ***Indicating possession when two nouns are joined together***

You may be writing about two people or two places or things that share possession of an object. If two nouns share ownership, indicate possession only once, and on the second noun. Add the apostrophe + s to the second noun only.



Nouns
(Possessive noun)

Examples:

Jack and Jill's pail of water features prominently in the nursery rhyme.
Abbot and Costello's comedy skit "Who's On First" is a classic act.



Nouns
(Possessive noun)

- **Rule** #5: ***Indicating possession when two nouns are joined, and ownership is separate***

This is the trickiest of all, but thankfully you'll probably need this rule infrequently. When two nouns indicate ownership, but the ownership is separate, each noun gets the apostrophe + s. The examples below may help you understand exactly what this means.



Nouns
(Possessive noun)

Example:

Lucy's and Ricky's dressing rooms were painted pink and blue. ***(Each owns his or her own dressing room, and they are different rooms).***

Senator Obama's and Senator Clinton's educations are outstanding. ***(Each senator owns his or her education, but they attained separate educations).***




End!
Thank you and God bless.
Fs3
Prepared by:
Estillero, Sr. Rodith V.

PRONOUNS



Definition

"Pronoun" is the sentence element used to replace a noun, or a noun equivalent construction. The replaced noun is named the "antecedent".

CATEGORIES OF PRONOUNS

Syntactically, pronouns have the same functions as nouns do; morphologically, pronouns are used to avoid repetition, and to set/clarify nouns' categories of number, person, and gender.

There are eight categories of pronouns, The categories of pronouns are:

1. Personal Pronouns.
2. Possessive Pronouns .
3. Demonstrative Pronouns.
4. Reflexive and Emphatic Pronouns.
5. Interrogative Pronouns.
6. Relative Pronouns.
7. Reciprocal Pronouns.
8. Indefinite Pronouns.

PERSONAL PRONOUN

Personal pronouns represent specific people or things. We use them depending on:

number: singular (**I**) or plural (**we**).

person: 1st person (**I**), 2nd person (**you**) or 3rd *person*(**he**).

gender: male (**he**), female (**she**) or neuter (**it**).

case: ***subject*** (**we**) or ***object*** (**us**).

We use personal pronouns in place of the person or people that we are talking about.

Here are the personal pronouns, followed by some example sentences:

number	person	gender	personal pronouns	
			subject	object
singular	1st	male/female	I	me
	2nd	male/female	you	you
	3rd	male	he	him
		female	she	her
		neuter	it	it
plural	1st	male/female	we	us
	2nd	male/female	you	you
	3rd	male/female/ neuter	they	them

Examples (in each case, the first example shows a **subject pronoun**, the second an **object pronoun**):

- I like coffee.
- John helped me.

- Do you like coffee?
- John loves you.

- He runs fast.
- Did Ram beat him?

-She is clever.
- Does Mary know her?

- We went home.
-Anthony drove us.

-It doesn't work.
-Can the engineer repair it?

-Do you need a table for three?
-Did John and Mary beat you at doubles?

-They played doubles.
-John and Mary beat them

We often use **it** to introduce a remark:

-It is nice to have a holiday sometimes.
-It is important to dress well.

.

We also often use **it** to talk about the weather, temperature, time and distance:

-It's raining.
-It will probably be hot tomorrow.
-Is it nine o'clock yet?
-It's 50 kilometers from here to Cambridge.

Possessive Pronouns

- We use possessive pronouns to refer to a specific person/people or thing/things (the "antecedent") belonging to a person/people (and sometimes belonging to an animal/animals or thing/things).

-You will never find a possessive pronoun near a noun, despite the fact it is the genitive of personal pronoun

-We use possessive pronouns depending on:
-number: singular (mine) or plural (ours)
-person: 1st person (mine), 2nd person (yours) or 3rd person (his)
-gender: male (his), female (hers) .

Below are the possessive pronouns, followed by some example sentences. Each possessive pronoun can:

- be subject *or* object.
-refer to a singular *or* plural antecedent.

number	person	gender (of "owner")	possessive pronouns
singular	1st	male/female	mine
	2nd	male/female	yours
	3rd	male	his
		female	hers
plural	1st	male/female	ours
	2nd	male/female	yours
	3rd	male/female/neuter	theirs

Examples:

-Look at these pictures. **Mine** is the big one. (subject = My picture)

-I like your flowers. Do you like **mine**? (object = my flowers)

-All the essays were good but **his** was the best. (subject = his essay)

-John found his passport but Mary couldn't find **hers**. (object = her passport)

	Singular	Plural
Used before nouns	my your his, her, its	our your their
Used alone	mine yours his, hers, its	ours yours theirs

REFLEXIVE AND EMPHATIC PRONOUN

Definitions

-**Reflexive pronoun** is used with an active voice verb in order to reflect the action of the verb back on the subject--the antecedent.

-**Emphatic pronoun** accompanies its antecedent in order to accentuate its action/state.

-**Reflexive** and **emphatic pronouns** take different positions within the sentence structure.

** We use a reflexive pronoun when we want to refer back to the subject of the sentence or clause. Reflexive pronouns end in "-self" (singular) or "-selves" (plural). There are eight reflexive pronouns:

	reflexive pronoun
singular	myself yourself himself, herself, itself
plural	ourselves yourselves themselves

the underlined words are the SAME person/thing

-I saw myself in the mirror.

-Why do you blame yourself?

-John sent himself a copy.

-I made it **myself**. *OR* I **myself** made it.
-Have you **yourself** seen it? *OR* Have you seen it **yourself**?
-She spoke to me **herself**. *OR* She **herself** spoke to me.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

Demonstrative pronouns and **demonstrative adjectives** have exactly the same forms. The way to differentiate them depends on their position relative to the antecedent/determined nouns.

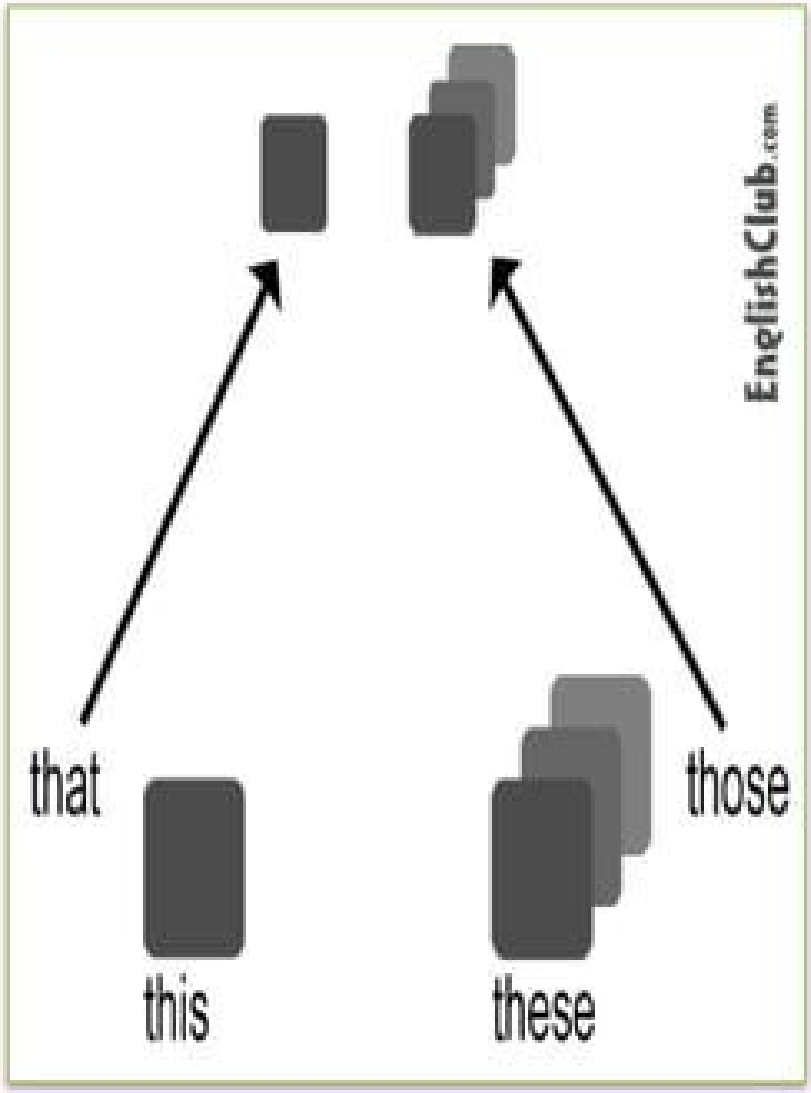
Demonstrative pronouns
THIS, THESE, THAT, THOSE.
THE FORMER, THE LATER
THE FIRST, THE LAST
THE OTHER,THE OTHERS
SAME
SUCH
SO

A demonstrative pronoun represents a thing or things:

*near in distance or time **(this, these)**
*far in distance or time **(that, those)**

	near	far
singular	this	that
plural	these	those

***This** tastes good.
***These** are bad times.
***That** is beautiful.
***Those** were the days!



ATTENTION

The word "**that**" has four **main** functions:

1. demonstrative pronoun or adjective:

That book *is good.*

2. relative pronoun:

Anything ***that*** *you remember could help a lot.*

3. conjunction:

He said ***that*** *he had been there before.*

4. adverb:

The snow was ***that*** *high*.

-Do not confuse demonstrative pronouns with demonstrative adjectives. They are identical, but a demonstrative pronoun stands alone,
while a demonstrative adjective qualifies a noun.
-That smells. (demonstrative pronoun)
-That book is good. (demonstrative adjective + noun)

Normally we use demonstrative pronouns for things only. But we can use them for people when the person is identified. Look at these examples:
-This is Josef speaking. Is **that** Mary?
-That sounds like John

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

We use interrogative pronouns to ask questions. The interrogative pronoun represents the thing that we don't know (what we are asking the question about).
There are four main interrogative pronouns: **who**, **whom**, **what**, **which** .

-The possessive pronoun **whose** can also be an interrogative pronoun (an interrogative possessive pronoun).

	subject	object	
person	who	whom	
thing	what		
person/thing	which		
person	whose		(possessive)

Examples:

question	answer	
Who told you?	John told me.	subject
Whom did you tell?	I told Mary.	object
What's happened?	An accident's happened.	subject

Relative Pronouns

- A relative pronoun is a pronoun that introduces a relative clause. It is called a "relative" pronoun because it "relates" to the word that it modifies.

There are five relative pronouns: ***who, whom, whose, which, that***.

Who (subject) and **whom** (object) are generally only for people. **Whose** is for possession. **Which** is for things. **That** can be used for people, and things and as subject and object in defining relative clauses.

Relative pronouns can refer to singular or plural, and there is no difference between male and female.

Examples:

- The person who phoned me last night is my teacher.

- The car which hit me was yellow.

- The person whom I phoned last night is my teacher.

- The car, whose driver jumped out just before the accident, was completely destroyed

Reciprocal Pronouns

- We use reciprocal pronouns when each of two or more subjects is acting in the same way towards the other.

There are only two reciprocal pronouns, and they are both two words:

- each other

- one another

- When we use these reciprocal pronouns:

there must be **two or more** people, things or groups involved (so we cannot use reciprocal pronouns with I, you [singular], he/she/it), and
they must be **doing the same thing**

Examples:

- John and Mary love **each other**.
- The ten prisoners were all blaming **one another**.
- Why don't you believe **each other**?

INDEFINITE PRONOUN

An indefinite pronoun does not refer to any specific person, thing or amount. It is vague and "not definite". Some typical indefinite pronouns are:

Some Indefinite Pronouns

Singular			Plural
another	everybody	no one	both
anybody	everyone	nothing	few
anyone	everything	one	many
anything	much	somebody	others
each	neither	someone	several
either	nobody	something	

All, any, most, none and some can be singular or plural, depending on the phrase that follows them.

Note that many indefinite pronouns also function as other parts of speech. Look at "another" in the following sentences:

- He has one job in the day and another at night. (pronoun)
- I'd like another drink, please. (adjective)

Most indefinite pronouns are either singular or plural. However, some of them can be singular in one context and plural in another.

Notice that : A singular **pronoun** takes a singular *verb* AND that any personal pronoun should also *agree* (in number and gender).

- **All** is forgiven.
- **All** have arrived.

- We can start the meeting because **everybody** has arrived.

- John likes coffee but not tea. I think **both** are good.

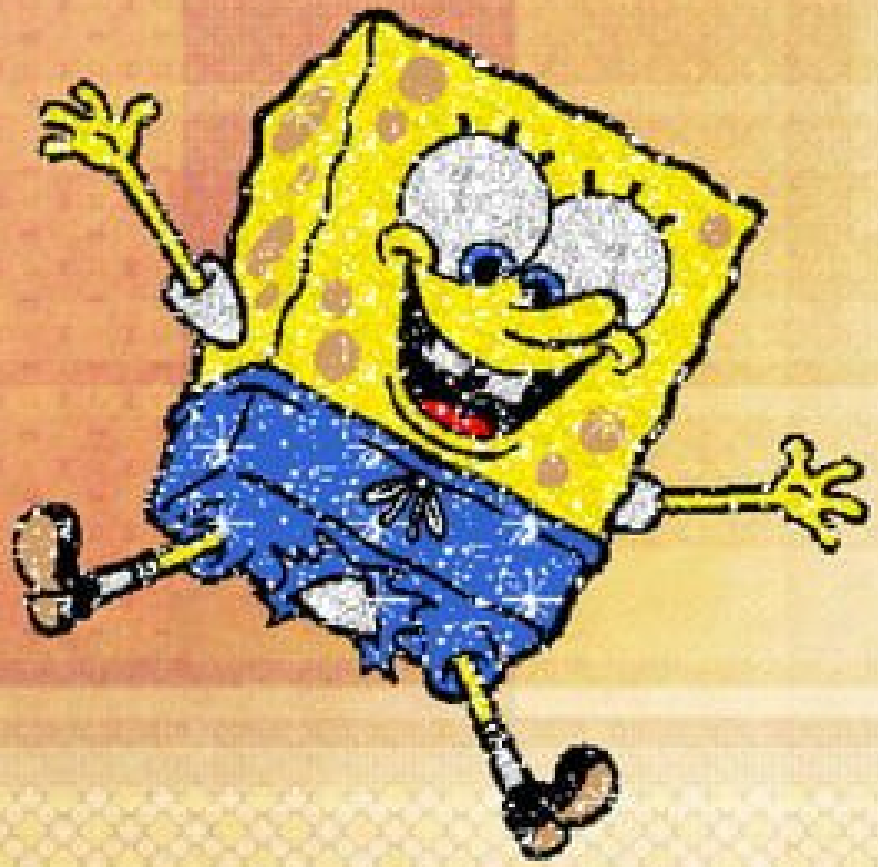

THANK YOU

References:

1- www.englishclub.com .

2- www.corollarytheorems.com.

Taghreed Ahmed Basabrain
3091116



course:
LANE 334

instructor:
Dr.Shadia Banjar

done by
Nawar abullrhman khan
0879681



Presentation:

SYNTAX

We are going to concentrate on making noun phrases by using the following formulas:

Determiner | Noun
Determiner | Adjective | Noun
Determiner | Adjective | Adjective | Noun

Determiners are used in front of nouns to indicate whether you are referring to something specific or something of a particular type.

Determiners are words that are used with nouns:

- to define something or someone
- to state the amount of people, things or other nouns
- to state possessives
- to state something or someone is specific
- to state how things or people are distributed
- to state the difference between nouns
- to state someone or something is not specific

There are different types of determiners. The type of determiner depends on the type of noun.

- Singular nouns always need a determiner.
- Plural nouns the determiner is optional.
- Uncountable nouns the determiner is also optional.

There are about 50 different determiners in the English language they include:

Articles | Numbers | Quantifiers | Ordinals

Demonstratives | Possessives

Articles : ***a, an, the***

Demonstratives : **this, that, these, those, which etc.**

Possessives : **my, your, our, their, his, hers, whose, my friend's, our friends', etc.**

Quantifiers : **few, a few, many, much, each, every, some, any etc.**

Numbers : **one, two, three, twenty, forty**

Ordinals : ***first, second, 1st 2nd, 3rd, last, next,* etc.**

You use a specific determiner when people know exactly which thing (s) or person/people you are talking about.
The specific determiners are:

the definite article (*the*), *Demonstratives*, possessives

For example:-

"***The*** dog barked at ***the*** boy."
"***These*** apples are rotten."
"***Their*** bus was late."

You use general determiners to talk about people or things without saying exactly who or what they are.
The general determiners are:

the indefinite articles (*a, an*), a few, a little, all ,another any, both ,each ..etc

For example:-

"***A*** man sat under ***an*** umbrella."
"Have you got ***any*** English books that I could have?"
"There is ***enough*** food to feed everyone."

Neither

Either

Either and neither are used in sentences concerning a possible choice between two items.
Either can mean one or the other (of two) or each of two.

For example:-
*I've got tea and coffee, so you can have **either**.* (One or the other)
*The room has a door at **either** end.* (Both)

Neither means not the first one and not the second one.

For example:-
***Neither** of the students were listening.*

Phrases and Clauses



PHRASE

- A *phrase* is a group of words, without a subject and verb, that functions in a sentence as one part of speech.

Examples:

- ✓ leaving behind the dog
- ✓ smashing into a fence
- ✓ before the first test

COMMON TYPES OF PHRASES

1. PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES
   - contain a preposition and a noun or pronoun called the object of the preposition.

Examples:

PREP OBJ OF PRE

✓ on the freshly pressed white jacket

PREP OBJ OF PREP OBJ OF PREP

✓ beside the driftwood and seaweed

COMMON TYPES OF PHRASES

- Prepositional phrases modify adjectives or adverbs and are called either *adjective phrases* or *adverb phrases.*

- *Adjective phrase* is a prepositional phrase that modifies a noun or pronoun by telling what kind or which one.

- Examples:
- ✓ For Tom, fame is the only reason *for writing.* (What kind of reason?)
- ✓ The lamp *on Tom's desk* was a Christmas gift. (Which lamp?)

COMMON TYPES OF PHRASES

- *Adverb phrase* is a prepositional phrase that modifies a verb, an adjective, or adverb by pointing out where, when, in what manner, or to what extent.

- Examples:
- ✓ Wanting to impress Sue, Tom planned to make reservations *at an expensive restaurant.* (Make reservations *where*?)
- ✓ The volcano rumbled *in the early morning.* (Rumbled *when?*)
- ✓ Tom consumed the sundae *in short order.* (Consumed *in what manner?)*
- ✓ The shovel bit deep *into the earth.* (Deep *to what extent?)*

COMMON TYPES OF PHRASES

- 2. APPOSITIVE AND APPOSITIVE PHRASES
  - are words placed next to nouns and pronouns to provide additional information.

An **appositive** is a noun or pronoun placed next to another noun or pronoun to identify, rename, or explain it.

Examples:

- ✓ She did not care for his hobby, *running*.
- ✓ My friend *Marilyn* broke her collarbone.

COMMON TYPES OF PHRASES

An **appositive phrase** is a noun or pronoun with modifiers placed next to a noun or pronoun to add information and details.

Examples:

- ✓ My jacket, *a windbreaker,* fits well. (with a subject)
- ✓ I bought a book, *an international atlas.* (with a direct object)
- ✓ The man gave his wife, *his partner for ten years,* a beautiful opal ring. (with an indirect object)

COMMON TYPES OF PHRASES

To set up contrasts, appositives and appositive phrase may begin with the word *not.*

Example:

- ✓ You should leave at seven o'clock, *not eight o'clock.*

Appositives and appositive phrases can be compound.

Example:

- ✓ The family –*Trapp, his wife, and his children*– escaped from Austria during World War II.



COMMON TYPES OF PHRASES

Two sentences can be combined by turning the information in one sentence into an appositive.

Examples:

Two sentences: The fruit was picked. The fruit was sun-ripened pears.

Sentence with appositive phrase: The fruit, *sun-ripened pears,* was picked.

COMMON TYPES OF PHRASES

- 3. VERBAL AND VERBAL PHRASES

  - A *verbal* is a word derived from a verb but used as a noun, adjective, or adverb.
  - A verbal with modifiers or a complement is called a *verbal phrase.*
  - There are three kinds of verbals – *participles*, *gerunds*, and *infinitives* – and the phrases that can be formed around them.

COMMON TYPES OF PHRASES

- 3. VERBAL AND VERBAL PHRASES

  - PARTICIPLES AND PARTICIPIAL PHRASES

    A **participles** is a form of a verb that acts as an adjective.

FORMS OF PARTICIPLES

Kinds of Participles	Forms	Examples
Present Participle	Ends in *-ing*	His *fascinating* responses convinced us
Past Participle	Ends in *-ed, -t, -en*	The *extended* table accommodated more people.
Perfect Participle	Includes *having* or *having been* before a past participle	*Having exercised,* I rested.

COMMON TYPES OF PHRASES

- 3. VERBAL AND VERBAL PHRASES

A **participial phrase** is a participle modified by an adverb or adverb phrase or accompanied by complement.

Examples:

- ✓ *Burning brightly,* the fire lit up the room.
- ✓ *Holding the snake*, I felt its cool skin.

COMMON TYPES OF PHRASES

3. VERBAL AND VERBAL PHRASES

- GERUNDS AND GERUND PHRASES
  A **gerund** is a form of a verb that acts as a noun.

Examples:

- ✓ *Vaulting* is my best event in gymnastics.
- ✓ *Swallowing* hurt my sore throat.

COMMON TYPES OF PHRASES

- 3. VERBAL AND VERBAL PHRASES

  - GERUNDS AND GERUND PHRASES

    A **gerund phrase** is a gerund with modifiers or a complement, all acting together as a noun.

Examples:

- ✓ *Worrying about the deadline* prevented the writer from sleeping.
- ✓ *Fishing from the pier* is permitted.

COMMON TYPES OF PHRASES

- 3. VERBAL AND VERBAL PHRASES

  - INFINITIVES AND INFINITIVE PHRASES

    An **infinitive** is a form of a verb that generally appears with the word *to* and acts as a noun, adjective, or adverb.

    FORMS OF INFINITIVES

Kinds of Infinitives	Forms	Examples
Present Infinitives	*To* plus the base form of a verb	I like *to debate.*
Perfect Infinitives	*To have* or *to have been* plus a past participle	I would have liked *to have gone.*

COMMON TYPES OF PHRASES

- 3. VERBAL AND VERBAL PHRASES

  - INFINITIVES AND INFINITIVE PHRASES

    An **infinitive phrase** is an infinitive with modifiers, a complement, or a subject, all acting together as a single part of speech.

Examples:

- ✓ The baby wanted *to wiggle continuously.*
- ✓ I plan *to visit during the afternoon.*
- ✓ The student asked *the college to send a catalog.*

CLAUSES

- A *clause* is a group of words with its own subject and verb.

Examples:

- ✓ Since **she** laughs at diffident men
- ✓ Because **she** smiled at him
- ✓ When the **saints** go marching in



TWO KINDS OF CLAUSES

1. INDEPENDENT CLAUSES
   - has a subject and a verb and can stand by itself as a complete sentence.

Examples:

- ✓ The school will be closed on Friday.
- ✓ I love grammar.



TWO KINDS OF CLAUSES

- 2. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES
  - also known as "Dependent Clause".
  - A subordinate clause, although it has a subject and a verb, cannot stand by itself as a sentence; it is only part of a sentence.

Examples:

- ✓ After the children left for school
- ✓ Because I love grammar



TWO KINDS OF CLAUSES

- 2. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES
  - KINDS OF SUBORDINATE CLAUSES
    - *ADJECTIVE CLAUSES (a.k.a. relative clause)*

      An adjective clause is a subordinate clause that modifies a noun or pronoun by telling what kind or which one.

      Example:
      - ✓ The rug, *which I bought yesterday,* is beige.
      - ✓ I still remember the time *when you broke your arm.*

TWO KINDS OF CLAUSES

- 2. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES
  - KINDS OF SUBORDINATE CLAUSES
    - *ADJECTIVE CLAUSES (a.k.a. relative clause)*
      - **Essential Adjective Clause** – begins with a relative pronoun like *that* or *who*. An essential clause is not set off by commas.

      Example:
      - ✓ The building *that they built in San Francisco* sold for a lot of money.

TWO KINDS OF CLAUSES

- 2. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES
  - KINDS OF SUBORDINATE CLAUSES
    - *ADJECTIVE CLAUSES (a.k.a. relative clause)*
      - **Nonessential Adjective Clause** – begins with a relative pronoun like *which or who* and set off by commas.

      Example:
      - ✓ The building, *which they built in San Francisco*, sold for a lot of money.

TWO KINDS OF CLAUSES

- 2. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES
  - KINDS OF SUBORDINATE CLAUSES
    - *ADVERB CLAUSES*

      An adverb clause is a subordinate clause that modifies a verb, adjective, adverb, or verbal. it does this by pointing out where, when, in what manner, to what extent, under what condition, or why.

      Example:

      ✓ I'll do the laundry *when I'm out of clothes.*

      ✓ We called *because we were worried about you.*

TWO KINDS OF CLAUSES

- 2. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES
  - KINDS OF SUBORDINATE CLAUSES
    - *NOUN CLAUSES*

      A noun clause is a subordinate clause that acts as a noun in a sentence.

      Example:

      ✓ The boy wondered *if his parents bought him what he wanted for Christmas.*

      ✓ The dentist treated *whichever patient arrived first.*

THE STRUCTURE OF A SENTENCE

- Sentences may be classified according to the kind and number of clause they contain.

1. A **simple sentence** consists of a single independent clause.
2. A **compound sentence** consists of two or more independent clauses joined by a comma and a coordinating conjunction or by a semicolon.
3. A **complex sentence** consists of one independent clauses and one or more subordinated clauses.
4. A **compound-complex sentence** consists of two or more independent clauses and one or more subordinate clauses.

THE STRUCTURE OF A SENTENCE

- Examples:

Simple Sentence	I **received** your letter last week. Either Fran or Dave **will sell** the tickets.
Compound Sentence	One group **addressed** the envelopes, and another **sorted** them by ZIP code.
Complex Sentence	SUBORDINATE CLAUSE Although the old photograph **had faded** badly, MAIN CLAUSE we **could** still **see** many details.
Compound-Complex	INDEPENDENT CLAUSE SUBORDINATE CLAUSE I **turned on** the heat as soon as we **arrived**, **and** INDEPENDENT CLAUSE Now the house **is** warm.

AVOIDING PHRASES AND CLAUSES FRAGMENTS

- Do not unintentionally capitalize and punctuate phrases, subordinate clauses, or words in a series as if they were complete sentences.

- Examples:
- ✓ Participial Fragment:

  Error:

  - Angered by the injustice of the remark.

  Correction:

  Angered by the injustice of the remark, Linda argued with her friend.

AVOIDING PHRASES AND CLAUSES FRAGMENTS

- Prepositional Fragment:

  Error:

  - With his hand in the cookie jar.

  Correction:

  - The four-year old culprit was caught *with his hand in the cookie jar.*

AVOIDING PHRASES AND CLAUSES FRAGMENTS

- Noun Fragment:

  Error:

  - A hurricane with fierce winds and rain.

  Correction:

  - *A hurricane with fierce winds and rain* lashed the coast.

- Verb Fragment:

  Error:

  - Will be at the rehearsal today.

  Correction:

  - *I will be at the rehearsal today.*

20 Rules of Subject Verb Agreement



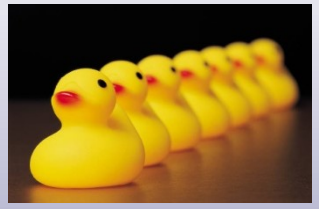
Can't we all just get along?

Suman Singh

1. Subjects and verbs must agree in number.

- Singular subject = singular verb
- Plural subject = plural verb
- Cow= singular, eats= singular
- Ducks= plural, quack= plural
- *Hint*= SVS- singular verbs have an S
- Singular yes?- the verb has an “S”!
- Singular no? The “S” has to go!





2. Don’t get confused by the words that come between the subject and verb.

The detective *who was called to the case* **is** usually very good.



3. Prepositional phrases between the subject and verb usually do not affect the agreement.



The biker *in this race* **is** very competitive.

The bikers *in this race* **are** very competitive.



4. If a sentence starts with “there” or “ here”, the subject will always be placed after the verb.



There is a ***meeting*** today.



Here are the **results** from this past month.

5. Subjects can come after the verb in questions.

- **Does** Betty always **play** with dolls?



- How **are** the Bosco sticks today?



6. If two subjects are joined by "*and*", they typically require a plural verb.

- The puppy and the lady **are** friends.



7. If two subjects are separated by "*and*" refer to the same thing, the verb is singular.

- Spaghetti and meatballs **is** my favorite pasta dish.



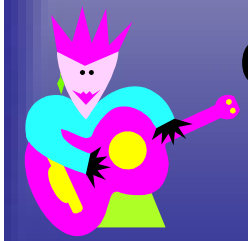
Suman Singh

8. If both subjects are singular and connected by *or*, *nor*, *neither/nor*, *either/or* and *not only/but also*, the verb is singular.



- Sally *or* Bubba **<u>has</u>** stolen the scarecrow.

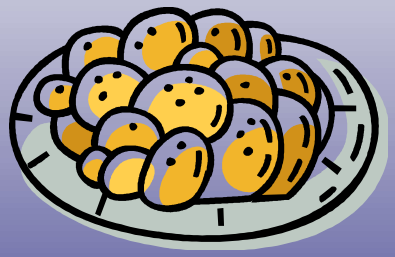
- *Not only* the guitar player *but also* the drummer **<u>was</u>** soaked with sweat.





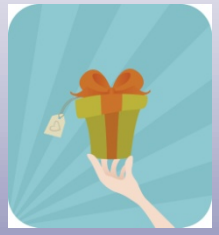
9. If both subjects are plural and connected by the words *or, nor, neither/nor, either/or,* and *not only/but also*, the verb is plural.

- Cookies or brownies **<u>are</u>** nice treats for your teacher.

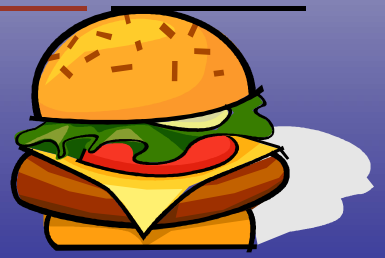


10. If one subject is singular and one plural and are connected by the words *or, nor, neither/nor, either/or,* and *not only/but also*, use the subject that is nearest the verb.

- Either my sisters or my *mom* **has** sent me a present.



- Not only Bob but also *the Smiths* **want** some hamburgers for supper.



11. Units of measurement usually use a singular verb.

- Six gallons of paint **was** used on the house.



- Five dollars **is** too much for a cup of coffee.





12. Collective nouns usually take a singular verb.

- The herd **is** stampeding.

The class **was** ready for the test.



13. Titles of books, movies, novels, etc. are treated as singular.

- *Holes* **was** one of my favorite books.I want to see the movie.

14. Two infinitives separated by *and* take a plural verb.

- To run and to read **are** my two favorite "Free-time" activities.





15. Gerunds alone take a singular verb. Gerunds linked by *and* take a plural verb.

- Dancing **is** not something everyone can do as well as I can!

16. If the words *each*, *every* or *no* come before the subject, the verb is singular.

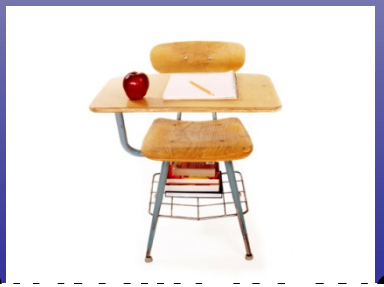


- Each boy and girl **has** to take the test.
- Every frog and toad **turns** into a prince.



- No paper and pen **is** required.

(But an apple would be nice!:)



- Dancing and singing **come** na

17. Most indefinite pronouns take singular verbs.

one	body	thing
someone	**somebody**	**something**
anyone	**anybody**	**anything**
No one	**nobody**	**nothing**
everyone	**everybody**	**everything**



Little **One**

Another **Neither**

Much **Either**

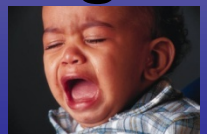
Each

*** Everybody is happy.**

*** No one has a dime.**



*** Nothing was going to help.**



18. ***Both, few, many, others,*** **and *several*** take a plural verb.

- Several **need** to finish the race.



- A few **have** the right answer.



19. When the subject is ***all, any, more, most, none, or some***, this is the ONLY time you must look at the object of the prepositional phrase to determine whether it is singular or plural.

- **All** *of the chickens* **have** laid eggs.

- **Some** *of the milk* **has** spilled.

20. Final rule- Remember, only the SUBJECT affects the verb!



KD LIVE

Conjunction



Download Now!

KD LIVE App

Email: online@kdcampus.org | Contact : 8586903756 /8586903746

Classes of Conjunction

1. **CO-ORDINATING CONJUNCTION:-** Joins statements or clauses of equal rank. ('Coordinating' means of 'equal rank'.)

   (एक ही Rank के वाक्यों एवं clause को जोड़ता है।)

   Now what is the meaning of Equal Rank? (Equal Rank का अर्थ क्या है?)

   Let us see some examples. (कुछ उदाहरण देखते हैं।)

Examples

1. He is rich but miser. (×)
   Adj. Noun

'But' is a Co-ordinating Conjunction so both the words joined by a Co-ordinating Conjunction must be of equal rank.

Examples

He is rich but miserly. (✓)
Adj. Adj.

Examples

2. He is foolish and coward. (×)
   Adj. Noun

   He is foolish and cowardly. (✓)
   Adj. Adj.

3. She ate an apple, an orange and washed her hands. (×)
   Noun Noun Verb

   She ate an apple and an orange and then washed her hands. (✓)
   Noun Noun Verb

Examples

4. It is like doing nothing or be idle. (×)
   (doing: Gerund; be: $V_{b.f}$)

   It is like doing nothing or being idle. (✓)
   (doing: Gerund; being: Gerund)

5. He likes to jog and running when he exercises. (×)
   (to jog: Infinitive; running: Gerund)

   He likes to jog and to run when he exercises. (✓)
   (to jog: Infinitive; to run: Infinitive)

6. She works honestly and with sincerity. (×)
   (honestly: Adverb; with: Prep; sincerity: Noun)

   She works honestly and sincerely. (✓)
   (honestly: Adverb; sincerely: Adverb)

Co-ordinating Conjunctions are of four types

1. Cumulative

Merely adds one statement to another.

(दो वाक्यों को जोड़ता है)

Eg:- She cooks and I clean.

2. Adversative

Expresses contrast between two sentences.

(दो वाक्यों के बीच का विरोध दर्शाता है।)

Eg:- He worked hard but he failed.

3. Alternative

Expresses a choice between two alternatives.

(दो विकल्प के बीच चुनाव दर्शाता है।)

Eg:- She must work hard or she will fail.

4. Illative

Expresses an Inference.

(निष्कर्ष दर्शाता है।)

Eg:-

We must have neglected the instructions for the pandemic spread rapidly.

Here 'for' means 'because'.

2. SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS:- The Conjunction introducing the dependent or subordinate clause is called a Subordinating Conjunction.

Examples After, Because, If, That, Though, Although, Till, Before, Unless, As, When, While.

Subordinating Conjunction

1. If I had seen him, I would have greeted him.
   Subordinate Clause — Principal Clause
2. He ran away because the police were after him.
3. Although he worked hard, he failed.
4. Kindly wait till I pack my bag.
5. You will not succeed unless you work hard.

Subordinating Conjunctions may be classified according to their meanings

TIME — before, till, since, after

Examples

1. I haven't seen him since he left India.
2. Wait till he returns.

CAUSE — because, since, as

Examples

1. Since I was ill, I did not come.
2. As he was a brave heart, he joined the army

PURPOSE — so that, lest

Examples

1. We eat so that we may live.
2. Run fast lest you should miss the bus.

Subordinating Conjunctions may be classified according to their meanings

RESULT — so, therefore

Examples

1. He worked hard so he passed.
2. He was severely injured therefore he died.

CONDITION — If, unless

Examples

1. If you work hard, you will pass.
2. Unless he invites us, we won't go to party.

Subordinating Conjunctions may be classified according to their meanings

CONCESSION — though, although

Examples

1. Though he cheated me yet I love him.
2. A book is a book although it has nothing new.

COMPARISON — than, rather than, whether, as much as, whereas

Examples

1. He is stronger than I.
2. He loves me as much as she.
3. He will take tea rather than coffee.
4. He is happy whereas others are sad.

In the following sentences use suitable Conjunction.

(निम्नलिखित वाक्यों में उपयुक्त Conjunction का प्रयोग करें।)

1. He is rich _____ happy.
2. She is rich _____ unhappy.
3. _____ he worked hard, he passed.
4. He worked hard _____ he passed.
5. _____ he worked hard, he failed.
6. He worked hard _____ he failed.
7. Take care _____ you will fall.
8. Take care _____ you should fall.
9. I will not come _____ it rains.
10. I will come _____ it rains.

In the following sentences use suitable Conjunction.
(निम्नलिखित वाक्यों में उपयुक्त Conjunction का प्रयोग करें।)

11. She is intelligent _____ her brother is foolish.
12. _____ there is will, there is a way.
13. _____ he returns home, no one will go to sleep.
14. _____ the train gets the signal, it will not leave the platform.
15. _____ he invites you, you should not go.
16. We eat _____ we may live.
17. A lie is a lie _____ it saves one's life.

18. Smartphone cameras can now take pictures of near-professional quality, so they also have limitations.

(1) pictures of (2) so they also have limitations

(3) can now take (4) near-professional quality

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018 15 March, 2019 Evening

19. Cyclone Idai killed at least (1)/17 people in Zimbabwe and Mozambique although (2)/ it tore across Southern Africa (3)/ No error (4).

SSC PRE – 2018, 4th June, 2019 Morning

20. Our nation can make significant growth but if we all work collectively.

(1) but if we all (2) make significant growth

(3) Our nation can (4) work collectively

CHSL-2018, 11 July, 2019, Evening

21. I was surprised to see as Avika could write such good poems in Hindi.

(1) to see as Avika (2) I was surprised

(3) could write (4) such good poems in Hindi

CGL MAINS 2018, 12 September, 2019

22. He was rejected because he was too young.

(1) so (2) hence

(3) though (4) No improvement

(SSC Tax Assistant (IncomeTax & Central Excise) Exam. 12.11.2006)

23. Strenuous as it was, they went on with their task.

(1) since it was (2) because it was

(3) although it was (4) No improvement

(SSC Statistical Investigators Grade-IV Exam. 12.09.2010)

24. Since he worked hard he failed to secure good grades.

(1) As (2) When
(3) Though (4) No improvement

(FCI Assistant Grade-III Exam. 05.02.2012 (Ist Sitting)

25. Mary wondered if the other girls were as excited as she was.

(1) that (2) whether
(3) that if (4) No improvement

(SSC Stenographer Grade 'C' & 'D' Exam. 16.10.2011)

26. The man ate an apple, an orange, and washed his hands.

(1) an apple and an orange, and washed his hands
(2) an apple, an orange, washed his hands
(3) an apple, an orange and his washed hands
(4) No improvement

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 19.05.2013)

27. The actor is out of jail, and not exactly a free man, since he will be under house arrest for an additional 90 days.

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 19.05.2013)

(1) if not exactly a free man

(2) but not exactly a free man

(3) though exactly a free man

(4) No improvement

28. Rice is to the Japanese while potatoes are to many Europeans

(1) which (2) that

(3) what (4) No improvement.

(SSC Section Officer (Commercial Audit) Exam. 26.11.2006)

Answers

1. rich (desirable Adj) — happy (desirable Adj)

both 'desirable' Adjectives

Conjunction — and (और) & as well as (साथ ही साथ)

2. rich (desirable Adj) — unhappy (undesirable Adj)

Contrast

Conjunction — but (लेकिन), yet, still (फिर भी)

Answers

3. As, Since, Because (चूंकि, क्योंकि)
4. and, so, therefore. that's why, hence
5. Though, although
6. but, yet, still
7. or, else, otherwise
8. 'lest ... should' is a pair of conjunction
9. if, in case
10. even if
11. but (note : here we cannot use 'yet' or 'still')
12. Where
13. Until. This sentence is time- oriented
14. Until
15. Unless. The sentence is action-oriented.
16. so that/ in order that — ताकि
17. even if

Answers

18. (2) Replace 'so' with 'but'. 'Limitations' introduce something contradictory hence use 'but'.
19. (2) Replace 'although' with 'when'.
20. (1) Remove but or add 'only' after 'but'. We can also replace 'but' with 'only if'.
21. (1) Replace 'as' with 'that'.
22. (4) No improvement
23. (3) Here 'strenuous although it has' should be used.
Although (के बावजूद) means in spite of the fact that.
24. (3) Replace 'since' with 'though'.
'Though' means 'inspite of the fact that' (के बावजूद). When the result is contrary to what was expected of the action though'.
25. (4) No improvement
26. (1) Here 'an apple and an orange and washed his' should be used.
27. (2) Here contrast is evident so conjunction 'but' will be used here.
hence replace 'and not exactly a free man' with 'but not exactly a free man'.
28. (3) Replace 'while' with 'what'.

- **Some Conjunctions are in pairs. They are called 'Correlative Conjunctions' or merely 'Correlatives'. (कुछ Conjunctions pairs में होते हैं। वे Correlative Conjunctions या सिर्फ Correlatives कहलाते हैं।)**

  Correct Pairs are absolutely mandatory. (Pair सही होना चाहिए ये अत्यन्त जरूरी है।)

जैसेः-

Though	Yet/,	(हालांकि ..... फिर भी)
Although	Yet/,	(हालांकि ..... फिर भी)
No sooner	than	(जैसे ही ... वैसे ही)
Hardly/Scarcely	when	(मुश्किल से ... कि)
As	as	(तुलना करने के लिए प्रयुक्त होता है)
So	as	(तुलना करने के लिए नकारात्मक वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त होता है)
Lest	should + $v_{b.f.}$	(ऐसा न हो कि, वर्ना)
Too	to	(इतना ... कि)

जैसेः-

So	that	(इतना ... कि)
Between	and	(के बीच)
From	to	(... से ...)
Whether	or	
The same	that	(वही ... जो)
Both	and	(दोनों ही)
Not only	but also	(न ही सिर्फ ... बल्कि)

कुछ अन्य Conj. → Or, else, otherwise (वर्ना, अन्यथा)

- **There are certain wrong pairs which we wrongly use because we are habitual of translating from Hindi. (कुछ ऐसे Pairs हम बना लेते हैं जो गलत होते हैं क्योंकि हमें Translation करने की आदत होती है।)**

If ... then (×)

If ... , (✓)

When ... then (×)

When ... , (✓)

As (क्योंकि) ... so (इसलिए) (×)

As (जैसा) ... so (वैसा) (✓)

Eg.:

1. **As I was ill ~~so~~, I did not come.**
2. **As you sow so shall you reap.**

As/ Since/ because .... therefore/ that's why/ so/ since (×)

As/ Since/ because ..... , (✓)

If ... or (×)

1. You must either (1)/ be regular with your studies (2)/ and study for longer period before the examination. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 1997)

2. The period (1)/ between 1980 to 1990 (2)/ was very significant in my life. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 25.11.2007)

3. It is (1)/ nothing else (2)/ than pride. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II Exam. Paper-II 04.08.2011)

4. We had scarcely (1)/ reached the place (2) than it started to rain heavily. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC FCI Assistant Grade-III Main Exam. 07.04.2013)

5. We had (1)/ hardly reached the (2)/ platform than the train came in. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam. 28.09.2014 (TF No. 482 RN 5)

6. I will have (1)/ both the blue (2)/ or the black pen. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC CHSL (10+2) LDC, DEO & PA/SA Exam, 15.11.2015 (Ist Sitting) TF No. 6636838)

7. Write down the address lest you may forget.

(1) you may not forget (2) you cannot forget

(3) you will forget (4) you should forget

(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 05.12.2004)

8. No sooner had the teacher entered the room **and** the boys rushed to their seats.

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 30.10.2008)

(1) when (2) than
(3) but (4) No improvement

9. He is not only a good teacher **but** a good man.

(SSC Delhi Police Sub-Inspector (SI) Exam. 19.08.2012)

(1) instead also (2) but seldom
(3) but also (4) No improvement

10. As I am suffering from fever **so grant me** leave for two days.

(1) and grant me (2) please grant me
(3) grant myself (4) No improvement

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam.12.04.2015 Kolkata Region, TF No. 315 RI 3)

Answers

1. (3) Replace ‘and’ with ‘or’ because correct pair of conjunction is either ... or
2. (2) Replace ‘between’ with ‘from’ because the correct pair needed here is 'from.... to.
3. (3) Replace ‘than’ with ‘but’ because the correct pair ‘nothing else ... but’.
4. (3) Replace ‘than’ with ‘when’ because the correct pair is ‘scarcely ... when’.
5. (3) Replace ‘than’ with ‘when’.
6. (3) Replace ‘or’ with ‘and’.
7. (4) Replace ‘you may forget’ with ‘you should forget’.
8. (2) Replace ‘and’ with ‘than’ because the correct pair is ‘no sooner ... than’.
9. (3) Replace ‘but’ with ‘but also’. The correct pair is ‘not only ... but also’.
10. (2) ‘As’ is not followed by ‘so’ (Exception ‘As you sow so shall you reap’)

12. He asked me if I was comfortable or not.

13. He is so ill to walk.

14. He was such a versatile actor that he played every role exceptionally well.

15. He is such a player as team India always wished to have.

16. He is such a fool _____ he understands nothing.

17. He is such a fool _____ I have never seen.

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018
14 March, 2019 Morning

18. He is not such a clever boy that you are.

(1) clever boy (2) such a

(3) that you are (4) He is not

19. I doubt _____ he will help you.

20. I don't doubt _____ you will succeed in life.

21. Did he doubt _____ I would succeed in life?

Answers

12. 'If ... or'. (×)
'Whether ... or'. (✓)
Change 'if' into 'whether'.

13. 'so ... to'. (×)
'too ... to'. (✓)
Change 'so' into 'too'.

14. 'such (इतना) ... that (कि)'

When 2nd part substantiates the 1st part.

(जब 2nd part, 1st part का सबूत देता है।)

15. 'such (ऐसा) ... as (जैसा)'

When the 2nd part categorizes the 1st part. (जब 2nd, part 1st part के श्रेणी/ वर्ग दर्शाता है।)

16. 'such ... that'.

Here the 2nd part gives a proof.

17. 'such ... as'.

Here the 2nd part categorizes the 1st part.

18. (3) Replace 'that' with 'as'. 'Such ...as' is used to categorize.

19. 'Doubt ... if'.

The sentence is positive.

20. 'Doubt ... that'.

The sentence is negative.

21. 'Doubt .... that'

The sentence is Interrogative.

22. This is the same dress _____ I had bought.

23. This is the same suit _____ mine.

24. As soon as I get the tickets then I will inform you.

25. Trying to please both his boss and wife puts him _____ the devil _____ the deep blue sea.

26. He worked _____ dawn _____ dusk.

Answers

22. 'The same' is followed by 'that' is a verb follows.
23. 'The same' is followed by 'as' if no verb follows.
24. 'As soon as' is not followed by 'then'.
    Remove 'then'.
25. 'Between ... and'.
    'Between the devil and the deep blue sea' means 'between two equally difficult choices.' (दो समान कठीन परिस्थितियों के बीच)
26. 'from ... to'.
    Some examples that take 'from ... to'.
    (1) 'From dawn to dusk' → सुबह से शाम तक
    (2) 'From pillar to post' → दर – दर
    (3) From top to bottom
    (4) From beginning to end
    (5) From morning to evening

'As ... as' and 'So ... as' take Positive Degree of Adjective/ Adverb.

Examples

1. She ran as faster as she could. (×)

   Comparative Degree of Adverb

   She ran as fast as she could. (✓)

   Positive Degree

2. He is as wiser as Solomon. (×)

   Comparative Degree of Adjective

   He is as wise as Solomon. (✓)

   Positive Degree

As ... as (In +ve and –ve sentence)

So ... as (In –ve sentences)

(Both are used to make a comparison
(दोनों का प्रयोग तुलना करने के लिए होता है।)

- **In the last example you saw that the Comparison is between 'he' and 'Solomon' but why? (आखरी उदाहरण में आपने देखा कि लड़के की तुलना Solomon से हुई लेकिन ऐसा क्यों हुआ) The Comparison is always with the perfect example that can be chosen for the given situation. (तुलना हमेश सबसे अच्छे उदाहरण के साथ किया जाता है जिसका प्रयोग उस हालात में सबसे सटीक हो।)**

Let us see some examples.

- **As red as a rose**
- **As soft as fur**
- **As white as snow**
- **As fast as a deer**
- **As blind as a bat**
- **As busy as a bee**
- **As cunning as a fox**
- **As drunk as a lord**
- **As fat as a pig**
- **As fit as a fiddle**

- As gentle as a lamb
- As green as grass
- As hard as a nail
- As heavy as lead
- As hungry as a wolf
- As light as a feather
- As mean as a snake
- As poor as a church mouse
- As steady as a rock
- As good as gold
- As sweet as honey
- As bald as an egg
- As cool as a cucumber
- As swift as a hare/ an arrow/ lightning
- As alike as two peas
- As proud/vain as a peacock
- As hot as a furnace
- As slow as a turtle/ snail
- As fluffy as a cotton candy
- Sleep like a baby
- Eat like a pig

- **Take care lest he _____.**

  (i) may fall (ii) fall (iii) falls

  'Lest .... should' is a pair of conjunction but here we do not have any option comprising 'should'. ('Lest .... should' Conjunction का एक pair है पर यहाँ should किसी option में नहीं हैं।)

  We have two options (हमारे पास 2 विकल्प है) —

  (1) Lest ... should + $V_{b.f}$

  Or

  (2) Lest ... $V_{b.f}$

Ans. → (ii) As 'should + $V_{b.f}$' is missing here, $V_{b.f}$ is the only option available that is correct.

Superfluous Pair

'The reason why .... due to/ because'. (×)

'The reason why' and 'because'/ 'due to' mean the same.

They make a superfluous pair.

'The reason why ... that'. (✓) ('that' is not always needed. See example 2)

1. The reason why (1)/he was rejected (2)/was because he was too young. (3)/No Error. (4).

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 05.06.2005)

2. The reason for (1)/ my absence is (2)/ due to ill health (3)/ No Error (4)

SSC CGL-2016 (8th September, Evening)

3. The reason Janet came dressed (1) / as Lady Gaga was because she'd been told (2) / it was a costume party (3) / No error (4) .

SSC CGL-2016 (2nd September, Evening)

4. The reason why I was late was because I boarded the wrong bus.

Answers

1. (3) Replace ‘because’ with ‘that’ because the ‘reason why’ becomes superfluous with ‘because’.

2. (3) Presence of both 'reason' and 'due to' in a sentence makes it superfluous.

   Hence remove 'due to' from part (3).

3. (2) The correct pair is the reason ------- that. 'Reason' with ‘because’ becomes superfluous.

   Hence replace 'because' with 'that'.

4. Change because into 'that'.

- 'Would rather ... than'
  or
  'prefer ... to'

Examples

1. I would rather take tea than coffee.
2. I prefer tea to coffee.

'Prefer' takes preposition 'to'. 'Would rather' takes 'than'.

Inversion

- If a sentence is Negative Introductory, the sentence that follows is in Inversion. In Inversion the Helping Verb comes before the Subject.

For detail see Inversion

(अगर वाक्य Negative शब्द से शुरू हो तो फिर वाक्य Inversion में होता है। Inversion में Helping Verb, Subject के पहले होता है।)

Examples

1. No sooner (1)/ I had spoken, (2) than he left. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 09.09.2001)

2. No sooner (1)/ they had received the guests (2)/ than they began entertaining them. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II, Exam. 16.09.2012)

3. We had (1)/ hardly reached the (2)/ platform than the train came in. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam. 28.09.2014 (TF No. 482 RN 5)

Inversion

4. Not only we seen (1)/ the Kali temple but (2)/ also the Thirunelli temple. (3)/ No error (4)

SSC CHSL-2016, 30th Jan, Evening

5. Not only we saw (1)/ the President but also (2)/ the Chief Minister of Delhi. (3)/ No Error (4)

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2017, 2 July, 2018 Morning

6. Neither we borrow nor lend.

7. No sooner the minister had heard (1)/ about the accident (2)/ than he rushed to the spot. (3)/ No Error (4)

(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 17.03.2013, IInd Sitting)

8. Scarcely she had heard the news when she fainted.
(1) she fainted (2) when
(3) heard the news (4) Scarcely she had

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018, 14 March, 2019 Morning

9. Hardly he had stepped out of the house when a tree fell on the roof.
(1) out of (2) Hardly he had
(3) when a tree (4) fell on the roof

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018, 14 March, 2019 Evening

10. Not only they went to see a film, but also had dinner out.
(1) Not only did they go
(2) They didn't go not only
(3) They not only went
(4) No improvement

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 1997)

Answers

1. (2) Replace ‘I had’ with ‘had I’ because when a sentence begins with ‘No sooner’ it takes inversion form.

2. (2) Replace ‘they had’ with ‘had they’ because when a sentence begins with ‘no sooner’ it takes inversion form.

3. (3) Replace ‘than’ with ‘when’. ‘We had hardly reached’ is the correct structure as hardly comes after the ‘Helping Verb’ and before the ‘Main Verb’.

4. (1) Whenever we begin a sentence with negative adverb or adverbial phrase, we use inversion. In inversion verb comes before the subject. Hence replace 'Not only we seen' with 'Not only did we see' or 'not only have we seen'. We need 'did' as 'Helping Verb' if 'Main Verb' is 'V_2'.

5. (1) Either use 'not only' after saw or use structure 'not only did we see'. Conjunction should be followed by same part of speech.

Answers

6. Change 'we borrow' into 'do we borrow'. We need 'do' as 'Helping Verb' if the 'Main Verb' is 'V_1'.

7. (1) When a sentence begin with ‘no sooner’ it takes inversion form.
So ‘had’ will come before ‘the minister’.

8. (4) Replace 'she had' with 'had she'. Scarcely is followed by Inversion if the sentence starts with scarcely.

9. (2) Replace 'he had' with 'had he'. Hardly is followed by Inversion.

10. (1) When a sentence begins with ‘a negative word’ it takes inversion form.
Replace ‘Not only they went’ with ‘not only did they go’.

Misplaced Conjunction

Examples

1. Not only he bakes cakes but also sells them.

2. Neither it is useful nor affordable.

Answers

1. (i) If we use Inversion to correct the sentence, Ans. is → Not only does he bake cakes but also sells them.

   If the M.V is V_1 + s/es, the H.V is 'does'.

   (ii) If we go by misplaced Conjunction,

   He not only bakes (Verb) cakes but also sells (Verb) them.

2. Neither will come after 'it is'. It is neither useful (Adjective) nor affordable (Adjective).

1. You must either tell me (1)/ the whole story or, at least (2)/ the first half of it. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 09.09.2001)

2. None of the diplomats at the conference (1)/was able either to comprehend (2)/ or solve the problem. (3)/No error (4)

(SSC Stenographer (Grade'C' &'D') Exam. 26.09.2010)

3. He is anxious not only (1)/ to acquire knowledge (2)/ but also eager to display it. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 19.05.2013)

4. The college library is (1)/ not only equipped with (2)/ very good books but also with the latest journals. (3)/No error (4)

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam. 22.06.2014)

5. We will pack not only (1)/ the material properly (2)/ but will also deliver it to your valued customers. (3)/ No error (4)

SSC (CPO) MAINS- 2016

6. This laboratory of physicists is (1)/ not only equipped with (2)/ all state-of-the-art instruments but also with outstanding physicists. (3)/ No error (4)

SSC (CPO) MAINS- 2016

Answers

1. (1) ‘Either’ should come after ‘tell me’ because after ‘or’ at least is given. Co-relative conjunction always connects two equal grammatical items.

2. (2) Remove ‘either’ or put ‘either’ after ‘to’.

3. (1) First part of the sentence should read as ‘he is not only anxious’ ... because while using a co-relative conjunction both clauses should be parallel. Anxious and eager (both adjectives) balance each other.

4. (2) Replace ‘not only equipped’ with ‘equipped not only’ because co-relative conjunction always connects two equal grammatical items.

5. (1) Put 'not only' before 'pack'. This is a case of misplaced conjunction.

6. (3) Use 'not only' after 'equipped'. Conjunction must be at the appropriate place.

Too ... to
&
So ... that

SUPERFLUOUS CASE—

Examples

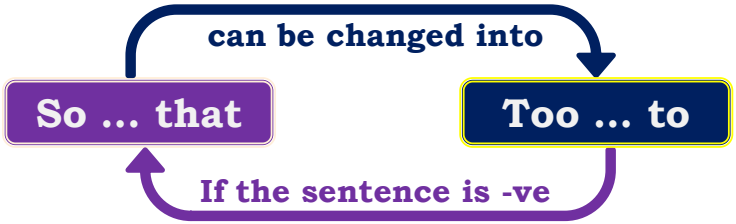
1. **The coffee is too hot to drink it.**

2. **This watch is too expensive for me to afford it.**

Answers

1. **Remove 'it'. 'Coffee' (Noun) and 'it' (Pronoun) cannot come together.**

2. **'Watch' (Noun) and it (Pronoun) cannot come together. Remove it.**



Examples

1. He is so weak that he cannot walk.

   He is too weak to walk.

2. She is so intelligent that she can pass any exam.

Note:- Sentence 2 cannot be changed into 'too ... to' as the sentence is not negative. 'Too ... to' includes 'not' in it.

Remove 'so' from the following sentences:-

Examples

1. She is so ill that she cannot work.
2. The watch is so expensive that I cannot afford it.
3. She is so innocent that she cannot understand his ulterior motives.
4. He is so old that he cannot get any job.
5. The problem was so complicated that no one could solve it.

Answers

1. She is too ill to work.
2. (i) The watch is too expensive for me to afford.
   (ii) The watch is too expensive to be afforded by me.
3. She is too innocent to understand his ulterior motives.
4. He is too old to get any job.
5. (i) The problem was too complicated to be solved by anyone.
   (ii) The problem was too complicated for any one to solve.

6. The process was too simple and easy to understand that it hardly took five minutes for us to grasp it.

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam. 12.04.2015)

(1) No Error
(2) and easy to understand that it hardly
(3) took five minutes for us to grasp it
(4) The process was too simple

7. He studied (1)/ so hardly (2)/ he was sure of passing. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 10.03.2013)

8. The problem was so complicated to be solved in a day.

(SSC FCI Assistant Grade-III Main Exam. 07.04.2013)

(1) too (2) very
(3) much (4) No improvement

Answers

6. (4) Replace 'too' with 'so' because the correct pair is 'so ... that'.

7. (2) Add 'that' in the 2nd part of the sentence. Because the correct pair is 'so ... that'. Also change 'hardly' into 'hard'. 'So hard that' is the correct structure.

8. (1) The correct structure should be as follow:

Too + positive degree adjective + to.

Here 'to + complicated + to' should be used.

★ I am too glad to meet you. (×)

I am very glad to meet you. (✓)

Adv. Adj.

'very' comes with desirable Adj.

Here 'too ... to' is not a pair of Conjunction because it cannot be changed into 'so ... that' with the same meaning 'Glad' is a desirable Adjective and hence will take Adverb 'very'.

(यहाँ 'too ... to' Conjunction का जोड़ा नहीं है क्योंकि इसे 'So that' में परिवर्तित नहीं किया जा सकता। ऐसा करने पर अर्थ गलत निकलेगा 'Glad' desirable Adjective है अतः Adverb 'very' का प्रयोग करें।)

★ **She is too sad to hear this. (✓)**

This sentence is correct though 'too ... to' is not a pair of Conjunction here because it cannot be changed into 'so ... that' with the same meaning.

(ये वाक्य सही है हालाँकि यहाँ 'too ... to' Conjunction का जोड़ा नहीं है क्योंकि वह 'so ... that' में परिवर्तित नहीं किया जा सकता| ऐसा करने से अर्थ गलत निकलता है।)

She is too sad to hear this.

Adv. Adj. Infinitive

'too' comes with undesirable Adjectives.

Conjunction Vis–A–Vis Narration

1 Assertive Sentences → General Statements (कथनात्मक वाक्य)

E.g:- He said _____ he was unwell. (Ans. – that)

We use Conjunction 'that' in Assertive Sentences.

(Assertive Sentences में Conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग होता है।)

Conjunction Vis–A–Vis Narration

2 Interrogative Sentences → Sentences raising questions (प्रश्नातमक वाक्य)

E.g:- (i) He asked me _____ I was unwell.

We use Conjunction 'if/ whether' in Interrogative Sentences which are not of 'Wh' family.

(जो प्रश्नात्मक वाक्य 'Wh' family का नहीं है उनमें Conjunction 'if'/ 'whether' का प्रयोग होता है।)

1. Mary wondered if the other girls were as excited as she was.
   (1) that
   (2) whether
   (3) that if
   (4) No improvement

(SSC Stenographer Grade 'C' & 'D' Exam. 16.10.2011)

Answers

1. (4)

E.g:- (ii) He asked me _____ what I was doing.

We do not use any Conjunction if the Interrogative Sentences are of 'Wh family'.

(अगर प्रश्नातमक वाक्य 'Wh family' का हो तो कोई Conjunction का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।)

1. My elder brother (1)/ asked me (2)/that what I was doing. (3)/No Error (4)

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 21.10.2012 (2nd Sitting)

Answers

1. (3) Remove 'that'. If direct speech is of 'Wh family', no conjunction is used when it is converted into Indirect Speech.

2. He asked me (1)/ that how long (2)/ I would be absent. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC Higher Secondary Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 28.11.2010 (IInd Sitting)

3. My sister asked me/(1) that how long (2)/ I would stay there. (3)/ No Error. (4)

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 21.04.2013)

Answers

2. (2) Remove 'that'.

When questions of 'Wh-family' is changed into indirect speech, Conjunction 'that' is not used.

3. (2) Remove 'that'. See explanation of Q. No. 2.

Conjunction Vis–A–Vis Narration

3 Optative Sentences → Sentences of Wish and Prayer (इच्छासूचक वाक्य)

E.g:-

He prayed _____ god might bless me.

We use Conjunction 'that' in Optative Sentences.

(इच्छासूचक वाक्यों में Conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग होगा)

KD Campus

Conjunction Vis–A–Vis Narration

4 Imperative Sentences → Sentences of Orders, Request etc (आदेशात्मक वाक्य)

E.g:-

He requested me _____ help him.

We use Conjunction 'to' in Imperative Sentences.

(आदेशात्मक वाक्यों में Conjunction 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।)

KD Campus

Conjunction Vis–A–Vis Narration

5 Exclamatory Sentences → Sentences that express gush of feelings (विस्मयबोधक वाक्य)

E.g:-

He exclaimed with joy _____ they had won the match.

In Exclamatory Sentences we use Conjunction 'that'.

(विस्मयबोधक वाक्यों में Conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग होता है।)

Campus

6 Conditional Sentences → In Conditional sentences, one action depends on the other (शर्त रखने वाले वाक्य)

E.g:-

He said _____ if he had seen me, he would have greeted me.

We use Conjunction 'that' in Conditional Sentences.

(Conditional Sentences में Conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग होता है।)

Note:-

Do not get confused on seeing 'that + if' together in conditional sentences.

('that + if' का प्रयोग एक साथ देखकर confuse ना हो।)

Conjunction Vis–A–Vis Adjective

1. As an artist (1)/Raju is as good (2)/, if not better than, Ramesh. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I, Exam. 21.04.2013)

2. He is as efficient if not more labourious than his brother.
3. She is prettier though not as fair as her sister.

Answers

1. (2) The correct structure is as + Positive degree adjective + as.

   Hence add 'as' after 'good'.
2. Add 'as' after 'efficient'.
3. Add 'than' after 'prettier'.

When Positive & Comparative degrees of Adjectives are used, the structure must be as follows.

(अगर Adjective के Positive & Comparative degrees का प्रयोग हो, तो निम्नलिखित structure का प्रयोग होगा।)

As/ so + Positive Degree + as ... + Comparative Degree + than/to

Unless & Until

★ 'Unless' is action oriented. (Unless कार्य-संबंधित होता है।)

E.g:-

1. Unless you work hard, you won't succeed.
2. Unless he invites us, we won't go to the party.

★ Until is time oriented (Until समय संबंधित होता है।)

E.g:-

1. Until the train gets the signal, it won't proceed.
2. Until the red light turns green, we cannot cross the traffic signal.

For detail See Conditional Sentences

'Unless' and 'until' do not take 'will/ shall' and 'not' after them.

1. My friend will not come to attend this marriage unless he is not invited.
   (1) No error
   (2) My friend will not come
   (3) to attend this marriage
   (4) unless he is not invited.

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam, 21.06.2015 IInd Sitting)

2. You will not (1)/ succeed unless you (2)/ don't work hard. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC (10+2) Stenographer Grade 'C' & 'D' Exam. 31.01.2016 TF No. 3513283)

Answers

1. (4) 'not' does not come with 'unless', 'until' and 'lest'.
2. (3) 'Unless' is not followed by any negative word.
   Remove 'don't' from 3rd part of the sentence.

3. The price cannot be quoted **except** we are allowed to examine the sample.

(1) if

(2) unless

(3) because

(4) No improvement

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 11.12.2011 (IInd Sitting (East Zone)

4. You can't get good marks **unless you don't** work hard.

(1) till you don't

(2) unless you

(3) until you don't

(4) No improvement

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 21.10.2012 (Ist Sitting)

Answers

3. (2) Replace 'except' with 'unless'.

4. (2) Replace 'unless you don't' with 'unless you'. 'Unless' is not followed by any negative word.

5. You cannot pass as long as you study.
   (1) provided
   (2) unless
   (3) less
   (4) No improvement

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II Exam. 29.09.2013)

6. I shall not go until I am invited.
   (1) till
   (2) whether
   (3) unless
   (4) No improvement

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam.12.04.2015 Kolkata Region, TF No. 315 RI 3)

Answers

5. (2) Replace 'as long as' with 'unless'.
'As long as' means 'during the whole time'.
'Unless' means 'except on the condition that'.

6. (3) Replace 'until' with 'unless'.
'Until' is a time denoting word whereas 'Unless' is a condition denoting word.

Wrong use of 'Which'

1. I forgot to carry my umbrella which caused the delay.

2. She did not show her admit card which led to her rejection.

★ See the sentences. You find 'which' is near 'Umbrella' and 'Admit Card' but these two nouns are not the reason for the action that follows.

(दोनों वाक्यों को देखें। आप 'which' को 'Umbrella' और Admit Card' के निकट पाऐंगे लेकिन ये दोनों Nouns उस action का कारण नहीं है जो 'which' के बाद है।)

★ We need something that can denote the 1st action and so we need a pronoun 'this' that can denote the nearest action.

(यहाँ कुछ ऐसा चाहिए जो प्रथम वाक्य को सम्बोधित कर सके और Pronoun 'this' से हम निकटतम action को सम्बोधित कर सकते हैं।)

Correct Sentences

1. I forgot to carry my umbrella and this caused the delay.

2. She did not show her admit card and this led to her rejection.

We need Conjunction 'and' to join both the sentences.

(यहाँ Conjunction 'and' का प्रयोग होगा दोनों वाक्यों को जोड़ने के लिए।)

www.BankExamsToday.com

ENGLISH GRAMMAR NOTES

Ramandeep Singh

Ramandeep Singh

WWW.BANKEXAMSTODAY.COM

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

Contents

CONTENTS ..... **Error! Bookmark not defined.**
Nouns 4
Types: 4
Rule No: 1. 4
Rule No: 2 4
Rule No: 3 5
Rule No: 4 5
Rule No: 5 6
Noun - Preposition - Noun Case 7
Use of Apostrophe 's' : ('s) 7
Rule 1 7
Rule:2 8
Rule: 3 8
Pronoun 8
Types 8
Table of Pronoun 10
OBJECTIVE PRONOUN 10
NOMINATIVE PRONOUN 12
Reflexive Pronoun 13
Adjectives 16
Degree of adjective 17
Comparative Degree 17
Conversion of Superlative degree to Comparative degree 20
' These ' and ' Those ' 21
' much ' and ' many ' 22
'All , Whole & Both ' 22
' Some ' & ' Any ' 22
Prepositions with examples 22
PREPOSITIONS SHOWING TIME 23
PREPOSITIONS SHOWING POSITION 23
PREPOSITIONS SHOWING DIRECTION 24
Conjunction Rules 29
Types of Conjunctions 29
Conjunction Rules: 30
Rule 1 30

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

Rule 2 30
Rule 4 30
Rule 5 30
Rule 6 31
Rule 7 31
Rule 8 31
Rule 9 31
Rule 10 31
Rule 11 31
Rule 12 31
English Grammar Series - Articles 31
Use of "A" 32
Use of "An" 32
Uses of "The" 32
Participles 34
Types 34
Present Participle 34
Past Participle 35
Idioms and Phrases 36
Phrases with Meaning 36
Subject Verb Agreement Rules 44
Rule 1 45
Rule 2 45
Rule 3 45
Rule 4 45
Rule 5 46
Rule 6 46
Rule 7 46
Rule 8 47
Rule 9 47
Rule 10 47
With **plural number**, **plural verb** use. e.g. 47
Hundred boys **are** in my class. 47
Note:- If after **cardinal adjectives (one, two, three, four,… etc.) plural noun** use and with **plural noun** shows **certain amount, certain weight, certain period, certain distance, certain height** then singular verb will use. 47
E.g. 47

BANK EXAMS Today

www.BankExamsToday.com

Rule 11 48
Rule 12 48
Rule 13 48
Rule 14 48
Rule 15 49
Rule 16 49
Rule 17 49
Rule 18 49
Rule 19 50
Rule 20 50
Rule 21 50
Rule 23 51
Rule 24 51
Rules of Adverbs 51
KINDS OF ADVERBS 52
COMPARISON OF ADVERBS 54
Forms of Adverbs 55
Positions of Adverbs 56
Tenses 57
#Present 59
#Past Tense 59
#Future Tense 60
The case of after and before 60
Conditional Sentences 62
There are two parts of Conditional sentences 62
Mainly There are three types of conditional sentences 62
B. IF CLAUSE IN PAST TENSE 64
C. 'IF' CLAUSE IN PAST PERFECT TENSE 64
D. OTHER TYPES OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES 65
Confusions 65
One word substitution 68
Antonyms : 200 Words 70
Synonyms : 200 Words 75
Vocabulary List 79

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

Nouns

Types:

- **Proper Noun** : Name of specific person, place or thing.
- **Common Noun** : Name of common things like boys, chair, girls etc.
- **Collective Noun**: Collection of some persons or things and represented as a singular noun. Ex: class , army , herd , flight etc.
- **Abstract Noun** :Whom we cannot touch like happiness, sadness etc.
- **Materialistic Noun**: From whom something is comprised of known as materialistic Noun.

www.BankExamsToday.com

Further classifications are:

Rule No: 1.

Uncountable Nouns

There are some rules which are uncountable nouns.

- We cannot measure uncountable nouns. like ' Informations' wrong phrase.
- We always use singular verb with uncountable nouns.
- Plural of these words does not exist.

Some examples of uncountable nouns are:

Hair	Scenery	Information	Mischief	Stuff
Advice	Poetry	Evidence	Luggage	Jewellery
Furniture	Bread	Wood	Wages	Money
Machinery	Crockery	Cash	Help	Clothing

Examples:

- Children are prone to making ~~mischiefs~~ if they have nothing to do.[Correct: mischief]
- I saw beautiful ~~sceneries~~ in painting exhibition.[Correct: scenery]
- I ate three ~~breads~~ today.[Correct: bread or three slices of bread]
- .She gave ~~two~~ ~~jeweleries~~.[Correct: jewellery or a piece of jewellery]

Rule No: 2

There are some nouns which seem to be plural but are singular.

www.BankExamsToday.com

Mathematics	Statistics	SomeDiseases:	Mesals	Mums
Physics	Physics		Shingles	Rickets
Robotics	Civics		Diabetes	
Mechanics	Billiards			
Gymnastics				

www.BankExamsToday.com

News
Summons***
Innings
Series

Examples:

- News is coming on tv.
- The morale of the army was high the news coming from the front were very encouraging.
- 1st innings is going on.[Correct: Inning]
- A 5 match series is being played between India and Australia in Melbourne.

Rule No: 3

There are some nouns which to be singular but exists in plural so use plural verb with it.

Children	Infantry
Polity	Police
Gentry	Cattle
Brethren	People

Examples:

- There was no Gentry in function.[Correct: were]
- Police has been deployed all over the route.[Correct: have]

Gentry : Group of Gentlemen
Infantry(Troop):Collection of soldiers

Rule No: 4

There are some nouns which exists both in singular and plural form. Nature of verb depends upon sense of sentence and noun.
Words:

- Team

BANK EXAMS Today

www.BankExamsToday.com

- Committee
- Audience
- Jury
- House

Examples:

- Our team is the best team.
- Our team are trying their new dresses today.
- A committee is formed for the welfare of society.
- A committee were appointed for the welfare of society.

Rule No: 5

There are some nouns which is to be plural , they also exist in form but cannot be converted into singular form.
Note: Always use singular verb with them untill they specified numerial.

scissors	trousers	jeans	pants,	shorts
spectacles	socks	remains	scales	pliers
binoculars	pincers	pajamas	tights	tweezers
thanks	congratulations	earnings	wages	savings
contents				

Examples:

- A pair of spectacles ~~have~~ be bought by me.[Correct: has]
- He read the letter and made aware of its ~~contents~~.[Correct: content]
- All the ~~evidences~~ ~~were~~ against and he was held guilty.[Correct: evidence, was]

Numerical Adjective Noun Case

When in a sentence there is a numerical adjective with a noun, we cannot use the plural of that noun if after there is another noun.

Examples:

Incorrect : He is a twenty ~~years~~ old boy. [In this sentence we cannot use 's' with 'year' because after years there is a another noun
'boy']
Correct: He is a twenty year old boy.

- The boy is twenty years old.
- Twenty kms ~~are~~ a long distance.[Correct: is]

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

- He walked twenty kms.
- Twenty ~~kms~~ walk is a long distance.[Correct; km]
- The five members deligation will call on the president.

Noun - Preposition - Noun Case

Preposition: in, on, at, of, for, after, before, into, with, by, between, among,....etc
Examples:



- ~~Rows~~ upon ~~Rows~~ of pink marbles ~~are~~ to the eyes.[Correct: Row upon Row, is]

Use of Apostrophe 's' : ('s)

The Ram House of ram = Ram's house

Rule 1

1 Never use apostrophe with non-living like wood, table, chair etc.

2. We can use (" 's ") with nouns which not come in the category of living and non-living.

Ex:

- America's Problems
- Nature's law
- A meter's length
- A Kg's sugar

Examples:

- Ram and sham's house

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

- I visited ~~John's~~ and Mary's house twice but found the couple absent.
  [Correct: John and Mary's]
- His wife's secretary's mother has died.

In this sentence the structure of sentence is not correct.

www.BankExamsToday.com

Correct: Mother of his wife's secretary has died.

Rule:2

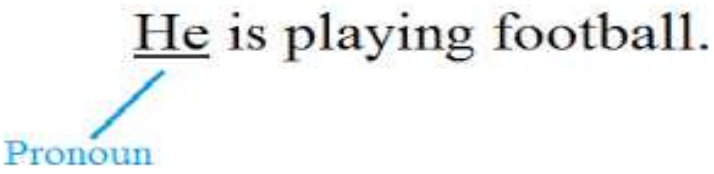
Two apostrophe cannot come together in a single sentence.

Rule: 3

We can use ";" only with the words which are ended with 's'.
Ex: 'Kalidas' work

- He was late and entered the ~~female~~ compartment in hurry. [Correct: Women's or ladies']
- We reached the fare and found that there was no ~~place~~ to stand.[Correct: room]

Pronoun



- Used in place of 'Noun'.

Pronoun

Examples → He, she, his ,they ,we , us , me , my , mine , I , you , it , ours , your , your , hers , her , its , their , theirs

Types

1. **Nominative :** Used as a subject in the sentence.

BANK EXAMS Today

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

Examples → I , We , You etc.

2. **Objective** : Used as an object in the sentence on which work is going on.

Examples → me , him , her , it etc.

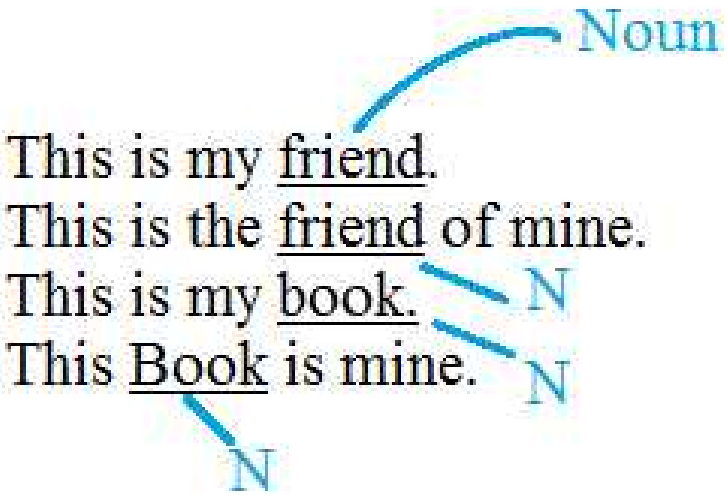
3. **Possessive** : Pronouns which show possessiveness.

www.BankExamsToday.com

Difference Between ' my ' & ' mine '

→ ' my ' is used before the noun.

→ ' mine ' is used after the noun.



Difference Between ' your ' and ' yours '

→ ' Your ' used before the ' noun '.

→ ' Yours ' used after the ' noun '.

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

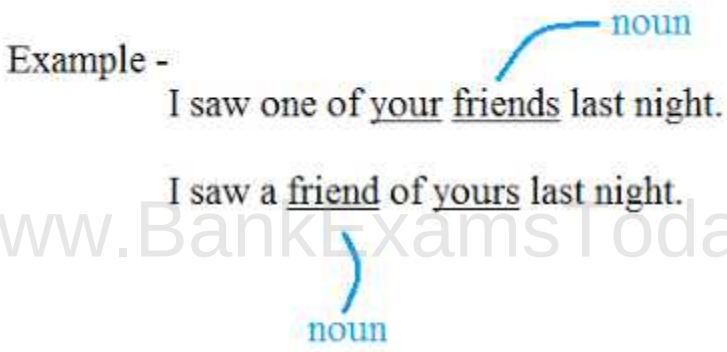


Table of Pronoun

	Nominative	Objective	Possessive
1st Person	I	me	my , mine
	We	us	our , ours
2nd Person	You	you	your yours
3rd Person	He	him	his
	She	her	her ,hers
	It	it	its
	They	them	their theirs

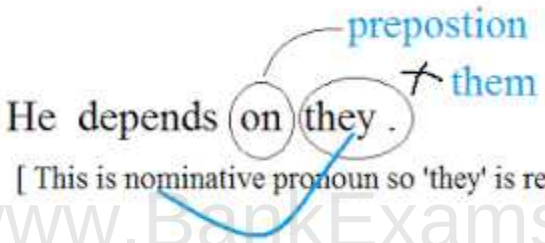
OBJECTIVE PRONOUN

Rule 1: After Preposition we have to use objective pronoun.

Example :

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com



www.BankExamsToday.com

Prepostion :	in ,	form ,	upon , under
	on ,	by ,	into , below
	at ,	with ,	between, beneath
	of ,	after ,	among , over
	for ,	before ,	amongst

Example :



Difference between ' I ' and ' me '

' I ' is used as a <u>subject</u> , which is do some work.

' me ' is worked as object on which work is going on , so it always used as a object , **is a objective noun and used after preposition.**

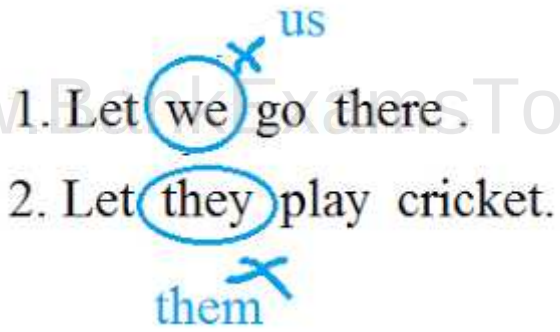
Rule 2: After ' Let '

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

Objective pronoun is used after ' Let '

Examples:

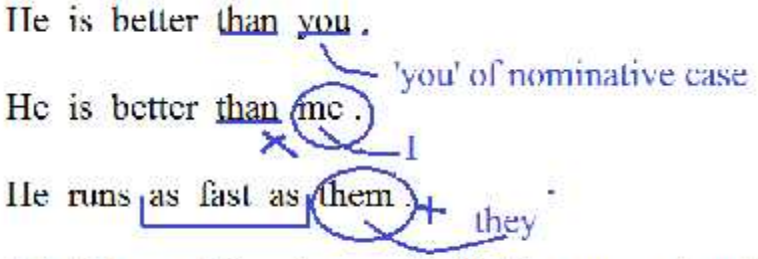


NOMINATIVE PRONOUN

Rule 3: After 'Than'

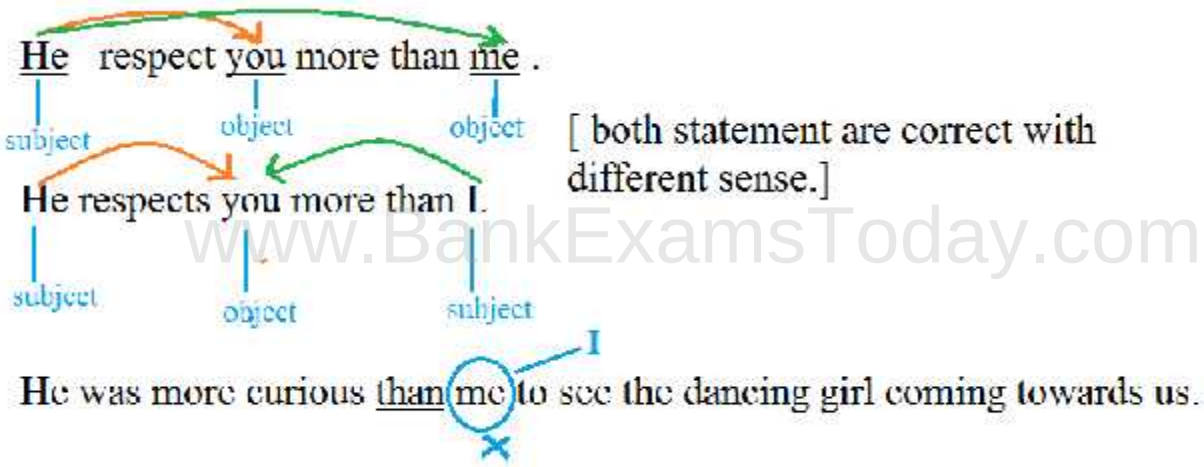
When there is any comparison between two , then nominative pronoun is used.

Examples:



['fast is a positive degree of adjective proceed and followed by 'as' so this phrase work as comparison so , nominative case applied.

BANK EXAMS Today



www.BankExamsToday.com

- His efforts will bring him more success than yours.
- You should be true to your word. or One should be true to his word.
- The dog I have bought looks more ferocious(wild) , than the one you have.
- The hotel of Patna are more luxurious than those of Muzaferpur.
- Yours are the same problems as mine.

Reflexive Pronoun

Transitive verbs :

Verbs which requires object after them, those are known as transitive verb.

Example:

Children fly kites.

[here fly acts as transitive verb because children fly doesn't make any sense, So noun is used to complete the sentence Those verbs which always comes along with Pronoun or noun is known as transitive verb]

Birds fly.

[Here fly is not a transitive verb]

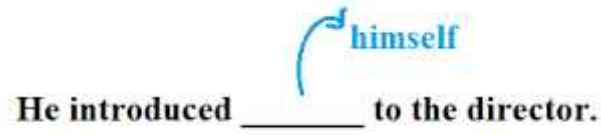
www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

Some verb which act as transitive verbs

- cut
- kill
- introduce
- hurt
- eat
- absent
- hit
- watch
- avail
- cheat
- prostrate
- enjoy

Example :



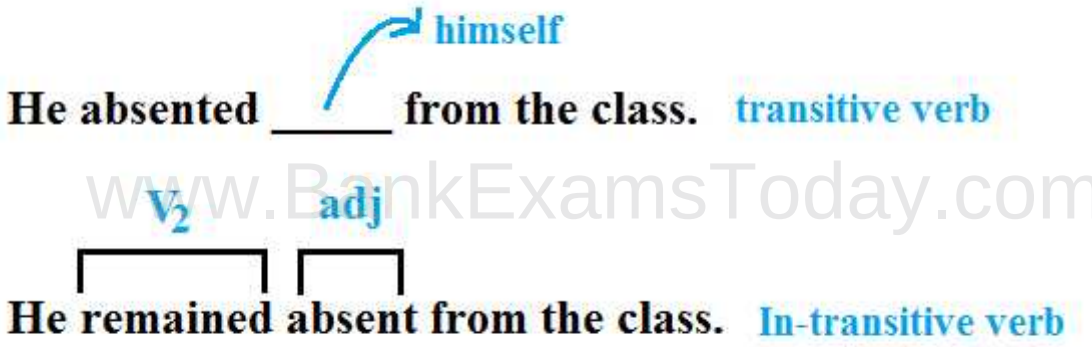
We use a reflexive pronoun as object or complement when it refers to the same thing as the subject. The pronouns which are used with transitive verb as a object are known as reflexive pronoun.

Reflexive Pronoun are :

- he → himself
- her → herself
- it → itself
- they → themselves
- I → myself
- you → yourself
- we → ourselves
- one → oneself

Examples:

www.BankExamsToday.com



www.BankExamsToday.com

[here , absent is not work as transitive verb , it is used as adjective so reflexive pronoun is not used here]

He prostrated himself before his master , who had come from London after a year.

The officer as well as the assistants absented ~~themselves~~ from the office.[Correct ; himself]

[In the sentence there is ' as well as ' used with which verb is changed to 1st noun or pronoun and here officer , so 'themselves' is changed himself.

*** Exception**

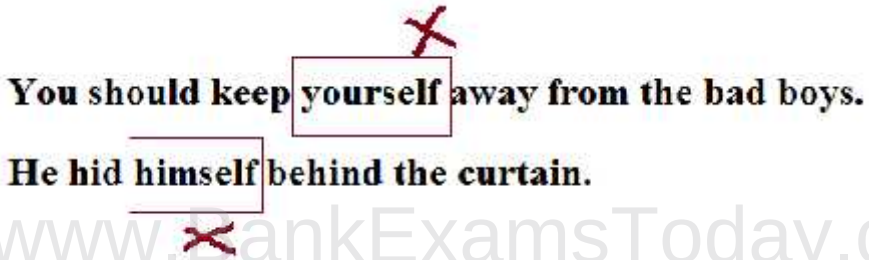
Transitive verb does not use reflexive pronoun.

- keep
- stop
- bathe
- turn
- rest
- qualify
- hide

Examples:

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com



www.BankExamsToday.com

<u>In-Transitive Verb</u>

Verb which does not require object.

Birds fly.

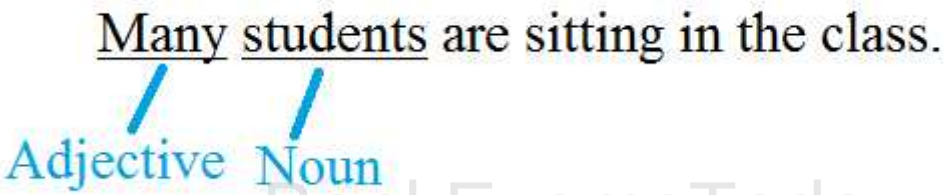
Adjectives

Adjectives are words that describes or modify another person or thing in the sentence.



www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com



Degree of adjective

1. **Positive:** It is used to describe the quality of noun.

He is a good boy.

2. **Comparative Degree :** It is used when there is a comparison between two nouns or pronouns.

He is better than you.

3 **Superlative Degree :** When noun is shown as a superior out of a club or group, class etc.

Superlative degree is used. Superlative degree is followed by ' the '.

He is the best student of class.

Comparative Degree

Positive Degree	Comaparative Degree	Superlative Degree
good	better	best
intelligent	more intelligent	most intelligent
beautiful	more beautiful	most beautiful

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

Rule 1

1. There are some adjective which denotes absolute positions and of which comparative and superlative degrees remains the some.

complete	idel	inferior
perfect	major	interior
excellent	minor	exterior
cheif	superior	posterior
ulterior	senior	junior

www.BankExamsToday.com

Happiness is the chiefest aim of mankind. ✗ chief

I have never seen a more complete book on GS. ✗

Rule 2

Their are some adjective which uses 'to' rather than ' than' when used to compare.

These adjective has suffix - ' ior '

These adjective are:

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

senior	exterior	posterior
junior	superior	ulterior
interior	inferior	

Example:

He is more senior than to you.

He is very much senior to you.

Rule 3

If two adjective are separated by ' and ' , then they must be in some degree.

[superlative] [superlative]

She is the most active and the most energetic lady of our club.

She is both clever and more intelligent than her younger sister.

Use of ' very , ' more ' , ' much '

Very : It is used with positive degree of adjective .

More: Used with comparative degree of two.

Much : It is used with comparative degree.

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

Example:

1. He is good.
2. He is very good.
3. He is better than you.
4. He is much better than you.
5. He is comparatively ~~smarter~~ than you. [Correct : Smart]

www.BankExamsToday.com

Conversion of Superlative degree to Comparative degree

There are two methods to change superlative degree to comparative degree

Methods

1. All + Other + Plural Noun
2. Any + Other + Singular Noun

Gold is more precious than any other metal.

Examples:

1. He is better than all other ~~boy~~ of the class. [Correct : boys] **[Method 1]**
2. He is better than any other boy of the class. **[Method 2]**
3. She was curious to know what it was that made him stronger and braver than any other man of his village. **[Method 2]**
4. The Ganga is the holiest of all ~~other~~ rivers of India.

[' other ' is never used with superlative degree]

Synthesis

Synthesis is done between two special type of sentences which have

BANK EXAMS Today

www.BankExamsToday.com

as + positive degree + as
or not so } in negative sentence

— comparative degree

as + positive degree + as

Example : 1st- He is as good as you.

2nd- He is not better than you.
comparative degree

Synthesis He is as good as if not better than you.

conjuction

[It is done by using conjuction ' If / but]

Example : She is more beautiful but not so altered as her younger sister.

Ordering of Adjectives

Size → shape → age → color → nationality → noun

Example → Black American 20 year old Nigro is his best friend.

Correct → 20 year Black American Negro is his best friend.

Examples:

1. he wanted certain ~~boy~~ to make entry into the principal's chamber.[Correct : boys]
   certain → a) with ' certain ' noun used in plural form
   b) ' a ' is used with certain

2. These ~~sort~~ of men attain worldly success by hook or by crook. [Correct : sorts]

Examples:

' These ' and ' Those '

The noun following ' these ' and ' those ' should be in plural form.

www.BankExamsToday.com

1. There were only two soldiers but each ~~and every soldiers~~ was equal to 5 policemen.

   [Correct : soldier , 'and each' never be used] here each is used as adjective.

2. Inspite of facing ~~much~~ problems he did not dessert the path of honesty. [Correct : Many]

www.BankExamsToday.com

' much ' and ' many '

much is used with uncountable nouns. many is used with countable nouns.

1. Can you tell me how many eggs and how much milk he has brought home.
2. whole the chapter of the book is full of printing mistake.

'All , Whole & Both '

' All ' and ' both ' are followed by definite article ' the '. ' whole ' is proceeded by the definite article ' the ' .

1. Her long black hair adds glamour to her looks. [size → color (Order of Adjectives)]
2. I saw an anxious pale girl . [emotion → color (Order of Adjective]
3. I saw a pale anxious girl.
4. I t is a fact that mahatma Gandhi was the ~~1st~~ politician of his time. [Correct : famous]
5. Delhi is farther from Patna than it is from kolkata.
6. You can trust this agency for the ~~last~~ news of this week. [Correct : latest]
7. He doesn't have ~~some~~ money to buy a new car. [Correct : any]

' Some ' & ' Any '

' any ' is used with negative sentence and question

1. He felt ~~happily~~ to know that, his younger brother had got a prestigious job in the bank.

   [Correct: happy]

Prepositions with examples

A preposition is a word which shows the relationship between two objects indicating their position.

Such as:

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

The book is on the table. (On shows the relationship between the book and the table)

Weal ready know that for error correction, cloze test etc., prepositions knowledge is very important. Here given tips and tricks to know prepositions use better. Let's have a look please.

Some of the important prepositions are listed below

www.BankExamsToday.com

PREPOSITIONS SHOWING TIME

1. At, in

At **in used with a definite point of time in mind.**

I go to my Department **at** 7:30 a.m. everyday.

He will come **at** Holi.

In **is generally used to denote a specific time, period month, year.**

I play chess **in** the evening.

Exception: ***At*** **is used with noon.**

He comes **at** noon for lunch.

2. On, by

On **is used with days and dates.**

He was born **on** the 9th of July.

I teach Wordsworth **on** every Monday.

By **refers to the latest time by which an action will be over.**

The meeting will break **by** 4 p.m.

3. For, Since

For **denotes a period of time and is used with the perfect continuous tense.**

I have been working in KR Mangalam University **for** the last 10 years.

Since **shows the point of time. It also indicates continuity.**

India has been independent since 1947.

4. From

From **refers to the starting point of an action.**

He is joining the new firm from the 1st of May.

PREPOSITIONS SHOWING POSITION

1. At, in

At **refers to an exact point.**

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

He lives **at** Nehru Place.

In **refers to a big area.**

He lives **in** Punjab.

2. Between, Among

Between **is used to distinguish two persons and things.**

The property was divided **between** Ram and Shyam.

Among **is used for more than two persons or things.**

The food was distributed **among** the ten boys in the family.

3.Amongst

Amongst **is also used with more than two persons or things but is always used before a vowel.**

Divide the oranges **amongst** us.

4. Above, under

Above**is used for higher than.**

The aeroplane was flying high in the sky, in fact, **above** the clouds.

*Below***is used for lower than.**

His output is **below** ours.

5. Under, over

Under **is used for vertically below.**

We sit **under** the tree when we have no class.

Over **indicates something vertically above.**

There is a separate room **over** the garage.

6. Beneath

Beneath **shows a lower position.**

The ground was soiled **beneath** her.

PREPOSITIONS SHOWING DIRECTION

1. ***To*** is used to indicate movement from one place to another.

The children go **to** the school every morning.

2. ***Towards*** points out a particular direction.

The lion ran **towards** the hunter.

3. ***Into*** indicates a movement inside something.

The thief entered **into** the room.

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

4. ***At*** indicates aim.
The hunter aimed **at** the bird.

5. ***For*** denotes direction.
I shall start **for** Patna today.

6. ***Off*** refers to separation.
He was thrown **off** from the car during the accident.

7. ***From*** refers to a point of departure.
We feel unhappy when we depart **from** our parents

8. ***Against*** shows pressure.
I rested my arms **against** the wall.

9. ***Along*** shows the same line.
I walked **along** the road.

10. ***Across*** means from one side.
I ran **across** the road

11. ***Before*** denotes face-to-face.
I was standing **before** my wife.

12. ***Behind*** means at the back of someone or something.
My daughter stood **behind** me.

13. ***Beside*** means by the side of.
The security guard sits **beside** the officer.

14. ***After*** refers to a sequence.
The child came running **after** the mother.

WORDS TAKING MORE THAN ONE PREPOSITION

A large number of words are always followed by a fixed preposition.

Example: Insist on; prevent from; fond of. But certain words take several prepositions according to the changing meanings of the word. Here is a select list of such words.

1. Accompany

A. *By*(for living being)

The Prime Minister was accompanied **by** the members of his cabinet.

B. *With*(Subtle things)

His lecture was accompanied **with** subtle analysis of concepts.

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

2. **Accountable**

A. *To*(an authority or a person)

All of us are accountable **to** God.

B. *For*(action)

We are accountable to God **for** our deeds and misdeeds.

www.BankExamsToday.com

3. **Angry**

A. *At*(a thing). Ram is angry **at** Sham's bad conduct.

B. *With* (a person).Ram is angry **with** Sham.

4. **Annoyed**

A. *With*(a person). He is annoyed **with** his younger brother.

B. *At*(something). He is annoyed with his friend **at** his laziness.

5. **Answerable**

A. *To*(a person). The servant is answerable **to** the master.

B. *For*(something). We are answerable to our parents **for** our conduct.

6. **Appeal**

A. *To*(person). He appealed to the judge for his release from jail.

B. *For* (thing). He appealed for his release from the prison.

7. **Arrive**

A. *At*(small place). He arrived **at** the railway colony.

B. *In*(big place). He arrived **in** India.

8. **Attend**

A. *To*(duties, lessons, work). I attend **to** my duties sincerely.

B. *On*(service). Children attend **on** parents.

9. **Authority**

A. *On*(subject). Mr. Suresh is an authority **on** Modern physics.

B. *Over*(rights). The District Magistrate has authority **over** the Committee.

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

10. **Blind**

A. *Of*(Physical). He is blind **of** one eye.

B. *To*(mental). Many parents are blind **to** the faults of their children.

11. **Communicate**

A. *With*(to make correspondence). He communicated **with** us on that matter.

B. *To*(to convey). He communicated his opinion **to** me.

12. **Compare**

A. *With*(Similar things). Shakespeare is compared **with** Kalidasa.

B. *To*(dissimilar things). Life is compared **to** a battle.

13. **Compete**

A. *With*(Person). I cannot compete **with** the young man.

B. *For*(a thing). They compete **for** a prize.

14. **Complain**

A. *To*(person). He complained **to** the Magistrate against Sham.

B. *Against*(a person). He complained to the Magistrate **against** Sham.

C. *About*(a thing). He complained to the Magistrate against Sham **about** his misconduct.

15. **Confer**

A. *On*(to give). The president conferred the title of Bharat Ratna **on** him.

B. *With*(a person). I shall confer **with** him about important topics.

16. **Die**

A. *Of*(a disease). He died **of** cholera.

B. *From*(a cause). He died **from** overwork.

17. **Differ**

A. *With*(person). I differ **with** you.

B. *From*(things). India differs **from** Japan.

18. **Disqualified**

BANK EXAMS Today

www.BankExamsToday.com

A. *From*(action). He was disqualified **from** running the race.

B. *For*(post or thing). He was disqualified **for** the post of Police Inspector.

19. Entrust

A. *With*(in case of a person). I cannot entrust him **with** my money.

B. *To*(in case of thing). I cannot entrust my money **to** him.

20. Familiar

A. *With*(person). I am familiar **with** the Chief Minister.

B. *To*(subject). I am familiar **to** French Language.

21. Fight

A. *With*(person). We fought **with** the English.

B. *For*(thing). We fought with the English **for** freedom.

22. Grateful

A. *To*(person). I am grateful **to** Ram.

B. *For*(thing). I am grateful to Ram **for** his help.

23. Heir

A. *Of*(descendant). A son is usually the heir **of** the father.

B. *For*(thing). He was a heir **for** a big fortune.

24. Indebted

A. *To*(a person). I am indebted **to** my friend.

B. *For*(thing). I am indebted to my friend **for** his help.

25. Indignant

A. *With*(person). He was indignant **with** his friends.

B. *At*(thing). The teacher was indignant **at** his carelessness.

26. Live

A. *On*(to exist). A man lives **on** food.

B. *By*(to depend on, to believe in). A terrorist lives **by** the gun.

BANK EXAMS Today

www.BankExamsToday.com

27. **Part**

A. *From*(persons). He parted **from** his friends.

B. *With*(things). He cannot part **with** his money.

28. **Responsible**

A. *To*(person). He was responsible **to** the boss.

B. *For*(thing). We are responsible to God **for** our actions.

29. **Taste**

A. *Of*(experience). Now you will have a taste **of** New York.

B. *For*(interest). I have no taste **for** painting.

30. **Tired**

A. *Of*(mental). I am tired **of** poverty.

B. *With*(physical). I am tired **with** working for five hours continuously.

Conjunction Rules

Conjunction is a word or a group of words which connects two or more than two words, phrases, clauses, sentences etc.

Types of Conjunctions

Coordinating Conjunctions

A coordinating conjunction joins together clauses of the same parts of the speech i.e. adverb-adverb, noun-noun, adjective-adjective. **E.g.** He came to meet me, **but** I was not at home.

Subordinating Conjunctions

A Subordinating conjunction joins a clause to another on which it depends for its full meaning. **E.g.** Since I was busy, I could not call you up.

www.BankExamsToday.com

Conjunction Rules:

Rule 1

The conjunction **both** is followed by **and**

E.g. He is **both** intelligent **and** hard working.

www.BankExamsToday.com

Rule 2

The conjunction **so....as / as....as** is used to make comparison between two persons and things. so as is used in negative sentences.

E.g. He is not **so** good **as** you.

But as....as is used in both affirmative and negative sentences

E.g. He is **as** good **as** you.
He is not **as** good **as** you.

Rule 3

Although/ Though is followed by **yet** or a **comma(,)**

E.g. **Though** he worked hard, he failed.

Although these books are costly **yet** the students buy them because these are useful.

Rule 4

Always use the correct pair
No sooner.....than

Hardly.... when or before
Scarcely.... when or before
Barely.... when or before

E.g. **No sooner** had he solved the riddle than he was applauded.
Hardly had I come out of the room

before I saw him dying.
Scarcely had he asked the question
when Agnes slapped him.
Barely had he bought the car **before** it was stolen.

Hardly, scarcely, and barely are negative words. Do not use not, no, never with the clause containing these words. If a sentences starts with a negative word, use inversion form i.e. helping verb before the subject.

Rule 5

Lest is followed by **should** or first from of verb. Lest is a negative word. Do not use not, never, no with lest.

E.g. Walk carefully **lest** he **should** fall.
Walk carefully **lest** he fall.

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

Rule 6

Until is time oriented and **unless** is action oriented. Until and unless are negative words.

Do not use not, never , no, with the clause containing these words.

E.g. Wait here **until** I return.
Unless you work hard, you will not pass.

www.BankExamsToday.com

Rule 7

In affirmative sentences **doubt** and **doubtful** are followed by **if/ whether**. In negative or interrogative sentences **doubt** and **doubtful** are followed by **that.**

E.g. I doubt **if** he will come.
I do not doubt **that** he will come.

Rule 8

Always use the correct pair **not only....but also.**

E.g. He cheated **not only** his friends **but also** his parents.

Rule 9

Between is followed by **and from** is followed by **to**.

E.g. You will have to choose **between** good **and** bad.
She keeps singing **from** morning **to** evening.

Rule 10

Neither of means **none of the two**. when more than two person or things are present **none of** is used.

Either of means **one of the two**. when more than two person or things are present **one of** is used.

E.g. **None of** his friends helped him.
One of the students of your class is responsible for this loss.

Rule 11

Do not use seldom or ever in place of **seldom or never.**

E.g. The national network **seldom or never** telecasts good programmers.

Rule 12

After **rather /other**, the subordinating conjunction **than** should be used.

E.g. He has no **other** object **than** to get a handsome job.
I would **rather** buy a scooter **than** a cycle.

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

- A, An, The, are called articles.
- Articles are demonstrative adjectives.
- Articles are of two type, definite and indefinite articles.
- “a” and “an” are indefinite articles.
- “The” is definite article.

Use of “A”

1. Every singular noun which starts with consonants , starts with “a”

   E.g. a cat, a dog, a pen, a house, a college etc.

2. Every singular noun which starts with “E” or “U” starts with “a”.
   E.g. a university, a European, a uniform, a utensil

3. Every singular noun which starts with “O” but sounds like “v”
   E.g. a one rupee note, a one eyed man, a one way ticket.

Use of “An”

1. Every singular noun that starts with a vowel and sounds like (a, e, i, o, u)

   E.g. an apple, an egg, an eye, an ear, an inkpot, an orange, an elephant, an army, and idiot, an American.

2. That singular noun that starts with a consonant but sounds like “a”, ”o”, ”e”.

E.g. an MP, an MLA, an S.H.O(s sound like a in starting), an M.A , an hour, an honest man, an heir, an hotel (Because they all sounds like “o” in starting)

Note: only countable singular noun take “a” or “an” with them.

Uses of “The”

1. With the name of celestial bodies.

   E.g. the sun, the moon, the earth, the starts etc.

   2. Before the name of the directions if it is preceded by a preposition.

   E.g. the sun rises in the east and sets in the west

   3. Before the name of ships, trains, seas, oceans, canals, lakes, mountains,

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

islands, dams, deserts.

E.g. The frontier mail, the Arabian sea, the Indian ocean, the panama canal, the dal lake, the Himalayas, the Andaman, the bhakra dam, the sahara desert.

4. Before the name of some countries and provinces.

www.BankExamsToday.com

E.g. the USA, the Punjab, the Deccan

5. Before the name of religious books, magazines, newspapers

E.g. the Gita, the Indian express, the Hindustan times, the Mahabharata

6. Before the name of communities.

E.g. the English, the French, the Hindus.

7. Before the proper noun which is used as common nouns.

E.g. Kalidas is the Shakespeare of India, Kashmir is the Switzerland of Asia.

8. Before the name of political parties,

E.g. the congress, the Janata dal.

9. Before the name of historic and public places.

E.g. the Taj Mahal, the golden temple, the zoo, the library

10. Before the adjectives which have used as noun.

E.g. the rich, the poor, the brave

11. Before(adjective+ proper noun)

E.g. the little bunny is a shy girl

12. Before the adjectives if it is used before noun.

E.g. Ashoka the great, Akbar the great

13. To make plural of proper nouns.

E.g. the Guptas, the mauryas, the browns

14. Before the big ranks

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

E.g. the prime minister of India, the president of India, the principle of school

15. Before the historical events.

E.g. the battle of Plassey, the battle of Panipat, the mutiny of 1857

www.BankExamsToday.com

16. Before cardinal number

E.g. the second girl in the third row is my friend.

17. Before superlative degrees.

E.g. the wisest boy, the most intelligent person

18. Before comparative degree

E.g. She is the wiser of two

19. After" all "or "both" , but before" whole" or" same"

E.g. All the boys are making noise, both the girls are pretty, the whole class is absent, their ages are the same.

20. Before the common noun which have been described in the paragraph before.

E.g. There was a fox. The fox was hungry

I know the man who came yesterday

Participles

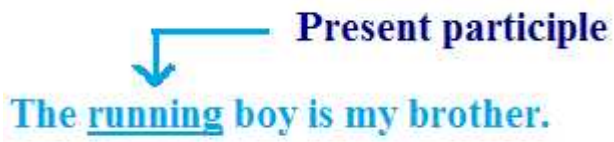
Types

1. Present Participle
2. Past Participle

Present Participle

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com



- Here running is come alone without any helping verb, so from this we got to know that 'running ' is not a part of tense.
- If we use only ' run ' instead of ' running ' it doesn't make any sense
- So when v_1 + ing comes alone, without them sentence doesn't make any sense is known as participle.
- If it in the present tense (is, are is used) , then the participle is known as Present Participle.
- Here participle is act as an adjective.

Past Participle

- Used for all perfect tense forms of a verb and in the passive voice.

Example: He hid the money in his recently gotten shirt.
Here gotten is past participle because :

- It acts as adjective because it adds the quality or describes about noun. (Here noun is shirt)
- No helping verb is used with ' gotten ' so it cannot be a part of tense.
- It is third form of verb.

Example : He took the gun. He shot the tiger.

Having taken the gun, he shot the tiger. [Active Voice]

Here past participle is used with having

So in the active voice past participle can come as having + v_3
Having been taken the gun, he shot the tiger. [Passive Voice]
[He : Subject of Reference]

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

Idioms and Phrases

Phrases with Meaning

1) **A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush**- Having something that is certain is much better than taking a risk for more, because chances are you might losing everything.

2) **A blessing in disguise**- Something good that isn't recognized by first

3) **Bull in china shop**- One who causes damage

4) **A chip on your shoulder**- Being upset for something that happened in the past

5) **A damp squib**- Complete failure

6) **A dime A dozen**- Anything that is common and easy to get

7) **A doubting Thomas**- A skeptic who needs physical or personal evidence in order to believe something

8) **A drop in the bucket**- A very small part of something big or whole

9) **A fool and his money are easily parted**- It's easy for a foolish person to lose his/ her money

10) **A gentleman at large**- An unreliable person

11) **A green horn**- Inexperienced

12) **A house divided against itself cannot stand**- Everyone involved must unify and function together or it will not work out.

13) **A leopard can't change his spots**- You cannot change who you are

14) **A lost cause**- A hopeless case, a person or situation having no hope of positive change.

15**) A man of straw**- A weak person

16) **A mare's nest**- A false invention

17) **A penny saved is a penny earned**- By not spending money, you are saving money (little by little)

18) **A picture paints a thousand words**- A visual presentation is far more descriptive than words

19) **A piece of cake**- A task that can be accomplished very easily

20) **A slap on the wrist**- A very mild punishment

21) **A stalking horse**- Pretence

22) **A steal**- Very inexpensive, a bargain

23) **A taste of your own medicine**- When you are mistreated the same way you mistreat others

24) **A toss-up**- A result hat is still unclear and can go either way

25) **A wolf in sheep's clothing**- A dangerous person pretending harmless

26) **ABC: Very common knowledge about to**- Ready to, just going to

27) **Above all**- Mainly, especially

28) **Above board**- Fair and honest

www.BankExamsToday.com

29) **According to**- In the order of; on the authority of

30) **Actions speak louder than words**- It's better to actually do something than hust talk about it

31) **Add fuel to the fire**- Whenever something is done to make a bad situation even worse than it is

32) **Against the clock**- Rushed and short on time

www.BankExamsToday.com

33**) All (day, week, month, year) long**- The entire day, week, month, year

34) **All along**- All the time, from the beginning (without change)

35) **All and Sundry**- Without making any distinction

36) **All bark and no bite**- When someone is threatening and/ or aggressive but not willing to engage in a fight

37) **All Greek to me**- Meaningless and incomprehensible like someone who cannot read, speak, or

38) **All in all**- Considering everything

39) **All in the same boat**- When everyone is facing the same challenges

40) **All of a sudden**- Suddenly, without warning (All at once)

41) **All right**- Acceptable, fine; yes, okay

42) **Alpha and omega**- First and last letter of Greek alphabet, means beginning and end

43) **An arm and a leg**- Very expensive, A large amount of money

44) **An axe to grind**- To have a dispute with someone

45) **An eye wash**- A pretence

46) **An iron hand**- By force

47) **Apple to my eye**- Someone who is cherished above all others

48) **As a matter of fact**- Really, actually (also: as to)

49) **As for**- Regarding, concerning (also: as to)

50) **As high as a kite**- Anything that is high up in the sky

51) **As soon as**- Just after, when

52) **As usual**- as is the general case, as is typical

53) **At all**- To any degree (also: in the least)

54) **At heart**- Basically, fundamentally

55) **At last**- Finally, after a long time

56) **At least**- A minimum of, no fewer (or less) than

57) **At odds**- In dispute

58) **At sixes and seven**- Persons who are having different opinions

59) **At the drop of a hat**- Willing to do something immediately

60) **Back and call**- At the service

61) **Back and forth**- In a backward and forward motion

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

62) **Back seat driver**- People who criticize from the sidelines, much like someone giving unwanted advice

63) **Back to square one**- Having to start all over again

64) **Back to the drawing board**- When an attempt fails and it's time to start all over

65) **Bag and baggage**- with all goods

66) **Baker's dozen**- Thirteen

www.BankExamsToday.com

67) **Bank on**- Depend on, count on

68) **Barking up the wrong tree**- A mistake made in something you are trying to achieve

69**) Bated breath**- In anxiety, expectancy

70) **Beat a dead horse**- To force an issue that has already ended

71) **Beating around the bash**- Avoiding the main topic, not speaking directly about the issue

72) **Bend over backwards**- Do whatever it takes to help. Willing to do anything

73) **Between a Rock and a Hard place**- Stuck between two very bad options

74) **Between Scylla and Charybdis**- Choice between two unpleasant alternatives

75) **Between the cup and the lips**- On the point of achievement

76) **Bite off more than you can chew**- To take on a task that is a way to big

77**) Bite your tongue**- To avoid talking

78) **Black and white**- In writing

79) **Blood is thicker than water**- The family bond is closer than anything else

80) **Blow hot and cold**- Having no stand, shows favor at one time and unfavor at another

81) **Blue moon**- A rare event or occurrence

82) **Body and soul**- Entirely

83) **Break a leg**- A superstitious way to say 'Good Luck' without saying 'Good Luck',

84) **Buy a lemon**- To purchase a vehicle that constantly gives problems or stops running after you drive it

85) **By & by**- Gradually

86) **By all means**- Certainly, definitely, naturally (also: of course); using any possible way or method

87) **By far**- By a great margin, clearly

88) **By fits and starts**- Irregularly

89) **By heart**- By memorizing

90) **By hook or by crook**- By any means

91) **By leaps and bound**- speedily

92) **By oneself**- Alone, without assistance

93) **By the way**- Incidentally

94) **Call a spade a spade**- Straight talks

95) **Can't cut the mustard**- Someone who isn't adequate enough to compete or participate

BANK EXAMS Today

www.BankExamsToday.com

96) **Cast iron stomach**- Someone who has no problems, complications or ill effects with eating anything

97) **Cats and bull story**- Untrue story

98) **Cats and dogs**- Heavy rain

99) **Charley horse**- stiffness in the leg/ A leg cramp

www.BankExamsToday.com

100) **Chew someone out**- Verbally scold someone

101) **Chip on his shoulder**- Angry today about something that occurred in the past

102) **Chow down**- To eat

103) **Clear- cut**- Clearly stated, definite, apparent

104) **Close but no cigar**- To be near and almost accomplish a goal, but fall short

105) **Close call**- A situation involving a narrow escape from danger

106) **Cock and bull story**- An unbelievable tale, untrue story

107) **Come hell or high water**- Any difficult situation or obstacle

108) **Crack someone up**- To make someone laugh

109) **Cross your fingers**- To hope that something happens the way you want it to

110) **Cry wolf**- Intentionally raise a false alarm

111) **Cup of joe**- A cup of coffee

112) **Curtain lecture**- A reproof by wife to her husband

113) **Cut and dried**- Ready made form

114) **Cut to the chase**- Leave out all the unnecessary details and just get to the point

115) **Dark horse**- One who was previously unknown and is now prominent

116) **Day in and day out**- Continuously, constantly

117) **Dead Ringer**- 100 % identical, a duplicate

118**) Devil's advocate**- Someone who takes a position for the sake of argument without believing in that

119) **Dog days of summer**- The hottest day of the summer season

120) **Don't count your chickens before they hatch**- Don't rely on it until you sure of it

121) **Don't look a gift horse in the month**- When someone gives you a gift, don't be ungrateful

122) **Don't pull all your eggs in one basket**- Do not pull all your resources in one possibility

123) **Doozy**- Something outstanding

124) **Down to the wire**- Something that ends at the last minute or last few seconds

125) **Drastic times call for drastic measures**- When you are extremely desperate you need to take extremely desperate actions

126) **Drink like a fish**- To drink very heavily, drinking anything

127) **Dry run**- Rehearsal

128) **Egg on**- To urge somebody

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

129) **Eighty six**- A certain item is no longer available. Or this idiom can also mean, to throw away

130) **Elvis has left the building**- The show has come to an end. It's all over

131) **Ethnic cleansing**- Killing of a certain ethnic or religious group on a massive scale

132) **Ever and anon**- Now and then

www.BankExamsToday.com

133) **Every cloud has a silver lining**- Be optimistic, even difficult times will lead to better days

134) **Every other (one)**- Every second (one), alternate (ones)

135) **Everything but the kitchen sink**- Almost everything and anything has been included

136) **Excuse my French**- Please forgive me for cussing

137) **Fabian policy**- Policy of delaying decisions

138) **Face-to-face**- Direct, personal; directly, personally (written without hyphens)

139) **Fair and wide**- Equal opportunity to all

140) **Far and wide**- Every where

141) **Few and far between**- Not frequent, unusual, rare

142) **Field day**- An enjoyable day or circumstance

143) **Fifty- fifty**- Divided into two equal parts

144) **Finding your feet**- To become more comfortable in whatever you are doing

145) **Finger licking good**- To become more comfortable in whatever you are doing

146) **Fire and brimstone**- A very tasty food or meal

147) **Fire and fury**- Fearful penalties

148) **First and foremost**- Extreme enthusiasm

149) **Fishy: doubtful**- Highest priority

150) **Fixed in your ways**- Not willing or wanting to change from your normal way of doing something

151) **Flash in the pan**- Something that shows potential or looks promising in the beginning but fails to deliver

152) **Flea market**- A swap meet. A place where people gather to buy and sell inexpensive goods

153) **Flesh and blood**- This idiom can mean living material of which people are made of, or it can refer to human nature

154) **Flip the bird**- To raise your middle finger at someone

155) **Foam at the mouth**- To be enraged and show it

156**) Fools' Gold**- Iron pyrites, a worthless rock that resembles real gold

157) **Foot the bill**- Bear expenses

158) **For good**- Permanently, forever

159) **For once**- This one time, for only one time

160) **For sure**- Without doubt (also: for certain)

161) **For the time being**- Temporarily (also: for now)

BANK EXAMS Today

www.BankExamsToday.com

162) **Free and easy**- Natural and simple
163) **French kiss**- An open mouth kiss where tongues touch
164) **From now on**- From this time into the future
165) **From rags to riches**- To go from very poor to being very wealthy
166) **Fuddy- duddy**- An old-fashioned and foolish type of person
167) **Full monthy**- This idiom can mean either, "The whole thing" or "Completely nude"
168) **Funny farm**- A mental institutional facility
169) **Gall and wormwood**- Source of irritation
170) **Get down to brass tacks**- To become serious about something
171) **Get over it**- To move beyond something that is bothering you
172) **Get up on the wrong side of the bed**- Someone who is having a horrible day
173) **Get your walking papers**- Get fired from the job
174) **Gird up the loin**- To be ready
175) **Give and take**- Compromise, cooperation between people
176) **Give him the slip**- To get away from, to escape
177) **Give in**- Surrender
178) **Go down like a lead balloon**- To be received badly by an audience
179) **Go for broke**- To gamble everything you have
180) **Go out on a limb**- Put yourself in a tough position in order to support someone/ something
181) **Go the extra mile**- Going above and beyond whatever is required for the task at hand
182) **Good Samaritan**- Someone who helps others when they are in need, with no discussion for
183) **Graveyard shift**- Working hours from about 12:00 am to 8.00
184) **Great minds think alike**- Intelligent people think like each other
185) **Green room**- The waiting room, especially for those who are about to go on a TV or radio show
186) **Gut feeling**- A personal intuition you get, especially when feel something may not be right
187) **Had better**- Should, ought to, be advisable to
188) **Hand a gloves**- Very intimate friends
189) **Hard and fast**- Certain
190) **Hard of hearing**- Partially deaf, not able to hear well
191) **Haste makes waste**- Quickly doing things results in a poor ending
192) **Hat Trick**- When one player scores three goals in the same hockey game.
193) **Haughty and naughty**- Arrogant and naughty
194) **Have an axe to grind**- To have a dispute with someone
195) **Have got**- To have, to possess
196) **Have got to**- Must (also: have to)

BANK EXAMS Today

www.BankExamsToday.com

197) **He lost his head**- Angry and overcome by emotions
198) **Head and shoulder**- Superior
199) **Head over heels**- Very excited and/ or joyful, especially when in love
200) **Heart and soul**- With full devotion
201) **Hell in a hand basket**- Deteriorating and headed for complete disaster
202) **Helter Shelter**-Here and there
203) **Herculean task**- A tedious job
204) **High five**- Slapping palms above each others heads as celebration gesture
205) **High on the Hog**- Living in luxury
206) **Hit below the belt**- Contrary the principles of fairness
207) **Hit the books**- To study, especially for a test or exam
208) **Hit the hay**- Go to bed or go to sleep
209) **Hit the nail on the head**- Do something exactly right or say something exactly right
210) **Hit the sack**- Go to bed or go to sleep
211) **Hither and thither**- Here and there
212) **Hocus Pocus**- In general, a term used in magic or trickery
213) **Hold your horses**- Be patient
214) **Hole and corner policy**- A secret policy for an evil purpose
215) **Hornet's nest**- Raise controversy
216) **Hue and cry**- Great noise
217) **Hush money**- A bribe
218) **Icing on the cake**- When you already have it good and get something on top of what you already have
219) **Idle hands are the devil's tools**- You are more likely to get in trouble if you have nothing to do
220) **If it's not one thing, it's another**- When one thing goes wrong, then another, and another…
221) **Ill at ease**- Uncomfortable or worried in a situation
222) **In a hurry**- Hurried, rushed (also: in a rush)
223) **In case**- In order to be prepared if the meaning is in order to be prepared if something happens
224) **In hand**- Under firm control, well managed
225) **In like Flynn**- To be easily successful, especially when sexual or romantic
226) **In no time**- Very quickly, rapidly
227) **In the bag**- To have something secured
228) **In the buff**- Nude
229) **In the heat of the moment**- Overwhelmed by what is happening in the moment

BANK EXAMS Today

www.BankExamsToday.com

230) **In the long run**- Eventually, after a long period of time

231) **In the worst way**- Very much, greatly

232) **In time to**- Before the time necessary to do something

233) **In touch**- Having contact

234**) In vain**- Useless, without the desired result

www.BankExamsToday.com

235) **In your face**- An aggressive and bold confrontation

236) **Ins and outs**- Full detail

237) **Inside out**- With the inside facing the outside

238) **Intents and purposes**- Practically

239) **It figures**- It seems likely, reasonable, or typical

240) **It takes two to tango**- A two person conflict where both people are at fault

241) **It's a small world**- You frequently see the same people in different places

242) **It anyone's call-** A competition where the outcome is difficult to judge or predict

243) **Ivory tower**- Imaginary world

244) **Ivy league**- Since 1954 the Ivy league has been the following universities: Columbia, Brown, Cornell

245) **Jaywalk**- Crossing the street (from the middle) without using the crosswalk

246) **Joshing me**- Tricking me

247) **Keep an eye on him**- You should carefully watch him. Keep an eye on

248) **Keep body** and soul together- To earn a sufficient amount of money in order to keep yourself alive

249) **Keep your chin up- To remain joyful in a tough situation**

250) **Kick the** bucket- Die

251) **Kith and kin**- Blood relatives

252) **Kitty-corner**- Diagonally across. Sometimes called Catty- Corner as well

253) **Knock on Wood**- Knuckle tapping on wood in order to avoid some bad luck

254) **Know the ropes**- To understand the details

255) **Last but not least**- An introduction phrase to let the audience know that the last person mentioned is also very important

256) **Last straw**- The final event in a series of unacceptable actions

257) **Latin and Greek**- Unable to understand

258) **Leave no stone unturned**- Make all possible efforts

259) **Lend me your ear**- To politely ask for someone's full attention

260) **Length and breadth**- All over

261) **Let along**- and certainly not (also: not to mention, to say nothing of)

262) **Let the cat out of the bag**- To share a secret that wasn't suppose to be shared

263) **Level playing field**- A fair competition where no side has an advantage

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

264) **Life and soul**- Main support

265) **Like a chicken and its head cut off**- To act in a frenzied manner

266) **Liquor someone up**- To get someone drunk

267) **Little by little**- Gradually, slowly (also: step by step)

268) **Live-wire**- Energetic

269) **Loaves and fish**- Material interests

www.BankExamsToday.com

270) **Lock and key**- In safe place

271) **Long in the tooth**- Old people (or horses)

272) **Loose cannon**- Someone who is unpredictable and can cause damage if not kept in check

273) **Make no bones about**- To state a fact so there are no doubts or objections

274) **Method to my madness**- Strange or crazy actions that appear meaningless but in the end are done for a good reason

275) **Might and main**- With all enthusiasm

276) **Milk and water**- Weak

277) **More or less**- Approximately, almost, somewhat, to a certain degree

278) **Mumbo Jumbo**- Nonsense or meaningless speech

280) **Mum's the word**- To keep quiet, To say nothing

280) **Narrow-minded**- Not willing to accept the ideas of others

Subject Verb Agreement Rules

In any sentence the use of verb according to subject's number and person is called verb agreement.

1. He comes (If Subject 'Singular' then Verb 'Singular')
2. They come (If Subject 'Plural' then Verb 'Plural')

It is important to understand singular and plural for use of right form of verb.

Singular Verb	Plural Verb		Singular Verb	Plural Verb
is	are		was	were
has	have		V_1 + s/es (plays, goes etc.)	V_1 (play, go etc.)

The difference between Verb and noun.

Noun + s/es -> Plural noun (With s/es noun becomes plural)

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

Verb + s/es -> Singular Verb (With s/es verb becomes singular)

Rule 1

If two **Subjects** use with **'and'** then **Plural Verb** will use.
E.g.
Ram and Sham are coming.

Rule 2

If two or more than two **Nouns** or adjectives use with and but they use only for one person, then Singular Verb will use.

My friend, philosopher and guide have come. (change 'have' to '**has**')

Slow and steady win the race. (change 'win' to '**wins**')

Fish and chips is my favorites dish. (**Correct**)

Note - i) If two **uncountable nouns** use with '**and**', and act as **subject** then plural verb will use.
E.g.
Poverty **and** misery **come** together. (**Correct**)

Rule 3

If two subjects add with **"as well as, with, alongwith, together with, and not, in addition to, but, besides, except, rather than, accompanied by, like, unlike, no lessthan, nothing but"** then verb will use according to first subject.
E.g.

1. Ram **as well as** his parents **is** coming.
2. The captain **along with** the sailors **was** drowned.
3. My **father unlike** my uncles **is** very strict.

Rule 4

If use of **Article** only with **1st Subject** then it means **only one man or object**. So **Singular Verb** will use. e.g.
1) **A** white and black gown **was** bought by her.
2) Churchil was a great orator and a great politician of his time. (**Incorrect**)
Churchil was a great orator and politician of his time. (**Correct**)
But if use of **Article** with every **Subject** means **different subjects and objects**. So use **Plural Verb**.

E.g.

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

The director and **the** producer **have** come. (**Correct**)

Rule 5

If two subject add with '**neither….nor, either…..or, not only….but also, nor, or** and **none-but**,' then verb will be according to nearest subject.
E.g.

www.BankExamsToday.com

1.Neither Ram **nor** Sham **has** come.
2.Either Ram **or** his friends **have** come.
3.Has Ram **or** Sham come?

Rule 6

'Neither of'….means **'no one from two'**.
'**none of**'….means '**no one from more than two'.**

E.g.

Neither of his four sons looked after him. (**Incorrect**)
None of his four sons looked after him. (**Correct**)

Either of…. Means one out of two.
One of…. Means one out of more than two.
E.g.

Either of the five members is at fault. (**Incorrect**)
One of the five members is at fault.(**Correct**)

Note:- With Both not cannot use because for 'no one from two' neither of will use.
E.g.

Both of them did not take the exam. (**Incorrect**)
Neither of them look the exam. (**Correct**)

Rule 7

Some noun by form its plural, but by meaning it is singular. With this we use singular verb.
E.g.
1) Measles, Mumps, Rickets etc.
2) Billiards, Darts, Draughts etc.
3) The United States, The West Indies, etc.
4) The Arabian Nights, Three Musketeers etc.
5) Physics, Economics, Civics, Statistics, Pol. Science etc.

E.g.

BANK EXAMS Today

www.BankExamsToday.com

1) Mathematics **is** an interesting subject.
2) Politics **is** not my cup of tea.
Note- If **Statistics** use as **data**, **Mathematics** use as **Calculation** and **Politics** use as Political views then its use will be plural. e.g.
Statistics **have** revealed multiple scams in the organization of commonwealth games.

Rule 8

In a sentence a **verb** is according to the **main subject**. We usually place it with according to its nearest subject, but it is wrong.
E.g.

1) The quality of apples **is** good.
2) He and not his parents **is** guilty.
3) The appeal of the victims for the transfer of the cases related to riots to some other states **has** been accepted.

Rule 9

With **Collective noun** always use **Singular Verb.**
E.g.

1) The **herd** of cows **is** grazing in the field.
2) The committee **has** unanimously taken **its** decision.

Note:- But if there is some problem in **Collective Noun** or each person is mention then use **plural verb**.

E.g.

1) The jury **are** divided in **their** opinion.
2) The audience **have** taken **their** seats.

Rule 10

With **plural number**, **plural verb** use. e.g.

Hundred boys **are** in my class.

Note:- If after **cardinal adjectives (one, two, three, four,… etc.) plural noun** use and with **plural noun** shows **certain amount, certain weight, certain period, certain distance, certain height** then singular verb will use.

E.g.

1.Hundred rupees **is** in my pocket.

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

2.Ten mules **is** a long distance to cover on foot.

Rule 11

If any **Relative Pronoun(Who, which, that etc.)** use to add a **Subject** and a **Verb**, then **Verb** would be according to that **Subject** which is **antecedent to that Relative Pronoun**.
E.g.

1) She is one of the noblest **women** that **(R.P.)**~~**has**~~have ever lived on this earth.
2) I am not one of **those who (R.P.)** will trust everyone whom ~~**I meet**~~ they meet.
Always understand the meaning of the sentence. Second sentence meaning is '**I am not from those people, who believe on that whom they meet**.' So Don't use **I meet**, use **They meet.**

Rule 12

Each, Every, Everyone, Someone, Somebody, Nobody, None, One, Any, Many a, More than one means **singular** from their meaning. With this Singular verb, Singular noun, Singular Adjective & Singular noun use.
E.g.

1) **Each** student **has** come.
2) **Each** boy and **each** girl **has** come.
3) **One** must tolerate **one's** friend as well as ~~**his**~~ one's enemy
4) **Many a** student ~~**have**~~ has not done their home work.
5) **More than one man**(S.N.) **was**(S.V) present there.
Note:- Watch use of **'many'** in below sentences:-
E.g.

1) **Many a** man has come.
2) **Many** men have come.
3) **A great/ A good many** men have come.

Rule 13

If after **each, every, one** etc., **'of'** is using, so, the **noun or pronoun** which comes after **'of'** will be **plural** but the **verb, adjective, pronoun** after that will be **Singular**.
E.g.

One of **the boys/ them**(Noun/Pronoun (Plural)) has done the his work.

Rule 14

www.BankExamsToday.com

After **Plural Noun** or **Plural Pronoun** use of **'each**', then it will be treated as **Plural** and **Plural Verb** will be use will be used with this.
E.g.

We**(P.S.)** each **have(P.V.)** a duty towards our nation. (**Correct**)

Rule 15

Use of **Indefinite Pronoun- 'One'** as the **subject** of **sentence**, then with this **singular verb** will use and for this **Singular Adjective/ Pronouns- one's, one, oneself** will be used, not **he, him, himself** etc.
E.g.

One should keep his promise. (Incorrect)
One should keep one's promise. (Correct)

Rule 16

Fictional sentences which starts with **if, as if, as though, suppose, I wish, in case or would that**. After this any **number** or **person's** subject will be used, plural verb '**were**' will use, not **was**.
E.g.

1) I wish, I were a bird.
2) If he were rich, he would help others.

Rule 17

In Optative Sentences, with Singular Subject, plural verb will use.
E.g.

1) God(S.S) save(P.V) the king.
2) Long live(P.V) the Queen(S.S).

Rule 18

A number of/A large number of/A great number of use with Plural Countable Noun and with this Plural Verb will use.
E.g.

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

A number of students were present. (Correct)
Note:- But use of **'The number of'** for certain number, then after this **Plural Subject** will use and it will use with **Sentence's Subject** with **Singular Verb**.
E.g.

The number of **boys**(P.S) **are**(P.V) fifty. (Incorrect)
The number of boys(P.S) **is**(S.V) **fifty**. (Correct)

www.BankExamsToday.com

Rule 19

If **Amount of/quantity of** use with **Uncountable noun**, then it will use with **Sentence's subject** and with this **Singular Verb** will use.
E.g.

The amount of money(U.N) are(P.V) not sufficient. (Incorrect)
The amount of money(U.N)**is**(S.V) not sufficient. (Correct)

Rule 20

If '**All'** use as **uncountable**, then it will treat **singular**, and with this **Singular Verb** will use.
E.g.

All **is**(S.V) well that **ends**(S.V) well.
But use of '**All'** as **quantity of people or good**, then it will treat **Plural** and with this **Plural Verb** will use.
E.g.

All **are**(P.V) well at home.

Rule 21

Furniture, advice, work, evidence, equipment, news, information, luggage, baggage, percentage, poetry, knowledge, dirt, traffic, electricity, music, breakage, stationary, confectionary, pottery, bakery, crockery, behavior use as **Uncountable Nouns**. So with this **Singular verb** will use.
1) The **scenery**(S.S) of Kashmir **has**(S.V) enchanted us.
2) I passed but the **percentage**(S.S) of marks **was**(S.V) not good.

Rule 22

Some **Nouns** are always use as **Plural** Nouns. It cannot be make **Singular**, if we cut **'s'** at the end of it. It also looks like **Plural**, and it also use as **Plural**.

BANK EXAMS Today

www.BankExamsToday.com

Scissors, tongs, pliers, pincers, bellows, trousers, pants, pajamas, shorts, gallows, fangs, spectacles, goggles, binoculars, sunglasses, Alms, amends, archives, arrears, auspices, congratulations, embers, thanks etc.
E.g.

1) Where are my **pants**?
2) Where are the **tongs**?
3) The **proceeds** were deposited in the bank.

www.BankExamsToday.com

Rule 23

Some **Nouns** looks **Plural**, but use as **Singular**. It always use as **Singular**.
E.g.

News, Innings, Politics, Summons, Physics, Economics, Ethics, Mathematics, Mumps, Measles, Rickets, Billiards etc. e.g.
1) No **news** is good news.

2) **Politics** is a dirty game.

Rule 24

Some **Nouns** look like **Singular**, but us as **Plural**.

E.g.

Cattle, infantry, poultry, peasantry, children, gentry, police, people etc. With these 's' will never use. Like Cattles, childrens are wrong. e.g.

1) **Cattles** are grazing in the field.

2) Our **infantry** have marched forward.

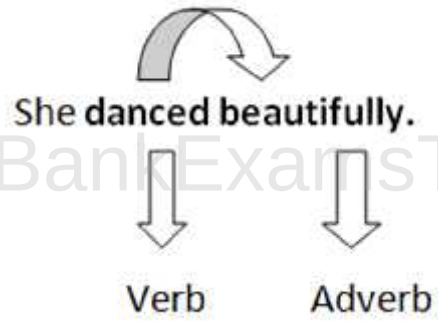
3) **Police** have arrested the thieves.

Rules of Adverbs

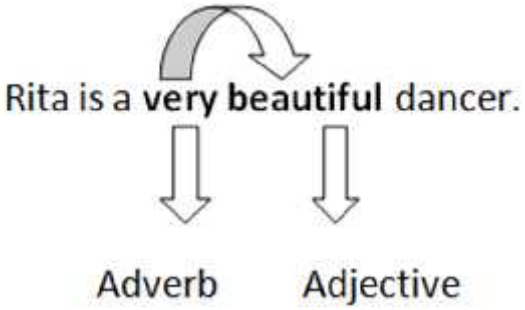
An Adverb a word which modifies a verb or an adjectives or another adverb.

www.BankExamsToday.com

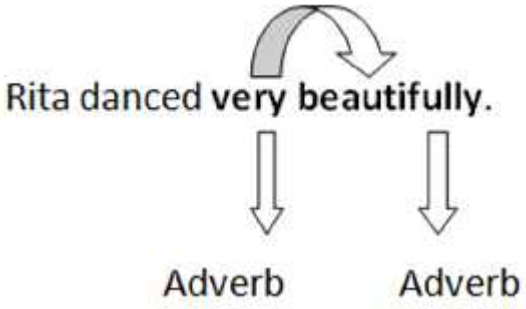
FOR EXAMPLE



In the example above 'danced' is a verb which is being modified by the adverb "beautifully".



In the example above 'beautiful' is an adjective which is being modified by an adverb 'very'.



KINDS OF ADVERBS

1. ADVERBS OF MANNER

Adverbs of Manner tell us the manner or the way in which something happens. They answer the Question 'How?' Adverbs of Manner mainly modify verbs.

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

- He speaks slowly. (How does he speak?)
- They helped us cheerfully. (How did they help us?)
- James Bond drives his cars fast. (How does James Bond drive his cars?)

2. ADVERBS OF PLACE

www.BankExamsToday.com

Adverbs of place tell us the place where something happens. They answer the question 'where?' An adverb of place mainly modifies verbs.

- Please sit here. (Where should I sit?)
- They looked everywhere. (Where did they looked?)
- Two cars were parked outside. (Where were two cars parked?)

3. ADVERBS OF TIME

Adverbs of time tell us something about the time that something happens. They answer the question 'when?' Adverbs of Time mainly modify verbs.

- He came yesterday. (When did he came?)
- I want it now. (When do I want it?) or they can answer the question 'how often?'
- They deliver the newspaper daily. (How often do they deliver the newspaper?)
- We sometimes watch a movie.(How often do we watch a movie?)

4. ADVERBS OF DEGREE

Adverbs of degree tell us the degree or extent to which something happens. They answer the question 'how much?' or 'to what degree?' Adverbs of degree can modify verbs, Adjectives or other Adverbs.

- She entirely agrees with him. (How much does she agree with him?)
- Mary is very beautiful. (To what degree is Mary beautiful? How beautiful is Mary?)
- He drove quite dangerously. (To what degree did he drive dangerously? How dangerously did he drive?)

5. ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY

Adverbs of frequency tell us how many times the action occurs or occurred or will occur.

Examples: Rarely, daily, sometimes, often, seldom, usually, frequently, always, ever, generally, monthly, yearly.

- She never smokes.
- He is always late for class.
- They always come in time.
- Barking dogs seldom bite.
- The employees are paid monthly.
- The employees are paid every month.

BANK EXAMS Today

www.BankExamsToday.com

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

There are three degrees of comparison in adverbs the positive, the comparative, the superlative. The adverbs form their comparatives and superlatives using –er and –est and more and most. Adverbs that end in –ly use the words more and most to form their comparatives abd superlatives.

The one-syllable adverbs use –er in the comparative form and –est in the superlative form.

www.BankExamsToday.com

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Early	Earlier	Earliest
Fast	Faster	Fastest
Hard	Harder	hardest
High	Higher	Highest
Late	Later	Latest
Hot	Hotter	hottest
Loud	Louder	Loudest
Near	Nearer	Nearest
Soon	Sooner	Soonest

Adverbs which end in-ly or have three or ‘more’ syllables each form the comparative with more and the superlative with ‘most’.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Angrily	More angrily	Most angrily
Brightly	More brightly	Most brightly
Dimly	More dimly	Most dimly
Freely	More freely	Most freely
Gladly	More gladly	Most gladly
Heavily	More heavily	Most heavily
Loudly	More loudly	Most loudly
Quietly	More quietly	Most quietly
Sweetly	More sweetly	Most sweetly
Terribly	More terribly	Most terribly

The comparative form is used to compare two things.

- We must not reach there later than 7o’clock/
- You speak more loudly than a loudspeaker.
- Sirius shines more brightly than all the other stars.

The superlative form is used to compare three more things.

- He arrived the <u>earliest,</u> so he had to wait for the others.

BANK EXAMS Today

www.BankExamsToday.com

- Why do you have to speak the most loudly of all the meetings?
  - Of all the girls, your sister sang the most sweetly.

It is not correct to use –er and more together, -est and most together.

- The tree is more taller than the giraffe. (Incorrect)

  The tree is taller than the giraffe. (correct)
- This turkey is the most oldest in the farm. (incorrect)

This turkey is the oldest in the farm.(correct)

Some adverbs form the comparative and the superlative irregularly.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Badly	Worse (than)	Worst (the)
Far	Farther	Farthest
Far	Further	Furthest
Little	Less	Least
Much/many	More	Most
Well	Better	Best

Examples:

- Of the two teddy bears, which do you like **better**?
- This has to be the **farthest** I have ever walked in my life.

Forms of Adverbs

There are three forms of adverbs: adverbs formed by adding -ly to an adjective, adverbs that share identical words with an adjective, and adverbs not derived from an adjective or any other word.

1. Most adverbs are formed by adding -ly to an adjective

- He had a **sudden** heart attack while jogging. (Adjective)
- He **suddenly** had a heart attack while jogging. (Adverb)
- She had a **quick** walk to get there on time. (Adjective)
- She walked **quickly** to get there on time. (Adverb)

2. Adverbs that share identical words with an adjective

- He found the exam quite **hard.** (Adjective)
- He failed his exam as he didn't try very **hard.** (Adverb)
- The two brothers live on **opposite** sides of the city. (Adjective)

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

o She has a brother who lives **opposite** to her. (Adverb)

3. Adverbs such as as, even, how, never, next, now, rather, so, soon, still, then, too, etc. are not derived from an adjective or any other word.

- He doesn't even know where the Pacific Ocean is.
- He said he had never been to a circus.
- She has got rather a lot of money to spend at this time of the month.
- She has eaten two big pizzas and is still hungry

www.BankExamsToday.com

4. Converting a number of adjectives to adverbs by adding -ly entails removing a letter as shown in the following:

- by adding –**ly** or –**ally** to the end of an adjective (quick –quickly, heroic –heroically),
- by adding –**ly** after removing the last –**e** from an adjective (comfortable–comfortably,possible–possibly), or
- by dropping the last y from an adjective and replacing it with –ily (easy–easily, happy–happily).

5. Adverbs are also formed from other parts of speech such as noun (accident)and verb (hurry), and from present participle (frightening).

- She deleted my file by accident. (Noun)
- She accidentally deleted my file. (Adverb)
- Nick hurried to answer the telephone. (Verb)
- Nick moved hurriedly to answer the telephone. (Adverb)
- He's frightening us with the speed he's driving. (present participle)
- He's driving frighteningly close to the edge of the pavement. (Adverb

Positions of Adverbs

Adverbs occupy different positions in a sentence.

1. **At the beginning of a sentence before the subject**

   Sometimes she gives me a lift to work.

   Fortunately we got home before it started to rain.

   Suddenly all the lights went out.

2. **After the auxiliary verb and before the main verb**

   The father was **tragically** killed in a road accident.

   We do **occasionally** go bird-watching.

BANK EXAMS Today

www.BankExamsToday.com

The rain has **already** stopped when we arrived.

3. **After the auxiliary verb (be) that is used as the main verb**

She is **always** quick to point out other people's faults.

As usual, they are **very** late.

The boys were incredibly lucky to be alive after what happened.

4. **Before the main verb if there is no auxiliary verb**

Their parents **often** go to the cinema.

She **reluctantly** agreed to his proposals.

Your fat uncle **accidentally** knocked my vase of fresh flowers over.

5. **After the main verb if there is no auxiliary verb**

The sisters dressed **beautifully** for the occasion.

The tourist looked **carefully** at the antique before she bought it.

She spoke **loudly** to the crowd on women's issues.

6. **At the end of a sentence**

He admitted punching and kicking the man **repeatedly.**

Our old neighbor fell and hurt her leg **badly.**

Hey, you have not pronounced my name **correctly.**

Tenses

In a series of sharing English grammar notes, today I am sharing Tenses.

time → / ↓ aspect	PAST	PRESENT	FUTURE
SIMPLE	*she worked*	*she works*	*she will work*
CONTINUOUS	*she was working*	*she is working*	*she will be working*
PERFECT	*she had worked*	*she has worked*	*she will have worked*
PERFECT CONTINUOUS	*she had been working*	*she has been working*	*she will have been working*

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

Present continuous	**Present simple**
present of be + active participle	base form/s-form
I am reading you/we/they are reading he/she/it is reading	I/you/we/they read he/she/it reads
Negative	
I am not reading you/we/they are not reading he/she/it is not reading	I/you/we they do not read he/she/it does not read
Questions	
am I reading? are you/we/they reading? is he/she it reading?	do I/you/we/they read? does he/she/it read?

Past Continuous	**Present Perfect Continuous**
Past of be + active participle	Present of have + been + active participle
I/he/she/it was flying you/we/they were flying	I/you/we/they have been waiting he/she/it has been waiting
Negative	
I/he/she/it was not flying you/we/they were not flying	I/you/we/they have not been waiting he/she/it has not been waiting
Questions	
was I/he/she/it flying? were you/we/they flying?	have I/you/we/they been waiting? has he/she/it been waiting?

Present Perfect	**Past simple:**
present of have + past participle	Past form
I/you/we/they have opened he/she/it has opened	someone opened
Negative	
I/you/we/they have not opened he/she/it has not opened	someone did not open
Questions	
have I/you/we/they opened? has he/she/it opened?	did someone open?

Past Perfect	**Past Perfect Continuous**
had + past participle	had been + active participle
someone had invited	someone had been going

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

Negative	
someone had not invited	someone had not been going
Questions	
had someone invited?	had someone been going?

#Present

Present Simple

Ram plays cricket.

Sub + V_1 + Object

Note: 's' is used according to subject, always use 's' if subject is singular

Present Continuous

Ram is playing cricket.

Is / Am / Are + $V_{1 + ing}$

Sub + $V_{1 + ing}$+ Object

Present Perfect Continuous Tense

Ram has been playing cricket since morning or for two hours.

{ Has + Been + $V_{1 + ing}$ + time [since or for] }

Present Perfect Tense

Ram has played cricket.

Has / Have + V3 + Object

#Past Tense

Past Indefinite

Ram played cricket. [Sub + V2]

BANK EXAMS Today

www.BankExamsToday.com

Past Continuous

Ram was playing cricket. [Sub + Was / Were + V_{1+ing}]

Past Perfect Continuous Tense

Ram had been playing cricket since morning or for two hours.

{ Had + Been + V_{1+ing} + time [since or for] }

Past Perfect Tense

Ram had played cricket. [Sub + Had + V3]

#Future Tense

Future Indefinite

Modals (will/shall) always use with 1st form of verb.
Ram will play cricket.

Future Continuous

Ram will be playing cricket.

Sub + will/shall+be+ V_{1+ing}+ Object

Future Perfect

Ram will have played cricket.
(always use 'have' with 'will')

Future Perfect Continuous

Ram will have been playing cricket since morning.

Example : I ___(return) my book in the library yesterday.

The case of after and before

BANK EXAMS Today

www.BankExamsToday.com

- The passenger ____ reached the station before the train _____(arrive).[had,reached (V2)]
- The doctor came after the patient <u>died</u>(V3).

Conditional Statements

www.BankExamsToday.com

If + Present Indefinite + Future Indefinite + Obj

If + Past + Indefinite + would + V_1 + Obj

If + Past Perfect + would + Have + V3 + Obj

Examples:

1. <u>If I will go to Delhi</u>, I will Meet her. [Correct:If I go to Delhi]
2. She will come to meet me as soon as <u>I will reached Delhi</u>.[Correct: I reach Delhi]

<u>Conditional Words</u>

- As soon as
- If
- As If
- If wish
- Unless
- Until
- When
- When ever

3. Unless you ~~will not~~ take care of yours. you will not recover.
4. Until the train <u>will not</u> gets the signal. It will not arrive.
   [always use 's' or 'es' with verb according to the subject]
5. Ram <u>had</u> a car. [had = main verb (past indefinite)]
6. Ram <u>had</u> <u>had</u> a car. [past perfect] [has had had ; be was been]
7. Sub + Main Verb + V3 +Obj
8. She was a good girl. [past Indefinite]
9. She had been a good girl.[past perfect]

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

10. If I ~~was~~ a bird, I would fly in the sky. [Correct :were]
11. Present wish = Past indefinite
12. [never depends on subject]
13. If we had ___ mohan in our team we would have won the match. [Correct : had]
14. Past wish = Past Perfect
15. If I had seen you, I would ____ stop my car. [Correct: Have]
16.
17. He scolded me as if he ~~was~~ my boss. [Correct: Were]
18. [Never use 'was' in conditional statement after if or as]

Conditional Sentences

In conditional sentences below words will definitely come.

1. **If……,**
2. **Provided**
3. **As soon as…… no sooner…… than**
4. **When…….**
5. **Unless……, Until……,**

There are two parts of Conditional sentences

1. If Clause
2. Main clause

Mainly There are three types of conditional sentences

A. If clause in present tense
B. If clause in past tense
C. If clause in past tense
D. Other types of conditional sentences

A. IF CLAUSE IN PRESENT TENSE

General formula-

If + Simple present, simple future

- In this type of sentences 'If Clause' is in **Simple Present** and 'Main clause' is in **Simple Future.**

www.BankExamsToday.com

If I will come to Delhi, I will meet you. **(Incorrect)**

If I come to Delhi, I will meet you. **(Correct)**

If two work is in **future** back to back, and second work is depend on first work, then first work is in **Simple Present Tense** and second work is in **Simple Future Tense**.

www.BankExamsToday.com

Some examples:-

1. She will come to meet you as soon as you will reach Delhi. **(Incorrect)**
She will come to meet you **as soon as** you reach Delhi. **(Correct)**

2. If the government will be become strict, corruption will surely finish. **(Incorrect)**
If the government becomes strict, corruption will surely finish. **(Correct)**

3. I will help him provided he will mend his ways. **(Incorrect)**
I will help him **provided** he mends his ways. **(Correct)**

4. Unless he will not take care of his health, he will not recover. **(Incorrect)**
Unless he takes care of his health, he will not recover. **(Correct)**

5. There will be rush at the platform when the train will arrive. **(Incorrect)**
There will be rush at the platform **when** the train arrives. **(Correct)**

In above sentences of **If** don't use **will/shall/would**
Note:- In below sentences ,After sub+ will/shall don't use

If, as soon as, provided, before, after, until, unless, in case, when, lest.

1. With **'Unless or until'** don't use '**not**'.**(See sentence 4)**
2. In Conditional Sentences after when don't use will/ shall.**(See sentence 5)**

If the sentence is in completely present form then it can be in'Main clause' simple present. e.g.

1. If it rains, the schools remain closed.

If there is possibility in sentence then in place of will, 'may/might' will be use.

1. If it rains, the students **may** not come for class.
2. If the fog doesn't clear, the plane **may** get late.

If the sentence shows order then in place of 'will', 'May' will use. e.g.

1. If you finish your work, you **may** go home.

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

If any sentence shows Advise/ suggestion then in place of will, should/must be use. e.g.

1. If you want to remain healthy, you **should** exercise daily.
2. If you do not know him, you **must** not open the door.

If any sentence shows etiquette/manner then could, may will definitely be use. e.g.

1. If you meet him, **could** you tell him to call me up?
2. If you come to Delhi, **would** you come to meet me?

In 'If clause' In place of simple present tense, present continuous tense can also be use. e.g.

1. If you are waiting for the bus, you **should** better take a taxi.
2. If you are not reading the newspaper, you **should** let others read it.

In 'If clause' present perfect tense can also be use.

1. If you have finished the work, you **may** leave.
2. If they have bought tickets, they **will** surely go to see the movie.

B. IF CLAUSE IN PAST TENSE

General formula-

If + Simple Past, Subject + would + V_1

e.g. If I had money, I would lend it to you.

- This type of sentence shows 'improbability'.

  In above sentence '**If I had money'** clearly shows that **'there is no money**.

C. 'IF' CLAUSE IN PAST PERFECT TENSE

General formula-

If + Past Perfect, Sub + would + have +V_3

Example:-

If I had seen you, I would have stopped my car.

- In this type of sentence. The work has shown in **'If clause'** sentence, that work has shown not done.

Means '**If I had seen you'** shows that '**I had not seen you'**.

- In this type of sentence '**If'** can be replace by '**had**'.

Then the formula

Had + Subject + V_3 + obj, subject + would + have + V_3

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

Example:-

Had I seen you, I would have stopped my car.

THREE IMPORTANT FORMULAE

If + Present Indefinite, Simple Future

If + S + had + V_3, S + would + have + V_3

If + S + V_2 , S + would + V_1

D. OTHER TYPES OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

i) Imaginative sentences

General Formula-

If + subject + were, subject + would + V_1

e.g. If I were a bird, I would fly in the sky.

- For imaginative sentences with all subjects '**were'** will be use.

For below sentences **was** will not use.

If, as though, in case, as if, would that and I wish.

e.g. He scolded me as if he was my father. **(Incorrect)**

He scolded me as if he were my father. **(Correct)**

ii) In '**If clause'** sentences '**Unless**' **so long, as soon as, when, provided, suppose, in case, but, for** can also be use.

e.g. (1) **Unless** you work hard, you will not pass.

Note:- with **Unless, 'not'** will not use. **Unless you work hard** we mean '**If you do not work hard.**'

Means **Unless + affirmative = If + negative.**

1. I shall support him **so long as** I am alive.
2. **As soon as** the train comes, there will be rush for seats.
3. **When** he comes to Delhi, I will go to meet him.

Confusions

Certain verbs do not have ING form. It means that these verbs will not be used in either continuous tense or Perfect continuous tenses:

Verbs of perception :- see, taste, smell prefer, hear, please, notice recognize

Verbs of Thinking process :- Think, know, mean, mind, remember, suppose

Verbs of showing possession :- Own, have, belong, comprise, possess, contain, consist

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

Verbs expressing feeling or state of mind :- Believe, like, dislike, love, adore, want, wish, desire, hate, agree, trust, imagine

Verbs in general :- Look, seem, appear, resemble, cost, require, become, hope, refuse

Some nouns look plural and they are always used as plurals :

www.BankExamsToday.com

Scissors, tongue, pliers, pincers, bellows, trousers, pants, pajamas, shorts, gallows, fangs, spectacles, goggles, binoculars, eyeglasses, Alms, amends, archives, arrears, auspices, congratulations, embers, fireworks, lodgings, outskirts, particulars, proceeds, regards, riches, remains, savings, shambles, surroundings, tidings, troops, tactics, thanks, valuables, wages, belongings, braces etc.

Some nouns look plural but in meaning they are singulars therefore they are always used as singular verbs :-

News, innings, politics, Summons, Physics, Economics, Ethics, Mathematics, Mumps, Measles, Rickets, Shingles, Billiards, Draughts, Athletics etc.

Some nouns look singular but always used as plural :-

Cattle, cavalry, infantry, poultry, peasantry, children, gentry, police, people

Some nouns are used always as singular form. These are uncountable nouns and therefore we don't use article a/an before them.

Scenery, poetry, Furniture, Advice, information, hair, business, mischief, bread, stationary, crockery, luggage, baggage, postage, knowledge, wastage, money, Jewellery, breakage, equipment, work, evidence, word(when it means discussion, message or conversation), paper etc.

Some nouns are same in both singular and plural forms :-

Deer, sheep, series, species, fish, crew, team, jury, aircraft, counsel etc.

With two subjects, we use verb according to first subject :-

First subject	With Along with Together with As well as And not Like/ unlike Besides Rather than But except In addition to	Second subject	Verb (According to the subject)

For example :-

1. All but ~~he~~ him ~~has~~ have followed.

BANK EXAMS Today

www.BankExamsToday.com

2. The captain along with all the sailors has ~~have~~ ~~sunk~~ drowned.
3. My father unlike my uncles is very strict.
4. I and not my friends am ~~are~~ to be blamed.

With two subjects, we use verbs according to the nearest subject :

www.BankExamsToday.com

Neither	First subject	nor	Second subject	Verb(according to nearest subject)
either		or		
		nor		
		or		
Not only		but also		

For example

1. Neither they nor I am guilty of the act.
2. Aren't they or I guilty of the fact?
3. Either Rohit or his Parents have taken a wrong decision.
4. Has Rohit or his parents taken a wrong decision?

Not only……..	but also
Neither…….	nor
Either…….	or
Hardly……	when
Scarcely……	when
No sooner……	than
Lest……..	should
Superior……...	to
Inferior……..	to
Senior…….	to
Junior……..	to
Prefer……	to
Admittance to; uses between and among; discussed ~~about~~; invention/discovery; each other/one another; eminent/imminent; wear/put on; put up/ put out/ put off;	

1. It's time (high time) I ~~should complain~~ complained against him. **(with "high time" always use Verb 2nd form)**
2. It's time to have fun.
3. By the time I reach the station, the train will have left. **(Present indefinite & Future perfect)**
4. By the time I reached the station, the train had left. **(Past indefinite & Past perfect)**

www.BankExamsToday.com

5. We have reached the moon.

6. We reached the moon on 22nd Oct 1984.

7. The judge tested the accused to see if he ~~would~~ could read English.

8. Some of the people were standing on the street ~~watch~~ watching cricket match, while others were sitting.

9. Martin Luther King was one of the leaders who ~~has~~ have followed Mahatma Gandhi.

10. My sister asked me ~~that~~ how long I would stay there.

11. The cruel lady made her step daughter ~~to~~ do all the household chores.

12. You can eat as much as you can at the newly ~~lunch~~ launched bar.

13. Sam ~~is working~~ has been working in a bank in Chennai for the past five years.

14. People living in low-lying areas find it difficult to cope ~~up~~ with the floods.

15. The manager told the boys that one ought to work hard to earn ~~his~~ one's living.

16. Kalidas is ~~a~~ the Shakespeare of India.

17. The more you think of it, the worse it becomes.

18. My elder brother asked me what ~~was~~ I was doing.

19. We shall go out if it does not ~~rains~~ rain.

20. While he was working at the construction site, the block of wood suddenly hit his right shoulder.

21. The weather in the region has been pleasant recently.

One word substitution

1. Able to use the left hand and right hand equally well - **Ambidextrous**
2. A man who hates marriage - **Misogamist**
3. A person who enters without any invitation - **Intruder**
4. The words with opposite meanings used together - **Oxymoron**
5. A person leaving his native country to settle in another - **Emigrant**
6. One who compiles a dictionary - **Lexicographer**
7. Too much official formality - **Red tapism**
8. One who devotes his life to the welfare and the interests of other people - **Altruist**
9. A person who opposes another - **Antagonist**
10. A person who does not want to see the realities of life and tries to escape - **Escapist**
11. A game in which in which no one wins - **Drawn**
12. What cannot be heard - **Inaudible**
13. One who knows many languages - **Polyglot or multilingual**
14. A place where everything is perfect - **Utopia**
15. A sweet music - **Melody**
16. A person who is pure and clean - **Immaculate**

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

17. To send back a person to one's country - **Repatriate**
18. One who tends to take a hopeful view of life - **Optimist**
19. To be known for bad acts - **Notorious**
20. Instruments to measure atmospheric pressure - **Barometer**
21. One who pretends to be what he is not - **Hypocrite**
22. An official call to appear in a court of law - **Summon**
23. Murder of a brother - **Fratricide**
24. A list of items to be transacted at a meeting - **Agenda**
25. A continuous process of change is known as - **Metamorphosis**
26. Circular building or hall with a dome - **Rotunda**
27. An order requiring a person to attend a court - **Subpoena**
28. An extreme fear of being in a small confined place - **Claustrophobia**
29. Allowance due to a wife from her husband on separation - **Alimony**
30. Belonging to all parts of the world - **Universal**
31. Words of similar meaning - **Synonyms**
32. A speech delivered without previous preparation - **Extempore**
33. Study of heavenly bodies - **Astronomy**
34. To cut apart a person's body - **Mutilate**
35. One who is filled with excessive and mistaken enthusiasm about his religion - **Fanatic**
36. An involuntary action under a stimulus is described as a - **Reflex**
37. The use of many words where only a few are necessary - **Circumlocution**
38. One who is a citizen not of a country but of the world - **Cosmopolitan**
39. An imaginary name assumed by an author for disguise - **Pseudonym**
40. A person who has no money to pay off his debts - **Insolvent**
41. A number of ships - **Fleet**
42. A test in which cells from diseased organs are removed and tested - **Biopsy**
43. A foreigner who settles in a country - **Immigrant**
44. Place that provides refuge - **Asylum**
45. Art of writing for newspapers and magazines - **Journalism**
46. Parts of a country behind the coast of a river bank - **Hinterland**
47. One who does not make mistakes - **Infallible**
48. A professional rider in horse races - **Jockey**
49. Words uttered impiously about God - **Blasphemy**
50. A person who is bad in spelling - **Cacographist**
51. A small room in a big house, hotel, ship etc. where glasses, dishes, spoons, food etc. are kept - **Pantry**
52. Doing something according to one's own free will - **Voluntarily**
53. A person who gambles or bets - **Punter**
54. An abandoned child of unknown parents who is found by somebody - **Foundling**
55. A written statement about someone's character, usually provided by an employer - **Testimonial**
56. One who hates women - **Misogynist**
57. A raised passageway in a building - **Walkway**
58. One who cannot speak - **Dumb**
59. To look at someone in an angry or threatening way - **Glower**
60. Something that causes death - **Fatal**

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

61. A person who loves mankind - **Philanthropist**
62. One who has narrow and prejudiced religious views - **Bigot**
63. To confirm with the help of evidence - **Corroborate**
64. The time between midnight and noon- Ante - **meridiem**
65. Fear of height - **Acrophobia**
66. Feeling inside you which tells you what is right and what is wrong - Conscience
67. Loss of memory - **Amnesia**
68. A system of naming things - **Nomenclature**
69. A cure for all diseases - **Panacea**
70. A post with little work but high salary - **Sinecure**
71. A person who writes decoratively - **Calligrapher**
72. A woman with dark brown hair - **Brunette**
73. The action of looking within or into one's own mind - **Introspection**
74. One who is a dabbler in Arts, Science or Literature - **Dilettante**
75. Still existing and known - **Extant**
76. The highest point - **Zenith**
77. Release of a prisoner from jail on certain terms and condition - **Parole**
78. To struggle helplessly - **Flounder**
79. A person who is talkative - **Garrulous**
80. One who cuts precious stones - **Lapidist**
81. Specialist of Kidney - **Nephrologist**
82. Thick skinned animal - **Pachyderm**
83. A person who is always dissatisfied - **Malcontent**
84. A funeral bell - **Knell**
85. Capable of being interpreted in two ways - **Ambiguous**

Antonyms : 200 Words

1. Inevitable- Avoidable
2. Exceptional- Common
3. Permanent- Temporary
4. Dim- Luminous
5. Reckless- Careful
6. Explicit- Ambiguous
7. Incredible- Believable
8. Repel- Attract
9. Rapidly- Slowly
10. Meticulous- Careless
11. Barbarous- Civilized
12. Successor- Predecessor
13. Urban- Rural
14. Conclusive- Indecisive

www.BankExamsToday.com

15. Terminate-Begin
16. Niggardly- Lavishly
17. Advanced- Receded
18. Enlightened- Ignorant
19. Moderate- Extreme
20. Superficial- Thorough
21. Scorn- Admiration
22. Trivial- Serious
23. Loquacious- Reserved
24. Confiscate- Release
25. Often- Rarely
26. Eminent- Notorious
27. Embark upon- Conclude
28. Diffidence- Boldness
29. Paucity- Plenty
30. Triggered- Choked
31. Fastidious- Adjustable
32. Grandiose- Simple
33. Bleak- Bright
34. Insolent- Humble
35. Lurid- Mild
36. Unscrupulous- Conscientious
37. Melodious- Tuneless
38. Contaminate- Purify
39. Frugal- Extravagant
40. Falling off- Improvement
41. Genial- Unkind
42. Shallow- Deep
43. Immune- Vulnerable
44. Veneration- Disrespect
45. Yield to- Resist
46. Concur- Disagree
47. Vague- Precise
48. Humility- Pride
49. Extol- Censure
50. Takes off- Lands
51. Demolish- Build
52. Prevent- Induce
53. Frailty- Strength
54. Collapse- Rise
55. Anxious- Carefree
56. Thrifty- Wasteful
57. Innovate- Copy
58. Enduring- Fleeting
59. Progressive- Retrogressive
60. Purposely- Unintentionally

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

61. Brave- Timid
62. Opaque- Transparent
63. Hinder- Encourage
64. Zeal- Apathy
65. Shimmering-Gloomy
66. Plausible- Implausible/ Unbelievable
67. Flair- Inability
68. Dormant- Active
69. Hazy- Clear
70. Fantastic- Ordinary
71. Asceticism- Luxury
72. Dissolution- Establishment
73. Unnerved- Confident
74. Harmony- Disagreement
75. Guilty- Innocent
76. Duplicity- Honesty
77. Jocular- Morose
78. Uncompromising- Flexible
79. Desecration- Consecration
80. Far-fetched- Realistic
81. Parallel- Crooked
82. Blocked- Facilitated
83 Turn coat- Loyal
84. Embellish- Spoil
85. Intentional- Accidental
86. Expand- Contract
87. Stimulate- Discourage
88. Perilous- Safe
89. Audacious- Timid
90. Quiet- Pandemonium
91. Genuine- Fictitious
92. Implicit- Explicit
93. Repulsive- Attractive
94. Escalate- Decrease
95. Commotion- Tranquility
96. Manifested- Concealed
97. Vindictive- Forgiving
98. Inaugurate- Terminate
99. Detest- Like
100. Commence- Conclude
101. Prosperity- Adversity
102. Deliberate- Unintentional
103. Disputable- Indisputable
104. Make- Break
105. Depressed- Elated
106. Ham-fisted- Adroit

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

107. Capture- Liberate
108. Misery- Joy
109. Anarchy- Order
110. Monotony- Variety
111. Latter- Former
112. Diligent- Lazy
113. Philistine- Cultured
114. Ingest- Disgorge
115. Laceration- Healing
116. Disorderly- Organized
117. Glossy- Dull
118. Accomplish- Fail
119. Orderly- Chaotic
120. Strife- Peace
121. Antique- Recent
122. Rapid- Slow
123. Initiated- Concluded
124. Fatigued- Rigid
125. Dynamic- Static
126. Hereditary- Acquired
127. Heretical- Orthodox
128. Implicate- Exonerate
129. Liberty- Slavery
130. Elevation- Reduction
131. Boon- Bane
132. Famous- Obscure
133. Gloomy- Radiant
134. Isolation- Association
135. Contented- Dissatisfied
136. Severe- Mild
137. Fatigued- Energized
138. Flexible- Rigid
139. Delete- Include
140. Evanescent- Eternal
141. Virtue- Vice
142. Confident- Diffident
143. Adamant- Yielding
144. Callous- Sensitive
145. Procrastinate- Expedite
146. Probity- Dishonesty
147. Sporadic- Continual
148. Apposite- Inappropriate
149. Chivalry- Cowardice
150. Sanguine temper- Despairing nature
151. Imperil- Safeguard
152. Consolidated- Disjoined

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

153. Vituperative- Laudatory
154. Benefactor- Enemy
155. Barren- Fertile
156. Nervous- Composed
157. Evident- Hidden
158. Professional- Amateur
159. Cessation- Commencement
160. Potent- Weak
161. Gregarious- Unsociable
162. Implication- Exoneration
163. Dismal- Bright
164. Meagre- Surplus
165. Flamboyant- Not showy
166. Chronic- Temporary
167. Awkward- Graceful
168. Despair- Hope
169. Validate- Disprove
170. Smug- Dissatisfied
171. Vicious- Virtuous
172. Obscure- Clear
173. Enervate- Strengthen
174. Autonomous- Dependent
175. Exonerate- Convict
176. Controversial- Indisputable
177. Accord- Disagreement
178. Feasible- Impractical
179. Acquit- Condemn
180. Affluence- Poverty
181. Harmonious- Discordant
182. Factual- Unrealistic
183. Assent- Disagreement
184. Discreet- Careless in behavior
185. Unjust- Fair-minded
186. Oppressive- Gentle
187. Clinch- Lose
188. To put up with- To dislike
189. Deceitful- Honest
190. Exaggerate- Understate
191. Synthetic- Natural
192. Infirmity- Strength
193. Deny- Accept
194. Benediction- Curse
195. Forbid- Permit
196. Inconspicuous- Prominent
197. Abandon- Retain
198. Fickle- Constant

www.BankExamsToday.com

199. Articulate- Unable to express oneself.
200. Humble- Powerful

Synonyms : 200 Words

www.BankExamsToday.com

1. Impeccable - Faultless
2. Adverse - Negative
3. Friendly - Amiable
4. Imitate - Copy
5. Dessert - Sweet-dish
6. Fortitude - Courage
7. Trauma - Emotional shock
8. Adversary - Opponent
9. Erudite - Scholarly
10. Takes after - Resembles
11. Cajole - Persuade
12. Amazement - Surprise
13. Electrifying - Exciting
14. Merited - Deserved
15. Zealous - Ardent
16. Deny - Refuse
17. Hostile - Antagonistic
18. Veil - Conceal
19. Peculiar - Strange
20. Eminent - Illustrious
21. Defer - Postpone
22. Novice - Beginner
23. Salient - Most important
24. Idea - Notion
25. Ill-favoured - Unlucky
26. Clue - Hint
27. Consistency - Uniformity
28. Refrain - Desist
29. Candid - Frank
30. Industrious - Hard-working
31. Authentic - Genuine
32. Miraculous - Amazing
33. Knave - Scoundrel
34. Impost - Tax
35. Forego - Renounce
36. Frontier - Boundary
37. Irreproachable - Faultless
38. Judicious - Sensible

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

39. Obstinate - Unyielding
40. Menial - Lowly
41. Emulate - Follow
42. Mass murder - Genocide
43. Maiden Speech - First Speech
44. Tedious - Dull
45. Spirited - Enthusiastic
46. Gloomy - Morose
47. Warranty - Guarantee
48. Prodigal - Wasteful
49. Coarse - Rough
50. Recipients - Receivers
51. Rout - Defeat
52. Felicity - Bliss
53. Transpired - Happened
54. Sundry - Various
55. Impetus - Accelerated growth
56. Boast - Brag
57. Executioner - One who inflict capital punishment
58. Interfere - Meddle
59. Magnificent - Splendid
60. Feasible - Practical
61. Fortify - Strengthen
62. Barren - Unproductive
63. Intrepid - Fearless
64. Sufficient - Enough
65. Ancestors - Forefathers
66. Meek - Submissive
67. Fragrance - Aroma
68. Crude - Unrefined
69. Enigmatic - Puzzling
70. Aversion - Dislike
71. Jubilant - Ecstatic
72. Blister - Wound
73. Fabulous - Marvellous
74. Surpass - Outdo
75. Atrocity - Violence
76. Pacify - Calm down
77. Infamy - Notoriety
78. Perspicuous - Clear
79. Benevolent - Kind
80. Embrace - Accept
81. Homage - Tribute
82. Fictitious - False
83. Recurrent - Happening repeatedly
84. Despondent - Dejected

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

85. Desperation - Hopelessness
86. Liberty - Freedom
87. Favourite - Preferred
88. Laudable - Praiseworthy
89. Sanitise - Disinfect
90. Surreptitiously - Secretly
91. Genuine - Real
92. Elastic - Flexible
93. Rectify - Correct
94. Advance - Progress
95. Poach - Hunt
96. Exhort - Urge
97. Familiar - Well-known
98. Affiliate - Associate
99. Diligent – Industrious
100. Prospective - Possible
101. Accentuated - Accent
102. Paucity - Shortfall
103. Pensive - Thoughtful
104. Provisional - Temporary
105. Forebode - Foretell
106. Obscene - Indecent
107. Vacillate - Waver
108. Impediment - Obstruction
109. Prognosis - Forecast
110. Repartee - Quick witty reply
111. Lurid - Shocking
112. Prosper - Thrive
113. Explicit - Clear
114. Infuriate - Enrage
115. Lousy - Awful
116. Predominantly - Mostly
117. Avert - Avoid
118. Cordial - Friendly
119. Horrendous - Greatly unpleasant
120. Irrevocable - Unalterable
121. Repose - Rest
122. Nurture - To grow
123. Abuse - Scorn
124. Considerate - Thoughtful
125. Frugal - Miserly
126. Pity - Mercy
127. Restrict - Prohibit
128. Tremendous - Excessive
129. Abundant - Plentiful
130. Change - Alter

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

131. Adorn - Beatify
132. Commotion - Disturbance
133. Grumble - To complain
134. Docile - Submissive
135. Irresolute - Undecided
136. Motive - Intention
137. Quash - Reject
138. Anticipate - Expect
139. Meticulous - Painstaking
140. Acquaint - Introduce
141. Fruitless - Useless
142. Cease - Stop
143. Abandon - Forsake
144. Regard- Respect
145. Prudent - Wise
146. Culmination- Climax
147. Crass - Unrefined
148. Cursory - Quick
149. Clandestine - Secret
150. Obdurate - Adamant
151. Reluctant - Unwilling
152. Ostracise - Banish
153. Imbecility - Stupidity
154. Hesitant - Undecided
155. Palpable - Obvious
156. Sauntering - Strolling
157. Pious - Religious
158. Intimidate - Frighten
159. Swap - Exchange
160. Genius - An intellect
161. Sporadic - Irregular
162. Accomplish - Achieve
163. Envisaged - Imagined
164. Resentment - Annoyance
165. Obscure - Unknown
166. Revelation - Disclosure
167. Appalled - Shocked
168. Collusion - Secret agreement
169. Deceptive - Misleading
170. Laid-back - Easy-going
171. Pompous - Grandiose
172. Poignant - Sad
173. Audacious - Bold
174. Reverie - Day- dream
175. Accrue - Accumulate
176. Vindictive - Spiteful

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

177. Hostility - Enmity
178. Condemn - Censure
179. Jealous - Envious
180. Plausible - Seemingly true
181. Dishonour - Infamy
182. Reticent - Not saying much
183. Apprise - Inform
184. Unceremonious - Impolite
185. Ravaged - Destroyed
186. Querulous - Quarrelsome
187. Perilous - Hazardous
188. Genial - Unselfish
189. Loquacious - Talkative
190. Inclement - Unfavorable
191. Indifferent - Unconcerned
192. Weary - Troubled
193. Creditable - Bringing praise
194. Fragile - Easily broken
195. Reciprocal - Mutual
196. Consensus - General agreement
197. Treason - Disloyalty
198. Lucid - Clear
199. Perplexed - Puzzled
200. Transparent – Clear

Vocabulary List

1. Agnostic(n)- A person who is not sure whether or not God exist.
2. Alacrity(n)- Enthusiasm
3. Allay(V)- Calm, pacify
4. Alleviate(V)- Mitigate, to make lesson
5. Allude(V)- Refer in indirect way
6. Attruism(n)- Work for others
7. Ambidextrous(adj.)- Able to use both hands with equal ease
8. Ambivalence(n)- Uncertainty
9. Ameliorate(v)- To improve
10. Amenable(adj.)- Easy to control
11. Amiable(adj.)- Friendly in disposition (outlook)
12. Amicable(adj.)- Friendly in feeling
13. Amnesty(n)- Pardon (to excuse)
14. Amorous(adj.)- Showing sexual desire and love
15. Anamalous(adj.)- Abnormal

www.BankExamsToday.com

16. Apathy(n)- Lack of interest
17. Aplomb(n)- Assurance
18. Apocalyptic(adj.)- Prophety
19. Apocryphal(adj.)- Of questionable authorship or authenticity
20. Apostate(n)- A person who abundance political or religious beliefs
21. Archetype(n)- Ardutype (original)
22. Aduous (adj.)-Stupid
23. Arraign(v)- Change in core(indict)
24. Asinine(adj.)- Stupid
25. Askance(adj.)- Suspicion
26. Bludgeon (n)- Staff (Lathi), a short club with a heavy loaded end
27. Bohemian (n)- A person with artistic or literary interests who disregards conventional standards of behaviour
28. Bonhomie (n)- Amiability, Friendly
29. Bowdlerize (v)- To remove passages considered offensive
30. Brackish (adj.)- Salty
31. Braggadocio (n)- Boast, Ding haakna
32. Cadence (n)- The rise and fall of voice in speaking
33. Callow (adj.)- Young and inexperienced , immature
34. Calumny (n)- False accusation
35. Conard (n)- Deliberately misleading story
36. Candour (n)- Frank and honest speaking. The quality of being frank and honest in his behaviour
37. Canker (n)- A disease causing sore patches
38. Cantankerous (adj.)- Bad tempered
39. Capacious (adj.)- Spacious
40. Capricious (adj.)- Fickle
41. Captious (adj.)- Fault finding
42. Carapace (n)- Hard outer cell
43. Carousal (n)- A noisy drinking party
44. Cartel (n)- A group of companies in the same business area that form an association
45. Castigate (v)- To criticize or punish somebody severely
46. Casuistry (n)- Use of clever argument to deceive people
47. Catechism (n)- Book for religious instruction
48. Canterize (v)- To born with a hot substance
49. Cardinal (adj.)- Very important
50. Consternation (adj.)- A feeling of great surprise, shock & anxiety
51. Construe (v)- To interpret
52. Contiguos(adj.)- Adjoining, adjacent
53. Continence (n)- Continence, self-restraint
54. Contretemps (n)- Squabble
55. Contrite (adj.)- Discord, disagreement
56. Contrived (adj.)- Showing effect of planning or manipulation
57. Contusion (n)- Injury in which the skin is not broken
58. Codici (n)- Addition to will (Vasiyat) by a person

BANK EXAMS Today

www.BankExamsToday.com

59. Cogent (adj.)- Convincing
60. Cogitate (v)- To think seriously
61. Cognitive (adj.)- The process of learning
62. Cohorts(n)- A band of soldiers, Group of people
63. Colloquial (adj.)- Used in conversation but not formally
64. Collusion (n)- A secret agreement for fraudulent means of purpose, conspiracy
65. Collosus (n)- Extremely large sized
66. Comestible (n)- Eatable, edible
67. Comelypance (n)- A punishment for something bad that on has done
68. Commensurate (adj.)- Proportional
69. Commiserate (adj.)- To symphatise with
70. Complacent (adj.)- Too satisfied with one self
71. Comport (v)- To behave in a particular way
72. Compunction (n)- A feeling of guilt about doing something
73. Concatenate (v)- To link together
74. Comcomitant (n)- An accompany condition
75. Complaisant (adj.)- Willing to please
76. Concord (v)-Harmony
77. Condescend (v)- Lower oneself
78. Condone (v)- To forgive
79. Conflagration (n)- A general burning
80. Embroi (v)- To involve in quarrel
81. Emetic (n)- An agent that causes vomiting
82. Emissary (n)- Agent
83. Emollient (n)- Softening or soothing agent
84. Empathize(v)- To relate to another after being through the same experience yourself
85. Empyrean (n)- The highest heaven
86. Enamoured (adj.)- In love, captivate
87. Encomium (n)- High praise
88. Endemic (adj.)- Prevalent in or restricted to a particular locality
89. Enervate (v)- To deprive of strength, force, vigour etc.
90. Enigma (n)- A riddle, a puzzle
91. Entreat (v)- Plead, Beseech
92. Enunciate (v)- Speak distinctly, articulate
93. Ephemera (adj.)- Temporary, short lived
94. Epicure (n)- One who enjoys and has a discriminating taste for find food & drink
95. Epistemology (n)- Study the nature of knowledge
96. Epitaph (n)- Inscription in the memory of the dead person
97. Epithet (n)- Descriptive word or a phrase
98. Epitome (n)- Icon, paragon, embodiment
99. Equanimity (n)- Calm and balanced
100. Equivocal (adj.)- Uncertain, doubtful
101. Equivocate (adj.)- To use evasive language (doubtful not clear- evasive)
102. Erudite (adj.)- Scholar minded profound knowledge
103. Ennvi- Bored

BANK EXAMS Today

www.BankExamsToday.com

104. Fawning (adj.)- Courting, favour by flatter
105. Fecund (adj.)- Productive
106. Felony (n)- A major crime
107. Feral (adj.)- Wild and undomesticated
108. Fervid (adj.)- Impassioned
109. Fetid (adj.)- Wound
110. Fetish (n)- An object with magical powers
111. Fiat (n)- A command
112. Fiduciary (adj.)- Related to a son or daughter
113. Flagellate (v)- To whik
114. Flipplant (n)- To take a serious situation lightly or casually
115. Flummox (v)- To confuse
116. Fortuitous (adj.)- Happening by chance
117. Fractious (adj.)- Stubborn
118. Fulminate (v)- To criticize very angrily
119. Furbish (v)- To renovate
120. Furtive (adj.)- Secretive
121. Gargantuan (adj.)- Of tremendous size or volume, memock
122. Gauche (adj.) Lacking social experience
123. Gavel (n)- Hammer light tude
124. Generic (adj.)- Not having a brand name
125. Genuflect (adj.)- To be obedient or respectful
126. Germane (adj.)- Being relevant and appropriate
127. Gingerly (adj.)- Very cautious and carefree
128. Glitch (n)- A minor malfunction or error that causes temporary setback
129. Gluttonous (adj.)- Voracious
130. Gossamer (adj.) Delicate
131. Gourmet (n)- Food lover
132. Gratis (adj. or adv.)- Free of charge
133. Gratuitous (adj.)- Spontaneous
134. Gravid (adj.)- anticipating
135. Grove (v)- To lower oneself to please another
136. Habiliment (adj.)- Press or attire
137. Halcyon (adj.)- Peaceful
138. Hallowed (adj.)- Blessed
139. Harangue (n/v)- A long, angry or forceful speech
140. Harbinger (adj.)- A forerunner
141. Harlequin (adj.)- Vaned in colour
142. Hedonism (n)- The doctrin that please is highest good endorgence sensual pleasure
143. Hegamony (n)- Bullying over someone
144. Hermetical (adj.)- Seated or fusion
145. Haitus (n)- A gap or break
146. Hubris (n)- Arrogance
147. Iconoclastic (adj.)- Attacking, cherist traditions
148. Idiosyncratic (adj.)- An unusual traides in a person

BANK EXAMS Today

www.BankExamsToday.com

149. Incantation (n)- Singing or chanting of magical space
150. Incarcerate (v)- To imprison
151. Inchoate (adj.)- Not fully developed yet
152. Incipient (adj.)- Not fully developed yet
153. Incriminate (v)- To accuse
154. Indelible (adj.)- Impossible to remove
155. Indict (v)- To charge
156. Indigent (adj.)- Poor, destitute
157. Indubitably (adj.)- Beyond a doubt
158. Inebriated (adj.)- A person who has drunk too much alcohol
159. Ineluctable (adj.)- Inevitable that cannot be Stopped
160. Infraction (n)- Violation of law
161. Inimitable (adj.)- Matchless
162. Iniquitous (adj.)- Wrong, wicked
163. Innuendo (n)- Insinuation, suggestion
164. Insidious (adj.)- Cunning
165. Insouciant (adj.)- To take a serious issue in a light manner
166. Levity (n)- Lightness
167. Libertine (n)- Without moral restrained philanderor, playboy
168. Lithe (adj.)- Graceful
169. Loquacious (adj.)- To be sad
170. Lugabrious (adj.) To be sad
171. Macabre (adj.)- Horrible
172. Malestrom (n)- A situation full of strong emotions or confusing events
173. Malapropism (n)- Ludicrous, Misuse of words
174. Malediction (n)- Curse
175. Martinet (n)- Very strict disciplinarian
176. Masochist (n)- Person who enjoys his own pains
177. Masticate (v)- To chew
178. Maudlin (adj.)- Tearfully sentimental
179. Maunder (v)- Wander
180. Mausoleum (n)- Tomb
181. Maverick (n)- Rebellious
182. Mayhem (n)- Inflict injury
183. Melange (n)- Mixture
184. Mendacious (adj.)- Not truthful, lying
185. Mendicant (n)- Beggar
186. Meretricious (adj.)- Attractive
187. Misanthrope (n)- A person who hates people
188. Modicum (n)- Small amount
189. Mordant (adj.)- Sarcastic
190. Moribund (adj.)- Coming to an end
191. Mortify (v)- Humiliation

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com

www.BankExamsToday.com